1. Slide Gallery . . . 7
2. .bookmarks . . . 7
3. 1.1 Development Cycle . . . 7
4. Creating and Deleting Indexes . . . 7
5. C Sharp Language Center . . . 7
6. Diagnostic Tools . . . 7
7. Django and MongoDB . . . 8
8. Getting Started . . . 8
9. International Documentation . . . 8
10. Monitoring . . . 8
11. Older Downloads . . . 8
12. PyMongo and mod_wsgi . . . 8
13. Python Tutorial . . . 9
14. Recommended Production Architectures . . . 9
15. v0.8 Details . . . 9
16. Building SpiderMonkey . . . 9
17. Documentation . . . 10
18. Dot Notation . . . 10
19. Dot Notation . . .
20. Getting the Software . . . 10
21. Language Support . . . 10
22. Mongo Administration Guide . . . 10
23. Working with Mongo Objects and Classes in Ruby . . . 11
24. MongoDB Language Support . . . 11
25. Community Info . . . 11
26. Internals . . . 11
27. TreeNavigation . . . 12
28. Old Pages . . . 12
    28.1 Storing Data . . . 12
    28.2 Indexes in Mongo . . . 12
    28.3 HowTo . . . 12
    28.4 Searching and Retrieving . . . 12
        28.4.1 Locking . . . 12
    28.5 Mongo Developers' Guide . . . 13
    28.6 Locking in Mongo . . . 13
    28.7 Mongo Database Administration . . . 13
    28.8 Mongo Concepts and Terminology . . . 13
    28.9 MongoDB - A Developer's Tour . . . 14
    28.10 Updates . . . 14
    28.11 Structuring Data for Mongo . . . 14
    28.12 Design Overview . . . 14
    28.13 Document-Oriented Datastore . . . 14
    28.14 Why so many "Connection Accepted" messages logged? . . .
    28.15 Why are my datafiles so large? . . . 14
    28.16 Storing Files . . . 15
    28.17 Introduction - How Mongo Works . . . 15
    28.18 Optimizing Mongo Performance . . . 15
    28.19 Mongo Usage Basics . . . 15
    28.20 Server-Side Processing . . . 15
29. Conference Information . . . 15
    29.1 Conference Management Tools . . . 16
    29.2 MongoDB Bangalore 2012 Speaker Info . . . 17
    29.3 MongoDB Beijing 2012 Speaker Info . . . 18
    29.4 MongoDB Boston 2012 Speaker Info . . . 20
    29.5 MongoDB Chicago 2012 Speaker Info . . . 21
    29.6 MongoDB Melbourne 2012 Speaker Info . . . 22
    29.7 MongoDB Munich 2012 Speaker Info . . . 24
    29.8 MongoDB Pune 2012 Speaker Info . . . 25
    29.9 MongoDB Seattle 2012 Speaker Info . . . 26
    29.10 MongoDB Sydney 2012 Speaker Info . . . 28
    29.11 MongoDB Tokyo 2012 Speaker Info . . . 29
    29.12 MongoDC 2012 Sponsor Info . . . 30
    29.13 MongoNYC 2013 Speaker Info . . . 33
    29.14 MongoSF 2013 Speaker Info . . . 34
    29.15 MongoSV 2012 Speaker Info . . . 35
    29.16 PresentationTips . . . 37
30. Home . . . 37
    30.1 Introduction . . . 38
    30.2 Quickstart . . . 40
        30.2.1 Quickstart OS X . . . 40
        30.2.2 Quickstart Unix . . . 40
        30.2.3 Quickstart Windows . . . 41
    30.3 Downloads . . . 41
        30.3.1 2.2 Release Notes . . . 41
        30.3.2 2.0 Release Notes . . . 41

30.3.3 1.8 Release Notes . . . 45
30.3.3.1 Upgrading to 1.8 . . . 47
30.3.4 1.6 Release Notes . . . 49
30.3.5 1.4 Release Notes . . . 50
30.3.6 1.2.x Release Notes . . . 51
30.3.7 1.0 Changelist . . . 52
30.3.8 Version Numbers . . . 52
30.3.8.1 What's New by Version . . . 52
30.3.9 Ubuntu and Debian packages . . . 52
30.3.10 CentOS and Fedora Packages . . . 52
30.4 Drivers . . . 53
30.4.1 Hadoop . . . 54
30.4.2 Scala Language Center . . . 55
30.4.3 Haskell Language Center . . . 55
30.4.4 C Language Center . . . 55
30.4.5 CSharp Language Center . . . 56
30.4.5.1 CSharp Community Projects . . . 57
30.4.5.2 CSharp Driver LINQ Tutorial . . . 57
30.4.5.3 CSharp Driver Quickstart . . . 77
30.4.5.4 CSharp Driver Serialization Tutorial . . . 80
30.4.5.5 CSharp Driver Tutorial . . . 93
30.4.5.5.1 CSharp getLastError and SafeMode . . . 114
30.4.6 Erlang Language Center . . . 114
30.4.7 Tools and Libraries . . . 115
30.4.8 Driver Syntax Table . . . 115
30.4.9 Javascript Language Center . . . 115
30.4.9.1 node.JS . . . 115
30.4.10 JVM Languages . . . 116
30.4.11 Python Language Center . . . 116
30.4.12 PHP Language Center . . . 117
30.4.12.1 Installing the PHP Driver . . . 118
30.4.12.2 PHP Libraries, Frameworks, and Tools . . . 118
30.4.12.3 PHP - Storing Files and Big Data . . . 122
30.4.12.4 Troubleshooting the PHP Driver . . . 122
30.4.13 Ruby Language Center . . . 122
30.4.13.1 Ruby Tutorial . . . 123
30.4.13.1.1 Replica Sets in Ruby . . . 129
30.4.13.2 GridFS in Ruby . . . 130
30.4.13.3 Rails - Getting Started . . . 133
30.4.13.4 Rails 3 - Getting Started . . . 135
30.4.13.5 MongoDB Data Modeling and Rails . . . 137
30.4.13.6 Ruby External Resources . . . 140
30.4.13.7 Frequently Asked Questions - Ruby . . . 142
30.4.14 Java Language Center . . . 144
30.4.14.1 Java Driver Concurrency . . . 146
30.4.14.2 Java - Saving Objects Using DBObject . . . 146
30.4.14.3 Java Tutorial . . . 147
30.4.14.4 Java Types . . . 152
30.4.14.5 Replica Set Semantics . . . 154
30.4.15 C++ Language Center . . . 154
30.4.15.1 BSON Arrays in C++ . . . 155
30.4.15.2 C++ BSON Library . . . 155
30.4.15.3 C++ Driver Compiling and Linking . . . 157
30.4.15.4 C++ Driver Download . . . 158
30.4.15.5 C++ getLastError . . . 158
30.4.15.6 C++ Tutorial . . . 158
30.4.15.6.1 List of helper functions . . . 163
30.4.15.7 Connecting . . . 163
30.4.16 Perl Language Center . . . 163
30.4.16.1 Contributing to the Perl Driver . . . 165
30.4.16.2 Perl Tutorial . . . 166
30.4.17 Online API Documentation . . . 166
30.4.18 Writing Drivers and Tools . . . 167
30.4.18.1 Overview - Writing Drivers and Tools . . . 167
30.4.18.1.1 Mongo Driver Requirements . . . 167
30.4.18.1.2 Spec, Notes and Suggestions for Mongo Drivers . . . 171
30.4.18.1.3 Feature Checklist for Mongo Drivers . . . 171
30.4.18.1.4 Conventions for Mongo Drivers . . . 171
30.4.18.2 Driver Testing Tools . . . 172
30.4.18.3 Mongo Wire Protocol . . . 172
30.4.18.4 BSON . . . 177
30.4.18.5 Mongo Extended JSON . . . 180
30.4.18.6 GridFS Specification . . . 181
30.4.18.7 Implementing Authentication in a Driver . . . 183
30.4.18.8 Notes on Pooling for Mongo Drivers . . . 185

30.4.18.8.1 Driver and Integration Center . . . 187
30.4.18.9 Connecting Drivers to Replica Sets . . . 187
30.4.18.10 Error Handling in Mongo Drivers . . . 187
30.5 Developer Zone . . . 188
30.5.1 cookbook.mongodb.org . . . 189
30.5.2 Tutorial . . . 189
30.5.3 Manual . . . 195
30.5.3.1 Connections . . . 196
30.5.3.2 Databases . . . 198
30.5.3.2.1 Commands . . . 198
30.5.3.2.2 Mongo Metadata . . . 210
30.5.3.3 Collections . . . 211
30.5.3.3.1 Capped Collections . . . 211
30.5.3.3.2 createCollection Command . . . 214
30.5.3.3.3 renameCollection Command . . . 214
30.5.3.3.4 Using a Large Number of Collections . . . 214
30.5.3.4 Documents . . . 215
30.5.3.5 Data Types and Conventions . . . 215
30.5.3.5.1 Dates . . . 216
30.5.3.5.2 Timestamp data type . . . 216
30.5.3.5.3 Internationalized Strings . . . 217
30.5.3.5.4 Object IDs . . . 217
30.5.3.5.5 Database References . . . 219
30.5.3.6 GridFS . . . 219
30.5.3.6.1 When to use GridFS . . . 220
30.5.3.7 Indexes . . . 220
30.5.3.7.1 Building indexes with replica sets . . . 226
30.5.3.7.2 Index Versions . . . 227
30.5.3.7.3 Geospatial Indexing . . . 227
30.5.3.7.4 Indexing as a Background Operation . . . 236
30.5.3.7.5 Multikeys . . . 237
30.5.3.7.6 Indexing Advice and FAQ . . . 240
30.5.3.8 Inserting . . . 243
30.5.3.8.1 Legal Key Names . . . 245
30.5.3.8.2 Schema Design . . . 245
30.5.3.8.3 Trees in MongoDB . . . 250
30.5.3.9 Optimization . . . 254
30.5.3.9.1 Explain . . . 256
30.5.3.9.2 Optimizing Object IDs . . . 258
30.5.3.9.3 Optimizing Storage of Small Objects . . . 259
30.5.3.9.4 Query Optimizer . . . 260
30.5.3.10 Querying . . . 261
30.5.3.10.1 Mongo Query Language . . . 262
30.5.3.10.2 Querying and nulls . . . 263
30.5.3.10.3 Retrieving a Subset of Fields . . . 263
30.5.3.10.4 slaveOk . . . 265
30.5.3.10.5 Advanced Queries . . . 265
30.5.3.10.6 Dot Notation (Reaching into Objects) . . . 274
30.5.3.10.7 Full Text Search in Mongo . . . 277
30.5.3.10.8 min and max Query Specifiers . . . 278
30.5.3.10.9 OR operations in query expressions . . . 278
30.5.3.10.10 Queries and Cursors . . . 279
30.5.3.10.11 Server-side Code Execution . . . 283
30.5.3.10.12 Sorting and Natural Order . . . 286
30.5.3.10.13 Aggregation . . . 287
30.5.3.11 Removing . . . 293
30.5.3.12 Updating . . . 294
30.5.3.12.1 Atomic Operations . . . 299
30.5.3.12.2 findAndModify Command . . . 303
30.5.3.12.3 Padding Factor . . . 306
30.5.3.12.4 two-phase commit . . . 307
30.5.3.12.5 Updating Data in Mongo . . . 310
30.5.3.13 MapReduce . . . 312
30.5.3.13.1 Troubleshooting MapReduce . . . 321
30.5.3.14 Data Processing Manual . . . 324
30.5.4 mongo - The Interactive Shell . . . 324
30.5.4.1 Scripting the shell . . . 325
30.5.4.2 Overview - The MongoDB Interactive Shell . . . 326
30.5.4.3 dbshell Reference . . . 331
30.5.5 Developer FAQ . . . 333
30.5.5.1 Do I Have to Worry About SQL Injection . . . 334
30.5.5.2 How does concurrency work . . . 335
30.5.5.3 What is a Name Space . . . 337
30.5.5.4 SQL to Mongo Mapping Chart . . . 337
30.5.5.4.1 SQL to Shell to C++ . . . 340

30.5.5.5 What is the Compare Order for BSON Types . . . 342
30.6 Admin Zone . . . 344
30.6.1 Components . . . 344
30.6.2 Journaling . . . 344
30.6.2.1 Journaling Administration Notes . . . 346
30.6.3 MongoDB Monitoring Service . . . 347
30.6.4 The Database and Caching . . . 348
30.6.5 Production Notes . . . 348
30.6.5.1 iostat . . . 350
30.6.5.2 NFS . . . 350
30.6.5.3 NUMA . . . 350
30.6.5.4 SSD . . . 351
30.6.5.5 Virtualization . . . 353
30.6.6 Replication . . . 353
30.6.6.1 About the local database . . . 354
30.6.6.2 Verifying Propagation of Writes with getLastError . . . 354
30.6.6.3 Replica Sets . . . 355
30.6.6.3.1 Replica Set Sample Configurations . . . 356
30.6.6.3.2 Replica Sets - Basics . . . 360
30.6.6.3.3 Replica Sets slaveDelay . . . 362
30.6.6.3.4 Replica Sets - Oplog . . . 362
30.6.6.3.5 Replica Sets - Priority . . . 362
30.6.6.3.6 Replica Sets - Rollbacks . . . 362
30.6.6.3.7 Replica Sets - Voting . . . 363
30.6.6.3.8 Why Replica Sets . . . 364
30.6.6.3.9 Moving or Replacing a Member . . . 365
30.6.6.3.10 Replica Set Versions and Compatibility . . . 365
30.6.6.3.11 Replica Set Design Concepts . . . 365
30.6.6.3.12 Replica Set Tutorial . . . 366
30.6.6.3.13 Replica Set Configuration . . . 370
30.6.6.3.14 Replica Set Authentication . . . 377
30.6.6.3.15 Upgrading to Replica Sets . . . 378
30.6.6.3.16 Replica Set Admin UI . . . 380
30.6.6.3.17 Replica Set Commands . . . 380
30.6.6.3.18 Connecting to Replica Sets from Clients . . . 385
30.6.6.3.19 Replica Set FAQ . . . 386
30.6.6.3.20 Replica Sets Troubleshooting . . . 386
30.6.6.3.21 Replica Sets Limits . . . 388
30.6.6.3.22 Replica Set Internals . . . 389
30.6.6.4 Master Slave . . . 392
30.6.6.4.1 Halted Replication . . . 396
30.6.6.5 Replica Pairs . . . 398
30.6.6.6 Replication Oplog Length . . . 400
30.6.7 Sharding . . . 400
30.6.7.1 Bulk Inserts . . . 401
30.6.7.2 Changing Config Servers . . . 402
30.6.7.3 flushRouterConfig command . . . 403
30.6.7.4 Simple Initial Sharding Architecture . . . 403
30.6.7.5 Sharding Introduction . . . 406
30.6.7.6 Configuring Sharding . . . 410
30.6.7.6.1 A Sample Configuration Session . . . 413
30.6.7.6.2 Changing a Shard Key . . . 415
30.6.7.6.3 Choosing a Shard Key . . . 415
30.6.7.6.4 removeshard command . . . 418
30.6.7.6.5 Tag Aware Sharding . . . 418
30.6.7.7 Upgrading from a Non-Sharded System . . . 419
30.6.7.8 Sharding Administration . . . 420
30.6.7.8.1 Backing Up Sharded Cluster . . . 424
30.6.7.9 Sharding and Failover . . . 427
30.6.7.10 Sharding Limits . . . 428
30.6.7.11 Sharding Internals . . . 430
30.6.7.11.1 Moving Chunks . . . 430
30.6.7.11.2 Sharding Config Schema . . . 431
30.6.7.11.3 Sharding Design . . . 433
30.6.7.11.4 Sharding Use Cases . . . 434
30.6.7.11.5 Shard Ownership . . . 434
30.6.7.11.6 Splitting Shard Chunks . . . 435
30.6.7.12 Sharding FAQ . . . 438
30.6.8 Hosting Center . . . 438
30.6.8.1 Amazon EC2 . . . 439
30.6.8.1.1 AWS Marketplace . . . 441
30.6.8.1.2 Automating Deployment with CloudFormation . . . 443
30.6.8.1.3 Amazon EC2 Quickstart . . . 450
30.6.8.2 dotCloud . . . 460
30.6.8.3 Joyent . . . 461

30.6.8.4 Rackspace Cloud . . . 461
30.6.8.5 RedHat OpenShift . . . 467
30.6.8.5.1 OpenShift Quickstart . . . 467
30.6.8.6 VMware CloudFoundry . . . 472
30.6.9 Monitoring and Diagnostics . . . 472
30.6.9.1 Checking Server Memory Usage . . . 474
30.6.9.2 collStats Command . . . 478
30.6.9.3 Database Profiler . . . 478
30.6.9.4 mongoperf . . . 482
30.6.9.5 Munin configuration examples . . . 483
30.6.9.6 serverStatus Command . . . 486
30.6.9.7 Http Interface . . . 486
30.6.9.8 mongostat . . . 489
30.6.9.9 mongosniff . . . 489
30.6.9.9.1 Wireshark Support for MongoDB Protocol . . . 490
30.6.10 Backups . . . 492
30.6.10.1 EC2 Backup & Restore . . . 493
30.6.10.2 How to do Snapshotted Queries in the Mongo Database . . . 499
30.6.10.3 Import Export Tools . . . 500
30.6.10.3.1 mongoexport . . . 506
30.6.11 Durability and Repair . . . 507
30.6.12 Security and Authentication . . . 509
30.6.12.1 SSL . . . 513
30.6.13 Admin UIs . . . 513
30.6.14 Starting and Stopping Mongo . . . 519
30.6.14.1 getCmdLineOpts command . . . 521
30.6.14.2 Logging . . . 522
30.6.14.3 Command Line Parameters . . . 524
30.6.14.3.1 --directoryperdb . . . 525
30.6.14.3.2 --quiet . . . 526
30.6.14.3.3 --syncdelay . . . 527
30.6.14.4 File Based Configuration . . . 527
30.6.15 GridFS Tools . . . 529
30.6.16 DBA Operations from the Shell . . . 530
30.6.17 Architecture and Components . . . 532
30.6.18 Windows . . . 533
30.6.18.1 MongoDB on Azure . . . 533
30.6.18.1.1 Azure Deployment . . . 535
30.6.18.1.2 MongoDB Azure Worker Role Configuration . . . 539
30.6.18.1.3 MongoDB Installer for Windows Azure . . . 541
30.6.19 Troubleshooting . . . 543
30.6.19.1 Excessive Disk Space . . . 544
30.6.19.2 The Linux Out of Memory OOM Killer . . . 546
30.6.19.3 Too Many Open Files . . . 547
30.7 Production Deployments . . . 548
30.8 Contributors . . . 607
30.8.1 JS Benchmarking Harness . . . 607
30.8.2 MongoDB kernel code development rules . . . 608
30.8.2.1 Kernel class rules . . . 608
30.8.2.2 Kernel code style . . . 609
30.8.2.3 Kernel concurrency rules . . . 613
30.8.2.4 Kernel exception architecture . . . 613
30.8.2.5 Kernel logging . . . 614
30.8.2.6 Kernel string manipulation . . . 614
30.8.2.7 Memory management . . . 615
30.8.2.8 Writing tests . . . 615
30.8.3 Project Ideas . . . 616
30.8.4 Roadmap . . . 617
30.8.5 UI . . . 617
30.8.6 Source Code . . . 618
30.8.7 Building . . . 618
30.8.7.1 Building Boost . . . 618
30.8.7.2 Building for FreeBSD . . . 619
30.8.7.3 Building for Linux . . . 620
30.8.7.4 Building for OS X . . . 622
30.8.7.5 Building for Solaris . . . 627
30.8.7.6 Building for Windows . . . 627
30.8.7.6.1 Boost 1.41.0 Visual Studio 2010 Binary . . . 627
30.8.7.6.2 Boost and Windows . . . 627
30.8.7.6.3 Building the Mongo Shell on Windows . . . 628
30.8.7.6.4 Building with Visual Studio 2008 . . . 629
30.8.7.6.5 Building with Visual Studio 2010 . . . 630
30.8.7.7 Building Spider Monkey . . . 632
30.8.7.8 Building with V8 . . . 634
30.8.7.9 scons . . . 635

30.8.8 Database Internals . . . 635
30.8.8.1 Caching . . . 636
30.8.8.2 Durability Internals . . . 636
30.8.8.3 Parsing Stack Traces . . . 637
30.8.8.4 Cursors . . . 638
30.8.8.5 Error Codes . . . 638
30.8.8.6 Internal Commands . . . 639
30.8.8.7 Replication Internals . . . 639
30.8.8.8 Smoke Tests . . . 640
30.8.8.9 Pairing Internals . . . 642
30.8.9 Contributing to the Documentation . . . 642
30.8.9.1 Emacs tips for MongoDB work . . . 643
30.8.9.2 Mongo Documentation Style Guide . . . 643
30.9 Community . . . 645
30.9.1 MongoDB Masters . . . 646
30.9.2 Technical Support . . . 653
30.9.3 MongoDB Commercial Services Providers . . . 653
30.9.3.1 Visit the 10gen Offices . . . 656
30.9.4 User Feedback . . . 656
30.9.5 Job Board . . . 658
30.10 About . . . 658
30.10.1 Philosophy . . . 658
30.10.2 Use Cases . . . 659
30.10.2.1 Business Intelligence . . . 661
30.10.2.2 Hadoop Quick Start . . . 661
30.10.2.3 Hadoop Scenarios . . . 665
30.10.2.4 How MongoDB is Used in Media and Publishing . . . 667
30.10.2.5 Use Case - Session Objects . . . 669
30.10.3 MongoDB-Based Applications . . . 670
30.10.4 Events . . . 671
30.10.4.1 MongoDB User Groups (MUGs) . . . 676
30.10.4.2 Video & Slides from Recent Events and Presentations . . . 677
30.10.4.3 Your Go-to Resource for Running a MongoDB User Group . . . 680
30.10.5 Articles . . . 681
30.10.6 Benchmarks . . . 682
30.10.7 FAQ . . . 682
30.10.8 Misc . . . 682
30.10.8.1 Demo App in Python . . . 682
30.10.8.2 MongoDB, CouchDB, MySQL Compare Grid . . . 682
30.10.8.3 Comparing Mongo DB and Couch DB . . . 683
30.10.9 Licensing . . . 685
30.11 International Docs . . . 685
30.12 Books . . . 685
30.13 Slides and Video . . . 687
30.14 Doc Index . . . 687
30.15 Alerts . . . 703

# Slide Gallery

**Redirection Notice**
This page should redirect to http://www.10gen.com/presentations.

# .bookmarks

**Recent bookmarks in MongoDB**

This page is a container for all the bookmarks in this space. Do not delete or move it or you will lose all your bookmarks.
Bookmarks in MongoDB | Links for MongoDB

## The 15 most recent bookmarks in MongoDB

There are no bookmarks to display.

# 1.1 Development Cycle

**Redirection Notice**
This page should redirect to [1.2.0 Release Notes].

# Creating and Deleting Indexes

**Redirection Notice**
This page should redirect to Indexes.

# C Sharp Language Center

**Redirection Notice**
This page should redirect to CSharp Language Center.

# Diagnostic Tools

**Redirection Notice**
This page should redirect to Monitoring and Diagnostics.

# Django and MongoDB

**Redirection Notice**
This page should redirect to Python Language Center.

# Getting Started

**Redirection Notice**
This page should redirect to Quickstart.

# International Documentation

**Redirection Notice**
This page should redirect to International Docs.

# Monitoring

**Redirection Notice**
This page should redirect to Monitoring and Diagnostics.

# Older Downloads

**Redirection Notice**
This page should redirect to Downloads.

# PyMongo and mod_wsgi

**Redirection Notice**
This page should redirect to Python Language Center.

# Python Tutorial

**Redirection Notice**
This page should redirect to Python Language Center.

# Recommended Production Architectures

**Redirection Notice**
This page should redirect to Production Notes.

# v0.8 Details

## Existing Core Functionality

- Basic Mongo database functionality: inserts, deletes, queries, indexing.
- Master / Slave Replication
- Replica Pairs
- Server-side javascript code execution

## New to v0.8

- Drivers for Java, C++, Python, Ruby.
- db shell utility
- (Very) basic security
- $or
- Clean up logging
- Performance test baseline
- getlasterror
- Large capped collections
- Bug fixes (compound index keys, etc.)
- Import/Export utility
- Allow any _id that is unique, and verify uniqueness

## Wanted, but may not make it

- AMI's
- Unlock eval()?
- Better disk full handling
- better replica pair negotiation logic (for robustness)

# Building SpiderMonkey

**Redirection Notice**
This page should redirect to Building Spider Monkey.

# Documentation

**Redirection Notice**
This page should redirect to Home.

# Dot Notation

**Redirection Notice**
This page should redirect to Dot Notation (Reaching into Objects).

# Dot Notation

**Redirection Notice**
This page should redirect to Dot Notation (Reaching into Objects).

# Getting the Software

Placeholder - $$$ TODO

# Language Support

**Redirection Notice**
This page should redirect to Drivers.

# Mongo Administration Guide

**Redirection Notice**
This page should redirect to Admin Zone.

# Working with Mongo Objects and Classes in Ruby

**Redirection Notice**
This page should redirect to Ruby Language Center.

# MongoDB Language Support

**Redirection Notice**
This page should redirect to Language Support.

# Community Info

**Redirection Notice**
This page should redirect to Community.

# Internals

## Cursors

### Tailable Cursors

See *p/db/dbclient.h* for example of how, on the client side, to support tailable cursors.

Set

```
Option_CursorTailable = 2
```

in the `queryOptions int` field to indicate you want a tailable cursor.

If you get back no results when you query the cursor, keep the cursor live if cursorid is still nonzero. Then, you can issue future `getMore` requests for the cursor.

If a `getMore` request has the `resultFlag ResultFlag_CursorNotFound` set, the cursor is not longer valid. It should be marked as "dead" on the client side.

```
ResultFlag_CursorNotFound = 1
```

See the Queries and Cursors section of the Mongo Developers' Guide for more information about cursors.

## See Also

- The Queries and Cursors section of the Mongo Developers' Guide for more information about cursors

# TreeNavigation

Follow @mongodb

MongoDC - June 26
MongoDB Sao Paulo - July 13

# Old Pages

## Storing Data

**Redirection Notice**
This page should redirect to Inserting.

## Indexes in Mongo

**Redirection Notice**
This page should redirect to Indexes.

## HowTo

**Redirection Notice**
This page should redirect to Developer FAQ.

## Searching and Retrieving

**Redirection Notice**
This page should redirect to Querying.

## Locking

**Redirection Notice**
This page should redirect to Atomic Operations.

# Mongo Developers' Guide

**Redirection Notice**
This page should redirect to Manual.

# Locking in Mongo

**Redirection Notice**
This page should redirect to Developer FAQ.

# Mongo Database Administration

**Redirection Notice**
This page should redirect to Admin Zone.

# Mongo Concepts and Terminology

See the Manual page for information on the following:

- BSON
- Collections
- Cursors
- Databases
- Documents
- GridFS (for files and very large objects)
- Indexes
- Transactions / Atomic Operations

## Replication Terms

- Replication. Duplicating data on multiple servers for HA, safety, disaster recovery, and a bit of scaling. Sharding and replication are used together.
- Member. A member (server) in a replica set.
- Primary. The replica set member that is currently "master" and receives all writes. Reads from the primary are "immediately consistent".
- Secondary. A replica set member that is currently not master and is applying operations it receives from the current primary.
- Arbiter. A replica set member that votes in elections of primary, but that has no data. Arbiters are very lightweight and can be used to break ties in elections. Add an arbiter if a set has an even number of members.
- Oplog. High level log of operations used by replication.

## Sharding Terms

- Sharding. The partioning / distribution of data among machines in a cluster. Each shard has different data. Sharding is the mechanism in MongoDB for building very large clusters. Note: we recommend you begin using MongoDB without sharding. It is easy to transition over to sharding later.
- Shard, Shard Key. See the sharding intro page.
- Chunk. A subset of documents in a collection that fit in a certain shard key range. See the sharding intro page.
- Config server. In a sharded environment, config servers store the metadata of the cluster. Each config server has a `mongod` process which stores metadata. Typically there are three config servers which have replicas of the same metadata (for data safety and HA). The config server mongod process is fairly lightweight and can be ran on machines performing other work. *The config server data is very important be sure to include them in your backups of the cluster.*
- mongod, mongos, mongo. MongoDB processes.

## Other Concepts

- Durability / [Journaling. Write-ahead logging for crash safety.
- Object IDs. Mongo documents include an `_id` field in each document.

### See Also

- Architecture and Components
- SQL to Mongo Mapping Chart

## MongoDB - A Developer's Tour

**Redirection Notice**
This page should redirect to Manual.

## Updates

**Redirection Notice**
This page should redirect to Updating.

## Structuring Data for Mongo

**Redirection Notice**
This page should redirect to Inserting.

## Design Overview

**Redirection Notice**
This page should redirect to Developer Zone.

## Document-Oriented Datastore

**Redirection Notice**
This page should redirect to Databases.

## Why so many "Connection Accepted" messages logged?

**Redirection Notice**
This page should redirect to Developer FAQ.

## Why are my datafiles so large?

**Redirection Notice**
This page should redirect to Developer FAQ.

## Storing Files

**Redirection Notice**
This page should redirect to GridFS.

## Introduction - How Mongo Works

**Redirection Notice**
This page should redirect to Developer Zone.

## Optimizing Mongo Performance

**Redirection Notice**
This page should redirect to Optimization.

## Mongo Usage Basics

**Redirection Notice**
This page should redirect to Tutorial.

## Server-Side Processing

**Redirection Notice**
This page should redirect to Server-side Code Execution.

# Conference Information

This is the home page for all information for speakers and sponsors participating in MongoDB Conferences.

- Conference Management Tools
- MongoDB Bangalore 2012 Speaker Info
- MongoDB Beijing 2012 Speaker Info
- MongoDB Boston 2012 Speaker Info

- MongoDB Chicago 2012 Speaker Info
- MongoDB Melbourne 2012 Speaker Info
- MongoDB Munich 2012 Speaker Info
- MongoDB Pune 2012 Speaker Info
- MongoDB Seattle 2012 Speaker Info
- MongoDB Sydney 2012 Speaker Info
- MongoDB Tokyo 2012 Speaker Info
- MongoDC 2012 Sponsor Info
- MongoNYC 2013 Speaker Info
- MongoSF 2013 Speaker Info
- MongoSV 2012 Speaker Info
- PresentationTips

# Conference Management Tools

## Tools to Effectively Plan and Execute your Conference

- Planning
- Execution
- Manage Feedback

### Planning

There are a few keys to effective planning materials.  They should be easy to use, non-exclusive, and they should allow you to clone projects.  Below are some tools we use for our conferences.

- Mavenlink
    - use Mavenlink as an overall project management system.  Syncs with Google Apps.
- Dropbox
    - use Dropbox as a collaborative document store for your team
- Jira
    - use Jira as a project management system for contracts or colleagues who only own one item for your conferences, such as design and email campains
    - Google Apps
    - use google apps to create calander invites for your speakers and staff, elimating document loss and confusion
- Fiesta.cc
    - create mailing lists easily for your speakers, sponsors and staff.
- Wiki Pages
    - Create wiki pages for your speakers, sponsors and staff to communicate key information in a living document.
- Eventbrite
    - use eventbrite for registration and ticket sales.  Eventbrite is easy to use with almost any CMS and has standard promotional templates for groups without the need for customizeable options.
- Twitter
    - use twitter to promote your event and speakers, and on day of to tweet content in real time
- Qrious
    - use qrious to help your attendees network with each other, to autogenerate nametags with unique QRC (it syncs with eventbrite), and to provide your sponsors with leads.
- [Guidebook]
    - use guidebook for your mobile agenda and conference information needs

### Execution

One drawback to planning conferences in multiple locations is that you often have no control over your environment, and limited knowledge of your resources until the day of the conference.  Here are some ways to help keep your conference environment consistent:

- Wifi Needs:
    - Order wired lines
        - Presenters can use them and you can use them to connect a custom wireless network
    - Meraki
        - cloud managed wireless solutions put control of conference wifi in your hands
            - Tips:
            - Find out the conferences up bandwidth
            - Kill the conference's house wifi so you are not fighting with them
            - Get informed before you buy - Meraki has many different solutions for many different conferences
    - Walkie Talkies
        - These help your staff communicate immediately.  Simple ones work for most environments.  #protip: get on the same channel as your A/V or catering crew, and you will know immediately when there is a problem on your end or the venues
    - "Go" Bag:

        - Fill your "go" bag with these goodies and refresh immediately after a conference, and you will never be scrambling for sharpies again!
            - scissors, tape, med kit, twine, extra stickie labels, pants, pens, sharpies, batteries, usb keys, extra charges and extension cords, clickers and mini-display -> VGA adaptors
    - Film Equipment (try B&H for your needs!)
        - Record your speakers to add value to your website, or just to provide internal feedback, and avoid the cost of a film crew and the uncertainty that comes from having to use different film crews in different cities!
        - We like: Sony HXR-MC50U Ultra Compact Pro AVCHD Camcorder,Sennheiser EW112-p G3 Camera Mount Wireless Microphone System with ME2
          Lavalier Mic (G: 566-608MHz), Sony VCT-60AV Tripod with Remote in Grip
        - #protip: buy a super durable external hard drive to back up your video immediately
    - Presentation Equipment:
        - Buy 3 - 5 laptops to use at conferences, and load them with presentation software.  This allows you to pre set hibernate settings, resolution etc and keeps speaker transitions smooth

## Manage Feedback

Collection and managing feedback presents several difficulties.  You want your feedback to be in depth, but you also want it to be low entry barrier, and you want your attendees to engage in feedback while it is fresh in their minds.  Here are some tools we use.

- Twitter
    - Set up a twitter handle dedicated to your conferences.  Ask people to tweet at you with feedback, and use DM to engage in dialogue.  This creates a low entry barrier method of getting feedback with potential for more in depth conversation, and it prevents one negative comment (or even just a silly comment) from turning into spam on your #event twitter feed.
- Guidebook
    - Set up low entry barrier questions on guidebook with general multiple choice questions, and a link to your full survey
- [SurveyMonkey]
    - Use survey monkey to create a conference survey that ecompasses every talk, meal and any other aspect of your conference for complete feedback.  Use giveaways to encourage participation
- JIRA
    - Use JIRA to encourage and promote internal feedback.  Your colleagues are probably passionate about your work and have a lot to say, but may feel intimidated by addressing you directly or even feel badly for providing criticism on something you've worked very hard on.  Start general and get more specific based on what feedback you get the most!

# MongoDB Bangalore 2012 Speaker Info


- Dates and Deadlines
- General Information
- Location
- Slide and Presentation Review
- Equipment
- Presentations


## Dates and Deadlines

| Date | Description |
|---|---|
| | |
| | |
| | |

- Show up at least 10 minutes prior to the start of your talk.

## General Information

URL/Dates
Twitter: #

| Time | Description |
|---|---|
| | |
| | |
| | |

## Location

| Conference Location | Speaker Dinner Location | After Party Location |
|---|---|---|
| Link, Address | | |
| directions, contact | directions, contact | |

## Slide and Presentation Review

- Submitted your slides to speakerinfo@10gen.com.
  - An outline or partially finished content is totally fine; we just want to make sure we get you the feedback you need in a timely fashion. PowerPoint, KeyNote, Prezi, or PDF are all acceptable formats.
- We are here to help! - we are happy to set up a session (Skype, hangout, call) to go through your presentation.

## Equipment

### Provided

- Projector, screen, and mic for speaker
- MacBook Mini Display port - VGA adaptor
- Wireless Clickers/Pointers - please do not take the USB adaptor with you on accident!

### To Bring:

- A Laptop for your presentation
- A VGA adaptor for anything that is NOT a Mac mini display port
- Conference wifi is always unreliable so we recommend against any live demos that require Internet

## Presentations

- Each presenter will have a 40 minute session time
- Please factor your Q&A time into this
- Each session has a short break between sessions to allow attendees to transition
- We have staff on hand to make sure you start and end on time.
- the session schedule can be viewed at

PresentationTips

### Filming

**We Are Filming You!**

- Don’t wear stripes or busy print
- Do repeat questions from the audience before answering them.
- Do announce results if you poll the audience - such as “raise your hand if you use MongoDB”. Your next comments will much more relevant to viewers

# MongoDB Beijing 2012 Speaker Info


- Dates and Deadlines
- General Information
- Location
- Slide and Presentation Review
- Equipment
- Presentations


## Dates and Deadlines

| Date | Description |
|---|---|
| | |
| | |
| | |

- Show up at least 10 minutes prior to the start of your talk.

## General Information

URL/Dates
Twitter: #

| Time | Description |
|---|---|
| | |
| | |
| | |
| | |

## Location

| Conference Location | Speaker Dinner Location | After Party Location |
|---|---|---|
| Link, Address | | |
| directions, contact | directions, contact | |

## Slide and Presentation Review

- Submitted your slides to speakerinfo@10gen.com.
    - An outline or partially finished content is totally fine; we just want to make sure we get you the feedback you need in a timely fashion. PowerPoint, KeyNote, Prezi, or PDF are all acceptable formats.
- We are here to help! - we are happy to set up a session (Skype, hangout, call) to go through your presentation.

## Equipment

### Provided

- Projector, screen, and mic for speaker
- MacBook Mini Display port - VGA adaptor
- Wireless Clickers/Pointers - please do not take the USB adaptor with you on accident!

### To Bring:

- A Laptop for your presentation
- A VGA adaptor for anything that is NOT a Mac mini display port
- Conference wifi is always unreliable so we recommend against any live demos that require Internet

## Presentations

- Each presenter will have a 40 minute session time
- Please factor your Q&A time into this
- Each session has a short break between sessions to allow attendees to transition
- We have staff on hand to make sure you start and end on time.
- the session schedule can be viewed at

PresentationTips

### Filming

**We Are Filming You!**

- Don’t wear stripes or busy print
- Do repeat questions from the audience before answering them.
- Do announce results if you poll the audience - such as “raise your hand if you use MongoDB”. Your next comments will much more relevant to viewers

# MongoDB Boston 2012 Speaker Info


- Dates and Deadlines
- General Information
- Location
- Slide and Presentation Review
- Equipment
- Presentations


## Dates and Deadlines

| Date | Description |
|---|---|
| | |
| | |
| | |

- Show up at least 10 minutes prior to the start of your talk.

## General Information

URL/Dates
Twitter: #

| Time | Description |
|---|---|
| | |
| | |
| | |
| | |

## Location

| Conference Location | Speaker Dinner Location | After Party Location |
|---|---|---|
| Link, Address | | |
| directions, contact | directions, contact | |

## Slide and Presentation Review

- Submitted your slides to speakerinfo@10gen.com.
    - An outline or partially finished content is totally fine; we just want to make sure we get you the feedback you need in a timely fashion. PowerPoint, KeyNote, Prezi, or PDF are all acceptable formats.
- We are here to help! - we are happy to set up a session (Skype, hangout, call) to go through your presentation.

## Equipment

### Provided

- Projector, screen, and mic for speaker
- MacBook Mini Display port - VGA adaptor
- Wireless Clickers/Pointers - please do not take the USB adaptor with you on accident!

### To Bring:

- A Laptop for your presentation
- A VGA adaptor for anything that is NOT a Mac mini display port
- Conference wifi is always unreliable so we recommend against any live demos that require Internet

## Presentations

- Each presenter will have a 40 minute session time
- Please factor your Q&A time into this
- Each session has a short break between sessions to allow attendees to transition
- We have staff on hand to make sure you start and end on time.
- the session schedule can be viewed at

PresentationTips

### Filming

**We Are Filming You!**

- Don't wear stripes or busy print
- Do repeat questions from the audience before answering them.
- Do announce results if you poll the audience - such as "raise your hand if you use MongoDB". Your next comments will much more relevant to viewers

# MongoDB Chicago 2012 Speaker Info


- Dates and Deadlines
- General Information
- Location
- Slide and Presentation Review
- Equipment
- Presentations


## Dates and Deadlines

| Date | Description |
|---|---|
| | |
| | |
| | |

- Show up at least 10 minutes prior to the start of your talk.

## General Information

URL/Dates
Twitter: #

| Time | Description |
|---|---|
| | |
| | |
| | |
| | |

## Location

| Conference Location | Speaker Dinner Location | After Party Location |
|---|---|---|
| Link, Address | | |
| directions, contact | directions, contact | |

## Slide and Presentation Review

- Submitted your slides to speakerinfo@10gen.com.
    - An outline or partially finished content is totally fine; we just want to make sure we get you the feedback you need in a timely fashion. PowerPoint, KeyNote, Prezi, or PDF are all acceptable formats.
- We are here to help! - we are happy to set up a session (Skype, hangout, call) to go through your presentation.

## Equipment

### Provided

- Projector, screen, and mic for speaker
- MacBook Mini Display port - VGA adaptor
- Wireless Clickers/Pointers - please do not take the USB adaptor with you on accident!

### To Bring:

- A Laptop for your presentation
- A VGA adaptor for anything that is NOT a Mac mini display port
- Conference wifi is always unreliable so we recommend against any live demos that require Internet

## Presentations

- Each presenter will have a 40 minute session time
- Please factor your Q&A time into this
- Each session has a short break between sessions to allow attendees to transition
- We have staff on hand to make sure you start and end on time.
- the session schedule can be viewed at

PresentationTips

### Filming

**We Are Filming You!**

- Don’t wear stripes or busy print
- Do repeat questions from the audience before answering them.
- Do announce results if you poll the audience - such as “raise your hand if you use MongoDB”. Your next comments will much more relevant to viewers

# MongoDB Melbourne 2012 Speaker Info


- Dates and Deadlines
- General Information
- Location
- Slide and Presentation Review
- Equipment
- Presentations


## Dates and Deadlines

| Date | Description |
|---|---|

| | |
|---|---|
| | |
| | |

- Show up at least 10 minutes prior to the start of your talk.

## General Information

URL/Dates
Twitter: #

| Time | Description |
|---|---|
| | |
| | |
| | |
| | |

## Location

| Conference Location | Speaker Dinner Location | After Party Location |
|---|---|---|
| Link, Address | | |
| directions, contact | directions, contact | |

## Slide and Presentation Review

- Submitted your slides to speakerinfo@10gen.com.
    - An outline or partially finished content is totally fine; we just want to make sure we get you the feedback you need in a timely fashion. PowerPoint, KeyNote, Prezi, or PDF are all acceptable formats.
- We are here to help! - we are happy to set up a session (Skype, hangout, call) to go through your presentation.

## Equipment

### Provided

- Projector, screen, and mic for speaker
- MacBook Mini Display port - VGA adaptor
- Wireless Clickers/Pointers - please do not take the USB adaptor with you on accident!

### To Bring:

- A Laptop for your presentation
- A VGA adaptor for anything that is NOT a Mac mini display port
- Conference wifi is always unreliable so we recommend against any live demos that require Internet

## Presentations

- Each presenter will have a 40 minute session time
- Please factor your Q&A time into this
- Each session has a short break between sessions to allow attendees to transition
- We have staff on hand to make sure you start and end on time.
- the session schedule can be viewed at

PresentationTips

### Filming

**We Are Filming You!**

- Don’t wear stripes or busy print
- Do repeat questions from the audience before answering them.
- Do announce results if you poll the audience - such as “raise your hand if you use MongoDB”. Your next comments will much more relevant to viewers

# MongoDB Munich 2012 Speaker Info


- Dates and Deadlines
- General Information
- Location
- Slide and Presentation Review
- Equipment
- Presentations


## Dates and Deadlines

| Date | Description |
|---|---|
| | |
| | |
| | |

- Show up at least 10 minutes prior to the start of your talk.

## General Information

URL/Dates
Twitter: #

| Time | Description |
|---|---|
| | |
| | |
| | |
| | |

## Location

| Conference Location | Speaker Dinner Location | After Party Location |
|---|---|---|
| Link, Address | | |
| directions, contact | directions, contact | |

## Slide and Presentation Review

- Submitted your slides to speakerinfo@10gen.com.
    - An outline or partially finished content is totally fine; we just want to make sure we get you the feedback you need in a timely fashion. PowerPoint, KeyNote, Prezi, or PDF are all acceptable formats.
- We are here to help! - we are happy to set up a session (Skype, hangout, call) to go through your presentation.

## Equipment

### Provided

- Projector, screen, and mic for speaker
- MacBook Mini Display port - VGA adaptor
- Wireless Clickers/Pointers - please do not take the USB adaptor with you on accident!

### To Bring:

- A Laptop for your presentation
- A VGA adaptor for anything that is NOT a Mac mini display port
- Conference wifi is always unreliable so we recommend against any live demos that require Internet

## Presentations

- Each presenter will have a 40 minute session time
- Please factor your Q&A time into this
- Each session has a short break between sessions to allow attendees to transition
- We have staff on hand to make sure you start and end on time.
- the session schedule can be viewed at

PresentationTips

### Filming

**We Are Filming You!**

- Don't wear stripes or busy print
- Do repeat questions from the audience before answering them.
- Do announce results if you poll the audience - such as "raise your hand if you use MongoDB". Your next comments will much more relevant to viewers

# MongoDB Pune 2012 Speaker Info


- Dates and Deadlines
- General Information
- Location
- Slide and Presentation Review
- Equipment
- Presentations


## Dates and Deadlines

| Date | Description |
|---|---|
| | |
| | |
| | |

- Show up at least 10 minutes prior to the start of your talk.

## General Information

URL/Dates
Twitter: #

| Time | Description |
|---|---|
| | |
| | |
| | |
| | |

## Location

| Conference Location | Speaker Dinner Location | After Party Location |
|---|---|---|
| Link, Address | | |
| directions, contact | directions, contact | |

## Slide and Presentation Review

- Submitted your slides to speakerinfo@10gen.com.
    - An outline or partially finished content is totally fine; we just want to make sure we get you the feedback you need in a timely fashion. PowerPoint, KeyNote, Prezi, or PDF are all acceptable formats.
- We are here to help! - we are happy to set up a session (Skype, hangout, call) to go through your presentation.

## Equipment

### Provided

- Projector, screen, and mic for speaker
- MacBook Mini Display port - VGA adaptor
- Wireless Clickers/Pointers - please do not take the USB adaptor with you on accident!

### To Bring:

- A Laptop for your presentation
- A VGA adaptor for anything that is NOT a Mac mini display port
- Conference wifi is always unreliable so we recommend against any live demos that require Internet

## Presentations

- Each presenter will have a 40 minute session time
- Please factor your Q&A time into this
- Each session has a short break between sessions to allow attendees to transition
- We have staff on hand to make sure you start and end on time.
- the session schedule can be viewed at

PresentationTips

### Filming

**We Are Filming You!**

- Don’t wear stripes or busy print
- Do repeat questions from the audience before answering them.
- Do announce results if you poll the audience - such as “raise your hand if you use MongoDB”. Your next comments will much more relevant to viewers

# MongoDB Seattle 2012 Speaker Info


- Dates and Deadlines
- General Information
- Location
- Slide and Presentation Review
- Equipment
- Presentations


## Dates and Deadlines

| Date | Description |
|---|---|
| | |

| | |
|---|---|
| | |

- Show up at least 10 minutes prior to the start of your talk.

## General Information

URL/Dates
Twitter: #

| Time | Description |
|---|---|
| | |
| | |
| | |
| | |

## Location

| Conference Location | Speaker Dinner Location | After Party Location |
|---|---|---|
| Link, Address | | |
| directions, contact | directions, contact | |

## Slide and Presentation Review

- Submitted your slides to speakerinfo@10gen.com.
    - An outline or partially finished content is totally fine; we just want to make sure we get you the feedback you need in a timely fashion. PowerPoint, KeyNote, Prezi, or PDF are all acceptable formats.
- We are here to help! - we are happy to set up a session (Skype, hangout, call) to go through your presentation.

## Equipment

### Provided

- Projector, screen, and mic for speaker
- MacBook Mini Display port - VGA adaptor
- Wireless Clickers/Pointers - please do not take the USB adaptor with you on accident!

### To Bring:

- A Laptop for your presentation
- A VGA adaptor for anything that is NOT a Mac mini display port
- Conference wifi is always unreliable so we recommend against any live demos that require Internet

## Presentations

- Each presenter will have a 40 minute session time
- Please factor your Q&A time into this
- Each session has a short break between sessions to allow attendees to transition
- We have staff on hand to make sure you start and end on time.
- the session schedule can be viewed at

PresentationTips

### Filming

**We Are Filming You!**

- Don’t wear stripes or busy print
- Do repeat questions from the audience before answering them.
- Do announce results if you poll the audience - such as “raise your hand if you use MongoDB”. Your next comments will much more relevant to viewers

# MongoDB Sydney 2012 Speaker Info


- Dates and Deadlines
- General Information
- Location
- Slide and Presentation Review
- Equipment
- Presentations


## Dates and Deadlines

| Date | Description |
|---|---|
| | |
| | |
| | |

- Show up at least 10 minutes prior to the start of your talk.

## General Information

URL/Dates
Twitter: #

| Time | Description |
|---|---|
| | |
| | |
| | |
| | |

## Location

| Conference Location | Speaker Dinner Location | After Party Location |
|---|---|---|
| Link, Address | | |
| directions, contact | directions, contact | |

## Slide and Presentation Review

- Submitted your slides to speakerinfo@10gen.com.
    - An outline or partially finished content is totally fine; we just want to make sure we get you the feedback you need in a timely fashion. PowerPoint, KeyNote, Prezi, or PDF are all acceptable formats.
- We are here to help! - we are happy to set up a session (Skype, hangout, call) to go through your presentation.

## Equipment

### Provided

- Projector, screen, and mic for speaker
- MacBook Mini Display port - VGA adaptor

- Wireless Clickers/Pointers - please do not take the USB adaptor with you on accident!

### To Bring:

- A Laptop for your presentation
- A VGA adaptor for anything that is NOT a Mac mini display port
- Conference wifi is always unreliable so we recommend against any live demos that require Internet

## Presentations

- Each presenter will have a 40 minute session time
- Please factor your Q&A time into this
- Each session has a short break between sessions to allow attendees to transition
- We have staff on hand to make sure you start and end on time.
- the session schedule can be viewed at

PresentationTips

### Filming

**We Are Filming You!**

- Don't wear stripes or busy print
- Do repeat questions from the audience before answering them.
- Do announce results if you poll the audience - such as "raise your hand if you use MongoDB". Your next comments will much more relevant to viewers

# MongoDB Tokyo 2012 Speaker Info


- Dates and Deadlines
- General Information
- Location
- Slide and Presentation Review
- Equipment
- Presentations


## Dates and Deadlines

| Date | Description |
|---|---|
| | |
| | |
| | |

- Show up at least 10 minutes prior to the start of your talk.

## General Information

URL/Dates
Twitter: #

| Time | Description |
|---|---|
| | |
| | |
| | |
| | |

## Location

| Conference Location | Speaker Dinner Location | After Party Location |
|---|---|---|
| Link, Address | | |
| directions, contact | directions, contact | |

## Slide and Presentation Review

- Submitted your slides to speakerinfo@10gen.com.
    - An outline or partially finished content is totally fine; we just want to make sure we get you the feedback you need in a timely fashion. PowerPoint, KeyNote, Prezi, or PDF are all acceptable formats.
- We are here to help! - we are happy to set up a session (Skype, hangout, call) to go through your presentation.

## Equipment

### Provided

- Projector, screen, and mic for speaker
- MacBook Mini Display port - VGA adaptor
- Wireless Clickers/Pointers - please do not take the USB adaptor with you on accident!

### To Bring:

- A Laptop for your presentation
- A VGA adaptor for anything that is NOT a Mac mini display port
- Conference wifi is always unreliable so we recommend against any live demos that require Internet

## Presentations

- Each presenter will have a 40 minute session time
- Please factor your Q&A time into this
- Each session has a short break between sessions to allow attendees to transition
- We have staff on hand to make sure you start and end on time.
- the session schedule can be viewed at

PresentationTips

### Filming

**We Are Filming You!**

- Don't wear stripes or busy print
- Do repeat questions from the audience before answering them.
- Do announce results if you poll the audience - such as "raise your hand if you use MongoDB". Your next comments will much more relevant to viewers

# MongoDC 2012 Sponsor Info

- 3 Leaf Sponsors Dates and Deadlines
- 2  Leaf Sponsors Dates and Deadlines
- 1  Leaf Sponsors Dates and Deadlines
- Media Partner Sponsors Dates and Deadlines
- General Information
- Location
- Logo Specs
- Shipping Information

## 3 Leaf Sponsors Dates and Deadlines

### Included:

- Linked logo on website, conference emails and collateral

- 50 word message in "Reminder" Email
- 150 word message in "Thank You" Email
- 6 conference passes for your table
- 6 conference passes for your community

| Date | Description |
|---|---|
| June 15th | Submit Reminder and Thank You email copy to sponsor@10gen.com |
| June 15th | Register your staff with eventbrite (promotional code "DCSponsor") |
| June 21st | RSVP for speaker and sponsor dinner at Gordon Biersch |
| June 21st | Hand out your free community passes on eventbrite with the code "CompanyDC" (so 10gen would be "10genDC") |
| June 25th | Have your boxes arrive at venue between 9am and 5pm |
| June 25th | Speaker and sponsor dinner at Gordon Biersch, 6:30pm |
| June 26th | Conference day |

## 2 Leaf Sponsors Dates and Deadlines

### Included:

- Linked logo on website, conference emails and collateral
- 50 word message in "Reminder" Email
- 150 word message in "Thank You" Email
- 6 conference passes for your table
- 6 conference passes for your community

| Date | Description |
|---|---|
| June 15th | Submit Reminder and Thank You email copy to sponsor@10gen.com |
| June 15th | Register with eventbrite (promotional code "DCSponsor") |
| June 21st | RSVP for speaker and sponsor dinner at Gordon Biersch |
| June 21st | Hand out your free community passes on eventbrite with the code "CompanyDC" (so 10gen would be "10genDC") |
| June 25th | Have your boxes arrive at venue between 9am and 5pm |
| June 25th | Speaker and sponsor dinner at Gordon Biersch, 6:30pm |
| June 26th | Conference day |

## 1 Leaf Sponsors Dates and Deadlines

### Included:

- Linked logo on conference emails, website and collateral
- 50 word message in "Reminder" Email
- 150 word message in "Thank You" Email
- 3 conference passes for your community

| Date | Description |
|---|---|
| June 21st | Hand out your free community passes on eventbrite with the code "CompanyDC" (so 10gen would be "10genDC") |
| June 21st | RSVP for speaker and sponsor dinner at Gordon Biersch |
| June 25th | Have your boxes arrive at venue between 9am and 5pm |
| June 25th | Speaker and sponsor dinner at Gordon Biersch, 6:30pm |
| June 26th | Conference day |

## Media Partner Sponsors Dates and Deadlines

### Included:

- Linked logo on conference emails, website, and collateral

| Date | Description |
|---|---|
| June 15th | Register with eventbrite (promotional code 'DCSponsor') |
| June 21st | RSVP for speaker and sponsor dinner at Gordon Biersch |
| June 25th | Have your boxes arrive at venue between 9am and 5pm |
| June 25th | Speaker and sponsor dinner at Gordon Biersch, 6:30pm |
| June 26th | Conference day |

## General Information

Public Event URL **June 26**, 2012
Official Twitter Hashtag: **#MongoDC**

| Time | Description |
|---|---|
| 7:00 am | Sponsor Table Set up (Ends at 8:30 |
| 8:00 am | Registration start |
| 8:00 am | Breakfast (ends at 10) |
| 9:15 am | Session start |
| 1:00 pm | Lunch (ends at 2) |
| All Day | Coffee Service |

## Location

| Conference Location | Speaker Dinner Location |
|---|---|
| Woolly Mammoth Theatre | Gordon Biersch |
| 641 D Street, NW | 900 F Street, NW |
| Washington, DC 20004 | Washington, DC 20004 |
| (202) 289-2443 | (202) 783-5454 |
| Get Detailed Map and Directions for Conference | Map for Speaker Dinner |

## Logo Specs

-Full color vector version (or high res version, if vector version not available)

-Knockout vector version, preferably all white

-230px wide PNG or JPEG (height dependent on shape of your trademark). Please include white space around trademark in the file.

## Shipping Information

### Detailed Shipping Information

Please ship as little as possible to the venue as there is very little holding space there. Arrange for it to arrive on Friday the 22nd or Monday the

25th between 10am and 6pm, as nobody will be there to receive the package outside of those hours.

Attention: Zacory Boatwright/10gen
Woolly Mammoth Theatre
641 D Street, NW
Washington, DC 20004

Please also be aware that we have no palette dolly. All shipments must be able to be broken up into smaller parts that may be moved by one person. Please keep in mind that our standard business hours (i.e. best times for delivery) would be Monday through Friday, 10 AM to 6 PM.

# MongoNYC 2013 Speaker Info


- Dates and Deadlines
- General Information
- Location
- Slide and Presentation Review
- Equipment
- Presentations


## Dates and Deadlines

| Date | Description |
|---|---|
| | |
| | |
| | |

- Show up at least 10 minutes prior to the start of your talk.

## General Information

URL/Dates
Twitter: #

| Time | Description |
|---|---|
| | |
| | |
| | |
| | |

## Location

| Conference Location | Speaker Dinner Location | After Party Location |
|---|---|---|
| Link, Address | | |
| directions, contact | directions, contact | |

## Slide and Presentation Review

- Submitted your slides to speakerinfo@10gen.com.
    - An outline or partially finished content is totally fine; we just want to make sure we get you the feedback you need in a timely fashion. PowerPoint, KeyNote, Prezi, or PDF are all acceptable formats.
- We are here to help! - we are happy to set up a session (Skype, hangout, call) to go through your presentation.

## Equipment

### Provided

- Projector, screen, and mic for speaker
- MacBook Mini Display port - VGA adaptor
- Wireless Clickers/Pointers - please do not take the USB adaptor with you on accident!

### To Bring:

- A Laptop for your presentation
- A VGA adaptor for anything that is NOT a Mac mini display port
- Conference wifi is always unreliable so we recommend against any live demos that require Internet

## Presentations

- Each presenter will have a 40 minute session time
- Please factor your Q&A time into this
- Each session has a short break between sessions to allow attendees to transition
- We have staff on hand to make sure you start and end on time.
- the session schedule can be viewed at

PresentationTips

### Filming

**We Are Filming You!**

- Don't wear stripes or busy print
- Do repeat questions from the audience before answering them.
- Do announce results if you poll the audience - such as "raise your hand if you use MongoDB". Your next comments will much more relevant to viewers

# MongoSF 2013 Speaker Info


- Dates and Deadlines
- General Information
- Location
- Slide and Presentation Review
- Equipment
- Presentations


## Dates and Deadlines

| Date | Description |
|---|---|
| | |
| | |
| | |

- Show up at least 10 minutes prior to the start of your talk.

## General Information

URL/Dates
Twitter: #

| Time | Description |
|---|---|
| | |
| | |
| | |
| | |

## Location

| Conference Location | Speaker Dinner Location | After Party Location |
|---|---|---|
| Link, Address | | |
| directions, contact | directions, contact | |

## Slide and Presentation Review

- Submitted your slides to speakerinfo@10gen.com.
    - An outline or partially finished content is totally fine; we just want to make sure we get you the feedback you need in a timely fashion. PowerPoint, KeyNote, Prezi, or PDF are all acceptable formats.
- We are here to help! - we are happy to set up a session (Skype, hangout, call) to go through your presentation.

## Equipment

### Provided

- Projector, screen, and mic for speaker
- MacBook Mini Display port - VGA adaptor
- Wireless Clickers/Pointers - please do not take the USB adaptor with you on accident!

### To Bring:

- A Laptop for your presentation
- A VGA adaptor for anything that is NOT a Mac mini display port
- Conference wifi is always unreliable so we recommend against any live demos that require Internet

## Presentations

- Each presenter will have a 40 minute session time
- Please factor your Q&A time into this
- Each session has a short break between sessions to allow attendees to transition
- We have staff on hand to make sure you start and end on time.
- the session schedule can be viewed at

PresentationTips

### Filming

**We Are Filming You!**

- Don’t wear stripes or busy print
- Do repeat questions from the audience before answering them.
- Do announce results if you poll the audience - such as “raise your hand if you use MongoDB”. Your next comments will much more relevant to viewers

# MongoSV 2012 Speaker Info


- Dates and Deadlines
- General Information
- Location
- Slide and Presentation Review
- Equipment
- Presentations


## Dates and Deadlines

| Date | Description |
|---|---|

| | |
|---|---|
| | |
| | |

- Show up at least 10 minutes prior to the start of your talk.

## General Information

URL/Dates
Twitter: #

| Time | Description |
|---|---|
| | |
| | |
| | |
| | |

## Location

| Conference Location | Speaker Dinner Location | After Party Location |
|---|---|---|
| Link, Address | | |
| directions, contact | directions, contact | |

## Slide and Presentation Review

- Submitted your slides to speakerinfo@10gen.com.
    - An outline or partially finished content is totally fine; we just want to make sure we get you the feedback you need in a timely fashion. PowerPoint, KeyNote, Prezi, or PDF are all acceptable formats.
- We are here to help! - we are happy to set up a session (Skype, hangout, call) to go through your presentation.

## Equipment

### Provided

- Projector, screen, and mic for speaker
- MacBook Mini Display port - VGA adaptor
- Wireless Clickers/Pointers - please do not take the USB adaptor with you on accident!

### To Bring:

- A Laptop for your presentation
- A VGA adaptor for anything that is NOT a Mac mini display port
- Conference wifi is always unreliable so we recommend against any live demos that require Internet

## Presentations

- Each presenter will have a 40 minute session time
- Please factor your Q&A time into this
- Each session has a short break between sessions to allow attendees to transition
- We have staff on hand to make sure you start and end on time.
- the session schedule can be viewed at

PresentationTips

### Filming

**We Are Filming You!**

- Don’t wear stripes or busy print
- Do repeat questions from the audience before answering them.
- Do announce results if you poll the audience - such as “raise your hand if you use MongoDB”. Your next comments will much more relevant to viewers

# PresentationTips

## Slides

- Be precise in your slides - We will make them available on our website after the conference, so make sure they are correct and to the point.
- Be visual - a clever picture, easy to read chart, or even simple bullet points convey clear information.
- Use Big Font! the rooms are large and it is always hard to see from the back of the room
- Avoid including full text such as sentences and paragraphs in your slides.
- Know your audience -The audience is very technical, and generally knowledgeable about MongoDB.
- We will briefly introduce all of the sessions at the beginning of the event to give attendees an idea of what sessions their time would best be spent attending. Please familiarize yourself with the sessions as well.
- Turn off Hibernate! You don’t want your computer to go to sleep in the middle of your preso ... or your audience might as well

### Logistics

- **Arrive 10 minutes early** for your presentation; This gives everyone time to make sure that you and your equipment are ready to go! We will have a room monitor run through a check list to set you up.
- We will have a room monitor in each room, so if you need something, say something.
- Staging: Presenters in SkyTop, PennTop North and South, and the Madison will be presenting from a stage and podium. Presenters in Paris or London will be presenting from a podium.
- Projector and screen: You will be connecting with a Mac mini display adaptor to a VGA connection. If you need a different adaptor for your laptop, please bring it with you.
- Mic's: A room monitor will equip with a lavalier (clip on) when you arrive in your session room.
- Internet connectivity: Please do not rely on wifi for demos as we cannot guarantee it will work properly.
- Power: we will have power running to your podium. Please make sure your machine is fully charged anyway!

## Questions

- If there is a microphone, make sure to wait for the person to get it, and use it.
- Repeat or rephrase the question to confirm it is what they are asking and everyone hears it
- If the question is off-topic or lengthy, table-it or ask the person to find you after the presentation
- Move towards the person and away from the podium to engage the audience

# Home

**The new MongoDB Manual is a complete rewrite of the MongoDB documentation that will eventually replace much of this site.**

You can view the latest version at docs.mongodb.org, and contribute on github and Jira.

## Getting Started

- Quickstart - how to install
- Tutorial - quick tutorial showing examples of manipulation of a database from the mongo shell
- SQL to Mongo Mapping Chart

## Development

- Developer Manual

See the documentation below for the driver for your application's programming language of choice:

- C | C# | C++ | C# & .NET | ColdFusion | Erlang | Haskell | Factor
- Java | Javascript | PHP | Python | Ruby | Perl | More...

## Production / Ops

- Production Notes
- Replication | Sharding
- Security | Backups
- Hosting
- MongoDB Monitoring Service (MMS) is a free way to monitor your mongodb servers

## Support

- Free support forum: groups.google.com/group/mongodb-user
- IRC: irc.freenode.net/#mongodb
- Bug DB: jira.mongodb.org
- Commercial support | Training | Consulting

## MongoDB Conferences

Washington DC - June 26
Sao Paulo - July 13

## Community

- Slides and Video
- Events | Blog | Articles | Twitter | Forum | MongoDB Masters | Facebook | LinkedIn | Job Board
- User groups: NY, SF, DC, Chicago, London, Stockholm and more.
- Your Go-To Guide to Running a MongoDB User Group

## Meta

- Use Cases | Philosophy | License | Events

## Translations

### New Docs (in Progress)

- |

### Existing Docs

- Español | Português | | |

Please help translate the documentation! Email docs@10gen.com and tell us which language you can translate.

# Introduction

> *MongoDB wasn't designed in a lab. We built MongoDB from our own experiences building large scale, high availability, robust systems. We didn't start from scratch, we really tried to figure out what was broken, and tackle that. So the way I think about MongoDB is that if you take MySql, and change the data model from relational to document based, you get a lot of great features: embedded docs for speed, manageability, agile development with schema-less databases, easier horizontal scalability because joins aren't as important. There are lots of things that work great in relational databases: indexes, dynamic queries and updates to name a few, and we haven't changed much there. For example, the way you design your indexes in MongoDB should be exactly the way you do it in MySql or Oracle, you just have the option of indexing an embedded field.*
>
> *– Eliot Horowitz, 10gen CTO and Co-founder*

## Why MongoDB?

- **Document-oriented**
  - Documents (objects) map nicely to programming language data types
  - Embedded documents and arrays reduce need for joins
  - Dynamically-typed (schemaless) for easy schema evolution
  - No joins and no multi-document transactions for high performance and easy scalability
- **High performance**
  - No joins and embedding makes reads and writes fast
  - Indexes including indexing of keys from embedded documents and arrays
  - Optional streaming writes (no acknowledgements)
- **High availability**
  - Replicated servers with automatic master failover
- **Easy scalability**
  - Automatic sharding (auto-partitioning of data across servers)
    - Reads and writes are distributed over shards
    - No joins or multi-document transactions make distributed queries easy and fast
  - Eventually-consistent reads can be distributed over replicated servers
- **Rich query language**

## Large MongoDB deployment

1. One or more shards, each shard holds a portion of the total data (managed automatically). Reads and writes are automatically routed to the appropriate shard(s). Each shard is backed by a replica set – which just holds the data for that shard.

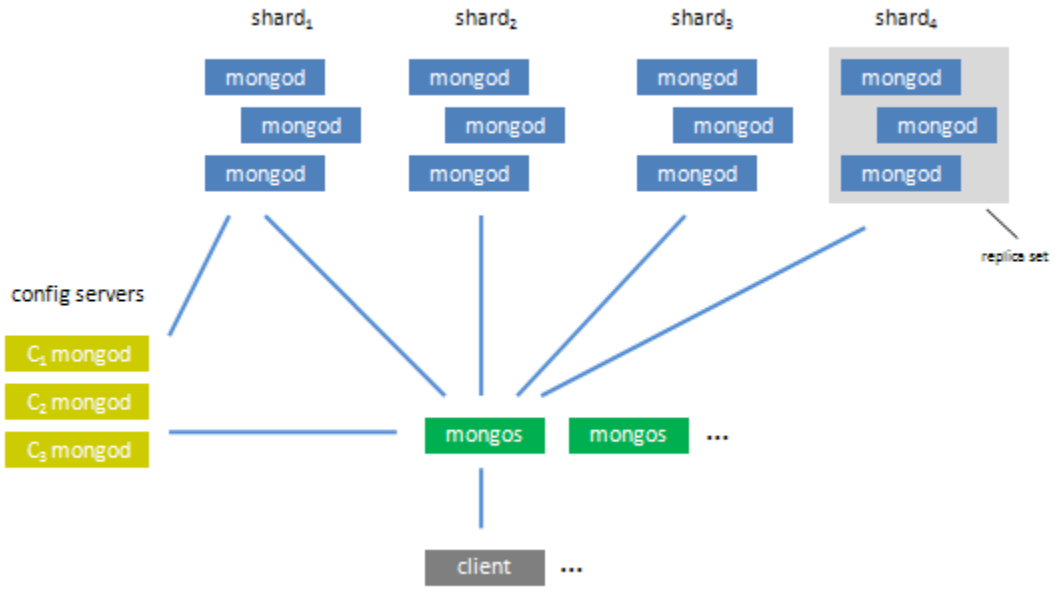
A replica set is one or more servers, each holding copies of the same data. At any given time one is primary and the rest are secondaries. If the primary goes down one of the secondaries takes over automatically as primary. All writes and consistent reads go to the primary, and all eventually consistent reads are distributed amongst all the secondaries.

2. Multiple config servers, each one holds a copy of the meta data indicating which data lives on which shard.

3. One or more routers, each one acts as a server for one or more clients. Clients issue queries/updates to a router and the router routes them to the appropriate shard while consulting the config servers.

4. One or more clients, each one is (part of) the user's application and issues commands to a router via the mongo client library (driver) for its language.

**`mongod`** is the server program (data or config). **`mongos`** is the router program.




### Small deployment (no partitioning)

1. One replica set (automatic failover), or one server with zero or more slaves (no automatic failover).

2. One or more clients issuing commands to the replica set as a whole or the single master (the driver will manage which server in the replica set to send to).

## Mongo data model

- A Mongo system (see deployment above) holds a set of databases
- A **database** holds a set of collections
- A **collection** holds a set of documents
- A **document** is a set of fields
- A **field** is a key-value pair
- A **key** is a name (string)
- A **value** is a
    - basic type like string, integer, float, timestamp, binary, etc.,
    - a document, or
    - an array of values

## Mongo query language

To retrieve certain documents from a db collection, you supply a query document containing the fields the desired documents should match. For example, `{name: {first: 'John', last: 'Doe'}}` will match all documents in the collection with name of John Doe. Likewise, `{name.last: 'Doe'}` will match all documents with last name of Doe. Also, `{name.last: /^D/}` will match all documents with last name starting with 'D' (regular expression match).

Queries will also match inside embedded arrays. For example, `{keywords: 'storage'}` will match all documents with 'storage' in its keywords array. Likewise, `{keywords: {$in: ['storage', 'DBMS']}}` will match all documents with 'storage' or 'DBMS' in its keywords array.

If you have lots of documents in a collection and you want to make a query fast then build an index for that query. For example, `ensureIndex({name.last: 1})` or `ensureIndex({keywords: 1})`. Note, indexes occupy space and slow down updates a bit, so use them only when the tradeoff is worth it.

## See also:

- Philosophy

# Quickstart

For an even quicker start go to http://try.mongodb.org/.

### Installation Guides

See the install guides from the MongoDB Manual:

- Install MongoDB on RedHat Enterprise Linux, CentOS, or Fedora Linux
- Install MongoDB on Debian, Ubuntu or other Linux Systems
- Install MongoDB on other Unix/Linux Systems
- Install MongoDB on OS X
- Install MongoDB on Windows

### See Also

- SQL to Mongo Mapping Chart
- Tutorial
- Tutorials in the MongoDB Manual
- The MongoDB Manual

# Quickstart OS X

**Redirection Notice**
This page should redirect to http://docs.mongodb.org/manual/tutorial/install-mongodb-on-os-x/.

# Quickstart Unix

**Redirection Notice**
This page should redirect to http://docs.mongodb.org/manual/tutorial/install-mongodb-on-linux/.

## Quickstart Windows

**Redirection Notice**
This page should redirect to http://docs.mongodb.org/manual/tutorial/install-mongodb-on-windows/.

# Downloads

| | OS X 32-bit note | OS X 64-bit | Linux 32-bit note | Linux 64-bit | Windows 32-bit note | Windows 64-bit | Solaris i86pc note | Solaris 64 | Source |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Production Release (Recommended) | | | | | | | | | |
| 1.8.1<br>4/6/2011<br>Changelog<br>Release Notes | download | download | download<br>*legacy-static | download<br>*legacy-static | download | download | download | download | tgz<br>zip |
| Nightly<br>Changelog | download | download | download<br>*legacy-static | download<br>*legacy-static | download | download | download | download | tgz<br>zip |
| Previous Release | | | | | | | | | |
| 1.6.5<br>12/9/2010<br>Changelog<br>Release Notes | download | download | download<br>*legacy-static | download<br>*legacy-static | download | download | download | download | tgz<br>zip |
| Nightly<br>Changelog | download | download | download<br>*legacy-static | download<br>*legacy-static | download | download | download | download | tgz<br>zip |
| Development Release (Unstable) | | | | | | | | | |
| Nightly<br>Changelog | download | download | download<br>*legacy-static | download<br>*legacy-static | download | download | download | download | tgz<br>zip |
| Archived Releases | | | | | | | | | |
| | list | list | list | list | list | list | list | list | list |

## 2.2 Release Notes

**Redirection Notice**
This page should redirect to http://docs.mongodb.org/manual/release-notes/2.2/.

## 2.0 Release Notes

- Upgrading
- What's New
  - Compact Command
  - Concurrency Improvements
  - Default Stack Size
  - Index Performance Enhancements
  - Sharding Authentication
  - Replica Sets
    - Priorities
    - Data-center awareness
    - w : "majority"
    - Reconfiguration with a minority up
    - Primary checks for a caught up secondary before stepping down
    - Extended shutdown on the primary to minimize interruption
    - Maintenance Mode
  - Geospatial Features

        - Multi-location documents
        - Polygon searches
    - Journaling enhancements
    - New `ContinueOnError` option for bulk insert
    - Map Reduce
        - Output to a sharded collection
        - Performance improvements
    - New Querying Features
        - Additional regex options: s
        - `$and`
    - Command output changes
    - Shell features
        - Custom prompt
        - Default shell init script
- See Also


## Upgrading

Although the major version number has changed, MongoDB 2.0 is a standard, incremental production release and works as a drop-in replacement for MongoDB 1.8. However, there are a few changes you must be aware of before attempting to upgrade:

1. If you create new indexes in 2.0, then downgrading to 1.8 is possible but reindexing the new collections will be required.
2. `mongoimport` and `mongoexport` now correctly adhere to the CSV spec for handling CSV input/output. This may break existing import/export workflows if they relied on the broken behavior. For more information see the related JIRA case.
3. Journaling is **enabled by default** in 2.0 for 64-bit builds. If you still prefer to run without journaling, start `mongod` with the `--nojournal` option. Otherwise, the journal files will be created on startup. The first time you start `mongod` with journaling, you will see a delay while the new files are being created. In addition, you may see reduced write throughput.

- 2.0 processes can talk to 1.8 processes and vice versa, so you can upgrade various parts of a cluster in any order.

- To upgrade a standalone server. Shutdown the old `mongod` and then restart with the new `mongod` binary. You can download the v2.0 binaries from the MongoDB Download Page.

- To upgrade a replica set. Upgrade the secondaries first one at a time, then stepDown the primary and upgrade the primary. Using the stepDown command is better than simply shutting it down since the failover will happen quicker. To avoid losing the last few updates on failover you can temporarily halt your application (failover should take less than 10 seconds) or change your application code to confirm that each update reaches multiple servers. Note, after upgrading to 2.0 you can use the shutdown command to shutdown the primary without losing any *safe* updates.

- To upgrade a sharded cluster. Upgrade config servers one at a time, in any order. Since config servers use two phase commit, shard configuration metadata updates will halt until all are up and running. `mongos` routers can be upgraded in any order.

## What's New

### Compact Command

A compact command is now available for compacting a single collection and its indexes. Previously, the only way to compact was to repair the entire database.

### Concurrency Improvements

When going to disk, the server will yield the write lock if the data being acted upon isn't likely to be in memory. The initial implementation of this feature now exists: (SERVER-2563)

The specific operations yield in 2.0 are:

- Updates by _id
- Removes
- Long cursor iterations

### Default Stack Size

The default stack size has been reduced. This can reduce total memory usage when there are many (e.g., 1000+) client connections, as there is a thread per connection. While portions of a thread's stack can be swapped out if unused, some operating systems do this slowly enough that it might be an issue. The stack size will be set to the lesser of the system setting or 1MB.

### Index Performance Enhancements

v2.0 includes significant improvements to the index structures. Indexes are often 25% smaller and 25% faster (depends on the use case). When upgrading from previous versions, the benefits of the new index type are realized only if you create a new index or re-index an old one.

Dates are now signed, and the max index key size has increased slightly from 819 to 1024 bytes.

Once you create new indexes, downgrading to 1.8.x will require a re-index of any indexes created using 2.0.

### Sharding Authentication

Authentication can now be used with sharded clusters.

### Replica Sets

#### Priorities

Each replica set node can now have a priority value consisting of a floating-point from 0 to 1000, inclusive. Priorities let you control which member of the set you prefer to have as primary: the member with the highest priority that can see a majority of the set will be elected primary.

For example, suppose we have a replica set with three nodes:

| Host | Priority |
|---|---|
| A | 2 |
| B | 3 |
| C | 1 |

During normal operation, B will always be chosen as primary. If B goes down, A will be elected primary.

See the priorities documentation for more information.

#### Data-center awareness

You can now "tag" replica set members to indicate their location. You can use these tags to design custom write rules across data centers, racks, specific servers, or any other architecture choice.

For example, a DBA could define rules such as "very important write" or "customerData" or "audit-trail" to be replicated to certain servers, racks, data centers, etc. Then in the application code, the developer would say:

```
> db.foo.insert(doc, {w : "very important write"})
```

which would succeed if it fulfilled the conditions the DBA defined for "very important write".

See the tagging documentation for more information.

Your driver may also support tag-aware reads. Instead of simply specifying `slaveOk`, you specify slaveOk with tags indicating which data-centers you want to read from. See your driver for details.

#### w : "majority"

You can also set w to `"majority"` to ensure that a write has been propagated to a majority of nodes, effectively committing it. The value for `"majority"` will automatically be adjusted as you add or remove nodes from the set.

See the majority docs for more information.

#### Reconfiguration with a minority up

If the majority of servers in a set has been permanently lost, you can now force a reconfiguration of the set to bring it back online.

See more information on Reconfiguring a replica set when members are down.

#### Primary checks for a caught up secondary before stepping down

To minimize time without a primary, the `stepDown` command will now fail if the primary does not see a secondary within 10 seconds of its latest optime. You can force the primary to step down anyway, but by default it will return an error message.

See also Forcing a Member to be Primary.

#### Extended shutdown on the primary to minimize interruption

When you call the shutdown command the primary will refuse to shut down unless there is a secondary whose optime is within 10 seconds of the primary. If such a secondary isn't available, the primary will step down and wait up to a minute for the secondary to be fully caught up before shutting down.

Note that to get this behavior, you must issue the `shutdown` command explicitly; sending a signal to the process will not trigger this behavior.

You can also force the primary to shut down, even without an up-to-date secondary available.

#### Maintenance Mode

When `repair` or `compact` is run on a secondary, the secondary will automatically drop into "recovering" mode until the operation is finished. This prevents clients from trying to read from it while it's busy.

### Geospatial Features

#### Multi-location documents

Indexing is now supported on documents which have multiple location objects, embedded either inline or in nested sub-documents. Additional command options are also supported, allowing results to be returned with not only distance but the location used to generate the distance.

See the Geospatial documentation for further information.

#### Polygon searches

Polygonal `$within` queries are also now supported for simple polygon shapes. Details are here.

### Journaling enhancements

- Journaling is now enabled by default for 64-bit platforms. Use the `--nojournal` command line option to disable it.
- The journal is now compressed for faster commits to disk.
- A new `--journalCommitInterval` command line option exists for specifying your own group commit interval. 100ms is the default (same as in 1.8).
- A new getLastError {`j: true`} option is available to wait for the group commit. The group commit will happen sooner when a client is waiting on {`j: true`}. If journaling is disabled, {`j: true`} is a no-op.

### New `ContinueOnError` option for bulk insert

When this flag is set (see your driver on how to set it), bulk insert will continue to insert any remaining documents even if an insert fails (due, for example, to a duplicate key). The getLastError command will report whether any doc inserts have failed (not just last one). If multiple errors occur, only the most recent will be reported by getLastError. See OP_INSERT.

### Map Reduce

#### Output to a sharded collection

Using the new flag "sharded" it is possible to send the result of a map/reduce to a sharded collection. Combined with the "reduce" or "merge" flags, it is possible to keep adding data to very large collections from map/reduce jobs. See documentation of output options.

#### Performance improvements

Map/reduce performance will benefit from the following:

- larger in-memory buffer sizes, reducing the amount of disk I/O needed during a job
- larger javascript heap size, allowing for larger objects and less GC
- supports pure JS execution with the jsMode flag.

### New Querying Features

#### Additional regex options: s

Allows the dot (.) to match all characters including new lines. This is in addition to the currently supported i, m and x. See Using regular expressions in queries.

#### $and

A special boolean `$and` query operator is now available.

### Command output changes

The output of the Validate Command and the documents in the system.profile collection have both been enhanced to return information as BSON objects with keys for each value rather than as free-form strings.

### Shell features

#### Custom prompt

You can define a custom prompt for the `mongo` shell. You can change the prompt at any time by setting the `prompt` variable to a string or a custom JavaScript function returning a string. See the documentation for examples.

#### Default shell init script

On startup, the shell will check for a `.mongorc.js` file in the user's home directory. The shell will execute this file after connecting to the database and before displaying the prompt.

If you would like the shell **not** to run the `.mongorc.js` file automatically, start the shell with `--norc`.

See .mongorc.js documentation.

## See Also

- Download MongoDB
- Full list of changes on JIRA
- All backward incompatible changes

# 1.8 Release Notes

MongoDB 1.8 is a drop-in replacement for 1.6, except:

- *replica set nodes should be upgraded in a particular order.*
- The options to the Map/Reduce command have changed in 1.8, causing incompatibility with previous releases. If you use MapReduce, please see Map Reduce Output Options page. If using map/reduce, this likely also means you need a recent version of your client driver.

To upgrade, shutdown the old `mongod` and the restart with the new binaries. See Upgrading to 1.8.x for more details.

MongoDB Download Page

### What's New

#### *Journaling*

MongoDB now supports write-ahead journaling to facilitate fast crash recovery and durability in the storage engine. With journaling enabled, a `mongod` can be quickly restarted following a crash without needing to repair the collections.

- Journaling Documentation

#### *Sparse and Covered Indexes*

Sparse Indexes are indexes that only include documents that contain the fields specified in the index. Documents missing the field will not appear in the index at all. This can significantly reduce index size for attributes that are contained in a subset of documents within a collection.

Covered Indexes enable queries to be answered entirely from the index when the query only requests fields that are contained in the index.

- Sparse Index Documentation
- Covered Index Documentation

#### *Incremental Map/Reduce Support*

Map/Reduce supports new output options that enable incrementally updating existing collections. Previously, a Map/Reduce job could either output to a temporary collection a named permanent collection; which it would overwrite with new data.

You now have several options for the output of your map/reduce jobs

- You can merge Map/Reduce output into an existing collection. Output from the Reduce phase will replace existing keys in the output collection if it already exists. Other keys will remain in the collection.
- You can now re-reduce your output with the contents of an existing collection. Each key output by the reduce phase will be reduced with the existing document in the output collection.

- You can replace the existing output collection with the new results of the Map/Reduce job (equivalent to setting a permanent output collection in previous releases)
- You can compute map/reduce inline and return results to the caller without persisting the results of the job. This is similar to the temporary collections generated in previous releases, except results are limited to 8MB.

The new map/reduce options are documented here.

## Additional Changes and Enhancements

#### 1.8.1

- sharding migrate fix when moving larger chunks
- durability fix with background indexing
- fixed mongos concurrency issue with many incoming connections

#### 1.8.0

- All changes from 1.7.x series.

#### 1.7.6

- bug fixes

#### 1.7.5

- journaling
- extent allocation improvements
- improved replica set connectivity for mongos
- getLastError improvements for sharding

#### 1.7.4

- mongos will route SLAVE_OK queries to secondaries in replica sets
- new map/reduce output options
- sparse indexes

#### 1.7.3

- initial covered index support
- distinct can use data from indexes when possible
- map/reduce can merge or reduce results into an existing collection
- mongod tracks and mongostat displays network usage
- sharding stability improvements

#### 1.7.2

- $rename operator to allow renaming of attributes in a document
- option to `db.eval` not to block
- geo queries with sharding
- mongostat --discover option
- chunk splitting enhancements
- replica sets network enhancements for servers behind a nat

#### 1.7.1

- Many sharding performance enhancements
- better support for $elemMatch on primitives in embedded arrays
- Query optimizer enhancements on range queries
- Window service enhancements
- Replica set setup improvements
- $pull works on primitives in arrays

#### 1.7.0

- sharding performance improvements for heavy insert loads
- slave delay support for replica sets
- getLastErrorDefaults for replica sets
- auto completion in the shell
- spherical distance for geo search
- all fixes from 1.6.1 and 1.6.2

### Release Announcement Forum Pages

- 1.8.1 1.8.0
- 1.7.6 1.7.5 1.7.4 1.7.3 1.7.2 1.7.1 1.7.0

### See Also

- Download MongoDB v1.8
- Upgrading to 1.8.x
- Full list of changes on jira

## Upgrading to 1.8


- Upgrading Replica Sets
- Upgrading Sharded Clusters
- Returning to 1.6
    - Journaling
- See Also
- Download


First, upgrade your shell (`mongo`) to the 1.8.x shell.

#### *Upgrading Replica Sets*

1.8.x secondaries **can** replicate from 1.6.x primaries.

1.6.x secondaries **cannot** replicate from 1.8.x primaries.

Thus, the trick is to replace all of your secondaries, then the primary.

For example, suppose we have a typical replica set with 1 primary, 1 secondary, and 1 arbiter. To upgrade this set, do the following:

1. For each arbiter:
    - Shut down the arbiter
    - Start it back up with the 1.8 binary
2. Change your config (optional)
   It is possible that, when you start shutting down members of the set, a new primary will be elected. If you wish to prevent this, you can give all of the slaves a priority of 0 before upgrading, then change them back afterwards.
    - Record your current config. Run rs.conf() and paste the results into a text file.
    - Update your config so that all secondaries have priority 0. For example:

```
> config = rs.conf()
{
     "_id" : "foo",
     "version" : 3,
     "members" : [
             {
                     "_id" : 0,
                     "host" : "ubuntu:27017"
             },
             {
                     "_id" : 1,
                     "host" : "ubuntu:27018"
             },
             {
                     "_id" : 2,
                     "host" : "ubuntu:27019",
                     "arbiterOnly" : true
             }
             {
                     "_id" : 3,
                     "host" : "ubuntu:27020"
             },
             {
                     "_id" : 4,
                     "host" : "ubuntu:27021"
             },
     ]
}
> config.version++
3
> rs.isMaster()
{
     "setName" : "foo",
     "ismaster" : false,
     "secondary" : true,
     "hosts" : [
             "ubuntu:27017",
             "ubuntu:27018"
     ],
     "arbiters" : [
             "ubuntu:27019"
     ],
     "primary" : "ubuntu:27018",
     "ok" : 1
}
> // for each slave
> config.members[0].priority = 0
> config.members[3].priority = 0
> config.members[4].priority = 0
> rs.reconfig(config)
```

3. For each slave:
    - Shut down the slave
    - Start it back up with the 1.8 binary
4. If you changed the config, change it back to its original state

```
> config = rs.conf()
> config.version++
> config.members[0].priority = 1
> config.members[3].priority = 1
> config.members[4].priority = 1
> rs.reconfig(config)
```

5. Shut down the primary (the final 1.6 server) and restart it with the 1.8 binary.

### *Upgrading Sharded Clusters*

1. Turn off the balancer:

```
$ mongo <a_mongos_hostname>
> use config
> db.settings.update({_id:"balancer"},{$set : {stopped:true}}, true)
```

2. For each shard:
   - If the shard is a replica set, follow the directions above for replica sets.
   - If the shard is a single mongod process, shut it down and start it back up with the 1.8 binary.
3. For each `mongos`:
   - Shut down the mongos process
   - Restart with the 1.8 binary
4. For each config server:
   - Shut down the config server process
   - Restart with the 1.8 binary
5. Turn on the balancer

```
> use config
> db.settings.update({_id:"balancer"},{$set : {stopped:false}})
```

### *Returning to 1.6*

If something goes wrong and you wish to move back to 1.6, follow the steps above in reverse. Please be careful that you have not inserted any documents larger than 4MB while running on 1.8 (where the max size has increased to 16MB); if you have you will get errors when the server tries to read those documents.

#### *Journaling*

Returning to 1.6 after using 1.8 journaling works fine, as journaling does not change anything about the data file format. Suppose you are running 1.8.0 with journaling enabled and something isn't working for you, so you decide to switch back to 1.6. There are two scenarios:

1. If you shut down cleanly with 1.8.x, just restart with the 1.6 mongod binary.
2. If 1.8.x shut down uncleanly, start 1.8.x up again and let the journal files run to fix any damage (incomplete writes) that may have existed at the crash. Then shut down 1.8.0 cleanly and restart with the 1.6 mongod binary.

### *See Also*

- 1.8 Release Notes page for details on changes in v1.8 to map/reduce.

### *Download*

- Download v1.8

## 1.6 Release Notes

MongoDB 1.6 is a drop-in replacement for 1.4. To upgrade, simply shutdown `mongod` then restart with the new binaries.*

> ⚠ MongoDB v1.8 is now available.

** Please note that you should upgrade to the latest version of whichever driver you're using. Certain drivers, including the Ruby driver, will require the upgrade, and all the drivers will provide extra features for connecting to replica sets.*

### *Sharding*

Sharding is now production-ready, making MongoDB horizontally scalable, with no single point of failure. A single instance of *mongod* can now be upgraded to a distributed cluster with zero downtime when the need arises.

- Sharding Tutorial
- Sharding Documentation
- Upgrading a Single Server to a Cluster

### *Replica Sets*

Replica sets, which provide automated failover among a cluster of *n* nodes, are also now available.

Plese note that replica *pairs* are now deprecated; we strongly recommend that replica pair users upgrade to replica sets.

- Replica Set Tutorial
- Replica Set Documentation
- Upgrading Existing Setups to Replica Sets

### *Other Improvements*

- The w option (and wtimeout) forces writes to be propagated to *n* servers before returning success (this works especially well with replica sets)
- $or queries
- Improved concurrency
- $slice operator for returning subsets of arrays
- 64 indexes per collection (formerly 40 indexes per collection)
- 64-bit integers can now be represented in the shell using NumberLong
- The findAndModify command now supports upserts. It also allows you to specify fields to return
- $showDiskLoc option to see disk location of a document
- Support for IPv6 and UNIX domain sockets

### *Installation*

- Windows service improvements
- The C++ client is a separate tarball from the binaries

### *1.6.x Release Notes*

- 1.6.5

### *1.5.x Release Notes*

- 1.5.8
- 1.5.7
- 1.5.6
- 1.5.5
- 1.5.4
- 1.5.3
- 1.5.2
- 1.5.1
- 1.5.0

You can see a full list of all changes on Jira.

Thank you everyone for your support and suggestions!

## 1.4 Release Notes

We're pleased to announce the 1.4 release of MongoDB. 1.4 is a drop in replacement for 1.2. To upgrade you just need to shutdown mongod, then restart with the new binaries. (Users upgrading from release 1.0 should review the 1.2 release notes, in particular the instructions for upgrading the DB format.)

Release 1.4 includes the following improvements over release 1.2:

### *Core server enhancements*

- concurrency improvements
- indexing memory improvements
- background index creation
- better detection of regular expressions so the index can be used in more cases

### *Replication & Sharding*

- better handling for restarting slaves offline for a while
- fast new slaves from snapshots (--fastsync)
- configurable slave delay (--slavedelay )

- replication handles clock skew on master
- $inc replication fixes
- sharding alpha 3 - notably 2 phase commit on config servers

#### *Deployment & production*

- configure "slow threshold" for profiling
- ability to do fsync + lock for backing up raw files
- option for separate directory per db (--directoryperdb)
- `http://localhost:28017/_status` to get serverStatus via http
- REST interface is off by default for security (--rest to enable)
- can rotate logs with a db command, logRotate
- enhancements to serverStatus command (db.serverStatus()) - counters and replication lag stats
- new mongostat tool

#### *Query language improvements*

- $all with regex
- $not
- partial matching of array elements $elemMatch
- $ operator for updating arrays
- $addToSet
- $unset
- $pull supports object matching
- $set with array indices

#### *Geo*

- 2d geospatial search
- geo $center and $box searches

## 1.2.x Release Notes

### New Features

- More indexes per collection
- Faster index creation
- Map/Reduce
- Stored JavaScript functions
- Configurable fsync time
- Several small features and fixes

### DB Upgrade Required

There are some changes that will require doing an upgrade if your previous version is <= 1.0.x. If you're already using a version >= 1.1.x then these changes aren't required. There are 2 ways to do it:

- --upgrade
  - stop your mongod process
  - run ./mongod --upgrade
  - start mongod again
- use a slave
  - start a slave on a different port and data directory
  - when its synced, shut down the master, and start the new slave on the regular port.

Ask in the forums or IRC for more help.

### Replication Changes

- There have been minor changes in replication. If you are upgrading a master/slave setup from <= 1.1.2 you have to update the slave first.

### mongoimport

- mongoimportjson has been removed and is replaced with mongoimport that can do json/csv/tsv

### field filter changing

- We've changed the semantics of the field filter a little bit. Previously only objects with those fields would be returned. Now the field filter

only changes the output, not which objects are returned. If you need that behavior, you can use $exists

***other notes***

http://www.mongodb.org/display/DOCS/1.1+Development+Cycle

# 1.0 Changelist

Wrote MongoDB. See documentation.

# Version Numbers

MongoDB uses the odd-numbered versions for development releases.

There are 3 numbers in a MongoDB version: *A.B.C*

- *A* is the major version. This will rarely change and signify very large changes
- *B* is the release number. This will include many changes including features and things that possible break backwards compatibility. Even Bs will be stable branches, and odd Bs will be development.
- *C* is the revision number and will be used for bugs and security issues.

For example:

- 1.0.0 : first GA release
- 1.0.x : bug fixes to 1.0.x - highly recommended to upgrade, very little risk
- 1.1.x : development release. this will include new features that are not fully finished, and works in progress. Some things may be different than 1.0
- 1.2.x : second GA release. this will be the culmination of the 1.1.x release.

## What's New by Version

This is a summary of high level features only. See jira and release notes for full details.

- 1.4
  - Geospatial
  - Background indexing
  - --directoryperdb
  - Log rotate
  - $not
  - $ operator for updating arrays
  - $addToSet
  - $unset
- 1.6
  - Sharding
  - Replica Sets
  - getLastError w param
  - $or
  - $slice
  - 64 indexes per collection
  - IPv6
- 1.8
  - Journaling
  - Sparse and covered indexes
  - $rename
  - mongos (i.e., sharded environment) will route SLAVE_OK queries to secondaries in replica sets

# Ubuntu and Debian packages

**Redirection Notice**
This page should redirect to http://docs.mongodb.org/manual/tutorial/install-mongodb-on-debian-or-ubuntu-linux/.

# CentOS and Fedora Packages

**Redirection Notice**
This page should redirect to http://docs.mongodb.org/manual/tutorial/install-mongodb-on-redhat-centos-or-fedora-linux/.

# Drivers

MongoDB currently has client support for the following programming languages:

### *mongodb.org Supported*

- C
- C++
- Erlang
- Haskell
- Java
- Javascript
- .NET (C# F#, PowerShell, etc)
- Node.js
- Perl
- PHP
- Python
- Ruby
- Scala

### *Community Supported*

- ActionScript3
  - http://github.com/argoncloud
- C
  - libmongo-client
- C# and .NET
- Clojure
  - See the Java Language Center
- ColdFusion
  - cfmongodb
  - Blog post: Part 1 | Part 2 | Part 3
  - http://github.com/virtix/cfmongodb/tree/0.9
  - http://mongocfc.riaforge.org/
- D
  - Port of the MongoDB C Driver for D
- Dart
  - https://bitbucket.org/vadimtsushko/mongo-dart
- Delphi
  - mongo-delphi-driver - Full featured Deplhi interface to MongoDB built on top of the mongodb.org supported C driver
  - pebongo - Early stage Delphi driver for MongoDB
  - TMongoWire - Maps all the VarTypes of OleVariant to the BSON types, implements IPersistStream for (de)serialization, and uses TTcpClient for networking
- Entity
  - entity driver for mongodb on Google Code, included within the standard Entity Library
- Erlang
  - emongo - An Erlang MongoDB driver that emphasizes speed and stability. "The most emo of drivers."
  - Erlmongo - an almost complete MongoDB driver implementation in Erlang
- Factor
  - http://github.com/slavapestov/factor/tree/master/extra/mongodb/
- Fantom
  - http://bitbucket.org/liamstask/fantomongo/wiki/Home
- F#
  - http://gist.github.com/218388
- Go
  - gomongo
  - go-mongo
  - mgo
  - mongogo
- Groovy
  - gmongo
  - Also see the Java Language Center

        **Blog Post: Groovy on Grails in the land of MongoDB
- Javascript
- Lisp
    - https://github.com/fons/cl-mongo
- Lua
    - LuaMongo on Google Code
    - LuaMongo fork on Github
- MatLab
    - mongo-matlab-driver
- node.js
- Objective C
    - NuMongoDB
- Opa
    - Opa Standard Library MongoDB Driver
- PHP
    - Asynchronous PHP driver using libevent
- PowerShell
    - mosh Powershell provider for MongoDB
    - mdbc module cmdlets using official 10gen driver
    - Doug Finke's blog post on using the original community C# driver with PowerShell
- Prolog
    - https://github.com/khueue/prolongo
- Python
    - MongoEngine
    - MongoKit
    - Django-nonrel
    - Django-mongodb
    - Django-mongonaut
- R
    - rmongodb - Full featured R interface to MongoDB built on top of the mongodb.org supported C driver
    - RMongo - R client to interface with MongoDB
- REST
- Ruby
    - MongoMapper
    - rmongo - An event-machine-based Ruby driver for MongoDB
    - jmongo A thin ruby wrapper around the mongo-java-driver for vastly better jruby performance.
    - em-mongo EventMachine MongoDB Driver (based off of RMongo).
- Scala
    - See the Java Language Center
- Racket (PLT Scheme)
    - http://planet.plt-scheme.org/display.ss?package=mongodb.plt&owner=jaymccarthy
    - docs
- Smalltalk
    - Squeaksource Mongotalk
    - Dolphin Smalltalk

***Get Involved, Write a Driver!***

- Writing Drivers and Tools

# Hadoop

The MongoDB Hadoop Adapter is a plugin for Hadoop that provides Hadoop the ability to use MongoDB as an input source and/or an output source.

The source code is available on github where you can find a more comprehensive readme

If you have questions please email the mongodb-user Mailing List. For any issues please file a ticket in Jira.

### Installation

The Mongo-Hadoop adapter uses the
SBT Build Tool tool for
compilation. SBT provides superior support for discreet configurations
targeting multiple Hadoop versions. The distribution includes
self-bootstrapping copy of SBT in the distribution as `sbt`. Create a
copy of the jar files using the following command:

```
./sbt package
```

The MongoDB Hadoop Adapter supports a number of Hadoop releases. You can change the Hadoop version supported by the build by modifying the value of `hadoopRelease` in the `build.sbt` file. For instance, set this value to:

```
hadoopRelease in ThisBuild := "cdh3"
```

Configures a build against Cloudera CDH3u3, while:

```
hadoopRelease in ThisBuild := "0.21"
```

Configures a build against Hadoop 0.21 from the mainline Apache distribution.

After building, you will need to place the "core" jar and the "mongo-java-driver" in the `lib` directory of each Hadoop server.

For more complete install instructions please see the install instructions in the readme

### Presentations

- MongoDB, Hadoop and HuMONGOus Data by Steve Francia at MongoSF 2012
- MongoDB + Hadoop by Brendan McAdams at MongoDB Philly 2012
- mongo-hadoop (BigData Analysis with Mongo-Hadoop) by Daichi Morifuji at MongoTokyo 2012

### Blog Posts

- http://blog.10gen.com/post/20840407875/mongodb-hadoop-connector-announced

## Scala Language Center

Casbah Casbah is the officially supported Scala driver for MongoDB. It provides wrappers and extensions to the Java driver meant to allow a more Scala-friendly interface to MongoDB. It supports serialization/deserialization of common Scala types (including collections and regex), Scala 2.8 collection versions of DBObject and DBList and a fluid query DSL.

- API documentation
- Tutorial
- Mailing List
- Java Driver Doc Page

### Community

- Lift-MongoDB - Lift Web Framework supports MongoDB, including object mapping via the Record back-end implementation.
- Rogue: A Type-Safe Scala DSL - Foursquare's DSL for querying MongoDB alongside Lift-MongoDB-Record.
  - Tutorial/Intro
  - Source/Downloads
- Blue Eyes is a lightweight framework for building REST APIs with strong MongoDB integration including a DSL and Mock MongoDB for testing.
- mongo-scala-driver is a thin wrapper around mongo-java-driver to make working with MongoDB more Scala-like.
  - Wiki
  - Mailing list

Webcast - MongoDB and Scala

## Haskell Language Center

The Haskell driver and its API documentation reside on Hackage

## C Language Center

### C Driver

**The MongoDB C Driver** is the 10gen-supported driver for MongoDB. It's written in pure C.

The driver's core API is stable as of the v0.4 release; however, the GridFS API may change somewhat in the v0.5 release.

- Primary Doc Page
- Tutorial
- C Driver README
- History
- JIRA
- Source Code

### *Download and build*

The C driver is hosted at GitHub. You can download the latest stable version: v0.4:

Then consult the building docs for detailed instructions on building the driver.

# CSharp Language Center

*Upcoming webinar - What's New in the .Net Driver on July 19*

### *MongoDB C# / .NET Driver*

The MongoDB C# Driver is the 10gen-supported C# / .NET driver for MongoDB.

- C# Driver Quick-Start
- C# Driver Tutorial
- C# Driver LINQ Tutorial
- C# Driver Serialization Tutorial
- API Documentation
- C# Driver README
- Source Code

Several other C# drivers have been developed by the community. This is the "official" C# Driver supported by 10gen. It is similar in many ways to the various drivers that came before it, but it is **not** a direct replacement for any of them. Most people have found it easy to convert to using this driver, but you should expect to have to make some changes.

### *Downloading the Driver*

The C# Driver is hosted at github.com. Instructions for downloading the source code are at: Download Instructions

You can also download binary builds in either .msi or .zip formats from:
http://github.com/mongodb/mongo-csharp-driver/downloads.

Note: if you download the .zip file Windows might require you to "Unblock" the help file. If Windows asks "Do you want to open this file?" when you double click on the CSharpDriverDocs.chm file, clear the check box next to "Always ask before opening this file" before pressing the Open button. Alternatively, you can right click on the CSharpDriverDocs.chm file and select Properties, and then press the Unblock button at the bottom of the General tab. If the Unblock button is not present then the help file does not need to be unblocked.

### *Visual Studio Versions Supported*

The current version of the C# Driver has been built and tested using

- Visual Studio 2010
- Visual Studio 2008

### *Questions and Bug Reports*

Questions about the C# driver (or any other MongoDB topic) can be posted at the mongodb-user Google Group:

https://groups.google.com/group/mongodb-user

Bug reports can be created in JIRA at:

https://jira.mongodb.org/browse/CSHARP

### *See Also*

- CSharp Community Projects

#### *Presentations*

- C# Development with MongoDB - MongoSF (May 2011)
- More C#-related presentations

## CSharp Community Projects

#### *Community Supported C# Drivers*

- See also: the 10gen supported MongoDB C# driver

- mongodb-csharp driver
- simple-mongodb driver
- NoRM

#### *Tools*

- MongoDB.Emitter Document Wrapper
- log4net appender
- ASP.NET Membership and Role Providers for MongoDB
- ASP.NET User Administration
- MongoCola Administration Tool
- MongoRepository

#### *F#*

- F# Example

#### *Community Articles*

- Experimenting with MongoDB from C#
- Using MongoDB from C#
- Introduction to MongoDB for .NET
- Using Json.NET and Castle Dynamic Proxy with MongoDB
- Implementing a Blog Using ASP.NET MVC and MongoDB
- Intro Article using a Post and Comments Example
- Using the 10gen .NET driver from PowerShell
- Tutorial MongoDB con ASP.NET MVC - Ejemplo Práctico

#### *Support*

- http://groups.google.com/group/mongodb-csharp
- http://groups.google.com/group/mongodb-user
- IRC: #mongodb on freenode

#### *See Also*

- C++ Language Center

## CSharp Driver LINQ Tutorial

- Introduction
- Quickstart
- Supported LINQ query operators
    - Any
    - Any (with predicate)
    - Count
    - Count (with predicate)
    - Distinct
    - ElementAt
    - ElementAtOrDefault
    - First
    - First (with predicate)
    - FirstOrDefault
    - FirstOrDefault (with predicate)
    - Last

        - Last (with predicate)
        - LastOrDefault
        - LastOrDefault (with predicate)
        - LongCount
        - LongCount (with predicate)
        - Max
        - Max (with selector)
        - Min
        - Min (with selector)
        - OrderBy
        - OrderByDescending
        - Select
        - Single
        - Single (with predicate)
        - SingleOrDefault
        - SingleOrDefault (with predicate)
        - Skip
        - Take
        - ThenBy
        - ThenByDescending
        - Where
    - Supported where clauses
        - And (&& operator)
        - Any
        - Boolean constant
        - Boolean field or property
        - Contains (Enumerable method)
        - Contains (string method)
        - ContainsAll (LINQ to MongoDB extension method)
        - ContainsAny (LINQ to MongoDB extension method)
        - Count method (array length)
        - Count property (array length)
        - EndsWith (string method)
        - Enum comparisons (==, !=, <, <=, >, >=)
        - In (LINQ to MongoDB extension method)
        - Inject
        - IsMatch (regular expression method)
        - Length (array length)
        - Mod (% operator)
        - Not (! operator)
        - Numeric comparisons (==, !=, <, <=, >, >=)
        - Or (|| operator)
        - StartsWith (string method)

### Introduction

This tutorial covers the support for LINQ queries added in the 1.4 release of the C# driver.

You should already have read at least the quickstart introduction to the C# driver.

http://www.mongodb.org/display/DOCS/CSharp+Driver+Quickstart

### Quickstart

First, add the following additional using statement to your program:

```
using MongoDB.Driver.Linq;
```

Then, get a reference to a collection variable in the usual way:

```
var collection = database.GetCollection<TDocument>("collectionname");
```

The basic idea behind writing a LINQ query is to start from a collection variable and begin the LINQ query by calling the AsQueryable<TDocument>() method. After that it's all standard LINQ.

For example:

```
var query =
    from e in collection.AsQueryable<Employee>()
    where e.FirstName == "John"
    select e;

foreach (var employee in query)
{
    // process employees named "John"
}
```

You can also write queries using lambda syntax. The previous query would be written using lambda syntax like this:

```
var query =
    collection.AsQueryable<Employee>()
    .Where(e => e.FirstName == "John")
    .Select(e => e); // this trivial projection is optional when using lambda syntax
```

The C# compiler translates all queries written using query syntax into lambda syntax internally anyway, so there is no performance advantage or penalty to choosing either style. You can also mix and match the styles, which can be useful when using query operators that are not supported by the query syntax.

All the code samples in this tutorial show both the query syntax and the lambda syntax for each query operator and supported where clauses.

Only LINQ queries that can be translated to an equivalent MongoDB query are supported. If you write a LINQ query that can't be translated you will get a runtime exception and the error message will indicate which part of the query wasn't supported.

**Note:** The 1.4 version of the C# driver requires that all where clauses that compare a field or property against a value have the constant on the right hand side. This restriction will be lifted in the next release.

## Supported LINQ query operators

This section documents the supported LINQ query operators.

#### Any

Without a predicate Any just tests whether the collection has any documents.

```
var result =
    (from c in collection.AsQueryable<C>()
    select c)
    .Any();
// or
var result =
    collection.AsQueryable<C>()
    .Any();
```

#### Any (with predicate)

With a predicate Any tests whether the collection has any matching documents.

```
var result =
    (from c in collection.AsQueryable<C>()
    select c)
    .Any(c => c.X == 1);
// or
var result =
    collection.AsQueryable<C>()
    .Any(c => c.X == 1);
```

Note that the predicate can be provided either by a where clause or as an argument to Any, so the following are equivalent to the previous query.

```
var result =
    (from c in collection.AsQueryable<C>()
    where c.X == 1
    select c)
    .Any();
// or
var result =
    collection.AsQueryable<C>()
    .Where(c => c.X == 1)
    .Any();
```

Any with a predicate is not supported after a projection (at least not yet). So the following is not valid:

```
var result =
    collection.AsQueryable<C>()
    .Select(c => c.X)
    .Any(x => x == 1);
```

You can usually rewrite such a query by putting an equivalent where clause before the projection (in which case you can drop the projection).

**Count**

Without a predicate Count just returns the number of documents in the collection.

```
var result =
    (from c in collection.AsQueryable<C>()
    select c)
    .Count();
// or
var result =
    collection.AsQueryable<C>()
    .Count();
```

**Count (with predicate)**

With a predicate Count returns the number of documents that match the predicate.

```
var result =
    (from c in collection.AsQueryable<C>()
    select c)
    .Count(c => c.X == 1);
// or
var result =
    collection.AsQueryable<C>()
    .Count(c => c.X == 1);
```

Note that the predicate can be provided either by a where clause or as an argument to Count , so the following are equivalent to the previous query.

```
var result =
    (from c in collection.AsQueryable<C>()
    where c.X == 1
    select c)
    .Count();
// or
var result =
    collection.AsQueryable<C>()
    .Where(c => c.X == 1)
    .Count();
```

Count with a predicate is not supported after a projection (at least not yet). So the following is not valid:

```
var result =
    collection.AsQueryable<C>()
    .Select(c => c.X)
    .Count(x => x == 1);
```

You can usually rewrite such a query by putting an equivalent where clause before the projection (in which case you can drop the projection).

**Distinct**

Distinct returns the unique values of a field or property of the documents in the collection. You use a projection to identify the field or property whose distinct values you want.

```
var result =
    (from c in collection.AsQueryable<C>()
    select c.X)
    .Distinct();
// or
var result =
    collection.AsQueryable<C>()
    .Select(c => c.X)
    .Distinct();
```

The projection must select a particular field or property of the document. If the value of that field or property is represented in MongoDB as an array you can also use array indexing to select an item from the array.

```
var result =
    (from c in collection.AsQueryable<C>()
    select c.A[i])
    .Distinct();
// or
var result =
    collection.AsQueryable<C>()
    .Select(c => c.A[i])
    .Distinct();
```

**ElementAt**

ElementAt returns a particular document from a result set. Often you will combine this with a sort order.

```
var result =
    (from c in collection.AsQueryable<C>()
    where c.X > 0
    orderby c.X
    select c)
    .ElementAt(index);
// or
var result =
    collection.AsQueryable<C>()
    .Where(c => c.X > 0)
    .OrderBy(c => c.X)
    .ElementAt(index);
```

If the result set has fewer documents than index ElementAt throws an exception.

**ElementAtOrDefault**

ElementAtOrDefault is just like ElementAt except that if there are fewer documents than index it returns null instead of throwing an exception.

**First**

First returns the first document from a result set. Often you will combine this with a sort order.

```
var result =
    (from c in collection.AsQueryable<C>()
    where c.X > 0
    orderby c.X
    select c)
    .First();
// or
var result =
    collection.AsQueryable<C>()
    .Where(c => c.X > 0)
    .OrderBy(c => c.X)
    .First();
```

If the result set has no documents First throws an exception.

**First (with predicate)**

This overload of First allows you to provide a predicate as an argument to First. This is an alternative to using a where clause.

```
var result =
    (from c in collection.AsQueryable<C>()
    orderby c.X
    select c)
    .First(c => c.X > 0);
// or
var result =
    collection.AsQueryable<C>()
    .OrderBy(c => c.X)
    .First(c => c.X > 0);
```

First with a predicate is not supported after a projection (at least not yet). So the following is not valid:

```
var result =
    collection.AsQueryable<C>()
    .OrderBy(c => c.X)
    .Select(c => c.X)
    .Count(x => x > 0);
```

You can usually rewrite such a query by putting an equivalent where clause before the projection.

If the result set has no documents First with a predicate throws an exception.

**FirstOrDefault**

FirstOrDefault is just like First except that if there are no matching documents it returns null instead of throwing an exception.

**FirstOrDefault (with predicate)**

FirstOrDefault with a predicate is just like First with a predicate except that if there are no matching documents it returns null instead of throwing an exception.

**Last**

Last returns the last document from a result set. Often you will combine this with a sort order.

```
var result =
    (from c in collection.AsQueryable<C>()
    where c.X > 0
    orderby c.X
    select c)
    .Last();
// or
var result =
    collection.AsQueryable<C>()
    .Where(c => c.X > 0)
    .OrderBy(c => c.X)
    .Last();
```

If the result set has no documents Last throws an exception.

**Last (with predicate)**

This overload of Last allows you to provide a predicate as an argument to Last. This is an alternative to using a where clause.

```
var result =
    (from c in collection.AsQueryable<C>()
    orderby c.X
    select c)
    .Last(c => c.X > 0);
// or
var result =
    collection.AsQueryable<C>()
    .OrderBy(c => c.X)
    .Last(c => c.X > 0);
```

Last with a predicate is not supported after a projection (at least not yet). So the following is not valid:

```
var result =
    collection.AsQueryable<C>()
    .OrderBy(c => c.X)
    .Select(c => c.X)
    .Last(x => x > 0);
```

You can usually rewrite such a query by putting an equivalent where clause before the projection.

If the result set has no documents Last throws an exception.

#### LastOrDefault

LastOrDefault is just like Last except that if there are no matching documents it returns null instead of throwing an exception.

#### LastOrDefault (with predicate)

LastOrDefault with a predicate is just like Last with a predicate except that if there are no matching documents it returns null instead of throwing an exception.

#### LongCount

LongCount is just like Count except that the return value is a 64-bit integer instead of a 32-bit integer.

#### LongCount (with predicate)

LongCount with a predicate is just like Count with a predicate except that the return value is a 64-bit integer instead of a 32-bit integer.

#### Max

Max returns the maximum value of a field or property of the documents in the collection. You use a projection to identify the field or property whose maximum value you want.

```
var result =
    (from c in collection.AsQueryable<C>()
    select c.X)
    .Max();
// or
var result =
    collection.AsQueryable<C>()
    .Select(c => c.X)
    .Max();
```

The projection must select a particular field or property of the document. If the value of that field or property is represented in MongoDB as an array you can also use array indexing to select an item from the array.

```
var result =
    (from c in collection.AsQueryable<C>()
    select c.A[i])
    .Max();
// or
var result =
    collection.AsQueryable<C>()
    .Select(c => c.A[i])
    .Max();
```

#### Max (with selector)

This overload of Max lets you select the field or property whose maximum value you want as an argument to Max instead of to Select.

```
var result =
    (from c in collection.AsQueryable<C>()
    select c)
    .Max(c => c.X);
// or
var result =
    collection.AsQueryable<C>()
    .Max(c => c.X);
```

**Min**

Min returns the minimum value of a field or property of the documents in the collection. You use a projection to identify the field or property whose minimum value you want.

```
var result =
    (from c in collection.AsQueryable<C>()
    select c.X)
    .Min();
// or
var result =
    collection.AsQueryable<C>()
    .Select(c => c.X)
    .Min();
```

The projection must select a particular field or property of the document. If the value of that field or property is represented in MongoDB as an array you can also use array indexing to select an item from the array.

```
var result =
    (from c in collection.AsQueryable<C>()
    select c.A[i])
    .Min();
// or
var result =
    collection.AsQueryable<C>()
    .Select(c => c.A[i])
    .Min();
```

**Min (with selector)**

This overload of Min lets you select the field or property whose minimum value you want as an argument to Min instead of to Select.

```
var result =
    (from c in collection.AsQueryable<C>()
    select c)
    .Min(c => c.X);
// or
var result =
    collection.AsQueryable<C>()
    .Min(c => c.X);
```

**OrderBy**

OrderBy is used to specify an ascending sort order for the result set.

```
var query =
    from c in collection.AsQueryable<C>()
    orderby c.X
    select c;
// or
var query =
    collection.AsQueryable<C>()
    .OrderBy(c => c.X);
```

#### OrderByDescending

OrderBy is used to specify a descending sort order for the result set.

```
var query =
    from c in collection.AsQueryable<C>()
    orderby c.X descending
    select c;
// or
var query =
    collection.AsQueryable<C>()
    .OrderByDescending(c => c.X);
```

#### Select

Select is used to project a new result type from the matching documents. In the 1.4 version of the C# driver a projection must typically be the last operation (with a few exceptions like Distinct, Max and Min).

```
var query =
    from c in collection.AsQueryable<C>()
    select new { c.X, c.Y };
// or
var query =
    collection.AsQueryable<C>()
    .Select(c => new { c.X, c.Y });
```

#### Single

Single returns the first and only document from a result set.

```
var result =
    (from c in collection.AsQueryable<C>()
    where c.X > 0
    orderby c.X
    select c)
    .Single();
// or
var result =
    collection.AsQueryable<C>()
    .Where(c => c.X > 0)
    .OrderBy(c => c.X)
    .Single();
```

If the result set has no documents or multiple documents Single throws an exception.

#### Single (with predicate)

This overload of Single allows you to provide a predicate as an argument to Single . This is an alternative to using a where clause.

```
var result =
    (from c in collection.AsQueryable<C>()
    orderby c.X
    select c)
    .Single(c => c.X > 0);
// or
var result =
    collection.AsQueryable<C>()
    .OrderBy(c => c.X)
    .Single(c => c.X > 0);
```

Single with a predicate is not supported after a projection (at least not yet). So the following is not valid:

```
var result =
    collection.AsQueryable<C>()
    .OrderBy(c => c.X)
    .Select(c => c.X)
    .Single(x => x > 0);
```

You can usually rewrite such a query by putting an equivalent where clause before the projection.

If the result set has no documents or multiple documents Single throws an exception.

#### SingleOrDefault

SingleOrDefault is just like Single except that if there are no matching documents it returns null instead of throwing an exception.

#### SingleOrDefault (with predicate)

SingleOrDefault with a predicate is just like Single with a predicate except that if there are no matching documents it returns null instead of throwing an exception.

#### Skip

Use Skip to specify how many documents to skip from the beginning of the result set. Often you will combine Skip with a sort order.

```
var query =
    (from c in collection.AsQueryable<C>()
    orderby c.X
    select c)
    .Skip(100);
// or
var query =
    collection.AsQueryable<C>()
    .OrderBy(c => c.X)
    .Skip(100);
```

#### Take

Use Take to specify how many documents to return from the server. When combining Take with Skip often you will also specify a sort order.

```
var query =
    (from c in collection.AsQueryable<C>()
    orderby c.X
    select c)
    .Skip(100)
    .Take(100);
// or
var query =
    collection.AsQueryable<C>()
    .OrderBy(c => c.X)
    .Skip(100)
    .Take(100);
```

**ThenBy**

ThenBy is used to specify an additional ascending sort order for the result set.

```
var query =
    from c in collection.AsQueryable<C>()
    orderby c.X, c.Y
    select c;
// or
var query =
    collection.AsQueryable<C>()
    .OrderBy(c => c.X)
    .ThenBy(c => c.Y);
```

**ThenByDescending**

ThenBy is used to specify an additional descending sort order for the result set.

```
var query =
    from c in collection.AsQueryable<C>()
    orderby c.X, c.Y descending
    select c;
// or
var query =
    collection.AsQueryable<C>()
    .OrderBy(c => c.X)
    .ThenByDescending(c => c.Y);
```

**Where**

A where clause is used to specify which documents the query should return. A where clause is a C# expression that maps the query document type to a boolean value. If the expression returns true the document "matches" the query and is included in the result set.

```
var query =
    from c in collection.AsQueryable<C>()
    where c.X > 0
    select c;
// or
var query =
    collection.AsQueryable<C>()
    .Where(c => c.X > 0);
```

Sometimes a predicate can be supplied in other places besides a where clause, and it is also possible to have multiple where clauses. When multiple predicates are involved they are combined into a single composite predicate by combining the individual predicates with the && operator.

For example, the following queries are equivalent:

```
var query =
    (from c in collection.AsQueryable<C>()
    where c.X > 0
    where c.Y > 0)
    .First(c.Z > 0);
// or
var query =
    (from c in collection.AsQueryable<C>()
    where c.X > 0 && c.Y > 0 && c.Z > 0)
    .First();
```

## Supported where clauses

This section dcouments the supported where clauses.

As mentioned earlier, not all C# expressions are supported as a where clause. You can use this documentation as a guide to what is supported, or you can just try an expression and see if it works (a runtime exception is thrown if the where clause is not supported).

Where clauses are typically introduced using the Where query operator, but the same expressions are supported wherever a predicate is called for. In some cases multiple where clauses and predicates will be combined, in which case they are combined with the && operator.

**Note:** The 1.4 version of the C# driver requires that all where clauses that compare a field or property against a value have the constant on the right hand side. This restriction will be lifted in the next release.

#### And (&& operator)

Sub-expressions can be combined with the && operator to test whether all of them are true.

```
var query =
    from c in collection.AsQueryable<C>()
    where c.X > 0 && c.Y > 0
    select c;
// or
var query =
    collection.AsQueryable<C>()
    .Where(c => c.X > 0 && c.Y > 0);
```

This is translated to the following MongoDB query:

```
{ X : { $gt : 0 }, Y : { $gt : 0 } }
```

In some cases the And query can't be flattened as shown, and the $and operator will be used. The following example matches documents where X is both a multiple of 2 and a multiple of 3:

```
var query =
    from c in collection.AsQueryable<C>()
    where (c.X % 2 == 0) && (c.X % 3 == 0)
    select c;
// or
var query =
    collection.AsQueryable<C>()
    .Where(c => (c.X % 2 == 0) && (c.X % 3 == 0));
```

This is translated to the following MongoDB query using $and:

```
{ $and : [{ X : { $mod : [2, 0] } }, { X : { $mod : [3, 0] } }] }
```

#### Any

This method is used to test whether an array field or property contains any items.

```
var query =
    from c in collection.AsQueryable<C>()
    where c.A.Any()
    select c;
// or
var query =
    collection.AsQueryable<C>()
    .Where(c => c.A.Any());
```

matches any document where A has 1 or more items.

This is translated to the following MongoDB query:

```
{ A : { $ne : null, $not : { $size : 0 } } }
```

#### Boolean constant

This form is mostly for completeness. You will probably use it rarely. It allows a boolean constant to be used to either match or not match the document.

```
var query =
    from c in collection.AsQueryable<C>()
    where true
    select c;
// or
var query =
    collection.AsQueryable<C>()
    .Where(c => true);
```

This is translated to the following MongoDB query:

```
{ _id : { $exists : true } }
```

Which matches all documents since the _id is a mandatory field.

#### Boolean field or property

A boolean field or property of the document doesn't have to be compared to true, it can just be mentioned in the where clause and there is an implied comparison to true.

```
var query =
    from c in collection.AsQueryable<C>()
    where c.B
    select c;
// or
var query =
    collection.AsQueryable<C>()
    .Where(c => c.B);
```

This is translated to the following MongoDB query:

```
{ B : true }
```

**Contains (Enumerable method)**

This method is used to test whether an array (or array-like) field or property contains a particular value:

```
var query =
    from c in collection.AsQueryable<C>()
    where c.A.Contains(123)
    select c;
// or
var query =
    collection.AsQueryable<C>()
    .Where(c => c.A.Contains(123));
```

This is transalated to the following MongoDB query:

```
{ A : 123 }
```

This translation relies on the way array fields are treated by the MongoDB query language.

**Contains (string method)**

This method is used to test whether a string field or property of the document contains a particular substring.

```
var query =
    from c in collection.AsQueryable<C>()
    where c.S.Contains("abc")
    select c;
// or
var query =
    collection.AsQueryable<C>()
    .Where(c => c.S.Contains("abc"));
```

This is translated to the following MongoDB query (using regular expressions):

```
{ S : /abc/ }
```

**ContainsAll (LINQ to MongoDB extension method)**

This method is used to test whether an array (or array-like) field or property contains all of the provided values.

```
var query =
    from c in collection.AsQueryable<C>()
    where c.A.ContainsAll(new[] { 1, 2, 3 })
    select c;
// or
var query =
    collection.AsQueryable<C>()
    .Where(c => c.A.ContainsAll(new[] { 1, 2, 3 }));
```

This is translated to the following MongoDB query:

```
{ A : { $all : [1, 2, 3] } }
```

#### ContainsAny (LINQ to MongoDB extension method)

This method is used to test whether an array (or array-like) field or property contains any of the provided values.

```
var query =
    from c in collection.AsQueryable<C>()
    where c.A.ContainsAny(new[] { 1, 2, 3 })
    select c;
// or
var query =
    collection.AsQueryable<C>()
    .Where(c => c.A.ContainsAny(new[] { 1, 2, 3 }));
```

This is translated to the following MongoDB query:

```
{ A : { $in : [1, 2, 3] } }
```

#### Count method (array length)

This method is used to test whether an enumerable field or property has a certain count of items.

```
var query =
    from c in collection.AsQueryable<C>()
    where c.L.Count() == 3
    select c;
// or
var query =
    collection.AsQueryable<C>()
    .Where(c => c.L.Count() == 3);
```

This is translated to the following MongoDB query:

```
{ L : { $size: 3 } }
```

#### Count property (array length)

This property is used to test whether a list (or list-like) field or property has a certain count of items.

```
var query =
    from c in collection.AsQueryable<C>()
    where c.L.Count == 3
    select c;
// or
var query =
    collection.AsQueryable<C>()
    .Where(c => c.L.Count == 3);
```

This is translated to the following MongoDB query:

```
{ L : { $size: 3 } }
```

**EndsWith (string method)**

This method is used to test whether a string field or property of the document ends with a particular substring.

```
var query =
    from c in collection.AsQueryable<C>()
    where c.S.EndsWith("abc")
    select c;
// or
var query =
    collection.AsQueryable<C>()
    .Where(c => c.S.EndsWith("abc"));
```

This is translated to the following MongoDB query (using regular expressions):

```
{ S : /abc$/ }
```

**Enum comparisons (==, !=, <, <=, >, >=)**

Enum fields or properties can be compared to constants of the same enum type. The relative comparison are based on the value of the underlying integer type.

```
public enum E { None, A, B };

var query =
    from c in collection.AsQueryable<C>()
    where c.E == E.A
    select c;
// or
var query =
    collection.AsQueryable<C>()
    .Where(c => c.E == E.A);
```

This is translated to the following MongoDB query:

```
{ E : 1 }
```

The LINQ implementation takes the representation of serialized values into account, so if you have configured your class map to store enums as string values instead of integer values the MongoDB query would instead be:

```
{ E : "A" }
```

**In (LINQ to MongoDB extension method)**

The In method is used to test whether a field or property is equal any of a set of provided values.

```
var query =
    from c in collection.AsQueryable<C>()
    where c.X.In(new [] { 1, 2, 3 })
    select c;
// or
var query =
    collection.AsQueryable<C>()
    .Where(c.X.In(new [] { 1, 2, 3 }));
```

This is translated to the following MongoDB query:

```
{ X : { $in : [1, 2, 3] } }
```

**Inject**

Inject is a pseudo-method that is used to inject a lower level MongoDB query into a LINQ query. The following query looks for X values that are larger than 0 and are 64-bit integers.

```
var query =
    from c in collection.AsQueryable<C>()
    where c.X > 0 && Query.Type("X", BsonType.Int64).Inject()
    select c;
// or
var query =
    collection.AsQueryable<C>()
    .Where(c => c.X > 0 && Query.Type("X", BsonType.Int64).Inject());
```

This is translated to the following MongoDB query:

```
{ X : { $gt : 0, $type : 18 } }
```

**IsMatch (regular expression method)**

This method is used to test whether a string field or property matches a regular expression.

```
var regex = new Regex("^abc");
var query =
    from c in collection.AsQueryable<C>()
    where regex.IsMatch(c.S)
    select c;
// or
var query =
    collection.AsQueryable<C>()
    .Where(c => regex.IsMatch(c.S));
```

This is translated to the following MongoDB query:

```
{ S : /^abc/ }
```

You can also use the static IsMatch method.

```
var query =
    from c in collection.AsQueryable<C>()
    where Regex.IsMatch(c.S, "^abc")
    select c;
// or
var query =
    collection.AsQueryable<C>()
    .Where(c => Regex.IsMatch(c.S, "^abc"));
```

This is translated to the following MongoDB query:

```
{ S : /^abc/ }
```

**Length (array length)**

This method is used to test whether an array (or array-like) field or property has a certain count of items.

```
var query =
    from c in collection.AsQueryable<C>()
    where c.A.Length == 3
    select c;
// or
var query =
    collection.AsQueryable<C>()
    .Where(c => c.A.Length == 3);
```

This is translated to the following MongoDB query:

```
{ A : { $size: 3 } }
```

**Mod (% operator)**

This operator is used to test the result of the mod operator against a field or property of the document. The following query matches all the documents where X is odd.

```
var query =
    from c in collection.AsQueryable<C>()
    where c.X % 2 == 1
    select c;
// or
var query =
    collection.AsQueryable<C>()
    .Where(c => c.X % 2 == 1);
```

This is translated to the following MongoDB query:

```
{ X : { $mod : [2, 1] } }
```

**Not (! operator)**

The ! operator is used to reverse the sense of a test.

```
var query =
    from c in collection.AsQueryable<C>()
    where !(c.X > 1)
    select c;
// or
var query =
    collection.AsQueryable<C>()
    .Where(c => !(c.X > 1));
```

This is translated into the following MongoDB query:

```
{ X : { $not : { $gt : 1 } } }
```

Note that !(c.X > 1) is not equivalent to (c.X <= 1) in cases where c.X is missing or does not have a numeric type.

**Numeric comparisons (==, !=, <, <=, >, >=)**

Numeric fields or properties can be compared using any of the above operators.

```
var query =
    from c in collection.AsQueryable<C>()
    where c.X == 0 && c.Y < 100
    select c;
// or
var query =
    collection.AsQueryable<C>()
    .Where(c => c.X > 0 && c.Y < 100);
```

This is translated into the following MongoDB query:

```
{ X : 0, Y : { $lt : 100 } }
```

**Or (|| operator)**

Sub-expressions can be combined with the || operator to test whether any of them is true.

```
var query =
    from c in collection.AsQueryable<C>()
    where c.X > 0 || c.Y > 0
    select c;
// or
var query =
    collection.AsQueryable<C>()
    .Where(c => c.X > 0 || c.Y > 0);
```

This is translated to the following MongoDB query:

```
{ $or : [{ X : { $gt : 0 } }, { Y : { $gt : 0 } }] }
```

**StartsWith (string method)**

This method is used to test whether a string field or property of the document starts with a particular substring.

```
var query =
    from c in collection.AsQueryable<C>()
    where c.S.StartsWith("abc")
    select c;
// or
var query =
    collection.AsQueryable<C>()
    .Where(c => c.S.StartsWith("abc"));
```

This is translated to the following MongoDB query (using regular expressions):

```
{ S : /^abc/ }
```

## CSharp Driver Quickstart


- Introduction
- Downloading the C# driver
- Add a reference to the C# driver DLLs
- Add required using statements
- Get a reference to the server object
- Get a reference to a database object
- Decide if you want to work with the BsonDocument object model or with your own domain classes
- Get a reference to a collection object
- Insert a document
- Find an existing document
- Save a document
- Update an existing document
- Remove an existing document
- You do NOT need to call Connect or Disconnect
- Full sample program


### Introduction

This quick-start provides just enough information to get you started using the C# driver. After you have gotten started you can refer to the rest of the documentation for more information.

### Downloading the C# driver

You can download the C# driver here:

http://github.com/mongodb/mongo-csharp-driver/downloads

If you downloaded the .zip file, simply unzip it and place the contents anywhere you want.

If you downloaded the .msi file, double click on the .msi file to run the setup program, which will install the C# driver DLLs in the "C:\Program Files (x86)\MongoDB\CSharp Driver 1.x" directory (the exact path may vary on your system).

### Add a reference to the C# driver DLLs

Right click on the References folder in Visual Studio's Solution Explorer and select "Add Reference...". Navigate to the folder where the C# driver DLLs were installed and add a reference to the following DLLs:

1. MongoDB.Bson.dll
2. MongoDB.Driver.dll

As an alternative you could use the NuGet package manager to add the C# driver package to your solution.

### Add required using statements

As a minimum you will need the following using statements:

```
using MongoDB.Bson;
using MongoDB.Driver;
```

Additionally, you will frequently add one or more of these using statements:

```
using MongoDB.Driver.Builders;
using MongoDB.Driver.GridFS;
using MongoDB.Driver.Linq;
```

There are additional namespaces that would only be required in special cases.

### Get a reference to the server object

The easiest way to get a reference to a server object is using a connection string:

```
var connectionString = "mongodb://localhost/?safe=true";
var server = MongoServer.Create(connectionString);
```

You should almost always add "safe=true" to your connection string.

If you want to store the server object in a global variable you can, but MongoServer.Create always returns the same instance of the server object when you call it with the same connection string so it's also OK to just call MongoServer.Create again whenever you need to.

### Get a reference to a database object

To get a reference to a database object from the server object write this:

```
var database = server.GetDatabase("test"); // "test" is the name of the database
```

If you use more than one database call GetDatabase again for each database you want to use.

### Decide if you want to work with the BsonDocument object model or with your own domain classes

There are two ways you can work with collections:

1. using the BsonDocument object model
2. using your own domain classes

You would use the BsonDocument object model when the data you are working with is so free form that it would be difficult or impossible to define domain classes for it.

Because it is so much easier to work with your own domain classes this quick-start will assume that you are going to do that. The C# driver can work with your domain classes provided that they:

1. Have a no-argument constructor
2. Define public read/write fields or properties for the data you want stored in the database

These requirements are essentially the same as those imposed by .NET's XmlSerializer.

In addition, if your domain class is going to be used as the root document it must contain an Id field or property (typically named "Id" although you can override that if necessary). Normally the Id will be of type ObjectId.

### Get a reference to a collection object

For purposes of illustration let's assume you are using a domain class called Entity. You would get a reference to a collection containing Entity documents like this:

```
var collection = database.GetCollection<Entity>("entities"); // "entities" is the name of the
collection
```

### Insert a document

Inserting a document is easy:

```
var entity = new Entity { Name = "Tom" };
collection.Insert(entity);
var id = entity.Id; // Insert will set the Id if necessary (as it was in this example)
```

### Find an existing document

In this example we will read back an Entity assuming we know the Id value:

```
var query = Query.EQ("_id", id);
var entity = collection.FindOne(query);
```

Query.EQ is using the Query builder class to help you build the query. "_id" is the name of the field as stored in the database (normally the name of the field in the database is exactly the same as the name of the field or property in your domain class, but Id is an exception and is mapped to "_id" in the database).

Other query operators include: GT, GTE, In, LT, LTE, Near, NE, And, Or (and a few other more specialized ones).

### Save a document

You can save changes to an existing document like this:

```
entity.Name = "Dick";
collection.Save(entity);
```

### Update an existing document

An alternative to Save is Update. The difference is that Save sends the entire document back to the server, but Update sends just the changes. For example:

```
var query = Query.EQ("_id", id);
var update = Update.Set("Name", "Harry"); // update modifiers
collection.Update(query, update);
```

This example uses the Update builder to easily build the update modifiers.

### Remove an existing document

To remove an existing document from a collection you write:

```
var query = Query.EQ("_id", id);
collection.Remove(query);
```

### You do NOT need to call Connect or Disconnect

The C# driver has a connection pool to use connections to the server efficiently. There is no need to call Connect or Disconnect; just let the driver take care of the connections (calling Connect is harmless, but calling Disconnect is bad because it closes all the connections in the connection

pool).

### Full sample program

```
using System;
using System.Collections.Generic;
using System.Linq;
using System.Text;

using MongoDB.Bson;
using MongoDB.Driver;
using MongoDB.Driver.Builders;


namespace ConsoleApplication1
{
    public class Entity
    {
        public ObjectId Id { get; set; }
        public string Name { get; set; }
    }

    class Program
    {
        static void Main(string[] args)
        {
            var connectionString = "mongodb://localhost/?safe=true";
var server = MongoServer.Create(connectionString);
            var database = server.GetDatabase("test");
            var collection = database.GetCollection<Entity>("entities");

            var entity = new Entity { Name = "Tom" };
            collection.Insert(entity);
            var id = entity.Id;

            var query = Query.EQ("_id", id);
            entity = collection.FindOne(query);

            entity.Name = "Dick";
            collection.Save(entity);

            var update = Update.Set("Name", "Harry");
            collection.Update(query, update);

            collection.Remove(query);
        }
    }
}
```

## CSharp Driver Serialization Tutorial


- Introduction
- Creating a class map
- Conventions
- Field or property level serialization options
    - Element name
    - Element order
    - Identifying the Id field or property
    - Selecting an IdGenerator to use for an Id field or property
    - Ignoring a field or property
    - Ignoring null values
    - Default values
    - Ignoring a member based on a ShouldSerializeXyz method
    - Identifying required fields
    - Serialization Options
        - DateTimeSerializationOptions
        - DictionarySerializationOptions

        - RepresentationSerializationOptions
- Class level serialization options
    - Ignoring extra elements
    - Supporting extra elements
    - Polymorphic classes and discriminators
    - Setting the discriminator value
    - Specifying known types
    - Scalar and hierarchical discriminators
- Customizing serialization
    - Supplementing the default serializer
    - Make a class responsible for its own serialization
    - Write a custom serializer
    - Write a custom Id generator
    - Write a custom convention


## Introduction

This document refers to version 1.2 of the C# Driver.

This section of the C# Driver Tutorial discusses serialization (and deserialization) of instances of C# classes to and from BSON documents. Serialization is the process of mapping an object to a BSON document that can be saved in MongoDB, and deserialization is the reverse process of reconstructing an object from a BSON document. For that reason the serialization process is also often referred to as "Object Mapping."

Serialization is handled by the BSON Library. The BSON Library has an extensible serialization architecture, so if you need to take control of serialization you can. The BSON Library provides a default serializer which should meet most of your needs, and you can supplement the default serializer in various ways to handle your particular needs.

The main way the default serializer handles serialization is through "class maps". A class map is a structure that defines the mapping between a class and a BSON document. It contains a list of the fields and properties of the class that participate in serialization and for each one defines the required serialization parameters (e.g., the name of the BSON element, representation options, etc...).

The default serializer also has built in support for many .NET data types (primitive values, arrays, lists, dictionaries, etc...) for which class maps are not used.

Before an instance of a class can be serialized a class map must exist. You can either create this class map yourself or simply allow the class map to be created automatically when first needed (called "automapping"). You can exert some control over the automapping process either by decorating your classes with serialization related attributes or by using initialization code (attributes are very convenient to use but for those who prefer to keep serialization details out of their domain classes be assured that anything that can be done with attributes can also be done without them).

## Creating a class map

To create a class map in your intialization code write:

```
BsonClassMap.RegisterClassMap<MyClass>();
```

which results in MyClass being automapped and registered. In this case you could just as well have allowed the class to be automapped by the serializer (when first serialized or deserialized). The one case where you must call RegisterClassMap yourself (even without arguments) is when you are using a polymorphic class hierarchy: in this case you must register all the known subclasses to guarantee that the discriminators get registered.

If you want to control the creation of the class map you can provide your own initialization code in the form of a lambda expression:

```
BsonClassMap.RegisterClassMap<MyClass)(cm => {
    cm.MapProperty(c => c.SomeProperty);
    cm.MapProperty(c => c.AnotherProperty);
});
```

When your lamba expression is executed the cm (short for class map) parameter is passed an empty class map for you to fill in. In this example two properties are added to the class map by calling the MapProperty method. The arguments to MapProperty are themselves lambda expressions which identify the property of the class. The advantage of using a lambda expression instead of just a string parameter with the name of the property is that Intellisense and compile time checking ensure that you can't misspell the name of the property.

It is also possible to use automapping and then override some of the results. We will see examples of that later on.

Note that a class map must only be registered once (an exception will be thrown if you try to register the same class map more than once). Usually you call RegisterClassMap from some code path that is known to execute only once (the Main method, the Application_Start event handler, etc...). If you must call RegisterClassMap from a code path that executes more than once, you can use IsClassMapRegistered to check whether a class map has already been registered for a class:

```
if (!BsonClassMap.IsClassMapRegistered(typeof(MyClass))) {
    // register class map for MyClass
}
```

### Conventions

When automapping a class there are a lot of decisions that need to be made. For example:

- Which fields or properties of the class should be serialized
- Which field or property of the class is the "Id"
- What element name should be used in the BSON document
- If the class is being used polymorphically what discriminator values are used
- What should happen if a BSON document has elements we don't recognize
- Does the field or property have a default value
- Should the default value be serialized or ignored
- Should null values be serialized or ignored

Answers to these questions are represented by a set of "conventions". For each convention there is a default convention that is the most likely one you will be using, but you can override individual conventions (and even write your own) as necessary.

If you want to use your own conventions that differ from the defaults simply create an instance of ConventionProfile and set the values you want to override and then register that profile (in other words, tell the default serializer when your special conventions should be used). For example:

```
var myConventions = new ConventionProfile();
// override any conventions you want to be different
BsonClassMap.RegisterConventions(
    myConventions,
    t => t.FullName.StartsWith("MyNamespace.")
);
```

The second parameter is a filter function that defines when this convention profile should be used. In this case we are saying that any classes whose full names begin with "MyNamespace." should use myConventions.

ConventionProfile provides the following methods to allow you to set individual conventions:

- SetDefaultValueConvention
- SetElementNameConvention
- SetExtraElementsMemberConvention
- SetIdGeneratorConvention
- SetIdMemberConvention
- SetIgnoreExtraElementsConvention
- SetIgnoreIfNullConvention
- SetMemberFinderConvention
- SetSerializeDefaultValueConvention

### Field or property level serialization options

There are many ways you can control serialization. The previous section discussed conventions, which are a convenient way to control serialization decisions for many classes at once. You can also control serialization at the individual class or field or property level.

Serialization can be controlled either by decorating your classes and fields or properties with serialization related attributes or by writing code to initialize class maps appropriately. For each aspect of serialization you can control we will be showing both ways.

#### *Element name*

To specify an element name using attributes, write:

```
public class MyClass {
    [BsonElement("sp")]
    public string SomeProperty { get; set; }
}
```

The same result can be achieved without using attributes with the following initialization code:

```
BsonClassMap.RegisterClassMap<MyClass>(cm => {
    cm.AutoMap();
    cm.GetMemberMap(c => c.SomeProperty).SetElementName("sp");
});
```

Note that we are first automapping the class and then overriding one particular piece of the class map. If you didn't call AutoMap first then GetMemberMap would throw an exception because there would be no member maps.

### *Element order*

If you want precise control over the order of the elements in the BSON document you can use the Order named parameter to the BsonElement attribute:

```
public class MyClass {
    [BsonElement("sp", Order = 1)]
    public string SomeProperty { get; set; }
}
```

Or using initialization code instead of attributes:

```
BsonClassMap.RegisterClassMap<MyClass>(cm => {
    cm.AutoMap();
    cm.GetMemberMap(c => c.SomeProperty).SetElementName("sp").SetOrder(1);
});
```

Any fields or properties that do not have an explicit Order will occur after those that do have an Order.

### *Identifying the Id field or property*

To identify which field or property of a class is the Id you can write:

```
public class MyClass {
    [BsonId]
    public string SomeProperty { get; set; }
}
```

Or using initialization code instead of attributes:

```
BsonClassMap.RegisterClassMap<MyClass>(cm => {
    cm.AutoMap();
    cm.SetIdMember(cm.GetMemberMap(c => c.SomeProperty));
});
```

When not using AutoMap, you can also map a field or property and identify it as the Id in one step as follows:

```
BsonClassMap.RegisterClassMap<MyClass>(cm => {
    cm.MapIdProperty(c => c.SomeProperty);
    // mappings for other fields and properties
});
```

### *Selecting an IdGenerator to use for an Id field or property*

When you Insert a document the C# driver checks to see if the Id member has been assigned a value, and if not, generates a new unique value for it. Since the Id member can be of any type, the driver requires the help of a matching IdGenerator to check whether the Id has a value assigned to it and to generate a new value if necessary. The driver has the following IdGenerators built-in:

- BsonObjectIdGenerator
- CombGuidGenerator
- GuidGenerator
- NullIdChecker

- ObjectIdGenerator
- StringObjectIdGenerator
- ZeroIdChecker<T>

Some of these IdGenerators are used automatically for commonly used Id types:

- BsonObjectIdGenerator is used for BsonObjectId
- GuidGenerator is used for Guid
- ObjectIdGenerator is used for ObjectId
- StringObjectIdGenerator is used for strings represented externally as ObjectId

To select an IdGenerator to use for your Id field or property write:

```
public class MyClass {
    [BsonId(IdGenerator = typeof(CombGuidGenerator))]
    public Guid Id { get; set; }
}
```

Or using intialization code instead of attributes:

```
BsonClassMap.RegisterClassMap<MyClass>(cm => {
    cm.AutoMap();
    cm.IdMemberMap.SetIdGenerator(CombGuidGenerator.Instance);
});
```

You could also say that you want to use the CombGuidGenerator for all Guids. In this case you would write:

```
BsonSerializer.RegisterIdGenerator(
    typeof(Guid),
    CombGuidGenerator.Instance
);
```

The NullIdChecker and ZeroIdChecker<T> IdGenerators can be used when you don't have an IdGenerator for an Id type but you want to enforce that the Id is not null or zero. These pseudo-IdGenerators throw an exception if their GenerateId method is called. You can select it for an individual member just like a CombGuidGenerator was selected in the previous example, or you can turn on one or both of these IdGenerators for all types as follows:

```
BsonSerializer.UseNullIdChecker = true; // used for reference types
BsonSerializer.UseZeroIdChecker = true; // used for value types
```

Note: in version 1.0 of the C# Driver NullIdChecker and ZeroIdChecker<T> were always used, but it was decided that their use should be optional, since null and zero are valid values for an Id as far as the server is concerned, so they should only be considered an error if the developer has specifically said they should be.

### *Ignoring a field or property*

When constructing a class map manually you can ignore a field or property simply by not adding it to the class map. When using AutoMap you need a way to specify that a field or property should be ignored. To do so using attributes write:

```
public class MyClass {
    [BsonIgnore]
    public string SomeProperty { get; set; }
}
```

Or using initialization code instead of attributes:

```
BsonClassMap.RegisterClassMap<MyClass>(cm => {
    cm.AutoMap();
    cm.UnmapProperty(c => c.SomeProperty);
});
```

In this case AutoMap will have initially added the property to the class map automatically but then UnmapProperty will remove it.

### *Ignoring null values*

By default null values are serialized to the BSON document as a BSON Null. An alternative is to serialize nothing to the BSON document when the field or property has a null value. To specify this using attributes write:

```
public class MyClass {
    [BsonIgnoreIfNull]
    public string SomeProperty { get; set; }
}
```

Or using initialization code instead of attributes:

```
BsonClassMap.RegisterClassMap<MyClass>(cm => {
    cm.AutoMap();
    cm.GetMemberMap(c => c.SomeProperty).SetIgnoreIfNull(true);
});
```

### *Default values*

You can specify a default value for a field or property as follows:

```
public class MyClass {
    [BsonDefaultValue("abc")]
    public string SomeProperty { get; set; }
}
```

Or using initialization code instead of attributes:

```
BsonClassMap.RegisterClassMap<MyClass>(cm => {
    cm.AutoMap();
    cm.GetMemberMap(c => c.SomeProperty).SetDefaultValue("abc");
});
```

You can also control whether default values are serialized or not (the default is yes). To not serialize default values using attributes write:

```
public class MyClass {
    [BsonDefaultValue("abc", SerializeDefaultValue = false)]
    public string SomeProperty { get; set; }
}
```

Or using initialization code instead of attributes:

```
BsonClassMap.RegisterClassMap<MyClass>(cm => {
    cm.AutoMap();
    cm.GetMemberMap(c => c.SomeProperty).SetDefaultValue("abc", false);
});
```

or equivalently:

```
BsonClassMap.RegisterClassMap<MyClass>(cm => {
    cm.AutoMap();
    cm.GetMemberMap(c => c.SomeProperty)
        .SetDefaultValue("abc")
        .SetSerializeDefaultValue(false);
});
```

### *Ignoring a member based on a ShouldSerializeXyz method*

Sometimes the decision whether to serialize a member or not is more complicated than just whether the value is null or equal to the default value.

You can write a method that determines whether a value should be serialized. Usually the method for member Xyz is named ShouldSerializeXyz. If you follow this naming convention then AutoMap will automatically detect the method and use it. For example:

```
public class Employee {
    public ObjectId Id { get; set; }
    [BsonDateTimeOptions(DateOnly = true)]
    public DateTime DateOfBirth { get; set; }

    public bool ShouldSerializeDateOfBirth() {
        return DateOfBirth > new DateTime(1900, 1, 1);
    }
}
```

Or using initialization code instead of naming conventions:

```
BsonClassMap.RegisterClassMap<Employee>(cm => {
    cm.AutoMap();
    cm.GetMemberMap(c => c.DateOfBirth).SetShouldSerializeMethod(
        obj => ((Employee) obj).DateOfBirth > new DateTime(1900, 1, 1)
    );
});
```

### *Identifying required fields*

Normally, the deserializer doesn't care if the document being deserialized doesn't have a matching element for every field or property of the class. The members that don't have a matching element simply get assigned their default value (or null if they don't have a default value).

If you want to make an element in the document be required, you can mark an individual field or property like this:

```
public class MyClass {
    public ObjectId Id { get; set; }
    [BsonRequired]
    public string X { get; set; }
}
```

Or using initialization code instead attributes:

```
BsonClassMap.RegisterClassMap<MyClass>(cm => {
    cm.AutoMap();
    cm.GetMemberMap(c => c.X).SetIsRequired(true);
});
```

### *Serialization Options*

Serialization of some classes can be more finely controlled using serialization options (which are represented using classes that implement the IBsonSerializationOptions interface). Whether a class uses serialization options or not, and which ones, depends on the particular class involved. The following sections describe the available serialization option classes and the classes that use them.

#### DateTimeSerializationOptions

These serialization options control how a DateTime is serialized. For example:

```
public class MyClass {
    [BsonDateTimeOptions(DateOnly = true)]
    public DateTime DateOfBirth { get; set; }
    [BsonDateTimeOptions(Kind = DateTimeKind.Local)]
    public DateTime AppointmentTime { get; set; }
}
```

Here we are specifying that the DateOfBirth value holds a date only (so the TimeOfDay component must be zero). Additionally, because this is a date only, no timezone conversions at all will be performed. The AppointmentTime value is in local time and will be converted to UTC when it is serialized and converted back to local time when it is deserialized.

You can specify the same options using initialization code instead of attributes:

```
BsonClassMap.RegisterClassMap<MyClass>(cm => {
    cm.AutoMap();
    cm.GetMemberMap(c => c.DateOfBirth)
        .SetSerializationOptions(
            new DateTimeSerializationOptions { DateOnly = true });
    cm.GetMemberMap(c => c.AppointmentTime)
        .SetSerializationOptions(
            new DateTimeSerializationOptions { Kind = DateTimeKind.Local });
});
```

DateTimeSerializationOptions are supported by the serializers for the following classes: BsonDateTime and DateTime.

#### DictionarySerializationOptions

When serializing dictionaries there are several alternative ways that the contents of the dictionary can be represented. The different ways are represented by the DictionaryRepresentation enumeration:

```
public enum DictionaryRepresentation {
    Dynamic,
    Document,
    ArrayOfArrays,
    ArrayOfDocuments
}
```

A dictionary represented as a `Document` will be stored as a BsonDocument, and each entry in the dictionary will be represented by a BsonElement with the name equal to the key of the dictionary entry and the value equal to the value of the dictionary entry. This representation can only be used when all the keys in a dictionary are strings that are valid element names.

A dictionary represented as an `ArrayOfArrays` will be stored as a BsonArray of key/value pairs, where each key/value pair is stored as a nested two-element BsonArray where the two elements are the key and the value of the dictionary entry. This representation can be used even when the keys of the dictionary are not strings. This representation is very general and compact, and is the default representation when `Document` does not apply. One problem with this representation is that it is difficult to write queries against it, which motivated the introduction in the 1.2 version of the driver of the `ArrayOfDocuments` representation.

A dictionary represented as an `ArrayOfDocuments` will be stored as a BsonArray of key/value pairs, where each key/value pair is stored as a nested two-element BsonDocument of the form { k : key, v : value }. This representation is just as general as the `ArrayOfArrays` representation, but because the keys and values are tagged with element names it is much easier to write queries against it. For backward compatibility reasons this is not the default representation.

If the `Dynamic` representation is specified, the dictionary key values are inspected before serialization, and if all the keys are strings which are also valid element names, then the `Document` representation will be used, otherwise the `ArrayOfArrays` representation will be used.

If no other representation for a dictionary is specified, then `Dynamic` is assumed.

You can specify a DictionarySerializationOption as follows:

```
public class C {
    public ObjectId Id;
    [BsonDictionaryOptions(DictionaryRepresentation.ArrayOfDocuments)]
    public Dictionary<string, int> Values;
}
```

Or using initialization code instead of attributes:

```
BsonClassMap.RegisterClassMap<C>(cm => {
    cm.AutoMap();
    cm.GetMemberMap(c => c.Values)
        .SetSerializationOptions(DictionarySerializationOptions.ArrayOfDocuments);
});
```

DictionarySerializationOptions are suppored by the serializers for the following classes: the generic classes and interfaces Dictionary, IDictionary, SortedDictionary and SortedList, and the non-generic classes and interfaces Hashtable, IDictionary, ListDictionary, OrderedDictionary and SortedList.

#### RepresentationSerializationOptions

For some .NET primitive types you can control what BSON type you want used to represent the value in the BSON document. For example, you can specify whether a char value should be represented as a BSON Int32 or as a one-character BSON String:

```
public class MyClass {
    [BsonRepresentation(BsonType.Int32)]
    public char RepresentAsInt32 { get; set; }
    [BsonRepresentation(BsonType.String)]
    public char RepresentAsString { get; set; }
}
```

Or using initialization code instead of attributes:

```
BsonClassMap.RegisterClassMap<MyClass>(cm => {
    cm.AutoMap();
    cm.GetMemberMap(c => c.RepresentAsInt32)
        .SetRepresentation(BsonType.Int32);
    cm.GetMemberMap(c => c.RepresentAsString)
        .SetRepresentation(BsonType.String);
});
```

One case that deserves special mention is representing a string externally as an ObjectId. For example:

```
public class Employee {
    [BsonRepresentation(BsonType.ObjectId)]
    public string Id { get; set; }
    // other properties
}
```

In this case the serializer will convert the ObjectId to a string when reading data from the database and will convert the string back to an ObjectId when writing data to the database (the string value must be a valid ObjectId). Typically this is done when you want to keep your domain classes free of any dependencies on the C# driver, so you don't want to declare the Id as an ObjectId. String serves as a neutral representation that is at the same time easily readable for debugging purposes. To keep your domain classes free of dependencies on the C# driver you also won't want to use attributes, so you can accomplish the same thing using initialization code instead of attributes:

```
BsonClassMap.RegisterClassMap<Employee>(cm => {
    cm.AutoMap();
    cm.IdMemberMap.SetRepresentation(BsonType.ObjectId);
});
```

### Class level serialization options

There are several serialization options that are related to the class itself instead of to any particular field or property. You can set these class level options either by decorating the class with serialization related attributes or by writing initialization code. As usual, we will show both ways in the examples.

#### *Ignoring extra elements*

When a BSON document is deserialized the name of each element is used to look up a matching field or property in the class map. Normally, if no matching field or property is found, an exception will be thrown. If you want to ignore extra elements during deserialization, use the following attribute:

```
[BsonIgnoreExtraElements]
public MyClass {
    // fields and properties
}
```

Or using initialization code instead of attributes:

```
BsonClassMap.RegisterClassMap<MyClass>(cm => {
    cm.AutoMap();
    cm.SetIgnoreExtraElements(true);
});
```

### *Supporting extra elements*

You can design your class to be capable of handling any extra elements that might be found in a BSON document during deserialization. To do so, you must have a property of type BsonDocument and you must identify that property as the one that should hold any extra elements that are found (or you can name the property "ExtraElements" so that the default ExtraElementsMemberConvention will find it automatically). For example:

```
public MyClass {
    // fields and properties
[BsonExtraElements]
    public BsonDocument CatchAll { get; set; }
}
```

Or using initialization code instead of attributes:

```
BsonClassMap.RegisterClassMap<MyClass>(cm => {
    cm.AutoMap();
    cm.SetExtraElementsMember(cm.GetMemberMap(c => c.CatchAll));
});
```

When a BSON document is deserialized any extra elements found will be stored in the extra elements BsonDocument property. When the class is serialized the extra elements will be serialized also. One thing to note though is that the serialized class will probably not have the elements in exactly the same order as the original document. All extra elements will be serialized together when the extra elements member is serialized.

### *Polymorphic classes and discriminators*

When you have a class hierarchy and will be serializing instances of varying classes to the same collection you need a way to distinguish one from another. The normal way to do so is to write some kind of special value (called a "discriminator") in the document along with the rest of the elements that you can later look at to tell them apart. Since there are potentially many ways you could discriminate between actual types, the default serializer uses conventions for discriminators. The default serializer provides two standard discriminators: ScalarDiscriminatorConvention and HierarchicalDiscriminatorConvention. The default is the HierarchicalDiscriminatorConvention, but it behaves just like the ScalarDiscriminatorConvention until certain options are set to trigger its hierarchical behavior (more on this later).

The default discriminator conventions both use an element named "_t" to store the discriminator value in the BSON document. This element will normally be the second element in the BSON document (right after the "_id"). In the case of the ScalarDiscriminatorConvention the value of "_t" will be a single string. In the case of the HierarchicalDiscriminatorConvention the value of "_t" will be an array of discriminator values, one for each level of the class inheritance tree (again, more on this later).

While you will normally be just fine with the default discriminator convention, you might have to write a custom discriminator convention if you must inter-operate with data written by another driver or object mapper that uses a different convention for its discriminators.

### *Setting the discriminator value*

The default value for the discriminator is the name of the class (without the namespace part). You can specify a different value using attributes:

```
[BsonDiscriminator("myclass")]
public MyClass {
    // fields and properties
}
```

Or using initialization code instead of attributes:

```
BsonClassMap.RegisterClassMap<MyClass>(cm => {
    cm.AutoMap();
    cm.SetDiscriminator("myclass");
});
```

### *Specifying known types*

When deserializing polymorphic classes it is important that the serializer know about all the classes in the hierarchy before deserialization begins. If you ever see an error message about an "Unknown discriminator" it is because the deserializer can't figure out the class for that discriminator. If you are mapping your classes programmatically simply make sure that all classes in the hierarchy have been mapped before beginning deserialization. When using attributes and automapping you will need to inform the serializer about known types (i.e. subclasses) it should create class maps for. Here is an example of how to do this:

```
[BsonKnownTypes(typeof(Cat), typeof(Dog)]
public class Animal {
}

[BsonKnownTypes(typeof(Lion), typeof(Tiger)]
public class Cat : Animal {
}

public class Dog : Animal {
}

public class Lion : Cat {
}

public class Tiger : Cat {
}
```

The BsonKnownTypes attribute lets the serializer know what subclasses it might encounter during deserialization, so when Animal is automapped the serializer will also automap Cat and Dog (and recursively, Lion and Tiger as well).

Or using initialization code instead of attributes:

```
BsonClassMap.RegisterClassMap<Animal>();
BsonClassMap.RegisterClassMap<Cat>();
BsonClassMap.RegisterClassMap<Dog>();
BsonClassMap.RegisterClassMap<Lion>();
BsonClassMap.RegisterClassMap<Tiger>();
```

### *Scalar and hierarchical discriminators*

Normally a discriminator is simply the name of the class (although it could be different if you are using a custom discriminator convention or have explicitly specified a discriminator for a class). So a collection containing a mix of different type of Animal documents might look like:

```
{ _t : "Animal", ... }
{ _t : "Cat", ... }
{ _t : "Dog", ... }
{ _t : "Lion", ... }
{ _t : "Tiger", ... }
```

Sometimes it can be helpful to record a hierarchy of discriminator values, one for each level of the hierarchy. To do this, you must first mark a base class as being the root of a hierarchy, and then the default HierarchicalDiscriminatorConvention will automatically record discriminators as array values instead.

To identify Animal as the root of a hierarchy use the BsonDiscriminator attribute with the RootClass named parameter:

```
[BsonDiscriminator(RootClass = true)]
[BsonKnownTypes(typeof(Cat), typeof(Dog)]
public class Animal {
}

// the rest of the hierarchy as before
```

Or using initialization code instead of attributes:

```
BsonClassMap.RegisterClassMap<Animal>(cm => {
    cm.AutoMap();
    cm.SetIsRootClass(true);
});
BsonClassMap.RegisterClassMap<Cat>();
BsonClassMap.RegisterClassMap<Dog>();
BsonClassMap.RegisterClassMap<Lion>();
BsonClassMap.RegisterClassMap<Tiger>();
```

Now that you have identified Animal as a root class, the discriminator values will look a little bit different:

```
{ _t : "Animal", ... }
{ _t : ["Animal", "Cat"], ... }
{ _t : ["Animal", "Dog"], ... }
{ _t : ["Animal", "Cat", "Lion"], ... }
{ _t : ["Animal", "Cat", "Tiger"], ... }
```

The main reason you might choose to use hierarchical discriminators is because it makes it possibly to query for all instances of any class in the hierarchy. For example, to read all the Cat documents we can write:

```
var query = Query.EQ("_t", "Cat");
var cursor = collection.FindAs<Animal>(query);
foreach (var cat in cursor) {
    // process cat
}
```

This works because of the way MongoDB handles queries against array values.

## Customizing serialization

There are several ways you can customize serialization:

1. Supplementing the default serializer
2. Make a class responsible for its own serialization
3. Write a custom serializer
4. Write a custom Id generator
5. Write a custom convention

### *Supplementing the default serializer*

You can register your own serialization provider to supplement the default serializer. Register it like this:

```
IBsonSerializationProvider myProvider;
BsonSerializer.RegisterSerializationProvider(myProvider);
```

You should register your provider as early as possible. Your provider will be called first before the default serializer. You can delegate handling of any types your custom provider isn't prepared to handle to the default serializer by returning null from GetSerializer.

### *Make a class responsible for its own serialization*

One way you can customize how a class is serialized is to make it responsible for its own serialization. You do so by implementing the IBsonSerializable interface:

```
public class MyClass : IBsonSerializable {
    // implement Deserialize method
// implement Serialize method
}
```

You also must implement the GetDocumentId and SetDocumentId methods. If your class is never used as a root document these methods can just be stubs that throw a NotSupportedException. Otherwise, return true from GetDocumentId if the value passed in has an Id, and set the Id value in SetDocumentId.

There is nothing else you have to do besides implementing this interface. The BSON Library automatically checks whether objects being serialized implement this interface and if so routes serialization calls directly to the classes.

This can be a very efficient way to customize serialization, but it does have the drawback that it pollutes your domain classes with serialization details, so there is also the option of writing a custom serializer as described next.

### *Write a custom serializer*

A custom serializer can handle serialization of your classes without requiring any changes to those classes. This is a big advantage when you either don't want to modify those classes or can't (perhaps because you don't have control over them). You must register your custom serializer so that the BSON Library knows of its existence and can call it when appropriate.

To implement and register a custom serializer you would:

```
// MyClass is the class for which you are writing a custom serializer
public MyClass {
}

// MyClassSerializer is the custom serializer for MyClass
public MyClassSerializer : IBsonSerializer {
    // implement Deserialize
// implement Serialize
}

// register your custom serializer
BsonSerializer.RegisterSerializer(
    typeof(MyClass),
    new MyClassSerializer()
);
```

You also must implement the GetDocumentId and SetDocumentId methods. If your class is never used as a root document these methods can just be stubs that throw a NotSupportedException. Otherwise, return true from GetDocumentId if the value passed in has an Id, and set the Id value in SetDocumentId.

If you write a custom serializer you will have to become familiar with the BsonReader and BsonWriter abstract classes, which are not documented here, but are relatively straightforward to use. Look at the existing serializers in the driver for examples of how BsonReader and BsonWriter are used.

You may want to derive your custom serializer from BsonBaseSerializer, but be aware that this is an internal class that is slightly more likely to change than other core classes. If that concerns you, just implement IBsonSerializer directly.

To debug a custom serializer you can either Insert a document containing a value serialized by your custom serializer into some collection and then use the mongo shell to examine what the resulting document looks like. Alternatively you can use the ToJson method to see the result of the serializer without having to Insert anything into a collection as follows:

```
// assume a custom serializer has been registered for class C
var c = new C();
var json = c.ToJson();
// inspect the json string variable to see how c was serialized
```

### *Write a custom Id generator*

You can write your own IdGenerator. For example, suppose you wanted to generate integer Employee Ids:

```
public class EmployeeIdGenerator : IIdGenerator {
    // implement GenerateId
// implement IsEmpty
}
```

You can specify that this generator be used for Employee Ids using attributes:

```
public class Employee {
    [BsonId(IdGenerator = typeof(EmployeeIdGenerator)]
    public int Id { get; set; }
    // other fields or properties
}
```

Or using initialization code instead of attributes:

```
BsonClassMap.RegisterClassMap<Employee >(cm => {
    cm.AutoMap();
    cm.IdMember.SetIdGenerator(new EmployeeIdGenerator());
});
```

Alternatively, you can get by without an Id generator at all by just assigning a value to the Id property before calling Insert or Save.

#### *Write a custom convention*

Earlier in this tutorial we discussed replacing one or more of the default conventions. You can either replace them with one of the provided alternatives or you can write your own convention. Writing your own convention varies slightly from convention to convention.

As an example we will write a custom convention to find the Id member of a class (the default convention looks for a member named "Id"). Our custom convention will instead consider any public property whose name ends in "Id" to be the Id for the class. We can implement this convention as follows:

```
public class EndsWithIdConvention : IIdMemberConvention {
    public string FindIdMember(Type type) {
        foreach (var property in type.GetProperties()) {
            if (property.Name.EndsWith("Id")) {
                return property.Name;
            }
        }
        return null;
    }
}
```

And we can configure this convention to be used with all of our own classes by writing:

```
var myConventions = new ConventionProfile();
myConventions.SetIdMemberConvention(new EndsWithIdConvention());
BsonClassMap.RegisterConventions(
    myConventions,
    t => t.FullName.StartsWith("MyNamespace.")
);
```

Warning: because GetProperties is not guaranteed to return properties in any particular order this convention as written will behave unpredictably for a class that contains more than one property whose name ends in "Id".

## CSharp Driver Tutorial


- C# Driver version v1.4.x
- Introduction
- Downloading
- Building
    - Dependencies
    - Running unit tests
- Installing
- References and namespaces
- The BSON Library
    - BsonType
    - BsonValue and subclasses
        - BsonType property
        - As[Type] Properties
        - Is[Type] Properties
        - To[Type] conversion methods

        - Static Create methods
            - Implicit conversions
        - BsonMaxKey, BsonMinKey, BsonNull and BsonUndefined
        - ObjectId and BsonObjectId
    - BsonElement
    - BsonDocument
        - BsonDocument constructor
        - Create a new document and call Add and Set methods
        - Create a new document and use the fluent interface Add and Set methods
        - Create a new document and use C#'s collection initializer syntax (recommended)
        - Creating nested BSON documents
        - Add methods
        - Accessing BsonDocument elements
    - BsonArray
        - Constructors
        - Add and AddRange methods
        - Indexer
- The C# Driver
    - Thread safety
    - MongoServer class
        - Connection strings
        - Create method
        - GetDatabase method
        - RequestStart/RequestDone methods
        - Other properties and methods
    - MongoDatabase class
        - GetCollection method
        - Other properties and methods
    - MongoCollection<TDefaultDocument> class
        - Insert<TDocument> method
        - InsertBatch method
        - FindOne and FindOneAs methods
        - Find and FindAs methods
        - Save<TDocument> method
        - Update method
        - FindAndModify method
        - MapReduce method
        - Other properties and methods
    - MongoCursor<TDocument> class
        - Enumerating a cursor
        - Modifying a cursor before enumerating it
        - Modifiable properties of a cursor
        - Other methods
    - SafeMode class
        - Constructors
        - Properties
        - Methods


### C# Driver version v1.4.x

This tutorial is for v1.4.x of the C# Driver.

### Introduction

This tutorial introduces the 10gen supported C# Driver for MongoDB. The C# Driver consists of two libraries: the BSON Library and the C# Driver. The BSON Library can be used independently of the C# Driver if desired. The C# Driver requires the BSON Library.

You may also be interested in the C# Driver Serialization Tutorial. It is a separate tutorial because it covers quite a lot of material.

### Downloading

The C# Driver is available in source and binary form. While the BSON Library can be used independently of the C# Driver they are both stored in the same repository.

The source may be downloaded from github.com.

We use msysgit as our Windows git client. It can be downloaded from: http://code.google.com/p/msysgit/.

To clone the repository run the following commands from a git bash shell:

```
$ cd <parentdirectory>
$ git config --global core.autocrlf true
$ git clone git://github.com/mongodb/mongo-csharp-driver.git
$ cd mongo-csharp-driver
$ git config core.autocrlf true
```

You must set the global setting for core.autocrlf to true before cloning the repository. After you clone the repository, we recommend you set the local setting for core.autocrlf to true (as shown above) so that future changes to the global setting for core.autocrlf do not affect this repository. If you then want to change your global setting for core.autocrlf to false run:

```
$ git config --global core.autocrlf false
```

The typical symptom of problems with the setting for core.autocrlf is git reporting that an entire file has been modified (because of differences in the line endings). It is rather tedious to change the setting of core.autocrlf for a repository after it has been created, so it is important to get it right from the start.

You can download a zip file of the source files (without cloning the repository) by clicking on the Downloads button at:

http://github.com/mongodb/mongo-csharp-driver

You can download binaries (in both .msi and .zip formats) from:

http://github.com/mongodb/mongo-csharp-driver/downloads

## Building

We are currently building the C# Driver with Visual Studio 2010. The name of the solution file is `CSharpDriver-2010.sln`.

### *Dependencies*

The unit tests depend on NUnit 2.5.9, which is included in the dependencies folder of the repository. You can build the C# Driver without installing NUnit, but you must install NUnit before running the unit tests (unless you use a different test runner).

### *Running unit tests*

There are two projects containing unit tests:

1. BsonUnitTests
2. DriverUnitTests

The BsonUnitTests do not connect to a MongoDB server. The DriverUnitTests connect to an instance of MongoDB running on the default port on localhost.

An easy way to run the unit tests is to set one of the unit test projects as the startup project and configure the project settings as follows (using BsonUnitTests as an example):

- On the Debug tab:
    1. Set Start Action to Start External Program
    2. Set external program to: `C:\Program Files (x86)\NUnit 2.5.9\bin\net-2.0\nunit.exe`
    3. Set command line aguments to: `BsonUnitTests.csproj /config:Debug /run`
    4. Set working directory to: the directory where BsonUnitTest.csproj is located

Repeat the above steps for the Release configuration (using /config:Release instead) if you also want to run unit tests for Release builds.

The exact location of the nunit.exe program might vary slightly on your machine.

To run the DriverUnitTests perform the same steps (modified as necessary).

## Installing

If you want to install the C# Driver on your machine you can use the setup program (see above for download instructions). The setup program is very simple and just:

1. Copies the DLLs to `C:\Program Files (x86)\MongoDB\CSharpDriver 1.4.x`
2. Installs the DLLs in the Global Assembly Cache (the GAC)
3. Configures Visual Studio to include the C# Driver DLLs in the .NET tab of the Add Reference dialog

If you downloaded the binaries zip file simply extract the files and place them wherever you want them to be.

Note: if you download the .zip file Windows might require you to "Unblock" the help file. If Windows asks "Do you want to open this file?" when you double click on the CSharpDriverDocs.chm file, clear the check box next to "Always ask before opening this file" before pressing the Open button. Alternatively, you can right click on the CSharpDriverDocs.chm file and select Properties, and then press the Unblock button at the bottom of the General tab. If the Unblock button is not present then the help file does not need to be unblocked.

### References and namespaces

To use the C# Driver you must add references to the following DLLs:

1. `MongoDB.Bson.dll`
2. `MongoDB.Driver.dll`

As a minimum add the following using statements to your source files:

```
using MongoDB.Bson;
using MongoDB.Driver;
```

Additionally you will frequently add some of the following using statements:

```
using MongoDB.Driver.Builders;
using MongoDB.Driver.GridFS;
using MongoDB.Driver.Linq;
```

In some cases you might add some of the following using statements if you are using some of the optional parts of the C# Driver:

```
using MongoDB.Bson.IO;
using MongoDB.Bson.Serialization;
using MongoDB.Bson.Serialization.Attributes;
using MongoDB.Bson.Serialization.Conventions;
using MongoDB.Bson.Serialization.IdGenerators;
using MongoDB.Bson.Serialization.Options;
using MongoDB.Bson.Serialization.Serializers;
using MongoDB.Driver.Wrappers;
```

### The BSON Library

The C# Driver is built on top of the BSON Library, which handles all the details of the BSON specification, including: I/O, serialization, and an in-memory object model of BSON documents.

The important classes of the BSON object model are: BsonType, BsonValue, BsonElement, BsonDocument and BsonArray.

#### *BsonType*

This enumeration is used to specify the type of a BSON value. It is defined as:

```
public enum BsonType {
    Double = 0x01,
    String = 0x02,
    Document = 0x03,
    Array = 0x04,
    Binary = 0x05,
    Undefined = 0x06,
    ObjectId = 0x07,
    Boolean = 0x08,
    DateTime = 0x09,
    Null = 0x0a,
    RegularExpression = 0x0b,
    JavaScript = 0x0d,
    Symbol = 0x0e,
    JavaScriptWithScope = 0x0f,
    Int32 = 0x10,
    Timestamp = 0x11,
    Int64 = 0x12,
    MinKey = 0xff,
    MaxKey = 0x7f
}
```

### *BsonValue and subclasses*

BsonValue is an abstract class that represents a typed BSON value. There is a concrete subclass of BsonValue for each of the values defined by the BsonType enum. There are several ways to obtain an instance of BsonValue:

- Use a public constructor (if available) of a subclass of BsonValue
- Use a static Create method of BsonValue
- Use a static Create method of a subclass of BsonValue
- Use a static property of a subclass of BsonValue
- Use an implicit conversion to BsonValue

The advantage of using the static Create methods is that they can return a pre-created instance for frequently used values. They can also return null (which a constructor cannot) which is useful for handling optional elements when creating BsonDocuments using functional construction. The static properties refer to pre-created instances of frequently used values. Implicit conversions allow you to use primitive .NET values wherever a BsonValue is expected, and the .NET value will automatically be converted to a BsonValue.

BsonValue has the following subclasses:

- `BsonArray`
- `BsonBinaryData`
- `BsonBoolean`
- `BsonDateTime`
- `BsonDocument`
- `BsonDouble`
- `BsonInt32`
- `BsonInt64`
- `BsonJavaScript`
- `BsonJavaScriptWithScope` (a subclass of `BsonJavaScript`)
- `BsonMaxKey`
- `BsonMinKey`
- `BsonNull`
- `BsonObjectId`
- `BsonRegularExpression`
- `BsonString`
- `BsonSymbol`
- `BsonTimestamp`
- `BsonUndefined`

#### BsonType property

BsonValue has a property called BsonType that you can use to query the actual type of a BsonValue. The following example shows several ways to determine the type of a BsonValue:

```
BsonValue value;
if (value.BsonType == BsonType.Int32) {
    // we know value is an instance of BsonInt32
}
if (value is BsonInt32) {
    // another way to tell that value is a BsonInt32
}
if (value.IsInt32) {
    // the easiest way to tell that value is a BsonInt32
}
```

#### As[Type] Properties

BsonValue has a number of properties that cast a BsonValue to one of its subclasses or a primitive .NET type:

- AsBoolean (=> bool)
- AsBsonArray
- AsBsonBinaryData
- AsBsonDateTime
- AsBsonDocument
- AsBsonJavaScript // also works if BsonType == JavaScriptWithScope
- AsBsonJavaScriptWithScope
- AsBsonMaxKey
- AsBsonMinKey
- AsBsonNull
- AsBsonRegularExpression
- AsBsonSymbol
- AsBsonTimestamp
- AsBsonUndefined
- AsBsonValue
- AsByteArray (=> byte[])
- AsDateTime (=> DateTime)
- AsDouble (=> double)
- AsGuid (=> Guid)
- AsInt32 (=> int)
- AsInt64 (=> long)
- AsNullableBoolean (=> bool?)
- AsNullableDateTime (=> DateTime?)
- AsNullableDouble (=> double?)
- AsNullableGuid (=> Guid?)
- AsNullableInt32 (=> int?)
- AsNullableInt64 (=> long?)
- AsNullableObjectId (=> ObjectId?)
- AsObjectId (=> ObjectId)
- AsRegex (=> Regex)
- AsString (=> string)

It is important to note that these all are casts, not conversions. They will throw an InvalidCastException if the BsonValue is not of the corresponding type. See also the To[Type] methods which do conversions, and the Is[Type] properties which you can use to query the type of a BsonValue before attempting to use one of the As[Type] properties.

Sample code using these properties:

```
BsonDocument document;
string name = document["name"].AsString;
int age = document["age"].AsInt32;
BsonDocument address = document["address"].AsBsonDocument;
string zip = address["zip"].AsString;
```

#### Is[Type] Properties

BsonValue has the following boolean properties you can use to test what kind of BsonValue it is:

- IsBoolean
- IsBsonArray
- IsBsonBinaryData
- IsBsonDateTime
- IsBsonDocument
- IsBsonJavaScript

- IsBsonJavaScriptWithScope
- IsBsonMaxKey
- IsBsonMinKey
- IsBsonNull
- IsBsonRegularExpression
- IsBsonSymbol
- IsBsonTimestamp
- IsBsonUndefined
- IsDateTime
- IsDouble
- IsGuid
- IsInt32
- IsInt64
- IsNumeric (true if type is Double, Int32 or Int64)
- IsObjectId
- IsString

Sample code:

```
BsonDocument document;
int age = -1;
if (document.Contains["age"] && document["age"].IsInt32) {
    age = document["age"].AsInt32;
}
```

#### To[Type] conversion methods

The following methods are available to do limited conversions between BsonValue types:

- ToBoolean
- ToDouble
- ToInt32
- ToInt64

The ToBoolean method never fails. It uses JavaScript's definition of truthiness: false, 0, 0.0, NaN, BsonNull, BsonUndefined and "" are false, and everything else is true (include the string "false").

The ToBoolean method is particularly useful when the documents you are processing might have inconsistent ways of recording true/false values:

```
if (employee["ismanager"].ToBoolean()) {
    // we know the employee is a manager
// works with many ways of recording boolean values
}
```

The ToDouble, ToInt32, and ToInt64 methods never fail when converting between numeric types, though the value might be truncated if it doesn't fit in the target type. A string can be converted to a numeric type, but an exception will be thrown if the string cannot be parsed as a value of the target type.

#### Static Create methods

Because BsonValue is an abstract class you cannot create instances of BsonValue (only instances of concrete subclasses). BsonValue has a static Create method that takes an argument of type object and determines at runtime the actual type of BsonValue to create. Subclasses of BsonValue also have static Create methods tailored to their own needs.

##### *Implicit conversions*

Implicit conversions are defined from the following .NET types to BsonValue:

- bool
- byte[]
- DateTime
- double
- Enum
- Guid
- int
- long
- ObjectId
- Regex
- string

These eliminate the need for almost all calls to BsonValue constructors or Create methods. For example:

```
BsonValue b = true; // b is an instance of BsonBoolean
BsonValue d = 3.14159; // d is an instance of BsonDouble
BsonValue i = 1; // i is an instance of BsonInt32
BsonValue s = "Hello"; // s is an instance of BsonString
```

#### BsonMaxKey, BsonMinKey, BsonNull and BsonUndefined

These classes are singletons, so only a single instance of each class exists. You refer to these instances using the static Value property of each class:

```
document["status"] = BsonNull.Value;
document["priority"] = BsonMaxKey.Value;
```

Note that C# null and BsonNull.Value are two different things. The latter is an actual C# object that represents a BSON null value (it's a subtle difference, but plays an important role in functional construction).

#### ObjectId and BsonObjectId

ObjectId is a struct that holds the raw value of a BSON ObjectId. BsonObjectId is a subclass of BsonValue whose Value property is of type ObjectId.

Here are some common ways of creating ObjectId values:

```
var id1 = new ObjectId(); // same as ObjectId.Empty
var id2 = ObjectId.Empty; // all zeroes
var id3 = ObjectId.GenerateNewId(); // generates new unique Id
var id4 = ObjectId.Parse("4dad901291c2949e7a5b6aa8"); // parses a 24 hex digit string
```

Note that the first example behaves differently in C# than in JavaScript. In C# it creates an ObjectId of all zeroes, but in JavaScript it generates a new unique Id. This difference can't be avoided because in C# the default constructor of a value type always initializes the value to all zeros.

### *BsonElement*

A BsonElement is a name/value pair, where the value is a BsonValue. It is used as the building block of BsonDocument, which consists of zero or more elements. You will rarely create BsonElements directly, as they are usually created indirectly as needed. For example:

```
document.Add(new BsonElement("age", 21)); // OK, but next line is shorter
document.Add("age", 21); // creates BsonElement automatically
```

### *BsonDocument*

A BsonDocument is a collection of name/value pairs (represented by BsonElements). It is an in-memory object model of a BSON document. There are three ways to create and populate a BsonDocument:

1. Create a new document and call Add and Set methods
2. Create a new document and use the fluent interface Add and Set methods
3. Create a new document and use C#'s collection initializer syntax (recommended)

#### BsonDocument constructor

BsonDocument has the following constructors:

- `BsonDocument()`
- `BsonDocument(string name, BsonValue value)`
- `BsonDocument(BsonElement element)`
- `BsonDocument(Dictionary<string, object> dictionary)`
- `BsonDocument(Dictionary<string, object> dictionary, IEnumerable<string> keys)`
- `BsonDocument(IDictionary dictionary)`
- `BsonDocument(IDictionary dictionary, IEnumerable<string> keys)`
- `BsonDocument(IDictionary<string, object> dictionary)`
- `BsonDocument(IDictionary<string, object> dictionary, IEnumerable<string> keys)`
- `BsonDocument(IEnumerabe<BsonElement> elements)`

- `BsonDocument(params BsonElement[] elements)`
- `BsonDocument(bool allowDuplicateNames)`

The first two are the ones you are most likely to use. The first creates an empty document, and the second creates a document with one element (in both cases you can of course add more elements).

All the constructors (except the one with allowDuplicateNames) simply call the Add method that takes the same parameters, so refer to the coresponding Add method for details about how the new document is initially populated.

A BsonDocument normally does not allow duplicate names, but if you must allow duplicate names call the constructor with the allowDuplicateNames parameter and pass in true. It is **not** recommended that you allow duplicate names, and this option exists only to allow handling existing BSON documents that might have duplicate names. MongoDB makes no particular guarantees about whether it supports documents with duplicate names, so be cautious about sending any such documents you construct to the server.

#### Create a new document and call Add and Set methods

This is a traditional step by step method to create and populate a document using multiple C# statements. For example:

```
BsonDocument book = new BsonDocument();
book .Add("author", "Ernest Hemingway");
book .Add("title", "For Whom the Bell Tolls");
```

#### Create a new document and use the fluent interface Add and Set methods

This is similar to the previous approach but the fluent interface allows you to chain the various calls to Add so that they are all a single C# statement. For example:

```
BsonDocument book = new BsonDocument()
    .Add("author", "Ernest Hemingway")
    .Add("title", "For Whom the Bell Tolls");
```

#### Create a new document and use C#'s collection initializer syntax (recommended)

This is the recommended way to create and initialize a BsonDocument in one statement. It uses C#'s collection initializer syntax:

```
BsonDocument book = new BsonDocument {
    { "author", "Ernest Hemingway" },
    { "title", "For Whom the Bell Tolls" }
};
```

The compiler translates this into calls to the matching Add method:

```
BsonDocument book = new BsonDocument();
    book.Add("author", "Ernest Hemingway");
    book.Add("title", "For Whom the Bell Tolls");
```

A common mistake is to forget the inner set of braces. This will result in a compilation error. For example:

```
BsonDocument bad = new BsonDocument {
    "author", "Ernest Hemingway"
};
```

is translated by the compiler to:

```
BsonDocument bad = new BsonDocument();
bad.Add("author");
bad.Add("Ernest Hemingway");
```

which results in a compilation error because there is no Add method that takes a single string argument.

#### Creating nested BSON documents

Nested BSON documents are created by setting the value of an element to a BSON document. For example:

```
BsonDocument nested = new BsonDocument {
    { "name", "John Doe" },
    { "address", new BsonDocument {
        { "street", "123 Main St." },
        { "city", "Centerville" },
        { "state", "PA" },
        { "zip", 12345}
    }}
};
```

This creates a top level document with two elements ("name" and "address"). The value of "address" is a nested BSON document.

#### Add methods

BsonDocument has the following overloaded Add methods:

- `Add(BsonElement element)`
- `Add(Dictionary<string, object> dictionary)`
- `Add(Dictionary<string, object> dictionary, IEnumerable<string> keys)`
- `Add(IDictionary dictionary)`
- `Add(IDictionary dictionary, IEnumerable<string> keys)`
- `Add(IDictionary<string, object> dictionary)`
- `Add(IDictionary<string, object> dictionary, IEnumerable<string> keys)`
- `Add(IEnumerable<BsonElement> elements)`
- `Add(string name, BsonValue value)`
- `Add(string name, BsonValue value, bool condition)`

It is important to note that sometimes the Add methods **don't** add a new element. If the value supplied is null (or the condition supplied in the last overload is false) then the element isn't added. This makes it really easy to handle optional elements without having to write any if statements or conditional expressions.

For example:

```
BsonDocument document = new BsonDocument {
    { "name", name },
    { "city", city }, // not added if city is null
{ "dob", dob, dobAvailable } // not added if dobAvailable is false
};
```

is more compact and readable than:

```
BsonDocument document = new BsonDocument();
document.Add("name", name);
if (city != null) {
    document.Add("city", city);
}
if (dobAvailable) {
    document.Add("dob", dob);
}
```

If you want to add a BsonNull if a value is missing you have to say so. A convenient way is to use C#'s null coalescing operator as follows:

```
BsonDocument = new BsonDocument {
    { "city", city ?? BsonConstants.Null }
};
```

The IDictionary overloads initialize a BsonDocument from a dictionary. Each key in the dictionary becames the name of a new element, and each value is mapped to a matching BsonValue and becomes the value of the new element. The overload with the keys parameter lets you select which dictionary entries to load (you might also use the keys parameter to control the order in which the elements are loaded from the dictionary).

#### Accessing BsonDocument elements

The recommended way to access BsonDocument elements is to use one of the following indexers:

- `BsonValue this[int index]`
- `BsonValue this[string name]`
- `BsonValue this[string name, BsonValue defaultValue]`

Note that the return value of the indexers is BsonValue, not BsonElement. This actually makes BsonDocuments much easier to work with (if you ever need to get the actual BsonElements use GetElement).

We've already seen samples of accessing BsonDocument elements. Here are some more:

```
BsonDocument book;
string author = book["author"].AsString;
DateTime publicationDate = book["publicationDate"].AsDateTime;
int pages = book["pages", -1].AsInt32; // default value is -1
```

### *BsonArray*

This class is used to represent BSON arrays. While arrays happen to be represented externally as BSON documents (with a special naming convention for the elements), the BsonArray class is unrelated to the BsonDocument class because they are used very differently.

#### Constructors

BsonArray has the following constructors:

- `BsonArray()`
- `BsonArray(IEnumerable<bool> values)`
- `BsonArray(IEnumerable<BsonValue> values)`
- `BsonArray(IEnumerable<DateTime> values)`
- `BsonArray(IEnumerable<double> values)`
- `BsonArray(IEnumerable<int> values)`
- `BsonArray(IEnumerable<long> values)`
- `BsonArray(IEnumerable<ObjectId> values)`
- `BsonArray(IEnumerable<string> values)`
- `BsonArray(IEnumerable values)`

All the constructors with a parameter call the matching Add method. The multiple overloads are needed because C# does not provide automatic conversions from IEnumerable<T> to IEnumerable<object>.

#### Add and AddRange methods

Bson Array has the following Add methods:

- `BsonArray Add(BsonValue value)`
- `BsonArray AddRange(IEnumerable<bool> values)`
- `BsonArray AddRange(IEnumerable<BsonValue> values)`
- `BsonArray AddRange(IEnumerable<DateTime> values)`
- `BsonArray AddRange(IEnumerable<double> values)`
- `BsonArray AddRange(IEnumerable<int> values)`
- `BsonArray AddRange(IEnumerable<long> values)`
- `BsonArray AddRange(IEnumerable<ObjectId> values)`
- `BsonArray AddRange(IEnumerable<string> values)`
- `BsonArray AddRange(IEnumerable values)`

Note that the Add method takes a single parameter. To create and initialize a BsonArray with multiple values use any of the following approaches:

```
// traditional approach
BsonArray a1 = new BsonArray();
a1.Add(1);
a2.Add(2);

// fluent interface
BsonArray a2 = new BsonArray().Add(1).Add(2);

// values argument
int[] values = new int[] { 1, 2 };
BsonArray a3 = new BsonArray(values);

// collection initializer syntax
BsonArray a4 = new BsonArray { 1, 2 };
```

#### Indexer

Array elements are accessed using an integer index. Like BsonDocument, the type of the elements is BsonValue. For example:

```
BsonArray array = new BsonArray { "Tom", 39 };
string name = array[0].AsString;
int age = array[1].AsInt32;
```

## The C# Driver

Up until now we have been focusing on the BSON Library. The remainder of this tutorial focuses on the C# Driver.

### *Thread safety*

Only a few of the C# Driver classes are thread safe. Among them: MongoServer, MongoDatabase, MongoCollection and MongoGridFS. Common classes you will use a lot that are not thread safe include MongoCursor and all the classes from the BSON Library (except BsonSymbolTable which is thread safe). A class is not thread safe unless specifically documented as being thread safe.

All static properties and methods of all classes are thread safe.

### *MongoServer class*

This class serves as the root object for working with a MongoDB server. You will create one instance of this class for each server you connect to. The connections to the server are handled automatically behind the scenes (a connection pool is used to increase efficiency).

When you are connecting to a replica set you will still use only one instance of MongoServer, which represents the replica set as a whole. The driver automatically finds all the members of the replica set and identifies the current primary. MongoServer has several properties you can use to find out more about the current state of the replica set (such as Primary, Secondaries, etc...).

Instances of this class are thread safe.

#### Connection strings

The easiest way to connect to a MongoDB server is to use a connection string. The standard connection string format is:

```
mongodb://[username:password@]hostname[:port][/[database][?options]]
```

The username and password should only be present if you are using authentication on the MongoDB server. These credentials will be the default credentials for all databases. To authenticate against the admin database append "(admin)" to the username. If you are using different credentials with different databases pass the appropriate credentials to the GetDatabase method.

The port number is optional and defaults to 27017.

To connect to a replica set specify the seed list by providing multiple hostnames (and port numbers if required) separated by commas. For example:

```
mongodb://server1,server2:27017,server2:27018
```

This connection string specifies a seed list consisting of three servers (two of which are on the same machine but on different port numbers).

The C# Driver is able to connect to a replica set even if the seed list is incomplete. It will find the primary server even if it is not in the seed list as long as at least one of the servers in the seed list responds (the response will contain the full replica set and the name of the current primary).

The options part of the connection string is used to set various connection options. For example, to turn SafeMode on by default for all operations, you could use:

```
mongodb://localhost/?safe=true
```

You should almost always add "safe=true" to your connection string.

As another example, suppose you wanted to connect directly to a member of a replica set regardless of whether it was the current primary or not (perhaps to monitor its status or to issue read only queries against it). You could use:

```
mongodb://server2/?connect=direct;slaveok=true
```

The full documentation for connection strings can be found at:

http://www.mongodb.org/display/DOCS/Connections

#### Create method

To obtain an instance of MongoServer use one of the Create methods:

- `MongoServer Create()`
- `MongoServer Create(MongoConnectionStringBuilder builder)`
- `MongoServer Create(MongoServerSettings settings)`
- `MongoServer Create(MongoUrl url)`
- `MongoServer Create(string connectionString)`
- `MongoServer Create(Uri uri)`

For example:

```
string connectionString = "mongodb://localhost";
MongoServer server = MongoServer.Create(connectionString);
```

Create maintains a table of MongoServer instances it has returned before, so if you call Create again with the same parameters you get the same instance back again.

The recommended way to call Create is with a connection string in the MongoDB URL format. MongoConnectionStringBuilder is provided for compatibility with how .NET handles SQL Server connection strings, but we recommend you use the URL format instead.

#### GetDatabase method

You can navigate from an instance of MongoServer to an instance of MongoDatabase (see next section) using one of the following GetDatabase methods or indexers:

- `MongoDatabase GetDatabase(MongoDatabaseSettings settings)`
- `MongoDatabase GetDatabase(string databaseName)`
- `MongoDatabase GetDatabase(string databaseName, MongoCredentials credentials)`
- `MongoDatabase GetDatabase(string databaseName, MongoCredentials credentials, SafeMode safeMode)`
- `MongoDatabase GetDatabase(string databaseName, SafeMode safeMode)`
- `MongoDatabase this[MongoDatabaseSettings settings]`
- `MongoDatabase this[string databaseName]`
- `MongoDatabase this[string databaseName, MongoCredentials credentials]`
- `MongoDatabase this[string databaseName, MongoCredentials credentials, SafeMode safeMode]`
- `MongoDatabase this[string databaseName, SafeMode safeMode]`

Sample code:

```
MongoServer server = MongoServer.Create(); // connect to localhost
MongoDatabase test = server.GetDatabase("test");
MongoCredentials credentials = new MongoCredentials("username", "password");
MongoDatabase salaries = server.GetDatabase("salaries", credentials);
```

Most of the database settings are inherited from the server object, and the provided overloads of GetDatabase let you override a few of the most commonly used settings. To override other settings, call CreateDatabaseSettings and change any settings you want before calling GetDatabase, like this:

```
var databaseSettings = server.CreateDatabaseSettings("test");
databaseSettings.SlaveOk = true;
var database = server[databaseSettings];
```

GetDatabase maintains a table of MongoDatabase instances it has returned before, so if you call GetDatabase again with the same parameters you get the same instance back again.

#### RequestStart/RequestDone methods

Sometimes a series of operations needs to be performed on the same connection in order to guarantee correct results. This is rarely the case,

and most of the time there is no need to call RequestStart/RequestDone. An example of when this might be necessary is when a series of Inserts are called in rapid succession with SafeMode off, and you want to query that data in a consistent manner immediately thereafter (with SafeMode off the writes can queue up at the server and might not be immediately visible to other connections). Using RequestStart you can force a query to be on the same connection as the writes, so the query won't execute until the server has caught up with the writes.

A thread can temporarily reserve a connection from the connection pool by using RequestStart and RequestDone. For example:

```
server.RequestStart(database);
// a series of operations that must be performed on the same connection
server.RequestDone();
```

The database parameter simply indicates some database which you intend to use during this request. This allows the server to pick a connection that is already authenticated for that database (if you are not using authentication then this optimization won't matter to you). You are free to use any other databases as well during the request.

There is actually a slight problem with this example: if an exception is thrown while performing the operations then RequestDone is never called. You could put the call to RequestDone in a finally block, but even easier is to use the C# using statement:

```
using (server.RequestStart(database)) {
    // a series of operations that must be performed on the same connection
}
```

This works because RequestStart returns a helper object that implements IDisposable and calls RequestDone for you.

RequestStart increments a counter (for this thread) and RequestDone decrements the counter. The connection that was reserved is not actually returned to the connection pool until the count reaches zero again. This means that calls to RequestStart/RequestDone can be nested and the right thing will happen.

#### Other properties and methods

MongoServer has the following properties:

- `Arbiters`
- `BuildInfo`
- `ConnectionAttempt`
- `IndexCache`
- `Instance` (and `Instances`)
- `MaxServerCount`
- `Passives`
- `Primary`
- `ReplicaSetName`
- `RequestNestingLevel`
- `Secondaries`
- `SequentialId`
- `ServerCount`
- `Settings`
- `State`

MongoServer has the following additional methods:

- `Connect`
- `CopyDatabase`
- `DatabaseExists`
- `Disconnect`
- `DropDatabase`
- `FetchDBRef`
- `FetchDBRefAs`
- `GetDatabaseNames`
- `GetLastError`
- `Ping`
- `Reconnect`
- `Shutdown`
- `UnregisterServer`
- `VerifyState`

### *MongoDatabase class*

This class represents a database on a MongoDB server. Normally there will be only one instance of this class per database, unless you are using different settings to access the same database, in which case there will be one instance for each set of settings.

Instances of this class are thread safe.

#### GetCollection method

This method returns an object representing a collection in a database. When we request a collection object, we also specify the default document type for the collection. For example:

```
MongoDatabase hr = server.GetDatabase("hr");
MongoCollection<Employee> employees =
    hr.GetCollection<Employee>("employees");
```

A collection is not restricted to containing only one kind of document. The default document type simply makes it more convenient to work with that kind of document, but you can always specify a different kind of document when required.

Most of the collection settings are inherited from the database object, and the provided overloads of GetCollection let you override a few of the most commonly used settings. To override other settings, call CreateCollectionSettings and change any settings you want before calling GetCollection , like this:

```
var collectionSettings = database.CreateCollectionSettings<TDocument>("test");
collectionSettings.SlaveOk = true;
var collection = database.GetCollection(collectionSettings);
```

GetCollection maintains a table of instances it has returned before, so if you call GetCollection again with the same parameters you get the same instance back again.

#### Other properties and methods

MongoDatabase has the following properties:

- CommandCollection
- Credentials
- GridFS
- Name
- Server
- Settings

MongoDatabase has the following additional methods:

- AddUser
- CollectionExists
- CreateCollection
- Drop
- DropCollection
- Eval
- FetchDBRef
- FetchDBRefAs
- FindAllUsers
- FindUser
- GetCollectionNames
- GetCurrentOp
- GetGridFS
- GetSisterDatabase
- GetStats
- RemoveUser
- RenameCollection
- RequestDone
- RequestStart
- RunCommand
- RunCommandAs

### *MongoCollection<TDefaultDocument> class*

This class represents a collection in a MongoDB database. The <TDefaultDocument> type parameter specifies the type of the default document for this collection.

Instances of this class are thread safe.

#### Insert<TDocument> method

To insert a document in the collection create an object representing the document and call Insert. The object can be an instance of BsonDocument or of any class that can be successfully serialized as a BSON document. For example:

```
MongoCollection<BsonDocument> books =
    database.GetCollection<BsonDocument>("books");
BsonDocument book = new BsonDocument {
    { "author", "Ernest Hemingway" },
    { "title", "For Whom the Bell Tolls" }
};
books.Insert(book);
```

If you have a class called Book the code might look like:

```
MongoCollection<Book> books = database.GetCollection<Book>("books");
Book book = new Book {
    Author = "Ernest Hemingway",
    Title = "For Whom the Bell Tolls"
};
books.Insert(book);
```

#### InsertBatch method

You can insert more than one document at a time using the InsertBatch method. For example:

```
MongoCollection<BsonDocument> books;
BsonDocument[] batch = {
    new BsonDocument {
        { "author", "Kurt Vonnegut" },
        { "title", "Cat's Cradle" }
    },
    new BsonDocument {
        { "author", "Kurt Vonnegut" },
        { "title", "Slaughterhouse-Five" }
    }
};
books.InsertBatch(batch);
```

When you are inserting multiple documents InsertBatch can be much more efficient than Insert, specially when using SafeMode.

#### FindOne and FindOneAs methods

To retrieve documents from a collection use one of the various Find methods. FindOne is the simplest. It returns the first document it finds (when there are many documents in a collection you can't be sure which one it will be). For example:

```
MongoCollection<Book> books;
Book book = books.FindOne();
```

If you want to read a document that is not of the <TDefaultDocument> type use the FindOneAs method, which allows you to override the type of the returned document. For example:

```
MongoCollection<Book> books;
BsonDocument document = books.FindOneAs<BsonDocument>();
```

In this case the default document type of the collection is Book, but we are overriding that and specifying that the result be returned as an instance of BsonDocument.

#### Find and FindAs methods

The Find and FindAs methods take a query that tells the server which documents to return. The query parameter is of type IMongoQuery. IMongoQuery is a marker interface that identifies classes that can be used as queries. The most common ways to construct a query are to either use the Query builder class or to create a QueryDocument yourself (a QueryDocument is a subclass of BsonDocument that also implements IMongoQuery and can therefore be used as a query object). Also, by using the QueryWrapper class the query can be of any type that can be successfully serialized to a BSON document, but it is up to you to make sure that the serialized document represents a valid query object.

One way to query is to create a QueryDocument object yourself:

```
MongoCollection<BsonDocument> books;
var query = new QueryDocument("author", "Kurt Vonnegut");
foreach (BsonDocument book in books.Find(query)) {
    // do something with book
}
```

Another way to query is to use the Query Builder (recommended):

```
MongoCollection<BsonDocument> books;
var query = Query.EQ("author", "Kurt Vonnegut");
foreach (BsonDocument book in books.Find(query)) {
    // do something with book
}
```

Yet another way to query is to use an anonymous class as the query, but in this case we must wrap the anonymous object:

```
MongoCollection<BsonDocument> books;
var query = Query.Wrap(new { author = "Kurt Vonnegut" });
foreach (BsonDocument book in books.Find(query)) {
    // do something with book
}
```

If you want to read a document of a type that is not the default document type use the FindAs method instead:

```
MongoCollection<BsonDocument> books;
var query = Query.EQ("author", "Kurt Vonnegut");
foreach (Book book in books.FindAs<Book>(query)) {
    // do something with book
}
```

#### Save<TDocument> method

The Save method is a combination of Insert and Update. If the Id member of the document has a value, then it is assumed to be an existing document and Save calls Update on the document (setting the Upsert flag just in case it actually is a new document after all). Otherwise it is assumed to be a new document and Save calls Insert after first assigning a newly generated unique value to the Id member.

For example, you could correct an error in the title of a book using:

```
MongoCollection<BsonDocument> books;
var query = Query.And(
    Query.EQ("author", "Kurt Vonnegut"),
    Query.EQ("title", "Cats Craddle")
);
BsonDocument book = books.FindOne(query);
if (book != null) {
    book["title"] = "Cat's Cradle";
    books.Save(book);
}
```

The TDocument class must have an Id member to be used with the Save method. If it does not you can call Insert instead of Save to insert the document.

#### Update method

The Update method is used to update existing documents. The code sample shown for the Save method could also have been written as:

```
MongoCollection<BsonDocument> books;
var query = new QueryDocument {
    { "author", "Kurt Vonnegut" },
    { "title", "Cats Craddle" }
};
var update = new UpdateDocument {
    { "$set", new BsonDocument("title", "Cat's Cradle") }
};
BsonDocument updatedBook = books.Update(query, update);
```

or using Query and Update builders:

```
MongoCollection<BsonDocument> books;
var query = Query.And(
    Query.EQ("author", "Kurt Vonnegut"),
    Query.EQ("title", "Cats Craddle")
);
var update = Update.Set("title", "Cat's Cradle");
BsonDocument updatedBook = books.Update(query, update);
```

**FindAndModify method**

Use FindAndModify when you want to find a matching document and update it in one atomic operation. FindAndModify always updates a single document, and you can combine a query that matches multiple documents with a sort criteria that will determine exactly which matching document is updated. In addition, FindAndModify will return the matching document (either as it was before the update or after) and if you wish you can specify which fields of the matching document to return.

Using the example documented here:

http://www.mongodb.org/display/DOCS/findAndModify+Command

the call to FindAndModify would be written in C# as:

```
var jobs = database.GetCollection("jobs");
var query = Query.And(
    Query.EQ("inprogress", false),
    Query.EQ("name", "Biz report")
);
var sortBy = SortBy.Descending("priority");
var update = Update.
    .Set("inprogress", true)
    .Set("started", DateTime.UtcNow);
var result = jobs.FindAndModify(
    query,
    sortBy,
    update,
    true // return new document
);
var chosenJob = result.ModifiedDocument;
```

**MapReduce method**

Map/Reduce is a way of a aggregating data from a collection. Every document in a collection (or some subset if an optional query is provided) is sent to the map function, which calls emit to produce intermediate values. The intermediate values are then sent to the reduce function to be aggregated.

This example is taken from page 87 of MongoDB: The Definitive Guide, by Kristina Chodorow and Michael Dirolf. It counts how many times each key is found in a collection.

```
var map =
    "function() {" +
    "    for (var key in this) {" +
    "        emit(key, { count : 1 });" +
    "    }" +
    "}";

var reduce =
    "function(key, emits) {" +
    "    total = 0;" +
    "    for (var i in emits) {" +
    "        total += emits[i].count;" +
    "    }" +
    "    return { count : total };" +
    "}";

var mr = collection.MapReduce(map, reduce);
foreach (var document in mr.GetResults()) {
    Console.WriteLine(document.ToJson());
}
```

**Other properties and methods**

MongoCollection has the following properties:

- Database
- FullName
- Name
- Settings

MongoCollection has the following additional methods:

- Count
- CreateIndex
- Distinct
- Drop
- DropAllIndexes
- DropIndex
- DropIndexByName
- EnsureIndex
- Exists
- Find
- FindAll
- FindAllAs
- FindAndModify
- FindAndRemove
- FindAs
- FindOne
- FindOneAs
- FindOneById
- FindOneByIdAs
- GeoNear
- GeoNearAs
- GetIndexes
- GetStats
- GetTotalDataSize
- GetTotalStorageSize
- Group
- IndexExists
- IndexExistsByName
- IsCapped
- MapReduce
- ReIndex
- Remove
- RemoveAll
- ResetIndexCache
- Save
- Validate

### *MongoCursor<TDocument> class*

The Find method (and its variations) don't immediately return the actual results of a query. Instead they return a cursor that can be enumerated to retrieve the results of the query. The query isn't actually sent to the server until we attempt to retrieve the first result (technically, when MoveNext is called for the first time on the enumerator returned by GetEnumerator). This means that we can control the results of the query in interesting ways by modifying the cursor before fetching the results.

Instances of MongoCursor are not thread safe, at least not until they are frozen (see below). Once they are frozen they are thread safe because they are read-only (in particular, GetEnumerator is thread safe so the same cursor *could* be used by multiple threads).

#### Enumerating a cursor

The most convenient way to consume the results of a query is to use the C# foreach statement. For example:

```
var query = Query.EQ("author", "Ernest Hemingway");
var cursor = books.Find(query);
foreach (var book in cursor) {
    // do something with book
}
```

You can also use any of the extensions methods defined by LINQ for IEnumerable<T> to enumerate a cursor:

```
var query = Query.EQ("author", "Ernest Hemingway");
var cursor = books.Find(query);
var firstBook = cursor.FirstOrDefault();
var lastBook = cursor.LastOrDefault();
```

Note that in the above example the query is actually sent to the server twice (once when FirstOrDefault is called and again when LastOrDefault is called).

It is important that a cursor cleanly release any resources it holds. The key to guaranteeing this is to make sure the Dispose method of the enumerator is called. The foreach statement and the LINQ extension methods all guarantee that Dispose will be called. Only if you enumerate the cursor manually are you responsible for calling Dispose.

#### Modifying a cursor before enumerating it

A cursor has several properties that can be modified before it is enumerated to control the results returned. There are two ways to modify a cursor:

1. modify the properties directly
2. use the fluent interface to set the properties

For example, if we want to skip the first 100 results and limit the results to the next 10, we could write:

```
var query = Query.EQ("status", "pending");
var cursor = tasks.Find(query);
cursor.Skip = 100;
cursor.Limit = 10;
foreach (var task in cursor) {
    // do something with task
}
```

or using the fluent interface:

```
var query = Query.EQ("status", "pending");
foreach (var task in tasks.Find(query).SetSkip(100).SetLimit(10)) {
    // do something with task
}
```

The fluent interface works well when you are setting only a few values. When setting more than a few you might prefer to use the properties approach.

Once you begin enumerating a cursor it becomes "frozen" and you can no longer change any of its properties. So you must set all the properties before you start enumerating it.

#### Modifiable properties of a cursor

The following properties of a cursor are modifiable:

- `BatchSize` (`SetBatchSize`)
- `Fields` (`SetFields`)
- `Flags` (`SetFlags`)
- `Limit` (`SetLimit`)
- `Options` (`SetOption` and `SetOptions`)
- `SerializationOptions` (`SetSerializationOptions`)
- `Skip` (`SetSkip`)
- `SlaveOk` (`SetSlaveOk`)

The method names in parenthesis are the corresponding fluent interface methods.

The fluent interface also supports additional options that aren't used very frequently and are not exposed as properties:

- `SetHint`
- `SetMax`
- `SetMaxScan`
- `SetMin`
- `SetShowDiskLoc`
- `SetSnapshot`
- `SetSortOrder`

#### Other methods

MongoCursor has a few methods used for some special purpose operations:

- `Clone`
- `Count`
- `Explain`
- `Size`

### *SafeMode class*

There are various levels of SafeMode, and this class is used to represent those levels. SafeMode applies only to operations that don't already return a value (so it doesn't apply to queries or commands). It applies to the following MongoCollection methods: Insert, Remove, Save and Update.

The gist of SafeMode is that after an Insert, Remove, Save or Update message is sent to the server it is followed by a GetLastError command so the driver can verify that the operation succeeded. In addition, when using replica sets it is possible to verify that the information has been replicated to some minimum number of secondary servers.

The SafeMode class is no longer immutable. The properties have been made settable to facilitate creation of new instances using object initializer syntax. While it is no longer immutable, SafeMode instances can now be "frozen" to make them immutable at run time. A SafeMode instance is not thread safe until it has been frozen, at which point it becomes thread safe.

#### Constructors

SafeMode has the following constructors:

- `SafeMode(bool enabled)`
- `SafeMode(bool enabled, bool fsync)`
- `SafeMode(bool enabled, bool fsync, int w)`
- `SafeMode(bool enabled, bool fsync, int w TimeSpan wtimeout)`
- `SafeMode(int w)`
- `SafeMode(int w, TimeSpan wtimeout)`
- `SafeMode(SafeMode other)`

Because SafeMode now has more properties than it originally did, we are no longer adding constructors with different combinations of parameters (there would just be too many). The existing constructors are kept for backward compatibility. The recommended way to instantiate an instance of SafeMode is to use the last constructor to initialize all properties from another instance of SafeMode and then use object initializer syntax to set the properties you want to change. For example:

```
var safeMode = new SafeMode(other) { WMode = "majority" };
```

which creates a new instance of SafeMode with all the same properties as the "other" instance with the WMode changed to "majority".

#### Properties

SafeMode has the following properties:

- `Enabled`
- `FSync`
- `IsFrozen`
- `J`
- `W`
- `WMode`
- `WTimeout`

#### Methods

SafeMode has the following methods:

- `Clone`
- `Freeze`
- `FrozenCopy`

### CSharp getLastError and SafeMode

In the C# driver SafeMode can be set at different levels.

1. At the server level via the connection string:

```
var connectionString = "mongodb://hostname/?safe=true;w=2;wtimeout=30s";
var server = MongoServer.Create(connectionString);
```

2. At the database level:

```
var safemode = SafeMode.W2; // default timeout
// or
var safeMode = SafeMode.Create(2, TimeSpan.FromSeconds(30)); // 30 second timeout
var database = server.GetDatabase("test", safeMode);
```

3. At the collection level:

```
var collection = database.GetCollection("test", safeMode);
```

4. At the operation level:

```
var safeModeResult = collection.Insert(document, safeMode);
```

Each level inherits the setting from the level above it unless overridden.

getLastError is called automatically when any SafeMode other than false is used. An exception is thrown if there was an error, otherwise the SafeModeResult has the information returned by GetLastError.

#### See Also

- Connections
- getLastError Command
- Replica Set Design Concepts

## Erlang Language Center

- Driver Download
  - https://github.com/mongodb/mongodb-erlang
- API Docs
- Design of the Erlang Driver post on blog.mongodb.org

#### Third Party Frameworks and Libs

- Mongrel - A record/document mapper that maps Erlang records to MongoDB documents
  - API Documentation for Mongrel

## Tools and Libraries

- Talend Adapters

## Driver Syntax Table

The wiki generally gives examples in JavaScript, so this chart can be used to convert those examples to any language.

| JavaScript | Python | PHP | Ruby |
|---|---|---|---|
| [ ] | [] | `array()` | [] |
| {} | {} | `new stdClass` | {} |
| { x : 1 } | {"x": 1} | `array('x' => 1)` | {'x' => 1} |
| `connect("www.example.net")` | `Connection("www.example.net")` | `new Mongo("www.example.net")` | `Connection.new("www.exa` |
| `cursor.next()` | `cursor.next()` | `$cursor->getNext()` | `cursor.next_document()` |
| `cursor.hasNext()` | * | `$cursor->hasNext()` | `cursor.has_next?` |
| `collection.findOne()` | `collection.find_one()` | `$collection->findOne()` | `collection.find_one()` |
| `db.eval()` | `db.eval()` | `$db->execute()` | `db.eval()` |

* does not exist in that language

## Javascript Language Center

MongoDB can be

- Used by clients written in Javascript;
- Uses Javascript internally server-side for certain options such as map/reduce;
- Has a shell that is based on Javascript for administrative purposes.

### node.JS and V8

See the node.JS page.

### SpiderMonkey

The MongoDB shell extends SpiderMonkey.  See the MongoDB shell documentation.

### Narwhal

- http://github.com/sergi/narwhal-mongodb

### MongoDB Server-Side Javascript

Javascript may be executed in the MongoDB server processes for various functions such as query enhancement and map/reduce processing. See Server-side Code Execution.

## node.JS

Node.js is used to write event-driven, scalable network programs in server-side JavaScript. It is similar in purpose to Twisted, EventMachine, etc. It runs on Google's V8.

This is an overview of the available tools and suggested practices for using Node.js with MongoDB. Those wishing to skip to more detailed discussion should check out the The Node.js Driver Manual.


- Node.js Driver
    - Installing / Upgrading
- Object Mappers
- Presentations
    - 3rd Party Drivers


### *Node.js Driver*

**The MongoDB Node.js driver** is the 10gen-supported driver for MongoDB. In spring 2012 10gen officially adopted the popular Node MongoDB Native Project and sponsored the maintainer, Christian Kvalheim, to continue its development. It's written in pure javascript and provides a native asyncronous node.js interface to MongoDB. The driver is optimized for simplicity. It can be used on its own, but it also serves as the basis of several object mapping libraries, such as Mongoose.

- Tutorial
- Node.js Driver README
- Source Code

#### Installing / Upgrading

The easiest way to install is to use NPM:

```
$ npm install mongodb
```

### *Object Mappers*

Because MongoDB is so easy to use, the basic Node.js driver can be the best solution for many applications.

If you need validations, associations, and other high-level data modeling functions then an Object Document Mapper may be helpful.

Because Mongo is a document-based database, these mappers are called Object Document Mappers (ODM) as opposed to Object Relational Mappers (ORM).

Several mappers are available:

- Mongoskin - The future layer for node-mongodb-native.
- Mongoose - Asynchronous JavaScript Driver with optional support for Modeling.
- Mongolia - Lightweight MongoDB ORM/Driver Wrapper.

All the mappers build on top of the native Node.js driver and so some knowledge of that is useful, especially if you work with a custom Mongo configuration.

### *Presentations*

- An introduction to the mongo node.js driver - June 2011
- Using MongoDB with node.js - June 2011
- Node.js & MongoDB - Webinar June 2011
- A beautiful marriage: MongoDB and node.js - MongoNYC June 2011
- Rapid Realtime App Development with Node.JS & MongoDB - MongoSF May 2011

#### 3rd Party Drivers

A few 3rd party drivers exist and are under rapid development. While not officially supported by 10gen, these drivers take a different approach that may be valuable given your needs.

- node-mongodb - Async Node interface to MongoDB (written in C)
- Mongolian DeadBeef - A node.js driver that attempts to closely approximate the MongoDB shell.

## JVM Languages

**Redirection Notice**
This page should redirect to Java Language Center in about 3 seconds.

# Python Language Center

This is an overview of the available tools for using Python with MongoDB. Those wishing to skip to more detailed discussion should check out the Python Driver Tutorial.


- Python Driver
- Python tools
    - ORM Like Layers
    - Framework Tools
- Alternative drivers
- Presentations
- Tutorials


### Python Driver

**PyMongo** is the recommended way to work with MongoDB from Python.

- Installation
- Tutorial
- API Documentation
- Changelog
- Source Code

### Python tools

#### ORM Like Layers

Because MongoDB is so easy to use the basic Python driver is often the best solution for many applications. However, if you need data validation, associations and other high-level data modeling functionality then ORM like layers may be desired.

- ORM like layers

#### Framework Tools

Several tools and adapters for integration with various Python frameworks and libraries also exist.

- Framework Tools

### Alternative drivers

- Alternative driver list

### Presentations

- MongoDB & Python - Workshop materials from PyCon 2012
- PyCon Poster - PyCon 2012
- Realtime Analytics using MongoDB, Python, Gevent, and ZeroMQ - Rick Copeland's presentation from Mongo Seattle (December 2011)
- MongoDB with Python, Pylons, and Pyramid - Niall O'Higgins' presentation from MongoSF (May 2011)
- Python Development with MongoDB - Bernie Hackett's presentation from MongoSF (May 2011)
- Building a Social Graph with MongoDB at Eventbrite - Brian Zambrano's presentation from MongoSV (December 2010)
- More Python-related presenatations

### Tutorials

- Python Driver Tutorial
- Write a Tumblelog Application with Django MongoDB Engine
- Write a Tumblelog Application with Flask and MongoEngine

# PHP Language Center

### Using MongoDB in PHP

***To access MongoDB from PHP you will need:***

- The MongoDB server running - the server is the "mongo**d**" file, not the "mongo" client (note the "d" at the end)
- The MongoDB PHP driver installed

### Installing the PHP Driver

#### *NIX

Run:

```
sudo pecl install mongo
```

Open your php.ini file and add to it:

```
extension=mongo.so
```

It is recommended to add this to the section with the other "extensions", but it will work from anywhere within the php.ini file.

Restart your web server (Apache, nginx, etc.) for the change to take effect.

See the installation docs for configuration information and OS-specific installation instructions.

#### *Note*

`pecl` requires that pear be installed. For those using apt-get, you may need to run the following:

```
sudo apt-get install php5-dev php5-cli php-pear
```

#### Windows

- Download the correct driver for your environment from http://github.com/mongodb/mongo-php-driver/downloads. Thread safe is for running PHP as an Apache module (typical installation), non-thread safe is for CGI
- Unzip and add the php_mongo.dll file to your PHP extensions directory (usually the "ext" folder in your PHP installation.)
- Add to your php.ini:

```
extension=php_mongo.dll
```

- Restart your web server (Apache, IIS, etc.) for the change to take effect

For more information, see the Windows section of the installation docs.

### Using the PHP Driver

To get started, see the Tutorial. Also check out the API Documentation.

### See Also

- PHP Libraries, Frameworks, and Tools for working with Drupal, Cake, Symfony, and more from MongoDB.
- Admin UIs
- If you are using Eclipse, you can get Content Assist working by downloading the mongo_version.zip package.

## Installing the PHP Driver

**Redirection Notice**
This page should redirect to http://www.php.net/manual/en/mongo.installation.php.

## PHP Libraries, Frameworks, and Tools

- Libraries and Frameworks
  - CakePHP
  - Codeigniter
  - Doctrine
  - Drupal

        - Fat-Free Framework
        - Kohana Framework
        - Lithium
        - Symfony 2
        - TechMVC
        - Thundergrid
        - Vork
        - Yii
        - Zend Framework
- Stand-Alone Tools
    - Autocomplete for IDEs
    - ActiveMongo
    - Comfi
    - MapReduce API
    - Mongofilesystem
    - Mandango
    - MongoDB Pagination
    - MongoDb PHP ODM
    - Mongodloid
    - MongoQueue
    - MongoRecord
    - Morph
    - simplemongophp
- Blogs & HOWTOs
    - How to batch import JSON data output from FFprobe for motion stream analysis


The PHP community has created a huge number of libraries to make working with MongoDB easier and integrate it with existing frameworks.

### *Libraries and Frameworks*

#### *CakePHP*

- MongoDB datasource for CakePHP. There's also an introductory blog post on using it with Mongo.

#### *Codeigniter*

- MongoDB-Codeigniter-Driver

#### *Doctrine*

ODM (Object Document Mapper) is an experimental Doctrine MongoDB object mapper. The Doctrine\ODM\Mongo namespace is an experimental project for a PHP 5.3 MongoDB Object Mapper. It allows you to easily write PHP 5 classes and map them to collections in MongoDB. You just work with your objects like normal and Doctrine will transparently persist them to Mongo.

This project implements the same "style" of the Doctrine 2 ORM project interface so it will look very familiar to you and it has lots of the same features and implementations.

- Documentation - API, Reference, and Cookbook
- Official blog post
- Screencast
- Blog post on using it with Symfony
- Bug tracker

#### *Drupal*

- MongoDB Integration - Views (query builder) backend, a watchdog implementation (logging), and field storage.

#### *Fat-Free Framework*

Fat-Free is a powerful yet lightweight PHP 5.3+ Web development framework designed to help you build dynamic and robust applications - fast!

#### *Kohana Framework*

- Mango at github
  An ActiveRecord-like library for PHP, for the Kohana PHP Framework.
  See also PHP Language Center#MongoDb PHP ODM further down.

#### *Lithium*

Lithium supports Mongo out-of-the-box.

- Tutorial on creating a blog backend.

#### *Symfony 2*

- Symfony 2 Logger
  A centralized logger for Symfony applications. See the blog post.
- sfMongoSessionStorage - manages session storage via MongoDB with symfony.
- sfStoragePerformancePlugin - This plugin contains some extra storage engines (MongoDB and Memcached) that are currently missing from the Symfony (>= 1.2) core.

#### *TechMVC*

An extensive MVC 2 based PHP framework which supports MongoDB directly with only PHPMongo extension. Hosted at http://sourceforge.net/projects/techmvc/ and demo example available at http://demo.techmvc.techunits.com/.

#### *Thundergrid*

A GridFS Framework for PHP

Thundergrid is a simple framework written in PHP that allows you to rapidly store files in your Mongo database using the GridFS specification.

Using Thundergrid gives you the ability to control exactly how you use GridFS in your scripts, it allows you to list, filter and display objects within GridFS quickly and rapidly.

#### *Vork*

Vork, the high-performance enterprise framework for PHP natively supports MongoDB as either a primary datasource or used in conjunction with an RDBMS. Designed for scalability & Green-IT, Vork serves more traffic with fewer servers and can be configured to operate without any disk-IO.

Vork provides a full MVC stack that outputs semantically-correct XHTML 1.1, complies with Section 508 Accessibility guidelines & Zend-Framework coding-standards, has SEO-friendly URLs, employs CSS-reset for cross-browser display consistency and is written in well-documented object-oriented E_STRICT PHP5 code.

An extensive set of tools are built into Vork for ecommerce (cc-processing, SSL, PayPal, AdSense, shipment tracking, QR-codes), Google Maps, translation & internationalization, Wiki, Amazon Web Services, Social-Networking (Twitter, Meetup, ShareThis, YouTube, Flickr) and much more.

#### *Yii*

- YiiMongoDbSuite is an almost complete, ActiveRecord like support for MongoDB in Yii It originally started as a fork of MongoRecord extension written by tyohan, to fix some major bugs, and add full featured suite for MongoDB developers.

#### *Zend Framework*

- Shanty Mongo is a prototype mongodb adapter for the Zend Framework. It's intention is to make working with mongodb documents as natural and as simple as possible. In particular allowing embeded documents to also have custom document classes.
- ZF Cache Backend
  A ZF Cache Backend for MongoDB. It support tags and auto-cleaning.
- There is a Zend_Nosql_Mongo component proposal.

### *Stand-Alone Tools*

#### *Autocomplete for IDEs*

PeclMongoPhpDoc gives IDEs information about the Pecl extension to help with autocomplete & docs.

#### *ActiveMongo*

ActiveMongo is a really simple ActiveRecord for MongoDB in PHP.

There's a nice introduction to get you started at http://crodas.org/activemongo.php.

#### *Comfi*

Comfi is a Mongo PHP ORM (part of Comfi.com Homebase Framework)

#### *MapReduce API*

A MapReduce abstraction layer. See the blog post.

- MongoDB-MapReduce-PHP at github

#### *Mongofilesystem*

Filesystem based on MongoDB GridFS. Mongofilesystem will help you use MongoDB GridFS like a typical filesystem, using the familiar PHP commands.

#### *Mandango*

Mandango is a simple, poweful and ultrafast Object Document Mapper (ODM) for PHP and MongoDB..

#### *MongoDB Pagination*

PHP MongoDB Pagination is the pagination plugin for MongoDB released under MIT License. Simple to install & use. It has been developed under TechMVC 3.0.4, but it's compatible with any 3rd party framework (e.g. Zend (tested)).

#### *MongoDb PHP ODM*

MongoDb PHP ODM is a simple object wrapper for the Mongo PHP driver classes which makes using Mongo in your PHP application more like ORM, but without the suck. It is designed for use with Kohana 3 but will also integrate easily with any PHP application with almost no additional effort.

#### *Mongodloid*

A nice library on top of the PHP driver that allows you to make more natural queries (`$query->query('a == 13 AND b >= 8 && c % 3 == 4');`), abstracts away annoying $-syntax, and provides getters and setters.

- Project Page
- Downloads
- Documentation

#### *MongoQueue*

MongoQueue is a PHP queue that allows for moving tasks and jobs into an asynchronous process for completion in the background. The queue is managed by Mongo

MongoQueue is an extraction from online classifieds site Oodle. Oodle uses MongoQueue to background common tasks in order to keep page response times low.

#### *MongoRecord*

MongoRecord is a PHP Mongo ORM layer built on top of the PHP Mongo PECL extension

MongoRecord is an extraction from online classifieds site Oodle. Oodle's requirements for a manageable, easy to understand interface for dealing with the super-scalable Mongo datastore was the primary reason for MongoRecord. It was developed to use with PHP applications looking to add Mongo's scaling capabilities while dealing with a nice abstraction layer.

#### *Morph*

A high level PHP library for MongoDB. Morph comprises a suite of objects and object primitives that are designed to make working with MongoDB in PHP a breeze.

- Morph at github

#### *simplemongophp*

Very simple layer for using data objects see blog post

- simplemongophp at github

### *Blogs & HOWTOs*

#### *How to batch import JSON data output from FFprobe for motion stream analysis*

FFprobe is a stream analyzer that optionally reports in JSON. This example is a PHP script that reads JSON from STDIN, makes an object using json_decode, and inserts the object into a MongDB database. This script could be used with any program that outputs a JSON stream. A bash script will be used to batch process all files within the current directory. For example, the data may be used for analysis and logging of a day's shoot.

- Batch import Multimedia Stream Data into MongoDB with FFprobe web site
- Code and Sample Output at github

## PHP - Storing Files and Big Data

**Redirection Notice**
This page should redirect to http://www.php.net/manual/en/class.mongogridfs.php.

## Troubleshooting the PHP Driver

**Redirection Notice**
This page should redirect to http://www.php.net/manual/en/mongo.trouble.php.

# Ruby Language Center

This is an overview of the available tools and suggested practices for using Ruby with MongoDB. Those wishing to skip to more detailed discussion should check out the Ruby Driver Tutorial, Getting started with Rails or Rails 3, and MongoDB Data Modeling and Rails. There are also a number of good external resources worth checking out.


- Ruby Driver
  - Installing / Upgrading
  - BSON
- Object Mappers
- Notable Projects
- Presentations


### Ruby Driver

Install the bson_ext gem for any performance-critical applications.

**The MongoDB Ruby driver** is the 10gen-supported driver for MongoDB. It's written in pure Ruby, with a recommended C extension for speed. The driver is optimized for simplicity. It can be used on its own, but it also serves as the basis of several object mapping libraries, such as MongoMapper.

- Tutorial
- Ruby Driver README
- API Documentation
- Source Code

#### *Installing / Upgrading*

The ruby driver is hosted at Rubygems.org. Before installing the driver, make sure you're using the latest version of rubygems (currently 1.6.0 as of Feb 2012):

```
$ gem update --system
```

Then install the gems:

```
$ gem install mongo
```

To stay on the bleeding edge, check out the latest source from github:

```
$ git clone git://github.com/mongodb/mongo-ruby-driver.git
$ cd mongo-ruby-driver/
```

Then, install the driver from there:

```
$ rake gem:install
```

#### *BSON*

In versions of the Ruby driver prior to 0.20, the code for serializing to BSON existed in the mongo gem. Now, all BSON serialization is handled by the required bson gem.

```
gem install bson
```

For significantly improved performance, install the bson_ext gem. Using compiled C instead of Ruby, this gem speeds up BSON serialization greatly.

```
gem install bson_ext
```

If you're running on Windows, you'll need the Ruby DevKit installed in order to compile the C extensions.

As long it's in Ruby's load path, `bson_ext` will be loaded automatically when you require `bson`.

Note that beginning with version 0.20, the mongo_ext gem is no longer used.

To learn more about the Ruby driver, see the Ruby Tutorial.

### Object Mappers

Because MongoDB is so easy to use, the basic Ruby driver can be the best solution for many applications.

But if you need validations, associations, and other high-level data modeling functions then an Object Document Mapper may be needed.

In the context of a Rails application these provide functionality equivalent to, but distinct from, ActiveRecord. Because Mongo is a document-based database, these mappers are called Object Document Mappers (ODM) as opposed to Object Relational Mappers (ORM).

Several mappers are available:

- MongoMapper from John Nunemaker
- Mongoid from Durran Jordan
- Mongomatic from Ben Myles
- MongoODM from Carlos Paramio
- MongoModel from Sam Pohlenz
- DriverAPILayer from Alexey Petrushin

All the mappers build on top of the basic Ruby driver and so some knowledge of that is useful, especially if you work with a custom Mongo configuration.

### Notable Projects

Tools for working with MongoDB in Ruby are being developed daily. A partial list can be found in the Projects and Libraries section of our external resources page.

If you're working on a project that you'd like to have included, let us know.

### Presentations

> *MongoDB from Ruby - MongoSF (May 2011)*
> *MongoDB & Ruby Presentations*

## Ruby Tutorial

**Redirection Notice**
This page should redirect to http://api.mongodb.org/ruby/current/file.TUTORIAL.html.

This tutorial gives many common examples of using MongoDB with the Ruby driver. If you're looking for information on data modeling, see

MongoDB Data Modeling and Rails. Links to the various object mappers are listed on our object mappers page.

Interested in GridFS? Checkout GridFS in Ruby.

As always, the latest source for the Ruby driver can be found on github.


- Installation
- A Quick Tour
    - Using the RubyGem
    - Making a Connection
    - Listing All Databases
    - Dropping a Database
    - Authentication (Optional)
    - Getting a List Of Collections
    - Getting a Collection
    - Inserting a Document
    - Updating a Document
    - Finding the First Document In a Collection using `find_one()`
    - Adding Multiple Documents
    - Counting Documents in a Collection
    - Using a Cursor to get all of the Documents
    - Getting a Single Document with a Query
    - Getting a Set of Documents With a Query
    - Selecting a subset of fields for a query
    - Querying with Regular Expressions
    - Creating An Index
    - Creating and querying on a geospatial index
    - Getting a List of Indexes on a Collection
    - Database Administration
- See Also


## Installation

The mongo-ruby-driver gem is served through Rubygems.org. To install, make sure you have the latest version of rubygems.

```
gem update --system
```

Next, install the mongo rubygem:

```
gem install mongo
```

The required `bson` gem will be installed automatically.

For optimum performance, install the bson_ext gem:

```
  gem install bson_ext
```

After installing, you may want to look at the examples directory included in the source distribution. These examples walk through some of the basics of using the Ruby driver.

The full API documentation can be viewed here.

## A Quick Tour

#### Using the RubyGem

All of the code here assumes that you have already executed the following Ruby code:

```
require 'rubygems'  # not necessary for Ruby 1.9
require 'mongo'
```

#### Making a Connection

An Mongo::Connection instance represents a connection to MongoDB. You use a Connection instance to obtain an Mongo:DB instance, which represents a named database. The database doesn't have to exist - if it doesn't, MongoDB will create it for you.

You can optionally specify the MongoDB server address and port when connecting. The following example shows three ways to connect to the database "mydb" on the local machine:

```
db = Mongo::Connection.new.db("mydb")
db = Mongo::Connection.new("localhost").db("mydb")
db = Mongo::Connection.new("localhost", 27017).db("mydb")
```

At this point, the db object will be a connection to a MongoDB server for the specified database. Each DB instance uses a separate socket connection to the server.

If you're trying to connect to a replica set, see Replica Sets in Ruby.

#### Listing All Databases

```
connection = Mongo::Connection.new # (optional host/port args)
connection.database_names.each { |name| puts name }
connection.database_info.each { |info| puts info.inspect}
```

#### Dropping a Database

```
connection.drop_database('database_name')
```

#### Authentication (Optional)

MongoDB can be run in a secure mode where access to databases is controlled through name and password authentication. When run in this mode, any client application must provide a name and password before doing any operations. In the Ruby driver, you simply do the following with the connected mongo object:

```
auth = db.authenticate(my_user_name, my_password)
```

If the name and password are valid for the database, `auth` will be `true`. Otherwise, it will be `false`. You should look at the MongoDB log for further information if available.

#### Getting a List Of Collections

Each database has zero or more collections. You can retrieve a list of them from the db (and print out any that are there):

```
db.collection_names.each { |name| puts name }
```

and assuming that there are two collections, name and address, in the database, you would see

```
name
address
```

as the output.

#### Getting a Collection

You can get a collection to use using the `collection` method:

```
coll = db.collection("testCollection")
```

This is aliased to the [] method:

```
coll = db["testCollection"]
```

Once you have this collection object, you can now do things like insert data, query for data, etc.

#### Inserting a Document

Once you have the collection object, you can insert documents into the collection. For example, lets make a little document that in JSON would be represented as

```
{
   "name" : "MongoDB",
   "type" : "database",
   "count" : 1,
   "info" : {
               x : 203,
               y : 102
             }
}
```

Notice that the above has an "inner" document embedded within it. To do this, we can use a Hash or the driver's OrderedHash (which preserves key order) to create the document (including the inner document), and then just simply insert it into the collection using the `insert()` method.

```
doc = {"name" => "MongoDB", "type" => "database", "count" => 1,
       "info" => {"x" => 203, "y" => '102'}}
coll.insert(doc)
```

#### Updating a Document

We can update the previous document using the `update` method. There are a couple ways to update a document. We can rewrite it:

```
doc["name"] = "MongoDB Ruby"
coll.update({"_id" => doc["_id"]}, doc)
```

Or we can use an atomic operator to change a single value:

```

coll.update({"_id" => doc["_id"]}, {"$set" => {"name" => "MongoDB Ruby"}})
```

Read more about updating documents.

#### Finding the First Document In a Collection using `find_one()`

To show that the document we inserted in the previous step is there, we can do a simple `find_one()` operation to get the first document in the collection. This method returns a single document (rather than the `Cursor` that the `find()` operation returns).

```
my_doc = coll.find_one()
puts my_doc.inspect
```

and you should see:

```
{"_id"=>#<BSON::ObjectID:0x118576c ...>, "name"=>"MongoDB", "info"=>{"x"=>203, "y"=>102}, "type"=>
"database", "count"=>1}
```

Note the `_id` element has been added automatically by MongoDB to your document.

#### Adding Multiple Documents

To demonstrate some more interesting queries, let's add multiple simple documents to the collection. These documents will have the following form:

```
{
   "i" : value
}
```

Here's how to insert them:

```
100.times { |i| coll.insert("i" => i) }
```

Notice that we can insert documents of different "shapes" into the same collection. These records are in the same collection as the complex record we inserted above. This aspect is what we mean when we say that MongoDB is "schema-free".

#### Counting Documents in a Collection

Now that we've inserted 101 documents (the 100 we did in the loop, plus the first one), we can check to see if we have them all using the `count()` method.

```
puts coll.count()
```

and it should print `101`.

#### Using a Cursor to get all of the Documents

To get all the documents from the collection, we use the `find()` method. `find()` returns a `Cursor` object, which allows us to iterate over the set of documents that matches our query. The Ruby driver's Cursor implemented Enumerable, which allows us to use `Enumerable#each`, {{Enumerable#map}, etc. For instance:

```
coll.find().each { |row| puts row.inspect }
```

and that should print all 101 documents in the collection.

#### Getting a Single Document with a Query

We can create a *query* hash to pass to the `find()` method to get a subset of the documents in our collection. For example, if we wanted to find the document for which the value of the "i" field is 71, we would do the following ;

```
coll.find("i" => 71).each { |row| puts row.inspect }
```

and it should just print just one document:

```
{"_id"=>#<BSON::ObjectID:0x117de90 ...>, "i"=>71}
```

#### Getting a Set of Documents With a Query

We can use the query to get a set of documents from our collection. For example, if we wanted to get all documents where "i" > 50, we could write:

```
coll.find("i" => {"$gt" => 50}).each { |row| puts row }
```

which should print the documents where i > 50. We could also get a range, say 20 < i <= 30:

```
coll.find("i" => {"$gt" => 20, "$lte" => 30}).each { |row| puts row }
```

#### Selecting a subset of fields for a query

Use the `:fields` option. If you just want fields "a" and "b":

```
coll.find("i" => {"$gt" => 50}, :fields => ["a", "b"]).each { |row| puts row }
```

#### Querying with Regular Expressions

Regular expressions can be used to query MongoDB. To find all names that begin with 'a':

```
coll.find({"name" => /^a/})
```

You can also construct a regular expression dynamically. To match a given search string:

```
  search_string = params['search']

  # Constructor syntax
  coll.find({"name" => Regexp.new(search_string)})

  # Literal syntax
  coll.find({"name" => /#{search_string}/})
```

Although MongoDB isn't vulnerable to anything like SQL-injection, it may be worth checking the search string for anything malicious.

#### Creating An Index

MongoDB supports indexes, and they are very easy to add on a collection. To create an index, you specify an index name and an array of field names to be indexed, or a single field name. The following creates an ascending index on the "i" field:

```
# create_index assumes ascending order; see method docs
# for details
coll.create_index("i")
```

To specify complex indexes or a descending index you need to use a slightly more complex syntax - the index specifier must be an Array of [field name, direction] pairs. Directions should be specified as Mongo::ASCENDING or Mongo::DESCENDING:

```
# explicit "ascending"
coll.create_index([["i", Mongo::ASCENDING]])
```

#### Creating and querying on a geospatial index

First, create the index on a field containing long-lat values:

```
  people.create_index([["loc", Mongo::GEO2D]])
```

Then get a list of the twenty locations nearest to the point 50, 50:

```
people.find({"loc" => {"$near" => [50, 50]}}, {:limit => 20}).each do |p|
  puts p.inspect
end
```

#### Getting a List of Indexes on a Collection

You can get a list of the indexes on a collection using `coll.index_information()`.

#### Database Administration

A database can have one of three profiling levels: off (:off), slow queries only (:slow_only), or all (:all). To see the database level:

```
puts db.profiling_level   # => off (the symbol :off printed as a string)
db.profiling_level = :slow_only
```

Validating a collection will return an interesting hash if all is well or raise an exception if there is a problem.

```
p db.validate_collection('coll_name')
```

### See Also

- Ruby Driver Official Docs
- MongoDB Koans A path to MongoDB enlightenment via the Ruby driver.
- MongoDB Manual

## Replica Sets in Ruby

**Redirection Notice**
This page should redirect to http://api.mongodb.org/ruby/current/file.REPLICA_SETS.html.

Here follow a few considerations for those using the Ruby driver with MongoDB and replica sets.


- Setup
- Connection Failures
- Recovery
- Testing
- Further Reading


#### Setup

First, make sure that you've configured and initialized a replica set.

Connecting to a replica set from the Ruby driver is easy. If you only want to specify a single node, simply pass that node to `Connection.new`:

```
@connection = Connection.new('foo.local', 27017)
```

If you want to pass in multiple seed nodes, use `Connection.multi`:

```
@connection = Connection.multi([['n1.mydb.net', 27017],
   ['n2.mydb.net', 27017], ['n3.mydb.net', 27017]])
```

In both cases, the driver will attempt to connect to a master node and, when found, will merge any other known members of the replica set into the seed list.

#### Connection Failures

Imagine that our master node goes offline. How will the driver respond?

At first, the driver will try to send operations to what was the master node. These operations will fail, and the driver will raise a **ConnectionFailure** exception. It then becomes the client's responsibility to decide how to handle this.

If the client decides to retry, it's not guaranteed that another member of the replica set will have been promoted to master right away, so it's still possible that the driver will raise another **ConnectionFailure**. However, once a member has been promoted to master, typically within a few seconds, subsequent operations will succeed.

The driver will essentially cycle through all known seed addresses until a node identifies itself as master.

#### Recovery

Driver users may wish to wrap their database calls with failure recovery code. Here's one possibility:

```
# Ensure retry upon failure
def rescue_connection_failure(max_retries=5)
    success = false
    retries = 0
    while !success
      begin
        yield
        success = true
      rescue Mongo::ConnectionFailure => ex
        retries += 1
        raise ex if retries >= max_retries
        sleep(1)
      end
    end
  end
end

# Wrapping a call to #count()
rescue_connection_failure do
  @db.collection('users').count()
end
```

Of course, the proper way to handle connection failures will always depend on the individual application. We encourage object-mapper and application developers to publish any promising results.

#### Testing

The Ruby driver (>= 1.0.6) includes some unit tests for verifying replica set behavior. They reside in **tests/replica_sets**. You can run them individually with the following rake tasks:

```
rake test:replica_set_count
rake test:replica_set_insert
rake test:pooled_replica_set_insert
rake test:replica_set_query
```

Make sure you have a replica set running on localhost before trying to run these tests.

#### Further Reading

- Replica Sets
- [Replics Set Configuration]

## GridFS in Ruby

**Redirection Notice**
This page should redirect to http://api.mongodb.org/ruby/current/file.GridFS.html.

GridFS, which stands for "Grid File Store," is a specification for storing large files in MongoDB. It works by dividing a file into manageable chunks and storing each of those chunks as a separate document. GridFS requires two collections to achieve this: one collection stores each file's metadata (e.g., name, size, etc.) and another stores the chunks themselves. If you're interested in more details, check out the GridFS Specification.

Prior to version 0.19, the MongoDB Ruby driver implemented GridFS using the GridFS::GridStore class. This class has been deprecated in favor of two new classes: Grid and GridFileSystem. These classes have a much simpler interface, and the rewrite has resulted in a significant speed improvement. **Reads are over twice as fast, and write speed has been increased fourfold**. 0.19 is thus a worthwhile upgrade.


- The Grid class
    - Saving files
    - File metadata
    - Safe mode
    - Deleting files
- The GridFileSystem class
    - Saving files
    - Deleting files
    - Metadata and safe mode

- Advanced Users

### *The Grid class*

The Grid class represents the core GridFS implementation. Grid gives you a simple file store, keyed on a unique ID. This means that duplicate filenames aren't a problem. To use the Grid class, first make sure you have a database, and then instantiate a Grid:

```
@db = Mongo::Connection.new.db('social_site')

@grid = Grid.new(@db)
```

#### Saving files

Once you have a Grid object, you can start saving data to it. The data can be either a string or an IO-like object that responds to a #read method:

```
# Saving string data
id = @grid.put("here's some string / binary data")

# Saving IO data and including the optional filename
image = File.open("me.jpg")
id2   = @grid.put(image, :filename => "me.jpg")
```

Grid#put returns an object id, which you can use to retrieve the file:

```
# Get the string we saved
file = @grid.get(id)

# Get the file we saved
image = @grid.get(id2)
```

#### File metadata

There are accessors for the various file attributes:

```
image.filename
# => "me.jpg"

image.content_type
# => "image/jpg"

image.file_length
# => 502357

image.upload_date
# => Mon Mar 01 16:18:30 UTC 2010

# Read all the image's data at once
image.read

# Read the first 100k bytes of the image
image.read(100 * 1024)
```

When putting a file, you can set many of these attributes and write arbitrary metadata:

```
# Saving IO data
  file = File.open("me.jpg")
  id2  = @grid.put(file,
           :filename     => "my-avatar.jpg"
           :content_type => "application/jpg",
           :_id          => 'a-unique-id-to-use-in-lieu-of-a-random-one',
           :chunk_size   => 100 * 1024,
           :metadata     => {'description' => "taken after a game of ultimate"})
```

#### Safe mode

A kind of safe mode is built into the GridFS specification. When you save a file, and MD5 hash is created on the server. If you save the file in safe mode, an MD5 will be created on the client for comparison with the server version. If the two hashes don't match, an exception will be raised.

```
  image = File.open("me.jpg")
  id2   = @grid.put(image, "my-avatar.jpg", :safe => true)
```

#### Deleting files

Deleting a file is as simple as providing the id:

```
  @grid.delete(id2)
```

### *The GridFileSystem class*

GridFileSystem is a light emulation of a file system and therefore has a couple of unique properties. The first is that filenames are assumed to be unique. The second, a consequence of the first, is that files are versioned. To see what this means, let's create a GridFileSystem instance:

#### Saving files

```
  @db = Mongo::Connection.new.db("social_site")

  @fs = GridFileSystem.new(@db)
```

Now suppose we want to save the file 'me.jpg.' This is easily done using a filesystem-like API:

```
  image = File.open("me.jpg")
  @fs.open("me.jpg", "w") do |f|
    f.write image
  end
```

We can then retrieve the file by filename:

```
  image = @fs.open("me.jpg", "r") {|f| f.read }
```

No problems there. But what if we need to replace the file? That too is straightforward:

```
  image = File.open("me-dancing.jpg")
  @fs.open("me.jpg", "w") do |f|
    f.write image
  end
```

But a couple things need to be kept in mind. First is that the original 'me.jpg' will be available until the new 'me.jpg' saves. From then on, calls to the #open method will always return the most recently saved version of a file. But, and this the second point, old versions of the file won't be deleted. So if you're going to be rewriting files often, you could end up with a lot of old versions piling up. One solution to this is to use the :delete_old options when writing a file:

```
image = File.open("me-dancing.jpg")
@fs.open("me.jpg", "w", :delete_old => true) do |f|
  f.write image
end
```

This will delete all but the latest version of the file.

#### Deleting files

When you delete a file by name, you delete all versions of that file:

```
@fs.delete("me.jpg")
```

#### Metadata and safe mode

All of the options for storing metadata and saving in safe mode are available for the GridFileSystem class:

```
image = File.open("me.jpg")
@fs.open('my-avatar.jpg', w,
           :content_type => "application/jpg",
           :metadata     => {'description' => "taken on 3/1/2010 after a game of ultimate"},
           :_id          => 'a-unique-id-to-use-instead-of-the-automatically-generated-one',
           :safe         => true) { |f| f.write image }
```

### *Advanced Users*

Astute code readers will notice that the Grid and GridFileSystem classes are merely thin wrappers around an underlying GridIO class. This means that it's easy to customize the GridFS implementation presented here; just use GridIO for all the low-level work, and build the API you need in an external manager class similar to Grid or GridFileSystem.

## Rails - Getting Started

Using Rails 3? See Rails 3 - Getting Started

This tutorial describes how to set up a simple Rails application with MongoDB, using MongoMapper as an object mapper. We assume you're using Rails versions prior to 3.0.


- Configuration
- Testing
- Coding


#### Using a Rails Template

All of the configuration steps listed below, and more, are encapsulated in this Rails template (raw version), based on a similar one by Ben Scofield . You can create your project with the template as follows:

```
rails project_name -m "http://gist.github.com/219223.txt"
```

Be sure to replace **project_name** with the name of your project.

If you want to set up your project manually, read on.

### *Configuration*

1. We need to tell MongoMapper which database we'll be using. Save the following to **config/initializers/database.rb**:

```
MongoMapper.database = "db_name-#{Rails.env}"
```

Replace **db_name** with whatever name you want to give the database. The **Rails.env** variable will ensure that a different database is used for each environment.

2. If you're using Passenger, add this code to **config/initializers/database.rb**.

```
if defined?(PhusionPassenger)
   PhusionPassenger.on_event(:starting_worker_process) do |forked|
     MongoMapper.connection.connect_to_master if forked
   end
end
```

3. Clean out **config/database.yml**. This file should be blank, as we're not connecting to the database in the traditional way.

4. Remove ActiveRecord from environment.rb.

```
config.frameworks -= [:active_record]
```

5. Add MongoMapper to the environment. This can be done by opening **config/environment.rb** and adding the line:

```
config.gem 'mongo_mapper'
```

Once you've done this, you can install the gem in the project by running:

```
rake gems:install
rake gems:unpack
```

### *Testing*

It's important to keep in mind that with MongoDB, we cannot wrap test cases in transactions. One possible work-around is to invoke a **teardown** method after each test case to clear out the database.

To automate this, I've found it effective to modify **ActiveSupport::TestCase** with the code below.

```
# Drop all columns after each test case.
def teardown
  MongoMapper.database.collections.each do |coll|
    coll.remove
  end
end

# Make sure that each test case has a teardown
# method to clear the db after each test.
def inherited(base)
  base.define_method teardown do
    super
  end
end
```

This way, all test classes will automatically invoke the teardown method. In the example above, the teardown method clears each collection. We might also choose to drop each collection or drop the database as a whole, but this would be considerably more expensive and is only necessary if our tests manipulate indexes.

Usually, this code is added in **test/test_helper.rb**. See the aforementioned rails template for specifics.

### *Coding*

If you've followed the foregoing steps (or if you've created your Rails with the provided template), then you're ready to start coding. For help on that, you can read about modeling your domain in Rails.

# Rails 3 - Getting Started

It's not difficult to use MongoDB with Rails 3. Most of it comes down to making sure that you're not loading ActiveRecord and understanding how to use Bundler, the new Ruby dependency manager.


- Install the Rails 3
- Configure your application
- Bundle and Initialize
    - Bundling
    - Initializing
- Running Tests
- Conclusion


### *Install the Rails 3*

If you haven't done so already, install Rails 3.

```
# Use sudo if your setup requires it
gem install rails
```

### *Configure your application*

The important thing here is to avoid loading ActiveRecord. One way to do this is with the `--skip-active-record` switch. So you'd create your app skeleton like so:

```
rails new my_app --skip-active-record
```

Alternatively, if you've already created your app (or just want to know what this actually does), have a look at `config/application.rb` and change the first lines from this:

```
require "rails/all"
```

to this:

```
require "action_controller/railtie"
require "action_mailer/railtie"
require "active_resource/railtie"
require "rails/test_unit/railtie"
```

It's also important to make sure that the reference to active_record in the generator block is commented out:

```
# Configure generators values. Many other options are available, be sure to check the documentation.
# config.generators do |g|
#   g.orm             :active_record
#   g.template_engine :erb
#   g.test_framework  :test_unit, :fixture => true
# end
```

As of this this writing, it's commented out by default, so you probably won't have to change anything here.

### *Bundle and Initialize*

The final step involves bundling any gems you'll need and then creating an initializer for connecting to the database.

#### Bundling

Edit `Gemfile`, located in the Rails root directory. By default, our `Gemfile` will only load Rails:

```
gem "rails", "3.0.0"
```

Normally, using MongoDB will simply mean adding whichever OM framework you want to work with, as these will require the "mongo" gem by default.

```
# Edit this Gemfile to bundle your application's dependencies.

source 'http://gemcutter.org'

gem "rails", "3.0.0"
gem "mongo_mapper"
```

However, there's currently an issue with loading bson_ext, as the current gemspec isn't compatible with the way Bundler works. We'll be fixing that soon; just pay attention to this issue.

In the meantime, you can use the following work-around:

```
# Edit this Gemfile to bundle your application's dependencies.

require 'rubygems'
require 'mongo'
source 'http://gemcutter.org'

gem "rails", "3.0.0"
gem "mongo_mapper"
```

Requiring `rubygems` and `mongo` before running the `gem` command will ensure that `bson_ext` is loaded. If you'd rather not load `rubygems`, just make sure that both `mongo` and `bson_ext` are in your load path when you require `mongo`.

Once you've configured your `Gemfile`, run the bundle installer:

```
bundle install
```

#### Initializing

Last item is to create an initializer to connect to MongoDB. Create a Ruby file in `config/initializers`. You can give it any name you want; here we'll call it `config/initializers/mongo.rb`:

```
MongoMapper.connection = Mongo::Connection.new('localhost', 27017)
MongoMapper.database = "#myapp-#{Rails.env}"

if defined?(PhusionPassenger)
   PhusionPassenger.on_event(:starting_worker_process) do |forked|
     MongoMapper.connection.connect if forked
   end
end
```

### *Running Tests*

A slight modification is required to get `rake test` working (thanks to John P. Wood). Create a file `lib/tasks/mongo.rake` containing the following:

```
namespace :db do
  namespace :test do
    task :prepare do
      # Stub out for MongoDB
    end
  end
end
```

Now the various `rake test` tasks will run properly. See John's post for more details.

### *Conclusion*

That should be all. You can now start creating models based on whichever OM you've installed.

## MongoDB Data Modeling and Rails

This tutorial discusses the development of a web application on Rails and MongoDB. MongoMapper will serve as our object mapper. The goal is to provide some insight into the design choices required for building on MongoDB. To that end, we'll be constructing a simple but non-trivial social news application. The source code for **newsmonger** is available on github for those wishing to dive right in.


- Modeling Stories
  - Caching to Avoid N+1
  - A Note on Denormalization
  - Fields as arrays
  - Atomic Updates
- Modeling Comments
  - Linear, Embedded Comments
  - Nested, Embedded Comments
  - Comment collections
- Unfinished business


Assuming you've configured your application to work with MongoMapper, let's start thinking about the data model.

### *Modeling Stories*

A news application relies on stories at its core, so we'll start with a Story model:

```
class Story
  include MongoMapper::Document

  key :title,     String
  key :url,       String
  key :slug,      String
  key :voters,    Array
  key :votes,     Integer, :default => 0
  key :relevance, Integer, :default => 0

  # Cached values.
  key :comment_count, Integer, :default => 0
  key :username,      String

  # Note this: ids are of class ObjectId.
  key :user_id,   ObjectId
  timestamps!

  # Relationships.
  belongs_to :user

  # Validations.
  validates_presence_of :title, :url, :user_id
end
```

Obviously, a story needs a title, url, and user_id, and should belong to a user. These are self-explanatory.

#### Caching to Avoid N+1

When we display our list of stories, we'll need to show the name of the user who posted the story. If we were using a relational database, we could perform a join on users and stores, and get all our objects in a single query. But MongoDB does not support joins and so, at times, requires bit of denormalization. Here, this means caching the 'username' attribute.

#### A Note on Denormalization

Relational purists may be feeling uneasy already, as if we were violating some universal law. But let's bear in mind that MongoDB collections are not equivalent to relational tables; each serves a unique design objective. A normalized table provides an atomic, isolated chunk of data. A document, however, more closely represents an object as a whole. In the case of a social news site, it can be argued that a username is intrinsic to the story being posted.

What about updates to the username? It's true that such updates will be expensive; happily, in this case, they'll be rare. The read savings achieved in denormalizing will surely outweigh the costs of the occasional update. Alas, this is not hard and fast rule: ultimately, developers must evaluate their applications for the appropriate level of normalization.

#### Fields as arrays

With a relational database, even trivial relationships are blown out into multiple tables. Consider the votes a story receives. We need a way of recording which users have voted on which stories. The standard way of handling this would involve creating a table, 'votes', with each row referencing user_id and story_id.

With a document database, it makes more sense to store those votes as an array of user ids, as we do here with the 'voters' key.

For fast lookups, we can create an index on this field. In the MongoDB shell:

```
db.stories.ensureIndex('voters');
```

Or, using MongoMapper, we can specify the index in **config/initializers/database.rb**:

```
Story.ensure_index(:voters)
```

To find all the stories voted on by a given user:

```
Story.all(:conditions => {:voters => @user.id})
```

#### Atomic Updates

Storing the `voters` array in the `Story` class also allows us to take advantage of atomic updates. What this means here is that, when a user votes on a story, we can

1. ensure that the voter hasn't voted yet, and, if not,
2. increment the number of votes and
3. add the new voter to the array.

MongoDB's query and update features allows us to perform all three actions in a single operation. Here's what that would look like from the shell:

```
// Assume that story_id and user_id represent real story and user ids.
db.stories.update({_id: story_id, voters: {'$ne': user_id}},
  {'$inc': {votes: 1}, '$push': {voters: user_id}});
```

What this says is "get me a story with the given id whose `voters` array does not contain the given user id and, if you find such a story, perform two atomic updates: first, increment `votes` by 1 and then push the user id onto the `voters` array."

This operation highly efficient; it's also reliable. The one caveat is that, because update operations are "fire and forget," you won't get a response from the server. But in most cases, this should be a non-issue.

A MongoMapper implementation of the same update would look like this:

```
  def self.upvote(story_id, user_id)
    collection.update({'_id' => story_id, 'voters' => {'$ne' => user_id}},
      {'$inc' => {'votes' => 1}, '$push' => {'voters' => user_id}})
  end
```

### *Modeling Comments*

In a relational database, comments are usually given their own table, related by foreign key to some parent table. This approach is occasionally necessary in MongoDB; however, it's always best to try to embed first, as this will achieve greater query efficiency.

#### Linear, Embedded Comments

Linear, non-threaded comments should be embedded. Here are the most basic MongoMapper classes to implement such a structure:

```
class Story
  include MongoMapper::Document
  many :comments
end
```

```
class Comment
  include MongoMapper::EmbeddedDocument
  key :body, String

  belongs_to :story
end
```

If we were using the Ruby driver alone, we could save our structure like so:

```
@stories  = @db.collection('stories')
  @document = {:title => "MongoDB on Rails",
               :comments => [{:body     => "Revelatory! Loved it!",
                              :username => "Matz"
                             }
                            ]
              }
  @stories.save(@document)
```

Essentially, comments are represented as an array of objects within a story document. This simple structure should be used for any one-to-many relationship where the many items are linear.

#### Nested, Embedded Comments

But what if we're building threaded comments? An admittedly more complicated problem, two solutions will be presented here. The first is to represent the tree structure in the nesting of the comments themselves. This might be achieved using the Ruby driver as follows:

```
@stories  = @db.collection('stories')
  @document = {:title => "MongoDB on Rails",
               :comments => [{:body     => "Revelatory! Loved it!",
                              :username => "Matz",
                              :comments => [{:body     => "Agreed.",
                                             :username => "rubydev29"
                                            }
                                           ]
                             }
                            ]
              }
  @stories.save(@document)
```

Representing this structure using MongoMapper would be tricky, requiring a number of custom mods.

But this structure has a number of benefits. The nesting is captured in the document itself (this is, in fact, how Business Insider represents

comments). And this schema is highly performant, since we can get the story, and all of its comments, in a single query, with no application-side processing for constructing the tree.

One drawback is that alternative views of the comment tree require some significant reorganizing.

#### Comment collections

We can also represent comments as their own collection. Relative to the other options, this incurs a small performance penalty while granting us the greatest flexibility. The tree structure can be represented by storing the unique path for each leaf (see Mathias's original post on the idea). Here are the relevant sections of this model:

```
class Comment
  include MongoMapper::Document

  key :body,       String
  key :depth,      Integer, :default => 0
  key :path,       String,  :default => ""

  # Note: we're intentionally storing parent_id as a string
  key :parent_id,  String
  key :story_id,   ObjectId
  timestamps!

  # Relationships.
  belongs_to :story

  # Callbacks.
  after_create :set_path

  private

  # Store the comment's path.
  def set_path
    unless self.parent_id.blank?
      parent        = Comment.find(self.parent_id)
      self.story_id = parent.story_id
      self.depth    = parent.depth + 1
      self.path     = parent.path + ":" + parent.id
    end
    save
  end
```

The path ends up being a string of object ids. This makes it easier to display our comments nested, with each level in order of karma or votes. If we specify an index on story_id, path, and votes, the database can handle half the work of getting our comments in nested, sorted order.

The rest of the work can be accomplished with a couple grouping methods, which can be found in the newsmonger source code.

It goes without saying that modeling comments in their own collection also facilitates various site-wide aggregations, including displaying the latest, grouping by user, etc.

### *Unfinished business*

Document-oriented data modeling is still young. The fact is, many more applications will need to be built on the document model before we can say anything definitive about best practices. So the foregoing should be taken as suggestions, only. As you discover new patterns, we encourage you to document them, and feel free to let us know about what works (and what doesn't).

Developers working on object mappers and the like are encouraged to implement the best document patterns in their code, and to be wary of recreating relational database models in their apps.

## Ruby External Resources

There are a number of good resources appearing all over the web for learning about MongoDB and Ruby. A useful selection is listed below. If you know of others, do let us know.

- Screencasts
- Presentations
- Articles
- Projects
- Libraries

### *Screencasts*

Introduction to MongoDB - Part I
An introduction to MongoDB via the MongoDB shell.

Introduction to MongoDB - Part II
In this screencast, Joon You teaches how to use the Ruby driver to build a simple Sinatra app.

Introduction to MongoDB - Part III
For the final screencast in the series, Joon You introduces MongoMapper and Rails.

RailsCasts: MongoDB & MongoMapper
Ryan Bates' RailsCast introducing MongoDB and MongoMapper.

RailsCasts: Mongoid
Ryan Bates' RailsCast introducing Mongoid.

### *Presentations*

Introduction to MongoDB (Video)
Mike Dirolf's introduction to MongoDB at Pivotal Labs, SF.

MongoDB: A Ruby Document Store that doesn't rhyme with 'Ouch' (Slides)
Wynn Netherland's introduction to MongoDB with some comparisons to CouchDB.

MongoDB (is) for Rubyists (Slides)
Kyle Banker's presentation on why MongoDB is for Rubyists (and all human-oriented programmers).

### *Articles*

Why I Think Mongo is to Databases What Rails was to Frameworks
What if a key-value store mated with a relational database system?
Mongo Tips
John Nunemaker's articles on MongoDB and his Mongo Tips blog.

A series of articles on aggregation with MongoDB and Ruby:
1. Part I: Introduction of Aggregation in MongoDB
2. Part II: MongoDB Grouping Elaborated
3. Part III: Introduction to Map-Reduce in MongoDB

Does the MongoDB Driver Support Feature X?
An explanation of how the MongoDB drivers usually automatically support new database features.

### *Projects*

Simple Pub/Sub
A very simple pub/sub system.

Mongo Queue
An extensible thread safe job/message queueing system that uses mongodb as the persistent storage engine.

Resque-mongo
A port of the Github's Resque to MongoDB.

Mongo Admin
A Rails plugin for browsing and managing MongoDB data. See the live demo.

Sinatra Resource
Resource Oriented Architecture (REST) for Sinatra and MongoMapper.

Shorty
A URL-shortener written with Sinatra and the MongoDB Ruby driver.

NewsMonger
A simple social news application demonstrating MongoMapper and Rails.

Data Catalog API
From Sunlight Labs, a non-trivial application using MongoMapper and Sinatra.

Watchtower
An example application using Mustache, MongoDB, and Sinatra.

Shapado

A question and answer site similar to Stack Overflow. Live version at shapado.com.

### *Libraries*

ActiveExpando
An extension to ActiveRecord to allow the storage of arbitrary attributes in MongoDB.

ActsAsTree (MongoMapper)
ActsAsTree implementation for MongoMapper.

Machinist adapter (MongoMapper)
Machinist adapter using MongoMapper.

Mongo-Delegate
A delegation library for experimenting with production data without altering it. A quite useful pattern.

Remarkable Matchers (MongoMapper)
Testing / Matchers library using MongoMapper.

OpenIdAuthentication, supporting MongoDB as the datastore
Brandon Keepers' fork of OpenIdAuthentication supporting MongoDB.

MongoTree (MongoRecord)
MongoTree adds parent / child relationships to MongoRecord.

Merb_MongoMapper
a plugin for the Merb framework for supporting MongoMapper models.

Mongolytics (MongoMapper)
A web analytics tool.

Rack-GridFS
A Rack middleware component that creates HTTP endpoints for files stored in GridFS.

## Frequently Asked Questions - Ruby

**Redirection Notice**
This page should redirect to http://api.mongodb.org/ruby/1.1.5/file.FAQ.html.

This is a list of frequently asked questions about using Ruby with MongoDB. If you have a question you'd like to have answered here, please add it in the comments.


- Can I run [insert command name here] from the Ruby driver?
- Does the Ruby driver support an EXPLAIN command?
- I see that BSON supports a symbol type. Does this mean that I can store Ruby symbols in MongoDB?
- Why can't I access random elements within a cursor?
- Why can't I save an instance of TimeWithZone?
- I keep getting CURSOR_NOT_FOUND exceptions. What's happening?
- I periodically see connection failures between the driver and MongoDB. Why can't the driver retry the operation automatically?


Can I run [insert command name here] from the Ruby driver?

Yes. You can run any of the available database commands from the driver using the DB#command method. The only trick is to use an OrderedHash when specifying the command. For example, here's how you'd run an asynchronous fsync from the driver:

```
# This command is run on the admin database.
@db = Mongo::Connection.new.db('admin')

# Build the command.
cmd = OrderedHash.new
cmd['fsync'] = 1
cmd['async'] = true

# Run it.
@db.command(cmd)
```

It's important to keep in mind that some commands, like `fsync`, must be run on the `admin` database, while other commands can be run on any database. If you're having trouble, check the command reference to make sure you're using the command correctly.

Does the Ruby driver support an EXPLAIN command?

Yes. `explain` is, technically speaking, an option sent to a query that tells MongoDB to return an explain plan rather than the query's results. You can use `explain` by constructing a query and calling explain at the end:

```
@collection = @db['users']
result = @collection.find({:name => "jones"}).explain
```

The resulting explain plan might look something like this:

```
{"cursor"=>"BtreeCursor name_1",
 "startKey"=>{"name"=>"Jones"},
 "endKey"=>{"name"=>"Jones"},
 "nscanned"=>1.0,
 "n"=>1,
 "millis"=>0,
 "oldPlan"=>{"cursor"=>"BtreeCursor name_1",
             "startKey"=>{"name"=>"Jones"},
             "endKey"=>{"name"=>"Jones"}
 },
 "allPlans"=>[{"cursor"=>"BtreeCursor name_1",
               "startKey"=>{"name"=>"Jones"},
               "endKey"=>{"name"=>"Jones"}}]
 }
```

Because this collection has an index on the "name" field, the query uses that index, only having to scan a single record. "n" is the number of records the query will return. "millis" is the time the query takes, in milliseconds. "oldPlan" indicates that the query optimizer has already seen this kind of query and has, therefore, saved an efficient query plan. "allPlans" shows all the plans considered for this query.

I see that BSON supports a symbol type. Does this mean that I can store Ruby symbols in MongoDB?

You can store Ruby symbols in MongoDB, but only as values. BSON specifies that document keys must be strings. So, for instance, you can do this:

```
@collection = @db['test']

boat_id = @collection.save({:vehicle  => :boat})
car_id  = @collection.save({"vehicle" => "car"})

@collection.find_one('_id' => boat_id)
{"_id" => ObjectID('4bb372a8238d3b5c8c000001'), "vehicle" => :boat}


@collection.find_one('_id' => car_id)
{"_id" => ObjectID('4bb372a8238d3b5c8c000002'), "vehicle" => "car"}
```

Notice that the symbol values are returned as expected, but that symbol keys are treated as strings.

Why can't I access random elements within a cursor?

MongoDB cursors are designed for sequentially iterating over a result set, and all the drivers, including the Ruby driver, stick closely to this directive. Internally, a Ruby cursor fetches results in batches by running a MongoDB `getmore` operation. The results are buffered for efficient iteration on the client-side.

What this means is that a cursor is nothing more than a device for returning a result set on a query that's been initiated on the server. Cursors are not containers for result sets. If we allow a cursor to be randomly accessed, then we run into issues regarding the freshness of the data. For instance, if I iterate over a cursor and then want to retrieve the cursor's first element, should a stored copy be returned, or should the cursor re-run the query? If we returned a stored copy, it may not be fresh. And if the the query is re-run, then we're technically dealing with a new cursor.

To avoid those issues, we're saying that anyone who needs flexible access to the results of a query should store those results in an array and then access the data as needed.

Why can't I save an instance of TimeWithZone?

MongoDB stores times in UTC as the number of milliseconds since the epoch. This means that the Ruby driver serializes Ruby Time objects only. While it would certainly be possible to serialize a TimeWithZone, this isn't preferable since the driver would still deserialize to a Time object.

All that said, if necessary, it'd be easy to write a thin wrapper over the driver that would store an extra time zone attribute and handle the serialization/deserialization of TimeWithZone transparently.

I keep getting CURSOR_NOT_FOUND exceptions. What's happening?

The most likely culprit here is that the cursor is timing out on the server. Whenever you issue a query, a cursor is created on the server. Cursor naturally time out after ten minutes, which means that if you happen to be iterating over a cursor for more than ten minutes, you risk a CURSOR_NOT_FOUND exception.

There are two solutions to this problem. You can either:

1. Limit your query. Use some combination of `limit` and `skip` to reduce the total number of query results. This will, obviously, bring down the time it takes to iterate.

2. Turn off the cursor timeout. To do that, invoke `find` with a block, and pass `:timeout => true`:

```
@collection.find({}, :timeout => false) do |cursor|
  cursor.each do |document
    # Process documents here
  end
end
```

I periodically see connection failures between the driver and MongoDB. Why can't the driver retry the operation automatically?

A connection failure can indicate any number of failure scenarios. Has the server crashed? Are we experiencing a temporary network partition? Is there a bug in our ssh tunnel?

Without further investigation, it's impossible to know exactly what has caused the connection failure. Furthermore, when we do see a connection failure, it's impossible to know how many operations prior to the failure succeeded. Imagine, for instance, that we're using safe mode and we send an `$inc` operation to the server. It's entirely possible that the server has received the `$inc` but failed on the call to `getLastError`. In that case, retrying the operation would result in a double-increment.

Because of the indeterminacy involved, the MongoDB drivers will not retry operations on connection failure. How connection failures should be handled is entirely dependent on the application. Therefore, we leave it to the application developers to make the best decision in this case.

The drivers will reconnect on the subsequent operation.

# Java Language Center

### Java Driver

- Java Driver
  - Basics
  - Specific Topics and How-To
- Third Party Frameworks and Libs
  - POJO Mappers
  - Code Generation
  - Misc
- Clojure
- Groovy
- JavaScript (Rhino)
- JRuby
- Scala
- Hadoop
- Presentations

#### Basics

- Download the Java Driver
- Tutorial
- API Documentation
- Release Notes

#### Specific Topics and How-To

- Concurrency

- Saving Objects
- Data Types

### Third Party Frameworks and Libs

#### POJO Mappers

- Morphia - Type-Safe Wrapper with DAO/Datastore abstractions
- Mungbean (w/clojure support)
- Spring MongoDB – Provides Spring users with a familiar data access features including rich POJO mapping.
- DataNucleus JPA/JDO – JPA/JDO wrapper
- lib-mongomapper JavaBean Mapper (No annotations)
- mongo-jackson-mapper Uses jackson (annotations) to map to/from POJOs and has a simple wrapper around DBCollection to simply this.
- Kundera - JPA compliant ORM. Works with multiple datastores.
- Jongo - Query in Java as in Mongo shell (using strings), unmarshall results into Java objects (using Jackson)

#### Code Generation

- Sculptor - mongodb-based DSL -> Java (code generator)
- GuicyData - DSL -> Java generator with Guice integration
    - Blog Entries

#### Misc

- log4mongo a log4j appender
- mongo-java-logging a Java logging handler
- (Experimental, Type4) JDBC driver
- Metamodel data exploration and querying library
- Mongodb Java REST server based on Jetty

### Clojure

- Congo Mongo
- monger

### Groovy

- Groovy Tutorial for MongoDB
- MongoDB made more Groovy
- GMongo, a Groovy wrapper to the mongodb Java driver
    - GMongo 0.5 Release Writeup

### JavaScript (Rhino)

- MongoDB-Rhino - A toolset to provide full integration between the Rhino JavaScript engine for the JVM and MongoDB. Uses the MongoDB Java driver.

### JRuby

- jmongo A thin ruby wrapper around the mongo-java-driver for vastly better jruby performance.

If there is a project missing here, just add a comment or email the list and we'll add it.

### Scala

- Scala Language Center

### Hadoop

- Hadoop

### Presentations

- Building a Mongo DSL in Scala at Hot Potato - Lincoln Hochberg's Presentation from MongoSF (April 2010)
- Java Development - Brendan McAdams' Presentation from MongoNYC (May 2010)
- Java Development - James Williams' Presentation from MongoSF (April 2010)
- Morphia: Easy Java Persistance for MongoDB - Scott Hernandez' presentation at MongoSF (May 2011)
- Spring Source and MongoDB - Chris Richardson's presentation at MongoSV (December 2010)
- Using MongoDB with Scala - Brendan McAdams' Presentation at the New York Scala Enthusiasts (August 2010)

- More Java-related presentations

## Java Driver Concurrency

The Java MongoDB driver is thread safe. If you are using in a web serving environment, for example, you should create a single Mongo instance, and you can use it in every request. The Mongo object maintains an internal pool of connections to the database (default pool size of 10). For every request to the DB (find, insert, etc) the java thread will obtain a connection from the pool, execute the operation, and release the connection. This means the connection (socket) used may be different each time.

Additionally in the case of a replica set with slaveOk option turned on, the read operations will be distributed evenly across all slaves. This means that within the same thread, a write followed by a read may be sent to different servers (master then slave). In turns the read operation may not see the data just written since replication is asynchronous. If you want to ensure complete consistency in a "session" (maybe an http request), you would want the driver to use the same socket, which you can achieve by using a "consistent request". Call requestStart() before your operations and requestDone() to release the connection back to the pool:

```
DB db...;
db.requestStart();
db.requestEnsureConnection();

code....

db.requestDone();
```

DB and DBCollection are completely thread safe. In fact, they are cached so you get the same instance no matter what.

#### WriteConcern option for single write operation

Since by default a connection is given back to the pool after each request, you may wonder how calling getLastError() works after a write. You should actually use a write concern like `WriteConcern.SAFE` instead of calling getLastError() manually. The driver will then call getLastError() before putting the connection back in the pool.

```
DBCollection coll...;
coll.insert(..., WriteConcern.SAFE);

// is equivalent to
DB db...;
DBCollection coll...;
db.requestStart();
coll.insert(...);
DBObject err = db.getLastError();
db.requestDone();
```

## Java - Saving Objects Using DBObject

The Java driver provides a DBObject interface to save custom objects to the database.

For example, suppose one had a class called Tweet that they wanted to save:

```
public class Tweet implements DBObject {
    /* ... */
}
```

Then you can say:

```
Tweet myTweet = new Tweet();
myTweet.put("user", userId);
myTweet.put("message", msg);
myTweet.put("date", new Date());

collection.insert(myTweet);
```

When a document is retrieved from the database, it is automatically converted to a DBObject. To convert it to an instance of your class, use DBCollection.setObjectClass():

```
collection.setObjectClass(Tweet.class);

Tweet myTweet = (Tweet)collection.findOne();
```

If for some reason you wanted to change the message you can simply take that tweet and save it back after updating the field.

```
Tweet myTweet = (Tweet)collection.findOne();
myTweet.put("message", newMsg);

collection.save(myTweet);
```

# Java Tutorial


- Introduction
- A Quick Tour
  - Making A Connection
  - Authentication (Optional)
  - Getting A List Of Collections
  - Getting A Collection
  - Inserting a Document
  - Finding the First Document In A Collection using `findOne()`
  - Adding Multiple Documents
  - Counting Documents in A Collection
  - Using a Cursor to Get All the Documents
  - Getting A Single Document with A Query
  - Getting A Set of Documents With a Query
  - Creating An Index
  - Getting a List of Indexes on a Collection
- Quick Tour of the Administrative Functions
  - Getting A List of Databases
  - Dropping A Database


### *Introduction*

This page is a brief overview of working with the MongoDB Java Driver.

For more information about the Java API, please refer to the online API Documentation for Java Driver

### *A Quick Tour*

Using the Java driver is very simple. First, be sure to include the driver jar `mongo.jar` in your classpath. The following code snippets come from the `examples/QuickTour.java` example code found in the driver.

#### *Making A Connection*

To make a connection to a MongoDB, you need to have at the minimum, the name of a database to connect to. The database doesn't have to exist - if it doesn't, MongoDB will create it for you.

Additionally, you can specify the server address and port when connecting. The following example shows three ways to connect to the database *mydb* on the local machine :

```
import com.mongodb.Mongo;
import com.mongodb.DB;
import com.mongodb.DBCollection;
import com.mongodb.BasicDBObject;
import com.mongodb.DBObject;
import com.mongodb.DBCursor;

Mongo m = new Mongo();
// or
Mongo m = new Mongo( "localhost" );
// or
Mongo m = new Mongo( "localhost" , 27017 );

DB db = m.getDB( "mydb" );
```

At this point, the db object will be a connection to a MongoDB server for the specified database. With it, you can do further operations.

Note: The Mongo object instance actually represents a pool of connections to the database; you will only need one object of class Mongo even with multiple threads. See the concurrency doc page for more information.

The Mongo class is designed to be thread safe and shared among threads. Typically you create only 1 instance for a given DB cluster and use it across your app. If for some reason you decide to create many mongo intances, note that:

- all resource usage limits (max connections, etc) apply per mongo instance
- to dispose of an instance, make sure you call mongo.close() to clean up resources

***Authentication (Optional)***

MongoDB can be run in a secure mode where access to databases is controlled through name and password authentication. When run in this mode, any client application must provide a name and password before doing any operations. In the Java driver, you simply do the following with the connected mongo object :

```
boolean auth = db.authenticate(myUserName, myPassword);
```

If the name and password are valid for the database, `auth` will be `true`. Otherwise, it will be `false`. You should look at the MongoDB log for further information if available.

Most users run MongoDB without authentication in a trusted environment.

***Getting A List Of Collections***

Each database has zero or more collections. You can retrieve a list of them from the db (and print out any that are there) :

```
Set<String> colls = db.getCollectionNames();

for (String s : colls) {
    System.out.println(s);
}
```

and assuming that there are two collections, name and address, in the database, you would see

```
name
address
```

as the output.

***Getting A Collection***

To get a collection to use, just specify the name of the collection to the getCollection(`String collectionName`) method:

```
DBCollection coll = db.getCollection("testCollection")
```

Once you have this collection object, you can now do things like insert data, query for data, etc

***Inserting a Document***

Once you have the collection object, you can insert documents into the collection. For example, lets make a little document that in JSON would be represented as

```
{
   "name" : "MongoDB",
   "type" : "database",
   "count" : 1,
   "info" : {
               x : 203,
               y : 102
             }
}
```

Notice that the above has an "inner" document embedded within it. To do this, we can use the BasicDBObject class to create the document (including the inner document), and then just simply insert it into the collection using the `insert()` method.

```
BasicDBObject doc = new BasicDBObject();

        doc.put("name", "MongoDB");
        doc.put("type", "database");
        doc.put("count", 1);

        BasicDBObject info = new BasicDBObject();

        info.put("x", 203);
        info.put("y", 102);

        doc.put("info", info);

        coll.insert(doc);
```

***Finding the First Document In A Collection using `findOne()`***

To show that the document we inserted in the previous step is there, we can do a simple findOne() operation to get the first document in the collection. This method returns a single document (rather than the DBCursor that the find() operation returns), and it's useful for things where there only is one document, or you are only interested in the first. You don't have to deal with the cursor.

```
DBObject myDoc = coll.findOne();
System.out.println(myDoc);
```

and you should see

```
{ "_id" : "49902cde5162504500b45c2c" , "name" : "MongoDB" , "type" : "database" , "count" : 1 , "info"
: { "x" : 203 , "y" : 102}}
```

Note the `_id` element has been added automatically by MongoDB to your document. Remember, MongoDB reserves element names that start with "_"/"$" for internal use.

***Adding Multiple Documents***

In order to do more interesting things with queries, let's add multiple simple documents to the collection. These documents will just be

```
{
   "i" : value
}
```

and we can do this fairly efficiently in a loop

```
for (int i=0; i < 100; i++) {
    coll.insert(new BasicDBObject().append("i", i));
}
```

Notice that we can insert documents of different "shapes" into the same collection. This aspect is what we mean when we say that MongoDB is "schema-free"

***Counting Documents in A Collection***

Now that we've inserted 101 documents (the 100 we did in the loop, plus the first one), we can check to see if we have them all using the `getCount()` method.

```
System.out.println(coll.getCount());
```

and it should print `101`.

***Using a Cursor to Get All the Documents***

In order to get all the documents in the collection, we will use the `find()` method. The `find()` method returns a `DBCursor` object which allows us to iterate over the set of documents that matched our query. So to query all of the documents and print them out :

```
DBCursor cur = coll.find();

        while(cur.hasNext()) {
            System.out.println(cur.next());
        }
```

and that should print all 101 documents in the collection.

***Getting A Single Document with A Query***

We can create a *query* to pass to the `find()` method to get a subset of the documents in our collection. For example, if we wanted to find the document for which the value of the "i" field is 71, we would do the following ;

```
BasicDBObject query = new BasicDBObject();

        query.put("i", 71);

        cur = coll.find(query);

        while(cur.hasNext()) {
            System.out.println(cur.next());
        }
```

and it should just print just one document

```
{ "_id" : "49903677516250c1008d624e" , "i" : 71 }
```

You may commonly see examples and documentation in MongoDB which use $ Operators, such as this:

```
db.things.find({j: {$ne: 3}, k: {$gt: 10} });
```

These are represented as regular String keys in the Java driver, using embedded DBObjects:

```
        BasicDBObject query = new BasicDBObject();

        query.put("j", new BasicDBObject("$ne", 3));
        query.put("k", new BasicDBObject("$gt", 10));

        cur = coll.find(query);

        while(cur.hasNext()) {
            System.out.println(cur.next());
        }
```

***Getting A Set of Documents With a Query***

We can use the query to get a set of documents from our collection. For example, if we wanted to get all documents where "i" > 50, we could write :

```
query = new BasicDBObject();

        query.put("i", new BasicDBObject("$gt", 50));  // e.g. find all where i > 50

        cur = coll.find(query);

        while(cur.hasNext()) {
            System.out.println(cur.next());
        }
```

which should print the documents where i > 50. We could also get a range, say 20 < i <= 30 :

```
query = new BasicDBObject();

        query.put("i", new BasicDBObject("$gt", 20).append("$lte", 30));  // i.e.   20 < i <= 30

        cur = coll.find(query);

        while(cur.hasNext()) {
            System.out.println(cur.next());
        }
```

***Creating An Index***

MongoDB supports indexes, and they are very easy to add on a collection. To create an index, you just specify the field that should be indexed, and specify if you want the index to be ascending (1) or descending (-1). The following creates an ascending index on the "i" field :

```
coll.createIndex(new BasicDBObject("i", 1));  // create index on "i", ascending
```

***Getting a List of Indexes on a Collection***

You can get a list of the indexes on a collection :

```
List<DBObject> list = coll.getIndexInfo();

        for (DBObject o : list) {
            System.out.println(o);
        }
```

and you should see something like

```
{ "name" : "i_1" , "ns" : "mydb.testCollection" , "key" : { "i" : 1} }
```

### *Quick Tour of the Administrative Functions*

#### *Getting A List of Databases*

You can get a list of the available databases:

```
Mongo m = new Mongo();

        for (String s : m.getDatabaseNames()) {
            System.out.println(s);
        }
```

#### *Dropping A Database*

You can drop a database by name using the `Mongo` object:

```
m.dropDatabase("my_new_db");
```

## Java Types

- Object Ids
- Regular Expressions
- Dates/Times
- Database References
- Binary Data
- Timestamp Data
- Code Data
- Embedded Documents
- Arrays

#### *Object Ids*

`com.mongodb.ObjectId` is used to autogenerate unique ids.

```
ObjectId id = new ObjectId();
ObjectId copy = new ObjectId(id);
```

#### *Regular Expressions*

The Java driver uses `java.util.regex.Pattern` for regular expressions.

```
Pattern john = Pattern.compile("joh?n", CASE_INSENSITIVE);
BasicDBObject query = new BasicDBObject("name", john);

// finds all people with "name" matching /joh?n/i
DBCursor cursor = collection.find(query);
```

#### *Dates/Times*

The java.util.Date class is used for dates.

```
Date now = new Date();
BasicDBObject time = new BasicDBObject("ts", now);

collection.save(time);
```

#### *Database References*

`com.mongodb.DBRef` can be used to save database references.

```
DBRef addressRef = new DBRef(db, "foo.bar", address_id);
DBObject address = addressRef.fetch();

DBObject person = BasicDBObjectBuilder.start()
    .add("name", "Fred")
    .add("address", addressRef)
    .get();
collection.save(person);

DBObject fred = collection.findOne();
DBRef addressObj = (DBRef)fred.get("address");
addressObj.fetch()
```

***Binary Data***

An array of bytes (`byte[]`) as a value will automatically be wrapped as a Binary type.
Additionally the Binary class can be used to represent binary objects, which allows to pick a custom type byte.

***Timestamp Data***

A timestamp is a special object used by Mongo as an ID based on time, represented by a (time in second, incremental id) pair (it is used notably in the replication oplog).
A timestamp is represented by the BSONTimestamp class.

***Code Data***

A code object is used to represent JavaScript code, for example when saving executable functions into the system.js collection.
The Code and CodeWScope classes are used to represent this data.
Note that some methods (like map/reduce) take Strings but wrap them into Code objects in the driver.

***Embedded Documents***

Suppose we have a document that, in JavaScript, looks like:

```
{
    "x" : {
        "y" : 3
    }
}
```

The equivalent in Java is:

```
BasicDBObject y = new BasicDBObject("y", 3);
BasicDBObject x = new BasicDBObject("x", y);
```

***Arrays***

Anything that extends List in Java will be saved as an array.

So, if you are trying to represent the JavaScript:

```
{
    "x" : [
        1,
        2,
        {"foo" : "bar"},
        4
    ]
}
```

you could do:

```
ArrayList x = new ArrayList();
x.add(1);
x.add(2);
x.add(new BasicDBObject("foo", "bar"));
x.add(4);

BasicDBObject doc = new BasicDBObject("x", x);
```

## Replica Set Semantics

The MongoDB Java driver handles failover in replicated setups with tunable levels of transparency to the user. By default, a `Mongo` connection object will ignore failures of secondaries, and only reads will throw `MongoExceptions` when the primary node is unreachable.

The level of exception reporting is tunable however, using a specific `WriteConcern`; you can set this on the Mongo/DB/Collection/Method level. Several levels are included as static options:

- `WriteConcern.NONE` : No exceptions thrown.
- `WriteConcern.NORMAL` : Exceptions are only thrown when the primary node is unreachable for a read, or the full replica set is unreachable.
- `WriteConcern.SAFE` : Same as the above, but exceptions thrown when there is a server error on writes or reads. Calls `getLastError()`.
- `WriteConcern.REPLICAS_SAFE` : Tries to write to two separate nodes. Same as the above, but will throw an exception if two writes are not possible.
- `WriteConcern.FSYNC_SAFE` : Same as `WriteConcern.SAFE`, but also waits for write to be written to disk.

Additional errors may appear in the log files, these are for reporting purposes and logged based on the logging settings.

Sample code is provided which illustrates some of these options. To quickly initialize a sample replica set, you can use the `mongo` shell:

```
> var rst = new ReplSetTest({ nodes : 3 })
> rst.startSet() // wait for processes to start
> rst.initiate() // wait for replica set initialization
```

Java client code demonstrating error handling is available :

- https://github.com/mongodb/mongo-snippets/blob/master/java/Test.java

# C++ Language Center

A C++ driver is available for communicating with the MongoDB. As the database is written in C++, the driver actually uses some core MongoDB code -- this is the same driver that the database uses itself for replication.

The driver has been compiled successfully on Linux, OS X, Windows, and Solaris.

- Downloading the Driver
- Compiling and Linking
- MongoDB C++ Client Tutorial
- API Documentation
- Using BSON from C++
- SQL to C++ Mapping Chart
- HOWTO
  - Connecting
  - getLastError
  - Tailable Cursors
  - BSON Arrays in C++
- Mongo Database and C++ Driver Source Code (at github). See the client subdirectory for client driver related files.

#### Additional Notes

- The Building documentation covers compiling the entire database, but some of the notes there may be helpful for compiling client applications too.
- There is also a pure C driver for MongoDB. For true C++ apps we recommend using the C++ driver.

## BSON Arrays in C++

```
// examples

using namespace mongo;
using namespace bson;

bo an_obj;

/** transform a BSON array into a vector of BSONElements.
    we match array # positions with their vector position, and ignore
    any fields with non-numeric field names.
*/
vector<be> a = an_obj["x"].Array();

be array = an_obj["x"];
assert( array.isABSONObj() );
assert( array.type() == Array );

// Use BSON_ARRAY macro like BSON macro, but without keys
BSONArray arr = BSON_ARRAY( "hello" << 1 << BSON( "foo" << BSON_ARRAY( "bar" << "baz" << "qux" ) ) );

// BSONArrayBuilder can be used to build arrays without the macro
BSONArrayBuilder b;
b.append(1).append(2).arr();

/** add all elements of the object to the specified vector */
bo myarray = an_obj["x"].Obj();
vector<be> v;
myarray.elems(v);
list<be> L;
myarray.elems(L)


/** add all values of the object to the specified collection.  If type mismatches,
    exception.
        template <class T>
        void Vals(vector<T> &) const;
        template <class T>
        void Vals(list<T> &) const;
*/

/** add all values of the object to the specified collection.  If type mismatches, skip.
        template <class T>
        void vals(vector<T> &) const;
        template <class T>
        void vals(list<T> &) const;
*/
```

## C++ BSON Library

- Standalone Usage
- API Docs
- Short Class Names

The MongoDB C++ driver library includes a bson package that implements the BSON specification (see http://www.bsonspec.org/). This library can be used standalone for object serialization and deserialization even when one is not using MongoDB at all.

Include `bson/bson.h` or `db/jsobj.h` in your application (not both). `bson.h` is new and may not work in some situations, was is good for light

header-only usage of BSON (see the bsondemo.cpp example).

Key classes:

- mongo::BSONObj (aka bson::bo) a BSON object
- mongo::BSONElement (bson::be) a single element in a bson object. This is a key and a value.
- mongo::BSONObjBuilder (bson::bob) used to make BSON objects
- mongo::BSONObjIterator (bson::bo::iterator) to enumerate BSON objects

Let's now create a BSON "person" object which contains name and age. We might invoke:

```
BSONObjBuilder b;
b.append("name", "Joe");
b.append("age", 33);
BSONObj p = b.obj();
```

Or more concisely:

```
BSONObj p = BSONObjBuilder().append("name", "Joe").append("age", 33).obj();
```

We can also create objects with a stream-oriented syntax:

```
BSONObjBuilder b;
b << "name" << "Joe" << "age" << 33;
BSONObj p = b.obj();
```

The macro BSON lets us be even more compact:

```
BSONObj p = BSON( "name" << "Joe" << "age" << 33 );
```

Use the GENOID helper to add an object id to your object. The server will add an _id automatically if it is not included explicitly.

```
BSONObj p = BSON( GENOID << "name" << "Joe" << "age" << 33 );
// result is: { _id : ..., name : "Joe", age : 33 }
```

GENOID should be at the beginning of the generated object. We can do something similar with the non-stream builder syntax:

```
BSONObj p =
  BSONObjBuilder().genOID().append("name","Joe").append("age",33).obj();
```

### *Standalone Usage*

You can use the C++ BSON library without MongoDB. Most BSON methods under the `bson/` directory are header-only. They require boost, but headers only.

See the bsondemo.cpp example at github.com.

### *API Docs*

- http://api.mongodb.org/cplusplus/

### *Short Class Names*

Add

```
using namespace bson;
```

to your code to use the following shorter more C++ style names for the BSON classes:

```
// from bsonelement.h
namespace bson {
    typedef mongo::BSONElement be;
    typedef mongo::BSONObj bo;
    typedef mongo::BSONObjBuilder bob;
}
```

(Or one could use `bson::bo` fully qualified for example).

Also available is `bo::iterator` as a synonym for `BSONObjIterator`.

## C++ Driver Compiling and Linking


- Linux
  - Using the prebuilt library
  - Using mongo_client_lib.cpp instead of a library
- Windows
  - Windows Troubleshooting


The C++ driver is included in the MongoDB server source repository, and can also be downloaded as a separate, "standalone" tarball (see Downloads). To compile the "standalone" C++ driver, run the scons command in the top-level directory of the driver sources, e.g.:

```
cd mongo-cxx-driver-nightly/
scons
```

You may wish to compile and link client/simple_client_demo.cpp to verify that everything compiles and links fine.

### Linux

#### *Using the prebuilt library*

```
$ cd mongo/client
$ g++ simple_client_demo.cpp -lmongoclient -lboost_thread-mt -lboost_filesystem
-lboost_program_options
```

#### *Using mongo_client_lib.cpp instead of a library*

If you have a compatibility problem with the library, include mongo_client_lib.cpp in your project instead. For example:

```
g++ -I .. simple_client_demo.cpp mongo_client_lib.cpp -lboost_thread-mt -lboost_filesystem
```

### Windows

Note: we tend to test MongoDB with Windows using Visual Studio 2010. 2008 works, although you may have to tweak settings in some cases.

Include mongoclient.lib in your application.

To build mongoclient.lib:

```
scons mongoclient
```

Alternatively, include client/mongo_client_lib.cpp in your project.

For Windows, see also:

- bson/bsondemo/bsondemo.vcxproj
- client/examples/simple_client_demo.vcxproj
- Prebuilt Boost Libraries
  - Prebuild Boost Libraries only necessary for versions < 2.1.1
  - Boost 1.49 source is now included directly in version 2.1.1+
- Building with Visual Studio 2010

Other notes for Windows:

- Compile with /MT
- You may wish to define _CRT_SECURE_NO_WARNINGS to avoid warnings on use of strncpy and such by the MongoDB client code.
- Include the WinSock library in your application : Linker.Input.Additional Dependencies - add ws2_32.lib.

#### *Windows Troubleshooting*

- error LNK2005: ___ already defined in msvcprt.lib(MSVCP100.dll) libboost_thread-vc100-mt-1_42.lib(thread.obj)
  - The boost library being linked against is expecting a /MT build. If this is a release build, try using /MT instead of /MD for compilation (under Properties.C++.Code Generation).

## C++ Driver Download

#### *Driver tarballs*

The C++ client library can be found at http://dl.mongodb.org/dl/cxx-driver/.

Note: despite the word 'linux' in the filenames, these files are mostly source code and thus should be applicable to all operating systems.

#### *From the server source code*

If you have the full MongoDB source code, the driver code is part of it. This is available on github and also on the MongoDB Downloads page.

The full server source is quite large, so the tarballs above may be easier. Also if using the full server source tree, use "scons mongoclient" to build just the client library.

Next : Compiling and Linking

## C++ getLastError

- string mongo::DBClientWithCommands::getLastError();
  - Get error result from the last operation on this connection. Empty string if no error.

- BSONObj DBClientWithCommands::getLastErrorDetailed();
  - Get the full last error object. See the getLastError Command page for details.

See client/simple_client_demo.cpp for an example.

#### *See Also*

- getLastError Command

## C++ Tutorial


- Installing the Driver Library and Headers
  - Unix
    - Full Database Source Driver Build
    - Driver Build
  - Windows
- Compiling
- Writing Client Code
  - Connecting
  - BSON
  - Inserting
  - Querying
  - Indexing
  - Sorting
  - Updating
  - Example
- Further Reading

This document is an introduction to usage of the MongoDB database from a C++ program.

First, install Mongo -- see the Quickstart for details.

Next, you may wish to take a look at the Developer's Tour guide for a language independent look at how to use MongoDB. Also, we suggest some basic familiarity with the `mongo` shell -- the shell is one's primary database administration tool and is useful for manually inspecting the contents of a database after your C++ program runs.

## Installing the Driver Library and Headers

A good source for general information about setting up a MongoDB development environment on various operating systems is the building page.

The normal database distribution used to include the C++ driver, but there were many problems with library version mismatches so now you have to build from source. You can either get the full source code for the database and just build the C++ driver or download the driver separately and build it.

### *Unix*

For Unix, the Mongo driver library is `libmongoclient.a`. For either build, run `scons --help` to see all options.

#### Full Database Source Driver Build

To install the libraries, run:

```
scons --full install
```

`--full` tells the install target to include the library and header files; by default library and header files are installed in */usr/local*.

You can use `--prefix` to change the install path: `scons --prefix /opt/mongo --full install`. You can also specify `--sharedclient` to build a shared library instead of a statically linked library.

#### Driver Build

If you download the driver source code separately, you can build it by running `scons` (no options).

### *Windows*

For more information on Boost setup see the Building for Windows page.

## Compiling

The C++ drivers requires the pcre and boost libraries (with headers) to compile. Be sure they are in your include and lib paths. You can usually install them from your OS's package manager if you don't already have them.

## Writing Client Code

Note: for brevity, the examples below are simply inline code. In a real application one will define classes for each database object typically.

### *Connecting*

Let's make a tutorial.cpp file that connects to the database (see client/examples/tutorial.cpp for full text of the examples below):

```
#include <iostream>
#include "client/dbclient.h"

using namespace mongo;

void run() {
  DBClientConnection c;
  c.connect("localhost");
}

int main() {
  try {
    run();
    cout << "connected ok" << endl;
  } catch( DBException &e ) {
    cout << "caught " << e.what() << endl;
  }
  return 0;
}
```

If you are using gcc on Linux or OS X, you would compile with something like this, depending on location of your include files and libraries:

```
$ g++ tutorial.cpp -lmongoclient -lboost_thread -lboost_filesystem -lboost_program_options -o tutorial
$ ./tutorial
connected ok
$
```

- Depending on your boost version you might need to link against the *boost_system* library as well: **-lboost_system**.
- You may need to append "-mt" to boost_filesystem and boost_program_options. If using a recent boost, "-mt" is not needed anymore.
- Of course, you may need to use -I and -L to specify the locations of your mongo and boost headers and libraries.

### *BSON*

The Mongo database stores data in BSON format. BSON is a binary object format that is JSON-like in terms of the data which can be stored (some extensions exist, for example, a Date datatype).

To save data in the database we must create objects of class BSONObj. The components of a BSONObj are represented as BSONElement objects. We use BSONObjBuilder to make BSON objects, and BSONObjIterator to enumerate BSON objects.

Let's now create a BSON "person" object which contains name and age. We might invoke:

```
BSONObjBuilder b;
b.append("name", "Joe");
b.append("age", 33);
BSONObj p = b.obj();
```

Or more concisely:

```
BSONObj p = BSONObjBuilder().append("name", "Joe").append("age", 33).obj();
```

We can also create objects with a stream-oriented syntax:

```
BSONObjBuilder b;
b << "name" << "Joe" << "age" << 33;
BSONObj p = b.obj();
```

The macro BSON lets us be even more compact:

```
BSONObj p = BSON( "name" << "Joe" << "age" << 33 );
```

Use the GENOID helper to add an object id to your object. The server will add an _id automatically if it is not included explicitly.

```
BSONObj p = BSON( GENOID << "name" << "Joe" << "age" << 33 );
// result is: { _id : ..., name : "Joe", age : 33 }
```

GENOID should be at the beginning of the generated object. We can do something similar with the non-stream builder syntax:

```
BSONObj p =
  BSONObjBuilder().genOID().append("name","Joe").append("age",33).obj();
```

Other helpers are listed here, see bsonmisc.h for a full list.

### *Inserting*

We now save our person object in a persons collection in the database:

```
c.insert("tutorial.persons", p);
```

The first parameter to insert is the namespace. tutorial is the database and persons is the collection name.

### *Querying*

Let's now fetch all objects from the persons collection, and display them. We'll also show here how to use count().

```
cout << "count:" << c.count("tutorial.persons") << endl;

  auto_ptr<DBClientCursor> cursor =
    c.query("tutorial.persons", BSONObj());
  while( cursor->more() )
      cout << cursor->next().toString() << endl;
```

BSONObj() is an empty BSON object -- it represents {} which indicates an empty query pattern (an empty query is a query for all objects).

We use BSONObj::toString() above to print out information about each object retrieved. BSONObj::toString is a diagnostic function which prints an abbreviated JSON string representation of the object. For full JSON output, use BSONObj::jsonString.

Let's now write a function which prints out the name (only) of all persons in the collection whose age is a given value:

```
void printIfAge(DBClientConnection&c, int age) {
  auto_ptr<DBClientCursor> cursor =
    c.query("tutorial.persons", QUERY( "age" << age ) );
  while( cursor->more() ) {
    BSONObj p = cursor->next();
    cout << p.getStringField("name") << endl;
  }
}
```

getStringField() is a helper that assumes the "name" field is of type string. To manipulate an element in a more generic fashion we can retrieve the particular BSONElement from the enclosing object:

```
BSONElement name = p["name"];
// or:
//BSONElement name = p.getField("name");
```

See the api docs, and jsobj.h, for more information.

Our query above, written as JSON, is of the form

```
{ age : <agevalue> }
```

Queries are BSON objects of a particular format -- in fact, we could have used the BSON() macro above instead of QUERY(). See class Query in dbclient.h for more information on Query objects, and the Sorting section below.

In the mongo shell (which uses javascript), we could invoke:

```
use tutorial;
db.persons.find( { age : 33 } );
```

### *Indexing*

Let's suppose we want to have an index on age so that our queries are fast. We would use:

```
c.ensureIndex("tutorial.persons", fromjson("{age:1}"));
```

The ensureIndex method checks if the index exists; if it does not, it is created. ensureIndex is intelligent and does not repeat transmissions to the server; thus it is safe to call it many times in your code, for example, adjacent to every insert operation.

In the above example we use a new function, fromjson. fromjson converts a JSON string to a BSONObj. This is sometimes a convenient way to specify BSON. Alternatively we could have written:

```
c.ensureIndex("tutorial.persons", BSON( "age" << 1 ));
```

### *Sorting*

Let's now make the results from printIfAge sorted alphabetically by name. To do this, we change the query statement from:

```
auto_ptr<DBClientCursor> cursor = c.query("tutorial.persons", QUERY( "age" << age ) );
```

to

```
to  auto_ptr<DBClientCursor> cursor = c.query("tutorial.persons", QUERY( "age" << age ).sort("name")
);
```

Here we have used Query::sort() to add a modifier to our query expression for sorting.

### *Updating*

Use the update() method to perform a database update . For example the following update in the mongo shell :

```
> use tutorial
> db.persons.update( { name : 'Joe', age : 33 },
...                  { $inc : { visits : 1 } } )
```

is equivalent to the following C++ code:

```
db.update( "tutorial.persons" ,
           BSON( "name" << "Joe" << "age" << 33 ),
           BSON( "$inc" << BSON( "visits" << 1 ) ) );
```

### *Example*

A simple example illustrating usage of BSON arrays and the "$nin" operator is available here .

### Further Reading

This overview just touches on the basics of using Mongo from C++.  There are many more capabilities.  For further exploration:

- See the language-independent Developer's Tour;
- Experiment with the `mongo` shell;
- Review the doxygen API docs;
- See connecting pooling information in the API docs;
- See GridFS file storage information in the API docs;
- See the HOWTO pages under the C++ Language Center
- Consider getting involved to make the product (either C++ driver, tools, or the database itself) better!

### List of helper functions

This is a non-exhaustive list of helper functions for use in the C++ stream syntax. An exhaustive list is here: bsonmisc.h

Typical example of stream syntax:

```
BSONObj p = BSON( "name" << "Joe" << "age" << 33 );
```

GENOID -the server will add an _id automatically if it is not included explicitly.

```
BSONObj p = BSON( GENOID << "name" << "Joe" << "age" << 33 );
// result is: { _id : ..., name : "Joe", age : 33 }
```

LT,GT,LTE,GTE, NE -less than, greater than, etc

```
BSONObj p = BSON( "age" << GT << 21 );
// result is:  { age : { $gt : 21 } }
```

DATENOW -translates to current date

```
BSONObj p = BSON( "created" << DATENOW );
// result is: { created : "2009-10-09 11:41:42" }
```

MINKEY,MAXKEY

```
BSONObj p = BSON( "a" << MINKEY);
// result is: { "a" : { "$minKey" : 1 } }
```

OR

```
OR(BSON("x" << GT << 7), BSON("y" << LT << 6))
// result is: {$or: [{x: {$gt: 7}}, {y: {$lt: 6}}]}
```

BSONNULL -translates to null value (will appear in mongoDB 2.1)

```
BSONObj p = BSON( "name" << "Methuselah" << "age" << BSONNULL );
// result is: { name : "Methuselah", age : null }
```

## Connecting

The C++ driver includes several classes for managing collections under the parent class DBClientInterface.

DBClientConnection is our normal connection class for a connection to a single MongoDB database server (or shard manager). Other classes exist for connecting to a replica set.

See http://api.mongodb.org/cplusplus/ for details on each of the above classes.

# Perl Language Center


- Installing
  - CPAN
  - Manual (Non-CPAN) Installation
  - Big-Endian Systems
- Next Steps
- MongoDB Perl Tools
  - BSON
  - Entities::Backend::MongoDB
  - MojoX::Session::Store::MongoDB
  - MongoDB::Admin
  - Mongoose
  - MongoDBI
  - MongoDBx-Class
  - MongoX
  - OOP Perl CMS


## Installing

Start a MongoDB server instance (`mongod`) before installing so that the tests will pass. The `mongod` cannot be running as a slave for the tests to pass.

Some tests may be skipped, depending on the version of the database you are running.

### *CPAN*

```
$ sudo cpan MongoDB
```

The Perl driver is available through CPAN as the package `MongoDB`. It should build cleanly on *NIX and Windows (via Strawberry Perl). It is also available as an ActivePerl module.

### *Manual (Non-CPAN) Installation*

If you would like to try the latest code or are contributing to the Perl driver, it is available at Github. There is also documentation generated after every commit.

You can see if it's a good time to grab the bleeding edge code by seeing if the build is green.

To build the driver, run:

```
$ perl Makefile.PL
$ make
$ make test # make sure mongod is running, first
$ sudo make install
```

Please note that the tests will not pass without a `mongod` process running.

Note that the Perl driver requires some libraries available in CPAN. As of April, 2010, these are Any::Moose, Class::Method::Modifiers, Data::Types, DateTime, File::Slurp, Test::Exception, Try::Tiny, boolean, and Module::Install. (Additionally, Tie::IxHash is required for testing.) On Debian or Ubuntu systems, these prerequisites can be easily installed with the following command:

```
$ sudo apt-get install libmodule-install-perl libany-moose-perl libclass-method-modifiers-perl
libdata-types-perl libdatetime-perl libfile-slurp-perl libtest-exception-perl libtry-tiny-perl
libboolean-perl libtie-ixhash-perl
```

### *Big-Endian Systems*

The driver will work on big-endian machines, but the database will not. The tests assume that `mongod` will be running on localhost unless %ENV{MONGOD} is set. So, to run the tests, start the database on a little-endian machine (at, say, "example.com") and then run the tests with:

```
MONGOD=example.com make test
```

A few tests that require a database server on "localhost" will be skipped.

### Next Steps

There is a tutorial and API documentation on CPAN.

If you're interested in contributing to the Perl driver, check out Contributing to the Perl Driver.

### MongoDB Perl Tools

#### BSON

BSON is a pure-Perl BSON implementation.

#### Entities::Backend::MongoDB

Entities::Backend::MongoDB is a backend for the Entities user management and authorization system stores all entities and relations between them in a MongoDB database, using the MongoDB module. This is a powerful, fast backend that gives you all the features of MongoDB.

#### MojoX::Session::Store::MongoDB

MojoX::Session::Store::MongoDB is a store for MojoX::Session that stores a session in a MongoDB database. Created by Ask Bjørn Hansen.

#### MongoDB::Admin

MongoDB::Admin is a collection of MongoDB administrative functions. Created by David Burley.

#### Mongoose

Mongoose is an attempt to bring together the full power of Moose with MongoDB. Created by Rodrigo de Oliveira Gonzalez.

#### MongoDBI

MongoDBI is an Object-Document-Mapper (ODM) for MongoDB. It allows you to create Moose-based classes to interact with MongoDB databases.

At-a-glance, most will enjoy MongoDBI for its ability to easily model classes while leveraging the power of MongoDB's schemaless and expeditious document-based design, dynamic queries, and atomic modifier operations.

Also noteworthy is MongoDBI's ease-of-use, chainable search facilities (filters), automated indexing, moose-integration (inheritance support, etc), lean document updates via dirty field tracking, and ability for each class to be configured to use a different database and connection, etc.

#### MongoDBx-Class

MongoDBx-Class is an ORM for MongoDB databases. MongoDBx::Class takes advantage of the fact that Perl's MongoDB driver is Moose-based to extend and tweak the driver's behavior, instead of wrapping it. This means MongoDBx::Class does not define its own syntax, so you simply use it exactly as you would the MongoDB driver directly. That said, MongoDBx::Class adds some sugar that enhances and simplifies the syntax unobtrusively (either use it or don't). Thus, it is relatively easy to convert your current MongoDB applications to MongoDBx::Class. A collection in MongoDBx::Class isa('MongoDB::Collection'), a database in MongoDBx::Class isa('MongoDB::Database'), etc. Created by Ido Perlmuter.

#### MongoX

MongoX - DSL sugar for MongoDB

#### OOP Perl CMS

OOP Perl CMS is based on Khurt Williams' Object Oriented Perl methodology and can be used as a basic CMS framework or as a basis for your own CMS system. It uses Apache & mod_perl with MongoDB backend. Created by Waitman Gobble.

## Contributing to the Perl Driver

The easiest way to contribute is to file bugs and feature requests on Jira.

If you would like to help code the driver, read on...

### *Finding Something to Help With*

#### *Fixing Bugs*

You can choose a bug on Jira and fix it. Make a comment that you're working on it, to avoid overlap.

#### *Writing Tests*

The driver could use a lot more tests. We would be grateful for any and all tests people would like to write.

#### *Adding Features*

If you think a feature is missing from the driver, you're probably right. Check on IRC or the mailing list, then go ahead and create a Jira case and add the feature. The Perl driver was a bit neglected for a while (although it's now getting a lot of TLC) so it's missing a lot of things that the other drivers have. You can look through their APIs for ideas.

### *Contribution Guildlines*

The best way to make changes is to create an account on [Github], fork the driver, make your improvements, and submit a merge request.

To make sure your changes are approved and speed things along:

- Write tests. Lots of tests.
- Document your code.
- Write POD, when applicable.

Bonus (for C programmers, particularly):

- Make sure your change works on Perl 5.8, 5.10, Windows, Mac, Linux, etc.

### *Code Layout*

The important files:

```
| perl_mongo.c # serialization/deserialization
| mongo_link.c # connecting to, sending to, and receiving from the database
- lib
   - MongoDB
      | Connection.pm # connection, queries, inserts... everything comes through here
      | Database.pm
      | Collection.pm
      | Cursor.pm
      | OID.pm
      | GridFS.pm
      - GridFS
         | File.pm
- xs
   | Mongo.xs
   | Connection.xs
   | Cursor.xs
   | OID.xs
```

## Perl Tutorial

**Redirection Notice**
This page should redirect to http://search.cpan.org/dist/MongoDB/lib/MongoDB/Tutorial.pod.

## Online API Documentation

MongoDB API and driver documentation is available online. It is updated daily.

- Java Driver API Documentation
- C++ Driver API Documentation
- Python Driver API Documentation
- Ruby Driver API Documentation
- PHP Driver API Documentation

# Writing Drivers and Tools

### See Also

- Mongo Query Language
- mongosniff
- --objcheck command line parameter

## Overview - Writing Drivers and Tools

This section contains information for developers that are working with the low-level protocols of Mongo - people who are writing drivers and higher-level tools.

Documents of particular interest :

| | |
|---|---|
| BSON http://bsonspec.org | Description of the BSON binary document format. Fundamental to how Mongo and it's client software works. |
| Mongo Wire Protocol | Specification for the basic socket communications protocol used between Mongo and clients. |
| Mongo Driver Requirements | Description of what functionality is expected from a Mongo Driver |
| GridFS Specification | Specification of GridFS - a convention for storing large objects in Mongo |
| Mongo Extended JSON | Description of the extended JSON protocol for the REST-ful interface (ongoing development) |

Additionally we recommend driver authors take a look at existing driver source code as an example.

- Back to driver development home page
- Drivers Home Page

## Mongo Driver Requirements

This is a high-level list of features that a driver for MongoDB might provide. We attempt to group those features by priority. This list should be taken with a grain of salt, and probably used more for inspiration than as law that must be adhered to. A great way to learn about implementing a driver is by reading the source code of any of the existing drivers, especially the ones listed as "mongodb.org supported".

High priority

- BSON serialization/deserialization
- full cursor support (e.g. support OP_GET_MORE operation)
- close exhausted cursors via OP_KILL_CURSORS
- support for running database commands
- handle query errors
- convert all strings to UTF-8 (part of proper support for BSON)
- hint, explain, count, $where
- database profiling: set/get profiling level, get profiling info
- advanced connection management (replica sets, slave okay)
- automatic reconnection

Medium priority

- validate a collection in a database
- buffer pooling
- Tailable cursor support

A driver should be able to connect to a single server. By default this must be `localhost:27017`, and must also allow the server to be specified by hostname and port.

```
Mongo m = new Mongo();   // go to localhost, default port
```

```
Mongo m = new Mongo(String host, int port);
```

How the driver does this is up to the driver - make it idiomatic. However, a driver should make it explicit and clear what is going on.

Replica Sets

A driver must be able to support "Replica-Set" configurations, where more than one mongod servers are specified, and configured for hot-failover.

The driver should determine which of the nodes is the current master, and send all operations to that server. In the event of an error, either socket error or a "not a master" error, the driver must restart the determination process.

1. **Cluster Mode** Connect to master in master-slave cluster

```
ServerCluster sc = new ServerCluster(INETAddr...); // again, give one and discover?
Mongo m = new Mongo(sc);
```

## Connect to slave in read-only mode in master-slave cluster

```
ServerCluster sc = new ServerCluster(INETAddr...); // again, give one and discover?
sc.setTarget(...)
Mongo m = new Mongo(sc);

or maybe make it like *Default/Simple* w/ a flag?
```

Other than that, we need a way to get a DB object :

```
Mongo m = new Mongo();

DB db = m.getDB(name);
```

And a list of db names (useful for tools...) :

```
List<String> getDBNameList();
```

Database Object

Simple operations on a database object :

```
/**
 *  get name of database
 */
String    dbName = db.getName();

/**
 * Get a list of all the collection names in this database
 */
List<String> cols = db.getCollectionNames();

/**
 * get a collection object.  Can optionally create it if it
 *  doesn't exist, or just  be strict.  (XJDM has strictness as an option)
 */
Collection coll = db.getCollection(string);

/**
 * Create a collection w/ optional options.  Can fault
 * if the collection exists, or can just return it if it already does
 */
Collection coll = db.createCollection( string);
Collection coll = db.createCollection( string, options);

/**
 * Drop a collection by its name or by collection object.
 * Driver could invalidate any outstanding Collection objects
 * for that collection, or just hope for the best.
 */
boolean  b  = db.dropCollection(name);
boolean  b  = db.dropCollection(Collection);

/**
 * Execute a command on the database, returning the
 * BSON doc with the results
 */
Document d = db.executeCommand(command);

/**
 * Close the [logical] database
 */
void  db.close();

/**
 * Erase / drop an entire database
 */
bool dropDatabase(dbname)
```

Database Administration

These methods have to do with database metadata: profiling levels and collection validation. Each admin object is associated with a database. These methods could either be built into the Database class or provided in a separate Admin class whose instances are only available from a database instance.

```
/* get an admin object from a database object. */
Admin admin = db.getAdmin();

/**
 * Get profiling level. Returns one of the strings "off", "slowOnly", or
 * "all". Note that the database returns an integer. This method could
 * return an int or an enum instead --- in Ruby, for example, we return
 * symbols.
 */
String profilingLevel = admin.getProfilingLevel();

/**
 * Set profiling level. Takes whatever getProfilingLevel() returns.
 */
admin.setProfilingLevel("off");

/**
 * Retrieves the database's profiling info.
 */
Document profilingInfo = admin.getProfilingInfo();

/**
 * Returns true if collection is valid; raises an exception if not.
 */
boolean admin.validateCollection(collectionName);
```

Collection Basic Ops

```
/**
 *   full query capabilities - limit, skip, returned fields, sort, etc
 */
Cursor        find(...);

void          insert(...) // insert one or more objects into the collection, local variants on args
void          remove(query) // remove objects that match the query
void          update(selector, modifier)  // modify all objects that match selector w/ modifier object
void          updateFirst(selector, object)   // replace first object that match selector w/ specified
object
void          upsert(selector, object)   // replace first object that matches, or insert
long          getCount();
long          getCount(query);
```

Index Operations

```
void          createIndex( index_info)
void          dropIndex(name)
void          dropIndexes()
List<info>    getIndexInformation()
```

Misc Operations

```
document      explain(query)
options       getOptions();
string        getName();
void          close();
```

Cursor Object

```
document      getNextDocument()
iterator      getIterator()  // again, local to language
bool          hasMore()
void          close()
```

## Spec, Notes and Suggestions for Mongo Drivers

Assume that the BSON objects returned from the database may be up to 16MB. This size may change over time.

### *See Also*

- Driver Requirements
- BSON
- The main Database Internals page

## Feature Checklist for Mongo Drivers

### *Functionality Checklist*

This section lists tasks the driver author might handle.

#### Essential

- BSON serialization/deserialization
- Basic operations: `query`, `insert`, `update`, `remove`, `ensureIndex`, `findOne`, `limit`, `sort`
- Fetch more data from a cursor when necessary (dbGetMore)
- Sending of KillCursors operation when use of a cursor has completed (ideally for efficiently these are sent in batches)
- Convert all strings to utf8
- Authentication

#### Recommended

- automatic _id generation
- Database $cmd support and helpers
- Detect { `$err: ...` } response from a db query and handle appropriately --see Error Handling in Mongo Drivers
- [Automatically connect to proper server, and failover], when connecting to a Replica Set
- `ensureIndex` commands should be cached to prevent excessive communication with the database. (Or, the driver user should be informed that `ensureIndex` is not a lightweight operation for the particular driver.)
- Support detecting max BSON size on connection (e.g., using `buildinfo` or `isMaster` commands) and allowing users to insert docs up to that size.

#### More Recommended

- lasterror helper functions
- `count()` helper function
- `$where` clause
- `eval()`
- File chunking (GridFS)
- hint fields
- explain helper

#### More Optional

- `addUser`, `logout` helpers
- Allow client user to specify Option_SlaveOk for a query
- Tailable cursor support
- In/out buffer pooling (if implementing in a garbage collected languages)

#### More Optional

- [connection pooling]
- Automatic reconnect on connection failure
- DBRef Support:
    - Ability to generate easily
    - Automatic traversal

### *See Also*

- The Driver and Integration Center for information about the latest drivers
- The [top page] for this section
- The main Database Internals page
- The starting point for all Home

## Conventions for Mongo Drivers

### *Interface Conventions*

It is desirable to keep driver interfaces consistent when possible. Of course, idioms vary by language, and when they do adaptation is appropriate. However, when the idiom is the same, keeping the interfaces consistent across drivers is desirable.

### *Terminology*

In general, use these terms when naming identifiers. Adapt the names to the normal "punctuation" style of your language `-- foo_bar` in C might be `fooBar` in Java.

- *database* - what does this mean?
- *collection*
- *index*

# Driver Testing Tools

#### Object IDs

- driverOIDTest for testing toString

```
> db.runCommand( { "driverOIDTest" : new ObjectId() } )
{
        "oid" : ObjectId("4b8991f221752a6e61a88267"),
        "str" : "4b8991f221752a6e61a88267",
        "ok" : 1
}
```

# Mongo Wire Protocol


- Introduction
- Messages Types and Formats
    - Standard Message Header
    - Request Opcodes
- Client Request Messages
    - OP_UPDATE
    - OP_INSERT
    - OP_QUERY
    - OP_GETMORE
    - OP_DELETE
    - OP_KILL_CURSORS
    - OP_MSG
- Database Response Messages
    - OP_REPLY


### *Introduction*

The Mongo Wire Protocol is a simple socket-based, request-response style protocol. Clients communicate with the database server through a regular TCP/IP socket.

> **Default Socket Port**
> The default port is 27017, but this is configurable and will vary.

Clients should connect to the database with a regular TCP/IP socket. Currently, there is no connection handshake.

To describe the message structure, a C-like `struct` is used. The types used in this document (`cstring`, `int32`, etc.) are the same as those defined in the BSON specification. The standard message header is typed as `MsgHeader`. Integer constants are in capitals (e.g. ZERO for the integer value of 0).

In the case where more than one of something is possible (like in a OP_INSERT or OP_KILL_CURSORS), we again use the notation from the BSON specification (e.g. `int64*`). This simply indicates that one or more of the specified type can be written to the socket, one after another.

**Byte Ordering**
Note that like BSON documents, all data in the mongo wire protocol is little-endian.

### *Messages Types and Formats*

TableOfContents

There are two types of messages, client requests and database responses, each having a slightly different structure.

Standard Message Header

In general, each message consists of a standard message header followed by request-specific data. The standard message header is structured as follows :

```
struct MsgHeader {
    int32   messageLength; // total message size, including this
int32   requestID;     // identifier for this message
int32   responseTo;    // requestID from the original request
//   (used in reponses from db)
int32   opCode;        // request type - see table below
}
```

**`messageLength`** : This is the total size of the message in bytes. This total includes the 4 bytes that holds the message length.

**`requestID`** : This is a client or database-generated identifier that uniquely identifies this message. For the case of client-generated messages (e.g. CONTRIB:OP_QUERY and CONTRIB:OP_GET_MORE), it will be returned in the `responseTo` field of the CONTRIB:OP_REPLY message. Along with the `reponseTo` field in responses, clients can use this to associate query responses with the originating query.

**`responseTo`** : In the case of a message from the database, this will be the requestID taken from the CONTRIB:OP_QUERY or CONTRIB:OP_GET_MORE messages from the client. Along with the `requestID` field in queries, clients can use this to associate query responses with the originating query.

**`opCode`** : Type of message. See the table below in the next section.

Request Opcodes

TableOfContents

The following are the currently supported opcodes :

| Opcode Name | opCode value | Comment |
|---|---|---|
| OP_REPLY | 1 | Reply to a client request. responseTo is set |
| OP_MSG | 1000 | generic msg command followed by a string |
| OP_UPDATE | 2001 | update document |
| OP_INSERT | 2002 | insert new document |
| RESERVED | 2003 | formerly used for OP_GET_BY_OID |
| OP_QUERY | 2004 | query a collection |
| OP_GETMORE | 2005 | Get more data from a query. See Cursors |
| OP_DELETE | 2006 | Delete documents |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| OP_KILL_CURSORS | 2007 | Tell database client is done with a cursor |

### *Client Request Messages*

TableOfContents

Clients can send all messages except for CONTRIB:OP_REPLY. This is reserved for use by the database.

Note that only the CONTRIB:OP_QUERY and CONTRIB:OP_GET_MORE messages result in a response from the database. There will be no response sent for any other message.

You can determine if a message was successful with a getLastError command.

OP_UPDATE

The OP_UPDATE message is used to update a document in a collection. The format of a OP_UPDATE message is

```
struct OP_UPDATE {
    MsgHeader header;             // standard message header
int32     ZERO;               // 0 - reserved for future use
cstring   fullCollectionName; // "dbname.collectionname"
int32     flags;              // bit vector. see below
document  selector;           // the query to select the document
document  update;             // specification of the update to perform
}
```

**`fullCollectionName`** : The full collection name. The full collection name is the concatenation of the database name with the collection name, using a "." for the concatenation. For example, for the database "foo" and the collection "bar", the full collection name is "foo.bar".

**`flags`** :

| bit num | name | description |
|---|---|---|
| 0 | Upsert | If set, the database will insert the supplied object into the collection if no matching document is found. |
| 1 | MultiUpdate | If set, the database will update all matching objects in the collection. Otherwise only updates first matching doc. |
| 2-31 | Reserved | Must be set to 0. |

**`selector`** : BSON document that specifies the query for selection of the document to update.

**`update`** : BSON document that specifies the update to be performed. For information on specifying updates see the documentation on Updating.

There is no response to an OP_UPDATE message.

OP_INSERT

The OP_INSERT message is used to insert one or more documents into a collection. The format of the OP_INSERT message is

```
struct {
    MsgHeader header;             // standard message header
int32     flags;              // bit vector - see below
cstring   fullCollectionName; // "dbname.collectionname"
document* documents;          // one or more documents to insert into the collection
}
```

**`fullCollectionName`** : The full collection name. The full collection name is the concatenation of the database name with the collection name, using a "." for the concatenation. For example, for the database "foo" and the collection "bar", the full collection name is "foo.bar".

**`documents`** : One or more documents to insert into the collection. If there are more than one, they are written to the socket in sequence, one after another.

**`flags`** :

| bit num | name | description |
|---|---|---|

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 0 | ContinueOnError | If set, the database will not stop processing a bulk insert if one fails (eg due to duplicate IDs). This makes bulk insert behave similarly to a series of single inserts, except lastError will be set if any insert fails, not just the last one. If multiple errors occur, only the most recent will be reported by getLastError. (new in 1.9.1) |
| 1-31 | Reserved | Must be set to 0. |

There is no response to an OP_INSERT message.

OP_QUERY

The OP_QUERY message is used to query the database for documents in a collection. The format of the OP_QUERY message is :

```
struct OP_QUERY {
    MsgHeader header;               // standard message header
int32     flags;                    // bit vector of query options.  See below for details.
cstring   fullCollectionName;     // "dbname.collectionname"
int32     numberToSkip;           // number of documents to skip
int32     numberToReturn;         // number of documents to return
//  in the first OP_REPLY batch
document  query;                  // query object.  See below for details.
[ document  returnFieldSelector; ] // Optional. Selector indicating the fields
//  to return.  See below for details.
}
```

**`flags`** :

| bit num | name | description |
|---|---|---|
| 0 | Reserved | Must be set to 0. |
| 1 | TailableCursor | Tailable means cursor is not closed when the last data is retrieved. Rather, the cursor marks the final object's position. You can resume using the cursor later, from where it was located, if more data were received. Like any "latent cursor", the cursor may become invalid at some point (CursorNotFound) – for example if the final object it references were deleted. |
| 2 | SlaveOk | Allow query of replica slave. Normally these return an error except for namespace "local". |
| 3 | OplogReplay | Internal replication use only - driver should not set |
| 4 | NoCursorTimeout | The server normally times out idle cursors after an inactivity period (10 minutes) to prevent excess memory use. Set this option to prevent that. |
| 5 | AwaitData | Use with TailableCursor. If we are at the end of the data, block for a while rather than returning no data. After a timeout period, we do return as normal. |
| 6 | Exhaust | Stream the data down full blast in multiple "more" packages, on the assumption that the client will fully read all data queried. Faster when you are pulling a lot of data and know you want to pull it all down. Note: the client is not allowed to not read all the data unless it closes the connection. |
| 7 | Partial | Get partial results from a `mongos` if some shards are down (instead of throwing an error) |
| 8-31 | Reserved | Must be set to 0. |

**`fullCollectionName`** : The full collection name. The full collection name is the concatenation of the database name with the collection name, using a "." for the concatenation. For example, for the database "foo" and the collection "bar", the full collection name is "foo.bar".

**`numberToSkip`** : Sets the number of documents to omit - starting from the first document in the resulting dataset - when returning the result of the query.

**`numberToReturn`** : Limits the number of documents in the **first** CONTRIB:OP_REPLY message to the query. However, the database will still establish a cursor and return the `cursorID` to the client if there are more results than `numberToReturn`. If the client driver offers 'limit' functionality (like the SQL **LIMIT** keyword), then it is up to the client driver to ensure that no more than the specified number of document are returned to the calling application. If `numberToReturn` is 0, the db will use the default return size. If the number is negative, then the database will return that number and close the cursor. No futher results for that query can be fetched. If `numberToReturn` is 1 the server will treat it as -1 (closing the cursor automatically).

**`query`** : BSON document that represents the query. The query will contain one or more elements, all of which must match for a document to be included in the result set. Possible elements include `$query`, `$orderby`, `$hint`, `$explain`, and `$snapshot`.

**`returnFieldsSelector`** : OPTIONAL BSON document that limits the fields in the returned documents. The returnFieldsSelector contains one

or more elements, each of which is the name of a field that should be returned, and and the integer value 1. In JSON notation, a returnFieldsSelector to limit to the fields "a", "b" and "c" would be :

```
{ a : 1, b : 1, c : 1}
```

The database will respond to an OP_QUERY message with an CONTRIB:OP_REPLY message.

OP_GETMORE

The OP_GETMORE message is used to query the database for documents in a collection. The format of the OP_GETMORE message is :

```
struct {
    MsgHeader header;             // standard message header
int32     ZERO;               // 0 - reserved for future use
cstring   fullCollectionName; // "dbname.collectionname"
int32     numberToReturn;     // number of documents to return
int64     cursorID;           // cursorID from the OP_REPLY
}
```

**`fullCollectionName`** : The full collection name. The full collection name is the concatenation of the database name with the collection name, using a "." for the concatenation. For example, for the database "foo" and the collection "bar", the full collection name is "foo.bar".

**`numberToReturn`** : Limits the number of documents in the **first** CONTRIB:OP_REPLY message to the query. However, the database will still establish a cursor and return the `cursorID` to the client if there are more results than `numberToReturn`. If the client driver offers 'limit' functionality (like the SQL **LIMIT** keyword), then it is up to the client driver to ensure that no more than the specified number of document are returned to the calling application. If `numberToReturn` is 0, the db will used the default return size.

**`cursorID`** : Cursor identifier that came in the CONTRIB:OP_REPLY. This must be the value that came from the database.

The database will respond to an OP_GETMORE message with an CONTRIB:OP_REPLY message.

OP_DELETE

The OP_DELETE message is used to remove one or more documents from a collection. The format of the OP_DELETE message is :

```
struct {
    MsgHeader header;             // standard message header
int32     ZERO;               // 0 - reserved for future use
cstring   fullCollectionName; // "dbname.collectionname"
int32     flags;              // bit vector - see below for details.
document  selector;           // query object.  See below for details.
}
```

**`fullCollectionName`** : The full collection name. The full collection name is the concatenation of the database name with the collection name, using a "." for the concatenation. For example, for the database "foo" and the collection "bar", the full collection name is "foo.bar".

**`flags`** :

| bit num | name | description |
|---|---|---|
| 0 | SingleRemove | If set, the database will remove only the first matching document in the collection. Otherwise all matching documents will be removed. |
| 1-31 | Reserved | Must be set to 0. |

**`selector`** : BSON document that represent the query used to select the documents to be removed. The selector will contain one or more elements, all of which must match for a document to be removed from the collection. Please see $$$ TODO QUERY for more information.

There is no reponse to an OP_DELETE message.

OP_KILL_CURSORS

The OP_KILL_CURSORS message is used to close an active cursor in the database. This is necessary to ensure that database resources are reclaimed at the end of the query. The format of the OP_KILL_CURSORS message is :

```
struct {
    MsgHeader header;            // standard message header
int32     ZERO;              // 0 - reserved for future use
int32     numberOfCursorIDs; // number of cursorIDs in message
int64*    cursorIDs;         // sequence of cursorIDs to close
}
```

**`numberOfCursorIDs`** : The number of cursors that are in the message.

**`cursorIDs`** : "array" of cursor IDs to be closed. If there are more than one, they are written to the socket in sequence, one after another.

Note that if a cursor is read until exhausted (read until OP_QUERY or OP_GETMORE returns zero for the cursor id), there is no need to kill the cursor.

OP_MSG

Deprecated. OP_MSG sends a diagnostic message to the database. The database sends back a fixed resonse. The format is

```
struct {
    MsgHeader header;  // standard message header
cstring   message; // message for the database
}
```

Drivers do not need to implement OP_MSG.

### *Database Response Messages*

TableOfContents

OP_REPLY

The OP_REPLY message is sent by the database in response to an CONTRIB:OP_QUERY or CONTRIB:OP_GET_MORE message. The format of an OP_REPLY message is:

```
struct {
    MsgHeader header;         // standard message header
int32     responseFlags;  // bit vector - see details below
int64     cursorID;       // cursor id if client needs to do get more's
int32     startingFrom;   // where in the cursor this reply is starting
int32     numberReturned; // number of documents in the reply
document* documents;      // documents
}
```

**`responseFlags`** :

| bit num | name | description |
|---|---|---|
| 0 | CursorNotFound | Set when getMore is called but the cursor id is not valid at the server. Returned with zero results. |
| 1 | QueryFailure | Set when query failed. Results consist of one document containing an "$err" field describing the failure. |
| 2 | ShardConfigStale | Drivers should ignore this. Only mongos will ever see this set, in which case, it needs to update config from the server. |
| 3 | AwaitCapable | Set when the server supports the AwaitData Query option. If it doesn't, a client should sleep a little between getMore's of a Tailable cursor. Mongod version 1.6 supports AwaitData and thus always sets AwaitCapable. |
| 4-31 | Reserved | Ignore |

**`cursorID`** : The cursorID that this OP_REPLY is a part of. In the event that the result set of the query fits into one OP_REPLY message, `cursorID` will be 0. This `cursorID` must be used in any CONTRIB:OP_GET_MORE messages used to get more data, and also must be closed by the client when no longer needed via a CONTRIB:OP_KILL_CURSORS message.

## BSON

- bsonspec.org
- BSON and MongoDB
- Language-Specific Examples
  - C
  - C++
  - Java
  - PHP
  - Python
  - Ruby
- MongoDB Document Types


## bsonspec.org

BSON is a bin-ary-en-coded seri-al-iz-a-tion of JSON-like doc-u-ments. BSON is designed to be lightweight, traversable, and efficient. BSON, like JSON, supports the embedding of objects and arrays within other objects and arrays. See bsonspec.org for the spec and more information in general.

## BSON and MongoDB

MongoDB uses BSON as the data storage and network transfer format for "documents".

BSON at first seems BLOB-like, but there exists an important difference: the Mongo database understands BSON internals. This means that MongoDB can "reach inside " BSON objects, even nested ones. Among other things, this allows MongoDB to build indexes and match objects against query expressions on both top-level and nested BSON keys.

See also: the BSON blog post and BSON and Data Interchange

## Language-Specific Examples

We often map from a language's "dictionary" type – which may be its native objects – to BSON. The mapping is particularly natural in dynamically typed languages:

```
JavaScript: {"foo" : "bar"}
Perl: {"foo" => "bar"}
PHP: array("foo" => "bar")
Python: {"foo" : "bar"}
Ruby: {"foo" => "bar"}
Java: DBObject obj = new BasicDBObject("foo", "bar");
```

### C

```
bson b;
bson_buffer buf;
bson_buffer_init( &buf )
bson_append_string( &buf, "name", "Joe" );
bson_append_int( &buf, "age", 33 );
bson_from_buffer( &b, &buf );
bson_print( &b );
```

See http://github.com/mongodb/mongo-c-driver/blob/master/src/bson.h for more information.

### C++

```
BSONObj p = BSON( "name" << "Joe" << "age" << 33 );
cout << p.toString() << endl;
cout << p["age"].number() << endl;
```

See the BSON section of the C++ Tutorial for more information.

### Java

```
BasicDBObject doc = new BasicDBObject();
doc.put("name", "MongoDB");
doc.put("type", "database");
doc.put("count", 1);
BasicDBObject info = new BasicDBObject();
info.put("x", 203);
info.put("y", 102);
doc.put("info", info);
coll.insert(doc);
```

***PHP***

The PHP driver includes `bson_encode` and `bson_decode` functions. `bson_encode` takes any PHP type and serializes it, returning a string of bytes:

```
$bson = bson_encode(null);
$bson = bson_encode(true);
$bson = bson_encode(4);
$bson = bson_encode("hello, world");
$bson = bson_encode(array("foo" => "bar"));
$bson = bson_encode(new MongoDate());
```

Mongo-specific objects (`MongoId`, `MongoDate`, `MongoRegex`, `MongoCode`) will be encoded in their respective BSON formats. For other objects, it will create a BSON representation with the key/value pairs you would get by running `for ($object as $key => $value)`.

`bson_decode` takes a string representing a BSON object and parses it into an associative array.

***Python***

```
>>> from bson import BSON
>>> bson_string = BSON.encode({"hello": "world"})
>>> bson_string
'\x16\x00\x00\x00\x02hello\x00\x06\x00\x00\x00world\x00\x00'
>>> bson_string.decode()
{u'hello': u'world'}
```

PyMongo also supports "ordered dictionaries" through the **bson.son** module. The **BSON** class can handle **SON** instances using the same methods you would use for regular dictionaries. Python2.7's collections.OrderedDict is also supported.

***Ruby***

There are now two gems that handle BSON-encoding: bson and bson_ext. These gems can be used to work with BSON independently of the MongoDB Ruby driver.

```
irb
>> require 'rubygems'
=> true
>> require 'bson'
=> true
>> doc = {:hello => "world"}
>> bson = BSON.serialize(doc).to_s
=> "\026\000\000\000\002hello\000\006\000\000\000world\000\000"
>> BSON.deserialize(bson.unpack("C*"))
=> {"hello" => "world"}
```

The BSON class also supports ordered hashes. Simply construct your documents using the OrderedHash class, also found in the MongoDB Ruby Driver.

### *MongoDB Document Types*

MongoDB uses BSON documents for three things:

1. Data storage (user documents). These are the regular JSON-like objects that the database stores for us. These BSON documents are

sent to the database via the INSERT operation. User documents have limitations on the "element name" space due to the usage of special characters in the JSON-like query language.
    a. A user document element name cannot begin with "$".
    b. A user document element name cannot have a "." in the name.
    c. The element name "_id" is reserved for use as a primary key id, but you can store anything that is unique in that field. The database expects that drivers will prevent users from creating documents that violate these constraints.
2. Query "Selector" Documents : Query documents (or selectors) are BSON documents that are used in QUERY, DELETE and UPDATE operations. They are used by these operations to match against documents. Selector objects have no limitations on the "element name" space, as they must be able to supply special "marker" elements, like "$where" and the special "command" operations.
3. "Modifier" Documents : Documents that contain 'modifier actions' that modify user documents in the case of an update (see Updating).

## Mongo Extended JSON

Mongo's REST interface supports storage and retrieval of JSON documents. Special representations are used for BSON types that do not have obvious JSON mappings, and multiple representations are allowed for some such types. The REST interface supports three different modes for document output { Strict, JS, TenGen }, which serve to control the representations used. Mongo can of course understand all of these representations in REST input.

- **Strict** mode produces output conforming to the JSON spec http://www.json.org.
- **JS** mode uses some Javascript types to represent certain BSON types.
- **TenGen** mode uses some Javascript types and some 10gen specific types to represent certain BSON types.

The following BSON types are represented using special conventions:

| Type | Strict | JS | TenGen | Explanati |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| data_binary | `{ "$binary" : "<bindata>" , "$type" : "<t>" }` | `{ "$binary" : "<bindata>", "$type" : "<t>" }` | `{ "$binary" : "<bindata>", "$type" : "<t>" }` | <bindata> the base64 representa of a binary string. <t> the hexadecim representa of a single indicating t data type. |
| data_date | `{ "$date" : <date> }` | `Date( <date> )` | `Date( <date> )` | <date> is t JSON representa of a 64 bit signed inte for millisec since epoc (unsigned before vers 1.9.1). |
| data_timestamp | `{ "$timestamp" : {"t": <t>, "i": <i>} }` | `Timestamp( <t>, <i> )` | `Timestamp( <t>, <i> )` | <t> is the JSON representa of a 32 bit unsigned integer for millisecond since epoc <i> is a 32 unsigned integer for increment. |

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| data_regex | `{ "$regex" : "<sRegex>", "$options" : "<sOptions>" }` | `/<jRegex>/<jOptions>` | `/<jRegex>/<jOptions>` | <sRegex> string of va JSON characters <jRegex> i string that contain val JSON characters unescapec characters may not contain unescapec characters <sOptions: a string containing letters of th alphabet. <jOptions> string that contain on the charac 'g', 'i', 'm' a 's' (added i v1.9). Beca the JS and TenGen representa support a limited ran options, ar nonconforr options wil dropped w converting this representa |
| data_oid | `{ "$oid" : "<id>" }` | `{ "$oid" : "<id>" }` | `ObjectId( "<id>" )` | <id> is a 2 character hexadecim string. Not that these representa require a data_oid v to have an associated field name "_id". |
| data_ref | `{ "$ref" : "<name>", "$id" : "<id>" }` | `{ "$ref" : "<name>" , "$id" : "<id>" }` | `Dbref( "<name>", "<id>" )` | <name> is string of va JSON characters <id> is a 2 character hexadecim string. |

## GridFS Specification


- Introduction
- Specification
  - Storage Collections
    - `files`
    - `chunks`
  - Indexes


***Introduction***

GridFS is a storage specification for large objects in MongoDB. It works by splitting large object into small chunks, usually 256k in size. Each chunk is stored as a separate document in a `chunks` collection. Metadata about the file, including the filename, content type, and any optional information needed by the developer, is stored as a document in a `files` collection.

So for any given file stored using GridFS, there will exist one document in `files` collection and one or more documents in the `chunks` collection.

If you're just interested in using GridFS, see the docs on storing files. If you'd like to understand the GridFS implementation, read on.

## *Specification*

### *Storage Collections*

GridFS uses two collections to store data:

- `files` contains the object metadata
- `chunks` contains the binary chunks with some additional accounting information

In order to make more than one GridFS namespace possible for a single database, the files and chunks collections are named with a prefix. By default the prefix is `fs.`, so any default GridFS store will consist of collections named `fs.files` and `fs.chunks`. The drivers make it possible to change this prefix, so you might, for instance, have another GridFS namespace specifically for photos where the collections would be `photos.files` and `photos.chunks`.

Here's an example of the standard GridFS interface in Java:

```
/*
 * default root collection usage - must be supported
 */
GridFS myFS = new GridFS(myDatabase);             // returns a default GridFS (e.g. "fs" root
collection)
myFS.storeFile(new File("/tmp/largething.mpg"));   // saves the file into the "fs" GridFS store

/*
 * specified root collection usage - optional
 */

GridFS myContracts = new GridFS(myDatabase, "contracts");             // returns a GridFS where
"contracts" is root
myFS.retrieveFile("smithco", new File("/tmp/smithco_20090105.pdf"));  // retrieves object whose
filename is "smithco"
```

Note that the above API is for demonstration purposes only - this spec does not (at this time) recommend any API. See individual driver documentation for API specifics.

`files`

Documents in the `files` collection require the following fields:

```
{
  "_id" : <unspecified>,                  // unique ID for this file
"length" : data_number,                 // size of the file in bytes
"chunkSize" : data_number,              // size of each of the chunks.  Default is 256k
"uploadDate" : data_date,               // date when object first stored
"md5" : data_string                     // result of running the "filemd5" command on this file's
chunks
}
```

Any other desired fields may be added to the files document; common ones include the following:

```
{
  "filename" : data_string,              // human name for the file
"contentType" : data_string,            // valid mime type for the object
"aliases" : data_array of data_string,  // optional array of alias strings
"metadata" : data_object,               // anything the user wants to store
}
```

Note that the _id field can be of any type, per the discretion of the spec implementor.

`chunks`

The structure of documents from the `chunks` collection is as follows:

```
{
  "_id" : <unspecified>,         // object id of the chunk in the _chunks collection
"files_id" : <unspecified>,    // _id of the corresponding files collection entry
"n" : chunk_number,            // chunks are numbered in order, starting with 0
"data" : data_binary,          // the chunk's payload as a BSON binary type
}
```

Notes:

- The `_id` is whatever type you choose. As with any MongoDB document, the default will be a BSON object id.
- The `files_id` is a foreign key containing the `_id` field for the relevant `files` collection entry

***Indexes***

GridFS implementations should create a unique, compound index in the `chunks` collection for `files_id` and n. Here's how you'd do that from the shell:

```
db.fs.chunks.ensureIndex({files_id:1, n:1}, {unique: true});
```

This way, a chunk can be retrieved efficiently using it's `files_id` and n values:

```
cursor = db.fs.chunks.findOne({files_id: myFileID}).sort({n:1});
```

## Implementing Authentication in a Driver

The current version of Mongo supports only very basic authentication. One authenticates a username and password in the context of a particular database. Once authenticated, the user has full read and write access to the database in question.

The `admin` database is special. In addition to several commands that are administrative being possible only on `admin`, authentication on `admin` gives one read and write access to all databases on the server. Effectively, `admin` access means root access to the db.

Note on a single socket we may authenticate for any number of databases, and as different users. This authentication persists for the life of the database connection (barring a `logout` command).

### The Authentication Process

Authentication is a two step process. First the driver runs a `getnonce` command to get a nonce for use in the subsequent authentication. We can view a sample `getnonce` invocation from `dbshell`:

```
> db.$cmd.findOne({getnonce:1})
{ "nonce":"7268c504683936e1" , "ok":1
```

The nonce returned is a hex String.

The next step is to run an `authenticate` command for the database on which to authenticate. The authenticate command has the form:

```
{ authenticate : 1, user : username, nonce : nonce, key : digest }
```

where

- *username* is a username in the database's system.users collection;
- *nonce* is the nonce returned from a previous getnonce command;
- *digest* is the hex encoding of a MD5 message digest which is the MD5 hash of the concatenation of (*nonce*, *username*, *password_digest* ), where *password_digest* is the user's password value in the pwd field of the associated user object in the database's system.users collection. pwd is the hex encoding of MD5( username + ":mongo:" + *password_text*).

Authenticate will return an object containing

```
{ ok : 1 }
```

when successful.

Details of why an authentication command failed may be found in the Mongo server's log files.

The following code from the Mongo Javascript driver provides an example implementation:

```
DB.prototype.addUser = function( username , pass ){
    var c = this.getCollection( "system.users" );

    var u = c.findOne( { user : username } ) || { user : username };
    u.pwd = hex_md5( username + ":mongo:" + pass );
    print( tojson( u ) );

    c.save( u );
}

DB.prototype.auth = function( username , pass ){
    var n = this.runCommand( { getnonce : 1 } );

    var a = this.runCommand(
        {
            authenticate : 1 ,
            user : username ,
            nonce : n.nonce ,
            key : hex_md5( n.nonce + username + hex_md5( username + ":mongo:" + pass ) )
        }
    );

    return a.ok;
}
```

### Logout

Drivers may optionally implement the logout command which deauthorizes usage for the specified database for this connection. Note other databases may still be authorized.

Alternatively, close the socket to deauthorize.

```
> db.$cmd.findOne({logout:1})
{
    "ok" : 1.0
}
```

### Replica Sets and Authentication

For drivers that support replica sets, extra care with replication is required.

When switching from one server in a replica set to another, for example in a failover situation, you must reauthenticate. Clients will likely want to cache authentication from the user so that the client can reauthenticate with the new server when appropriate.

Be careful also with operations such as Logout. If you log out from only some members of a replica set, that could be an issue.

Authenticating with a server in slave mode is allowed.

### See Also

- Security and Authentication

## Notes on Pooling for Mongo Drivers

Note that with the db write operations can be sent asynchronously or synchronously (the latter indicating a getlasterror request after the write).

When asynchronous, one must be careful to continue using the same connection (socket). This ensures that the next operation will not begin until after the write completes.

### Pooling and Authentication

An individual socket connection to the database has associated authentication state.  Thus, if you pool connections, you probably want a separate pool for each authentication case (db + username).

### Pseudo-code

The following pseudo-code illustrates our recommended approach to implementing connection pooling in a driver's connection class. This handles authentication, grouping operations from a single "request" onto the same socket, and a couple of other gotchas:

```
class Connection:
   init(pool_size, addresses, auto_start_requests):
      this.pool_size = pool_size
      this.addresses = addresses
      this.auto_start_requests = auto_start_requests
      this.thread_map = {}
      this.locks = Lock[pool_size]
      this.sockets = Socket[pool_size]
      this.socket_auth = String[pool_size][]
      this.auth = {}

      this.find_master()

   find_master():
      for address in this.addresses:
         if address.is_master():
            this.master = address

   pick_and_acquire_socket():
      choices = random permutation of [0, ..., this.pool_size - 1]

      choices.sort(order: ascending,
                   value: size of preimage of choice under this.thread_map)

      for choice in choices:
         if this.locks[choice].non_blocking_acquire():
            return choice

      sock = choices[0]
      this.locks[sock].blocking_acquire()
      return sock

   get_socket():
      if this.thread_map[current_thread] >= 0:
         sock_number = this.thread_map[current_thread]
         this.locks[sock_number].blocking_acquire()
      else:
         sock_number = this.pick_and_lock_socket()
         if this.auto_start_requests or current_thread in this.thread_map:
            this.thread_map[current_thread] = sock_number
```

```
      if not this.sockets[sock_number]:
         this.sockets[sock_number] = Socket(this.master)

      return sock_number

   send_message_without_response(message):
      sock_number = this.get_socket()
      this.check_auth()
      this.sockets[sock_number].send(message)
      this.locks[sock_number].release()

   send_message_with_response(message):
      sock_number = this.get_socket()
      this.check_auth()
      this.sockets[sock_number].send(message)
      result = this.sockets[sock_number].receive()
      this.locks[sock_number].release()
      return result

   # start_request is only needed if auto_start_requests is False
   start_request():
      this.thread_map[current_thread] = -1

   end_request():
      delete this.thread_map[current_thread]

   authenticate(database, username, password):
      # TODO should probably make sure that these credentials are valid,
      # otherwise errors are going to be delayed until first op.
      this.auth[database] = (username, password)

   logout(database):
      delete this.auth[database]

   check_auth(sock_number):
      for db in this.socket_auth[sock_number]:
         if db not in this.auth.keys():
            this.sockets[sock_number].send(logout_message)
            this.socket_auth[sock_number].remove(db)
      for db in this.auth.keys():
         if db not in this.socket_auth[sock_number]:
            this.sockets[sock_number].send(authenticate_message)
            this.socket_auth[sock_number].append(db)

# somewhere we need to do error checking - if you get not master then everything
# in this.sockets gets closed and set to null and we call find_master() again.
```

```
# we also need to reset the socket_auth information - nothing is authorized yet
# on the new master.
```

### See Also

- The Driver and Integration Center for information about the latest drivers
- The [top page] for this section
- The main Database Internals page
- The starting point for all Home

### Driver and Integration Center

## Connecting Drivers to Replica Sets

Ideally a MongoDB driver can connect to a cluster of servers which represent a replica set, and automatically find the right set member with which to communicate. Failover should be automatic too. The general steps are:

1. The user, when opening the connection, specifies host[:port] for one or more members of the set. Not all members need be specified -- in fact the exact members of the set might change over time. This list for the connect call is the *seed list*.
2. The driver then connects to all servers on the seed list, perhaps in parallel to minimize connect time. Send an ismaster command to each server.
3. When the server is in replSet mode, it will return a *hosts* field with all members of the set that are potentially eligible to serve data. The client should cache this information. Ideally this refreshes too, as the set's config could change over time.
4. Choose a server with which to communicate.
    a. If ismaster == true, that server is primary for the set. This server can be used for writes and immediately consistent reads.
    b. If secondary == true, that server is not primary, but is available for eventually consistent reads. In this case, you can use the *primary* field to see which server the master should be. (If primary is not set, you may want to poll other nodes at random; it is conceivable that the member to which we are talking is partitioned from the other members, and thus it cannot determine who is primary on its own. This is unlikely but possible.)
5. If an error occurs with the current connection, find the new primary and resume use there.

For example, if we run the ismaster command on a non-primary server, we might get something like:

```
> db.runCommand("ismaster")
{
        "ismaster" : false,
        "secondary" : true,
        "hosts" : [
                "ny1.acme.com",
                "ny2.acme.com",
                "sf1.acme.com"
        ],
        "passives" : [
             "ny3.acme.com",
             "sf3.acme.com"
        ],
        "arbiters" : [
            "sf2.acme.com",
        ]
        "primary" : "ny2.acme.com",
        "ok" : true
}
```

There are three servers with priority > 0 (*ny1*, *ny2*, and *sf1*), two passive servers (*ny3* and *sf3*), and an arbiter (*sf2*). The primary should be *ny2*, but the driver should call ismaster on that server before it assumes it is.

## Error Handling in Mongo Drivers

If an error occurs on a query (or getMore operation), Mongo returns an error object instead of user data.

The error object has a first field guaranteed to have the reserved key `$err`. For example:

```
{ $err : "some error message" }
```

The $err value can be of any type but is usually a string.

Drivers typically check for this return code explicitly and take action rather than returning the object to the user. The query results flags include a set bit when $err is returned.

```
/* db response format

Query or GetMore: // see struct QueryResult
int resultFlags;
  int64 cursorID;
  int startingFrom;
  int nReturned;
  list of marshalled JSObjects;

*/

struct QueryResult : public MsgData {
  enum {
    ResultFlag_CursorNotFound = 1, /* returned, with zero results, when getMore is called but the
cursor id is not valid at the server. */
    ResultFlag_ErrSet = 2          /* { $err : ... } is being returned */
  };
  ...
};
```

### See Also

- The Driver and Integration Center for information about the latest drivers
- The [top page] for this section
- The main Database Internals page
- The starting point for all Home

# Developer Zone

- Tutorial
- Shell
- Manual
  - Databases
  - Collections
  - Indexes
  - Data Types and Conventions
  - GridFS
  - Inserting
  - Updating
  - Querying
  - Removing
  - Optimization
- Developer FAQ
- Cookbook

If you have a comment or question about anything, please contact us through IRC (freenode.net#mongodb) or the mailing list, rather than leaving a comment at the bottom of a page. It is easier for us to respond to you through those channels.

## Introduction

MongoDB is a collection-oriented, schema-free document database.

By *collection-oriented*, we mean that data is grouped into sets that are called 'collections'. Each collection has a unique name in the database, and can contain an unlimited number of documents. Collections are analogous to tables in a RDBMS, except that they don't have any defined schema.

By *schema-free*, we mean that the database doesn't need to know anything about the structure of the documents that you store in a collection. In fact, you can store documents with different structure in the same collection if you so choose.

By *document*, we mean that we store data that is a structured collection of key-value pairs, where keys are strings, and values are any of a rich set of data types, including arrays and documents. We call this data format "BSON" for "Binary Serialized dOcument Notation."

## MongoDB Operational Overview

MongoDB is a server process that runs on Linux, Windows and OS X. It can be run both as a 32 or 64-bit application. We recommend running in 64-bit mode, since Mongo is limited to a total data size of about 2GB for all databases in 32-bit mode.

The MongoDB process listens on port 27017 by default (note that this can be set at start time - please see Command Line Parameters for more information).

Clients connect to the MongoDB process, optionally authenticate themselves if security is turned on, and perform a sequence of actions, such as inserts, queries and updates.

MongoDB stores its data in files (default location is `/data/db/`), and uses memory mapped files for data management for efficiency.

MongoDB can also be configured for automatic data replication , as well as automatic fail-over .

For more information on MongoDB administration, please see Mongo Administration Guide.

### MongoDB Functionality

As a developer, MongoDB drivers offer a rich range of operations:

- Queries: Search for documents based on either query objects or SQL-like "where predicates". Queries can be sorted, have limited return sizes, can skip parts of the return document set, and can also return partial documents.
- Inserts and Updates : Insert new documents, update existing documents.
- Index Management : Create indexes on one or more keys in a document, including substructure, deleted indexes, etc
- General commands : Any MongoDB operation can be managed via DB Commands over the regular socket.

# cookbook.mongodb.org

**Redirection Notice**
This page should redirect to http://cookbook.mongodb.org.

# Tutorial


- Running MongoDB
- Getting A Database Connection
- Dynamic Schema ("Schema Free")
- Inserting Data into A Collection
- Accessing Data From a Query
- Specifying What the Query Returns
- `findOne()` - Syntactic Sugar
- Limiting the Result Set via `limit()`
- More Help
- What Next


### Running MongoDB

First, run through the Quickstart guide for your platform to get Mongo installed.

### Getting A Database Connection

Let's now try manipulating the database with the database shell . (We could perform similar operations from any programming language using an appropriate driver.  The shell is convenient for interactive and administrative use.)

Start the MongoDB JavaScript shell with:

```
# 'mongo' is shell binary. exact location might vary depending on
# installation method and platform
$ bin/mongo
```

By default the shell connects to database "test" on localhost.  You then see:

```
MongoDB shell version: <whatever>
url: test
connecting to: test
type "help" for help
>
```

"`connecting to:`" tells you the name of the database the shell is using. To switch databases, type:

```
> use mydb
switched to db mydb
```

Switching to a database with the `use` command won't immediately create the database - the database is created lazily the first time data is inserted. This means that if you `use` a database for the first time it won't show up in the list provided by `` `show dbs` `` until data is inserted.

To see a list of handy commands, type `help`.



**Tip for Developers with Experience in Other Databases**
You may notice, in the examples below, that we never create a database or collection. MongoDB does not require that you do so. As soon as you insert something, MongoDB creates the underlying collection and database. If you query a collection that does not exist, MongoDB treats it as an empty collection.

### Dynamic Schema ("Schema Free")

MongoDB has databases, collections, and indexes much like a traditional RDBMS. In some cases (databases and collections) these objects can be implicitly created, however once created they exist in a system catalog (db.systems.collections, db.system.indexes).

Collections contain (BSON) documents. Within these documents are fields. In MongoDB there is no predefinition of fields (what would be columns in an RDBMS). There is no schema for fields within documents – the fields and their value datatypes can vary. Thus there is no notion of an "alter table" operation which adds a "column". In practice, it is highly common for a collection to have a homogenous structure across documents; however this is not a requirement. This flexibility means that schema migration and augmentation are very easy in practice - rarely will you need to write scripts which perform "alter table" type operations. In addition to making schema migration flexible, this facility makes iterative software development atop the database easier.

### Inserting Data into A Collection

Let's create a test collection and insert some data into it. We will create two objects, `j` and `t`, and then save them in the collection *things*.

In the following examples, '>' indicates commands typed at the shell prompt.

```
> j = { name : "mongo" };
{"name" : "mongo"}
> t = { x : 3 };
{ "x" : 3  }
> db.things.save(j);
> db.things.save(t);
> db.things.find();
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c2209f9f3924d31102bd84a"), "name" : "mongo" }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c2209fef3924d31102bd84b"), "x" : 3 }
>
```

A few things to note :

- We did not predefine the collection. The database creates it automatically on the first insert.
- The documents we store can have different fields - in fact in this example, the documents have no common data elements at all. In practice, one usually stores documents of the same structure within collections.
- Upon being inserted into the database, objects are assigned an object ID (if they do not already have one) in the field `_id`.
- When you run the above example, your ObjectID values will be different.

Let's add some more records to this collection:

```
> for (var i = 1; i <= 20; i++) db.things.save({x : 4, j : i});
> db.things.find();
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c2209f9f3924d31102bd84a"), "name" : "mongo" }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c2209fef3924d31102bd84b"), "x" : 3 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd856"), "x" : 4, "j" : 1 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd857"), "x" : 4, "j" : 2 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd858"), "x" : 4, "j" : 3 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd859"), "x" : 4, "j" : 4 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd85a"), "x" : 4, "j" : 5 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd85b"), "x" : 4, "j" : 6 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd85c"), "x" : 4, "j" : 7 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd85d"), "x" : 4, "j" : 8 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd85e"), "x" : 4, "j" : 9 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd85f"), "x" : 4, "j" : 10 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd860"), "x" : 4, "j" : 11 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd861"), "x" : 4, "j" : 12 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd862"), "x" : 4, "j" : 13 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd863"), "x" : 4, "j" : 14 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd864"), "x" : 4, "j" : 15 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd865"), "x" : 4, "j" : 16 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd866"), "x" : 4, "j" : 17 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd867"), "x" : 4, "j" : 18 }
has more
```

Note that not all documents were shown - the shell limits the number to 20 when automatically iterating a cursor. Since we already had 2 documents in the collection, we only see the first 18 of the newly-inserted documents.

If we want to return the next set of results, there's the `it` shortcut. Continuing from the code above:

```
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd866"), "x" : 4, "j" : 17 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd867"), "x" : 4, "j" : 18 }
has more
> it
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd868"), "x" : 4, "j" : 19 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd869"), "x" : 4, "j" : 20 }
```

Technically, find() returns a cursor object. But in the cases above, we haven't assigned that cursor to a variable. So, the shell automatically iterates over the cursor, giving us an initial result set, and allowing us to continue iterating with the **it** command.

But we can also work with the cursor directly; just how that's done is discussed in the next section.

### Accessing Data From a Query

Before we discuss queries in any depth, lets talk about how to work with the results of a query - a cursor object. We'll use the simple `find()` query method, which returns everything in a collection, and talk about how to create specific queries later on.

In order to see all the elements in the collection when using the mongo shell, we need to explicitly use the cursor returned from the `find()` operation.

Lets repeat the same query, but this time use the cursor that `find()` returns, and iterate over it in a while loop :

```
> var cursor = db.things.find();
> while (cursor.hasNext()) printjson(cursor.next());
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c2209f9f3924d31102bd84a"), "name" : "mongo" }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c2209fef3924d31102bd84b"), "x" : 3 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd856"), "x" : 4, "j" : 1 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd857"), "x" : 4, "j" : 2 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd858"), "x" : 4, "j" : 3 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd859"), "x" : 4, "j" : 4 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd85a"), "x" : 4, "j" : 5 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd85b"), "x" : 4, "j" : 6 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd85c"), "x" : 4, "j" : 7 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd85d"), "x" : 4, "j" : 8 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd85e"), "x" : 4, "j" : 9 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd85f"), "x" : 4, "j" : 10 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd860"), "x" : 4, "j" : 11 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd861"), "x" : 4, "j" : 12 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd862"), "x" : 4, "j" : 13 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd863"), "x" : 4, "j" : 14 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd864"), "x" : 4, "j" : 15 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd865"), "x" : 4, "j" : 16 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd866"), "x" : 4, "j" : 17 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd867"), "x" : 4, "j" : 18 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd868"), "x" : 4, "j" : 19 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd869"), "x" : 4, "j" : 20 }
```

The above example shows cursor-style iteration. The `hasNext()` function tells if there are any more documents to return, and the `next()` function returns the next document. We also used the built-in `printjson()` method to render the document in a pretty JSON-style format.

When working in the JavaScript shell, we can also use the functional features of the language, and just call `forEach` on the cursor. Repeating the example above, but using `forEach()` directly on the cursor rather than the while loop:

```
> db.things.find().forEach(printjson);
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c2209f9f3924d31102bd84a"), "name" : "mongo" }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c2209fef3924d31102bd84b"), "x" : 3 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd856"), "x" : 4, "j" : 1 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd857"), "x" : 4, "j" : 2 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd858"), "x" : 4, "j" : 3 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd859"), "x" : 4, "j" : 4 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd85a"), "x" : 4, "j" : 5 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd85b"), "x" : 4, "j" : 6 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd85c"), "x" : 4, "j" : 7 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd85d"), "x" : 4, "j" : 8 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd85e"), "x" : 4, "j" : 9 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd85f"), "x" : 4, "j" : 10 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd860"), "x" : 4, "j" : 11 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd861"), "x" : 4, "j" : 12 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd862"), "x" : 4, "j" : 13 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd863"), "x" : 4, "j" : 14 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd864"), "x" : 4, "j" : 15 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd865"), "x" : 4, "j" : 16 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd866"), "x" : 4, "j" : 17 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd867"), "x" : 4, "j" : 18 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd868"), "x" : 4, "j" : 19 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd869"), "x" : 4, "j" : 20 }
```

In the case of a `forEach()` we must define a function that is called for each document in the cursor.

In the mongo shell, you can also treat cursors like an array :

```
> var cursor = db.things.find();
> printjson(cursor[4]);
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd858"), "x" : 4, "j" : 3 }
```

When using a cursor this way, note that all values up to the highest accessed (cursor[4] above) are loaded into RAM at the same time. This is inappropriate for large result sets, as you will run out of memory. Cursors should be used as an iterator with any query which returns a large

number of elements.

In addition to array-style access to a cursor, you may also convert the cursor to a true array:

```
> var arr = db.things.find().toArray();
> arr[5];
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd859"), "x" : 4, "j" : 4 }
```

Please note that these array features are specific to mongo - The Interactive Shell, and not offered by all drivers.

MongoDB cursors are not snapshots - operations performed by you or other users on the collection being queried between the first and last call to `next()` of your cursor *may or may not* be returned by the cursor. Use explicit locking to perform a snapshotted query.

### Specifying What the Query Returns

Now that we know how to work with the cursor objects that are returned from queries, lets now focus on how to tailor queries to return specific things.

In general, the way to do this is to create "query documents", which are documents that indicate the pattern of keys and values that are to be matched.

These are easier to demonstrate than explain. In the following examples, we'll give example SQL queries, and demonstrate how to represent the same query using MongoDB via the mongo shell. This way of specifying queries is fundamental to MongoDB, so you'll find the same general facility in any driver or language.

**SELECT * FROM things WHERE name="mongo"**

```
> db.things.find({name:"mongo"}).forEach(printjson);
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c2209f9f3924d31102bd84a"), "name" : "mongo" }
```

**SELECT * FROM things WHERE x=4**

```
> db.things.find({x:4}).forEach(printjson);
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd856"), "x" : 4, "j" : 1 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd857"), "x" : 4, "j" : 2 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd858"), "x" : 4, "j" : 3 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd859"), "x" : 4, "j" : 4 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd85a"), "x" : 4, "j" : 5 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd85b"), "x" : 4, "j" : 6 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd85c"), "x" : 4, "j" : 7 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd85d"), "x" : 4, "j" : 8 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd85e"), "x" : 4, "j" : 9 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd85f"), "x" : 4, "j" : 10 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd860"), "x" : 4, "j" : 11 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd861"), "x" : 4, "j" : 12 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd862"), "x" : 4, "j" : 13 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd863"), "x" : 4, "j" : 14 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd864"), "x" : 4, "j" : 15 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd865"), "x" : 4, "j" : 16 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd866"), "x" : 4, "j" : 17 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd867"), "x" : 4, "j" : 18 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd868"), "x" : 4, "j" : 19 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd869"), "x" : 4, "j" : 20 }
```

The query expression is an document itself. A query document of the form { a:A, b:B, ... } means "where a==A and b==B and ...". More information on query capabilities may be found in the Queries and Cursors section of the Mongo Developers' Guide.

MongoDB also lets you return "partial documents" - documents that have only a subset of the elements of the document stored in the database. To do this, you add a second argument to the `find()` query, supplying a document that lists the elements to be returned.

To illustrate, lets repeat the last example `find({x:4})` with an additional argument that limits the returned document to just the "j" elements:

**SELECT j FROM things WHERE x=4**

```
> db.things.find({x:4}, {j:true}).forEach(printjson);
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd856"), "j" : 1 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd857"), "j" : 2 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd858"), "j" : 3 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd859"), "j" : 4 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd85a"), "j" : 5 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd85b"), "j" : 6 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd85c"), "j" : 7 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd85d"), "j" : 8 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd85e"), "j" : 9 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd85f"), "j" : 10 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd860"), "j" : 11 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd861"), "j" : 12 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd862"), "j" : 13 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd863"), "j" : 14 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd864"), "j" : 15 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd865"), "j" : 16 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd866"), "j" : 17 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd867"), "j" : 18 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd868"), "j" : 19 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd869"), "j" : 20 }
```

Note that the "_id" field is always returned.

### `findOne()` - Syntactic Sugar

For convenience, the mongo shell (and other drivers) lets you avoid the programming overhead of dealing with the cursor, and just lets you retrieve one document via the `findOne()` function. `findOne()` takes all the same parameters of the `find()` function, but instead of returning a cursor, it will return either the first document returned from the database, or `null` if no document is found that matches the specified query.

As an example, lets retrieve the one document with `name=='mongo'`. There are many ways to do it, including just calling `next()` on the cursor (after checking for `null`, of course), or treating the cursor as an array and accessing the 0th element.

However, the `findOne()` method is both convenient and efficient:

```
> printjson(db.things.findOne({name:"mongo"}));
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c2209f9f3924d31102bd84a"), "name" : "mongo" }
```

This is more efficient because the client requests a single object from the database, so less work is done by the database and the network. This is the equivalent of `find({name:"mongo"}).limit(1)`.

Another example of finding a single document by _id:

```
> var doc = db.things.findOne({_id:ObjectId("4c2209f9f3924d31102bd84a")});
> doc
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c2209f9f3924d31102bd84a"), "name" : "mongo" }
```

### Limiting the Result Set via `limit()`

You may limit the size of a query's result set by specifing a maximum number of results to be returned via the `limit()` method.

This is highly recommended for performance reasons, as it limits the work the database does, and limits the amount of data returned over the network. For example:

```
> db.things.find().limit(3);
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c2209f9f3924d31102bd84a"), "name" : "mongo" }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c2209fef3924d31102bd84b"), "x" : 3 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd856"), "x" : 4, "j" : 1 }
```

### More Help

In addition to the general "help" command, you can call help on `db` and `db.collection` (where "`collection`" is the name of a collection) to see a summary of methods available.

If you are curious about what a function is doing, you can type it without the ()s and the shell will print the source, for example:

```
> printjson
function (x) {
    print(tojson(x));
}
```

`mongo` is a full JavaScript shell, so any JavaScript function, syntax, or class can be used in the shell. In addition, MongoDB defines some of its own classes and globals (e.g., `db`). You can see the full API at http://api.mongodb.org/js/.

### What Next

- After completing this tutorial the next step to learning MongoDB is to dive into the rest of the documentation for more details, you can see the new Manual for additional documentation.
- See also SQL to Mongo Mapping Chart
- The MongoDB Manual
- Tutorials in the MongoDB Manual

# Manual

This is the MongoDB manual. Except where otherwise noted, all examples are in JavaScript for use with the mongo shell. There is a table available giving the equivalent syntax for each of the drivers.


- Connections
- Databases
  - Commands
    - getLog Command
    - movePrimary Command
    - setParameter Command
    - cloneCollection Command
    - Compact Command
    - Copy Database Commands
    - fsync Command
    - getLastError Command
    - Index-Related Commands
    - Viewing and Terminating Current Operation
    - Validate Command
    - Windows Service
    - getLastError_old
    - List of Database Commands
  - Mongo Metadata
- Collections
  - Capped Collections
  - createCollection Command
  - renameCollection Command
  - Using a Large Number of Collections
- Documents
- Data Types and Conventions
  - Dates
  - Timestamp data type
  - Internationalized Strings
  - Object IDs
    - ObjectId
  - Database References
- GridFS
  - When to use GridFS
- Indexes
  - Building indexes with replica sets
  - Index Versions
  - Geospatial Indexing
    - Geospatial Haystack Indexing
  - Indexing as a Background Operation
  - Multikeys
    - Using Multikeys to Simulate a Large Number of Indexes
  - Indexing Advice and FAQ

- Inserting
  - Legal Key Names
  - Schema Design
    - Tweaking performance by document bundling during schema design
  - Trees in MongoDB
- Optimization
  - Explain
  - Optimizing Object IDs
  - Optimizing Storage of Small Objects
  - Query Optimizer
- Querying
  - Mongo Query Language
  - Querying and nulls
  - Retrieving a Subset of Fields
  - slaveOk
  - Advanced Queries
  - Dot Notation (Reaching into Objects)
  - Full Text Search in Mongo
  - min and max Query Specifiers
  - OR operations in query expressions
  - Queries and Cursors
    - Tailable Cursors
  - Server-side Code Execution
  - Sorting and Natural Order
  - Aggregation
    - Aggregation Framework
      - Aggregation Framework - $group
      - Aggregation Framework - $limit
      - Aggregation Framework - $match
      - Aggregation Framework - $project
      - Aggregation Framework - $skip
      - Aggregation Framework - $sort
      - Aggregation Framework - $unwind
      - Aggregation Framework - Expression Reference
      - SQL to Aggregation Framework Mapping Chart
- Removing
- Updating
  - Atomic Operations
    - Atomic operation examples
    - How to Make an Auto Incrementing Field
  - findAndModify Command
  - Padding Factor
  - two-phase commit
  - Updating Data in Mongo
- MapReduce
  - Troubleshooting MapReduce
- Data Processing Manual


## Connections

MongoDB is a database server: it runs in the foreground or background and waits for connections from the user. Thus, when you start MongoDB, you will see something like:

```
~/$ ./mongod
#
# some logging output
#
Tue Mar  9 11:15:43 waiting for connections on port 27017
Tue Mar  9 11:15:43 web admin interface listening on port 28017
```

It will stop printing output at this point but it hasn't frozen, it is merely waiting for connections on port 27017. Once you connect and start sending commands, it will continue to log what it's doing. You can use any of the MongoDB drivers or Mongo shell to connect to the database.

You *cannot* connect to MongoDB by going to http://localhost:27017 in your web browser. The database *cannot* be accessed via HTTP on port 27017.

### *Standard Connection String Format*

The uri scheme described on this page is not yet supported by all of the drivers. Refer to a specific driver's documentation to see how much (if any) of the standard connection uri is supported. All drivers support an alternative method of specifying connections if this format is not supported.

```
mongodb://[username:password@]host1[:port1][,host2[:port2],...[,hostN[:portN]]][/[database][?options]]
```

- `mongodb://` is a required prefix to identify that this is a string in the standard connection format.
- `username:password@` are optional. If given, the driver will attempt to login to a database after connecting to a database server.
- `host1` is the only required part of the URI. It identifies a server address to connect to.
- `:portX` is optional and defaults to :27017 if not provided.
- `/database` is the name of the database to login to and thus is only relevant if the `username:password@` syntax is used. If not specified the "admin" database will be used by default.
- `?options` are connection options. Note that if `database` is absent there is still a `/` required between the last host and the `?` introducing the options. Options are name=value pairs and the pairs are separated either by "&" or ";".

As many hosts as necessary may be specified (for connecting to replica pairs/sets).

The options are:

Replica set:

- `replicaSet=name`
  - The driver verifies that the name of the replica set it connects to matches this name. Implies that the hosts given are a seed list, and the driver will attempt to find all members of the set.

Single server:

- `slaveOk=true|false`

Any configuration:

- `safe=true|false`
  - `true`: the driver sends a getLastError command after every update to ensure that the update succeeded (see also `w` and `wtimeoutMS`).
  - `false`: the driver does not send a getLastError command after every update.
- `w=n`
  - The driver adds { w : n } to the getLastError command. Implies `safe=true`.
- `wtimeoutMS=ms`
  - The driver adds { wtimeout : ms } to the getlasterror command. Implies `safe=true`.
- `fsync=true|false`
  - `true`: the driver adds { fsync : true } to the getlasterror command. Implies `safe=true`.
  - `false`: the driver does not not add fsync to the getlasterror command.
- `journal=true|false`
  - `true`: Sync to journal. Implies `safe=true`.
- `connectTimeoutMS=ms`
  - How long a connection can take to be opened before timing out.
- `socketTimeoutMS=ms`
  - How long a send or receive on a socket can take before timing out.

These options are not case sensitive.

### *Examples*

Connect to a database server running locally on the default port:

```
mongodb://localhost
```

Connect and login to the admin database as user "fred" with password "foobar":

```
mongodb://fred:foobar@localhost
```

Connect and login to the "baz" database as user "fred" with password "foobar":

```
mongodb://fred:foobar@localhost/baz
```

Connect to a replica pair, with one server on example1.com and another server on example2.com:

```
mongodb://example1.com:27017,example2.com:27017
```

Connect to a replica set with three servers running on localhost (on ports 27017, 27018, and 27019):

```
mongodb://localhost,localhost:27018,localhost:27019
```

Connect to a replica set with three servers, sending all writes to the primary and distributing reads to the secondaries:

```
mongodb://host1,host2,host3/?slaveOk=true
```

Connect to localhost with safe mode on:

```
mongodb://localhost/?safe=true
```

Connect to a replica set with safe mode on, waiting for replication to succeed on at least two machines, with a two second timeout:

```
mongodb://host1,host2,host3/?safe=true;w=2;wtimeoutMS=2000
```

#### *Connection Pooling*

The server will use one thread per TCP connection, therefore it is highly recomended that your application use some sort of connection pooling. Luckily, most drivers handle this for you behind the scenes. One notable exception is setups where your app spawns a new process for each request, such as CGI and some configurations of PHP.

## Databases

Each MongoDB server can support multiple *databases*. Each database is independent, and the data for each database is stored separately, for security and ease of management.

A database consists of one or more *collections*, the *documents* (objects) in those collections, and an optional set of security credentials for controlling access.

#### *See Also*

- Mongo Metadata

## Commands

#### Introduction

The Mongo database has a concept of a *database command*. Database commands are ways to ask the database to perform special operations, or to request information about its current operational status.

- Introduction
- Privileged Commands
- Getting Help Info for a Command
- More Command Documentation

- List of Database Commands
- The MongoDB Manual has complete documentation of all MongoDB Database Commands.

A command is sent to the database as a query to a special collection namespace called `$cmd`. The database will return a single document with the command results - use `findOne()` for that if your driver has it.

The general command syntax is:

```
db.$cmd.findOne( { <commandname>: <value> [, options] } );
```

The shell provides a helper function for this:

```
db.runCommand( { <commandname>: <value> [, options] } );
```

For example, to check our database's current profile level setting, we can invoke:

```
> db.runCommand({profile:-1});
{
    "was" : 0.0 ,
    "ok" : 1.0
}
```

For many db commands, some drivers implement wrapper methods are implemented to make usage easier. For example, the mongo shell offers

```
> db.getProfilingLevel()
0.0
```

Let's look at what this method is doing:

```
> print( db.getProfilingLevel )
function () {
    var res = this._dbCommand({profile:-1});
    return res ? res.was : null;
}

> print( db._dbCommand )
function (cmdObj) {
    return this.$cmd.findOne(cmdObj);
}
```

Many commands have helper functions - see your driver's documentation for more information.

#### Privileged Commands

Certain operations are for the database administrator only. These privileged operations may only be performed on the special database named `admin`.

```
> use admin;
> db.runCommand("shutdown"); // shut down the database
```

If the db variable is not set to 'admin', you can use `adminCommand` (`_adminCommand` in versions earlier than 1.8) to switch to the right database automatically (and just for that operation):

```
> db.adminCommand("shutdown");
```

(For this particular command there is also a shell helper function, `db.shutdownServer`.)

#### Getting Help Info for a Command

Use `commandHelp` in shell to get help info for a command:

```
> db.commandHelp("datasize")
help for: datasize  example: { datasize:"blog.posts", keyPattern:{x:1}, min:{x:10}, max:{x:55} }
NOTE: This command may take awhile to run
```

(Help is not yet available for some commands.)

**More Command Documentation**

- Index-Related Commands
- removeshard command
- Viewing and Terminating Current Operation
- Replica Set Commands
- fsync Command
- flushRouterConfig command
- getLog Command
- cloneCollection Command
- List of Database Commands
- movePrimary Command
- Commands
- Moving Chunks
- getLastError Command
- Compact Command
- setParameter Command

Showing first 15 of 17 results

- Commands Quick Reference Card

## getLog Command

**Redirection Notice**
This page should redirect to http://docs.mongodb.org/manual/reference/commands/#getLog.

## movePrimary Command

***movePrimary***

This command allows changing the primary shard for sharded database. The primary will hold all unsharded collections in that database.

**mongos only**
This command is only available on a sharded system through "mongos".

**Drain Shard First**

When using this with existing data with sharded collections you must be very careful. You must drain the shard which is the primary shard before running this command because it will move all collections in the database.

This command is meant to be run on an offline system and only in the case where you need to remove a shard.

```
> db.adminCommand({movePrimary:<dbname>, to:<shard-name>})

//enable sharding on the database, and move it to the shard01
> use test1 //new database
> db.adminCommand({enablesharding : "test1"})
> db.adminCommand({movePrimary : "test1", to : "shard01" })
//This will affect new collections on the test1 db
```

### setParameter Command

**Redirection Notice**
This page should redirect to http://docs.mongodb.org/manual/reference/commands/#setParameter.

### cloneCollection Command

Copy a single collection from one server to another.

```
db.runCommand( { cloneCollection: <namespace>,
                 from: <host> [,query: <query_filter>] [,copyIndexes:<bool>] } );
```

Copies a collection from one server to another. Do not use on a single server as the destination is placed at the same `db.collection` (namespace) as the source.

The local copy of the namespace is emptied before the copying begins. Any existing data will be lost there.

### Compact Command


- Options
- Database status while the compact is in progress
- Interrupting a compaction
- Effects
  - File System
- Details
- Replica Sets
- See Also


**v2.0+**

The compact command compacts and defragments a collection. Indexes are rebuilt at the same time. It is conceptually similar to `repairDatabase`, but works on a single collection rather than an entire database.

To run (example from the mongo shell):

```
> db.runCommand( { compact : 'mycollectionname' } )
> // or
> db.mycollection.runCommand( "compact" )
```

The command will not return until compaction completes. You can view intermediate progress in either the `mongod` log file, or by running `db.currentOp()` in another shell instance.

#### *Options*

- `force:true` Because this blocks all other activity (in v2.2, only for its database), the compact command returns an error when invoked on a replica set primary. Use `force:true` to run on a replica set primary.
- `paddingFactor:<pf>` (v2.2+). Specify a padding factor for the compacted documents. By default the documents are fully compacted with no padding. If you do updates on the documents which grow them, and especially if you have several indexes for the collection, you will want some padding. Default is 1.0 (no padding), maximum 4.0.
- `paddingBytes:<bytes>` (v2.2+.) Specify padding as an absolute number of bytes. Can be useful if your documents start at small but

then grow a large amount; for example if they start 40 bytes long and then you grow then by 1KB, paddingBytes:1024 might be reasonable whereas paddingFactor:4.0 would only add 40*(4.0-1)=120 bytes of padding.

```
// example. always add at least 100 bytes of padding, and at least 10% of the doc size too
> db.runCommand( { compact : 'mycollectionname', paddingBytes:100, paddingFactor:1.1 } )
```

***Database status while the compact is in progress***

The compact command generally uses less disk space while performing its work than repairDatabase does (though in worst case can need just as much). Additionally, compact is faster.

Although faster than `repairDatabase`, this command blocks all other operations while running, and is still slow. Run during scheduled maintenance. If you run the command on a replica set secondary, the secondary will automatically demote itself to a "recovery" state until the compaction is complete.

***Interrupting a compaction***

At the beginning of compaction, indexes are dropped for the collection. At the end, indexes are rebuilt. Thus, if you kill the compaction in the middle of its operation, either with killOp or a server failure, indexes may be missing from your collection. If you are running with `--journal`, no data should ever be lost on a crash during compaction, although on startup the indexes will not be present. (Regardless of this, always do a backup before system maintenance such as this!) When the indexes are rebuilt, they will be in the 2.0 index format.

If there's a crash while the command is running, then as long as journaling is enabled, your data will be safe.

Additionally, if a compaction operation is interrupted, much of the existing free space in a collection may become un-reusable. In this scenario, it is recommended that compaction be run again, to completion, to restore use of this free space.

***Effects***

Unless the padding options above are explicitly listed, compact fully compacts the collection resulting in no Padding Factor for existing documents. Thus, updates which grow documents will be slower after compaction as documents will move much more often on updates (at least at first). That said, the existing paddingFactor statistic is kept for the collection (unlike when a repair is done). It will be used for future inserts.

You may wish to run the `collstats` command (`db.collectionname.stats()` in the shell) before and after compaction to see how the storage space changes for the collection.

Compaction may increase the total size and number of your data files, especially when running compact for the first time on a collection. Even in this case, total collection storage space consumed will not increase.

File System

This operation will not reduce the amount of disk space used on the filesystem. Storage size is the amount of data allocated within the database files, not the size/number of the files on file system.

***Details***

- Compact may be run on replica secondaries and slaves. Compact commands do not replicate, so each host needs to be compacted separately.
- Currently, compact is a command issued to a mongod. In a sharded environment one would do each shard separately as a maintenance operation. (This is likely to change in future versions, along with other enhancements.)
- Capped collections cannot be compacted. (The documents of a capped collection are not subject to fragmentation, however.)

***Replica Sets***

- Compact each member separately.
- Ideally compaction runs on a secondary (*see comment regarding `force:true` above*).
- If `compact` is run on a secondary, the secondary will go into "recovering" state automatically (to prevent reads from being routed to it while compacting). Once the compaction is finished, it will automatically return to secondary state.
- A partial script demonstration how to automate step down and compaction can be found here.

***See Also***

- repairDatabase command

## Copy Database Commands

MongoDB includes commands for copying a database from one server to another.

These options are faster than the alternative of doing a mongodump and mongorestore since they skip the step of creating a temporary on-disk BSON representation.

***copydb Command***

Copies an entire database from one name on one server to another name on another server. Omit <from_hostname> to copy from one name to another on the same server. Command must be sent/run on the "destination" server.

```
> // shell helper syntax:
> db.copyDatabase(<from_dbname>, <to_dbname>, <from_hostname>);

> // if you must authenticate with the source database
> db.copyDatabase(<from_dbname>, <to_dbname>, <from_hostname>, <username>, <password>);

> // pure command syntax (runnable from any driver):
> db.runCommand(
... {copydb: 1, fromhost: <hostname>, fromdb: <db>,
...  todb: <db>[, slaveOk: <bool>, username: <username>,
...  nonce: <nonce>, key: <key>]}";

> // command syntax for authenticating with the source:
> n = db.runCommand( { copydbgetnonce : 1, fromhost: ... } );
db.runCommand( { copydb : 1, fromhost: ..., fromdb: ..., todb: ..., username: ..., nonce: n.nonce,
key: <hash of username, nonce, password > } );
```

***cloneDatabase***

Similar to copydb but with a simplified syntax for the case where we simply want to copy a database to this server, and leave its name as-is.

```
> db.cloneDatabase(<from_hostname>);
```

The copy database command does not work when copying to or from a sharded collection.

***Other Notes***

- copyDatabase may be run against a slave/secondary (i.e., the source server can be a slave/secondary).
- copyDatabase does not snapshot in any sense: if the source database is changing during the copy, the destination will receive documents representing different points in time in the source during the copying interval.
- The command must be run on the destination server.
- The command does not lock either the source or the destination server for the duration of the operation. Each side will yield periodically to allow other reads/writes through.

## fsync Command

**Redirection Notice**
This page should redirect to http://docs.mongodb.org/manual/reference/commands/#fsync.

## getLastError Command

MongoDB does not wait for a response by default when writing to the database. Use the getLastError command to ensure that operations have succeeded.

Many of the drivers can invoke the getLastError command automatically on a write operation. Enabling this driver option is called "safe mode" ("write concern" in some drivers). When enabled, the driver piggybacks a getLastError message with each write message. It then awaits the result of the getLastError command before returning.

A few other alternative modes of operation exist. First, an application could not call getLastError at all. This might be appropriate if, for example, one is writing data to a log, and would not report the error to the user anyway. Another option would be to only call getLastError after a series of operations.

- Running in the Shell
- When to Use
- Options
  - j
  - w
    - Tagging
    - majority
  - fsync
  - Combining
- Return Value
- Using getLastError from Drivers
- Mongo Shell REPL Behavior
- getPrevError Command
- See Also


#### Running in the Shell

The `getlasterror` command checks for an error on the last database operation for this connection. Since it's a command, there are a few ways to invoke it:

```
> db.$cmd.findOne({getlasterror:1})
```

Or in the shell:

```
> db.runCommand("getlasterror")
```

Or you can use the shell helper:

```
> db.getLastError()
```

In the mongo shell, db.getLastError() returns the last error – null if no error. Use db.getLastErrorObj() to see the full error result. db.getLastErrorObj().err should be null if there is no error condition.

For more about commands, see the command documentation.

#### When to Use

getlasterror is primarily useful for write operations (although it is set after a command or query too). Write operations by default do not have a return code: this saves the client from waiting for client/server turnarounds during write operations. One can always call getLastError if one wants a return code.

If you're writing data to MongoDB on multiple connections, then it can sometimes be important to call `getlasterror` on one connection to be certain that the data has been committed to the database. For instance, if you're writing to connection #1 and want those writes to be reflected in reads from connection #2, you can assure this by calling `getlasterror` after writing to connection #1.

For maximum speed, skip the getLastError (or "safe mode") for noncritical writes. Use it when you need to confirm to the user that the write succeeded.

#### Options

`j`

**v2.0+:** When j:true is specified, the getlasterror call awaits the journal commit before returning. If the server is running without journaling, it returns immediately, and successfully.

```
> db.runCommand({getlasterror:1,j:true})
```

`w`

A client can block until a write operation has been replicated to N servers.

`wtimeout` may be used in conjunction with `w`. The default is no timeout (wait forever).

```
> db.getLastError(2, 5000) // w=2, timeout 5000ms
```

Note the above options can be combined: waiting for journal acknowledgement *and* acknowledgement that the write has reached a majority of a replica set can make sense:

```
> db.runCommand({getlasterror:1,j:true,w:2,wtimeout:5000})
```

Tagging

v2.0+: You can specify acknowledgement rules based on tags in the configuration.

majority

You can also specify a string of "majority":

```
> db.getLastError("majority") // waits for more than 50% of the members to acknowledge the write
(until replication is applied to the point of that write).
```

Once a majority of set members have applied the write, it is truly committed across the cluster.

`fsync`

(Generally *not* recommended. Use `j` instead.)

When running mongod without journaling (--nojournal), the fsync option forces the database to fsync all files before returning.

When running with journaling, the fsync option awaits the next group commit before returning.

```
> db.runCommand({getlasterror:1,fsync:true})
{ "err" : null, "n" : 0, "fsyncFiles" : 2, "ok" : 1 }
```

**Use `j`, not `fsync`.**

Combining

A good combination for highly critical writes is `j:true` and `w:"majority"`.

```
> db.runCommand({getlasterror:1,j:true,w:'majority',wtimeout:10000})
```

#### Return Value

The return value from the command is an object with various fields. The common fields are listed below; there may also be other fields.

- ok - true indicates the getLastError command completed successfully. This does NOT indicate there wasn't a last error.
- err - if non-null, indicates an error occurred. Value is a textual description of the error.
- code - if set, indicates the error code which occurred.
- connectionId - the id of the connection
- lastOp - the op-id from the last operation

For updates:

- n - if an update was done, this is the number of documents updated.

With `w:<n>/<tag>`

- wnote - if set indicates that something unusual happened that is related to using w:
- wtimeout - if timed out, set to the value true
- waited - if timed out, how long waited in milliseconds
- wtime - the time spent waiting for the operation to complete

#### Using getLastError from Drivers

The drivers support `getLastError` in the command form and many also offer a "safe" mode for operations. For more on "safe" mode, see each driver's documentation.

* C#

- C++
- Python. If you're using Python, you automatically call getlasterror on insert as follows:

```
collection.save({"name": "MongoDB"}, safe=True)
```

If the save doesn't succeed, an exception will be raised.

- Java
  Java supports various getLastError() semantics using `WriteConcern` Objects.

#### Mongo Shell REPL Behavior

The database shell performs a `resetError()` before each read/eval/print loop command evaluation - and automatically prints the error, if one occurred, after each evaluation. Thus, after an error, at the shell prompt `db.getLastError()` will return null. However, if called before returning to the prompt, the result is as one would expect:

```
> try { db.foo.findOne() } catch(e) { print("preverr:" + tojson(db.getPrevError())); print("lasterr:"
+ tojson(db.getLastError()));}
preverr:{"err" : "unauthorized" , "nPrev" : 1 , "ok" : 1}
lasterr:"unauthorized"
```

#### getPrevError Command

When performing bulk write operations, `resetError()` and `getPrevError()` can be an efficient way to check for success of the operation. For example if we are inserting 1,000 objects in a collection, checking the return code 1,000 times over the network is slow.  Instead one might do something like this:

```
db.resetError();
for( loop 1000 times... )
    db.foo.save(something...);
if( db.getPrevError().err )
    print("didn't work!");
```

- getPrevError only holds 1 previous error, so whole batch may have to be retried in case of error.
- A better alternative is to use the "batch" insert method provided by many drivers, along with safe writes. This way "getLastError" is only called after each batch, but still writes will stop at the 1st error.
- getPrevError may be deprecated in the future.

#### See Also

- Replica Set Design Concepts
- Verifying Propagation of Writes with getLastError

### Index-Related Commands

Operations:

- Create Index
- Dropping an Index
- ReIndex
- Index Namespace

#### *Create Index*

`ensureIndex()` is the helper function for this. Its implementation creates an index by adding its info to the `system.indexes` collection.

```
> use test
> db.myCollection.ensureIndex(<keypattern>);
> // same as:
> db.system.indexes.insert({ name: "name", ns: "namespaceToIndex",
  key: <keypattern> });
```

Note: Once you've inserted the index, all subsequent document inserts for the given collection will be indexed, as will all pre-existing documents in the collection. If you have a large collection, this can take a significant amount of time and will block other operations.

**Options**

See Indexing Options.

You can query system.indexes to see all indexes for a collection *foo* in db *test*:

```
>db.system.indexes.find( { ns: "test.foo" } );
```

In some drivers, `ensureIndex()` remembers if it has recently been called, and foregoes the insert operation in that case. Even if this is not the case, `ensureIndex()` is a cheap operation, so it may be invoked often to ensure that an index exists.

#### *Dropping an Index*

From the shell:

```
db.mycollection.dropIndex(<name_or_pattern>)
db.mycollection.dropIndexes()

// example:
t.dropIndex( { name : 1 } );
```

From a driver (raw command object form; many drivers have helpers):

```
{ deleteIndexes: <collection_name>, index: <index_name> }
// "*" for <index_name> will drop all indexes except _id
```

#### *ReIndex*

The reIndex command will rebuild all indexes for a collection.

```
db.myCollection.reIndex()
// same as:
db.runCommand( { reIndex : 'myCollection' } )
```

Usually this is unnecessary. You may wish to do this if the size of your collection has changed dramatically or the disk space used by indexes seems oddly large.

Since 1.8 indexes will automatically be compacted as they are updated.

reIndex is a blocking operation (indexes are rebuilt in the foreground) and will be slow for large collections. The command will **not** propagate to secondaries in a replica set. It is only intended to effect the database on the instance on which the command is run.

The repair database command recreates all indexes in the database.

#### *Index Namespace*

Each index has a namespace of its own for the btree buckets. The namespace is:

```
<collectionnamespace>.$<indexname>
```

This is an internal namespace that cannot be queried directly.

### Viewing and Terminating Current Operation

- View Operation(s) in Progress

- Killing an In Progress Operation
- Sharded Databases
- See Also


#### View Operation(s) in Progress

```
> db.currentOp();
{ inprog: [ { "opid" : 18 , "op" : "query" , "ns" : "mydb.votes" ,
              "query" : "{ score : 1.0 }" , "inLock" : 1 }
          ]
}
>
> // to include idle connections in report:
> db.currentOp(true);
```

Fields:

- opid - an incrementing operation number.  Use with killOp().
- active - if the operation is active, false if the operation is queued
- waitingForLock - if true, lock has been requested but not yet granted
- op - the operation type (query, update, etc.)
- ns - namespace for the operation (database + collection name) (Note: if the ns begins with a question mark, the operation has yielded.)
- query - the query spec, if operation is a query
- lockType - the type of lock the operation requires, either read or write or none. See concurrency page.
- client - address of the client who requested the operation
- desc - the type of connection. `conn` indicates a normal client connections. Other values indicate internal threads in the server.
- threadId - id of the thread
- numYields - the number of the times the operation has yielded (to some other operation)

From a driver one runs currentOp by executing the equivalent of:

```
db.$cmd.sys.inprog.find()
```

#### Killing an In Progress Operation

**v1.4+**

```
> db.killOp(1234/*opid*/)
> // same as: db.$cmd.sys.killop.findOne({op:1234})
```

Be careful about terminating internal operations, for example the a replication sync thread. Typically you only kill operations from **external clients**.

#### Sharded Databases

In a sharded environment, operations named "writebacklistener" will appear. These are long-lived socket connections between mongos and mongod. These can be ignored. See Sharding FAQ.

#### See Also

- How does concurrency work

### Validate Command

**Redirection Notice**
This page should redirect to http://docs.mongodb.org/manual/reference/commands/#validate.

### Windows Service

mongod.exe has native support for installing and running as a Windows service.

⚠ 2.1.1+ This feature is available in mongos.exe as well

### *Service-related command line options*

The main command line options for working with MongoDB as a Windows service are:

| | |
|---|---|
| --install | Install as a Windows service, then exit without starting the service |
| --remove | Remove the Windows service, stopping it first if required |
| --reinstall | Remove and then reinstall the Windows service |

You may use the following options with --install, --reinstall and --remove: in the examples, {arg} is any text. Use quotes around the text if it includes spaces.

| | |
|---|---|
| --serviceName {arg} | Specify the service name (used with "net start/stop", and usually does not include spaces) |
| --serviceDisplayName {arg} | Specify the service's display name |
| --serviceDescription {arg} | Specify the service's description |
| --serviceUser {arg} | Specify login account for running the service (account must have the "Log on as a service" right) |
| --servicePassword {arg} | Specify password for login account |

More than one instance of a MongoDB program can be installed as a service by specifying unique serviceName and serviceDisplayName options for each one. The serviceDescription does not have to be unique but this may make identifying the separate instances easier. The serviceUser and servicePassword options are used with --install and --reinstall to configure the login account used by the Service Control Manager when starting the service. If no serviceUser is specified, the system account LocalService will be used.

Because the running service does not have a command window to display its log output, the --logpath option must be used when installing the service. In most cases you will also want to specify --logappend so that restarts of the service append to the existing log file.

An additional command line option is used internally by the install feature: this option is added to the command line that is used by the Windows Service Control Manager when starting the service, and is not used when installing or removing the service. Running mongod.exe from the command line with the --service option will fail, because it cannot communicate with the Service Control Manager if it was not started by the SCM.

| | |
|---|---|
| --service | Indicates that the process is running as a service: do not use on the Windows command line |

Both --remove and --reinstall will stop the service if it is currently running.

A config file may be specified using the --config or -f option and this may simplify updating parameters after the service is installed. Service-related options must not be specified in the config file; these options are only used when installing or removing the service and must be specified only on the command line.

Other options that you include on the command line with --install will be added to the command line that is used to run the service. For example, if you execute:

```
mongod --logpath d:\mongo\logs\logfilename.log --logappend --dbpath d:\mongo\data --install
```

this will cause a service to be created with service name "MongoDB" and display name "Mongo DB" that will execute the following command line:

```
mongod --logpath d:\mongo\logs\logfilename.log --logappend --dbpath d:\mongo\data --service
```

If any file specification includes spaces, put quotes around the file specification.

```
mongod --logpath "d:\my mongo\logs\my log file name.log" --logappend --dbpath "d:\my mongo\data"
--install
```

#### Installing on Windows 7

If installing on Windows 7, you need to make sure that you're running as an administrator. To do this, open the start menu, and in the search box enter "cmd.exe." When the executable appears, right-click on it and choose "Run as administrator."

At this point, you can install MongoDB as a service with the `--install` option as described above.

***Installing mongos.exe as a Windows service in versions earlier than 2.1.1***

Versions of mongos.exe earlier than 2.1.1 require an alternate method to install as a service. Using the Windows Resource Kit available here, you can configure a Windows host to start mongos at system startup. (Tested on a Windows 7 system, with MongoDB 1.8.1):

1. Assume your mongos config file is at C:\MongoDB\mongos.conf, and that you've tested that it works.
2. Start cmd.exe as an administrator.
3. Install srvany.exe as a service, like this:
   C:\Program Files\Windows Resource Kits\Tools>"C:\Program Files\Windows Resource Kits\Tools\instsrv.exe" mongos "C:\Program Files\Windows Resource Kits\Tools\srvany.exe"
   The output looks like this:

```
The service was successfuly added\!

Make sure that you go into the Control Panel and use
the Services applet to change the Account Name and
Password that this newly installed service will use
for its Security Context.
```

4. Start regedit.exe
5. Find the subkey

```
HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SYSTEM\CurrentControlSet\Services\mongos
```

6. Right click on mongos, select New > Key. Name the key Parameters.
7. Select the Parameters key.
8. Right click in the right window. Select New > String Value. Name the new value Application.
9. Modify Application's value to be the full path to mongos.exe (e.g., c:\mongodb\bin\mongos.exe)
10. Right click in the right window again. Select New > String Value. Name the new value AppParameters.
11. Modify AppParameters's value to be the arguments to mongos (e.g., --config C:\mongodb\mongos.conf)
12. To verify that the service can be started, try NET START mongos.

### getLastError_old

> **Redirection Notice**
> This page should redirect to getLastError Command in about 3 seconds.

### List of Database Commands

List of MongoDB Commands

See the Commands page for details on how to invoke a command.

Also: with v1.5+, run `mongod` with `--rest` enabled, and then go to http://localhost:28017/_commands

Commands Quick Reference Card

## Mongo Metadata

The `<dbname>.system.*` namespaces in MongoDB are special and contain database system information. System collections include:

- `<dbname>.system.namespaces` lists all namespaces.
- `<dbname>.system.indexes` lists all indexes. Additional namespace / index metadata exists in the database.ns files, and is opaque.
- `<dbname>.system.profile` stores database profiling information.
- `<dbname>.system.users` lists users who may access the database.

Additionally, in the `local` database **only** there is replication information in system collections, e.g., `local.system.replset` contains the

replica set configuration.

Information on the structure of a stored document is stored within the document itself. See BSON .

There are several restrictions on manipulation of objects in the system collections. Inserting in `system.indexes` adds an index, but otherwise that table is immutable (the special drop index command updates it for you). `system.users` is modifiable. `system.profile` is droppable.

Note: $ is a reserved character. Do not use it in namespace names or within field names. Internal collections for indexes use the $ character in their names. These collection store b-tree bucket data and are not in BSON format (thus direct querying is not possible).

## Collections

MongoDB collections are essentially named groupings of documents. You can think of them as roughly equivalent to relational database tables.

### *Overview*

A MongoDB collection is a collection of BSON documents. These documents usually have the same structure, but this is not a requirement since MongoDB is a *schema-free* (or more accurately, "dynamic schema") database. You may store a heterogeneous set of documents within a collection, as you do not need predefine the collection's "columns" or fields.

A collection is created when the first document is inserted.

Collection names should begin with letters or an underscore and may include numbers; $ is reserved. Collections can be organized in namespaces; these are named groups of collections defined using a dot notation. For example, you could define collections blog.posts and blog.authors, both reside under "blog". Note that this is simply an organizational mechanism for the user -- the collection namespace is flat from the database's perspective.

The maximum size of a collection name is 128 characters (including the name of the db and indexes). It is probably best to keep it under 80/90 chars.

### *Shell*

Programmatically, we access these collections using the dot notation. For example, using the mongo shell:

```
if( db.blog.posts.findOne() )
    print("blog.posts exists and is not empty.");
```

Alternative ways to access collections are:

```
> db["mycol"].find()
> db.getCollection("mycol").find()
```

Note that though the underscore character is allowed, it has a special function in the shell if it is the 1st character: the shell considers the property to be an actual javascript value, not a collection name. Consequently it is not accessible using the dot notation, but it works fine with getCollection().

```
> db._mycol.find() --> error
> db.getCollection("_mycol").find() --> success
```

See also:

- Capped Collections
- createCollection Command
- renameCollection Command
- Using a Large Number of Collections

## Capped Collections

- Creating
- Behavior
- Usage and Restrictions
- Applications
- Recommendations

- Options
  - size.
  - max
  - autoIndexId
- Checking if a collection is capped
- Converting a collection to capped
- See Also


Capped collections are fixed sized collections that have a very high performance auto-FIFO age-out feature (age out is based on insertion order). They are a bit like the "RRD" concept if you are familiar with that.

In addition, capped collections automatically, with high performance, maintain insertion order for the documents in the collection; this is very powerful for certain use cases such as logging.

Capped collections are not shard-able.

### *Creating*

Unlike a standard collection, you must explicitly create a capped collection, specifying a collection size in bytes. The collection's data space is then preallocated. Note that the size specified includes database headers.

```
> db.createCollection("mycoll", {capped:true, size:100000})
```

### *Behavior*

- Once the space is fully utilized, newly added documents will replace the oldest document in the collection.
- If you perform a `find()` on the collection with no ordering specified, the document will always be returned in insertion order. Reverse order is always retrievable with find().sort({$natural:-1}).

### *Usage and Restrictions*

- You may insert new documents in the capped collection.
- You may update the existing documents in the collection. However, the documents must not grow in size. If they do, the update will fail. Note if you are performing updates, you will likely want to declare an appropriate index (given there is no _id index for capped collections by default).
- The database does not allow deleting documents from a capped collection. Use the `drop()` method to remove all rows from the collection. (After the drop you must explicitly recreate the collection.)
- Capped collection are not shard-able.

**Warning**

By default, capped collections do not have a unique index on `_id`. However, replication refers to document by their _ids, so if you are lacking an index on `_id`, replication can fall behind or stall. Thus, if you are using a capped collections **and** replication, you should create a unique index on `_id`. Having duplicate _ids in your capped collection can also confuse replication, so it is important to insure uniqueness by using the default client-generated mongo _ids, or the `autoIndexId` field (see `autoIndexId` section below).

### *Applications*

- **Logging.** Capped collections provide a high-performance means for storing logging documents in the database. Inserting documents in an unindexed capped collection will be close to the speed of logging to a filesystem. Additionally, with the built-in FIFO mechanism, you are not at risk of using excessive disk space for the logging.

- **Automatic Maintaining of Insertion Order.** Capped collections keep documents in their insertion order automatically, with no index being required for this property. The logging example above is a good example of a case where keeping items in order is important.

- **Caching.** If you wish to cache a small number of documents in the database, perhaps cached computations of information, the capped tables provide a convenient mechanism for this. Note that for this application you will typically want to use an index on the capped table as there will be more reads than writes.

- **Automatic Age Out.** If you know you want data to automatically "roll out" over time as it ages, a capped collection can be an easier way to support than writing manual removal via cron scripts. Ejection from the capped collection is also inexpensive compared to explicit remove operations.

### *Recommendations*

- When appropriate, do not create indexes on a capped collection. If the collection will be written to much more than it is read from, it is

better to have no indexes. Note that you may create indexes on a capped collection; however, you are then moving from "log speed" inserts to "database speed" inserts -- that is, it will still be quite fast by database standards.
- Use natural ordering to retrieve the most recently inserted elements from the collection efficiently. This is (somewhat) analogous to tail on a log file.

### *Options*

#### *size.*

The size, in bytes, of the capped collection. This must be specified.

#### *max*

You may also optionally cap the number of documents in the collection. Once the limit is reached, items roll out on a least recently inserted basis.

**Note:** When specifying a cap on the number of documents, you must also cap on size. Be sure to leave enough room for your chosen number of documents or items will roll out faster than expected. You can use the `validate()` utility method to see how much space an existing collection uses, and from that estimate your size needs.

```
db.createCollection("mycoll", {capped:true, size:100000, max:100});
db.mycoll.validate();
```

#### *autoIndexId*

The `autoIndexId` field may be set to true or false to explicitly enable or disable automatic creation of a unique key index on the `_id` field.

An index is **not** automatically created on _id for capped collections by default.

If you will be using the `_id` field, you should create an index on `_id`.

Given these are used sometimes without an `_id` index, it can be useful to insert documents without an _id field. Most drivers and the mongo shell add an _id client-side. See each driver's documentation for how to suppress this (behavior might vary by driver). In the mongo shell one could invoke:

```
> db.mycollection._mongo.insert(db.mycollection._fullName, myDocWithoutAnId)
```

### *Checking if a collection is capped*

You can check if a collection is capped by using the isCapped() shell function. db.foo.isCapped()

Here is the definition.

```
> db.c.isCapped
function () {
    var e = this.exists();
    return e && e.options && e.options.capped ? true : false; }
```

### *Converting a collection to capped*

You can convert a (non-capped) collection to a capped collection with the `convertToCapped` command:

```
> db.runCommand({"convertToCapped": "mycoll", size: 100000});
{ "ok": 1 }
```

Note that the `size` is in bytes.

**Indexes not copied**
No indexes will be created when the new capped collection is. If you want the old indexes you will need to recreate them after it has been converted.

### *See Also*

- The Sorting and Natural Order section of this Guide
- Creating collections manually createCollection Command

## createCollection Command

Use the createCollection command to create a collection explicitly. Often this is used to declare Capped Collections.

```
> // mongo shell
> db.createCollection("mycoll", {capped:true, size:100000}) // Size is in bytes
> show collections
```

Most drivers also have a create collection helper method. You can manually issue any command also.

```
> db.runCommand( {create:"mycoll", capped:true, size:100000} )
```

## renameCollection Command

**Redirection Notice**
This page should redirect to http://docs.mongodb.org/manual/reference/commands/#renameCollection.

## Using a Large Number of Collections

A technique one can use with MongoDB in certain situations is to have several collections to store information instead of a single collection. By doing this, certain repeating data no longer needs to be stored in every object, and an index on that key may be eliminated. More importantly for performance (depending on the problem), the data is then clustered by the grouping specified.

For example, suppose we are logging objects/documents to the database, and want to have M logs: perhaps a dev log, a debug log, an ops log, etc. We could store them all in one collection 'logs' containing objects like:

```
{ log : 'dev', ts : ..., info : ...  }
```

However, if the number of logs is not too high, it might be better to have a collection per log. We could have a 'logs.dev' collection, a 'logs.debug' collection, 'logs.ops', etc.:

```
// logs.dev:
{ ts : ..., info : ... }
```

Of course, this only makes sense if we do not need to query for items from multiple logs at the same time.

Generally, having a large number of collections has no significant performance penalty, and results in very good performance.

### *Limits*

By default MongoDB has a limit of approximately 24,000 *namespaces* per database. Each namespace is 628 bytes, the `.ns` file is 16MB by default.

Each collection counts as a namespace, as does each index. Thus if every collection had one index, we can create up to 12,000 collections. The

`--nssize` parameter allows you to increase this limit (see below).

Be aware that there is a certain minimum overhead per collection -- a few KB. Further, any index will require at least 8KB of data space as the b-tree page size is 8KB. Certain operations can get slow if there are a lot of collections and the meta data gets paged out.

**`--nssize`**

If more collections are required, run mongod with the `--nssize` parameter specified. This will make the <database>.ns file larger and support more collections. Note that `--nssize` sets the size used for newly created `.ns` files -- if you have an existing database and wish to resize, after running the db with `--nssize`, run the `db.repairDatabase()` command from the shell to adjust the size.

Maximum `.ns` file size is 2GB.

# Documents

- Maximum Document Size

MongoDB can be thought of as a document-oriented database. By 'document', we mean structured documents, not freeform text documents. These documents can be thought of as objects but only the data of an object, not the code, methods or class hierarchy. Additionally, there is much less linking between documents in MongoDB data models than there is between objects in a program written in an object-oriented programming language.

In MongoDB the documents are conceptually JSON. More specifically the documents are represented in a format called BSON (standing for Binary JSON).

Documents are stored in Collections.

### *Maximum Document Size*

MongoDB limits the data size of individual BSON objects/documents. At the time of this writing the limit is 16MB.

This limit is designed as a sanity-check; it is not a technical limit on document sizes. The thinking is that if documents are larger than this size, it is likely the schema is not ideal. Further it allows drivers to make some assumptions on the max size of documents.

The concept is that the maximum document size is a limit that ensures each document does not require an excessive amount of RAM from the machine, or require too much network bandwidth to fetch. For example, fetching a full 100MB document would take over 1 second to fetch over a gigabit ethernet connection. In this situation one would be limited to 1 request per second.

Over time, as computers grow in capacity, the limit will be adjusted upward.

For cases where larger sizes are required, use GridFS.

# Data Types and Conventions

### MongoDB (BSON) Data Types

Mongo uses special data types in addition to the basic JSON types of string, integer, boolean, double, null, array, and object. These types include date, object id, binary data, regular expression, and code. Each driver implements these types in language-specific ways, see your driver's documentation for details.

See BSON for a full list of database types.

### Internationalization

- See Internationalized strings

### Database References

- See Database References and Schema Design

### Checking Types from the Shell

Floats and ints are treating as standard javascript numbers, and are thus hard to tell apart in the shell.

```
> // v1.8+ shell
> x
{
        "_id" : ObjectId("4dcd3ebc9278000000005158"),
        "d" : ISODate("2011-05-13T14:22:46.777Z"),
        "b" : BinData(0,""),
        "c" : "aa",
        "n" : 3,
        "e" : [ ],
        "n2" : NumberLong(33)
}
> x.d instanceof Date
true
> x.b instanceof BinData
true
> typeof x
object
> typeof x.b
object
> typeof x.n
number
> typeof x.n
number
> typeof x.n2
object
> x.n2 instanceof NumberLong
true
> typeof x.c
string
```

## Dates

The BSON Date/Time data type is referred to as "UTC DateTime" in the BSON spec.

Note – There is a Timestamp data type but that is a special internal type for MongoDB that typically should not be used.

A BSON Date value stores the number of milliseconds since the Unix epoch (Jan 1, 1970) as a 64-bit integer. **v2.0+** : this number is signed so dates before 1970 are stored as a negative numbers.

Before MongoDB v2.0 dates were incorrectly interpreted as an unsigned integer, adversely affected sorting, range queries, and indexes on Date fields. Indexes are not recreated when upgrading. Thus if you created on index on Date values with pre v2.0 versions, and dates before 1970 are relevant to your application, please reindex.

#### In the shell

```
> x = new Date()
ISODate("2011-10-12T14:54:02.069Z")

> x.toString()
Wed Oct 12 2011 10:54:02 GMT-0400 (Eastern Daylight Time)

> d = ISODate()                       // like Date() but behaves more intuitively when used
> d = ISODate('YYYY-MM-DD hh:mm:ss') // without an explicit "new " prefix on construction,
// which Date() would require

> d.getMonth()
9
```

#### See Also

- https://developer.mozilla.org/en/JavaScript/Reference/Global_Objects/Date

## Timestamp data type

This is not the normal Date datatype. This is a special type for internal MongoDB use.

BSON includes a timestamp data type with special semantics in MongoDB.

Timestamps are stored as 64 bit values which, on a single `mongod`, are guaranteed unique. The first 32 bits are a time_t value (seconds since the UTC epoch). The second 32 bits are an incrementing ordinal for operations within a given second.

MongoDB uses the Timestamp datatype as "OpTimes" in the replication oplog's `ts` field.

Timestamps have special semantics when null. If null, and the timestamp is one of the first two fields of the object, the timestamp will automatically be converted to a unique value. (It must be one of the first two top level fields of the document for performance reasons; the entire document is not scanned for timestamps.)

An example from the mongo shell follows (example works with shells v1.7.5 and higher).

```
> // not one of the first 2 fields
> db.foo.insert( { x : 1, y : new Timestamp() } )
> db.foo.find()
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4d1d4ce78b1a04eeb294c098"), "x" : 1, "y" : { "t" : 0, "i" : 0 } }

> // in first 2 fields, auto fill of value works
> db.foo.drop()
> db.foo.insert( { y : new Timestamp(), x : 3 } )
> // the shell displays timestamps as { t : ..., i : ... } where t is the time
> // component and i is the ordinal component
> db.foo.find()
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4d1d4cfd8b1a04eeb294c099"), "y" : { "t" : 1293765885000, "i" : 1 }, "x" : 3 }

> db.foo.drop()
> for( var i = 0; i < 10; i++ ) db.foo.insert({y:new Timestamp(), x : i})
> db.foo.find()
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4d1d4d178b1a04eeb294c09a"), "y" : { "t" : 1293765911000, "i" : 1 }, "x" : 0 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4d1d4d178b1a04eeb294c09b"), "y" : { "t" : 1293765911000, "i" : 2 }, "x" : 1 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4d1d4d178b1a04eeb294c09c"), "y" : { "t" : 1293765911000, "i" : 3 }, "x" : 2 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4d1d4d178b1a04eeb294c09d"), "y" : { "t" : 1293765911000, "i" : 4 }, "x" : 3 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4d1d4d178b1a04eeb294c09e"), "y" : { "t" : 1293765911000, "i" : 5 }, "x" : 4 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4d1d4d178b1a04eeb294c09f"), "y" : { "t" : 1293765911000, "i" : 6 }, "x" : 5 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4d1d4d178b1a04eeb294c0a0"), "y" : { "t" : 1293765911000, "i" : 7 }, "x" : 6 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4d1d4d178b1a04eeb294c0a1"), "y" : { "t" : 1293765911000, "i" : 8 }, "x" : 7 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4d1d4d178b1a04eeb294c0a2"), "y" : { "t" : 1293765911000, "i" : 9 }, "x" : 8 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4d1d4d178b1a04eeb294c0a3"), "y" : { "t" : 1293765911000, "i" : 10 }, "x" : 9 }
>
```

From MongoDB 2.1.0+, timestamps are displayed in the shell with a wrapper, as Timestamp(1293765911000, 1).

## Internationalized Strings

MongoDB supports UTF-8 for strings in stored objects and queries. (Specifically, BSON strings are UTF-8.)

Generally, drivers for each programming language convert from the language's string format of choice to UTF-8 when serializing and deserializing BSON. For example, the Java driver converts Java Unicode strings to UTF-8 on serialization.

In most cases this means you can effectively store most international characters in MongoDB strings. A few notes:

- MongoDB regex queries support UTF-8 in the regex string.
- Currently, sort() on a string uses strcmp: sort order will be reasonable but not fully international correct. Future versions of MongoDB may support full UTF-8 sort ordering.

## Object IDs

Documents in MongoDB required a key, `_id`, which uniquely identifies them.

- The _id Field
- The BSON ObjectId Datatype
- BSON ObjectID Specification
- Sequence Numbers
- UUIDs
- See Also


### The _id Field

Almost every MongoDB document has an _id field as its first attribute (there are a few exceptions for system collections and capped collections). The _id value can be of any type with type ObjectId being the most common. _id must be unique for each document in a collection. In most cases collections automatically have an _id index which includes a unique key constraint that enforces this.

If a user tries to insert a document without providing an `_id` field, the database will automatically generate an _object id_ and store it the _id field.

*The _id field is immutable.* If you try to change its value on an update you will get a "Mod on _id not allowed" error from getLastError.

The _id value may be of any type, other than arrays, so long as it is a unique. If your document has a natural primary key that is immutable we recommend you use that in _id instead of the automatically generated ids. Arrays are not allowed _ids because they are Multikeys.

### The BSON ObjectId Datatype

Although _id values can be of any type, a special BSON datatype is provided for object ids. This type is a 12-byte binary value designed to have a reasonably high probability of being unique when allocated. All of the officially-supported MongoDB drivers use this type by default for _id values. Also, the Mongo database itself uses this type when assigning _id values on inserts where no _id value is present.

In the MongoDB shell, ObjectId() may be used to create ObjectIds. `ObjectId(`*`string`*`)` creates an object ID from the specified hex string.

```
> x={ name: "joe" }
{ name : "joe" }
> db.people.save(x)
{ name : "joe" , _id : ObjectId( "47cc67093475061e3d95369d" ) }
> x
{ name : "joe" , _id : ObjectId( "47cc67093475061e3d95369d" ) }
> db.people.findOne( { _id: ObjectId( "47cc67093475061e3d95369d" ) } )
{ _id : ObjectId( "47cc67093475061e3d95369d" ) , name : "joe" }
> db.people.findOne( { _id: new ObjectId( "47cc67093475061e3d95369d" ) } )
{ _id : ObjectId( "47cc67093475061e3d95369d" ) , name : "joe" }
```

### BSON ObjectID Specification

A BSON ObjectID is a 12-byte value consisting of a 4-byte timestamp (seconds since epoch), a 3-byte machine id, a 2-byte process id, and a 3-byte counter. Note that the timestamp and counter fields must be stored big endian unlike the rest of BSON. This is because they are compared byte-by-byte and we want to ensure a mostly increasing order. The format:

| 0 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 10 | 11 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| time | | | | machine | | | pid | | inc | | |

- TimeStamp. This is a unix style timestamp. It is a signed int representing the number of seconds before or after January 1st 1970 (UTC).
- Machine. This is the first three bytes of the (md5) hash of the machine host name, or of the mac/network address, or the virtual machine id.
- Pid. This is 2 bytes of the process id (or thread id) of the process generating the ObjectId.
- Increment. This is an ever incrementing value starting with a random number.

BSON ObjectIds can be any 12 byte binary string that is unique; however, the server itself and almost all drivers use the format above.

### Sequence Numbers

Traditional databases often use increasing sequence numbers for primary keys. In MongoDB, the preferred approach is to use Object IDs instead. The concept is that in a very large cluster of machines, it is easier to create an object ID than have global, uniformly increasing sequence numbers.

However, sometimes you may want a sequence number. You can do this by creating "counter" documents and using the findAndModify Command.

```
function counter(name) {
    var ret = db.counters.findAndModify({query:{_id:name}, update:{$inc : {next:1}}, "new":true,
upsert:true});
    // ret == { "_id" : "users", "next" : 1 }
return ret.next;
}

db.users.insert({_id:counter("users"), name:"Sarah C."}) // _id : 1
db.users.insert({_id:counter("users"), name:"Bob D."}) // _id : 2
//repeat
```

See also "Insert if Not Present" section of the Atomic Operations page for another method.

#### *UUIDs*

The _id field can be of any type; however, it must be unique. Thus you can use UUIDs in the _id field instead of BSON ObjectIds (BSON ObjectIds are slightly smaller; they need not be worldwide unique, just unique for a single db cluster). When using UUIDs, your application must generate the UUID itself. Ideally the UUID is then stored in the [DOCS:BSON] type for efficiency – however you can also insert it as a hex string if you know space and speed will not be an issue for the use case.

#### *See Also*

- Optimizing Object IDs

### ObjectId

**Redirection Notice**
This page should redirect to Object IDs.

## Database References

**Redirection Notice**
This page should redirect to http://docs.mongodb.org/manual/applications/database-references/.

# GridFS

GridFS is a specification for storing large files in MongoDB. All of the mongodb.org supported drivers implement the GridFS spec.


- Rationale
- Implementation
- Language Support
- Command Line Tools
- See also


#### *Rationale*

The database supports native storage of binary data within BSON objects.  However, BSON objects in MongoDB are limited in size (4MB older versions, 16MB in v1.7/1.8, higher limits in the future). The GridFS spec provides a mechanism for transparently dividing a large file among multiple documents. This allows us to efficiently store large objects, and in the case of especially large files, such as videos, permits range operations (e.g., fetching only the first N bytes of a file).

#### *Implementation*

To facilitate this, a standard is specified for the chunking of files. Each file has a metadata object in a files collection, and one or more chunk objects in a chunks collection.  Details of how this is stored can be found in the GridFS Specification; however, you do not really need to read that, instead, just look at the GridFS API in each language's client driver or mongofiles tool.

#### *Language Support*

Most drivers include GridFS implementations; for languages not listed below, check the driver's API documentation. (If a language does not include support, see the GridFS specification -- implementing a handler is usually quite easy.)

### *Command Line Tools*

Command line tools are available to write and read GridFS files from and to the local filesystem.

### *See also*

- C++
- A PHP GridFS Blog Article
- Choosing a Shard Key contains a section describing how best to shard GridFS.

## When to use GridFS

This page is under construction

#### When to use GridFS

- Lots of files. GridFS tends to handle large numbers (many thousands) of files better than many file systems.
- User uploaded files. When users upload files you tend to have a lot of files, and want them replicated and backed up. GridFS is a perfect place to store these as then you can manage them the same way you manage your data. You can also query by user, upload date, etc... directly in the file store, without a layer of indirection
- Files that often change. If you have certain files that change a lot - it makes sense to store them in GridFS so you can modify them in one place and all clients will get the updates. Also can be better than storing in source tree so you don't have to deploy app to update files.

#### When not to use GridFS

- Few small static files. If you just have a few small files for a website (js,css,images) its probably easier just to use the file system.
- Note that if you need to update a binary object atomically, and the object is under the document size limit for your version of MongoDB (16MB for 1.8), then you might consider storing the object manually within a single document. This can be accomplished using the BSON bindata type. Check your driver's docs for details on using this type.

# Indexes

Indexes enhance query performance, often dramatically. It's important to think about the kinds of queries your application will need so that you can define relevant indexes. Once that's done, actually creating the indexes in MongoDB is relatively easy.

Indexes in MongoDB are conceptually similar to those in RDBMSes like MySQL. You will want an index in MongoDB in the same sort of situations where you would have wanted an index in MySQL.

- Basics
- The _id Index
- Indexing on Embedded Fields("Dot Notation")
- Compound Keys
- Indexing Array Elements
- Creation Options
  - sparse:true
  - unique:true
  - dropDups:true
  - background:true
- Dropping Indexes
- ReIndex
- Performance Notes
  - Updates
  - How many indexes?
  - Using `sort()` without an Index
- Additional Notes
  - Behaviors
  - Using Documents as Keys
  - Keys Too Large To Index
- Presentations

- Building indexes with replica sets
- Index Versions
- Geospatial Indexing
- Indexing as a Background Operation
- Multikeys

- Indexing Advice and FAQ

### *Basics*

An index is a data structure that collects information about the values of the specified fields in the documents of a collection. This data structure is used by Mongo's query optimizer to quickly sort through and order the documents in a collection. Formally speaking, these indexes are implemented as "B-Tree" indexes.

In the shell, you can create an index by calling the `ensureIndex()` function, and providing a document that specifies one or more keys to index. Referring back to our *examples* database from Mongo Usage Basics, we can index on the 'j' field as follows:

```
db.things.ensureIndex({j:1});
```

The `ensureIndex()` function only creates the index if it does not exist.

Once a collection is indexed on a key, random access on query expressions which match the specified key are fast. Without the index, MongoDB has to go through each document checking the value of specified key in the query:

```
db.things.find({j:2});  // fast - uses index
db.things.find({x:3});  // slow - has to check all because 'x' isn't indexed
```

You can run

```
db.things.getIndexes()
```

in the shell to see the existing indexes on the collection. Run

```
db.system.indexes.find()
```

to see all indexes for the database.

`ensureIndex` creates the index if it does not exist. A standard index build will block all other database operations. If your collection is large, the build may take many minutes or hours to complete - if you must build an index on a live MongoDB instance, we suggest that you build it in the background using the `background : true` option. This will ensure that your database remains responsive even while the index is being built. Note, however, that background indexing may still affect performance, particularly if your collection is large.



If you use replication, background index builds will block operations on the secondaries. To build new indices on a live replica set, it is recommended you follow the steps described here.

In many cases, not having an index at all can impact performance almost as much as the index build itself. If this is the case, we recommend the application code check for the index at startup using the chosen mongodb driver's `getIndexes()` function and terminate if the index cannot be found. A separate indexing script can then be explicitly invoked when safe to do so.

### *The _id Index*

For all collections except capped collections, an index is automatically created for the `_id` field. This index is special and cannot be deleted. The _id index enforces uniqueness for its keys (except for some situations with sharding).

_id values are invariant.

### *Indexing on Embedded Fields("Dot Notation")*

With MongoDB you can even index on a key inside of an embedded document. Reaching into sub-documents is referred to as Dot Notation. For example:

```
db.things.ensureIndex({"address.city": 1})
```

### *Compound Keys*

In addition to single-key basic indexes, MongoDB also supports multi-key "compound" indexes. Just like basic indexes, you use the

`ensureIndex()` function in the shell to create the index, but instead of specifying only a single key, you can specify several :

```
db.things.ensureIndex({j:1, name:-1});
```

When creating an index, the number associated with a key specifies the direction of the index, so it should always be 1 (ascending) or -1 (descending). Direction doesn't matter for single key indexes or for random access retrieval but is important if you are doing sorts or range queries on compound indexes.

If you have a compound index on multiple fields, you can use it to query on the beginning subset of fields. So if you have an index on

```
a,b,c
```

you can use it query on

```
a
```

```
a,b
```

```
a,b,c
```

**v1.6+**
Now you can also use the compound index to service any combination of equality and range queries from the constitute fields. If the first key of the index is present in the query, that index may be selected by the query optimizer. If the first key is not present in the query, the index will only be used if hinted explicitly. While indexes can be used in many cases where an arbitrary subset of indexed fields are present in the query, as a general rule the optimal indexes for a given query are those in which queried fields precede any non queried fields.

### *Indexing Array Elements*

When a document's stored value for a index key field is an array, MongoDB indexes each element of the array. See the Multikeys page for more information.

### *Creation Options*

The second argument for `ensureIndex` is a document/object representing the options. These options are explained below.

| option | values | default |
|---|---|---|
| background | true/false | false. see doc page for caveats |
| dropDups | true/false | false |
| sparse | true/false | false |
| unique | true/false | false |
| v | index version. 0 = pre-v2.0, 1 = smaller/faster (current) | 1 in v2.0. Default is used except in unusual situations. |

`name` is also an option but need not be specified and will be deprecated in the future. The name of an index is generated by concatenating the names of the indexed fields and their direction (i.e., 1 or -1 for ascending or descending). Index names (including their namespace/database), are limited to 128 characters.

***sparse:true***

**v1.8+**

A sparse index can only have one field. SERVER-2193

A "sparse index" is an index that only includes documents with the indexed field.

Any document that is missing the sparsely indexed field will not be stored in the index; the index will therefor be *sparse* because of the missing documents when values are missing.

Sparse indexes, by definition, are not complete (for the collection) and behave differently than complete indexes. When using a "sparse index" for sorting (or in some cases just filtering) some documents in the collection may not be returned. This is because only documents in the index will be returned.

```
> db.people.ensureIndex({title : 1}, {sparse : true})
> db.people.save({name:"Jim"})
> db.people.save({name:"Sarah", title:"Princess"})
> db.people.find()
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4de6abd5da558a49fc5eef29"), "name" : "Jim" }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4de6abdbda558a49fc5eef2a"), "name" : "Sarah", "title" : "Princess" }
> db.people.find().sort({title:1}) // only 1 doc returned because sparse
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4de6abdbda558a49fc5eef2a"), "name" : "Sarah", "title" : "Princess" }
> db.people.dropIndex({title : 1})
{ "nIndexesWas" : 2, "ok" : 1 }
> db.people.find().sort({title:1}) // no more index, returns all documents
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4de6abd5da558a49fc5eef29"), "name" : "Jim" }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4de6abdbda558a49fc5eef2a"), "name" : "Sarah", "title" : "Princess" }
```

You can combine sparse with unique to produce a unique constraint that ignores documents with missing fields.

Note that MongoDB's sparse indexes are not block-level indexes. MongoDB sparse indexes can be thought of as dense indexes with a specific filter.

***unique:true***

MongoDB indexes may optionally impose a unique key constraint, which guarantees that no documents are inserted whose values for the indexed keys match those of an existing document.



Note that if a document is missing the indexed field, the value is treated as null for that document. If the index is unique, two documents cannot both have the null value. If you want to allow missing fields or nulls for your unique indexed field, be sure to also use the sparse option.

Here are some examples using unique index constraints:

```
// everyone's username must be unique:
db.things.ensureIndex({email:1},{unique:true});

// in this variation, it's ok to not have an email address,
// but if you have one, it must be unique:
db.things.ensureIndex({email:1},{unique:true,sparse:true});

// a compound index example. firstname+lastname combination must be unique:
db.things.ensureIndex({firstname: 1, lastname: 1}, {unique: true});
```

For non-sparse indexes (see the sparse option documentation), if a field is not present its value is treated as null for purposes of indexing. This is important to keep in mind when writing an application. For example:

```
db.customers.ensureIndex({firstname:1,lastname:1},{unique:true});
assert( db.customers.count() == 0 );
db.customers.insert({firstname:'jane',lastname:'doe'});   // ok
db.customers.insert({firstname:'jane',lastname:'doe'});   // dup key error
db.customers.insert({firstname:'jane',lastname:'smith'}); // ok
db.customers.insert({firstname:'jane'});                  // ok, treated as
{firstname:'jane',lastname:null}
db.customers.insert({lastname:'smith'});                  // ok
db.customers.insert({firstname:'john',lastname:'smith'}); // ok
db.customers.insert({firstname:'jane'});                  // dup key error
db.customers.insert({email:'sally@abc.com',age:33});      // ok, treated as {firstname:null,lastname:
null}
db.customers.insert({email:'pete@abc.com',age:39});       // dup key error
```

#### *dropDups:true*

A unique index cannot be created on a key that has pre-existing duplicate values. If you would like to create the index anyway, keeping the first document the database indexes and deleting all subsequent documents that have duplicate values, add the `dropDups` option.

```
db.things.ensureIndex({firstname : 1}, {unique : true, dropDups : true})
```

dropDups deletes data. A "fat finger" with drop dups could delete almost all data from a collection. Backup before using. Note also that if the field is missing in multiple records, that evaluates to null, and those would then be consider duplicates – in that case using sparse, or not using dropDups, would be very important.

#### *background:true*

By default, building an index blocks other database operations. v1.4+ has a background index build option – however this option has significant limitations in a replicated cluster (see doc page).

### *Dropping Indexes*

To delete all indexes on the specified collection:

```
db.collection.dropIndexes();
```

To delete a single index:

```
db.collection.dropIndex({x: 1, y: -1})
```

Running directly as a command without helper:

```
// note: command was "deleteIndexes", not "dropIndexes", before MongoDB v1.3.2
// remove index with key pattern {y:1} from collection foo
db.runCommand({dropIndexes:'foo', index : {y:1}})
// remove all indexes:
db.runCommand({dropIndexes:'foo', index : '*'})
```

### *ReIndex*

The reIndex command will rebuild all indexes for a collection.

```
db.myCollection.reIndex()
```

See here for more documentation: reIndex Command

### *Performance Notes*

#### *Updates*

When you update an object, if the object fits in its previous allocation area, only those indexes whose keys have changed are updated. This improves performance. Note that if the object has grown and must move, all index keys must then update, which is slower.

#### *How many indexes?*

Indexes make retrieval by a key, including ordered sequential retrieval, very fast. Updates by key are faster too as MongoDB can find the document to update very quickly.

However, keep in mind that each index created adds a certain amount of overhead for inserts and deletes. In addition to writing data to the base collection, keys must then be added to the B-Tree indexes. Thus, indexes are best for collections where the number of reads is much greater than the number of writes. For collections which are write-intensive, indexes, in some cases, may be counterproductive. Most collections are read-intensive, so indexes are a good thing in most situations.

#### *Using `sort()` without an Index*

You may use `sort()` to return data in order without an index if the data set to be returned is small (less than 32 megabytes in version 2.0, or less than four megabytes in version 1.8 and earlier). For these cases it is best to use `limit()` and `sort()` together.

## *Additional Notes*

### *Behaviors*

- MongoDB indexes (and string equality tests in general) are case sensitive.
- Index information is kept in the system.indexes collection, run db.system.indexes.find() to see example data.

### *Using Documents as Keys*

Indexed fields may be of any type, including (embedded) documents:

```
db.factories.insert( { name: "xyz", metro: { city: "New York", state: "NY" } } );
db.factories.ensureIndex( { metro : 1 } );
// this query can use the above index:
db.factories.find( { metro: { city: "New York", state: "NY" } } );
// this one too, as {city:"New York"} < {city:"New York",state:"NY"}
db.factories.find( { metro: { $gte : { city: "New York" } } } );

// this query does not match the document because the order of fields is significant
db.factories.find( { metro: { state: "NY" , city: "New York" } } );
```

An alternative to documents as keys is to create a compound index:

Document indexes like these cannot be used to search for queries using their (embedded) parts, like "state" in this example. When you search you must use a prefix, or the whole document, of the embedded document as if they were stored as opaque blobs; that is essentially how they are stored in the index entry. This is even more understandable when you think about how each embedded document could include any number of fields and/or types of data.

```
db.factories.ensureIndex( { "metro.city" : 1, "metro.state" : 1 } );
// these queries can use the above index:
db.factories.find( { "metro.city" : "New York", "metro.state" : "NY" } );
db.factories.find( { "metro.city" : "New York" } );
db.factories.find().sort( { "metro.city" : 1, "metro.state" : 1 } );
db.factories.find().sort( { "metro.city" : 1 } )
```

There are pros and cons to the two approaches. When using the entire (sub-)document as a key, compare order is predefined and is ascending key order in the order the keys occur in the BSON document. With compound indexes reaching in, you can mix ascending and descending keys, and the query optimizer will then be able to use the index for queries on solely the first key(s) in the index too.

### *Keys Too Large To Index*

Index entries have a limitation on their maximum size (the sum of the values), currently 1024 bytes (prior to v2.0 the maximum size was 819 bytes). Documents whose fields have values (key size in index terminology) greater than this size cannot be indexed. You will see log messages similar to:

```
...Btree::insert: key too large to index, skipping...
```

Queries against this index will not return the unindexed documents. You can force a query to use another index, or really no index, using this special index hint:

```
db.myCollection.find({<key>: <value too large to index>}).hint({$natural: 1})
```

This will cause the document to be used for comparison of that field (or fields), rather than the index.

This limitation will eventually be removed (see SERVER-3372 ).

## *Presentations*

Indexing and Query Optimization - Presentation from MongoSV (December 2011)

#### More Presentations

- Video introduction to indexing and the query optimizer
- More advanced video and accompanying slides, with many examples and diagrams
- Intermediate level webinar and accompanying slides
- Another set of intermediate level slides

## Building indexes with replica sets


- Version 2.1.0 and later
- Version 2.0.x and earlier
    - Building an index one replica set member at a time


### *Version 2.1.0 and later*

Indexes can be built in the foreground or background. Background indexes builds on the primary will result in background index builds on the secondaries. Replication will halt on the secondaries while they are building indexes.

| Index built on primary | Index built on secondary | Index built on recovering member |
|---|---|---|
| Foreground | Foreground | Foreground |
| Background | Background | Foreground |

Recovering members (for example, new members who are initial syncing or members in maintenance mode) will always build indexes in the foreground because they cannot handle reads anyway. Generally you want recovering members to catch up as quickly as possible.

### *Version 2.0.x and earlier*

Building an index with a replica set would be straightforward except that index build operations are blocking. The build index operation replicates from primaries to secondaries. This section discusses how to build an index on a live system.

If the collection to index is tiny, simply index it – the time to index would be short enough that the obstruction is not significant. (Be sure to verify the collection is small.)

Note that the background indexing option has a significant limitation and runs in background mode only on the primary. Thus, for now, the following procedure is recommended instead.

#### Building an index one replica set member at a time

This is a manual process where we take the members of a replica set offline one at a time to build the index. Suppose we wish to create an index on the `name` field in our `logins` collection.

- First check the entire replica set is healthy by running `rs.status()` in the mongo shell.
- Next, build the necessary index on one secondary at a time.

- For each secondary:
    - Shutdown the `mongod` process on that member.
    - Verify the rest of the set is still healthy by running `rs.status()` while connected to one of the other members. Also, before continuing, verify the members have sufficient capacity while this member is down.
    - Restart the local `mongod` in "maintenance mode" by starting it without ~~`--replSet`~~ and on a different port number (`--port` so that clients do not try to connect to it).
    - Connect from the shell to the `mongod` mentioned above.
    - Build the index:

```
db.logins.ensureIndex({name: 1})
```

    - After completion, shut down the `mongod` process.
    - Restart the `mongod` with its normal parameters which include the `--replSet` parameter.
    - Use `rs.status()` to check that the cluster is healthy all around.
    - Repeat for the next secondary.

Now that all the secondaries have the index you can choose to either build the index on the primary in background mode, which will take longer and put more load on primary, or follow the steps below to demote the primary so you can build in the foreground (the default option) more quickly and without affecting the primary.

Once you've built the index on each secondary, you'll have to step down the primary node and do the same. Connect to the primary and then run `rs.stepDown()`. Once the primary has safely stepped down, check to see that a new secondary has been elected primary.

Note that when a member that was primary goes offline on its shutdown above, there will be a short window, until another member takes over,

where there is no primary for the entire cluster. Therefore, you may have to momentarily put your application into a maintenance mode before you step down the primary so that the stepping down does not result in application exceptions, poor user experience, etc.

With the primary in secondary mode, you can now follow the steps above to create the necessary index.

## Index Versions


- Converting an Existing Index to { v : 1} format
- Rolling Back to MongoDB < v2.0
- Building a { v : 0} Index


MongoDB v2.0 uses a new data structure for its indexes. The new {v:1} indexes are, on average, 25% smaller than the old {v:0} indexes. This usually results in significantly increased performance. In addition, signed (pre 1970) dates are supported in {v:1} indexes.

Backward-compatibility with {v:0} indexes is maintained. Thus, you can upgrade to MongoDB v2.0 seamlessly. However, to get the benefits of the new index format, you'll need to reindex.

#### Converting an Existing Index to {v:1} format

All operations that create a new index will result in a {v:1} index by default.

- Reindexing will result in a replacement of any {v:0} index of with a {v:1} type.
  - Due to SERVER-3866, reindexing on a secondary does not work in <=v2.0.0. **Do not reindex on a secondary as the drop phase of reindex is done and then the rest of the work aborts**. See jira for workaround.
- A compact command invocation will convert all indexes for the given collection to {v:1} type.

In v2.0.1, the following operations will convert {v:0} indexes to {v:1} type:

- The repair database command.
- Creation of a new replica set secondary from scratch (initial sync).

#### Rolling Back to MongoDB < v2.0

While MongoDB v2.0 supports the old index format, **old versions will not support the new format**. If you need to roll back to an old version, the server will run, but queries and other operations involving the newer indexes will log and return an error. Thus, you'll need to recreate any new index you'd like to use on an old server.

Versions >= 1.8.3 are aware of the index version field, but version <= 1.8.2 are not. So if you rollback a [v:1} index to 1.8.2 and re-index it its version will still be marked {v: 1} although it actual version is {v: 0}. Then if you upgrade again to 2.0 this index won't work even though they are marked as {v: 1} in db.system.indexes. So if you have to rollback to a version <= 1.8.2, you must delete the index then create it again (instead of simply re-indexing).

#### Building a {v:0} Index

You can still create a {v:0} index with MongoDB v2.0. To do so, add the option {v:0} in the index creation command. For example in the mongo shell:

```
> // defaults to a v:1 index
> db.foo.ensureIndex({name:1})
> db.system.indexes.find()
{ "v" : 1, "key" : { "_id" : 1 }, "ns" : "mydb.foo", "name" : "_id_" }
{ "v" : 1, "key" : { "name" : 1 }, "ns" : "mydb.foo", "name" : "name_1" }
> db.foo.dropIndex({name:1})
{ "nIndexesWas" : 2, "ok" : 1 }

> // create a v:0 index
> db.foo.ensureIndex({name:1},{v:0})
> db.system.indexes.find()
{ "v" : 1, "key" : { "_id" : 1 }, "ns" : "mydb.foo", "name" : "_id_" }
{ "v" : 0, "key" : { "name" : 1 }, "ns" : "mydb.foo", "name" : "name_1" }
```

## Geospatial Indexing


- Creating the Index
- Querying
- Compound Indexes
- geoNear Command
- Bounds Queries

- The Earth is Round but Maps are Flat
  - New Spherical Model
  - Spherical Example
- Multi-location Documents
- Sharded Collections
- Implementation
- Presentations


**v1.4+**

MongoDB supports two-dimensional geospatial indexes. It is designed with location-based queries in mind, such as "find me the closest N items to my location." It can also efficiently filter on additional criteria, such as "find me the closest N museums to my location."

In order to use the index, you need to have a field in your object that an array where the first 2 elements are x,y coordinates (or y,x - just be consistent; it might be advisable to use order-preserving dictionaries/hashes in your client code, to ensure consistency).

To make sure ordering is preserved from all languages use a 2 element array

```
[ x, y ]
```

Some examples:

```
{ loc : [ 50 , 30 ] } //SUGGESTED OPTION
{ loc : { x : 50 , y : 30 } }
{ loc : { foo : 50 , y : 30 } }
{ loc : { lon : 40.739037, lat: 73.992964 } }
```

**Creating the Index**

```
db.places.ensureIndex( { loc : "2d" } )
```

By default, the index assumes you are indexing longitude/latitude and is thus configured for a [-180..180) value range.

The index space bounds are inclusive of the lower bound and exclusive of the upper bound.

If you are indexing something else, you can specify some options:

```
db.places.ensureIndex( { loc : "2d" } , { min : -500 , max : 500 } )
```

that will scale the index to store values between -500 and 500. Bounded geospatial searches are currently limited to rectangular and circular areas with no "wrapping" at the outer boundaries. You cannot insert values outside the boundary interval `[min, max)`. For example, using the code above, the point `(-500, 500)` could not be inserted and would raise an error (the point `(-500, 499)`, however, would be fine).

Pre-1.9 releases of mongo do not allow the insertion of points exactly at the boundaries.

```
db.places.ensureIndex( { loc : "2d" } , { bits : 26 } )
```

The bits parameter sets the precision of the 2D geo-hash values, the smallest "buckets" in which locations are stored. By default, precision is set to 26 bits which is equivalent to approximately 2 feet given `(longitude, latitude)` location values and default `(-180, 180)` bounds. To index other spaces which may have very large bounds, it may be useful to increase the number of bits up to the maximum of 32.

You may only have 1 geospatial index per collection, for now. While MongoDB may allow to create multiple indexes, this behavior is unsupported. Because MongoDB can only use one index to support a single query, in most cases, having multiple geo indexes will produce undesirable behavior.

Implicit array expansion syntax is only supported in v1.9+, where `"foo.bar" : "2d"` may reference a nested field like so:

```
{ foo : [ { bar : [ ... ] } ] }
```

This restriction holds even if there are not multiple locations per document and the array size is 1. In older versions you will need to embed the nested location without a parent array :

```
{ foo : { bar : [ ... ] } }
```

#### Querying

The index can be used for exact matches:

```
db.places.find( { loc : [50,50] } )
```

Of course, that is not very interesting. More important is a query to find points near another point, but not necessarily matching exactly:

```
db.places.find( { loc : { $near : [50,50] } } )
```

The above query finds the closest points to (50,50) and returns them sorted by distance (there is no need for an additional sort parameter). Use limit() to specify a maximum number of points to return (a default limit of 100 applies if unspecified):

```
db.places.find( { loc : { $near : [50,50] } } ).limit(20)
```

You can also use $near with a maximum distance

```
db.places.find( { loc : { $near : [50,50] , $maxDistance : 5 } } ).limit(20)
```

Prior to v1.9.1, geospatial indexes can be used for **exact** lookups only when there is no other criteria specified in the query and locations are specified in arrays. For any type of `$near`, `$within`, or `geoNear` query, this restriction does not apply and any additional search criteria can be used.

All distances in geospatial queries are specified in the same units as the document coordinate system (aside from spherical queries, discussed below ). For example, if your indexed region is of size `[300, 300)`, representing a 300 x 300 meter field, and you have documents at locations `(10, 20)` and `(10, 30)`, representing objects at points in meters (x, y), you could query for points `$near : [10, 20], $maxDistance : 10`. The distance unit is the same as in your coordinate system, and so this query looks for points up to 10 meters away.

When using longitude and latitude, which are **angular** measures, distance is effectively specified in approximate units of "degrees," which vary by position on the globe but can very roughly be converted to distance using 69 miles per degree latitude or longitude. The maximum error in northern or southernmost populated regions is ~2x longitudinally - for many purposes this is acceptable. Spherical queries (below ) take the curvature of the earth into account.

#### Compound Indexes

MongoDB geospatial indexes optionally support specification of secondary key values. If you are commonly going to be querying on both a location and other attributes at the same time, add the other attributes to the index. The other attributes are annotated within the index to make filtering faster. For example:

```
db.places.ensureIndex( { location : "2d" , category : 1 } );
db.places.find( { location : { $near : [50,50] }, category : 'coffee' } );
```

Limits in geospatial queries are always applied to the geospatial component first - this can cause unexpected results when also re-sorting results by additional criteria, pending resolution of SERVER-4247.

#### geoNear Command

While the find() syntax above is typically preferred, MongoDB also has a geoNear command which performs a similar function. The geoNear command has the added benefit of returning the distance of each item from the specified point in the results, as well as some diagnostics for troubleshooting.

Valid options are: "near", "num", "maxDistance", "distanceMultiplier" and "query".

```
> db.runCommand( { geoNear : "places" , near : [50,50], num : 10 } );
> db.runCommand({geoNear:"asdf", near:[50,50]})
{
        "ns" : "test.places",
        "near" : "1100110000001111110000001111110000001111110000001111",
        "results" : [
                {
                        "dis" : 69.29646421910687,
                        "obj" : {
                                "_id" : ObjectId("4b8bd6b93b83c574d8760280"),
                                "y" : [
                                        1,
                                        1
                                ],
                                "category" : "Coffee"
                        }
                },
                {
                        "dis" : 69.29646421910687,
                        "obj" : {
                                "_id" : ObjectId("4b8bd6b03b83c574d876027f"),
                                "y" : [
                                        1,
                                        1
                                ]
                        }
                }
        ],
        "stats" : {
                "time" : 0,
                "btreelocs" : 1,
                "btreelocs" : 1,
                "nscanned" : 2,
                "nscanned" : 2,
                "objectsLoaded" : 2,
                "objectsLoaded" : 2,
                "avgDistance" : 69.29646421910687
        },
        "ok" : 1
}
```

The above command will return the 10 closest items to (50,50). (The `loc` field is automatically determined by checking for a 2d index on the collection.)

If you want to add an additional filter, you can do so:

```
> db.runCommand( { geoNear : "places" , near : [ 50 , 50 ], num : 10,
... query : { type : "museum" } } );
```

`query` can be any regular mongo query.

#### Bounds Queries

`$within` can be used instead of `$near` to find items within a shape. Results are **not** sorted by distance, which may result in faster queries when this sorting is not required. Shapes of type `$box` (rectangles), `$center` (circles), and `$polygon` (concave and convex polygons) are supported. All bounds queries implicitly include the border of the shape as part of the boundary, though due to floating-point inaccuracy this can't strictly be relied upon.

To query for all points within a rectangle, you must specify the lower-left and upper-right corners:

```
> box = [[40.73083, -73.99756], [40.741404,  -73.988135]]
> db.places.find({"loc" : {"$within" : {"$box" : box}}})
```

A circle is specified by a center point and radius:

```
> center = [50, 50]
> radius = 10
> db.places.find({"loc" : {"$within" : {"$center" : [center, radius]}}})
```

A polygon is specified by an array or object of points, where each point may be specified by either an array or an object. The last point in the polygon is implicitly connected to the first point in the polygon.

```
> polygonA = [ [ 10, 20 ], [ 10, 40 ], [ 30, 40 ], [ 30, 20 ] ]
> polygonB = { a : { x : 10, y : 20 }, b : { x : 15, y : 25 }, c : { x : 20, y : 20 } }
> db.places.find({ "loc" : { "$within" : { "$polygon" : polygonA } } })
> db.places.find({ "loc" : { "$within" : { "$polygon" : polygonB } } })
```

Polygon searches are strictly limited to looking for **points** inside polygons, polygon shapes in documents can't currently be indexed in MongoDB.

Polygon searches are supported in versions >= 1.9

#### The Earth is Round but Maps are Flat

The current implementation assumes an idealized model of a flat earth, meaning that an arcdegree of latitude (y) and longitude (x) represent the same distance everywhere. This is only true at the equator where they are both about equal to 69 miles or 111km. However, at the 10gen offices at { x : -74 , y : 40.74 } one arcdegree of longitude is about 52 miles or 83 km (latitude is unchanged). This means that something 1 mile to the north would seem closer than something 1 mile to the east.

#### *New Spherical Model*

**v1.8+**.

Spherical distances can be used by adding "Sphere" to the name of the query. For example, use `$nearSphere` or `$centerSphere` ( `$boxSphere` and `$polygonSphere` don't make as much sense and so aren't supported). If you use the geoNear command to get distance along with the results, you just need to add `spherical:true` to the list of options.

There are a few caveats that you must be aware of when using spherical distances. The biggest is:

1. The code assumes that you are using decimal degrees in **(longitude, latitude)** order. This is the same order used for the GeoJSON spec . Using (latitude, longitude) will result in very incorrect results, but is often the ordering used elsewhere, so it is good to double-check. The names you assign to a location object (if using an object and not an array) are **completely ignored**, only the ordering is detected. A few examples:

   ```
   /* assuming longitude is 13, latitude is -50 */
   [13, -50] // ok
   { x : 13, y : -50 } // ok
   { lon : 13, lat : -50 } // ok

   /* wrong, will make lat = longitude and lon = latitude */
   { lat : -50, lon : 13 }
   ```

   As above, the use of order-preserving dictionaries is required for consistent results.

Also:

1. All distances use radians. This allows you to easily multiply by the radius of the earth (about 6371 km or 3959 miles) to get the distance in your choice of units. Conversely, divide by the radius of the earth when doing queries.
2. We don't currently handle wrapping at the poles or at the transition from -180° to +180° longitude, however we detect when a search would wrap and raise an error.
3. While the default Earth-like bounds are `[-180, 180)`, valid values for latitude are between -90° and 90°.

#### *Spherical Example*

Below is a simple example of a spherical distance query, demonstrating how to convert a specified range in kilometers to a maxDistance in radians as well as converting the returned distance results from radians back to kilometers. The same conversion of kilometer to radian distance bounds is required when performing bounded $nearSphere and $centerSphere queries.

```
> db.points.insert({ pos : { lon : 30, lat : 30 } })
> db.points.insert({ pos : { lon : -10, lat : -20 } })
> db.points.ensureIndex({ pos : "2d" })
>
> var earthRadius = 6378 // km
> var range = 3000 // km
>
> distances = db.runCommand({ geoNear : "points", near : [0, 0], spherical : true, maxDistance : range
/ earthRadius /* to radians */ }).results
[
 {
  "dis" : 0.3886630122897946,
  "obj" : {
   "_id" : ObjectId("4d9123026ccc7e2cf22925c4"),
   "pos" : {
    "lon" : -10,
    "lat" : -20
   }
  }
 }
]
> pointDistance = distances[0].dis * earthRadius // back to km
2478.89269238431
```

#### Multi-location Documents

> ⚠ v.1.9+

MongoDB now also supports indexing documents by multiple locations. These locations can be specified in arrays of sub-objects, for example:

```
> db.places.insert({ addresses : [ { name : "Home", loc : [55.5, 42.3] }, { name : "Work", loc :
[32.3, 44.2] } ] })
> db.places.ensureIndex({ "addresses.loc" : "2d" })
```

Multiple locations may also be specified in a single field:

```
> db.places.insert({ lastSeenAt : [ { x : 45.3, y : 32.2 }, [54.2, 32.3], { lon : 44.2, lat : 38.2 } ]
})
> db.places.ensureIndex({ "lastSeenAt" : "2d" })
```

By default, when performing `geoNear` or `$near`-type queries on collections containing multi-location documents, the same document may be returned multiple times, since `$near` queries return ordered results by distance. Queries using the `$within` operator by default do not return duplicate documents.

> ⚠ v2.0

In v2.0, this default can be overridden by the use of a `$uniqueDocs` parameter for `geoNear` and `$within` queries, like so:

```
> db.runCommand( { geoNear : "places" , near : [50,50], num : 10, uniqueDocs : false } )
```

```
> db.places.find( { loc : { $within : { $center : [[0.5, 0.5], 20], $uniqueDocs : true } } } )
```

Currently it is not possible to specify $uniqueDocs for $near queries

Whether or not uniqueDocs is true, when using a limit the limit is applied (as is normally the case) to the number of results returned (and not to the docs or locations). If running a geoNear query with uniqueDocs : true, the closest location in a document to the center of the search region will always be returned - this is not true for $within queries.

In addition, when using geoNear queries and multi-location documents, often it is useful to return not only distances, but also the location in the document which was used to generate the distance. In v2.0, to return the location alongside the distance in the geoNear results (in the field `loc`), specify `includeLocs : true` in the geoNear query. The location returned will be a copy of the location in the document used.



If the location was an array, the location returned will be an object with "0" and "1" fields in v2.0.0 and v2.0.1.

```
> db.runCommand({ geoNear : "places", near : [ 0, 0 ], maxDistance : 20, includeLocs : true })
{
 "ns" : "test.places",
 "near" : "1100000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000",
 "results" : [
  {
   "dis" : 5.830951894845301,
   "loc" : {
    "x" : 3,
    "y" : 5
   },
   "obj" : {
    "_id" : ObjectId("4e52672c15f59224bdb2544d"),
    "name" : "Final Place",
    "loc" : {
     "x" : 3,
     "y" : 5
    }
   }
  },
  {
   "dis" : 14.142135623730951,
   "loc" : {
    "0" : 10,
    "1" : 10
   },
   "obj" : {
    "_id" : ObjectId("4e5266a915f59224bdb2544b"),
    "name" : "Some Place",
    "loc" : [
     [
      10,
      10
     ],
     [
      50,
      50
     ]
    ]
   }
  },
  {
   "dis" : 14.142135623730951,
   "loc" : {
    "0" : -10,
    "1" : -10
   },
   "obj" : {
    "_id" : ObjectId("4e5266ba15f59224bdb2544c"),
    "name" : "Another Place",
    "loc" : [
     [
```

```
      -10,
      -10
     ],
     [
      -50,
      -50
     ]
    ]
   }
  }
 ],
 "stats" : {
  "time" : 0,
  "btreelocs" : 0,
  "nscanned" : 5,
  "objectsLoaded" : 3,
  "avgDistance" : 11.371741047435734,
  "maxDistance" : 14.142157540259815
 },
```

```
  "ok" : 1
}
```

#### Sharded Collections

**v1.8+**. Creating a geospatial index for a sharded collection is supported with some caveats: see http://jira.mongodb.org/browse/SHARDING-83. There are no caveats for using geospatial indexes with unsharded collections in a sharded cluster.

#### Implementation

The current implementation encodes geographic hash codes atop standard MongoDB B-trees. Results of $near queries are exact. One limitation with this encoding, while fast, is that prefix lookups don't give exact results, especially around bit flip areas. MongoDB solves this by doing a grid-neighbor search after the initial prefix scan to pick up any straggler points. This generally ensures that performance remains very high while providing correct results.

#### Presentations

- Geospatial Indexing with MongoDB - MongoSF (May 2011)
- Storing and Querying location data with MongoDB - MongoSF (May 2011)
- Community blog posts
  - http://gissolved.blogspot.com/2009/05/populating-mongodb-with-pois.html
  - http://geokoder.com/mongodb-plugin-for-quantum-gis
  - http://www.paolocorti.net/2009/12/06/using-mongodb-to-store-geographic-data/

### Geospatial Haystack Indexing

In addition to ordinary 2d geospatial indices, mongodb supports the use of bucket-based geospatial indexes. Called "Haystack indexing", these indices can accelerate small-region type longitude / latitude queries when additional criteria is also required. For example, "find all restaurants within 25 miles with name 'foo'". Haystack indices allow you to tune your bucket size to the distribution of your data, so that in general you search only very small regions of 2d space for a particular kind of document. They are **not** suited for finding the closest documents to a particular location, when the closest documents are far away compared to bucket size.



For now, only a single coordinate field and optional single additional field can be used in a haystack index.

To use haystack indexing, documents with a `(longitude, latitude)` position stored as a sub-document or array are required, with an optional additional field to be indexed. For example:

```
> db.foo.insert({ pos : { long : 34.2, lat : 33.3 }, type : "restaurant" })
> db.foo.insert({ pos : { long : 34.2, lat : 37.3 }, type : "restaurant" })
> db.foo.insert({ pos : { long : 59.1, lat : 87.2 }, type : "office" })
...
> db.foo.ensureIndex({ pos : "geoHaystack", type : 1 }, { bucketSize : 1 })
```

The bucketSize parameter is required, and determines the granularity of the bucket index - our value of 1 above creates an index where keys within 1 unit of longitude or latitude are stored in the same bucket.

The haystack index can only be used by a database command, it is not at present chosen by the query optimizer. As an example of finding all restaurants in a particular area with a given maximum distance of 6 degrees longitude / latitude, with a maximum of 30 results returned (by default, there is a 50 document result limit):

```
> db.runCommand({ geoSearch : "foo", near : [33, 33], maxDistance : 6, search : { type : "restaurant"
}, limit : 30 })
{
 "results" : [
  {
   "_id" : ObjectId("4d948a7db1670124ce358fb7"),
   "pos" : {
    "long" : 34.2,
    "lat" : 33.3
   },
   "type" : "restaurant"
  },
  {
   "_id" : ObjectId("4d948a84b1670124ce358fb8"),
   "pos" : {
    "long" : 34.2,
    "lat" : 37.3
   },
   "type" : "restaurant"
  }
 ],
 "stats" : {
  "time" : 0,
  "btreeMatches" : 2,
  "n" : 2
 },
 "ok" : 1
}
```

Spherical queries are not currently supported by haystack indices.

## Indexing as a Background Operation

Prior to 2.1.0, slaves and replica secondaries build indexes in the foreground **even if** `background:true` is specified. The slave/secondary will block queries while the index builds on it. Indexing on the secondaries begins after the index is completely built on the primary.

In the 2.1 and 2.2 series, indexes built in the background on primaries are also built in the background on secondaries. However, the secondary members will block replication while the index builds.

**v1.4+**

By default the `ensureIndex()` operation is blocking, and stops other operations on the database from proceeding until completed.

To build an index in the background, add `background:true` to your index options. Examples:

```
> db.things.ensureIndex({x:1}, {background:true});
> db.things.ensureIndex({name:1}, {background:true, unique:true,
... dropDups:true});
```

Prior to 2.1.0, the index build operation is *not* a background build when it replicates to secondaries. This could be a significant issue if you are reading from your secondaries – in this case back up each replica set member one by one – see the doc page for this.

With background mode enabled, other non-indexing operations, including writes, will not be obstructed during index creation. The index is not used for queries until the build is complete.  Further calls to ensureIndex() while the background indexing is progressing will fail with a message indicating a background operation is in progress.

Although the operation is 'background' in the sense that other operations may run concurrently, the command will not return to the shell prompt until completely finished. To do other operations at the same time, open a separate mongo shell instance.

Please note that background mode building uses an incremental approach to building the index which is slower than the default foreground mode: time to build the index will be greater. If the resulting index is larger than RAM, background indexing can be *much* slower.

While the index build progresses, it is possible to see that the operation is still in progress with the `db.currentOp()` command (will be shown as an insert to system.indexes). You may also use `db.killOp()` to terminate the index build on the primary.

While the build progresses, the index is visible in system.indexes, but it is not used for queries until building completes.

***Notes***

- Only one index build at a time, whether foreground or background, is permitted per collection.
- Some administrative operations, such as repairDatabase, are disallowed while a background indexing job is in progress.

## Multikeys

MongoDB provides an interesting "multikey" feature that can automatically index arrays of an object's values. A good example is tagging. Suppose you have an article tagged with some category names:

```
$ dbshell
> db.articles.save( { name: "Warm Weather", author: "Steve",
                      tags: ['weather', 'hot', 'record', 'april'] } )

> db.articles.find()
{"name" : "Warm Weather" , "author" : "Steve" ,
 "tags" : ["weather","hot","record","april"] ,
 "_id"  : "497ce4051ca9ca6d3efca323"}
```

We can easily perform a query looking for a particular value in the `tags` array:

```
> db.articles.find( { tags: 'april' } )
{"name" : "Warm Weather" , "author" : "Steve" ,
 "tags" : ["weather","hot","record","april"] ,
 "_id"  : "497ce4051ca9ca6d3efca323"}
```

Further, we can index on the tags array. Creating an index on an array element indexes results in the database **indexing each element of the array**:

```
> db.articles.ensureIndex( { tags : 1 } )
true

> db.articles.find( { tags: 'april' } )
{"name" : "Warm Weather" , "author" : "Steve" ,
 "tags" : ["weather","hot","record","april"] ,
 "_id"  : "497ce4051ca9ca6d3efca323"}

> db.articles.find( { tags: 'april' } ).explain()
{"cursor" : "BtreeCursor tags_1" , "startKey" : {"tags" : "april"} ,
 "endKey" : {"tags" : "april"} , "nscanned" : 1 , "n" : 1 , "millis" : 0 }
```

### *Incrementally adding and removing keys*

You can use $addToSet to add a new key to the array, and $pull to remove one.

```
> db.articles.update({name: "Warm Weather"},{$addToSet:{tags:"northeast"}});
> db.articles.find();
...
> db.articles.update({name: "Warm Weather"},{$pull:{tags:"northeast"}});
```

### *Embedded object fields in an array*

The same technique can be used to find fields within objects embedded in arrays:

```
> // find posts where julie commented
> db.posts.find( { "comments.author" : "julie" } )
{"title" : "How the west was won",
 "comments" : [{"text" : "great!" , "author" : "sam"},
               {"text" : "ok" , "author" : "julie"}],
 "_id" : "497ce79f1ca9ca6d3efca325"}
```

### *Querying on all values in a given set*

By using the $all query option, a set of values may be supplied each of which must be present in a matching object field. For example:

```
> db.articles.find( { tags: { $all: [ 'april', 'record' ] } } )
{"name" : "Warm Weather" , "author" : "Steve" ,
 "tags" : ["weather","hot","record","april"] ,
 "_id"  : "497ce4051ca9ca6d3efca323"}

> db.articles.find( { tags: { $all: [ 'april', 'june' ] } } )
> // no matches
```

### *Exact Array Matching with an Index*

Since indexing an array, which creates the multikey index, only indexes each element in the array it is not possible to do an exact array match using an index on the array field. The index will be used to lookup a subset of the values (currently the first one) and then the document will be inspected for the exact match. This is also true for range queries, but the rules for types are bit more complicated since it follows the matching rules for single values.

```
> db.emails.find()
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4ef8ee415ca7c3e2a4a639a8"), "email_id" : [ 109, 97, 105, 108 ] }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4ef8ee435ca7c3e2a4a639a9"), "email_id" : [ 109, 101, 64, 98 ] }
> db.emails.find({"email_id" : [ 109, 97, 105, 108 ]})
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4ef8ee415ca7c3e2a4a639a8"), "email_id" : [ 109, 97, 105, 108 ] }
> db.emails.find({"email_id" : [ 109, 97, 105, 108 ]}).explain()
{
        "cursor" : "BtreeCursor email_id_1 multi",
        "nscanned" : 2,
        "nscannedObjects" : 2,
        "n" : 1,
        "millis" : 0,
        "nYields" : 0,
        "nChunkSkips" : 0,
        "isMultiKey" : true,
        "indexOnly" : false,
        "indexBounds" : {
                "email_id" : [
                        [
                                109,
                                109
                        ],
                        [
                                [
                                        109,
                                        97,
                                        105,
                                        108
                                ],
                                [
                                        109,
                                        97,
                                        105,
                                        108
                                ]
                        ]
                ]
        }
}
//Note the nscanned, nscannedObjects and n values.

//Notice the array or arrays and the behavior below
> db.emails.insert({ "_id" : ObjectId("4ef8ee435ca7c3e2a4a639a7"), "email_id" : [[ 109, 101, 64, 98 ]]
})
> db.emails.find()
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4ef8ee415ca7c3e2a4a639a8"), "email_id" : [ 109, 97, 105, 108 ] }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4ef8ee435ca7c3e2a4a639a9"), "email_id" : [ 109, 101, 64, 98 ] }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4ef8ee435ca7c3e2a4a639a7"), "email_id" : [ [ 109, 101, 64, 98 ] ] }
> db.emails.find({"email_id" : [ 109, 101, 64, 98 ]})
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4ef8ee435ca7c3e2a4a639a9"), "email_id" : [ 109, 101, 64, 98 ] }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4ef8ee435ca7c3e2a4a639a7"), "email_id" : [ [ 109, 101, 64, 98 ] ] }
```

### *Caveats with Parallel Arrays*

When using a **compound index**, at most one of indexed values in any document can be an array. So if we have an index on {`a: 1, b: 1`}, the following documents are both fine:

```
{a: [1, 2], b: 1}
{a: 1, b: [1, 2]}
```

This document, however, will fail to be inserted, with an error message "cannot index parallel arrays":

```
{a: [1, 2], b: [1, 2]}
```

The problem with indexing parallel arrays is that each value in the cartesian product of the compound keys would have to be indexed, which can get out of hand very quickly.

#### *See Also*

- The Multikeys section of the Full Text Search in Mongo document for information about this feature.

### Using Multikeys to Simulate a Large Number of Indexes

One way to work with data that has a high degree of options for queryability is to use the multikey indexing feature where the keys are objects. For example:

```
> x = {
... _id : "abc",
... cost : 33,
... attribs : [
...           { color : 'red' },
...           { shape : 'rect' },
...           { color : 'blue' },
...           { avail : true } ]
... };
> db.foo.insert(x);
> db.foo.ensureIndex({attribs:1});
> db.foo.find( { attribs : {color:'blue'} } ); // uses index
> db.foo.find( { attribs : {avail:false} } );  // uses index
```

In addition to being able to have an unlimited number of attributes types, we can also add new types dynamically.

This is mainly useful for simply attribute lookups; the above pattern is not necessary helpful for sorting or certain other query types.

#### *See Also*

Discussion thread MongoDB for a chemical property search engine for a more complex real world example.

## Indexing Advice and FAQ

We get a lot of questions about indexing. Here we provide answers to a number of these. There are a couple of points to keep in mind, though. First, indexes in MongoDB work quite similarly to indexes in MySQL, and thus many of the techniques for building efficient indexes in MySQL apply to MongoDB.

Second, and even more importantly, know that advice on indexing can only take you so far. The best indexes for your application should always be based on a number of important factors, including the kinds of queries you expect, the ratio of reads to writes, and even the amount of free memory on your system. This means that the best strategy for designing indexes will always be to profile a variety of index configurations with data sets similar to the ones you'll be running in production, and see which perform best. There's no substitute for good empirical analyses.

**Note**: if you're brand new to indexing, you may want to read this introductory article first.


- Indexing Strategies
  - Create indexes to match your queries.
  - One index per query.
  - Make sure your indexes can fit in RAM.
  - Be careful about single-key indexes with low selectivity.
  - Use `explain`.
    - Understanding `explain`'s output.
  - Pay attention to the read/write ratio of your application.
  - Indexing Properties
    - 1. The sort column must be the last column used in the index.
    - 2. The range query must also be the last column in an index. This is an axiom of 1 above.
    - 3. Only use a range query or sort on one column.
    - 4. Conserve indexes by re-ordering columns used on equality (non-range) queries.
    - 5. MongoDB's $ne or $nin operator's aren't efficient with indexes.
- FAQ
  - I've started building an index, and the database has stopped responding. What's going on? What do I do?
  - I'm using $ne or $nin in a query, and while it uses the index, it's still slow. What's happening?

- Using Multikeys to Simulate a Large Number of Indexes

**Indexing Strategies**

Here are some general principles for building smart indexes.

Create indexes to match your queries.

If you only query on a single key, then a single-key index will do. For instance, maybe you're searching for a blog post's slug:

```
db.posts.find({ slug : 'state-of-mongodb-2010' })
```

In this case, a unique index on a single key is best:

```
db.posts.ensureIndex({ slug: 1 }, {unique: true});
```

However, it's common to query on multiple keys and to sort the results. For these situations, compound indexes are best. Here's an example for querying the latest comments with a 'mongodb' tag:

```
db.comments.find({ tags : 'mongodb'}).sort({ created_at : -1 });
```

And here's the proper index:

```
db.comments.ensureIndex({tags : 1, created_at : -1});
```

One index per query.

It's sometimes thought that queries on multiple keys can use multiple indexes; this is not the case with MongoDB. If you have a query that selects on multiple keys, and you want that query to use an index efficiently, then a compound-key index is necessary. The only exception to this is

```
$or
```

, which can run multiple query plans and then de-dup the results.

Make sure your indexes can fit in RAM.

The shell provides a command for returning the total index size on a given collection:

```
db.comments.totalIndexSize();
65443
```

If your queries seem sluggish, you should verify that your indexes are small enough to fit in RAM. For instance, if you're running on 4GB RAM and you have 3GB of indexes, then your indexes probably aren't fitting in RAM. You may need to add RAM and/or verify that all the indexes you've created are actually being used.

Be careful about single-key indexes with low selectivity.

Suppose you have a field called 'status' where the possible values are 'new' and 'processeed'. If you add an index on 'status' then you've created a low-selectivity index, meaning that the index isn't going to be very helpful in locating records and might just be be taking up space.

A better strategy, depending on your queries, of course, would be to create a compound index that includes the low-selectivity field. For instance, you could have a compound-key index on 'status' and 'created_at.'

Another option, again depending on your use case, might be to use separate collections, one for each status. As with all the advice here, experimentation and benchmarks will help you choose the best approach.

Use `explain`.

MongoDB includes an `explain` command for determining how your queries are being processed and, in particular, whether they're using an index. `explain` can be used from of the drivers and also from the shell:

```
db.comments.find({ tags : 'mongodb'}).sort({ created_at : -1 }).explain();
```

This will return lots of useful information, including the number of items scanned, the time the query takes to process in milliseconds, which indexes the query optimizer tried, and the index ultimately used.

If you've never used `explain`, now's the time to start.

Understanding `explain`'s output.

There are three main fields to look for when examining the `explain` command's output:

- cursor: the value for cursor can be either `BasicCursor` or `BtreeCursor`. The second of these indicates that the given query is using an index.
- nscanned: the number of index entries scanned.
- n: the number of documents returned by the query. You want the value of n to be close to the value of `nscanned`. What you want to avoid is doing a collection scan, that is, where every document in the collection is accessed. This is the case when `nscanned` is equal to the number of documents in the collection.
- millis: the number of milliseconds require to complete the query. This value is useful for comparing indexing strategies, indexed vs. non-indexed queries, etc.

Pay attention to the read/write ratio of your application.

This is important because, whenever you add an index, you add overhead to all insert, update, and delete operations on the given collection. If your application is read-heavy, as are most web applications, the additional indexes are usually a good thing. But if your application is write-heavy, then be careful when creating new indexes, since each additional index with impose a small write-performance penalty.

In general, **don't be cavalier about adding indexes**. Indexes should be added to complement your queries. Always have a good reason for adding a new index, and make sure you've benchmarked alternative strategies.

Indexing Properties

Here are a few properties of compound indexes worth keeping in mind (Thanks to Doug Green and Karoly Negyesi for their help on this).

These examples assume a compound index of three fields: a, b, c. So our index creation would look like this:

```
db.foo.ensureIndex({a: 1, b: 1, c: 1})
```

Here's some advice on using an index like this:

This information is no longer strictly correct in 1.6.0+; compound indexes can now be used to service queries where range or filter fields are used within the compound index, not just fields used from left to right. Please run explain to see how the compound index is used.

1. The sort column must be the last column used in the index.

Good:

- find(a=1).sort(a)
- find(a=1).sort(b)
- find(a=1, b=2).sort(c)

Bad:

- find(a=1).sort(c)
- even though c is the last column used in the index, a is that last column used, so you can only sort on a or b.

2. The range query must also be the last column in an index. This is an axiom of 1 above.

Good:

- find(a=1,b>2)
- find(a>1 and a<10)
- find(a>1 and a<10).sort(a)

Bad:

- find(a>1, b=2)

3. Only use a range query or sort on one column.

Good:

- find(a=1,b=2).sort(c)
- find(a=1,b>2)
- find(a=1,b>2 and b<4)
- find(a=1,b>2).sort(b)

Bad:

- find(a>1,b>2)
- find(a=1,b>2).sort(c)

4. Conserve indexes by re-ordering columns used on equality (non-range) queries.

Imagine you have the following two queries:

- find(a=1,b=1,d=1)
- find(a=1,b=1,c=1,d=1)

A single index defined on a, b, c, and d can be used for both queries.
If, however, you need to sort on the final value, you might need two indexes

5. MongoDB's $ne or $nin operator's aren't efficient with indexes.

- When excluding just a few documents, it's better to retrieve extra rows from MongoDB and do the exclusion on the client side.

**FAQ**

I've started building an index, and the database has stopped responding. What's going on? What do I do?

Building an index can be an IO-intensive operation, especially you have a large collection. This is true on any database system that supports secondary indexes, including MySQL. If you'll need to build an index on a large collection in the future, you'll probably want to consider building the index in the background, a feature available beginning with 1.3.2. See the docs on background indexing for more info.

As for the long-building index, you only have a few options. You can either wait for the index to finish building or kill the current operation (see `killOp()`). If you choose the latter, the partial index will be deleted.

I'm using $ne or $nin in a query, and while it uses the index, it's still slow. What's happening?

The problem with $ne and $nin is that much of an index will match queries like these. If you need to use $nin, it's often best to make sure that an additional, more selective criterion is part of the query.

## Inserting

When we insert data into MongoDB, that data will always be in document-form. Documents are data structure analogous to JSON, Python dictionaries, and Ruby hashes, to take just a few examples. Here, we discuss more about document-orientation and describe how to insert data into MongoDB.


- Document-Orientation
- JSON
- Mongo-Friendly Schema
    - Store Example
- Bulk inserts


### *Document-Orientation*

Document-oriented databases store "documents" but by document we mean a structured document – the term perhaps coming from the phrase "XML document". However other structured forms of data, such as JSON or even nested dictionaries in various languages, have similar properties.

The documents stored in Mongo DB are JSON-like. JSON is a good way to store object-style data from programs in a manner that is language-independent and standards based.

To be efficient, MongoDB uses a format called BSON which is a binary representation of this data. BSON is faster to scan for specific fields than JSON. Also BSON adds some additional types such as a data data type and a byte-array (bindata) datatype. BSON maps readily to and from JSON and also to various data structures in many programming languages.

Client drivers serialize data to BSON, then transmit the data over the wire to the db. Data is stored on disk in BSON format. Thus, on a retrieval, the database does very little translation to send an object out, allowing high efficiency. The client driver unserialized a received BSON object to its native language format.

### *JSON*

For example the following "document" can be stored in Mongo DB:

```
{ author: 'joe',
  created : new Date('03/28/2009'),
  title : 'Yet another blog post',
  text : 'Here is the text...',
  tags : [ 'example', 'joe' ],
  comments : [ { author: 'jim', comment: 'I disagree' },
               { author: 'nancy', comment: 'Good post' }
  ]
}
```

This document is a blog post, so we can store in a "posts" collection using the shell:

```
> doc = { author : 'joe', created : new Date('03/28/2009'), ... }
> db.posts.insert(doc);
```

MongoDB understands the internals of BSON objects -- not only can it store them, it can query on internal fields and index keys based upon them.  For example the query

```
> db.posts.find( { "comments.author" : "jim" } )
```

is possible and means "find any blog post where at least one comment subjobject has author == 'jim'".

### *Mongo-Friendly Schema*

Mongo can be used in many ways, and one's first instincts when using it are probably going to be similar to how one would write an application with a relational database. While this work pretty well, it doesn't harness the real power of Mongo. Mongo is designed for and works best with a rich object model.

#### Store Example

If you're building a simple online store that sells products with a relation database, you might have a schema like:

```
item
     title
     price
     sku
  item_features
     sku
     feature_name
     feature_value
```

You would probably normalize it like this because different items would have different features, and you wouldn't want a table with all possible features. You could model this the same way in mongo, but it would be much more efficient to do

```
item : {
           "title" : <title> ,
           "price" : <price> ,
           "sku"   : <sku>   ,
           "features" : {
              "optical zoom" : <value> ,
              ...
           }
  }
```

This does a few nice things

- you can load an entire item with one query
- all the data for an item is on the same place on disk, thus only one seek is required to load

Now, at first glance there might seem to be some issues, but we've got them covered.

- you might want to insert or update a single feature. mongo lets you operate on embedded files like:

```
db.items.update( { sku : 123 } , { "$set" : { "features.zoom" : "5" } } )
```

- Does adding a feature require moving the entire object on disk? No. mongo has a padding heuristic that adapts to your data so it will leave some empty space for the object to grow. This will prevent indexes from being changed, etc.

### *Bulk inserts*

It is possible to insert many documents in a single db call. Consult your driver's documentation for how to do bulk inserts in that language. There is currently no support for bulk inserts from the mongo shell, see SERVER-2395.

MongoDB is quite fast at a series of singleton inserts. Thus one often does not need to use this specialized version of insert.

In v2.0+ one can set the `ContinueOnError` flag for bulk inserts to signal inserts should continue even if one or more from the batch fails. In that case, `getLastError` will be set if any insert fails, not just the last one. If multiple errors occur, only the most recent will be reported by `getLastError`.

For a sharded collection, `ContinueOnError` is implied and cannot be disabled.

## Legal Key Names

Key names in inserted documents are limited as follows:

- The '$' character must not be the first character in the key name.
- The '.' character must not appear anywhere in the key name.

## Schema Design


- Embedding and Linking
- Collections
- Atomic Operations
- Indexes
- Sharding
- Example
- Summary of Best Practices
- More Details
  - Choosing Indexes
  - How Many Collections?
- See Also
  - Books
  - Blog posts
  - Related Doc Pages
  - Videos


Schema design in MongoDB is very different from schema design in a relational DBMS. However it is still very important and the first step towards building an application.

In relational data models, conceptually there is a "correct" design for a given entity relationship model independent of the use case. This is typically a third normal form normalization. One typically only diverges from this for performance reasons. In MongoDB, the schema design is not only a function of the data to be modeled but also of the use case. The schema design is optimized for our most common use case. This has pros and cons – that use case is then typically highly performant; however there is a bias in the schema which may make certain ad hoc queries a little less elegant than in the relational schema.

As we design the schema, the questions we must answer are:

1. When do we embed data versus linking (see below)? Our decisions here imply the answer to question #2:

2. How many collections do we have, and what are they?

3. When do we need atomic operations? These operations can be performed within the scope of a BSON document, but not across documents.

4. What indexes will we create to make query and updates fast?

5. How will we shard? What is the shard key?

#### Embedding and Linking

A key question when designing a MongoDB schema is when to *embed* and when to *link*. Embedding is the nesting of objects and arrays inside a BSON document. Links are references between documents.

There are no joins in MongoDB – distributed joins would be difficult on a 1,000 server cluster. Embedding is a bit like "prejoined" data. Operations within a document are easy for the server to handle; these operations can be fairly rich. Links in contrast must be processed client-side by the application; the application does this by issuing a follow-up query.

Generally, for "contains" relationships between entities, embedding should be be chosen. Use linking when not using linking would result in duplication of data.

#### Collections

Collections in MongoDB are analogous to tables in a relational database. Each collection contains *documents*. As mentioned above these documents can be fairly rich.

There is no explicit declaration of the fields within the documents of a collection. However there is a conceptual design from the schema designer of what those fields will be and how the documents in the collection will be structured. MongoDB does not require documents in a collection to have the same structure. However, in practice, most collections are highly homogenous. We can move away from this when we need to though; for example when adding a new field. In a situation such as that, an "alter table" style operation is not necessary.

#### Atomic Operations

Some problems require the ability to perform atomic operations. For example, simply incrementing a counter is often a case where one wants atomicity. MongoDB can also perform more complex operations such as that shown in the pseudocode below:

```
atomically {
  if( doc.credits > 5 ) {
    doc.credits -= 5;
    doc.debits += 5;
  }
}
```

Another example would be a user registration scenario. We would never want two users to register the same username simultaneously:

```
atomically {
  if( exists a document with username='jane' ) {
    print "username already in use please choose another";
  } else {
    insert a document with username='jane' in the users collection;
    print("thanks you have registered as user jane.");
  }
}
```

The key aspect here in terms of schema design is that our scope of atomicity / ACID properties is the document. Thus we need to assure that all fields relevant to the atomic operation are in the same document.

#### Indexes

MongoDB supports the declaration of indexes. Indexes in MongoDB are highly analogous to indexes in a relational database : they are needed for efficient query processing, and must be explicitly declared. Thus we need to think about what indexes we will define as part of the schema design process. Just like in a relational database, indexes can be added later – if we decide later to have a new one, we can do that.

#### Sharding

Another consideration for schema design is sharding. A BSON document (which may have significant amounts of embedding) resides on one and only one shard.

A collection may be sharded. When sharded, the collection has a shard key, which determines how the collection is partitioned among shards. Typically (but not always) queries on a sharded collection involve the shard key as part of the query expression.

The key here is that changing shard keys is difficult. You will want to choose the right key from the start.

#### Example

Let's consider an example, which is a content management system. The examples below use mongo shell syntax but could also be done in any programming language – just use the appropriate driver for that language.

Our content management system will have posts. Posts have authors. We'd like to support commenting and voting on posts. We'd also like posts to be taggable for searching.

One good schema design for this scenario would be to have two MongoDB collections, one called `posts` and one called `users`. This is what we will use for the example.

Our users have a few properties - a user id they registered with, their real name, and their karma. For example we could invoke:

```
> db.users.insert( { _id : "alex", name: { first:"Alex", last:"Benisson" }, karma : 1.0 } )
```

The `_id` field is always present in MongoDB, and is automically indexed with a unique key constraint. That is perfect for our usernames so we store them in the `_id` field. We don't have to though; we could instead make a username field and let the system automically generate a unique id.

Let's now consider posts. We'll assume some posts are already populated. Let's query one:

```
> db.posts.findOne()
{
  _id : ObjectId("4e77bb3b8a3e000000004f7a"),
  when : Date("2011-09-19T02:10:11.3Z",
  author : "alex",
  title : "No Free Lunch",
  text : "This is the text of the post.  It could be very long.",
  tags : [ "business", "ramblings" ],
  votes : 5,
  voters : [ "jane", "joe", "spencer", "phyllis", "li" ],
  comments : [
    { who : "jane", when : Date("2011-09-19T04:00:10.112Z"),
      comment : "I agree." },
    { who : "meghan", when : Date("2011-09-20T14:36:06.958Z"),
      comment : "You must be joking.  etc etc ..." }
  ]
}
```

It's interesting to contrast this with how we might design the same schema in a relation database. We would likely have a users collection and a posts collection. But in addition one would typically have a tags collection, a voters collection, and a comments collection. Grabbing all the information on a single post would then be a little involved. Here to grab the whole post we might execute:

```
> db.posts.findOne( { _id : ObjectId("4e77bb3b8a3e000000004f7a") } );
```

To get all posts written by alex:

```
> db.posts.find( { author : "alex" } )
```

If the above is a common query we would create an index on the author field:

```
> db.posts.ensureIndex( { author : 1 } )
```

The post documents can be fairly large. To get just the titles of the posts by alex :

```
> db.posts.find( { author : "alex" }, { title : 1 } )
```

We may want to search for posts by tag:

```
> // make and index of all tags so that the query is fast:
> db.posts.ensureIndex( { tags : 1 } )
> db.posts.find( { tags : "business" } )
```

What if we want to find all posts commented on by meghan?

```
> db.posts.find( { comments.who : "meghan" } )
```

Let's index that to make it fast:

```
> db.posts.ensureIndex( { "comments.who" : 1 } )
```

We track voters above so that no one can vote more than once. Suppose calvin wants to vote for the example post above. The following update operation will record calvin's vote. Because of the `$nin` sub-expression, if calvin has already voted, the update will have no effect.

```
> db.posts.update( { _id : ObjectId("4e77bb3b8a3e000000004f7a"),
                     voters : { $nin : "calvin" } },
                   { votes : { $inc : 1 }, voters : { $push : "calvin" } );
```

Note the above operation is atomic : if multiple users vote simultaneously, no votes would be lost.

Suppose we want to display the title of the latest post in the system as well as the full user name for the author. This is a case where we must use client-side linking:

```
> var post = db.posts.find().sort( { when : -1 } ).limit(1);
> var user = db.users.find( { _id : post.author } );
> print( post.title + " " + user.name.first + " " + user.name.last );
```

A final question we might ask about our example is how we would shard. If the users collection is small, we would not need to shard it at all. If posts is huge, we would shard it. We would need to choose a shard key. The key should be chosen based on the queries that will be common. We want those queries to involve the shard key.

- Sharding by _id is one option here.
- If finding the most recent posts is a very frequent query, we would then shard on the `when` field. (There is also an optimization trick which might work here.)

**Summary of Best Practices**

- "First class" objects, that are at top level, typically have their own collection.
- Line item detail objects typically are embedded.
- Objects which follow an object modelling "contains" relationship should generally be embedded.
- Many to many relationships are generally done by linking.
- Collections with only a few objects may safely exist as separate collections, as the whole collection is quickly cached in application server memory.
- Embedded objects are a bit harder to link to than "top level" objects in collections.
- It is more difficult to get a system-level view for embedded objects. When needed an operation of this sort is performed by using MongoDB's map/reduce facility.
- If the amount of data to embed is huge (many megabytes), you may reach the limit on size of a single object. See also GridFS.
- If performance is an issue, embed.

**More Details**

Choosing Indexes

A second aspect of schema design is index selection. As a general rule, *where you want an index in a relational database, you want an index in Mongo.*

- `The _id` field is automatically indexed.
- Fields upon which keys are looked up should be indexed.
- Sort fields generally should be indexed.

The MongoDB profiling facility provides useful information for where an index should be added that is missing.

Note that adding an index slows writes to a collection, but not reads. Use lots of indexes for collections with a high read : write ratio (assuming one does not mind the storage overage). For collections with more writes than reads, indexes are expensive as keys must be added to each index for each insert.

How Many Collections?

As Mongo collections are polymorphic, one could have a collection `objects` and put everything in it! This approach is taken by some object databases. This is not recommended in MongoDB for several reasons, mainly performance. Data within a single collection is roughly contiguous on disk. Thus, "table scans" of a collection are possible, and efficient. Just like in relational dbs, independent collections are very important for high throughput batch processing.

**See Also**

Books

- Document Design for MongoDB - O'Reilly Ebook
- More Books

Blog posts

- http://blog.fiesta.cc/post/11319522700/walkthrough-mongodb-data-modeling
- Blog post on dynamic schemas

Related Doc Pages

- Trees in MongoDB
- MongoDB Data Modeling and Rails
- Advanced Queries

Videos

- Schema Design Basics - MongoSF Presentation (May 2011)
- Schema Design at Scale - MongoSF Presentation (May 2011)
- Schema Design: Data as Documents - MongoSV Presentation (December 2010)

Schema Design Basics - Presentation from MongoSF (May 2011)

<#comment><#comment>

Schema Design by Example - Presentation at MongoSV (December 2011)

## Tweaking performance by document bundling during schema design

**Note:** this page discusses performance tuning aspects – if you are just getting started skip this for later. If you have a giant collection of small documents that will require significant tuning, read on.

During schema design one consideration is when to embed entities in a larger document versus storing them as separate small documents. Tiny documents work fine and should be used when that is the natural way to go with the schema. However, in some circumstances, it can be better to group data into larger documents to improve performance.

Consider for example a collection which contains some documents that are fairly small. Documents are indicated in the figures below as squares. Related documents – perhaps all associated with some larger entity in our program, or else that correlate in their access, are indicated in figure 1 with the same color.

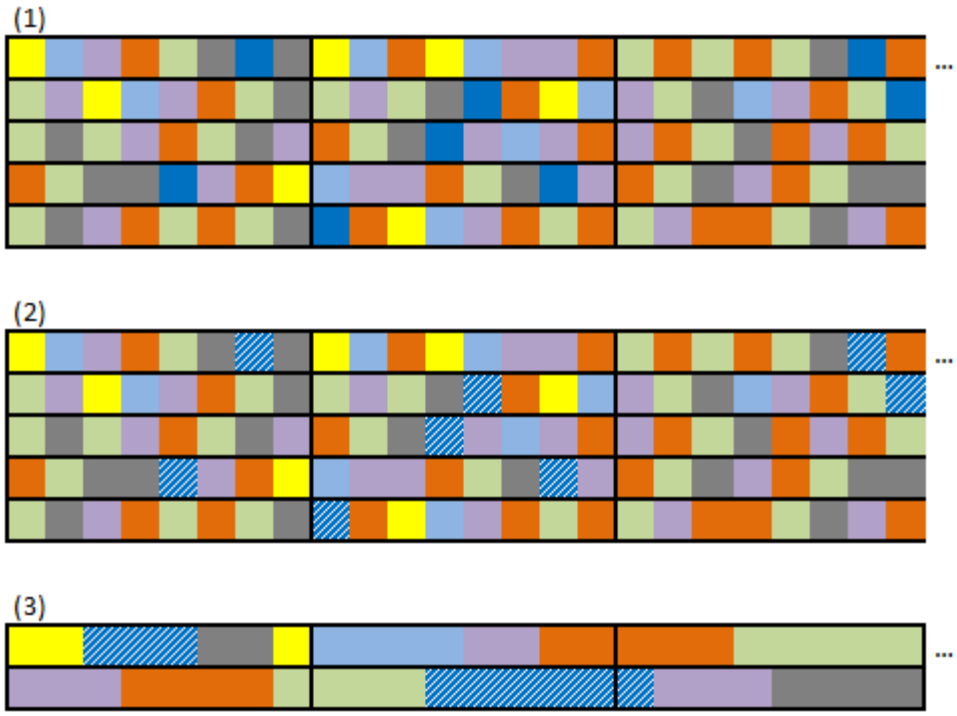
MongoDB caches data in pages, where the page size is that of the operating system's virtual memory manager (almost always 4KB). Page units are indicated by the black lines – for this example 8 boxes fit per page.

Let's suppose we wish to fetch all of the dark blue documents – indicates with stripes in figure 2. If this data is in RAM, we can (assuming we have an index) fetch them very efficiently. However note that the eight entities span eight pages, even though they could in theory fit on a single page.

With an alternate schema design we could "roll up" some of these entities into a larger document which includes an array of subdocuments. By doing that the items will be clustered together – a single BSON document in MongoDB is always stored contiguously. Figure 3 shows an example where the eight entities roll up into two documents (perhaps they could have rolled up to just one document; the point here is that it isn't essential that it be one, we are simply doing some bundling). In this example the two new documents are stored within three pages. While this isn't a huge reduction – eight to three – in many situations the documents are much smaller than a page – sometimes 100 documents fit within a single page. (The diagram example is not very granular to make reading easy.)

The benefits of this rolled-up schema design are

- Better RAM cache utilization. If we need to cache the dark blue items (but not the others), we can now cache three pages instead of eight. Note this is really only important if the data is too large to fit entirely in RAM – if it all fits, there is no gain here.
- Fewer disk seeks. If nothing was cached in RAM, less random i/o's are necessary to fetch the objects.
- Smaller index sizse. The common key the eight items contain can be stored in less copies, with less associated key entries in its corresponding index.




Caveats:

- Do not optimize prematurely; if grouping the entities would be awkward, don't do it. The goal of Mongo is to make development easier, not harder.
- Note we simply want to get to a document size that is on the order of the page cache unit size – about 4KB. If your documents are already of roughly that size, there is less benefit to the above (some still regarding random disk i/o, but no benefit for ram cache efficiency).
- If you often only need a subset of the items you would group, this approach could be inefficient compared to alternatives.

## Trees in MongoDB


- Patterns
  - Full Tree in Single Document
  - Parent Links
  - Child Links
  - Array of Ancestors
  - Materialized Paths (Full Path in Each Node)
  - acts_as_nested_set
- Use Cases
  - Find Nodes by a Partial Path
- See Also


The best way to store a tree usually depends on the operations you want to perform; see below for some different options. In practice, most developers find that one of the "Full Tree in Single Document", "Parent Links", and "Array of Ancestors" patterns works best.

### *Patterns*

#### Full Tree in Single Document

```
{
  comments: [
    {by: "mathias", text: "...", replies: []}
    {by: "eliot", text: "...", replies: [
      {by: "mike", text: "...", replies: []}
    ]}
  ]
}
```

Pros:

- Single document to fetch per page
- One location on disk for whole tree
- You can see full structure easily

Cons:

- Hard to search
- Hard to get back partial results
- Can get unwieldy if you need a huge tree. Further there is a limit on the size of documents in MongoDB – 16MB in v1.8 (limit may rise in future versions).

#### Parent Links

Storing all nodes in a single collection, with each node having the id of its parent, is a simple solution. The biggest problem with this approach is getting an entire subtree requires several query turnarounds to the database (or use of db.eval).

```
> t = db.tree1;

> t.find()
{ "_id" : 1 }
{ "_id" : 2, "parent" : 1 }
{ "_id" : 3, "parent" : 1 }
{ "_id" : 4, "parent" : 2 }
{ "_id" : 5, "parent" : 4 }
{ "_id" : 6, "parent" : 4 }

> // find children of node 4
> t.ensureIndex({parent:1})
> t.find( {parent : 4 } )
{ "_id" : 5, "parent" : 4 }
{ "_id" : 6, "parent" : 4 }
```

#### Child Links

Another option is storing the ids of all of a node's children within each node's document. This approach is fairly limiting, although ok if no operations on entire subtrees are necessary. It may also be good for storing graphs where a node has multiple parents.

```
> t = db.tree2
> t.find()
{ "_id" : 1, "children" : [ 2, 3 ] }
{ "_id" : 2 }
{ "_id" : 3, "children" : [ 4 ] }
{ "_id" : 4 }

> // find immediate children of node 3
> t.findOne({_id:3}).children
[ 4 ]

> // find immediate parent of node 3
> t.ensureIndex({children:1})
> t.find({children:3})
{ "_id" : 1, "children" : [ 2, 3 ] }
```

#### Array of Ancestors

Here we store all the ancestors of a node in an array. This makes a query like "get all descendents of x" fast and easy.

```
> t = db.mytree;

> t.find()
{ "_id" : "a" }
{ "_id" : "b", "ancestors" : [ "a" ], "parent" : "a" }
{ "_id" : "c", "ancestors" : [ "a", "b" ], "parent" : "b" }
{ "_id" : "d", "ancestors" : [ "a", "b" ], "parent" : "b" }
{ "_id" : "e", "ancestors" : [ "a" ], "parent" : "a" }
{ "_id" : "f", "ancestors" : [ "a", "e" ], "parent" : "e" }
{ "_id" : "g", "ancestors" : [ "a", "b", "d" ], "parent" : "d" }

> t.ensureIndex( { ancestors : 1 } )

> // find all descendents of b:
> t.find( { ancestors : 'b' })
{ "_id" : "c", "ancestors" : [ "a", "b" ], "parent" : "b" }
{ "_id" : "d", "ancestors" : [ "a", "b" ], "parent" : "b" }
{ "_id" : "g", "ancestors" : [ "a", "b", "d" ], "parent" : "d" }

> // get all ancestors of f:
> anc = db.mytree.findOne({_id:'f'}).ancestors
[ "a", "e" ]
> db.mytree.find( { _id : { $in : anc } } )
{ "_id" : "a" }
{ "_id" : "e", "ancestors" : [ "a" ], "parent" : "a" }
```

ensureIndex and MongoDB's multikey feature makes the above queries efficient.

In addition to the ancestors array, we also stored the direct parent in the node to make it easy to find the node's immediate parent when that is necessary.

**Materialized Paths (Full Path in Each Node)**

Materialized paths make certain query options on trees easy. We store the full path to the location of a document in the tree within each node. Usually the "array of ancestors" approach above works just as well, and is easier as one doesn't have to deal with string building, regular expressions, and escaping of characters. (Theoretically, materialized paths will be *slightly* faster.)

The best way to do this with MongoDB is to store the path as a string and then use regex queries. Simple regex expressions beginning with "^" can be efficiently executed. As the path is a string, you will need to pick a delimiter character -- we use ',' below. For example:

```
> t = db.tree
test.tree

> // get entire tree -- we use sort() to make the order nice
> t.find().sort({path:1})
{ "_id" : "a", "path" : "a," }
{ "_id" : "b", "path" : "a,b," }
{ "_id" : "c", "path" : "a,b,c," }
{ "_id" : "d", "path" : "a,b,d," }
{ "_id" : "g", "path" : "a,b,g," }
{ "_id" : "e", "path" : "a,e," }
{ "_id" : "f", "path" : "a,e,f," }
{ "_id" : "g", "path" : "a,b,g," }

> t.ensureIndex( {path:1} )

> // find the node 'b' and all its descendents:
> t.find( { path : /^a,b,/ } )
{ "_id" : "b", "path" : "a,b," }
{ "_id" : "c", "path" : "a,b,c," }
{ "_id" : "d", "path" : "a,b,d," }
{ "_id" : "g", "path" : "a,b,g," }

> // find the node 'b' and its descendents, where path to 'b' is not already known:
> nodeb = t.findOne( { _id : "b" } )
{ "_id" : "b", "path" : "a,b," }
> t.find( { path : new RegExp("^" + nodeb.path) } )
{ "_id" : "b", "path" : "a,b," }
{ "_id" : "c", "path" : "a,b,c," }
{ "_id" : "d", "path" : "a,b,d," }
{ "_id" : "g", "path" : "a,b,g," }
```

Ruby example: http://github.com/banker/newsmonger/blob/master/app/models/comment.rb

#### acts_as_nested_set

See http://ar.rubyonrails.org/classes/ActiveRecord/Acts/NestedSet/ClassMethods.html

This pattern is best for datasets that rarely change as modifications can require changes to many documents.

### *Use Cases*

#### Find Nodes by a Partial Path

Suppose we want to find a given node in a tree, given some path through a portion of the tree to that node, and then get back that node, and perhaps also everything below it.

With a materialized paths approach we can do the above. The main thing that needs tweaking is to make the operation fast if there is a path "a..b..c..d..e" to a document and we want to find documents with a path "..b..c..d..". If we are starting from the very top it is easy (and described above in the materialized paths section). However here we aren't starting at the top. One approach is to use a combination of materialized path plus an array of the node's ancestors, something like:

```
{ path : ",a,b,c,d,e,",
  ancestor : ['a','b','c','d','e'] }
```

We could index on ancestors which will create a multikey index. Then we would do a query like the following to find nodes on path "...b,c,d..." with some efficiency:

```
find({ path : /,b,c,d,/, ancestor : 'd', <more_query_expressions_optionally> })
```

In the above the index on ancestor would be used and only docs from 'd' down need be inspected. The following could be tried which might be even better depending on how smart the query optimizer is:

```
find( { path : /,b,c,d,/, ancestor : { $all : ['a','d'] }, ... } )
```

### *See Also*

- Sean Cribbs blog post (source of several ideas on this page).

## Optimization


- Additional Articles
- Optimizing A Simple Example
    - Optimization #1: Create an index
    - Optimization #2: Limit results
    - Optimization #3: Select only relevant fields
- Using the Profiler
- Optimizing Statements that Use `count()`
- Increment Operations
- Circular Fixed Size Collections
- Server Side Code Execution
- Explain
- Hint
- See Also


### *Additional Articles*

- Optimizing Object IDs
- Optimizing Storage of Small Objects

### *Optimizing A Simple Example*

This section describes proper techniques for optimizing database performance.

Let's consider an example. Suppose our task is to display the front page of a blog - we wish to display headlines of the 10 most recent posts. Let's assume the posts have a timestamp field `ts`.

The simplest thing we could write might be:

```
articles = db.posts.find().sort({ts:-1}); // get blog posts in reverse time order

for (var i=0; i< 10; i++) {
   print(articles[i].getSummary());
}
```

#### *Optimization #1: Create an index*

Our first optimization should be to create an index on the key that is being used for the sorting:

```
db.posts.ensureIndex({ts:1});
```

With an index, the database is able to sort based on index information, rather than having to check each document in the collection directly. This is much faster.

#### *Optimization #2: Limit results*

MongoDB cursors return results in groups of documents that we'll call 'chunks'. The chunk returned might contain more than 10 objects - in some cases, much more. These extra objects are a waste of network transmission and resources both on the app server and the database.

As we know how many results we want, and that we do not want all the results, we can use the `limit()` method for our second optimization.

```
articles = db.posts.find().sort({ts:-1}).limit(10); // 10 results maximum
```

Now, we'll only get 10 results returned to client.

#### *Optimization #3: Select only relevant fields*

The blog post object may be very large, with the post text and comments embedded. Much better performance will be achieved by selecting only the fields we need:

```
articles = db.posts.find({}, {ts:1,title:1,author:1,abstract:1}).sort({ts:-1}).limit(10);
articles.forEach( function(post) { print(post.getSummary()); } );
```

The above code assumes that the `getSummary()` method only references the fields listed in the `find()` method.

Note if you fetch only select fields, you have a partial object. An object in that form cannot be updated back to the database:

```
a_post = db.posts.findOne({}, Post.summaryFields);
a_post.x = 3;
db.posts.save(a_post); // error, exception thrown
```

### *Using the Profiler*

MongoDB includes a database profiler which shows performance characteristics of each operation against the database. Using the profiler you can find queries (and write operations) which are slower than they should be; use this information, for example, to determine when an index is needed. See the Database Profiler page for more information.

### *Optimizing Statements that Use `count()`*

To speed operations that rely on `count()`, create an index on the field involved in the count query expression.

```
db.posts.ensureIndex({author:1});
db.posts.find({author:"george"}).count();
```

### *Increment Operations*

MongoDB supports simple object field increment operations; basically, this is an operation indicating "increment this field in this document at the server". This can be much faster than fetching the document, updating the field, and then saving it back to the server and are particularly useful for implementing real time counters. See the Updates section of the Mongo Developers' Guide for more information.

### *Circular Fixed Size Collections*

MongoDB provides a special circular collection type that is pre-allocated at a specific size. These collections keep the items within well-ordered even without an index, and provide very high-speed writes and reads to the collection. Originally designed for keeping log files - log events are stored in the database in a circular fixed size collection - there are many uses for this feature. See the Capped Collections section of the Mongo Developers' Guide for more information.

### *Server Side Code Execution*

Occasionally, for maximal performance, you may wish to perform an operation in process on the database server to eliminate client/server network turnarounds. These operations are covered in the Server-Side Processing section of the Mongo Developers' Guide.

### *Explain*

A great way to get more information on the performance of your database queries is to use the explain plan feature. See the Explain doc page.

### *Hint*

While the mongo query optimizer often performs very well, explicit "hints" can be used to force mongo to use a specified index, potentially improving performance in some situations. When you have a collection indexed and are querying on multiple fields (and some of those fields are indexed), pass the index as a hint to the query.

To set the hint for a particular query, call the `hint()` function on the cursor before accessing any data, and specify a document with the key to be used in the query:

```
db.collection.find({user:u, foo:d}).hint({user:1});
```

**Be sure to Index**
For the above hints to work, you need to have run `ensureIndex()` to index the collection on the user field.

Some other examples, for an index on {a:1, b:1} named "a_1_b_1":

```
db.collection.find({a:4,b:5,c:6}).hint({a:1,b:1});
db.collection.find({a:4,b:5,c:6}).hint("a_1_b_1");
```

To force the query optimizer to not use indexes (do a table scan), use:

```
> db.collection.find().hint({$natural:1})
```

### *See Also*

- Query Optimizer
- currentOp()
- Sorting and Natural Order

## Explain


- Basics
- Output Fields
  - cursor
  - nscanned
  - nscannedObjects
  - nYields
  - n
  - millis
  - scanAndOrder
  - indexOnly
  - isMultiKey
- With Sharding
  - clusteredType
  - shards
  - nChunkSkips
  - millisTotal
  - millisAvg
  - numQueries
  - numShards
- See Also


#### Basics

A great way to get more information on the performance of your database queries is to use the `$explain` feature. This will display "explain plan" information about a query from the database.

When using the mongo shell, invoke the `explain()` method on a cursor. The result will be a document that contains the explain output. *Note that explain runs the actual query to determine the result.* If the query is slow, the explain will be slow too.

Some of the options below may not appear depending on the version of mongodb you are running.

```
> db.collection.find(query).explain()
```

provides information such as the following:

```
{
    "cursor" : "BasicCursor",
    "indexBounds" : [ ],
    "nscanned" : 57594,
    "nscannedObjects" : 57594,
    "nYields" : 2 ,
    "n" : 3 ,
    "millis" : 108,
    "indexOnly" : false,
    "isMultiKey" : false,
    "nChunkSkips" : 0
}
```

#### Output Fields

cursor

The type of cursor used for scanning.

- BasicCursor - indicates a table scan style operation
- BtreeCursor - an index was used. When an index is used, indexBounds will be set to indicate the key bounds for scanning in the index.

nscanned

Number of items (documents or index entries) examined. Items might be objects or index keys. If a "covered index" is involved, nscanned may be higher than nscannedObjects.

nscannedObjects

Number of documents scanned.

nYields

Number of times this query yielded the read lock to let waiting writes execute.

n

Number of documents matched (on all criteria specified).

millis

Time for the query to run, in milliseconds.

scanAndOrder

True if the index could not be used for sorting.

indexOnly

True if the results of the query can be returned using only the index. See SERVER-5759 for more information on the behavior of this value.

isMultiKey

If true, a multikey index was used.

#### With Sharding

In a sharded deployment, `explain` outputs some additional fields. An example:

```
"clusteredType" : "ParallelSort",
 "shards" : {
  "shard1:27017" : [
   {
    "cursor" : "BtreeCursor a_1",
    "nscanned" : 1,
    "nscannedObjects" : 1,
    "n" : 1,
    "millis" : 0,
    "nYields" : 0,
    "nChunkSkips" : 0,
    "isMultiKey" : false,
    "indexOnly" : false,
    "indexBounds" : {
     "a" : [
      [
       1,
       1
      ]
     ]
    }
   }
  ]
 },
 "n" : 1,
 "nChunkSkips" : 0,
 "nYields" : 0,
 "nscanned" : 1,
 "nscannedObjects" : 1,
 "millisTotal" : 0,
 "millisAvg" : 0,
 "numQueries" : 1,
 "numShards" : 1
```

clusteredType

- `ParallelSort` means all shards are accessed in parallel
- `SerialServer` means shards are queried one by one in order

shards

List of all the shards accessed during the query and the `explain` output for each shard.

nChunkSkips

The number of documents skipped because of active chunk migrations in a sharded system. Typically this will be zero. A number greater than zero is ok, but indicates a little bit of inefficiency.

millisTotal

Total time for the query to run, in milliseconds.

millisAvg

Average time for the query to run on each shard, in milliseconds.

numQueries

Total number of queries executed.

numShards

Total number of shards queried.

**See Also**

- Optimization
- Database Profiler
- Viewing and Terminating Current Operation

## Optimizing Object IDs


- Use the collections 'natural primary key' in the _id field.
- When possible, use _id values that are roughly in ascending order.
- Store Binary GUIDs as BinData, rather than as hex encoded strings
- Extract insertion times from _id rather than having a separate timestamp field.
- Sort by _id to sort by insertion time
- See Also


The `_id` field in a MongoDB document is very important and is always indexed for normal collections. This page lists some recommendations. Note that it is common to use the BSON ObjectID datatype for _id's, but the values of an `_id` field can be of any type.

Use the collections 'natural primary key' in the _id field.

_id's can be any type, so if your objects have a natural unique identifier, consider using that in _id to both save space and avoid an additional index.

When possible, use _id values that are roughly in ascending order.

If the _id's are in a somewhat well defined order, on inserts the entire b-tree for the _id index need not be loaded. BSON ObjectIds have this property.

Store Binary GUIDs as BinData, rather than as hex encoded strings

BSON includes a binary data datatype for storing byte arrays. Using this will make the id values, and their respective keys in the _id index, twice as small.

Note that unlike the BSON Object ID type (see above), most UUIDs do not have a rough ascending order, which creates additional caching needs for their index.

```
> // mongo shell bindata info:
> help misc
        b = new BinData(subtype,base64str)  create a BSON BinData value
        b.subtype()                         the BinData subtype (0..255)
        b.length()                          length of the BinData data in bytes
        b.hex()                             the data as a hex encoded string
        b.base64()                          the data as a base 64 encoded string
        b.toString()
```

Extract insertion times from _id rather than having a separate timestamp field.

The BSON ObjectId format provides documents with a creation timestamp (one second granularity) for free. Almost all drivers implement methods for extracting these timestamps; see the relevant api docs for details. In the shell:

```
> // mongo shell ObjectId methods
> help misc
        o = new ObjectId()      create a new ObjectId
        o.getTimestamp()        return timestamp derived from first 32 bits of the OID
        o.isObjectId()
        o.toString()
        o.equals(otherid)
```

Sort by _id to sort by insertion time

BSON ObjectId's begin with a timestamp. Thus sorting by _id, when using the ObjectID type, results in sorting by time. Note: granularity of the timestamp portion of the ObjectID is to one second only.

```
> // get 10 newest items
> db.mycollection.find().sort({id:-1}).limit(10);
```

See Also

- Object IDs

## Optimizing Storage of Small Objects

MongoDB records have a certain amount of overhead per object (BSON document) in a collection. This overhead is normally insignificant, but if your objects are tiny (just a few bytes, maybe one or two fields) it would not be. Below are some suggestions on how to optimize storage efficiently in such situations.

#### Using the _id Field Explicitly

Mongo automatically adds an object ID to each document and sets it to a unique value. Additionally this field in indexed. For tiny objects this takes up significant space.

The best way to optimize for this is to use _id explicitly. Take one of your fields which is unique for the collection and store its values in _id. By doing so, you have explicitly provided IDs. This will effectively eliminate the creation of a separate _id field. If your previously separate field was indexed, this eliminates an extra index too.

#### Using Small Field Names

Consider a record

```
{ last_name : "Smith", best_score: 3.9 }
```

The strings "last_name" and "best_score" will be stored in each object's BSON. Using shorter strings would save space:

```
{ lname : "Smith", score : 3.9 }
```

Would save 9 bytes per document. This of course reduces expressiveness to the programmer and is not recommended unless you have a collection where this is of significant concern.

Field names are not stored in indexes as indexes have a predefined structure. Thus, shortening field names will not help the size of indexes. In general it is not necessary to use short field names.

#### Combining Objects

Fundamentally, there is a certain amount of overhead per document in MongoDB. One technique is combining objects. In some cases you may be able to embed objects in other objects, perhaps as arrays of objects. If your objects are tiny this may work well, but will only make sense for certain use cases.

## Query Optimizer

The MongoDB query optimizer generates query plans for each query and then executes the plan to return results. Thus, MongoDB supports ad hoc queries much like say, Oracle or MySQL.

The database uses an interesting approach to query optimization. Traditional approaches (which tend to be cost-based and statistical) are not used, as these approaches have a couple of potential issues.

First, the optimizer might consistently pick a bad query plan. For example, there might be correlations in the data of which the optimizer is unaware. In a situation like this, the developer might use a query hint.

Also with the traditional approach, query plans can change in production with negative results. No one thinks rolling out new code without testing is a good idea. Yet often in a production system a query plan can change as the statistics in the database change on the underlying data. The query plan in effect may be a plan that never was invoked in QA. If it is slower than it should be, the application could experience an outage.

The MongoDB query optimizer is different. It is not cost based -- it does not model the cost of various queries. Instead, the optimizer simply tries different query plans and learn which ones work well. Of course, when the system tries a really bad plan, it may take an extremely long time to run. To solve this, *when testing new plans, MongoDB executes multiple query plans in parallel*. As soon as one finishes, it terminates the other executions, and the system has learned which plan is good. This works particularly well given the system is non-relational, which makes the space of possible query plans much smaller (as there are no joins).

Sometimes a plan which was working well can work poorly -- for example if the data in the database has changed, or if the parameter values to the query are different. In this case, if the query seems to be taking longer than usual, the database will once again run the query in parallel to try different plans.

This approach adds a little overhead, but has the advantage of being much better at worst-case performance.

Testing of queries repeats after 1,000 operations and also after certain manipulations of a collection occur (such as adding an index).

Query plan selection is based on a "query pattern". For example the query

```
{ x : 123 }
```

is treated as the same pattern as { x : <anothervalue> }.

#### See Also

- MongoDB hint() and explain() operators

## Querying

One of MongoDB's best capabilities is its support for dynamic (ad hoc) queries. Systems that support dynamic queries don't require any special indexing to find data; users can find data using any criteria. For relational databases, dynamic queries are the norm. If you're moving to MongoDB from a relational databases, you'll find that many SQL queries translate easily to MongoDB's document-based query language.


- Query Expression Objects
- Query Options
  - Field Selection
  - Sorting
  - Skip and Limit
  - slaveOk (Querying Secondaries)
- Cursors
- Quick Reference Card
- More info
- See Also

In MongoDB, just like in an RDBMS, creating appropriate indexes for queries is quite important for performance. See the Indexes page for more info.

### *Query Expression Objects*

MongoDB supports a number of query objects for fetching data. Queries are expressed as BSON documents which indicate a query pattern. For example, suppose we're using the MongoDB shell and want to return every document in the `users` collection. Our query would look like this:

```
db.users.find({})
```

In this case, our selector is an empty document, which matches every document in the collection. Here's a more selective example:

```
db.users.find({'last_name': 'Smith'})
```

Here our selector will match every document where the `last_name` attribute is 'Smith.'

MongoDB support a wide array of possible document selectors. For more examples, see the MongoDB Tutorial or the section on Advanced Queries. If you're working with MongoDB from a language driver, see the driver docs:

### *Query Options*

#### Field Selection

In addition to the query expression, MongoDB queries can take some additional arguments. For example, it's possible to request only certain fields be returned. If we just wanted the social security numbers of users with the last name of 'Smith,' then from the shell we could issue this query:

```
// retrieve ssn field for documents where last_name == 'Smith':
db.users.find({last_name: 'Smith'}, {'ssn': 1});

  // retrieve all fields *except* the thumbnail field, for all documents:
db.users.find({}, {thumbnail:0});
```

Note the `_id` field is always returned even when not explicitly requested.

#### Sorting

MongoDB queries can return sorted results. To return all documents and sort by last name in ascending order, we'd query like so:

```
db.users.find({}).sort({last_name: 1});
```

#### Skip and Limit

MongoDB also supports **skip** and **limit** for easy paging. Here we skip the first 20 last names, and limit our result set to 10:

```
db.users.find().skip(20).limit(10);
db.users.find({}, {}, 10, 20); // same as above, but less clear
```

#### slaveOk (Querying Secondaries)

When querying a replica set, drivers route their requests to the primary mongod by default; to perform a query against an (arbitrarily-selected) secondary, the query can be run with the slaveOk option. See the slaveOk page for more information.

### *Cursors*

Database queries, performed with the find() method, technically work by returning a *cursor*. Cursors are then used to iteratively retrieve all the documents returned by the query. For example, we can iterate over a cursor in the mongo shell like this:

```
> var cur = db.example.find();
> cur.forEach( function(x) { print(tojson(x))});
{"n" : 1 , "_id" : "497ce96f395f2f052a494fd4"}
{"n" : 2 , "_id" : "497ce971395f2f052a494fd5"}
{"n" : 3 , "_id" : "497ce973395f2f052a494fd6"}
>
```

### *Quick Reference Card*

Download the Query and Update Modifier Quick Reference Card

### *More info*

This was just an introduction to querying in Mongo. More information:

- Mongo Query Language
- Querying and nulls
- Retrieving a Subset of Fields
- slaveOk
- Advanced Queries
- Dot Notation (Reaching into Objects)
- Full Text Search in Mongo
- min and max Query Specifiers
- OR operations in query expressions
- Queries and Cursors
- Server-side Code Execution
- Sorting and Natural Order
- Aggregation

### *See Also*

- Advanced Queries
- Indexes
- Queries and Cursors
- Query Optimizer

## Mongo Query Language

Queries in MongoDB are expressed as JSON (BSON). Usually we think of query object as the equivalent of a SQL "WHERE" clause:

```
> db.users.find( { x : 3, y : "abc" } ).sort({x:1}); // select * from users where x=3 and y='abc'
order by x asc;
```

However, the MongoDB server actually looks at all the query parameters (ordering, limit, etc.) as a single object. In the above example from the mongo shell, the shell is adding some syntactic sugar for us. Many of the drivers do this too. For example the above query could also be written:

```
> db.users.find( { $query : { x : 3, y : "abc" }, $orderby : { x : 1 } } );
```

The possible specifies in the query object are:

- $query - the evaluation or "where" expression
- $orderby - sort order desired
- $hint - hint to query optimizer
- $explain - if true, return explain plan results instead of query results
- $snapshot - if true, "snapshot mode"

## Querying and nulls

The `null` value in javascript carries different meanings. When a query involves `null`, this can have multiple interpretations.

Take the following examples:

```
> db.foo.insert( { x : 1, y : 1 } )
> db.foo.insert( { x : 2, y : "string" } )
> db.foo.insert( { x : 3, y : null } )
> db.foo.insert( { x : 4 } )

// Query #1
> db.foo.find( { "y" : null } )
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4dc1975312c677fc83b5629f"), "x" : 3, "y" : null }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4dc1975a12c677fc83b562a0"), "x" : 4 }

// Query #2
> db.foo.find( { "y" : { $type : 10 } } )
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4dc1975312c677fc83b5629f"), "x" : 3, "y" : null }

// Query #3
> db.foo.find( { "y" : { $exists : false } } )
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4dc1975a12c677fc83b562a0"), "x" : 4 }
```

To summarize the three queries:

1. documents where y has the value `null` **or** where y does not exist
2. documents where y has the value `null`
3. documents where y does not exist

## Retrieving a Subset of Fields


- Field Negation
    - The _id Field
- Mixing Includes/Excludes
- Covered Indexes
- Dot Notation
- Retrieving a Subrange of Array Elements
- See Also


By default on a find operation, the entire object is returned. However we may also request that only certain fields be returned. This is somewhat analogous to the list of [column specifiers in a SQL SELECT statement (projection).

```
// select z from things where x="john"
db.things.find( { x : "john" }, { z : 1 } );
```

#### Field Negation

We can say "all fields except x" – for example to remove specific fields that you know will be large:

```
// get all posts about 'tennis' but without the comments field
db.posts.find( { tags : 'tennis' }, { comments : 0 } );
```

#### *The `_id` Field*

The `_id` field will be included by default.

If you do not want it, you must exclude it specifically. (Typically you will want to do that if using the covered index feature described below.)

```
// get all posts about 'tennis' but without the _id field
db.posts.find( { tags : 'tennis' }, { _id : 0 } );
```

#### Mixing Includes/Excludes

You cannot mix them, with the exception of the `_id` field. Note also that the $slice operator does not conflict with exclusions on other fields.

#### Covered Indexes

**v1.8+**

MongoDB can return data from the index only when the query only involves keys which are present in the index. Not inspecting the actual documents can speed up responses considerably since the index is compact in size and usually fits in RAM, or is sequentially located on disk.

Mongod will automatically use covered index when it can. But be sure that:

- you provide list of fields to return, so that it can determine that it can be covered by index
- you must explicitly exclude the _id field by using {_id: 0} (unless the index includes that)
- as soon as you insert one array value for one of the index keys, the index will immediately become a multikey index and this disables covered index functionality
- use Explain to determine if the covered index is used: the indexOnly field should be true

```
// do a login with a covered index, returning the users roles/groups
> db.users.ensureIndex( { username : 1, password : 1, roles : 1} );
> db.users.save({username: "joe", password: "pass", roles: 2})
> db.users.save({username: "liz", password: "pass2", roles: 4})
> db.users.find({username: "joe"}, {_id: 0, roles: 1})
{ "roles" : 2 }
> db.users.find({username: "joe"}, {_id: 0, roles: 1}).explain()
{
 "cursor" : "BtreeCursor username_1_password_1_roles_1",
...
 "indexOnly" : true,
...
}
```

#### Dot Notation

You can retrieve partial sub-objects via Dot Notation.

```
> t.find({})
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c23f0486dad1c3a68457d20"), "x" : { "y" : 1, "z" : [ 1, 2, 3 ] } }
> t.find({}, {'x.y':1})
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c23f0486dad1c3
a68457d20"), "x" : { "y" : 1 } }
```

#### Retrieving a Subrange of Array Elements

You can use the $slice operator to retrieve a subrange of elements in an array.

```
db.posts.find({}, {comments:{$slice: 5}}) // first 5 comments
db.posts.find({}, {comments:{$slice: -5}}) // last 5 comments
db.posts.find({}, {comments:{$slice: [20, 10]}}) // skip 20, limit 10
db.posts.find({}, {comments:{$slice: [-20, 10]}}) // 20 from end, limit 10
```

The examples above will return all fields and only the subset of elements based on the `$slice` for that field.

Filtering with `$slice` does not affect other fields inclusion/exclusion. It only applies within the array being sliced.

```
db.posts.find({}, {_id:1, comments:{$slice: 5}}) // first 5 comments, and the _id field only
```

#### See Also

- example slice1

## slaveOk

**Redirection Notice**
This page should redirect to http://docs.mongodb.org/manual/applications/replication/#read-preference.

## Advanced Queries


- Intro
- Retrieving a Subset of Fields
- Conditional Operators
  - <, <=, >, >=
  - $all
  - $exists
  - $mod
  - $ne
  - $in
  - $nin
  - $nor
  - $or
  - $and
  - $size
  - $type
- Regular Expressions
- Value in an Array
  - $elemMatch
- Value in an Embedded Object
- Meta operator: `$not`
- Javascript Expressions and `$where`
- Cursor Methods
  - `count()`
  - `limit()`
  - `skip()`
  - `snapshot()`
  - `sort()`
  - `batchSize()`
- Meta query operators
  - $returnKey
  - $maxScan
  - $orderby
  - $explain
  - $snapshot
  - $min and $max

    - $showDiskLoc
    - $hint
    - $comment
- group()
- See Also


In MongoDB, just like in an RDBMS, creating appropriate indexes for queries is quite important for performance. See the Indexes page for more info.

**Intro**

MongoDB offers a rich query environment with lots of features. This page lists some of those features.

Queries in MongoDB are represented as JSON-style objects, very much like the documents we actually store in the database.  For example:

```
// i.e., select * from things where x=3 and y="foo"
db.things.find( { x : 3, y : "foo" } );
```

Note that any of the operators on this page can be combined in the same query document. For example, to find all document where j is not equal to 3 and k is greater than 10, you'd query like so:

```
db.things.find({j: {$ne: 3}, k: {$gt: 10} });
```

Unless otherwise noted, the operations below can be used on array elements in the same way that they can be used on "normal" fields. For example, suppose we have some documents such as:

```
> db.things.insert({colors : ["blue", "black"]})
> db.things.insert({colors : ["yellow", "orange", "red"]})
```

Then we can find documents that aren't "red" using:

```
> db.things.find({colors : {$ne : "red"}})
{"_id": ObjectId("4dc9acea045bbf04348f9691"), "colors": ["blue","black"]}
```

**Retrieving a Subset of Fields**

See Retrieving a Subset of Fields

**Conditional Operators**

**<, <=, >, >=**

Use these special forms for greater than and less than comparisons in queries, since they have to be represented in the query document:

```
db.collection.find({ "field" : { $gt: value } } );   // greater than  : field > value
db.collection.find({ "field" : { $lt: value } } );   // less than  :  field < value
db.collection.find({ "field" : { $gte: value } } );  // greater than or equal to : field >= value
db.collection.find({ "field" : { $lte: value } } );  // less than or equal to : field <= value
```

For example:

```
db.things.find({j : {$lt: 3}});
db.things.find({j : {$gte: 4}});
```

You can also combine these operators to specify ranges:

```
db.collection.find({ "field" : { $gt: value1, $lt: value2 } } );    // value1 < field < value
```

***$all***

The `$all` operator is similar to `$in`, but instead of matching any value in the specified array all values in the array must be matched. For example, the object

```
{ a: [ 1, 2, 3 ] }
```

would be matched by

```
db.things.find( { a: { $all: [ 2, 3 ] } } );
```

but not

```
db.things.find( { a: { $all: [ 2, 3, 4 ] } } );
```

An array can have more elements than those specified by the `$all` criteria. `$all` specifies a minimum set of elements that must be matched.

***$exists***

Check for existence (or lack thereof) of a field.

```
db.things.find( { a : { $exists : true } } ); // return object if a is present
db.things.find( { a : { $exists : false } } ); // return if a is missing
```

Before v2.0, $exists is not able to use an index. Indexes on other fields are still used.
$exists is not very efficient even with an index, and esp. with {`$exists:true`} since it will effectively have to scan all indexed values.

***$mod***

The `$mod` operator allows you to do fast modulo queries to replace a common case for where clauses. For example, the following $where query:

```
db.things.find( "this.a % 10 == 1")
```

can be replaced by:

```
db.things.find( { a : { $mod : [ 10 , 1 ] } } )
```

***$ne***

Use $ne for "not equals".

```
db.things.find( { x : { $ne : 3 } } );
```

***$in***

The `$in` operator is analogous to the SQL `IN` modifier, allowing you to specify an array of possible matches.

```
db.collection.find( { field : { $in : array } } );
```

Let's consider a couple of examples. From our *things* collection, we could choose to get a subset of documents based upon the value of the 'j' key:

```
db.things.find({j:{$in: [2,4,6]}});
```

Suppose the collection `updates` is a list of social network style news items; we want to see the 10 most recent updates from our friends. We could invoke:

```
db.updates.ensureIndex( { ts : 1 } ); // ts == timestamp
var myFriends = myUserObject.friends; // let's assume this gives us an array of DBRef's of my friends
var latestUpdatesForMe = db.updates.find( { user : { $in : myFriends } } ).sort( { ts : -1 }
).limit(10);
```

The target field's value can also be an array; if so then the document matches if any of the elements of the array's value matches any of the $in field's values (see the Multikeys page for more information.

***$nin***

The `$nin` operator is similar to `$in` except that it selects objects for which the specified field does not have any value in the specified array. For example

```
db.things.find({j:{$nin: [2,4,6]}});
```

would match `{j:1,b:2}` but not `{j:2,c:9}`.

***$nor***

The `$nor` operator lets you use a boolean or expression to do queries. You give `$nor` a list of expressions, none of which can satisfy the query.

***$or***

**v1.6+**

The `$or` operator lets you use boolean or in a query. You give `$or` an array of expressions, any of which can satisfy the query.

Simple:

```
db.foo.find( { $or : [ { a : 1 } , { b : 2 } ] } )
```

With another field

```
db.foo.find( { name : "bob" , $or : [ { a : 1 } , { b : 2 } ] } )
```

The `$or` operator retrieves matches for each or clause individually and eliminates duplicates when returning results.

`$or` can be nested as of v2.0, however nested `$or` clauses are not handled as efficiently by the query optimizer as top level `$or` clauses.

***$and***

**v2.0+**

The `$and` operator lets you use boolean and in a query. You give `$and` an array of expressions, all of which must match to satisfy the query.

```
db.foo.insert( { a: [ 1, 10 ] } )
db.foo.find( { $and: [ { a: 1 }, { a: { $gt: 5 } } ] } )
```

In the above example documents with an element of a having a value of a equal to 1 and a value of a greater than 5 will be returned. Thus the inserted document will be returned given the multikey semantics of MongoDB.

***$size***

The `$size` operator matches any array with the specified number of elements. The following example would match the object `{a:["foo"]}`, since that array has just one element:

```
db.things.find( { a : { $size: 1 } } );
```

You cannot use `$size` to find a range of sizes (for example: arrays with more than 1 element). If you need to query for a range, create an extra `size` field that you increment when you add elements. Indexes cannot be used for the $size portion of a query, although if other query expressions are included indexes may be used to search for matches on that portion of the query expression.

***$type***

The `$type` operator matches values based on their BSON type.

```
db.things.find( { a : { $type : 2 } } ); // matches if a is a string
db.things.find( { a : { $type : 16 } } ); // matches if a is an int
```

Possible types are:

| Type Name | Type Number |
|---|---|
| Double | 1 |
| String | 2 |
| Object | 3 |
| Array | 4 |
| Binary data | 5 |
| Object id | 7 |
| Boolean | 8 |
| Date | 9 |
| Null | 10 |
| Regular expression | 11 |
| JavaScript code | 13 |
| Symbol | 14 |
| JavaScript code with scope | 15 |
| 32-bit integer | 16 |
| Timestamp | 17 |
| 64-bit integer | 18 |
| Min key | 255 |
| Max key | 127 |

For more information on types and BSON in general, see http://www.bsonspec.org.

**Regular Expressions**

You may use regexes in database query expressions:

```
db.customers.find( { name : /acme.*corp/i } );
db.customers.find( { name : { $regex : 'acme.*corp', $options: 'i' } } );
```

If you need to combine the regex with another operator, you need to use the `$regex` clause. For example, to find the customers where name matches the above regex but does not include `'acmeblahcorp'`, you would do the following:

```
db.customers.find( { name : { $regex : /acme.*corp/i, $nin : ['acmeblahcorp'] } } );
```

Note that `$regex` queries are escaped slightly differently than JavaScript native regular expressions. For example:

```
> db.x.insert({someId : "123[456]"})
> db.x.find({someId : /123\[456\]/}) // use "\" to escape
> db.x.find({someId : {$regex : "123\\[456\\]"}}) // use "\\" to escape
```

An index on the field queried by regexp can increase performance significantly, as follows:

- Simple prefix queries (also called rooted regexps) like `/^prefix/` will make efficient use of the index (much like most SQL databases that use indexes for a `LIKE 'prefix%'` expression). This only works if the expression is left-rooted and the `i` (case-insensitivity) flag is not used.
- All other queries will not make an efficient use of the index: all values in the index will be scanned and tested against the regular expression.

While `/^a/`, `/^a.*/`, and `/^a.*$/` are equivalent, they will have different performance characteristics. The latter two will be slower as they have to scan the whole string. The first format can stop scanning after the prefix is matched.

MongoDB uses PCRE for regular expressions. Valid flags are:

- `i` - Case insensitive. Letters in the pattern match both upper and lower case letters.
- `m` - Multiline. By default, Mongo treats the subject string as consisting of a single line of characters (even if it actually contains newlines). The "start of line" metacharacter (^) matches only at the start of the string, while the "end of line" metacharacter ($) matches only at the end of the string, or before a terminating newline.
  When `m` it is set, the "start of line" and "end of line" constructs match immediately following or immediately before internal newlines in the subject string, respectively, as well as at the very start and end. If there are no newlines in a subject string, or no occurrences of ^ or $ in a pattern, setting `m` has no effect.
- `x` - Extended. If set, whitespace data characters in the pattern are totally ignored except when escaped or inside a character class. Whitespace does not include the VT character (code 11). In addition, characters between an unescaped # outside a character class and the next newline, inclusive, are also ignored.
  This option makes it possible to include comments inside complicated patterns. Note, however, that this applies only to data characters. Whitespace characters may never appear within special character sequences in a pattern, for example within the sequence `(?(` which introduces a conditional subpattern.
- `s` - Dot all. **New in 1.9.0**. Allows the dot (`.`) to match all characters including new lines. By default, `/a.*b/` will not match the string `"apple\nbanana"`, but `/a.*b/s` will.

Note that javascript regex objects only support the `i` and `m` options (and `g` which is ignored by mongod). Therefore if you want to use other options, you will need to use the $regex, $options query syntax.

#### Value in an Array

To look for the value "red" in an array field `colors`:

```
db.things.find( { colors : "red" } );
```

That is, when "colors" is inspected, if it is an array, each value in the array is checked.  This technique may be mixed with the embedded object technique below.

#### *$elemMatch*

**v1.4+**

Use $elemMatch to check if an element in an array matches the specified match expression.

```
> t.find( { x : { $elemMatch : { a : 1, b : { $gt : 1 } } } } )
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4b5783300334000000000aa9"),
  "x" : [ { "a" : 1, "b" : 3 }, 7, { "b" : 99 }, { "a" : 11 } ]
}
```

Note that a single array element must match all the criteria specified; thus, the following query is semantically different in that each criteria can match a different element in the x array:

```
> t.find( { "x.a" : 1, "x.b" : { $gt : 1 } } )
```

See the dot notation page for more.

> ⚠ You only need to use this when more than one field must be matched in the array element.

A frequently asked question is how to query for a range.

```
> t.find( { x: { $gt: 2, $lt: 5 } } )
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4ffb67009a563373b772e33c"), "x" : 3 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4ffb67009a563373b772e33d"), "x" : [ 4 ] }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4ffb67009a563373b772e33e"), "x" : [ 1, 6 ] }
```

As a range query, the above correctly matches single values, but probably doesn't do what you expect for arrays – this is why $elemMatch is needed for range queries on an array.

```
> t.find({ x: { $elemMatch: { $gt: 2, $lt: 5 } } })
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4ffb67009a563373b772e33d"), "x" : [ 4 ] }
```

#### Value in an Embedded Object

For example, to look `author.name=="joe"` in a postings collection with embedded author objects:

```
db.postings.find( { "author.name" : "joe" } );
```

See the dot notation page for more.

#### Meta operator: `$not`

The `$not` meta operator can be used to negate the check performed by a standard operator. For example:

```
db.customers.find( { name : { $not : /acme.*corp/i } } );
```

```
db.things.find( { a : { $not : { $mod : [ 10 , 1 ] } } } );
```

The `$not` meta operator can **only** affect *other operators*. The following **do not** work. For such a syntax use the `$ne` operator.

```
db.things.find( { a : { $not : true } } ); // syntax error
```

> ⚠ $not is not supported for regular expressions specified using the {`$regex: ...`} syntax. When using $not, all regular expressions should be passed using the native BSON type (e.g. {`"$not": re.compile("acme.*corp")`} in PyMongo)

#### Javascript Expressions and `$where`

In addition to the structured query syntax shown so far, you may specify query expressions as Javascript. To do so, pass a string containing a Javascript expression to `find()`, or assign such a string to the query object member `$where`. The database will evaluate this expression for each object scanned. When the result is true, the object is returned in the query results.

For example, the following mongo shell statements all do the same thing:

```
> db.myCollection.find( { a : { $gt: 3 } } );
> db.myCollection.find( { $where: "this.a > 3" } );
> db.myCollection.find("this.a > 3");
> f = function() { return this.a > 3; } db.myCollection.find(f);
```

You may mix mongo query expressions and a $where clause. In that case you must use the $where syntax, e.g.:

```
> db.myCollection.find({registered:true, $where:"this.a>3"})
```

Javascript executes more slowly than the native operators listed on this page, but is very flexible. See the server-side processing page for more information.

**Cursor Methods**

***count()***

The `count()` method returns the number of objects matching the query specified. It is specially optimized to perform the count in the MongoDB server, rather than on the client side for speed and efficiency:

```
nstudents = db.students.find({'address.state' : 'CA'}).count();
```

Note that you can achieve the same result with the following, but the following is slow and inefficient as it requires all documents to be put into memory on the client, and then counted. Don't do this:

```
nstudents = db.students.find({'address.state' : 'CA'}).toArray().length; // VERY BAD: slow and uses
excess memory
```

On a query using skip() and limit(), count ignores these parameters by default.  Use count(true) to have it consider the skip and limit values in the calculation.

```
n = db.students.find().skip(20).limit(10).count(true);
```

***limit()***

`limit()` is analogous to the LIMIT statement in MySQL: it specifies a maximum number of results to return. For best performance, use `limit()` whenever possible. Otherwise, the database may return more objects than are required for processing.

```
db.students.find().limit(10).forEach( function(student) { print(student.name + "<p>"); } );
```

In the shell (and most drivers), a limit of `0` is equivalent to setting no limit at all.

***skip()***

The `skip()` expression allows one to specify at which object the database should begin returning results. This is often useful for implementing "paging". Here's an example of how it might be used in a JavaScript application:

```
function printStudents(pageNumber, nPerPage) {
   print("Page: " + pageNumber);
   db.students.find().skip((pageNumber-1)*nPerPage).limit(nPerPage).forEach( function(student) {
print(student.name + "<p>"); } );
}
```

**Paging Costs**
Unfortunately skip can be (very) costly and requires the server to walk from the beginning of the collection, or index, to get to the offset/skip position before it can start returning the page of data (limit). As the page number increases skip will become slower and more cpu intensive, and possibly IO bound, with larger collections.

Range based paging provides better use of indexes but does not allow you to easily jump to a specific page.

***snapshot()***

Indicates use of snapshot mode for the query. Snapshot mode assures no duplicates are returned, or objects missed, which were present at both

the start and end of the query's execution (even if the object were updated). If an object is new during the query, or deleted during the query, it may or may not be returned, even with snapshot mode.

Note that short query responses (less than 1MB) are effectively snapshotted.

Currently, snapshot mode may not be used with sorting or explicit hints.

For more information, see How to do Snapshotted Queries in the Mongo Database.

#### `sort()`

`sort()` is analogous to the ORDER BY statement in SQL - it requests that items be returned in a particular order. We pass `sort()` a key pattern which indicates the desired order for the result.

```
db.myCollection.find().sort( { ts : -1 } ); // sort by ts, descending order
```

`sort()` may be combined with the `limit()` function. In fact, if you do not have a relevant index for the specified key pattern, `limit()` is recommended as there is a limit on the size of sorted results when an index is not used. Without a `limit()`, or an index, a full in-memory sort must be done. However, using a `limit()` reduces the required memory footprint and increases the speed of the operation by using an optimized sorting algorithm.

#### `batchSize()`

`batchSize()` determines the number of documents MongoDB returns in each batch to the client. MongoDB considers batchSize(), limit(), and the size in bytes of each document when deciding how many documents to send in each batch.

```
db.myCollection.find().batchSize(10);
```

The shell and most drivers present results to your application code as if they came in a single batch, so you normally do not need to think about batchSize.

#### Meta query operators

#### *$returnKey*

Only return the index key:

```
db.foo.find()._addSpecial("$returnKey" , true )
```

#### *$maxScan*

Limit the number of items to scan:

```
db.foo.find()._addSpecial( "$maxScan" , 50 )
```

#### *$orderby*

Sort results:

```
db.foo.find()._addSpecial( "$orderby", {x : -1} )
// same as
db.foo.find().sort({x:-1})
```

#### *$explain*

Explain the query instead of actually returning the results:

```
db.foo.find()._addSpecial( "$explain", true )
// same as
db.foo.find().explain()
```

#### *$snapshot*

Snapshot query:

```
db.foo.find()._addSpecial( "$snapshot", true )
// same as
db.foo.find().snapshot()
```

#### *$min and $max*

Set index bounds (see min and max Query Specifiers for details):

```
db.foo.find()._addSpecial("$min" , {x: -20})._addSpecial("$max" , { x : 200 })
```

#### *$showDiskLoc*

Show disk location of results:

```
db.foo.find()._addSpecial("$showDiskLoc" , true)
```

#### *$hint*

Force query to use the given index:

```
db.foo.find()._addSpecial("$hint", {_id : 1})
```

#### *$comment*

You can put a $comment field on a query to make looking in the profiler logs simpler.

```
db.foo.find()._addSpecial( "$comment" , "some comment to help find a query" )
```

#### `group()`

The `group()` method is analogous to GROUP BY in SQL. `group()` is more flexible, actually, allowing the specification of arbitrary reduction operations. See the Aggregation section of the Mongo Developers' Guide for more information.

#### See Also

- Indexes
- Optimizing Queries (including explain() and hint())

SDASDSSDD

## Dot Notation (Reaching into Objects)


- Dot Notation vs. Subobjects
- Array Element by Position
- Matching with $elemMatch
- See Also


MongoDB is designed for storing JSON-style objects.  The database understands the structure of these objects and can reach into them to evaluate query expressions.

Let's suppose we have some objects of the form:

```
> db.persons.findOne()
{ name: "Joe", address: { city: "San Francisco", state: "CA" } ,
  likes: [ 'scuba', 'math', 'literature' ] }
```

Querying on a top-level field is straightforward enough using Mongo's JSON-style query objects:

```
> db.persons.find( { name : "Joe" } )
```

But what about when we need to reach into embedded objects and arrays? This involves a bit different way of thinking about queries than one would do in a traditional relational DBMS. To reach into embedded objects, we use a "dot notation":

```
> db.persons.find( { "address.state" : "CA" } )
```

Reaching into arrays is implicit: if the field being queried is an array, the database automatically assumes the caller intends to look for a value within the array:

```
> db.persons.find( { likes : "math" } )
```

We can mix these styles too, as in this more complex example:

```
> db.blogposts.findOne()
{ title : "My First Post", author: "Jane",
  comments : [{ by: "Abe", text: "First" },
              { by : "Ada", text : "Good post" } ]
}
> db.blogposts.find( { "comments.by" : "Ada" } )
```

We can also create indexes of keys on these fields:

```
db.persons.ensureIndex( { "address.state" : 1 } );
db.blogposts.ensureIndex( { "comments.by" : 1 } );
```

***Dot Notation vs. Subobjects***

Suppose there is an author id, as well as name. To store the author field, we can use an object:

```
> db.blog.save({ title : "My First Post", author: {name : "Jane", id : 1}})
```

If we want to find any authors named Jane, we use the notation above:

```
> db.blog.findOne({"author.name" : "Jane"})
```

To match only objects with these exact keys and values, we use an object:

```
db.blog.findOne({"author" : {"name" : "Jane", "id" : 1}})
```

Note that

```
db.blog.findOne({"author" : {"name" : "Jane"}})
```

will not match, as subobjects have to match exactly (it would match an object with one field: `{"name" : "Jane"}`). Note that the embedded document must also have the same key order, so:

```
db.blog.findOne({"author" : {"id" : 1, "name" : "Jane"}})
```

will not match, either. This can make subobject matching unwieldy in languages whose default document representation is unordered.

#### *Array Element by Position*

Array elements also may be accessed by specific array position:

```
// i.e. comments[0].by == "Abe"
> db.blogposts.find( { "comments.0.by" : "Abe" } )
```

(The above examples use the mongo shell's Javascript syntax. The same operations can be done in any language for which Mongo has a driver available.)

#### *Matching with $elemMatch*

Using the $elemMatch query operator (mongod >= 1.3.1), you can match an entire document within an array. This is best illustrated with an example. Suppose you have the following two documents in your collection:

```
// Document 1
{ "foo" : [
      {
        "shape" : "square",
        "color" : "purple",
        "thick" : false
      },
      {
        "shape" : "circle",
        "color" : "red",
        "thick" : true
      }
] }


// Document 2
{ "foo" : [
      {
        "shape" : "square",
        "color" : "red",
        "thick" : true
      },
      {
        "shape" : "circle",
        "color" : "purple",
        "thick" : false
      }
] }
```

You want to query for a purple square, and so you write the following:

```
db.foo.find({"foo.shape": "square", "foo.color": "purple"})
```

The problem with this query is that it will match the second in addition to matching the first document. In other words, the standard query syntax won't restrict itself to a single document within the `foo` array. As mentioned above, subobjects have to match exactly, so

```
db.foo.find({foo: {"shape": "square", "color": "purple"} } )
```

won't help either, since there's a third attribute specifying thickness.

To match an entire document within the foo array, you need to use $elemMatch. To properly query for a purple square, you'd use $elemMatch like so:

```
db.foo.find({foo: {"$elemMatch": {shape: "square", color: "purple"}}})
```

The query will return the first document, which contains the purple square you're looking for.

***See Also***

- Advanced Queries
- Multikeys

## Full Text Search in Mongo


- Introduction
- Multikeys (Indexing Values in an Array)
- Text Search
- Comparison to Full Text Search Engines
- Real World Examples


**Introduction**

Mongo provides some functionality that is useful for text search and tagging.

**Multikeys (Indexing Values in an Array)**

The Mongo multikey feature can automatically index arrays of values. Tagging is a good example of where this feature is useful. Suppose you have an article object/document which is tagged with some category names:

```
obj = {
  name: "Apollo",
  text: "Some text about Apollo moon landings",
  tags: [ "moon", "apollo", "spaceflight" ]
}
```

and that this object is stored in `db.articles`. The command

```
db.articles.ensureIndex( { tags: 1 } );
```

will index all the tags on the document, and create index entries for "moon", "apollo" and "spaceflight" for that document.

You may then query on these items in the usual way:

```
> print(db.articles.findOne( { tags: "apollo" } ).name);
Apollo
```

The database creates an index entry for each item in the array. Note an array with many elements (hundreds or thousands) can make inserts very expensive. (Although for the example above, alternate implementations are equally expensive.)

**Text Search**

It is fairly easy to implement basic full text search using multikeys. What we recommend is having a field that has all of the keywords in it, something like:

```
{ title : "this is fun" ,
  _keywords : [ "this" , "is" , "fun" ]
}
```

Your code must split the title above into the keywords before saving.  Note that this code (which is not part of Mongo DB) could do stemming, etc. too. (Perhaps someone in the community would like to write a standard module that does this...)

#### Comparison to Full Text Search Engines

MongoDB has interesting functionality that makes certain search functions easy. That said, it is not a dedicated full text search engine.

For example, dedicated engines provide the following capabilities:

- built-in text stemming
- ranking of queries matching various numbers of terms (can be done with MongoDB, but requires user supplied code to do so)
- bulk index building

Bulk index building makes building indexes fast, but has the downside of not being realtime. MongoDB is particularly well suited for problems where the search should be done in realtime. Traditional tools are often not good for this use case.

#### Real World Examples

The Business Insider web site uses MongoDB for its blog search function in production.

Mark Watson's opinions on Java, Ruby, Lisp, AI, and the Semantic Web - A recipe example in Ruby.

Full text search with MongoDB at Flowdock

## min and max Query Specifiers

The `min()` and `max()` functions may be used in conjunction with an index to constrain query matches to those having index keys between the min and max keys specified. The `min()` and `max()` functions may be used individually or in conjunction. The index to be used may be specified with a `hint()` or one may be inferred from pattern of the keys passed to `min()` and/or `max()`.

```
db.f.find().min({name:"barry"}}.max({name:"larry"}).hint({name:1});
db.f.find().min({name:"barry"}}.max({name:"larry"});
db.f.find().min({last_name:"smith",first_name:"john"}};
```

The currently supported way of using this functionality is as describe above. We document hereafter a way that we could potentially support in the future.

If you're using the standard query syntax, you must distinguish between the `$min` and `$max` keys and the query selector itself. See here:

```
db.f.find({$min: {name:"barry"}, $max: {name:"larry"}, $query:{}});
```

The min() value is included in the range and the max() value is excluded.

Normally, it is much preferred to use $gte and $lt rather than to use min and max, as min and max require a corresponding index.  Min and max are primarily useful for compound keys: it is difficult to express the last_name/first_name example above without this feature (it can be done using $where).

min and max exist primarily to support the mongos (sharding) process.

## OR operations in query expressions

Query objects in Mongo by default AND expressions together.

#### *$in*

The $in operator indicates a "where value in ..." expression.  For expressions of the form x == a OR x == b, this can be represented as

```
{ x : { $in : [ a, b ] } }
```

#### *$or*

v1.5.3+

The `$or` operator lets you use a boolean or expression to do queries. You give $or a list of expressions, any of which can satisfy the query.

Simple:

```
db.foo.find( { $or : [ { a : 1 } , { b : 2 } ] } )
```

With another field

```
db.foo.find( { name : "bob" , $or : [ { a : 1 } , { b : 2 } ] } )
```

The `$or` operator retrieves matches for each or clause individually and eliminates duplicates when returning results.

#### *$where*

We can provide arbitrary Javascript expressiosn to the server via the $where operator. This provides a means to perform OR operations. For example in the mongo shell one might invoke:

```
db.mycollection.find( { $where : function() { return this.a == 3 || this.b == 4; } } );
```

The following syntax is briefer and also works; however, if additional structured query components are present, you will need the $where form:

```
db.mycollection.find( function() { return this.a == 3 || this.b == 4; } );
```

#### See Also

- Advanced Queries

## Queries and Cursors

Queries to MongoDB return a cursor, which can be iterated to retrieve results. The exact way to query will vary with language driver. Details below focus on queries from the MongoDB shell (i.e. the `mongo` process).

The shell `find()` method returns a cursor object which we can then iterate to retrieve specific documents from the result. We use `hasNext()` and `next()` methods for this purpose.

```
for( var c = db.parts.find(); c.hasNext(); ) {
   print( c.next());
}
```

Additionally in the shell, `forEach()` may be used with a cursor:

```
db.users.find().forEach( function(u) { print("user: " + u.name); } );
```

### *Topics:*


- *Topics:*
  - *Array Mode in the Shell*
  - *Getting a Single Item*
  - *Querying Embedded Objects*
  - *Greater Than / Less Than*
  - *Latent Cursors and Snapshotting*
  - *Execution of queries in batches*
  - *Performance implications*
  - *Auditing allocated cursors*
  - *Closing and Timeouts*
  - *See Also*


#### Array Mode in the Shell

Note that in some languages, like JavaScript, the driver supports an "array mode". Please check your driver documentation for specifics.

In the db shell, to use the cursor in array mode, use array index [] operations and the `length` property.

Array mode will load all data into RAM up to the highest index requested. Thus it should ***not*** be used for any query which can return very large amounts of data: you will run out of memory on the client.

You may also call `toArray()` on a cursor. `toArray()` will load all objects queries into RAM.

#### Getting a Single Item

The shell `findOne()` method fetches a single item. Null is returned if no item is found.

`findOne()` is equivalent in functionality to:

```
function findOne(coll, query) {
    var cursor = coll.find(query).limit(1);
    return cursor.hasNext() ? cursor.next() : null;
}
```

**Tip:** If you only need one row back and multiple match, `findOne()` is efficient, as it performs the `limit()` operation, which limits the objects returned from the database to one.

#### Querying Embedded Objects

To find an exact match of an entire embedded object, simply query for that object:

```
db.order.find( { shipping: { carrier: "usps" } } );
```

The above query will work if { carrier: "usps" } is an exact match for the entire contained shipping object. If you wish to match any sub-object with `shipping.carrier == "usps"`, use this syntax:

```
db.order.find( { "shipping.carrier" : "usps" } );
```

See the dot notation docs for more information.

#### Greater Than / Less Than

```
db.myCollection.find( { a : { $gt : 3 } } );
db.myCollection.find( { a : { $gte :3 } } );
db.myCollection.find( { a : { $lt :3 } } );
db.myCollection.find( { a : { $lte :3 } } ); // a <= 3
```

#### Latent Cursors and Snapshotting

A latent cursor has (in addition to an initial access) a latent access that occurs after an intervening write operation on the database collection (i.e., an insert, update, or delete). Under most circumstances, the database supports these operations.

Conceptually, a cursor has a current position. If you delete the item at the current position, the cursor automatically skips its current position forward to the next item.

MongoDB cursors do not provide a snapshot: if other write operations occur during the life of your cursor, it is unspecified if your application will see the results of those operations or not. See the snapshot docs for more information.

#### Execution of queries in batches

The MongoDB server returns query results to the client in batches. You can modify this behavior in two ways: You can specify batchSize(), which tells the server how many documents to return in each batch, or limit(), which determines the total number of documents to return for this query. (See Advanced Queries for setting limit and batchSize.)

If limit and batchSize are not specified, the first batch contains 101 documents, or enough documents to exceed 1 MB, whichever comes first. Otherwise, the server returns enough documents to satisfy the lesser of the batchSize or the limit. If the query matches more than that quantity of results and you would like them all to be returned, you need to either specify a larger limit or batchSize, or iterate through the result set to retrieve all results. Iterating a cursor will return enough documents in each batch to satisfy batchSize or to exceed 4 MB, whichever comes first.

A special case is if you sort a set of documents without an index. In that case, since MongoDB must load all the documents in order to sort them in memory, so it returns them all in the first batch.

Regardless of limit and batchSize, no batch will contain more than enough documents to exceed 4 MB.

Examples:

```
> // Insert 200 small documents
> for (var i = 0; i < 200; i++) { db.foo.insert({i: i}); }
> var cursor = db.foo.find()
> // Default batch size is 101 documents
> cursor.objsLeftInBatch()
101
> // Adding a large limit lets you get all docs at once
> var cursor = db.foo.find().limit(1000)
> cursor.objsLeftInBatch()
200
> // A small batchSize() can override the limit
> var cursor = db.foo.find().batchSize(10).limit(1000)
> cursor.objsLeftInBatch()
10
> // A small limit can override the batchSize
> var cursor = db.foo.find().batchSize(10).limit(5)
> cursor.objsLeftInBatch()
5
> // Insert 10 documents of one megabyte each
> var megabyte = '';
> for (var i = 0; i < 1024 * 1024; i++) { megabyte += 'a'; }
> for (var i = 0; i < 10; i++) { db.bar.insert({s:megabyte}); }
> // First batch stops after 1 MB
> var cursor = db.bar.find()
> cursor.objsLeftInBatch()
1
```

#### Performance implications

If, for example, you do

```
cursor = db.foo.find( { x : 1 } )
for ( i=0; i<100; i++ ) {
 printjson( cursor.next() );
}
```

The server will only find the first the first 100 results. If the result set is large, finding the first 100 results may be much faster than finding all results and printing the first 100.

Note that counts are performed against the entire result set, so for example

```
db.foo.find( { x : 1 } ).count()
```

Could be much slower than finding the first 100 results above.

#### Auditing allocated cursors

Information on allocated cursors may be obtained using the {`cursorInfo:1`} command.

```
db.runCommand({cursorInfo:1})
```

#### Closing and Timeouts

By default a cursor will timeout after 10 minutes of inactivity. The server will close the cursor if it isn't accessed in that time or it has been exhausted.

You can specify NoTimeout optionally for a query. If you do this please be careful to close the cursor manually – otherwise they will consume memory on the server.

#### See Also

- Advanced Queries

- Multikeys in the HowTo
- Mongo Wire Protocol

### Tailable Cursors

> ⚠ Tailable cursors are only allowed on capped collections and can only return objects in natural order. Tailable queries never use indexes.

A tailable cursor "tails" the end of a capped collection, much like the Unix "tail -f" command. They key idea is that if we "catch up" and have reached the end of the collection, our position is remembered rather than the cursor being closed. Thus, after new objects are inserted, we can resume retrieving from where we left off – which is then very inexpensive. If you reach the end of the collection and request more data, the cursor will block waiting for new documents to be inserted.

If the field you wish to "tail" is indexed, do not use tailable cursors; instead simply (re)query for { *field* : { $gt : *value* } } where `value` is where you last left off. This is normally quite efficient. Tailable cursors are for cases where having an index would be prohibitive (extremely high write collections). If performance is not problematic, use a normal query and cursor, tailable adds some complexity.

As no index will be used for the query, the initial scanning to find the first object to return will likely be quite costly. However once found, retrieving additional data from new inserts then becomes very inexpensive.

The cursor may become invalid if, for example, the last object returned is at the end of the collection and is deleted.  Thus, you should be prepared to requery if the cursor is "dead". You can determine if a cursor is dead by checking its id. An id of zero indicates a dead cursor (use isDead in the c++ driver). In addition, the cursor will be in "dead" state after a query which returns no matches.

MongoDB replication uses tailable cursors to follow the end of the primary's replication op log collection. Writes to the oplog would be slower with an index. The tailable feature eliminates the need to create an index for replication's use case.

C++ example:

```
#include "client/dbclient.h"

using namespace mongo;

/* "tail" the namespace, outputting elements as they are added. Cursor blocks
 * waiting for data if no documents currently exist. For this to work something
 * field -- _id in this case -- should be increasing when items are added.
 */
void tail(DBClientBase& conn, const char *ns) {
  // minKey is smaller than any other possible value
BSONElement lastId = minKey.firstElement();

  Query query = Query().sort("$natural"); // { $natural : 1 } means in forward
// capped collection insertion order
while( 1 ) {
    auto_ptr<DBClientCursor> c =
      conn.query(ns, query, 0, 0, 0,
                 QueryOption_CursorTailable | QueryOption_AwaitData );
    while( 1 ) {
      if( !c->more() ) {
        if( c->isDead() ) {
          // we need to requery
break;
        }
        // No need to wait here, cursor will block for several sec with _AwaitData
 continue; // we will try more() again
}
      BSONObj o = c->next();
      lastId = o["_id"];
      cout << o.toString() << endl;
    }

    // prepare to requery from where we left off
query = QUERY( "_id" << GT << lastId ).sort("$natural");
  }
}
```

Javascript example:

```
var coll = db.some.capped.collection;
var lastVal = coll.find().sort({ '$natural' : 1 })
                          .limit( 1 ).next()[ 'increasing' ];
while(1){

  cursor = coll.find({ 'increasing' : { '$gte' : lastVal } });

  // tailable
cursor.addOption( 2 );
  // await data
cursor.addOption( 32 );

  // Waits several sec for more data
while( cursor.hasNext() ){
    var doc = cursor.next();
    lastVal = doc[ 'increasing' ];
    printjson( doc );
  }

}
```

***See Also***

- A detailed blog post on tailable cursors
- http://github.com/mongodb/mongo-snippets/blob/master/cpp-examples/tailable_cursor.cpp
- http://api.mongodb.org/cplusplus/2.0.3/dbclient_8h_source.html

## Server-side Code Execution


- Map/Reduce
- Using `db.eval()`
  - Examples
  - Limitations of `eval`
    - Write locks
    - Sharding
- Storing functions server-side
- `$where` Clauses and Functions in Queries
- Notes on Concurrency
- Running .js files via a mongo shell instance on the server


Mongo supports the execution of code inside the database process.

#### Map/Reduce

MongoDB supports Javascript-based map/reduce operations on the server. See the map/reduce documentation for more information.

#### Using `db.eval()`



Use map/reduce instead of db.eval() for long running jobs. db.eval blocks other operations!

`db.eval()` is used to evaluate a function (written in JavaScript) at the database server.
This is useful if you need to touch a lot of data lightly. In that scenario, network transfer of the data could be a bottleneck.

`db.eval()` returns the return value of the function that was invoked at the server. If invocation fails an exception is thrown.

For a trivial example, we can get the server to add 3 to 3:

```
> db.eval( function() { return 3+3; } );
6
>
```

Let's consider an example where we wish to erase a given field, `foo`, in every single document in a collection. A naive client-side approach would be something like

```
function my_erase() {
  db.things.find().forEach( function(obj) {
                      delete obj.foo;
                      db.things.save(obj);
                    } );
}

my_erase();
```

Calling `my_erase()` on the client will require the entire contents of the collection to be transmitted from server to client and back again.

Instead, we can pass the function to `eval()`, and it will be called in the runtime environment of the server. On the server, the `db` variable is set to the current database:

```
db.eval(my_erase);
```

***Examples***

```
> myfunc = function(x){ return x; };

> db.eval( myfunc, {k:"asdf"} );
{ k : "asdf"  }

> db.eval( myfunc, "asdf" );
"asdf"

> db.eval( function(x){ return x; }, 2 );
2.0
```

If an error occurs on the evaluation (say, a null pointer exception at the server), an exception will be thrown of the form:

```
{ dbEvalException: { errno : -3.0 , errmsg : "invoke failed" , ok : 0.0  } }
```

Example of using `eval()` to do equivalent of the Mongo `count()` function:

```
function mycount(collection) {
  return db.eval( function(){return db[collection].find({},{_id:ObjId()}).length();} );
}
```

Example of using `db.eval()` for doing an atomic increment, plus some calculations:

```
function inc( name , howMuch ){
    return db.eval(
        function(name, howMuch){
            var t = db.things.findOne( { name : name } );
            t = t || { name : name , num : 0 , total : 0 , avg : 0 };
            t.num++;
            t.total += howMuch;
            t.avg = t.total / t.num;
            db.things.save( t );
            return t;
        },
        name,     //first argument to function above
howMuch   //second argument to function above
);
}

db.things.remove( {} );
print( tojson( inc( "eliot" , 2 )) );
print( tojson( inc( "eliot" , 3 )) );
```

#### *Limitations of `eval`*

Write locks

It's important to be aware that by default `eval` takes a write lock. This means that you can't use `eval` to run other commands that themselves take a write lock. To take an example, suppose you're running a replica set and want to add a new member. You may be tempted to do something like this from a driver:

```
db.eval("rs.add('ip-address:27017')");
```

As we just mentioned, `eval` will take a write lock on the current node. Therefore, this won't work because you can't add a new replica set member if any of the existing nodes is write-locked.

The proper approach is to run the commands to add a node manually. `rs.add` simply queries the `local.system.replSet` collection, updates the config object, and run the `replSetReconfig` command. You can do this from the driver, which, in addition to not taking out the `eval` write lock, manages to more directly perform the operation.

In 1.7.2, a `nolock` option was added to `eval`. To use `nolock` you have to use the command interface directly:

```
db.runCommand({$eval: function() {return 42;}, nolock: true})
```

or with args

```
db.runCommand({$eval: function(x,y) {return x*y;}, args: [6,7], nolock: true})
```

Sharding

Note also that `eval` doesn't work with sharding. If you expect your system to later be sharded, it's probably best to avoid `eval` altogether.

#### Storing functions server-side

Note: we recommend *not* using server-side stored functions when possible. As these are code it is likely best to store them with the rest of your code in a version control system.

There is a special system collection called `system.js` that can store JavaScript functions to be reused. To store a function, you would do:

```
db.system.js.save( { _id : "foo" , value : function( x , y ){ return x + y; } } );
```

_id is the name of the function, and is unique per database.

Once you do that, you can use `foo` from any JavaScript context (db.eval, $where, map/reduce)

Here is an example from the shell:

```
>db.system.js.save({ "_id" : "echo", "value" : function(x){return x;} })
>db.eval("echo('test')")
test
```

See http://github.com/mongodb/mongo/tree/master/jstests/storefunc.js for a full example.

In MongoDB 2.1 you will also be able to load all the scripts saved in `db.system.js` into the shell using `db.loadServerScripts()`

```
>db.loadServerScripts()
>echo(3)
3
```

#### `$where` Clauses and Functions in Queries

In addition to the regular document-style query specification for `find()` operations, you can also express the query either as a string containing a

SQL-style WHERE predicate clause, or a full JavaScript function. **Note: if a normal data-driven BSON query expression is possible, use that construction. Use $where only when you must it is significantly slower.**

When using this mode of query, the database will call your function, or evaluate your predicate clause, for each object in the collection.

In the case of the string, you must represent the object as "this" (see example below). In the case of a full JavaScript function, you use the normal JavaScript function syntax.

The following four statements in mongo - The Interactive Shell are equivalent:

```
db.myCollection.find( { a : { $gt: 3 } } );
db.myCollection.find( { $where: "this.a > 3" });
db.myCollection.find( "this.a > 3" );
db.myCollection.find( { $where: function() { return this.a > 3;}});
```

The first statement is the preferred form. It will be faster to execute because the query optimizer can easily interpret that query and choose an index to use.

You may mix data-style find conditions and a function. This can be advantageous for performance because the data-style expression will be evaluated first, and if not matched, no further evaluation is required. Additionally, the database can then consider using an index for that condition's field. To mix forms, pass your evaluation function as the `$where` field of the query object. For example, both of the following would work:

```
db.myCollection.find( { active: true, $where: function() { return obj.credits - obj.debits < 0; } } );
db.myCollection.find( { active: true, $where: "this.credits - this.debits < 0" } );
```

Do not write to the database from a `$where` expression.

#### Notes on Concurrency

If you don't use the "nolock" flag, db.eval() blocks the entire mongod process while running. Thus, its operations are atomic but prevent other operations from processing.

When more concurrency is needed consider using map/reduce instead of eval().

#### Running .js files via a mongo shell instance on the server

This is a good technique for performing batch administrative work. Run `mongo` on the server, connecting via the `localhost` interface. The connection is then very fast and low latency. This is friendlier than db.eval() as db.eval() blocks other operations.

## Sorting and Natural Order

"Natural order" is defined as the database's native ordering of objects in a collection.

When executing a `find()` with no parameters, the database returns objects in forward natural order.

For standard tables, natural order is not particularly useful because, although the order is often close to insertion order, it is not *guaranteed* to be. However, for Capped Collections, natural order is guaranteed to be the insertion order. This can be very useful.

In general, the natural order feature is a very efficient way to store and retrieve data in insertion order (much faster than say, indexing on a timestamp field). But remember, the collection must be capped for this to work.

In addition to forward natural order, items may be retrieved in reverse natural order. For example, to return the 50 most recently inserted items (ordered most recent to less recent) from a capped collection, you would invoke:

```
> c=db.cappedCollection.find().sort({$natural:-1}).limit(50)
```

Sorting can also be done on arbitrary keys in any collection. For example, this sorts by 'name' ascending, then 'age' descending:

```
> c=db.collection.find().sort({name : 1, age : -1})
```

### *See Also*

- The Capped Collections section of this Guide

- Advanced Queries
- The starting point for all Home

## Aggregation


- Aggregation Framework
- Count
- Distinct
- Group
  - Examples
  - Using Group from Various Languages
- Map/Reduce
- See Also


Mongo includes utility functions which provide server-side `count, distinct,` and `group by` operations. More advanced aggregate functions can be crafted using MapReduce.

### *Aggregation Framework*

This is a new module in the v2.2 release. You can test it via v2.1.0 in the 2.1 development (unstable) branch. Aggregation Framework

### *Count*

`count()` returns the number of objects in a collection or matching a query. If a document selector is provided, only the number of matching documents will be returned.

`size()` is like `count()` but takes into consideration any limit() or skip() specified for the query.

```
db.collection.count(selector);
```

For example:

```
print( "# of objects: " + db.mycollection.count() );
print( db.mycollection.count( {active:true} );
```

`count` is faster if an index exists for the condition in the selector. For example, to make the count on `active` fast, invoke

```
db.mycollection.ensureIndex( {active:1} );
```

### *Distinct*

The distinct command returns a list of distinct values for the given `key` across a collection.

Command is of the form:

```
{ distinct : <collection_name>, key : <key>[, query : <query>] }
```

although many drivers have a helper function for distinct.

```
> db.addresses.insert({"zip-code": 10010})
> db.addresses.insert({"zip-code": 10010})
> db.addresses.insert({"zip-code": 99701})

> // shell helper:
> db.addresses.distinct("zip-code");
[ 10010, 99701 ]

> // running as a command manually:
> db.runCommand( { distinct: 'addresses', key: 'zip-code' } )
{ "values" : [ 10010, 99701 ], "ok" : 1 }
```

`distinct` may also reference a nested key:

```
> db.comments.save({"user": {"points": 25}})
> db.comments.save({"user": {"points": 31}})
> db.comments.save({"user": {"points": 25}})

> db.comments.distinct("user.points");
[ 25, 31 ]
```

You can add an optional query parameter to distinct as well

```
> db.address.distinct( "zip-code" , { age : 30 } )
```

Note: the distinct command results are returned as a single BSON object. If the results could be large (> max document size – 4/16MB ), use map/reduce instead.

**Covered Index Use**
Starting with 1.7.3 distinct can use an index not only to find the documents in the query, but also to return the data.

### *Group*

Note: currently one must use map/reduce instead of group() in sharded MongoDB configurations.

`group` returns an array of grouped items. The command is similar to SQL's group by. The SQL statement

```
select a,b,sum(c) csum from coll where active=1 group by a,b
```

corresponds to the following in MongoDB:

```
db.coll.group(
           {key: { a:true, b:true },
            cond: { active:1 },
            reduce: function(obj,prev) { prev.csum += obj.c; },
            initial: { csum: 0 }
            });
```

Note: the result is returned as a single BSON object and for this reason must be fairly small – less than 10,000 keys, else you will get an exception. For larger grouping operations without limits, please use map/reduce .

`group` takes a single object parameter containing the following fields:

- *`key`*: Fields to group by.
- *`reduce`*: The `reduce` function aggregates (reduces) the objects iterated. Typical operations of a reduce function include summing and counting. `reduce` takes two arguments: the current document being iterated over and the aggregation counter object. In the example above, these arguments are named `obj` and `prev`.
- *`initial`*: initial value of the aggregation counter object.
- *`keyf`*: An optional **function** returning a "key object" to be used as the grouping key. Use this instead of *`key`* to specify a key that is not a single/multiple existing fields. Could be used to group by day of the week, for example. Set in lieu of *`key`*.

- *cond*: An optional condition that must be true for a row to be considered. This is essentially a `find()` query expression object. If null, the reduce function will run against all rows in the collection.
- *finalize*: An optional function to be run on each item in the result set just before the item is returned. Can either modify the item (e.g., add an average field given a count and a total) or return a replacement object (returning a new object with just _id and average fields). See jstests/group3.js for examples.

To order the grouped data, simply sort it client-side upon return. The following example is an implementation of `count()` using `group()`.

```
function gcount(collection, condition) {
  var res =
    db[collection].group(
           { key: {},
             initial: {count: 0},
             reduce: function(obj,prev){ prev.count++;},
             cond: condition } );
  // group() returns an array of grouped items.  here, there will be a single
// item, as key is {}.
return res[0] ? res[0].count : 0;
}
```

**Examples**

The examples assume data like this:

```
{ domain: "www.mongodb.org"
, invoked_at: {d:"2009-11-03", t:"17:14:05"}
, response_time: 0.05
, http_action: "GET /display/DOCS/Aggregation"
}
```

Show me stats for each http_action in November 2009:

```
db.test.group(
   { cond: {"invoked_at.d": {$gte: "2009-11", $lt: "2009-12"}}
   , key: {http_action: true}
   , initial: {count: 0, total_time:0}
   , reduce: function(doc, out){ out.count++; out.total_time+=doc.response_time }
   , finalize: function(out){ out.avg_time = out.total_time / out.count }
   } );

[
  {
    "http_action" : "GET /display/DOCS/Aggregation",
    "count" : 1,
    "total_time" : 0.05,
    "avg_time" : 0.05
  }
]
```

Show me stats for each domain for each day in November 2009:

```
db.test.group(
   { cond: {"invoked_at.d": {$gte: "2009-11", $lt: "2009-12"}}
   , key: {domain: true, invoked_at.d: true}
   , initial: {count: 0, total_time:0}
   , reduce: function(doc, out){ out.count++; out.total_time+=doc.response_time }
   , finalize: function(out){ out.avg_time = out.total_time / out.count }
   } );

[
  {
    "http_action" : "GET /display/DOCS/Aggregation",
    "count" : 1,
    "total_time" : 0.05,
    "avg_time" : 0.05
  }
]
```

#### Using Group from Various Languages

Some language drivers provide a group helper function. For those that don't, one can manually issue the db command for group. Here's an example using the Mongo shell syntax:

```
> db.foo.find()
{"_id" :  ObjectId( "4a92af2db3d09cb83d985f6f")  , "x" : 1}
{"_id" :  ObjectId( "4a92af2fb3d09cb83d985f70")  , "x" : 3}
{"_id" :  ObjectId( "4a92afdab3d09cb83d985f71")  , "x" : 3}

> db.$cmd.findOne({group : {
... ns : "foo",
... cond : {},
... key : {x : 1},
... initial : {count : 0},
... $reduce : function(obj,prev){prev.count++;}}})
{"retval" : [{"x" : 1 , "count" : 1},{"x" : 3 , "count" : 2}] , "count" : 3 , "keys" : 2 , "ok" : 1}
```

If you use the database command with `keyf` (instead of `key`) it must be prefixed with a $. For example:

```
db.$cmd.findOne({group : {
... ns : "foo",
... $keyf : function(doc) { return {"x" : doc.x}; },
... initial : {count : 0},
... $reduce : function(obj,prev) { prev.count++; }}})
```

### *Map/Reduce*

MongoDB provides a MapReduce facility for more advanced aggregation needs. CouchDB users: please note that basic queries in MongoDB do not use map/reduce.

### *See Also*

- jstests/eval2.js for an example of group() usage
- Advanced Queries

### Aggregation Framework

**Redirection Notice**
This page should redirect to http://docs.mongodb.org/manual/applications/aggregation/.

### *Aggregation Framework - $group*

**Redirection Notice**
This page should redirect to http://docs.mongodb.org/manual/reference/aggregation/#_S_group.

### *Aggregation Framework - $limit*


- Overview
- Specification
- Notes


#### *Overview*

The $limit pipeline operator limits the number of JSON documents that passes through it.

#### *Specification*

$limit takes a single numeric value as a parameter. Once that many documents have passed through the pipeline operator, no more will.

Here's a simple example:

```
db.article.aggregate(
    { $limit : 5 }
);
```

This pipeline will only pass through the first 5 documents that are seen. $limit has no effect on the content of the documents that are passed through – all fields present will be passed through as they are.

#### *Notes*

### *Aggregation Framework - $match*

**Redirection Notice**
This page should redirect to http://docs.mongodb.org/manual/reference/aggregation/#_S_match.

#### *Overview*

$match filters documents. Documents which do not match the specified predicate are filtered out and do not progress further along the aggregation pipeline. Documents which do match are passed along unchanged.

#### *Specification*

$match predicate syntax is always exactly the same as that for queries; See Querying and Advanced Queries.

Within a pipeline, the $match operator appears thusly:

```
db.article.aggregate(
    { $match : <match-predicate> }
);
```

Here is an example with a simple field equality test:

```
db.aggregate(
    { $match : { author : "dave" } }
);
```

On its own like this, this is the equivalent of db.article.find({ author : "dave" }).

Here is another example, this time with a range test:

```
db.article.aggregate(
    { $match : { score : { $gt : 50, $lte : 90 } }
);
```

***Notes***

$match should be placed as early in the aggregation pipeline as possible. This minimizes the number of documents after it, thereby minimizing later processing. Placing a $match at the very beginning of a pipeline will enable it to take advantage of indexes in exactly the same way as a regular query (find()/findOne()).

### *Aggregation Framework - $project*

**Redirection Notice**
This page should redirect to http://docs.mongodb.org/manual/reference/aggregation/#_S_project.

### *Aggregation Framework - $skip*

**Redirection Notice**
This page should redirect to http://docs.mongodb.org/manual/reference/aggregation/#_S_skip.

### *Aggregation Framework - $sort*

**Redirection Notice**
This page should redirect to http://docs.mongodb.org/manual/reference/aggregation/#_S_sort.

### *Aggregation Framework - $unwind*

**Redirection Notice**
This page should redirect to http://docs.mongodb.org/manual/reference/aggregation/#_S_unwind.

### *Aggregation Framework - Expression Reference*

**Redirection Notice**
This page should redirect to http://docs.mongodb.org/manual/reference/aggregation/#expressions.

### *SQL to Aggregation Framework Mapping Chart*

| SQL term | MongoDB agg framework term |
|---|---|
| WHERE | $match |
| GROUP BY | $group |
| SELECT | $project |
| ORDER BY | $sort |

Note: you can try the agg framework by testing with the v2.1.0 build. Note that 2.1.x is an unstable branch and not for production. Once ready it will be promoted to v2.2.

MongoDB has a few means of performing aggregation and data processing. In v2.2+ the main means are the aggregation framework and the map/reduce command. In general, if your operation can be expressed in the aggregation framework, use that as it is usually easier than using map/reduce and also performs better.

The table below shows examples of a SQL aggregation statement and the analogous MongoDB agg framework statement. The examples are invocations from the mongo shell, however usage from other programming languages is very similar.

| SQL Statement | Mongo Statement |
|---|---|
| `SELECT COUNT(*) FROM users` | `db.users.aggregate([ { $group: {_id:null, count:{$sum:1}} } ])` |
| `SELECT SUM(price) FROM orders` | `db.orders.aggregate([ { $group: {_id:null, total:{$sum: "$price"} } } ])` |
| `SELECT cust_id,SUM(price) FROM orders GROUP BY cust_id` | `db.orders.aggregate([ { $group: {_id: "$cust_id",total:{$sum: "$price"}} } ])` |
| `SELECT cust_id,SUM(price) FROM orders WHERE active= true GROUP BY cust_id` | `db.orders.aggregate([ { $match:{active:true} }, { $group:{_id: "$cust_id",total:{$sum: "$price"}} } ])` |

## Removing

### *Removing Objects from a Collection*

To remove objects from a collection, use the `remove()` function in the mongo shell. (Other drivers offer a similar function, but may call the function "delete". Please check your driver's documentation ).

`remove()` is like `find()` in that it takes a JSON-style query document as an argument to select which documents are removed. If you call `remove()` without a document argument, or with an empty document {}, it will remove all documents in the collection. Some examples :

```
db.things.remove({});    // removes all
db.things.remove({n:1}); // removes all where n == 1
```

The most efficient method to delete a specific document is to use item's document _id value as a criteria:

```
> // myobject is some document that is in our db.things collection
> db.things.remove({_id: myobject._id});
```

Note that passing an entire document to remove() would work, but is inefficient as in that case we are basically specifying every single field of the document as part of the query expression.

```
> db.things.remove(myobject); // don't do this
```

#### Isolation

If a simultaneous update (on the same collection) grows an object which matched the remove criteria, the updated object may not be removed (as the operations are happening at approximately the same time, this may not even be surprising). In situations where this is undesireable, pass {$atomic : true} in your filter expression:

```
db.videos.remove( { rating : { $lt : 3.0 }, $atomic : true } )
```

The remove operation is then isolated – however, it will also block other operations while executing. The collection must be unsharded to use this option.

## Updating

MongoDB supports atomic, in-place updates as well as more traditional updates for replacing an entire document.


- update()
- `upserts`
- `save()` in the mongo shell
- Modifier Operations
    - $inc
    - $set
    - $unset
    - $push
    - $pushAll
    - $addToSet and $each
    - $pop
    - $pull
    - $pullAll
    - $rename
    - $bit
  - The $ positional operator
  - Upserts with Modifiers
  - Pushing a Unique Value
- Checking the Outcome of an Update Request
- Notes
  - Object Padding
  - Blocking
  - Field (re)order
- See Also


### update()

`update()` replaces the document matching criteria entirely with objNew. If you only want to modify some fields, you should use the $ modifiers below.

Here's the MongoDB shell syntax for `update()`:

`db.collection.update( criteria, objNew, upsert, multi )`

Arguments:

- *criteria* - query which selects the record to update;
- *objNew* - updated object or $ operators (e.g., $inc) which manipulate the object
- *upsert* - if this should be an "upsert" operation; that is, if the record(s) do not exist, insert one. **Upsert only inserts a single document**.
- *multi* - indicates if all documents matching *criteria* should be updated rather than just one. Can be useful with the $ operators below.

If you are coming from SQL, be aware that by default, update() only modifies the first matched object. If you want to modify all matched objects, you need to use the multi flag.

### upserts

To perform an upsert, pass true as the third argument to update.

Upsert means "update the document if present; insert (a single document) if missing". MongoDB determines that the document is missing solely via examining the criteria document.

It is important to remember that **upsert** can only insert a single document.

### save() in the mongo shell

The save() helper method in the mongo shell provides a shorthand syntax to perform an update of a single document with upsert semantics:

```
> // x is some JSON style object
> db.mycollection.save(x); // updates if exists; inserts if new
>
> // equivalent to:
> db.mycollection.update( { _id: x._id }, x, /*upsert*/ true );
```

### Modifier Operations

Modifier operations are highly-efficient and useful when updating existing values; for instance, they're great for incrementing a number.

So, while a conventional implementation does work:

```
var j=myColl.findOne( { name: "Joe" } );
j.n++;
myColl.save(j);
```

a modifier update has the advantages of avoiding the latency involved in querying and returning the object. The modifier update also features operation atomicity and very little network data transfer.

To perform an atomic update, simply specify any of the special update operators (which always start with a '$' character) with a relevant update document:

```
db.people.update( { name:"Joe" }, { $inc: { n : 1 } } );
```

The preceding example says, "Find the first document where 'name' is 'Joe' and then increment 'n' by one."

While not shown in the examples, most modifier operators will accept multiple field/value pairs when one wishes to modify multiple fields. For example, the following operation would set x to 1 and y to 2:

```
{ $set : { x : 1 , y : 2 } }
```

Also, multiple operators are valid too:

```
{ $set : { x : 1 }, $inc : { y : 1 } }
```

**$inc**

```
{ $inc : { field : value } }
```

increments *field* by the number *value* if *field* is present in the object, otherwise sets *field* to the number *value*. This can also be used to decrement by using a negative *value*.

**$set**

```
{ $set : { field : value } }
```

sets *field* to *value*. All datatypes are supported with `$set`.

**$unset**

```
{ $unset : { field : 1} }
```

Deletes a given field. v1.3+

**$push**

```
{ $push : { field : value } }
```

appends *value* to *field*, if *field* is an existing array, otherwise sets *field* to the array [*value*] if *field* is not present. If *field* is present but is not an array, an error condition is raised.

Multiple arrays may be updated in one operation by comma separating the *field* : *value* pairs:

```
{ $push : { field : value, field2 : value2 } }
```

**$pushAll**

```
{ $pushAll : { field : value_array } }
```

appends each value in *value_array* to *field*, if *field* is an existing array, otherwise sets *field* to the array *value_array* if *field* is not present. If *field* is present but is not an array, an error condition is raised.

**$addToSet and $each**

```
{ $addToSet : { field : value } }
```

Adds value to the array only if its not in the array already, if *field* is an existing array, otherwise sets *field* to the array *value* if *field* is not present. If *field* is present but is not an array, an error condition is raised.

To add a list of several values to the set use the `$each` qualifier:

```
{ $addToSet : { a : { $each : [ 3 , 5 , 6 ] } } }
```

**$pop**

```
{ $pop : { field : 1  } }
```

removes the last element in an array (ADDED in 1.1)

```
{ $pop : { field : -1  } }
```

removes the first element in an array (ADDED in 1.1) |

**$pull**

```
{ $pull : { field : _value } }
```

removes all occurrences of *`value`* from *`field`*, if *`field`* is an array. If *`field`* is present but is not an array, an error condition is raised.

In addition to matching an exact value you can also use expressions ($pull is special in this way):

```
{ $pull : { field : {field2: value} } } removes array elements with field2 matching value
```

```
{ $pull : { field : {$gt: 3} } } removes array elements greater than 3
```

```
{ $pull : { field : {<match-criteria>} } } removes array elements meeting match criteria
```

Because of this feature, to use the embedded doc as a match criteria, you cannot do exact matches on array elements.

**$pullAll**

```
{ $pullAll : { field : value_array } }
```

removes all occurrences of each value in *`value_array`* from *`field`*, if *`field`* is an array. If *`field`* is present but is not an array, an error condition is raised.

**$rename**

Version 1.7.2+ only.

```
{ $rename : { old_field_name : new_field_name } }
```

Renames the field with name 'old_field_name' to 'new_field_name'. Does not expand arrays to find a match for 'old_field_name'.

**$bit**

**v1.8+.**

```
{$bit : { field : {and : 5}}}
{$bit : {field : {or : 43}}}
{$bit : {field : {and : 5, or : 2}}}
```

Does a bitwise update of *field*. Can only be used with integers.

### *The $ positional operator*

v1.4+

The $ operator (by itself) means "position of the matched array item in the query". Use this to find an array member and then manipulate it. For example:

```
> t.find()
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4b97e62bf1d8c7152c9ccb74"), "title" : "ABC",
  "comments" : [ { "by" : "joe", "votes" : 3 }, { "by" : "jane", "votes" : 7 } ] }

> t.update( {'comments.by':'joe'}, {$inc:{'comments.$.votes':1}}, false, true )

> t.find()
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4b97e62bf1d8c7152c9ccb74"), "title" : "ABC",
  "comments" : [ { "by" : "joe", "votes" : 4 }, { "by" : "jane", "votes" : 7 } ] }
```

Currently the $ operator only applies to the **first** matched item in the query. For example:

```
> t.find();
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4b9e4a1fc583fa1c76198319"), "x" : [ 1, 2, 3, 2 ] }
> t.update({x: 2}, {$inc: {"x.$": 1}}, false, true);
> t.find();
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4b9e4a1fc583fa1c76198319"), "x" : [ 1, 3, 3, 2 ] }
```

The positional operator cannot be combined with an `upsert` since it requires a matching array element. If your update results in an insert then the "$" will literally be used as the field name.

Using "$unset" with an expression "array.$" will result in the array item becoming `null`, not being removed. You can issue an update with "{$pull:{x:null}}" to remove all nulls. $pull can now do much of this so this example is now mostly historical.

```
> t.insert({x: [1,2,3,4,3,2,3,4]})
> t.find()
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4bde2ad3755d00000000710e"), "x" : [ 1, 2, 3, 4, 3, 2, 3, 4 ] }
> t.update({x:3}, {$unset:{"x.$":1}})
> t.find()
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4bde2ad3755d00000000710e"), "x" : [ 1, 2, null, 4, 3, 2, 3, 4 ] }
```

### *Upserts with Modifiers*

You may use upsert with a modifier operation. In such a case, the modifiers will be applied to the update *`criteria`* member and the resulting object will be inserted. The following upsert example may insert the object `{name:"Joe",x:1,y:1}`.

```
db.people.update( { name:"Joe" }, { $inc: { x:1, y:1 } }, true );
```

There are some restrictions. A modifier may not reference the `_id` field, and two modifiers within an update may not reference the same field, for example the following is not allowed:

```
db.people.update( { name:"Joe" }, { $inc: { x: 1 }, $set: { x: 5 } } );
```

### *Pushing a Unique Value*

To add a value to an array only if not already present:

Starting in 1.3.3, you can do

```
update( {_id:'joe'},{"$addToSet": { tags : "baseball" } } );
```

For older versions, add $ne : <value> to your query expression:

```
update( {_id:'joe', tags: {"$ne": "baseball"}},
        {"$push": { tags : "baseball" } } );
```

### Checking the Outcome of an Update Request

As described above, a non-upsert update may or may not modify an existing object. An upsert will either modify an existing object or insert a new object. The client may determine if its most recent message on a connection updated an existing object by subsequently issuing a `getlasterror` command ( `db.runCommand( "getlasterror" )` ). If the result of the `getlasterror` command contains an `updatedExisting` field, the last message on the connection was an update request. If the `updatedExisting` field's value is true, that update request caused an existing object to be updated; if `updatedExisting` is false, no existing object was updated. An "`upserted`" field will contain the new `_id` value if an insert is performed (new as of 1.5.4).

### Notes

### *Object Padding*

When you update an object in MongoDB, the update occurs in-place if the object has not grown in size. This is good for insert performance if the collection has many indexes.

Mongo adaptively learns if objects in a collection tend to grow, and if they do, it adds some padding to prevent excessive movements.  This statistic is tracked separately for each collection. More info here.

### *Blocking*

Starting in 1.5.2, multi updates yield occasionally so you can safely update large amounts of data. If you want a multi update to be truly isolated (so no other writes happen while processing the affected documents), you can use the $atomic flag in the query expression. For example:

```
db.students.update({score: {$gt: 60}, $atomic: true}, {$set: {pass: true}}, false, true)
```

**sharding**
`$atomic` is not supported with Sharding. If used it results in no updates and the getLastError Command returns error information.

**atomic**
`$atomic` only means that the update will not yield for other operations while running. It does **not** mean that the operation is "all or nothing". See here.

### *Field (re)order*

During an update the field order may be changed. There is no guarantee that the field order will be consistent, or the same, after an update. At the moment, if the update can be applied in place then the order will be the same (with additions applied at the end), but if a move is required for the document (if the currently allocated space is not sufficient for the update) then the fields will be reordered (alphanumerically).

### See Also

- findandmodify Command
- Atomic Operations

## Atomic Operations

- Modifier operations
- "Update if Current"
    - The ABA Nuance
- "Insert if Not Present"
- Find and Modify (or Remove)
- Applying to Multiple Objects At Once


MongoDB supports atomic operations *on single documents*. MongoDB does not support traditional locking and complex transactions for a number of reasons:

- First, in sharded environments, distributed locks could be expensive and slow. Mongo DB's goal is to be lightweight and fast.
- We dislike the concept of deadlocks. We want the system to be simple and predictable without these sort of surprises.
- We want Mongo DB to work well for realtime problems. If an operation may execute which locks large amounts of data, it might stop some small light queries for an extended period of time. (We don't claim Mongo DB is perfect yet in regards to being "real-time", but we certainly think locking would make it even harder.)

MongoDB does support several methods of manipulating single documents atomically, which are detailed below.

**Modifier operations**

The Mongo DB update command supports several modifiers, all of which atomically update an element in a document. They include:

- $set - set a particular value
- $unset - delete a particular field (v1.3+)
- $inc - increment a particular value by a certain amount
- $push - append a value to an array
- $pushAll - append several values to an array
- $pull - remove a value(s) from an existing array
- $pullAll - remove several value(s) from an existing array
- $bit - bitwise operations

These modifiers are convenient ways to perform certain operations atomically.

**"Update if Current"**

Another strategy for atomic updates is "Update if Current". This is what an OS person would call Compare and Swap. For this we

1. Fetch the object.
2. Modify the object locally.
3. Send an update request that says "update the object to this new value if it still matches its old value".

Should the operation fail, we might then want to try again from step 1.

For example, suppose we wish to fetch one object from inventory. We want to see that an object is available, and if it is, deduct it from the inventory. The following code demonstrates this using mongo shell syntax (similar functions may be done in any language):

```
> t=db.inventory
> s = t.findOne({sku:'abc'})
{"_id" : "49df4d3c9664d32c73ea865a" , "sku" : "abc" , "qty" : 30}
> qty_old = s.qty;
> --s.qty;
> t.update({_id:s._id, qty:qty_old}, s); db.$cmd.findOne({getlasterror:1});
{"err" :  , "updatedExisting" : true , "n" : 1 , "ok" : 1} // it worked
```

For the above example, we likely don't care the exact sku quantity as long as it is as least as great as the number to deduct. Thus the following code is better, although less general -- we can get away with this as we are using a predefined modifier operation ($inc). For more general updates, the "update if current" approach shown above is recommended.

```
> t.update({sku:"abc",qty:{$gt:0}}, { $inc : { qty : -1 } } ) ; db.$cmd.findOne({getlasterror:1})
{"err" : , "updatedExisting" : true , "n" : 1 , "ok" : 1} // it worked
> t.update({sku:"abcz",qty:{$gt:0}}, { $inc : { qty : -1 } } ) ; db.$cmd.findOne({getlasterror:1})
{"err" : , "updatedExisting" : false , "n" : 0 , "ok" : 1} // did not work
```

***The ABA Nuance***

In the first of the examples above, we basically did "update object if *qty* is unchanged". However, what if since our read, *sku* had been modified? We would then overwrite that change and lose it!

There are several ways to avoid this problem ; it's mainly just a matter of being aware of the nuance.

1. Use the entire object in the update's query expression, instead of just the _id and qty field.
2. Use $set to set the field we care about.  If other fields have changed, they won't be affected.
3. Put a version variable in the object, and increment it on each update.
4. When possible, use a $ operator instead of an update-if-current sequence of operations.

#### "Insert if Not Present"

Another optimistic concurrency scenario involves inserting a value when not already there. When we have a unique index constraint for the criteria, we can do this. See the How to Make an Auto Incrementing Field page for an example.

#### Find and Modify (or Remove)

See the findandmodify Command documentation for more information.

#### Applying to Multiple Objects At Once

You can use multi-update to apply the same modifier to every relevant object. By default a multi-update will allow some other operations (which could be writes) to interleave. Thus, this will only be pseudo-atomic (pseudo-isolated). To make it fullly isolated you can use the $atomic motifier:

not isolated:

```
db.foo.update( { x : 1 } , { $inc : { y : 1 } } , false , true );
```

isolated:

```
db.foo.update( { x : 1 , $atomic : 1 } , { $inc : { y : 1 } } , false , true );
```

Isolated is not atomic. Atomic implies that there is an all-or-nothing semantic to the update; this is not possible with more than one document. Isolated just means than you are the only one writing when the update is done; this means each update is done without any interference from any other.

### Atomic operation examples

A key goal of MongoDB is to handle a good breadth of use cases, and to handle in a way that is easy for the developer. We found that a good number of use cases require atomic operations / strong consistency; thus that is a feature of the product. Below are some examples (in mongo shell syntax).

```
// register a new user (atomically)
db.users.insert( { _id : 'joe123' } )
if( db.getLastErrorObj().err )
  print("name is use try another")
else
  print("you are registered")


// decrement y if y > 0 (atomically)
db.stats.update(
  { _id : ‘myid’, y : { $gt : 0 } },
  { $inc : { y : -1 } }
)


// assure everyone’s email address is unique
db.users.ensureIndex( {email:1} , {unique:true} )


// if joe hasn’t already voted, let him vote (without races)
db.posts.update(
  { _id : ‘some_post_of_interest’ , voters : { $ne : ‘joe’ } },
  { votes : { $inc : 1 } }
)
```

### How to Make an Auto Incrementing Field

Generally in MongoDB, one does not use an auto-increment pattern for _id's (or other fields), as this does not scale up well on large database clusters. Instead one typically uses Object IDs.

#### *Side counter method*

One can keep a counter of the current _id in a side document, in a collection dedicated to counters.
Then use FindAndModify to atomically obtain an id and increment the counter.

```
> db.counters.insert({_id: "userId", c: 0});

> var o = db.counters.findAndModify(
...         {query: {_id: "userId"}, update: {$inc: {c: 1}}});
{ "_id" : "userId", "c" : 0 }
> db.mycollection.insert({_id:o.c, stuff:"abc"});

> o = db.counters.findAndModify(
...         {query: {_id: "userId"}, update: {$inc: {c: 1}}});
{ "_id" : "userId", "c" : 1 }
> db.mycollection.insert({_id:o.c, stuff:"another one"});
```

Once you obtain the next id in the client, you can use it and be sure no other client has it.

#### *Optimistic loop method*

One can do it with an optimistic concurrency "insert if not present" loop. The following example, in Mongo shell Javascript syntax, demonstrates.

```
// insert incrementing _id values into a collection
function insertObject(o) {
    x = db.myCollection;
    while( 1 ) {
        // determine next _id value to try
var c = x.find({},{_id:1}).sort({_id:-1}).limit(1);
        var i = c.hasNext() ? c.next()._id + 1 : 1;
        o._id = i;
        x.insert(o);
        var err = db.getLastErrorObj();
        if( err && err.code ) {
            if( err.code == 11000 /* dup key */ )
                continue;
            else
                print("unexpected error inserting data: " + tojson(err));
        }
        break;
    }
}
```

The above should work well unless there is an extremely high concurrent insert rate on the collection. In that case, there would be a lot of looping potentially.

***See Also***

- Atomic Operations

## findAndModify Command

**Find and Modify (or Remove)**

v1.3.0 and higher

MongoDB 1.3+ supports a "find, modify, and return" command. This command can be used to atomically **modify a document** (at most one) and return it. Note that, by default, the document returned will not include the modifications made on the update.

If you don't need to return the document, you can use Update (which can affect multiple documents, as well).

The general form is

```
db.runCommand( { findAndModify : <collection>,
                 <options> } )
```

The MongoDB shell includes a helper method, findAndModify(), for executing the command. Some drivers provide helpers also.

At least one of the *update* or *remove* parameters is required; the other arguments are optional.

| Argument | Description | Default |
|---|---|---|
| *query* | a filter for the query | {} |
| *sort* | if multiple docs match, choose the first one in the specified sort order as the object to manipulate | {} |
| *remove* | set to a true to remove the object before returning | N/A |
| *update* | a modifier object | N/A |
| *new* | set to true if you want to return the modified object rather than the original. Ignored for remove. | false |
| *fields* | see Retrieving a Subset of Fields (1.5.0+) | All fields |
| *upsert* | create object if it doesn't exist; a query must be supplied! examples (1.5.4+) | false |

The *sort* option is useful when storing queue-like data. Let's take the example of fetching the highest priority job that hasn't been grabbed yet and atomically marking it as grabbed:

```
> db.jobs.save( {
     name: "Next promo",
     inprogress: false, priority:0,
     tasks : [ "select product", "add inventory", "do placement"]
} );

> db.jobs.save( {
     name: "Biz report",
     inprogress: false, priority:1,
     tasks : [ "run sales report", "email report" ]
} );

> db.jobs.save( {
     name: "Biz report",
     inprogress: false, priority:2,
     tasks : [ "run marketing report", "email report" ]
} );
```

```
> job = db.jobs.findAndModify({
     query: {inprogress: false, name: "Biz report"},
     sort : {priority:-1},
     update: {$set: {inprogress: true, started: new Date()}},
     new: true
});

{
 "_id" : ...,
 "inprogress" : true,
 "name" : "Biz report",
 "priority" : 2,
 "started" : "Mon Oct 25 2010 11:15:07 GMT-0700 (PDT)",
 "tasks" : [
  "run marketing report",
  "email report"
 ]
}
```

You can pop an element from an array for processing and update in a single atomic operation:

```
> task = db.jobs.findAndModify({
     query: {inprogress: false, name: "Next promo"},
     update : {$pop : { tasks:-1}}, fields: {tasks:1},
     new: false } )
{
 "_id" : ...,
 "tasks" : [
  "select product",
  "add inventory",
  "do placement"
 ]
}

> db.jobs.find( { name : "Next promo"} )
{
        "_id" : ...,
        "inprogress" : false,
        "name" : "Next promo",
        "priority" : 0,
        "tasks" : [ "add inventory", "do placement" ]
}
```

You can also simply remove the object to be returned.

```
> job = db.jobs.findAndModify( {sort:{priority:-1}, remove:true} );
{
 "_id" : ...,
 "inprogress" : true,
 "name" : "Biz report",
 "priority" : 2,
 "started" : "Mon Oct 25 2010 10:44:15 GMT-0700 (PDT)",
 "tasks" : [
  "run marketing report",
  "email report"
 ]
}

> db.jobs.find()
{
       "_id" : ...,
       "inprogress" : false,
       "name" : "Next promo",
       "priority" : 0,
       "tasks" : [ "add inventory", "do placement" ]
}
{
       "_id" : ...,
       "name" : "Biz report",
       "inprogress" : false,
       "priority" : 1,
       "tasks" : [ "run sales report", "email report" ]
}
```

If the client crashes before processing the job or task in the above examples, the data will be lost forever.

See the tests for more examples.

If your driver doesn't provide a helper function for this command, run the command directly with something like this:

```
job = db.runCommand({ findAndModify : "jobs",
                      sort : { priority : -1 },
                      remove : true
                    }).value;
```

#### Sharding limitations

*findandmodify* will behave the same when called through a *mongos* as long as the collection it is modifying is unsharded. If the collection is sharded, then the query must contain the shard key.

#### See Also

- Atomic Operations

## Padding Factor


- Overview
- No padding after imports, repairs, compactions and initial replica syncs
- Shrinking Documents
- Manual Padding
- See Also


#### Overview

When you update a document in MongoDB, the update occurs in-place if the document has not grown in size. If the document did grow in size, however, then it might need to be relocated on disk to find a new disk location with enough contiguous space to fit the new larger document. This can lead to problems for write performance if the collection has many indexes since a move will require updating all the indexes for the document.

Mongo adaptively learns if documents in a collection tend to grow, and if they do, it adds some padding so that the document has room to grow. This helps to prevent excessive movements on subsequent writes. This statistic is tracked separately for each collection.

You can check the collection's current *padding factor* by running the collStats command helper in the shell. The padding factor indicates what the padding will be for new record allocations(for inserts, or on updates that grow a document and cause it to move to a new location).

```
> db.coll.stats()
{
        "ns" : "...", ...,
        "paddingFactor" : 1, ...,
        "ok" : 1
}
```

As each document is written at a different point in time the padding for each document will not be the same. Also, as the padding factor is relative to the size of each document you cannot calculate the exact amount of padding for a collection based on the average document size and padding factor.

The paddingfactor is 1.0 if there is no padding. 1.5 would indicate 50% padding on a new insert/moves.

#### No padding after imports, repairs, compactions and initial replica syncs

After compaction, repair and import operations, there is (generally) no padding as they were inserted and there were no updates (which would cause the paddingFactor to change). Thus you may see slower update performance after these cases, but the size required for storage will be lower.

#### Shrinking Documents

If a document gets smaller (e.g., because of an $unset or $pop), the document does not move but stays at its current location. It thus effectively has more padding. Thus space is never reclaimed if documents shrink by large amounts and never grow again. To reclaim that space run a compact operation (or repair).

#### Manual Padding

Padding in MongoDB is automatic. You should not have to do so manually. In exceptional cases one can do this though. The strategy is to add a faux field that assures allocation of a larger slot size for the document. The faux field is then removed; at this point there is extra room for expansion on a future update. Example below.

```
> function checkOk() { assert( !db.runCommand({getlasterror:1,j:true,w:2,wtimeout:5000}).err ); }
>
> t = db.zcollection;
> db.setProfilingLevel(2);
>
> // let variable b be a very long string
>
> t.insert({q:1})
> t.update({q:1},{$set:{yy:b}})
> checkOk()
>
> // note the "moved:true" in the output below -- indicating not enough
> // padding to avoid moving a document.
> db.system.profile.find()
...
{ "ts" : ISODate("2011-10-13T02:45:23.062Z"), "op" : "insert", "ns" : "test.zcollection",
  "millis" : 0, "client" : "127.0.0.1", "user" : "" }
{ "ts" : ISODate("2011-10-13T02:45:33.560Z"), "op" : "update", "ns" : "test.zcollection",
  "query" : { "q" : 1 }, "updateobj" : { "$set" : { "yy" : "aaaaaaaaa..." } },
  "nscanned" : 1, "moved" : true, "millis" : 3, "client" : "127.0.0.1", "user" : "" }
>
> // not important what value of 'padding' is, only its length:
> t.insert({q:2,padding:ourpaddingstring})
> t.update({q:2},{$unset:{padding:1}})
> t.update({q:2},{$set:{yy:b}})
> checkOk()
>
> // no "moved:true" below (which is good).  Note however that the automatic adjustment
> // of a collection's padding factor normally achieves this regardless.  Manually padding
> // is rarely necessary.
> db.system.profile.find()
...
{ "ts" : ISODate("2011-10-13T02:46:34.920Z"), "op" : "insert", "ns" : "test.zcollection",
  "millis" : 1, "client" : "127.0.0.1", "user" : "" }
{ "ts" : ISODate("2011-10-13T02:46:42.775Z"), "op" : "update", "ns" : "test.zcollection",
  "query" : { "q" : 2 }, "updateobj" : { "$unset" : { "padding" : 1 } }, "nscanned" : 1,
  "millis" : 2, "client" : "127.0.0.1", "user" : "" }
{ "ts" : ISODate("2011-10-13T02:46:55.831Z"), "op" : "update", "ns" : "test.zcollection",
  "query" : { "q" : 2 }, "updateobj" : { "$set" : { "yy" : "aaaaaaaaa..." } },
  "nscanned" : 1, "millis" : 2, "client" : "127.0.0.1", "user" : "" }
```

**See Also**

- http://blog.mongodb.org/post/248614779/fast-updates-with-mongodb-update-in-place

## two-phase commit

**Redirection Notice**
This page should redirect to http://cookbook.mongodb.org/patterns/perform-two-phase-commits/.

A common problem with non-relational database is that it is not possible to do transactions across several documents. When executing a transaction composed of several sequential operations, some issues arise:

- Atomicity: it is difficult to rollback changes by previous operations if one fails.
- Isolation: changes to a single document are seen by concurrent processes, which may have an inconsistent view of the data during the transaction execution.
- Consistency: In case of a major failure (network, hardware) it is possible that the data will be left inconsistent and difficult to repair.

MongoDB provides atomicity for an operation on a single document. Since documents can be fairly complex, this actually covers many more cases than with a traditional DB. Still there are cases where transactions across documents are needed, and that is when a two-phase commit can be used. The two-phase commit is made possible by the fact that documents are complex and can represent pending data and states. This process makes sure that the data is eventually consistent, which is usually what matters most to the system.

### *Account transfer example*

**Problem overview**

The most common example of transaction is to transfer funds from account A to B in a reliable way. With a traditional RDBMS, funds are substracted from A and added to B within an atomic transaction. With MongoDB, a viable solution is to use a two-phase commit.

Let's have one collection holding accounts:

```
foo:PRIMARY> db.accounts.save({name: "A", balance: 1000, pendingTransactions: []})
foo:PRIMARY> db.accounts.save({name: "B", balance: 1000, pendingTransactions: []})
foo:PRIMARY> db.accounts.find()
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4d7bc66cb8a04f512696151f"), "name" : "A", "balance" : 1000, "pendingTransactions"
: [ ] }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4d7bc67bb8a04f5126961520"), "name" : "B", "balance" : 1000, "pendingTransactions"
: [ ] }
```

And we need one collection representing transactions:

```
foo:PRIMARY> db.transactions.save({source: "A", destination: "B", value: 100, state: "initial"})
foo:PRIMARY> db.transactions.find()
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4d7bc7a8b8a04f5126961522"), "source" : "A", "destination" : "B", "value" : 100,
"state" : "initial" }
```

**Transaction description**

Step 1: the transaction state is switched to, "pending":

```
foo:PRIMARY> t = db.transactions.findOne({state: "initial"})
{
 "_id" : ObjectId("4d7bc7a8b8a04f5126961522"),
 "source" : "A",
 "destination" : "B",
 "value" : 100,
 "state" : "initial"
}
foo:PRIMARY> db.transactions.update({_id: t._id}, {$set: {state: "pending"}})
foo:PRIMARY> db.transactions.find()
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4d7bc7a8b8a04f5126961522"), "source" : "A", "destination" : "B", "value" : 100,
"state" : "pending" }
```

Step 2: apply the transaction to both accounts, and make sure the transaction is not already pending:

```
foo:PRIMARY> db.accounts.update({name: t.source, pendingTransactions: {$ne: t._id}}, {$inc: {balance:
-t.value}, $push: {pendingTransactions: t._id}})
foo:PRIMARY> db.accounts.update({name: t.destination, pendingTransactions: {$ne: t._id}}, {$inc:
{balance: t.value}, $push: {pendingTransactions: t._id}})
foo:PRIMARY> db.accounts.find()
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4d7bc97fb8a04f5126961523"), "balance" : 900, "name" : "A", "pendingTransactions" :
[ ObjectId("4d7bc7a8b8a04f5126961522") ] }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4d7bc984b8a04f5126961524"), "balance" : 1100, "name" : "B", "pendingTransactions"
: [ ObjectId("4d7bc7a8b8a04f5126961522") ] }
```

Step 3: set the transaction's state to "committed":

```
foo:PRIMARY> db.transactions.update({_id: t._id}, {$set: {state: "committed"}})
foo:PRIMARY> db.transactions.find()
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4d7bc7a8b8a04f5126961522"), "destination" : "B", "source" : "A", "state" :
"committed", "value" : 100 }
```

Step 4: remove the pending transaction from accounts:

```
foo:PRIMARY> db.accounts.update({name: t.source}, {$pull: {pendingTransactions: ObjectId(
"4d7bc7a8b8a04f5126961522")}})
foo:PRIMARY> db.accounts.update({name: t.destination}, {$pull: {pendingTransactions: ObjectId(
"4d7bc7a8b8a04f5126961522")}})
foo:PRIMARY> db.accounts.find()
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4d7bc97fb8a04f5126961523"), "balance" : 900, "name" : "A", "pendingTransactions" :
[ ] }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4d7bc984b8a04f5126961524"), "balance" : 1100, "name" : "B", "pendingTransactions"
: [ ] }
```

Step 5: set transaction's state to "done":

```
foo:PRIMARY> db.transactions.update({_id: t._id}, {$set: {state: "done"}})
foo:PRIMARY> db.transactions.find()
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4d7bc7a8b8a04f5126961522"), "destination" : "B", "source" : "A", "state" : "done",
"value" : 100 }
```

**Failure scenarios**

Now let's look at the failure scenarios and how to deal with them. For example, a failure can be that the application making the sequential operations suddenly dies, and is restarted.

Cases to cover:

- any failure between after step 1 and before step 3: Application should get a list of transactions in state "pending" and resume from step 2.
- any failure after step 3 and before step 5: Application should get a list of transactions in state "applied" and resume from step 4.

Application is thus always able to resume the transaction and eventually get to a consistent state.
These "repair" jobs should be run at application startup and possibly at regular interval to catch any unfinished transaction.
The time it takes to get to a consistent state may vary depending on how long it takes to resume a failed transaction.

**Rollback**

A common need may be to rollback a transaction, either because it has been cancelled or because it can never succeed (e.g. account B is closed).

Two cases:

- after step 3, the transaction is considered committed and should not be rolled back. Instead, to undo the transaction, a new transaction can be created with an opposite source and destination.
- after step 1 and before step 3: the process below should be applied.

Step 1: set the transaction's state to "canceling":

```
foo:PRIMARY> db.transactions.update({_id: t._id}, {$set: {state: "canceling"}})
```

Step 2: undo the transaction from accounts:

```
foo:PRIMARY> db.accounts.update({name: t.source, pendingTransactions: t._id}, {$inc: {balance:
t.value}, $pull: {pendingTransactions: t._id}})
foo:PRIMARY> db.accounts.update({name: t.destination, pendingTransactions: t._id}, {$inc: {balance:
-t.value}, $pull: {pendingTransactions: t._id}})
foo:PRIMARY> db.accounts.find()
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4d7bc97fb8a04f5126961523"), "balance" : 1000, "name" : "A", "pendingTransactions"
: [ ] }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4d7bc984b8a04f5126961524"), "balance" : 1000, "name" : "B", "pendingTransactions"
: [ ] }
```

Step 3: set the transaction's state to "cancelled":

```
foo:PRIMARY> db.transactions.update({_id: t._id}, {$set: {state: "cancelled"}})
```

**Multiple applications**

A common issue that exists with any DBs is how to make it safe for several applications to run transactions.
It is important that only 1 application handles a given transaction at one point in time, because otherwise conflicts can happen.

One example is:

- application A1 and A2 both grab transaction T1 which is in "initial" state.
- A1 applies the whole transaction before A2 starts
- A2 applies transaction a 2nd time because it does not appear as pending in the accounts

To handle multiple applications, there should be a marker at the transaction level that the transaction is being handled.
One can use findAndModify:

```
foo:PRIMARY> t = db.transactions.findAndModify({query: {state: "initial", application: {$exists: 0}},
update: {$set: {state: "pending", application: "A1"}}, new: true})
{
 "_id" : ObjectId("4d7be8af2c10315c0847fc85"),
 "application" : "A1",
 "destination" : "B",
 "source" : "A",
 "state" : "pending",
 "value" : 150
}
```

The only remaining issue is if application A1 dies during transaction execution.
The resume processes described in "Failure scenarios" can be applied, but application should make sure it owns the transactions.
For example to resume pending jobs, query should be:

```
foo:PRIMARY> db.transactions.find({application: "A1", state: "pending"})
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4d7be8af2c10315c0847fc85"), "application" : "A1", "destination" : "B", "source" :
"A", "state" : "pending", "value" : 150 }
```

#### Proper two-phase commit

This implementation tries to be simple on purpose, it assumes that:

- an account operation can always be rolled back
- the account balance can go negative

A proper real world implementation would probably differ:

- accounts have both a current balance, pending credits, pending debits.
- during step 2, application makes sure accounts has sufficient funds for transaction, modifies credits/debits and adds transaction as pending, all in one update.
- during step 4, application actually applies the transaction on balance, modifies credits/debits and removes transaction from pending, all in one update.

#### Additional notes:

In the context of important transactions, you will probably want to use:

- reasonable "getLastError" to check that operations are actually written to the DB (see "getLastError" or "write concern" for your drivers).
- durability so that operations are consistently saved on disk when an operation returns successfully.

## Updating Data in Mongo


- Updating a Document in the mongo Shell with `save()`
- Embedding Documents Directly in Documents
- Database References


#### Updating a Document in the mongo Shell with `save()`

As shown in the previous section, the `save()` method may be used to save a new document to a collection. We can also use `save()` to update an existing document in a collection.

Continuing with the *example* database from the last section, lets add new information to the document `{name:"mongo"}` that already is in the collection.

```
> var mongo = db.things.findOne({name:"mongo"});
> print(tojson(mongo));
{"_id" : "497dab624ee47b3a675d2d9c" , "name" : "mongo"}
> mongo.type = "database";
database
> db.things.save(mongo);
> db.things.findOne({name:"mongo"});
{"_id" : "497dab624ee47b3a675d2d9c" , "name" : "mongo" , "type" : "database"}
>
```

This was a simple example, adding a string valued element to the existing document. When we called `save()`, the method saw that the document already had an "_id" field, so it simply performed an update on the document.

In the next two sections, we'll show how to embed documents within documents (there are actually two different ways), as well as show how to query for documents based on values of embedded documents.

#### Embedding Documents Directly in Documents

As another example of updating an existing document, lets embed a document within an existing document in the collection. We'll keep working with the original {`name:"mongo"`} document for simplicity.

```
> var mongo = db.things.findOne({name:"mongo"});
> print(tojson(mongo));
{"_id" : "497da93d4ee47b3a675d2d9b" , "name" : "mongo", "type" : "database"}
> mongo.data = { a:1, b:2};
{"a" : 1 , "b" : 2}
> db.things.save(mongo);
> db.things.findOne({name:"mongo"});
{"_id" : "497da93d4ee47b3a675d2d9b" , "name" : "mongo" , "type" : "database", "data" : {"a" : 1 , "b"
: 2}}
>
```

As you can see, we added new data to the mongo document, adding {`a:1, b:2`} under the key "data".

Note that the value of "data" is a document itself - it is embedded in the parent mongo document. With BSON, you may nest and embed documents to any level. You can also query on embedded document fields, as shown here:

```
> db.things.findOne({ "data.a" : 1});
{"_id" : "497da93d4ee47b3a675d2d9b" , "name" : "mongo" , "data" : {"a" : 1 , "b" : 2}}
> db.things.findOne({ "data.a" : 2});
>
```

Note that the second `findOne()` doesn't return anything, because there are no documents that match.

#### Database References

Alternatively, a document can reference other documents which are not embedded via a *database reference*, which is analogous to a foreign key in a relational database. A database reference (or "DBRef" for short), is a reference implemented according to the Database References. Most drivers support helpers for creating DBRefs. Some also support additional functionality, like dereference helpers and auto-referencing. See specific driver documentation for examples / more information

Lets repeat the above example, but create a document and place in a different collection, say *otherthings*, and embed that as a reference in our favorite "mongo" object under the key "otherdata":

```
// first, save a new doc in the 'otherthings' collection

> var other = { s : "other thing", n : 1};
> db.otherthings.save(other);
> db.otherthings.find();
{"_id" : "497dbcb36b27d59a708e89a4" , "s" : "other thing" , "n" : 1}

// now get our mongo object, and add the 'other' doc as 'otherthings'

> var mongo = db.things.findOne();
> print(tojson(mongo));
{"_id" : "497dab624ee47b3a675d2d9c" , "name" : "mongo" , "type" : "database" , "data" : {"a" : 1 , "b"
: 2}}
> mongo.otherthings = new DBRef( 'otherthings' , other._id );
{"s" : "other thing" , "n" : 1 , "_id" : "497dbcb36b27d59a708e89a4"}
> db.things.save(mongo);
> db.things.findOne().otherthings.fetch();
{"_id" : "497dab624ee47b3a675d2d9c" , "name" : "mongo" , "type" : "database" , "data" : {"a" : 1 , "b"
: 2} , "otherthings" : {"_id" : "497dbcb36b27d59a708e89a4" , "s" : "other thing" , "n" : 1}}

// now, lets modify our 'other' document, save it again, and see that when the dbshell
// gets our mongo object and prints it, if follows the dbref and we have the new value

> other.n = 2;
2
> db.otherthings.save(other);
> db.otherthings.find();
{"_id" : "497dbcb36b27d59a708e89a4" , "s" : "other thing" , "n" : 2}
> db.things.findOne().otherthings.fetch();
{"_id" : "497dab624ee47b3a675d2d9c" , "name" : "mongo" , "type" : "database" , "data" : {"a" : 1 , "b"
: 2} , "otherthings" : {"_id" : "497dbcb36b27d59a708e89a4" , "s" : "other thing" , "n" : 2}}
>
```

## MapReduce

Map/reduce in MongoDB is useful for batch processing of data and aggregation operations. It is similar in spirit to using something like Hadoop with all input coming from a collection and output going to a collection. Often, in a situation where you would have used GROUP BY in SQL, map/reduce is the right tool in MongoDB.


- Overview
  - Incremental Map-reduce
  - Output options
  - Result object
  - Map Function
  - Reduce Function
    - A more technical explanation
  - Finalize Function
  - jsMode flag
- Sharded Environments
  - Sharded input
  - Sharded output
- Examples
  - Shell Example 1
  - Shell Example 2
  - Mongo Shell Script with Incremental Map-Reduce and Finalize
  - More Examples
  - Note on Permanent Collections
- Parallelism
- Presentations
- Troubleshooting
- See Also


### Overview

`map/reduce` is invoked via a database command. Typically the database creates a collection to hold output of the operation. `map` and `reduce`

functions are written in JavaScript and execute on the server.

Command syntax:

```
db.runCommand(
 { mapreduce : <collection>,
   map : <mapfunction>,
   reduce : <reducefunction>,
   out : <see output options below>
   [, query : <query filter object>]
   [, sort : <sorts the input objects using this key. Useful for optimization, like sorting by the
emit key for fewer reduces>]
   [, limit : <number of objects to return from collection, not supported with sharding>]
   [, keeptemp: <true|false>]
   [, finalize : <finalizefunction>]
   [, scope : <object where fields go into javascript global scope >]
   [, jsMode : true]
   [, verbose : true]
 }
);
```

* `finalize` - function to apply to all the results when finished

- `keeptemp` - if true, the generated collection is not treated as temporary. Defaults to false. When `out` is specified, the collection is automatically made permanent. (MongoDB <=1.6)
- `scope` - can pass in variables that can be access from map/reduce/finalize. Note that updates to scope variables' values are not shared among shard members, so in a sharded cluster you should treat scope variables as global constants.
  example mr5
- `verbose` - provide statistics on job execution time

### *Incremental Map-reduce*

If the data set over which you'd like to perform map-reduce aggregations is constantly growing, then you may want to take advantage of incremental map-reduce. The prevents you from having to aggregate over the entire data set each time you want to see your results.

To perform incremental map-reduce, take the following steps:

1. First, run a map-reduce job over an existing collection, and output the data to it's own output collection.

2. When you have more data to process, run a second map-reduce job, but use the `query` option to the filter the documents to include only new documents.

3. Use the `reduce` output option. This will use your reduce function to merge the new data into the existing output collection.

### *Output options*

**pre-v1.8:** If you do not specify a value for `out`, then the results will be placed into a temporary collection whose name will be given in command's output (see below). Otherwise, you can specify the name of a collection for the `out` option and the results will be placed there.

**v1.8+:** the output options have changed. Map-reduce no longer generates temporary collections (thus, `keepTemp` has been removed). Now, you must always supply a value for `out`. The `out` directives are:

- "collectionName" - By default the output will be of type "replace".
- { **replace** : "collectionName" } - the output will be inserted into a collection which will atomically replace any existing collection with the same name.
- { **merge** : "collectionName" } - This option will merge new data into the old output collection. In other words, if the same key exists in both the result set and the old collection, the new key will overwrite the old one.
- { **reduce** : "collectionName" } - If documents exists for a given key in the result set and in the old collection, then a reduce operation (using the specified reduce function) will be performed on the two values and the result will be written to the output collection. If a finalize function was provided, this will be run after the reduce as well.
- { **inline** : 1} - With this option, no collection will be created, and the whole map-reduce operation will happen in RAM. Also, the results of the map-reduce will be returned within the result object. Note that this option is possible only when the result set fits within the 16MB limit of a single document. In **v2.0**, this is your only available option on a replica set secondary.

For example:

```
db.users.mapReduce(map, reduce, {out: { inline : 1}});
```

Additional options within `out` objects are:

- "db" - the db name to output to.

```
out : {replace : "collectionName", db : "otherDB"}
```

- { **sharded** : 1} - **MongoDB 1.9+** If true and combined with an output mode that writes to a collection, the output collection will be sharded using the _id field. See details in the sharding section.

Note: the order of the objects in the out parameter matter.

### *Result object*

```
{
  [results : <document_array>,]
  [result : <collection_name> | {db: <db>, collection: <collection_name>},]
  timeMillis : <job_time>,
  counts : {
       input :  <number of objects scanned>,
       emit  : <number of times emit was called>,
       output : <number of items in output collection>
  } ,
  ok : <1_if_ok>
  [, err : <errmsg_if_error>]
}
```

Either the `result` or the `results` field will be present depending on your output type. The `results` element is only present if the inline output option was used. The value of the `results` element is an array of embedded documents containing the results. If you chose any other output type the `result` field will be a string with the name of the collection holding the results, or an embedded document containing the db and collection if you chose to output to another db.

A command helper is available in the MongoDB shell :

```
db.collection.mapReduce(mapfunction,reducefunction[,options]);
```

`map`, `reduce`, and `finalize` functions are written in JavaScript.

### *Map Function*

The `map` function references the variable `this` to inspect the current object under consideration. A map function calls `emit(key,value)` any number of times to feed data to the reducer. In most cases you will emit once per input document, but in some cases such as counting tags, a given document may have one, many, or even zero tags. Each emit is limited to 50% of the maximum document size (e.g. 4MB for 1.6.x and 8MB for 1.8.x).

```
function map(void) -> void
```

### *Reduce Function*

When you run a map/reduce, the `reduce` function will receive an array of emitted values and reduce them to a single value. Because the reduce function might be invoked more than once for the same key, the structure of the object returned by the reduce function must be identical to the structure of the `map` function's emitted value. We can clarify this with a simple example.

Suppose we're iterating over a collection of documents that represent user comments. A sample document might look like this:

```
{ username: "jones",
    likes: 20,
    text: "Hello world!"
  }
```

We want to use map/reduce to count the total number of comments per user and aggregate the total number of "likes" received across all of a user's comments. To do this, we'd first write a `map` function like this one:

```
function() {
    emit( this.username, {count: 1, likes: this.likes} );
  }
```

This essentially says that we'll be grouping by `username` and aggregating using an object with fields for `count` and `likes`.

When map/reduce is actually run, an array of values for each username will be sent to the `reduce` function. That's why the `reduce` function is always written to process an array of values. Here's the appropriate function for this example:

```
function(key, values) {
    var result = {count: 0, likes: 0};

    values.forEach(function(value) {
      result.count += value.count;
      result.likes += value.likes;
    });

    return result;
  }
```

Notice that the result document has the same structure as the documents emitted by the `map` function. This is important because, when the `reduce` function is run against a given key, it's not guaranteed to process every single value for that key (or username). In fact, the `reduce` function may have to run more than once. For example, while processing the comments collection, the `map` function might encounter ten comments from the user "jones." It then sends those comments' data to be reduced, and this results in the following aggregate object:

```
{ count: 10, likes: 247 }
```

Later, the `map` function encounters one more comment document by "jones." When this happens, the values in the extra comment must be reduced against the already existing aggregate value. If the new emitted document looks like this:

```
{ count: 1, likes: 5 }
```

Then the `reduce` function will be invoked in this way:

```
reduce("jones", [ {count: 10, likes: 247}, { count: 1, likes: 5} ] )
```

And the resulting document will be a simple combination (or reduction) of those values:

```
{ count: 11, likes: 252 }
```

So long as you understand that the `reduce` function might be invoked more than once for the same key, it's easy to see why the this function must return a value whose structure matches the `map` function's emitted value.

**A more technical explanation**

```
function reduce(key, array_of_value) -> value
```

OR

```
function reduce(key_obj, [value_obj, value_obj, ...]) -> value_obj
```

The map/reduce engine may invoke reduce functions iteratively; thus, these functions must be idempotent. That is, the following must hold for your reduce function:

```
for all k,vals : reduce( k, [reduce(k,vals)] ) == reduce(k,vals)
```

This also means the following is true:

```
reduce( k, [A, B] ) == reduce( k, [B, A] )
```

If you need to perform an operation only once, use a finalize function.

The output of the map function's emit (the second argument) and the value returned by reduce should be the same format to make iterative reduce possible. If not, there will be weird bugs that are hard to debug.

Currently, the return value from a reduce function cannot be an array (it's typically an object or a number).

### *Finalize Function*

A `finalize` function may be run after reduction. Such a function is optional and is not necessary for many map/reduce cases. The finalize function takes a key and a value, and returns a finalized value.

```
function finalize(key, value) -> final_value
```

Your reduce function may be called multiple times for the same object. Use finalize when something should only be done a single time at the end; for example calculating an average.

### *jsMode flag*

**v2.0+**
Normally, map/reduce execution follows the steps:

- convert from BSON to JS, execute map, convert from JS to BSON
- convert from BSON to JS, execute reduce, convert from JS to BSON

Thus it requires several translations but it can handle very large datasets during mapping by using a temporary collection.
It is possible to make the execution stay in JS by using {jsMode: true} which performs the following steps:

- convert from BSON to JS, execute map
- execute reduce, convert from JS to BSON

The execution time may be significantly reduced. Note that this mode is limited by either

`jsMode` is limited by the JS heap size and a maximum of 500k unique keys. Consequently it is not suitable for large jobs in which case mongo may revert to regular mode.

## Sharded Environments

There are 2 aspects of sharding with Map/Reduce, input and output.

### *Sharded input*

If the input collection is sharded, MongoS will automatically dispatch the map/reduce job to each of the shard, to be executed in parallel. There is no special option required. MongoS will then wait for jobs on all shards to finish.

### *Sharded output*

By default the output collection will not be sharded. The process is:

- MongoS dispatches a map/reduce finish job to the shard that will store the target collection.
- that shard will pull results from all other shards, run a final reduce/finalize, and write to the output.

If using the *sharded* option in the *out* object, the output will be sharded using "_id" as the shard key.

In version prior to 2.1, the process is:

- MongoS pulls the results from each shard, doing a merge sort to get them ordered.
- on the fly, it does reduce/finalize as needed. Then writes the result to the output collection in sharded mode.
- though MongoS does some processing, only a small amount of memory is required even for large datasets.

- there is currently a limitation in that shard chunks do not get automatically split and migrated during insertion. Doing it manually is required until the chunks are granular and balanced.

Sharded output for mapreduce has been overhauled for v2.2. Using it for prior version is not recommended due to many limitations.

For v2.2 and above, the process is:

- if the target collection does not exist, it is created as sharded on _id. Even if empty, its initial chunks are created based on the result of the 1st step of MR.
- MongoS dispatches a map/reduce finish job to every shard that owns a chunk, in parallel.
- each shard will pull results it owns from all other shards, run a final reduce/finalize, and write to the target collection.
- During further MR jobs, chunk splitting will be done as needed.
- Balancing of chunks for the target collection is automatically prevented during post-processing to avoid concurrency issues.

## Examples

### *Shell Example 1*

The following example assumes we have an `events` collection with objects of the form:

```
{ time : <time>, user_id : <userid>, type : <type>, ... }
```

We then use MapReduce to extract all users who have had at least one event of type "sale":

```
> m = function() { emit(this.user_id, 1); }
> r = function(k,vals) { return 1; }
> res = db.events.mapReduce(m, r, { query : {type:'sale'} });
> // or in v1.8+:
> // res = db.events.mapReduce(m, r, { query : {type:'sale'}, out : 'example1' });
> db[res.result].find().limit(2)
{ "_id" : 8321073716060 , "value" : 1 }
{ "_id" : 7921232311289 , "value" : 1 }
```

If we also wanted to output the number of times the user had experienced the event in question, we could modify the reduce function like so:

```
> r = function(k,vals) {
...     var sum=0;
...     for(var i in vals) sum += vals[i];
...     return sum;
... }
```

Note, here, that we cannot simply return `vals.length`, as the reduce may be called multiple times.

### *Shell Example 2*

```
$ ./mongo
> db.things.insert( { _id : 1, tags : ['dog', 'cat'] } );
> db.things.insert( { _id : 2, tags : ['cat'] } );
> db.things.insert( { _id : 3, tags : ['mouse', 'cat', 'dog'] } );
> db.things.insert( { _id : 4, tags : []  } );

> // map function
> m = function(){
...    this.tags.forEach(
...        function(z){
...            emit( z , { count : 1 } );
...        }
...    );
...};

> // reduce function
> r = function( key , values ){
...    var total = 0;
...    for ( var i=0; i<values.length; i++ )
...        total += values[i].count;
...    return { count : total };
...};

> res = db.things.mapReduce(m, r, { out : "myoutput" } );
> res
{
 "result" : "myoutput",
 "timeMillis" : 12,
 "counts" : {
  "input" : 4,
  "emit" : 6,
  "output" : 3
 },
 "ok" : 1,
}
> db.myoutput.find()
{"_id" : "cat" , "value" : {"count" : 3}}
{"_id" : "dog" , "value" : {"count" : 2}}
{"_id" : "mouse" , "value" : {"count" : 1}}

> db.myoutput.drop()
```

* gist

### *Mongo Shell Script with Incremental Map-Reduce and Finalize*

This example is a JavaScript script file. The map-reduce can be run repeatedly on different dates to incrementally augment the result. The finalize option computes averages.

The output of commands and the queries themselves are saved to variables so that they can be examined after the sample script is run via the load() command in the shell.

```
// work in the map-reduce example db
db = db.getSiblingDB("mrex");

// clean out from previous runs of this sample -- you wouldn't do this in production
db.session.drop();
db.session_stat.drop();

// simulate saving records that log the lengths of user sessions in seconds
db.session.save({userid:"a", ts: ISODate('2011-11-03 14:17:00'), length: 95});
db.session.save({userid:"b", ts: ISODate('2011-11-03 14:23:00'), length: 110});
db.session.save({userid:"c", ts: ISODate('2011-11-03 15:02:00'), length: 120});
db.session.save({userid:"d", ts: ISODate('2011-11-03 16:45:00'), length: 45});

db.session.save({userid:"a", ts: ISODate('2011-11-04 11:05:00'), length: 105});
```

```
db.session.save({userid:"b", ts: ISODate('2011-11-04 13:14:00'), length: 120});
db.session.save({userid:"c", ts: ISODate('2011-11-04 17:00:00'), length: 130});
db.session.save({userid:"d", ts: ISODate('2011-11-04 15:37:00'), length: 65});

/*
  For each user, count up the number of sessions, and figure out the average
  session length.

  Note that to be able to find the average session length, we need to keep a
  total of the all the session lengths, and then divide at the end.

  We're also going to set this up so that we can repeat the process to get
  incremental results over time.
*/

function mapf()
{
    emit(this.userid,
         {userid:this.userid, total_time:this.length, count:1, avg_time:0});
}

function reducef(key, values)
{
    var r = {userid:key, total_time:0, count:0, avg_time:0};
    values.forEach(function(v)
     {
         r.total_time += v.total_time;
         r.count += v.count;
     });
    return r;
}

function finalizef(key, value)
{
    if (value.count > 0)
 value.avg_time = value.total_time / value.count;

    return value;
}

/*
  Here's the initial run.

  The query isn't technically necessary, but is included here to demonstrate
  how this is the same map-reduce command that will be issued later to do
  incremental adjustment of the computed values.  The query is assumed to run
  once a day at midnight.
 */
var mrcom1 = db.runCommand( { mapreduce:"session",
         map:mapf,
         reduce:reducef,
         query: {ts: {$gt:ISODate('2011-11-03 00:00:00')}},
         out: { reduce: "session_stat" },
         finalize:finalizef
       });

function saveresults(a)
{
    /* append everything from the cursor to the argument array */
    var statcurs = db.session_stat.find();
    while(statcurs.hasNext())
 a.push(statcurs.next());
}

/* save the results into mrres1 */
var mrres1 = [];
saveresults(mrres1);

/* add more session records (the next day) */
db.session.save({userid:"a", ts: ISODate('2011-11-05 14:17:00'), length: 100});
```

```
db.session.save({userid:"b", ts: ISODate('2011-11-05 14:23:00'), length: 115});
db.session.save({userid:"c", ts: ISODate('2011-11-05 15:02:00'), length: 125});
db.session.save({userid:"d", ts: ISODate('2011-11-05 16:45:00'), length: 55});

/*
  Run map reduce again.

  This time, the query date is the next midnight, simulating a daily job that
  is used to update the values in session_stat.  This can be repeated daily
  (or on other periods, with suitable adjustments to the time).
 */
var mrcom2 = db.runCommand( { mapreduce:"session",
         map:mapf,
         reduce:reducef,
         query: {ts: {$gt:ISODate('2011-11-05 00:00:00')}},
         out: { reduce: "session_stat" },
         finalize:finalizef
       });

/* save the results into mrres2 */
```

```
var mrres2 = [];
saveresults(mrres2);
```

### *More Examples*

- example mr1
- Finalize example: example mr2

### *Note on Permanent Collections*

Even when a permanent collection name is specified, a temporary collection name will be used during processing. At map/reduce completion, the temporary collection will be renamed to the permanent name atomically. Thus, one can perform a map/reduce job periodically with the same target collection name without worrying about a temporary state of incomplete data. This is very useful when generating statistical output collections on a regular basis.

### Parallelism

See info on Concurrency

### Presentations

Map/reduce, geospatial indexing, and other cool features - Kristina Chodorow at MongoSF (April 2010)

### Troubleshooting

- See Troubleshooting MapReduce

### See Also

- Aggregation
- Kyle's Map/Reduce basics
- Blog post - walkthrough a mongodb map reduce job

## Troubleshooting MapReduce

Tips on troubleshooting map/reduce.

#### Troubleshooting the `map` function

We can troubleshoot the map function in the shell by defining a test `emit` function in the shell and having it print out trace information.

For example suppose we have some data:

```
> db.articles.find()
{ "_id" : 123, "author" : "joe", "text" : "hello", "votes" : [
        {
                "who" : "john",
                "vote" : 1
        },
        {
                "who" : "jane",
                "vote" : 1
        },
        {
                "who" : "vince",
                "vote" : -1
        }
] }
{ "_id" : 127, "author" : "sri", "text" : "It was...", "votes" : [
        { "who" : "jane",
          "vote" : 2
        }
] }
```

And we have written a map function:

```
function map() {
    this.votes.forEach( function(x){emit(x.who,1);} );
}
```

It would be nice to visualize the output of this function. We can do this in the shell by defining a client side debug version of emit():

```
function emit(k, v) {
    print("emit");
    print("  k:" + k + " v:" + tojson(v));
}
```

For example, we could run the emit on a single document from the collection:

```
> x = db.articles.findOne(); // grab an object
> map.apply(x); // call our map function, client side, with x as 'this'
emit
  k:john v:1
emit
  k:jane v:1
emit
  k:vince v:1
```

Additionally we could apply the map on several objects:

```
> for( var c = db.articles.find(); c.hasNext(); ) {
...     var doc = c.next();
...     print("document _id=" + tojson(doc._id));
...     map.apply( doc );
...     print();
... }
document _id=123
emit
  k:john v:1
emit
  k:jane v:1
emit
  k:vince v:1

document _id=127
emit
  k:jane v:1
```

After verifying the emits from map are as expected, we write a reduce function and run the real job:

```
> function reduce(k, vals) {
...     var sum = 0;
...     for (var i in vals) {
...         sum += vals[i];
...     }
...     return sum;
...}
>
> db.articles.mapReduce(map,reduce,"out");
{
        "result" : "out",
        "timeMillis" : 62,
        "counts" : {
                "input" : 2,
                "emit" : 4,
                "output" : 3
        },
        "ok" : 1,
}
>
> db.out.find()
{ "_id" : "jane", "value" : 2 }
{ "_id" : "john", "value" : 1 }
{ "_id" : "vince", "value" : 1 }
```

**Troubleshooting the `reduce` function**

When troubleshooting the reduce function, problems usually crop up in two places:

1. `emit()` outputting different values than `reduce`
2. `reduce( k, [A, B] ) != reduce( k, [B, A] )`

Fortunately, it is easy to test for both of these cases directly from the shell.

> ⚠ When performing a reduce, there is no guarantee on the order of incoming values.

***#1 - Test value format***

Run a reduce on a sample key / value from `emit`. Wrap the value in an array construct. The output of the reduce should have the same format at the input. In most cases, it should actually *be* the same.

```
> reduce( { name : 'joe' }, [ { votes : 1 } ] )
{ votes : 1 }
```

The same can also be tested with two values. The format should still be the same.

```
> reduce( { name : 'joe' }, [ { votes : 1 }, { votes : 3 } ] )
{ votes : 4 }
```

***#2 - Test Commutativity / Idempotence***

Again, two simple tests that should work.

Order of the objects should not matter:

```
> reduce( { name : 'joe' }, [ { votes : 1 }, { votes : 3 } ] )
{ votes : 4 }
> reduce( { name : 'joe' }, [ { votes : 3 }, { votes : 1 } ] )
{ votes : 4 }
```

Reduce output can be re-reduced:

```
> reduce( { name : 'joe' }, [
    { votes : 1 },
    reduce ( { name : 'joe' }, [ { votes : 3 } ] )
  ] )
{ votes : 4 }
```

## Data Processing Manual

By "data processing", we generally mean operations performed on large sets of data, rather than small interactive operations.

### Import

One can always write a program to load data of course, but the mongoimport utility also works for some situations. mongoimport supports importing from json, csv, and tsv formats.

A common usage pattern would be to use mongoimport to load data in a relatively raw format and then use a server-side script (db.eval() or map/reduce ) to reduce the data to a more clean format.

### See Also

- Import/Export Tools
- Aggregation Framework
- Map/Reduce

# mongo - The Interactive Shell

- MongoDB Manual Shell Reference
- More Information
- Presentations

The MongoDB distribution includes `bin/mongo`, the MongoDB interactive shell. This utility is a JavaScript shell that allows you to issue commands to MongoDB from the command line. (*it is basically an extended SpiderMonkey shell*)

The shell is useful for:

- inspecting a database's contents
- testing queries
- creating indices
- maintenance scripts
- other administrative functions

When you see sample code in this wiki and it looks like JavaScript, assume it is a shell example. See the driver syntax table for a chart that can be used to convert those examples to any language.

## MongoDB Manual Shell Reference

- MongoDB Manual Reference Section
- mongo Manual Page
- JavaScript Interface
- MongoDB Database Commands

## More Information

- Shell Overview
- Shell Scripts
- Shell Reference
- Shell APIDocs

## Presentations

- Hacking the Shell - MongoSF (May 2011)
- CRUD and the JavaScript Shell - MongoSF (April 2010)

# Scripting the shell

The MongoDB shell is not just an interactive shell, it can also be scripted using JS files. In addition to specifying a Javascript file (*.js) you can also use `--eval` with a snippet of JS.

Using the shell this way allows for tasks to be performed without the need for any additional drivers or language support; it can be used in cron, or automated administrative tasks. Please be aware there are data format issues in javascript so you should be careful how much you do in Javascript.

Common uses for the scripted shell includes:

- backups
- scheduled Map-Reduce commands
- offline reports
- administration

### Running a Script

```
./mongo server:27017/dbname --quiet my_commands.js
```

The syntax stems from the interactive shell. This command will execute the `my_commands.js` as if it had been entered into the shell directly, with some exceptions.

- `./mongo`: command to start the interactive shell, may vary on your shell of choice
- `server:27017/dbname`: basic connection information
- `--quiet`: this is a flag for the `mongo` command. This switch removes some header information that is not typically necessary when building unattended scripts.
- `my_commands.js`: a file containing a series of shell commands to execute

### `--quiet`

This option will remove the header printed at the top when you run the shell normally:

```
$ mongo
MongoDB shell version: 2.1.0
connecting to: test
> ^C
bye
$ mongo --quiet
> ^C
```

### `--eval`

In addition to using a full Javascript file you can also pass in a Javascript fragment:

```
bash-3.2$ ./mongo test --eval "printjson(db.getCollectionNames())"
MongoDB shell version: 1.8.0
connecting to: test
[
        "system.indexes",
        "t1",
        "t2",
        "test.fam",
        "test1",
        "test11",
        "testBinary",
        "testarray"
]
```

### Differences between scripted and interactive

#### Printing

When using the shell interactively, the shell will print returned values and format where possible. This is done as a general convenience from within the shell. However, when building a script, the printing needs to be defined explicitly.

There are two functions commonly used for this:

1. `print()`: works as normal javascript
2. `printjson()`: prints a nicely formatted JSON representation of the given object

***Example**: print JSON for the first 10 objects from a `find`*

```
db.foo.find({x:1}).forEach(printjson)
```

**`use dbname`**

This command does not work in scripted mode. Instead you will need to explicitly define the database in the connection (`/dbname` in the example above).

Alternately, you can also create a connection within the script:

```
> help connect // for more help
> var x = new Mongo('host[:port]');
> var mydb = x.getDB('mydb');
> // or
> var mydb = connect('host[:port]/mydb');
```

Or just reassign the "db" variable.

```
> db = db.getSiblingDB("otherdb") //same as use otherdb
```

**`it`**

The iterator command `it` does not work outside of the interactive scripting environment.

**getLastError**

When running an `update/insert` command from the shell, the shell automatically awaits a reply (*i.e. runs a get last error*).

The same is not true when running from a script file. To wait for the status of an operation (such as a write), run the getLastError function after `update/insert`.

```
db.getLastErrorObj()
// or
db.getLastError()
```

# Overview - The MongoDB Interactive Shell


- Running the Shell
  - .mongorc.js
- Operations
  - Help
  - Select Database
  - Querying
  - Inserting
  - Updating
  - Deleting
  - Indexes
  - Open Additional Connections
- Working from the Prompt
  - Line Continuation
  - Key Shortcuts
  - Custom Prompt
  - Using a real editor

- Some Notes on Datatypes in the Shell
  - Numbers
  - Dates
  - BinData
- See Also


## Running the Shell

The interactive shell is included in the standard MongoDB distribution. To start the shell, go into the root directory of the distribution and type

```
./bin/mongo
```

It might be useful to add *mongo_distribution_root*`/bin` to your PATH so you can just type `mongo` from anywhere.

If you start with no parameters, it connects to a database named "test" running on your local machine on the default port (27017). You can see the db to which you are connecting by typing `db`:

```
./mongo
type "help" for help
> db
test
```

You can pass `mongo` an optional argument specifying the address, port and even the database to initially connect to:

| | |
|---|---|
| `./mongo` *`foo`* | connects to the *`foo`* database on your local machine |
| `./mongo 192.168.13.7/`*`foo`* | connects to the *`foo`* database on 192.168.13.7 |
| `./mongo dbserver.mydomain.com/`*`foo`* | connects to the *`foo`* database on dbserver.mydomain.com |
| `./mongo 192.168.13.7:9999/`*`foo`* | connects to the *`foo`* database on 192.168.13.7 on port 9999 |

#### .mongorc.js

**1.9.1+**

When the shell is launched, it checks the user's home directory for a javascript file named `.mongorc.js`. If this file is found, its contents are interpreted and run by the shell prior to displaying the prompt for the first time. This allows the user to define variables, customize the prompt, or update information that they would like updated every time they launch a shell. This functionality can be overridden with the `--norc` flag. It should be noted that if a file is specified to be executed by the shell, the rc file will not be run until after that file has completed.

## Operations

#### Help

```
> help                          // top level help
> db.help()                     // help on db-specific methods
> db.mycollection.help()        // help on collection methods
> db.mycollection.find().help() // cursor help
```

#### Select Database

The following are three basic commands that provide information about the available databases, and collections in a given database.

| | |
|---|---|
| `show dbs` | displays all the databases on the server you are connected to |
| `use` *`db_name`* | switches to *`db_name`* on the same server |
| `show collections` | displays a list of all the collections in the current database |

#### Querying

`mongo` uses a JavaScript API to interact with the database. Because `mongo` is also a complete JavaScript shell, `db` is the variable that is the current database connection.

To query a collection, you simply specify the collection name as a property of the `db` object, and then call the `find()` method. For example:

```
db.foo.find();
```

This will display the first 10 objects from the *`foo`* collection. Typing ***`it`*** after a find() will display the next 10 subsequent objects.

By setting the shellBatchSize you can change this:

```
DBQuery.shellBatchSize = #
```

If the shell does not accept the collection name (for example if it starts with a number, contains a space etc), use

```
db['foo'].find()
```

instead.

#### Inserting

In order to insert data into the database, you can simply create a JavaScript object, and call the `save()` method. For example, to save an object { `name: "sara"`} in a collection called *foo*, type:

```
db.foo.save({ name : "sara"});
```

Note that MongoDB will implicitly create any collection that doesn't already exist.

#### Updating

Let's say you want to change someone's address. You can do this using the following `mongo` commands:

```
person = db.people.findOne( { name : "sara" } );
person.city = "New York";
db.people.save( person );
```

#### Deleting

| | |
|---|---|
| `db.`*`foo`*`.drop()` | drop the entire *`foo`* collection |
| `db.`*`foo`*`.remove()` | remove all objects from the collection |
| db.*foo*.remove( { name : "sara" } ) | remove objects from the collection where `name` is `sara` |

#### Indexes

| | |
|---|---|
| `db.`*`foo`*`.getIndexKeys()` | get all fields that have indexes on them |
| `db.`*`foo`*`.ensureIndex({ _field_ : 1 })` | create an index on *`field`* if it doesn't exist |

#### Open Additional Connections

You can use the following commands to open additional connections (normally you don't need to do this, but might from a script):

```
conn = new Mongo(host);
db = conn.getDB(dbname);
db.auth(username,password);
```

where `host` is a string that contains either the name or address of the machine you want to connect to (e.g. "192.168.13.7") or the machine and port (e.g. "192.168.13.7:9999"). Note that host in an optional argument, and can be omitted if you want to connect to the database instance running on your local machine. (e.g. `conn = new Mongo()`)

Alternatively you can use the `connect` helper method:

```
> db = connect("localhost:27020/mytestdb"); // example with a nonstandard port #
```

## Working from the Prompt

### Line Continuation

If a line contains open '(' or '{' characters, the shell will request more input before evaluating:

```
> function f() {
... x = 1;
... }
>
```

You can press Enter twice to escape from "..." mode and terminate line entry.

### Key Shortcuts

- up/down array for command history
- in v1.9+ some basic emacs keystrokes work
- ctrl-l to clear the screen
- tab for auto-complete (newer versions only)
- ctrl-c to exit
- Enter twice to break out of line continuation mode

### Custom Prompt

 **1.9.1+**

The shell's prompt can be customized by creating variable 'prompt' in the shell. It can be any arbitrary javascript, including a function that returns a string. This flexibility allows for additional information to be displayed in the prompt. For example, to have a prompt that contains the number of commands issued, type:

```
> cmdCount = 1;
> prompt = function() {
... return (cmdCount++) + "> ";
... }
1> command
2> anothercommand
3>
```

To make the prompt look a bit more familiar, we can make it database@host$:

```
> host = db.serverStatus().host; \\ since host should not change
> prompt = function() {
... return db+"@"+host+"$ ";
... }
admin@mylaptop.local$ use monkeys
switched to db monkeys
monkeys@mylaptop.local$
```

You could use the prompt to do a bit of database monitoring as well:

```
> prompt = function() {
... return "Uptime:"+db.serverStatus().uptime+" Files:"+db.stats().objects+" > ";
... }
Uptime:5897 Files:6 > db.monkeys.save({name : "James"});
Uptime:5948 Files:7 >
```

#### Using a real editor

2.1.0+

We've added a feature to allow you edit larger values including functions using your editor of choice. Just run `edit nameOfVariableOrFunction` and we will open whatever editor you have defined in your `$EDITOR` environment variable. Make sure that you save the file when editing. If you wish to discard your changes, you can either not save or make your editor exit with an error (`:cq` in Vim or `(kill-emacs 1)` in Emacs).

```
$ EDITOR=vim mongo --nodb
MongoDB shell version: 2.1.0-pre-
> function f() {}
> edit f
> f
function f() {
    print("this really works");
}
> f()
this really works
> o = {}
{ }
> edit o
> o
{ "soDoes" : "this" }
>
```

It is possible that the code in functions will be slightly modified by the JavaScript compiler when you try to edit it again. For example it may convert `1+1` in to 2 and strip out comments. The actual changes will vary based on the version of JavaScript used, but should not effect the semantics of the code, only its appearance.

### Some Notes on Datatypes in the Shell

#### Numbers

By default, the shell treats all numbers as floating-point values. You have the option to work with 64 bit integers by using a class built into the shell called NumberLong() If you have long/integer BSON data from the database you may see something like this:

```
"bytes" : {
   "floatApprox" : 575175
}
```

or something like this for larger numbers (in 1.6+):

```
{..., "bytes" : NumberLong("5284376243087482000") ,...}
```

Note that prior to 1.6 long numbers might be displayed like this:

```
"bytes" : {
   "floatApprox" : 5284376243087482000,
   "top" : 1230364721,
   "bottom" : 4240317554
}
```

In addition, setting/incrementing any number from javascript will (most likely) change the data type to a floating point value.

Here is an example of creating a document with a `long` field:

```
doc = { field: new NumberLong("123212313")}
```

#### Dates

The Date() function returns a string and a "**new** Date()" will return an object (which is what you should use to store values).

```
> Date()
Sun May 02 2010 19:07:40 GMT-0700 (Pacific Daylight Time)
> new Date()
"Sun May 02 2010 19:07:43 GMT-0700 (Pacific Daylight Time)"
> typeof(new Date())
object
> typeof(Date())
string
```

newer (1.7+) versions print this

```
> new Date()
ISODate("2010-11-29T19:41:46.730Z")
> ISODate("2010-11-29T19:41:46.730Z")
ISODate("2010-11-29T19:41:46.730Z")
```

As you can see, ISODate is a thin wrapper around the Date constructor to fix some of it's shortcomings. It returns a normal Date object with all of the normal methods that javascript Date methods support. We have also changed the way that Date objects print to make sure that they don't look like strings and that if you copy and paste the output you get the same object.

#### BinData

The BSON BinData datatype is represented via class BinData in the shell. Run `help misc` for more information.

```
> new BinData(2, "1234")
BinData(2,"1234")
```

### See Also

- MongoDB Shell Reference

## dbshell Reference


- Command Line
- Special Command Helpers
- Basic Shell Javascript Operations
- Queries
- Error Checking
- Administrative Command Helpers
- Opening Additional Connections
- Miscellaneous
- Examples


### *Command Line*

| | |
|---|---|
| `--help` | Show command line options |
| `--nodb` | Start without a db, you can connect later with `new Mongo()` or `connect()` |
| `--shell` | After running a .js file from the command line, stay in the shell rather than terminating |

### *Special Command Helpers*

Non-javascript convenience macros:

| | |
|---|---|
| `help` | Show help |
| `db.help()` | Show help on db methods |
| `db.myColl.help()` | Show help on collection methods |
| `show dbs` | Print a list of all databases on this server |
| `use dbname` | Set the db variable to represent usage of *dbname* on the server |
| `show collections` | Print a list of all collections for current database |
| `show users` | Print a list of users for current database |
| `show profile` | Print most recent profiling operations that took >= 1ms |

### *Basic Shell Javascript Operations*

| | |
|---|---|
| `db` | The variable that references the current database object / connection. Already defined for you in your instance. |
| `db.auth(user,pass)` | Authenticate with the database (if running in secure mode). |
| `coll = db.collection` | Access a specific *collection* within the database. |
| `cursor = coll.find();` | Find all objects in the collection. See queries. |
| `coll.remove(objpattern);` | Remove matching objects from the collection.<br>*objpattern* is an object specifying fields to match. E.g.: `coll.remove( { name: "Joe" } );` |
| `coll.save(object)` | Save an object in the collection, or update if already there.<br>If your object has a presave method, that method will be called before the object is saved to the db (before both updates and inserts) |
| `coll.insert(object)` | Insert object in collection. No check is made (i.e., no upsert) that the object is not already present in the collection. |
| `coll.update(...)` | Update an object in a collection. See the Updating documentation; update() has many options. |
| `coll.ensureIndex( { name : 1 } )` | Creates an index on `tab.name`. Does nothing if index already exists. |
| `coll.update(...)` | |
| `coll.drop()` | Drops the collection `coll` |
| `db.getSiblingDB(name)` | Return a reference to another database using this same connection. This allows for cross database queries. Another synonym is "getSisterDB"<br>. Usage example: `db.getSiblingDB('production').getCollectionNames()` |

### *Queries*

| | |
|---|---|
| `coll.find()` | Find all. |
| `it` | Continue iterating the last cursor returned from find(). |
| `coll.find( criteria );` | Find objects matching *criteria* in the collection. E.g.: `coll.find( { name: "Joe" } );` |
| `coll.findOne( criteria );` | Find and return a single object. Returns null if not found. If you want only one object returned, this is more efficient than just `find()` as `limit(1)` is implied. You may use regular expressions if the element type is a string, number, or date: `coll.find( { name: /joe/i } );` |
| `coll.find( criteria, fields );` | Get just specific fields from the object. E.g.: `coll.find( {}, {name:true} );` |
| `coll.find().sort( {field:1[, field:1] });` | Return results in the specified order (field ASC). Use -1 for DESC. |

| | |
|---|---|
| `coll.find( criteria ).sort( { field : 1 } )` | Return the objects matching *criteria*, sorted by *field*. |
| `coll.find( ... ).limit(n)` | Limit result to *n* rows. Highly recommended if you need only a certain number of rows for best performance. |
| `coll.find( ... ).skip(n )` | Skip *n* results. |
| `coll.count()` | Returns total number of objects in the collection. |
| `coll.find( ... ).count()` | Returns the total number of objects that match the query. Note that the number ignores limit and skip; for example if 100 records match but the limit is 10, `count()` will return 100. This will be faster than iterating yourself, but still take time. |

More information: see queries.

### *Error Checking*

| | |
|---|---|
| `db.getLastError()` | Returns error from the last operation. |
| `db.getPrevError()` | Returns error from previous operations. |
| `db.resetError()` | Clear error memory. |

### *Administrative Command Helpers*

| | |
|---|---|
| `db.cloneDatabase(fromhost)` | Clone the current database from the other host specified. fromhost database must be in noauth mode. |
| `db.copyDatabase(fromdb, todb, fromhost)` | Copy fromhost/fromdb to todb on this server. fromhost must be in noauth mode. |
| `db.fromColl.renameCollection(toColl)` | Rename collection from fromColl to toColl. |
| `db.repairDatabase()` | Repair and compact the current database. This operation can be very slow on large databases. |
| `db.addUser(user,pwd)` | Add user to current database. |
| `db.getCollectionNames()` | get list of all collections. |
| `db.dropDatabase()` | Drops the current database. |

### *Opening Additional Connections*

| | |
|---|---|
| `db = connect("<host>:<port>/<dbname>")` | Open a new database connection. One may have multiple connections within a single shell, however, automatic getLastError reporting by the shell is done for the 'db' variable only. |
| `conn = new Mongo("hostname")` | Open a connection to a new server. Use `getDB()` to select a database thereafter. |
| `db = conn.getDB("dbname")` | Select a specific database for a connection |

### *Miscellaneous*

| | |
|---|---|
| `Object.bsonsize(db.foo.findOne())` | prints the bson size of a db object (mongo version 1.3 and greater) |
| `db.foo.findOne().bsonsize()` | prints the bson size of a db object (mongo versions predating 1.3) |

For a full list of functions, see the shell API.

### *Examples*

The MongoDB source code includes a jstests/ directory with many mongo shell scripts.

# Developer FAQ

> **Redirection Notice**
> This page should redirect to http://docs.mongodb.org/manual/faq/developers/.

## Do I Have to Worry About SQL Injection

> See link at bottom for driver specific security notes; specifically one for PHP.

Instructions for the MongoDB server cluster are represented in two forms:

1. BSON
2. Javascript

With BSON being the main mechanism.

### *BSON*

As a client program assembles a query in MongoDB, it builds a BSON object, not a string. Thus traditional SQL Injection attacks are not a problem. More details and some nuances are covered below.

MongoDB queries are represented as BSON objects. Typically the programming language gives a convenient way to build these objects that is injection free. For example in C++ one would write:

```
BSONObj my_query = BSON( "name" << a_name );
auto_ptr<DBClientCursor> cursor = c.query("tutorial.persons", my_query);
```

my_query then will have a value such as { name : "Joe" }. If my_query contained special characters such as ", :, {, etc., nothing bad happens, they are just part of the string.

### *Javascript*

Some care is appropriate when using server-side Javascript. For example when using the $where statement in a query, do not concatenate user supplied data to build Javascript code; this would be analogous to a SQL injection vulnerability. Fortunately, most queries in MongoDB can be expressed without Javascript. Also, we can mix the two modes. It's a good idea to make all the user-supplied fields go straight to a BSON field, and have your Javascript code be static and passed in the $where field.

If you need to pass user-supplied values into a $where clause, a good approach is to escape them using the CodeWScope mechanism. By setting the user values as variables in the scope document you will avoid the need to have them eval'ed on the server-side.

If you need to use db.eval() with user supplied values, you can either use a CodeWScope or you can supply extra arguments to your function. Something like: db.eval(function(userVal){...}, user_value); This will ensure that user_value gets sent as data rather than code.

### *Dollar Sign Operator Escaping*

Field names in MongoDB query language have semantic meaning. The dollar sign is a reserved character and is used to represent operators, such as $inc. Some care must be taken to assure users can not delivery $operators without the application's expectation.

For example, sometimes it is useful to build a BSON object where the key is user-provided.  In these situations, keys will need to have substitutions for the reserved $ and . characters. If you are unsure what characters to use, the Unicode full width equivalents aren't a bad choice: U+FF04 () and U+FFOE ()

For example:

```
BSONObj my_object = BSON( a_key << a_name );
```

The user may have supplied a $ value within a_key. my_object could be { $where : "things" }. Here we can look at a few cases:

- Inserting.  Inserting into the the database will do no harm. We are not executing this object as a query, we are inserting the data in the database.
  Note: properly written MongoDB client drivers check for reserved characters in keys on inserts.
- Update.  update(query, obj) allows $ operators in the obj field.  $where is not supported in update.  Some operators are possible that

manipulate the single document only -- thus, the keys should be escaped as mentioned above if reserved characters are possible.
- Querying.  Generally this is not a problem as for { x : user_obj }, dollar signs are not top level and have no effect. In theory one might let the user build a query completely themself and provide it to the database. In that case checking for $ characters in keynames is important. That however would be a highly unusual case.

One way to handle user-generated keys is to always put them in sub-objects. Then they are never at top level (where $operators live) anyway.

#### *See Also*

- Do I have to worry about SQL injection? (mailing list thread)
- Driver-specific security concerns:

## How does concurrency work


- mongos
- mongod
- Viewing operations in progress
- Administrative commands and locking
- Operations
- Javascript
  - Group Command
  - MapReduce
- See Also


Latest info in this video : http://www.10gen.com/presentations/concurrency-internals-mongodb-2-2

The documentation below primarily covers MongoDB v2.0. v2.0 typically achieves significantly more concurrency in disk activity than v1.8 did. v2.2 contains substantial concurrency enhancements.

### mongos

For sharded environments, each `mongos` process can perform any number of operations concurrently. This results in downstream operations to mongod instances. Execution of operations at each mongod is independent; that is, one mongod does not block another.

### mongod

In v2.0 `mongod` process uses a modified reader/writer lock with dynamic yielding on page faults and long operations. Any number of concurrent read operations are allowed, but a write operation can block all other operations.

`mongod` threads *yield* their lock (read or write) in two classes of situations:

- yield-on-page-fault – v2.0 implements a yield-on-page-fault feature which results in much more concurrency than one would achieve with a pure reader/writer lock. For common operational cases, file system page faults are detected in advanced and handled outside of any lock, then the lock is resumed. Not all fault situations yield, but many do. This results in v2.0 having much better concurrency in practice than v1.8.
- yield-on-long-operation – `mongod` also yields periodically on common operations that are extremely long running. The goal here is to allow interleaving so that other operations which are quick-running can execute soon. Operations which yield include the following:
  - queries
  - multi document updates
  - multi document removes/deletes
  - bulk inserts

Write lock acquisition is *greedy*: a pending write lock acquisition will prevent further read lock acquisitions until fulfilled. Thus yielding by reads can be important.

Database level locking and the pagefaultexception framework are new concurrency features in v2.2 (pending at the time of this writing albeit present in dev branch as v2.1.1).

More granular locking will be provided post v2.2. SERVER-1240.

### Viewing operations in progress

Use `db.currentOp()` to view operations in progress, and `db.killOp()` to terminate an operation.

### Administrative commands and locking

Certain administrative commands can exclusively lock the `mongod` process for extended periods of time. Specifically, these commands block for long periods:

- foreground index creation

- reindex
- compact command
- repair database
- creating a very large (many gigabytes) capped collection
- validate collection command
- lock and fsync command

On a small collection, the lock time may only be a few seconds. On very large collections, take the `mongod` instance offline so that clients are not effected. For example if the server is part of a replica set, let other members service load while maintenance is in progress.

The following commands are fast and will not block the system excessively:

- dropIndex
- getLastError
- isMaster
- replSetGetStatus
- serverStatus
- auth
- addUser

### Operations

| Operation | Lock type | Notes |
|---|---|---|
| query | read lock | yields (periodically) |
| get more from a cursor | read lock | yields |
| insert | write lock | Inserts are normally fast and short-lived operations; exception is if the collection has many indexes and they do not fit in RAM, or if freelists are extremely long. |
| remove | write lock | yields (both periodically and when faults would occur) |
| update | write lock | yields (both periodically and when faults would occur) |
| map/reduce | at times locked | Allows substantial concurrent operation but exclusive to other javascript execution. |
| create index | See notes | Default "foreground mode" building blocks for extended periods of time. |
| db.eval() | write-lock/none | Substantial blocking without "nolock" option; completely blocking to all javascript – see note below |
| getLastError command | non-blocking | |
| serverStatus command | non-blocking | |
| aggregate command | read lock | until $out/$tee is implemented only reads |

### Javascript

Only one thread in the `mongod` process executes Javascript at a time (other database operations are often possible concurrent with this). Note ticket https://jira.mongodb.org/browse/SERVER-4258 will allow multi-threading.

#### Group Command

The group command takes a read lock and does not allow any other threads to execute JavaScript while it is running.

#### MapReduce

The mapreduce operation is composed of many small events: reads from the input collection, executions of map(), executions of reduce(), writes to the output collection, etc.

There is a javascript lock so that only one thread can execute JS code at one point in time. But most JS steps of the MR (e.g. a single map()) are very short and consequently the lock is yielded very often. Note ticket https://jira.mongodb.org/browse/SERVER-4258 will allow multi-threading.

There are also several non-JavaScript operations that MapReduce performs that take locks:

- It reads from a collection (read lock yielded every 100 documents)
- It inserts documents into the temporary collection (write lock for a single write)
- It creates a final collection or merges into or replaces an existing collection (write lock)

The result is that while single-threaded, several MR jobs can be interleaved and appear to run in parallel.
Note the problematic lock can be the final write lock during post-processing, which is used to make results appear atomically. This lock can take a long time in "merge" or "reduce" output mode. A flag to disable atomicity has been added as per https://jira.mongodb.org/browse/SERVER-2581 (v2.1.1).

### See Also

- http://blog.serverdensity.com/2012/05/23/goodbye-global-lock-mongodb-2-0-vs-2-2/

## What is a Name Space

**Redirection Notice**
This page should redirect to http://docs.mongodb.org/manual/faq/developers/#what-is-a-namespace.

## SQL to Mongo Mapping Chart

| MySQL executable | Oracle executable | Mongo executable |
|---|---|---|
| `mysqld` | `oracle` | `mongod` |
| `mysql` | `sqlplus` | `mongo` |

| MySQL term | Mongo term/concept |
|---|---|
| database | database |
| table | collection |
| index | index |
| row | BSON document |
| column | BSON field |
| join | embedding and linking |
| primary key | _id field |
| group by | aggregation |

MongoDB queries are expressed as JSON (BSON) objects.  The following chart shows examples as both SQL and in Mongo Query Language syntax.

The query expression in MongoDB (and other things, such as index key patterns) is represented as JSON (BSON). However, the actual verb (e.g. "find") is done in one's regular programming language; thus the exact forms of these verbs vary by language.  The examples below are Javascript and can be executed from the mongo shell.

| SQL Statement | Mongo Statement |
|---|---|
| `CREATE TABLE USERS (a Number, b Number)` | implicit; can also be done explicitly with `db.createCollection("mycoll")` |
| `ALTER TABLE users ADD ...` | implicit |
| | |

| | |
|---|---|
| `INSERT INTO USERS VALUES(3,5)` | `db.users.insert({a:3,b:5})` |
| | |
| `SELECT a,b FROM users` | `db.users.find({}, {a:1,b:1})` |
| `SELECT * FROM users` | `db.users.find()` |
| `SELECT * FROM users WHERE age=33` | `db.users.find({age:33})` |
| `SELECT a,b FROM users WHERE age=33` | `db.users.find({age:33}, {a:1,b:1})` |
| `SELECT * FROM users WHERE age=33 ORDER BY name` | `db.users.find({age:33}).sort({name:1})` |
| `SELECT * FROM users WHERE age>33` | `db.users.find({age:{$gt:33}})` |
| `SELECT * FROM users WHERE age!=33` | `db.users.find({age:{$ne:33}})` |
| `SELECT * FROM users WHERE name LIKE "%Joe%"` | `db.users.find({name:/Joe/})` |
| `SELECT * FROM users WHERE name LIKE "Joe%"` | `db.users.find({name:/^Joe/})` |
| `SELECT * FROM users WHERE age>33 AND age<=40` | `db.users.find({'age':{$gt:33,$lte:40}})` |
| `SELECT * FROM users ORDER BY name DESC` | `db.users.find().sort({name:-1})` |
| `SELECT * FROM users WHERE a=1 and b='q'` | `db.users.find({a:1,b:'q'})` |

| | |
|---|---|
| `SELECT * FROM users LIMIT 10 SKIP 20` | `db.users.find().limit(10).skip(20)` |
| `SELECT * FROM users WHERE a=1 or b=2` | `db.users.find( { $or : [ { a : 1 } , { b : 2 } ] } )` |
| `SELECT * FROM users LIMIT 1` | `db.users.findOne()` |
| `SELECT order_id FROM orders o, order_line_items li WHERE li.order_id=o.order_id AND li.sku=12345` | `db.orders.find({"items.sku" :12345},{_id:1})` |
| `SELECT customer.name FROM customers,orders WHERE orders.id="q179" AND orders.custid=customer.id` | `var o = db.orders.findOne({_id:"q179" });`<br>`var name = db.customers.findOne({_id:o.custid})` |
| | |
| `SELECT DISTINCT last_name FROM users` | `db.users.distinct('last_name')` |
| `SELECT COUNT(*y)`<br>`FROM users` | `db.users.count()` |
| `SELECT COUNT(*y)`<br>`FROM users where AGE > 30` | `db.users.find({age: {'$gt': 30}}).count()` |
| `SELECT COUNT(AGE) from users` | `db.users.find({age: {'$exists': true }}).count()` |
| | |
| `CREATE INDEX myindexname ON users(name)` | `db.users.ensureIndex({name:1})` |
| `CREATE INDEX myindexname ON users(name,ts DESC)` | `db.users.ensureIndex({name:1,ts:-1})` |
| | |

| | |
|---|---|
| `EXPLAIN SELECT * FROM users WHERE z=3` | `db.users.find({z:3}).explain()` |
| | |
| `UPDATE users SET a=1 WHERE b='q'` | `db.users.update({b:'q'}, {$set:{a:1}}, false, true)` |
| `UPDATE users SET a=a+2 WHERE b='q'` | `db.users.update({b:'q'}, {$inc:{a:2}}, false, true)` |
| | |
| `DELETE FROM users WHERE z="abc"` | `db.users.remove({z:'abc'});` |

More examples, specifically aggregation examples, here

***See Also***

- The MongoDB Manual Pages are a good place to learn more.
- SQL to Shell to C++

## SQL to Shell to C++

MongoDB queries are expressed as JSON (BSON) objects. This quick reference chart shows examples as SQL, Mongo shell syntax, and Mongo C++ driver syntax.

A query expression in MongoDB (and other things, such as an index key pattern) is represented as BSON. In C++ you can use BSONObjBuilder (aka bson::bob) to build BSON objects, or the BSON() macro. The examples below assume a connection c already established:

```
using namespace bson;
DBClientConnection c;
c.connect("somehost");
```

Several of the C++ driver methods throw mongo::DBException, so you will want a try/catch statement as some level in your program.

| SQL | Mongo Shell | C++ Driver |
|---|---|---|
| `INSERT INTO USERS VALUES(1,1)` | `db.users.insert({a:1,b:1})` | `// GENOID is optional. if not done by client, server will add an _id c.insert("mydb.users", BSON(GENOID<<"a"<<1<< "b"<<1)); // then optionally: string err = c.getLastError();` |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| SELECT a,b<br>FROM users | db.users.find({}, {a:1,b:1}) | auto_ptr<DBClientCursor><br>cursor =<br>  c.query("mydb.users",<br>Query(), 0, 0, BSON("a"<br><<1<<"b"<<1)); |
| SELECT *<br>FROM users | db.users.find() | auto_ptr<DBClientCursor><br>cursor =<br>  c.query("mydb.users",<br>Query()); |
| SELECT *<br>FROM users<br>WHERE age=33 | db.users.find({age:33}) | auto_ptr<DBClientCursor><br>cursor =<br>  c.query("mydb.users",<br>QUERY("age"<<33))<br>// or:<br>auto_ptr<DBClientCursor><br>cursor =<br>  c.query("mydb.users",<br>BSON("age"<<33)) |
| SELECT *<br>FROM users<br>WHERE age=33<br>ORDER BY<br>name | db.users.find({age:33}).sort({name:1}) | auto_ptr<DBClientCursor><br>cursor =<br>  c.query("mydb.users",<br>QUERY("age"<<33).sort(<br>"name")); |
| SELECT *<br>FROM users<br>WHERE age>33<br>AND age<=40 | db.users.find({'age':{$gt:33},{$lte:40}}) | auto_ptr<DBClientCursor><br>cursor =<br>  c.query("mydb.users",<br>QUERY("age"<br><<GT<<33<<LTE<<40)); |
| CREATE INDEX<br>myindexname<br>ON<br>users(name) | db.users.ensureIndex({name:1}) | c.ensureIndex(<br>"mydb.users", BSON(<br>"name"<<1)); |
| SELECT *<br>FROM users<br>LIMIT 10<br>SKIP 20 | db.users.find().limit(10).skip(20) | auto_ptr<DBClientCursor><br>cursor =<br>  c.query("mydb.users",<br>Query(), 10, 20); |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| `SELECT * FROM users LIMIT 1` | `db.users.findOne()` | `bo obj = c.findOne( "mydb.users", Query());` |
| `SELECT DISTINCT last_name FROM users WHERE x=1` | `db.users.distinct('last_name',{x:1})` | `// no helper for distinct yet in c++ driver, so send command manually bo cmdResult; bool ok = c.runCommand( "mydb", BSON( "distinct" << "users" << "key" << "last_name" << "query" << BSON("x"<<1)), cmdResult); list<bo> results; cmdResult["values" ].Obj().Vals(results);` |
| `SELECT COUNT(*y) FROM users where AGE > 30` | `db.users.find({age: {'$gt': 30}}).count()` | `unsigned long long n = c.count("mydb.users", QUERY("age:"<<GT<<30));` |
| `UPDATE users SET a=a+2 WHERE b='q'` | `db.users.update({b:'q'}, {$inc:{a:2}}, false, true)` | `c.update("mydb.users", QUERY("b"<<"q"), BSON( "$inc"<<BSON("a"<<2)), false, true); // then optionally: string err = c.getLastError(); bool ok = err.empty();` |
| `DELETE FROM users WHERE z="abc"` | `db.users.remove({z:'abc'});` | `c.remove("mydb.users", QUERY("z"<<"abc")); // then optionally: string err = c.getLastError();` |

**See Also**

- Several more examples (in shell syntax) are on the SQL to Mongo Mapping Chart page.
- C++ Language Center

## What is the Compare Order for BSON Types

MongoDB allows objects in the same collection which have values which may differ in type.  When comparing values from different types, a

convention is utilized as to which value is less than the other.  This (somewhat arbitary but well defined) ordering is listed below.

Note that some types are treated as equivalent for comparison purposes -- specifically numeric types which undergo conversion before comparison.

See also the BSON specification.

- Null
- Numbers (ints, longs, doubles)
- Symbol, String
- Object
- Array
- BinData
- ObjectID
- Boolean
- Date, Timestamp
- Regular Expression

Example (using the mongo shell ):

```
> t = db.mycoll;
> t.insert({x:3});
> t.insert( {x : 2.9} );
> t.insert( {x : new Date()} );
> t.insert( {x : true } )
> t.find().sort({x:1})
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4b03155dce8de6586fb002c7"), "x" : 2.9 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4b03154cce8de6586fb002c6"), "x" : 3 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4b031566ce8de6586fb002c9"), "x" : true }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4b031563ce8de6586fb002c8"), "x" : "Tue Nov 17 2009 16:28:03 GMT-0500 (EST)" }
```

### *MinKey and MaxKey*

In addition to the above types MongoDB internally uses a special type for MinKey and MaxKey which are less than, and greater than all other possible BSON element values, respectively.

#### *From the mongo Javascript Shell*

For example we can continue our example from above adding two objects which have x key values of MinKey and MaxKey respectively:

```
> t.insert( { x : MaxKey } )
> t.insert( { x : MinKey } )
> t.find().sort({x:1})
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4b04094b7c65b846e2090112"), "x" : { $minKey : 1 } }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4b03155dce8de6586fb002c7"), "x" : 2.9 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4b03154cce8de6586fb002c6"), "x" : 3 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4b031566ce8de6586fb002c9"), "x" : true }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4b031563ce8de6586fb002c8"), "x" : "Tue Nov 17 2009 16:28:03 GMT-0500 (EST)" }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4b0409487c65b846e2090111"), "x" : { $maxKey : 1 } }
```

#### *From C++*

See also the Tailable Cursors page for an example of using MinKey from C++.  See also minKey and maxKey definitions in jsobj.h.

### *BSON Type Comparison in Queries*

Comparing two distinct BSON types in a query always returns false.

```
> t.insert( { x : 1 } )
> t.insert( { x: 'abc' } )
> t.find().sort( { x : 1 } )
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4e51589a029fa59b62174306"), "x" : 10 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4e24c0ddb497b6f1d53beca1"), "x" : "abc" }
> db.t.find({x: {$gt:''}})
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4e24c0ddb497b6f1d53beca1"), "x" : "abc" }
> db.t.find({x: {$lt:''}})
```

# Admin Zone


- Components
- Journaling
- MongoDB Monitoring Service
- The Database and Caching
- Production Notes
- Replication
- Sharding
- Hosting Center
- Monitoring and Diagnostics
- Backups
- Durability and Repair
- Security and Authentication
- Admin UIs
- Starting and Stopping Mongo
- GridFS Tools
- DBA Operations from the Shell
- Architecture and Components
- Windows
- Troubleshooting


## Community Admin-Related Articles

- boxedice.com - notes from a production deployment
- Survey of Admin UIs for MongoDB
- MongoDB Nagios Check
- MongoDB Cacti Graphs

## See Also

- Commands in Developer Zone

# Components

**Redirection Notice**
This page should redirect to Architecture and Components.

# Journaling


- Disabling/Enabling
- Journal Files
- Recovery
- The journal Subdirectory
- Group Commits
- Commit Acknowledgement
- FAQ
  - If I am using replication, can some members use journaling and others not?
  - How's performance?
  - Can I use the journaling feature to perform safe hot backups?
  - 32 bit nuances?
  - When did the --journal option change from --dur?
  - Will the journal replay have problems if entries are incomplete (like the failure happened in the middle of one)?
  - How many times is data written to disk when replication and journaling are both on?
- See Also


MongoDB v1.7.5+ supports write-ahead journaling of operations to facilitate fast crash recovery and durability in the storage engine.

### Disabling/Enabling

In version 1.9.2+, journaling is enabled by default for 64-bit platforms. You can disable journaling with the mongod `--nojournal` command line option. For versions < 1.9.2 or 32-bit platforms, you can enable journaling with the `--journal` command line option.

It is OK to disable journaling after running with journaling by simply shutting down `mongod` cleanly and restarting with `--nojournal`. The reverse is also OK; shutdown cleanly and restart without `--nojournal`.

MongoDB may determine that it is faster to preallocate journal files than to create them as needed. If MongoDB decides to preallocate the files, it will not start listening on port 27017 until this process completes, which can take a few minutes. This means that your applications and the shell will not be able to connect to the database immediately on initial startup. Check the logs to see if MongoDB is busy preallocating. It will print the standard "waiting for connections on port *whatever*" when it has finished.

### Journal Files

With journaling enabled, journal files will be created in a `journal/` subdirectory under your chosen db path. These files are write-ahead redo logs. In addition, a last sequence number file, `journal/lsn`, will be created. A clean shutdown removes all files under `journal/`.

The Mongo data files (*database*.ns, *database*.0, *database*.1, ...) have the same format as in previous releases. Thus, the upgrade process is seamless, and a rollback would be seamless too. (If you roll back to a pre v1.7.5 release, try to shut down cleanly first. Regardless, remove the journal/ directory before starting the pre v1.7.5 version of mongod.)

### Recovery

On a restart after a crash, journal files in `journal/` will be replayed before the server goes online. This will be indicated in the log output. You do not need to run a repair.

### The journal Subdirectory

You may wish, before starting `mongod` to symlink the `journal/` directory to a dedicated hard drive to speed the frequent (fsynced) sequential writes which occur to the current journal file.

### Group Commits

MongoDB performs *group commits* (batch commits) when journaling. This means that a series of operations over many milliseconds are committed all at once. This is done to achieve high performance.

Group commits are performed approximately every 100ms by default. In version 1.9.2+, you can set this interval yourself using the `--journalCommitInterval` command line option. The allowed range is 2 to 300 milliseconds.

### Commit Acknowledgement

You can wait for group commit acknowledgement with the getLastError Command. In versions before 1.9.0 using getLastError + fsync would do this, in newer versions the "j" option has been specifically created for this purpose.

In version 1.9.2+ the group commit delay is shortened when a commit acknowledgement (getLastError + j) is pending; this can be as little as 1/3 of the normal group commit interval.

### FAQ

#### *If I am using replication, can some members use journaling and others not?*

Yes.

#### *How's performance?*

Read performance should be the same. Write performance should be very good but there is some overhead over the non-durable version as the journal files must be written. If you find a case where there is a large difference in performance between running with and without journaling, please let us know so we can tune it.

#### *Can I use the journaling feature to perform safe hot backups?*

Yes, see Backups with Journaling Enabled.

#### *32 bit nuances?*

There is extra memory mapped file activity with journaling. This will further constrain the limited db size of 32 bit builds. Thus, for now journaling by default is disabled on 32 bit systems.

#### *When did the --journal option change from --dur?*

In 1.8 the option was renamed to `--journal`, but the old name is still accepted for backwards compatibility; please change to `--journal` if you are using the old option.

***Will the journal replay have problems if entries are incomplete (like the failure happened in the middle of one)?***

Each journal (group) write is consistent and won't be replayed during recovery unless it is complete.

***How many times is data written to disk when replication and journaling are both on?***

In v1.8, for an insert, four times. The object is written to the main collection, and also the oplog collection (so that is twice). Both of those writes are journaled as a single mini-transaction in the journal file (the files in /data/db/journal). Thus 4 times total.

There is an open item in to reduce this by having the journal be compressed. This will reduce from 4x to probably ~2.5x.

The above applies to collection data and inserts which is the worst case scenario. Index updates are written to the index and the journal, but not the oplog, so they should be 2X today not 4X. Likewise updates with things like $set, $addToSet, $inc, etc. are compactly logged all around so those are generally small.

### See Also

- Journaling Administration Notes
- getLastError command for controlling writes per operation
- Durability Internals
- Presentations
    - Recorded Webinar on Journaling (April 2011)
    - Journaling and the Storage Engine (May 2011)

## Journaling Administration Notes

- Journal Files ( *e.g.* journal/j._0)
- Prealloc Files ( *e.g.* journal/prealloc.0)
- serverStatus command
- journalLatencyTest Command

### *Journal Files (e.g. journal/j._0)*

Journal files are append-only and are written to the `journal/` directory under the dbpath directory (which is `/data/db/` by default).

Journal files are named `j._0`, `j._1`, etc. When a journal file reached 1GB in size, a new file is created. Old files which are no longer needed are rotated out (automatically deleted). Unless your write bytes/second rate is extremely high, you should have only two or three journal files.

Note: in more recent versions, the journal files are only 128MB apiece when using the `--smallfiles` command line option.

### *Prealloc Files (e.g. journal/prealloc.0)*

`mongod` will create `prealloc` files in the journal directory under some circumstances to minimize journal write latency. On some filesystems, appending to a file and making it larger can be slower than writing to a file of a predefined size. `mongod` checks this at startup and if it finds this to be the case will use preallocated journal files. If found to be helpful, a small pool of prealloc files will be created in the journal directory before startup begins. This is a one time initiation and does not occur with future invocations. Approximately 3GB of files will be preallocated (and truly prewritten, not sparse allocated) - thus in this situation, expect roughly a 3 minute delay on the first startup to preallocate these files.

If you don't want to wait three minutes on startup, you can preallocate the files using another instance of `mongod` and then move them to your normal dbpath before starting with journaling. For example, if you had an instance of `mongod` running on port 27017 with a dbpath of */data/db* (the defaults), you could preallocate journal files for it with:

```
$ mkdir ~/tmpDbpath
$ mongod --port 10000 --dbpath ~/tmpDbpath --journal
# startup messages
# .
# .
# .
# wait for prealloc to finish
Thu Mar 17 10:02:52 [initandlisten] preallocating a journal file ~/tmpDbpath/journal/prealloc.0
Thu Mar 17 10:03:03 [initandlisten] preallocating a journal file ~/tmpDbpath/journal/prealloc.1
Thu Mar 17 10:03:14 [initandlisten] preallocating a journal file ~/tmpDbpath/journal/prealloc.2
Thu Mar 17 10:03:25 [initandlisten] flushing directory ~/tmpDbpath/journal
Thu Mar 17 10:03:25 [initandlisten] flushing directory ~/tmpDbpath/journal
Thu Mar 17 10:03:25 [initandlisten] waiting for connections on port 10000
Thu Mar 17 10:03:25 [websvr] web admin interface listening on port 11000
# then Ctrl-C to kill this instance
^C
$ mv ~/tmpDbpath/journal /data/db/
$ # restart mongod on port 27017 with --journal
```

prealloc files do not contain data, but are rather simply preallocated files that are ready to use that are truly preallocated by the file system (i.e. they are not "sparse"). It is thus safe to remove them, but if you restart mongod with journaling, it will create them again if they are missing.

#### *serverStatus command*

The serverStatus command now includes some statistics regarding journaling.

#### *journalLatencyTest Command*

You can use the `journalLatencyTest` command to measure how long it takes on your volume to write to the disk (including fsyncing the data) in an append-only fashion.

```
> use admin
> db.runCommand("journalLatencyTest")
```

You can run this command on an idle system to get a baseline sync time for journaling. In addition, it is safe to run this command on a busy system to see the sync time on a busy system (which may be higher if the journal directory is on the same volume as the data files).

In version 1.9.2+ you can set the group commit interval, using `--journalCommitInterval` command-line option, to between 2 and 300 milliseconds (default is 100ms). The actual interval will be the maximum of this setting and your disk latency as measured above.

journalLatencyTest is also a good way to check if your disk drive is buffering writes in its local cache. If the number is very low (e.g., less than 2ms) and the drive is non-ssd, the drive is probably buffering writes. In that case, you will want to enable cache write-through for the device in your operating system. (Unless you have a disk controller card with battery backed ram, then this is a good thing.)

# MongoDB Monitoring Service

MongoDB Monitoring Service is a free SaaS solution for proactive monitoring of your MongoDB cluster(s). MMS's web interface features charts, custom dashboards, and automated alerting; and since it runs in the cloud, MMS requires minimal setup and configuration. Within minutes your devops and systems administration teams can manage and optimize your MongoDB deployment, and derive valuable insights from key operational metrics.

## Getting Started

MMS is free and available to everyone in the MongoDB community. To get started with MMS now, visit the MMS setup page.

- Create an account at mms.10gen.com.
- Download and install the MMS agent on your cluster.
- Within minutes, data will be visible on mms.10gen.com.

## Docs

Documentation for MMS is available at:

- https://mms.10gen.com/help/

### Blog Posts

- Announcing the MongoDB Monitoring Service - 10gen Blog (Sept 2011)
- Getting Started with MMS - Kristina Chodorow's Blog (Sept 2011)
- Getting Started with Mongo Monitoring Service (MMS) on OpenShift - OpenShift Blog (Dec 2011)
- Monitoring mongoDB with MMS (from 10gen) - Dec 2011

## The Database and Caching

With relational databases, object caching is usually a separate facility (such as memcached), which makes sense as even a RAM page cache hit is a fairly expensive operation with a relational database (joins may be required, and the data must be transformed into an object representation). Further, memcached type solutions are more scaleable than a relational database.

Mongo eliminates the need (in some cases) for a separate object caching layer. Queries that result in file system RAM cache hits are very fast as the object's representation in the database is very close to its representation in application memory. Also, the MongoDB can scale to (almost) any level and provides an object cache and database integrated together, which is very helpful as there is no risk of retrieving stale data from the cache. In addition, the complex queries a full DBMS provides are also possible.

## Production Notes


- Backups
- TCP Port Numbers
- Linux
    - General Unix Notes
    - Linux Kernel Versions
    - Checking Disk IO
    - Checking Network IO
- Storage
    - Solid State Disks (SSDs)
    - RAID
    - Linux File Systems
    - Remote mounts
    - Swap
- What Hardware?
- Tips

- iostat
- NFS
- NUMA
- SSD
- Virtualization


### Backups

- Backups Doc Page
- Import Export Tools

### TCP Port Numbers

Default TCP port numbers for MongoDB processes:

- Standalone `mongod` : 27017
- `mongos` : 27017
- shard server (`mongod --shardsvr`) : 27018
- config server (`mongod --configsvr`) : 27019
- web stats page for `mongod` : add 1000 to port number (28017, by default)

Firewall rules for these ports and connections are available here.

### Linux

#### *General Unix Notes*

- Turn off *atime* for the data volume
- Set file descriptor limit and user process limit to 4k+ (see *etc/limits* and *ulimit*)
- **Do not** use large VM pages with Linux (more info)
- Use `dmesg` to see if box is behaving strangely
- Try to disable NUMA in your BIOS. If that is not possible see NUMA

- Minimize clock skew between your hosts by using ntp; linux distros usually include this by default, but check and install the ntpd package if it isn't already installed

### *Linux Kernel Versions*

Some have reported skepticism on behavior of Linux 2.6.33-31 and 2.6.32 kernel, at least on EC2. 2.6.36 is given a thumbs up by the community.

For those running databases on ext4 filesystems, a 2.6.23 kernel is required for efficient filesystem preallocation, 2.6.25 is required for XFS support of the same feature. High filesystem I/O following the allocation of new database files is one symptom of this problem.

### *Checking Disk IO*

```
iostat -txm 2
```

If the timestamp feature is not available, `iostat -xm 2`

### *Checking Network IO*

- atop - Holistic system top
- Munin
- ethtool eth0 - check network port speed
- bwm-ng
- iptraf

## Storage

### *Solid State Disks (SSDs)*

- See SSD page

### *RAID*

Typically we recommend using RAID-10.

RAID-5 and RAID-6 can be slow, and are not suggested.

RAID-0 will provide good write performance but provides limited availability, and reduced performance on reads. It is not suggested.

See also the ec2 page for comments on EBS striping.

### *Linux File Systems*

MongoDB uses large files for storing data, and preallocates these. These filesystems seem to work well:

- ext4 ( kernel version >= 2.6.23 )
- xfs ( kernel version >= 2.6.25 )

In addition to the file systems above you might also want to (explicitly) disable file/directory modification times by using these mount options:

- noatime (also enables nodiratime)

We have found **`ext3`** to be very slow in allocating files (or removing them) as well as access within large files is also poor.

### *Remote mounts*

We have found that some versions of NFS perform very poorly and do not recommend using NFS. See the NFS page for more information.

Amazon elastic block store (EBS) seems to work well up to its intrinsic performance characteristics, when configured well.

### *Swap*

It is useful for the linux kernel to have swap space to use in emergencies. Because of the way MongoDB memory maps the database files none of this data will ever end up in swap; this means that on a healthy system the swap space will rarely be used on a system only running MongoDB. Having swap can keep the kernel from killing MongoDB when physical memory limits are reached.

You may also want to look at using something which compresses swap/memory like compcache.

## What Hardware?

MongoDB tends to run well on virtually all hardware. In fact it was designed specifically with commodity hardware in mind (to facilitate cloud computing); that said it works well on very large servers too. That said if you are about to buy hardware here are a few suggestions:

- Fast CPU clock speed is helpful.
- Many cores helps but does not provide a high level of marginal return, so don't spend money on them. (This is both a consequence of the design of the program and also that memory bandwidth can be a limiter; there isn't necessarily a lot of computation happening inside a database).
- NUMA is not very helpful as memory access is not very localized in a database. Thus non-NUMA is recommended; or configure NUMA as detailed elsewhere in this document.
- RAM is good.
- SSD is good. We have had good results and have seen good price/performance with SATA SSDs; the (typically) more upscale PCI SSDs work fine too.
- Commodity (SATA) spinning drives are often a good option as the speed increase for random I/O for more expensive drives is not that dramatic (only on the order of 2x) – spending that money on SSDs or RAM may be more effective.

### Tips

- Handling Halted Replication
- Starting and Stopping the Database

## iostat

On Linux, use the iostat command to check if disk I/O is a bottleneck for your database.

We generally find the form:

```
iostat -xm 2
```

to work well. (Use a number of seconds with iostat, otherwise it will display stats since server boot, which is not very useful.)

Use the `mount` command to see what device your `/data/db` directory resides on.

#### *Fields*

- %util - this is the most useful field for a quick check, it indicates what percent of the time the device/drive is in use. If the number if near 100%, your server may be physical disk I/O bound. (There are some volume situations where this statistic overstates, but most often it is correct.)
- r/s - reads per second.
- w/s - writes per second
- rMB/s - read megabytes per second
- wMB/s - write megabytes per second
- avgrq-sz - average request size. The smaller this number, the more random your IO operations are. This is in sectors : typically sectors are 512 bytes, so multiply by 0.5 to see average request size in kilobytes.

On Windows Server use the performance monitor utility.

## NFS

We have found that some versions of NFS perform very poorly, or simply don't work, and do not suggest using NFS. (We'd love to hear from you if you are using NFS and what results you are getting, either great or not great.)

## NUMA

- numactl
- proc settings
- Testing
- References

Linux, NUMA and MongoDB tend not to work well together. If you are running MongoDB on numa hardware, we recommend turning it off (running with an interleave memory policy). Problems will manifest in strange ways, such as massive slow downs for periods of time or high system cpu time.

#### *numactl*

To turn off NUMA, start mongod with

```
numactl --interleave=all ${MONGODB_HOME}/bin/mongod --config conf/mongodb.conf
```

#### *proc settings*

```
echo 0 > /proc/sys/vm/zone_reclaim_mode
```

You can change `zone_reclaim_mode` without restarting `mongod`. For more information on this setting see http://www.kernel.org/doc/Documentation/sysctl/vm.txt.

#### *Testing*

On Linux, `mongod` v2.0+ checks these settings on startup and prints a warning if they do not match the recommendations.

#### *References*

The MySQL "swap insanity" problem and the effects of the NUMA architecture describes the effects of NUMA on databases. This blog post was aimed at problems NUMA created for MySQL, but the issues are the same. The posting describes the NUMA architecture and goals, and how these are incompatible with the working of databases.

## SSD

We are not experts on solid state drives, but tried to provide some information here that would be helpful. Comments very welcome.


- Write Endurance
  - Reserve some unpartitioned space
  - smartctl
- Speed
- Reliability
- Random reads vs. random writes
- PCI vs. SATA
- RAM vs. SSD
- FlashCache
- OS scheduler
- Run mongoperf
- Helpful links


Multiple MongoDB users have reported good success running MongoDB databases on solid state drives.

### *Write Endurance*

Write endurance with solid state drives vary. SLC drives have higher endurance but newer generation MLC (and eMLC) drives are getting better.

As an example, the MLC Intel 320 drives specify endurance of 20GB/day of writes for five years. If you are doing small or medium size random reads and writes this is sufficient. The Intel 710 series is the enterprise-class models and have higher endurance.

If you intend to write a full drive's worth of data writing per day (and every day for a long time), this level of endurance would be insufficient. For large sequential operations (for example very large map/reduces), one could write far more than 20GB/day. Traditional hard drives are quite good at sequential I/O and thus may be better for that use case.

- Blog post on SSD lifespan

#### *Reserve some unpartitioned space*

Some users report good results when leaving 20% of their drives completely unpartitioned. In this situation the drive knows it can use that space as working space. Note formatted but empty space may or may not be available to the drive depending on TRIM support which is often lacking.

#### *smartctl*

On some devices, "smartctl -A" will show you the Media_Wearout_Indicator.

```
$ sudo smartctl -A /dev/sda | grep Wearout
233 Media_Wearout_Indicator 0x0032   099   099   000    Old_age   Always       -       0
```

### *Speed*

A paper in ACM Transactions on Storage (Sep2010) listed the following results for measured 4KB peak random direct IO for some popular devices:

| Device | Read IOPS | Write IOPS |
|---|---|---|
| Intel X25-E | 33,400 | 3,120 |
| FusionIO ioDrive | 98,800 | 75,100 |

Intel's larger drives seem to have higher write IOPS than the smaller ones (up to 23,000 claimed for the 320 series). More info here.

Real-world results should be lower, but the numbers are still impressive.

### *Reliability*

Some manufacturers specify relability stats indicating failure rates of approximately 0.6% per year. This is better than traditional drives (2% per year failure rate or higher), but still quite high and thus mirroring will be important. (And of course manufacture specs could be optimistic.)

### *Random reads vs. random writes*

Random access I/O is the sweet spot for SSD. Historically random reads on SSD drives have been much faster than random writes. That said, random writes are still an order of magnitude faster than spinning disks.

Recently new drives have released that have much higher random write performance. For example the Intel 320 series, particular the larger capacity drives, has much higher random write performance than the older Intel X25 series drives.

### *PCI vs. SATA*

SSD is available both as PCI cards and SATA drives. PCI is oriented towards the high end of products on the market.

Some SATA SSD drives now support 6Gbps sata transfer rates, yet at the time of this writing many controllers shipped with servers are 3Gbps. For random IO oriented applications this is likely sufficient, but worth considering regardless.

### *RAM vs. SSD*

Even though SSDs are fast, RAM is still faster. Thus for the highest performance possible, having enough RAM to contain the working set of data from the database is optimal. However, it is common to have a request rate that is easily met by the speed of random IO's with SSDs, and SSD cost per byte is lower than RAM (and persistent too).

A system with less RAM and SSDs will likely outperform a system with more RAM and spinning disks. For example a system with SSD drives and 64GB RAM will often outperform a system with 128GB RAM and spinning disks. (Results will vary by use case of course.)

One helpful characteristic of SSDs is they can facilitate fast "preheat" of RAM on a hardware restart. On a restart a system's RAM file system cache must be repopulated. On a box with 64GB RAM or more, this can take a considerable amount of time – for example six minutes at 100MB/sec, and much longer when the requests are random IO to spinning disks.

### *FlashCache*

FlashCache is a write back block cache for Linux. It was created by Facebook. Installation is a bit of work as you have to build and install a kernel module. Sep2011: If you use this please report results in the mongo forum as it's new and everyone will be curious how well it works.

- http://www.facebook.com/note.php?note_id=388112370932

### *OS scheduler*

One user reports good results with the noop IO scheduler under certain configurations of their system. As always caution is recommended on nonstandard configurations as such configurations never get as much testing...

### *Run mongoperf*

mongoperf is a disk performance stress utility. It is not part of the mongo database, simply a disk exercising program. We recommend testing your

SSD setup with mongoperf. Note that the random writes it are a worst case scenario, and in many cases MongoDB can do writes that are much larger.

#### *Helpful links*

- Benchmarks of SSD drives from various manufacturers
  - http://techreport.com/articles.x/20653/5
  - http://www.anandtech.com/show/4244/intel-ssd-320-review/3
- Intel SSD Models Comparison (scroll down)
- Intel 710 and 720 series info

## Virtualization

Generally MongoDB works very well in virtualized environments, with the exception of OpenVZ.

#### *EC2*

Compatible. No special configuration requirements.

#### *VMWare*

Some suggest not using overcommit as they may cause issues. Otherwise compatible.

Cloning a VM is possible. For example you might use this to spin up a new virtual host that will be added as a member of a replica set. If Journaling is enabled, the clone snapshot will be consistent. If not using journaling, stop mongod, clone, and then restart.

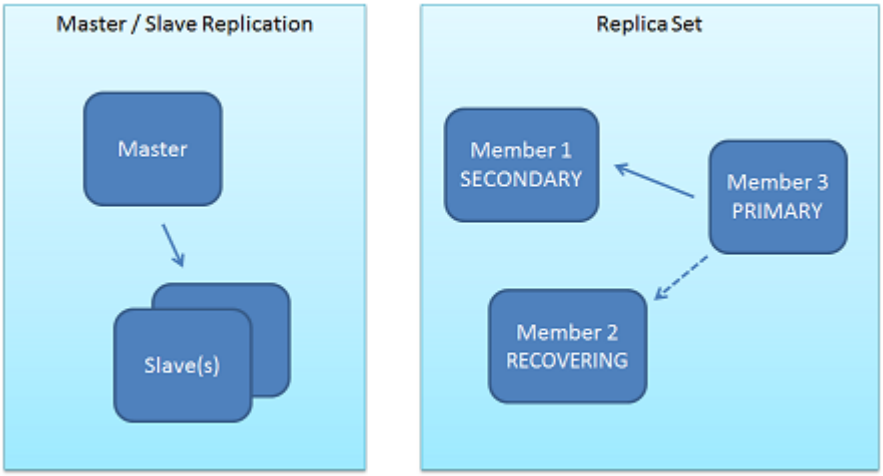
#### *OpenVZ*

Issues have been reported here.

# Replication

MongoDB supports asynchronous replication of data between servers for failover and redundancy. Only one server (in the set/shard) is active for writes (the primary, or master) at a given time – this is to allow strong consistent (atomic) operations. One can optionally send read operations to the secondaries when eventual consistency semantics are acceptable.

Two forms of replication are available, Replica Sets and Master-Slave. Use Replica Sets – replica sets are a functional superset of master/slave and are handled by much newer, more robust code.




Each shard of a Mongo cluster is a replica set.

- Replica Set Documentation

#### Verifying propagation of writes with `getlasterror`

A client can block until a write operation has been replicated to N servers -- read more here .

### See Also

- Master Slave Replication

Documentation of replica sets is available in the MongoDB Manual:

- Replication Documentation Index
- Replication Fundamentals
- Replication Architectures
- Replication Internals
- Replication Tutorials
- Replication Reference

### Video

A MongoDB Replication Primer: Replica Sets in Practice - Presentation at MongoSV (Dec 2011)

## About the local database

`mongod` reserves the database `local` for special functionality. It is special in that its contents are never replicated.

When authentication is used, authenticating against the `local` database is equivalent to authenticating against the `admin` database: it gives you permissions across all databases, not just `local`.

### *Replica Sets*

Replica sets use the following collections in `local`:

- `local.system.replset` the replica set's configuration object is stored here. (View via the `rs.conf()` helper in the shell – or query it directly.)
- `local.oplog.rs` is a capped collection that is the oplog. You can use the `--oplogSize` command line parameter to set the size of this collection.
- `local.replset.minvalid` sometimes contains an object used internally by replica sets to track sync status

### *Master/Slave Replication*

- Master
  - `local.oplog.$main` the "oplog"
  - `local.slaves`
- Slave
  - `local.sources`
- Other
  - `local.me`
  - `local.pair.*` (replica pairs, which are deprecated)

## Verifying Propagation of Writes with getLastError

Please read the getLastError Command page first.

A client can await a write operation's replication to N servers (v1.6+). Use the getLastError Command with the parameter `w`:

```
// examples:

db.runCommand( { getlasterror : 1 , w : 2 } )

db.runCommand( { getlasterror : 1 , w : "majority" } )

db.runCommand( { getlasterror : 1 , w : "majority", j:true } )

db.runCommand( { getlasterror : 1 , w : "majority", wtimeout : 5000 } )
```

If w is not set, or equals one, the command may return almost immediately, implying the data is on one server (itself). If w is 2, then the data is on the current server and 1 other server (a secondary).

v2.0+ supports a "majority" value for `w` which indicates "await the data reaching a majority of members". This can be quite useful as a "cluster wide commit" of the write has occurred once the write has reached a majority of the (non-arbiter) members of a set.

The optional `wtimeout` parameter allows one to time out after a certain number of milliseconds (perhaps then returning an error to a user).

```
> db.runCommand({getlasterror : 1, w : 40, wtimeout : 3000})
{
        "err" : null,
        "n" : 0,
        "wtimeout" : true,
        "waited" : 3006,
        "errmsg" : "timed out waiting for slaves",
        "ok" : 0
}
```

The current implementation returns when the data has been delivered to `w` servers. The `j` option ensure that the operation has propagated to the journal, which means that the write operation will appear in the database even if the `mongod` experiences an unclean shutdown.

See also replica set configuration for information on how to change the getlasterror default parameters.

#### *See Also*

- getLastError Command
- Replica Set Design Concepts

## Replica Sets


- Overview
- Getting started
- Operation
- Advanced and More
- How-tos
- Troubleshooting
- See Also


### Overview

Replica sets are a form of asynchronous master/slave replication, adding automatic failover and automatic recovery of member nodes.

- A replica set consists of two or more nodes that are copies of each other. (*i.e.: replicas*)
- The replica set automatically elects a *primary* (master). No one member is intrinsically primary; that is, this is a share-nothing design.
- Drivers (and mongos) can automatically detect when a replica set primary changes and will begin sending writes to the new primary. (The mongos sharding process does this too.)

Replica sets have several common uses:

- Data Redundancy
- Automated Failover / High Availability
- Distributing read load
- Simplify maintenance (*compared to "normal" master-slave*)
- Disaster recovery

### Getting started

- Why use replica sets?
- The basics
- Replica Set Design Concepts
- Upgrading your client code
    - Reading from secondary (`slaveOkay`)
- How does replication work?
    - Oplog
    - Voting
    - Priorities
- Limitations
- **Tutorial**: single server replica set (*dev-only*)

### Operation

- Configuration
- Administrative Commands

### Advanced and More

- Data center awareness and tagging
- Authentication
- The http admin UI
- Cluster wide commit concepts

### How-tos

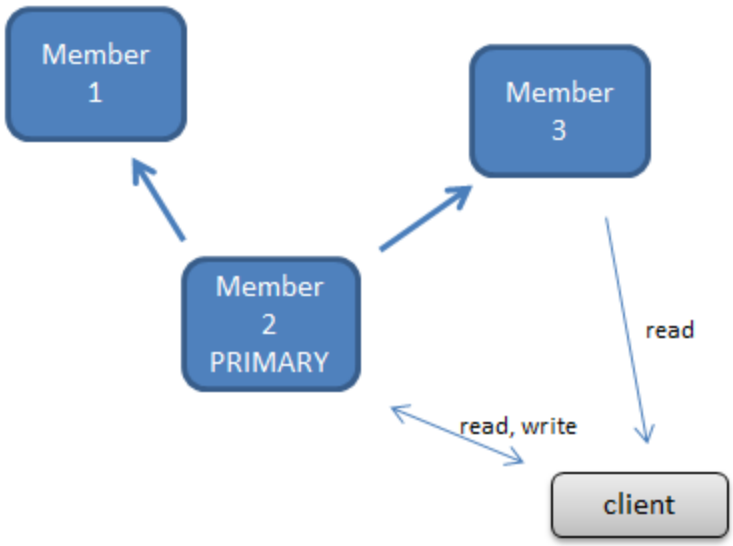
- Sample Replica Set Config Session (PDF)
- Migrating to replica sets from master/slave replication
- Adding a New Set Member
- Adding an Arbiter
- Forcing a Member to be Primary
- Moving or Replacing a Member (also the same procedure for restoring a member)
- Reconfiguring when members are up

### Troubleshooting

- Troubleshooting
- Resyncing a Very Stale Replica Set Member
- Reconfiguring when members are down

### See Also

- Practical Replication Video
- Replica Sets Slides
- Webcast Demo of Replica Sets
- Replica set internals




## Replica Set Sample Configurations

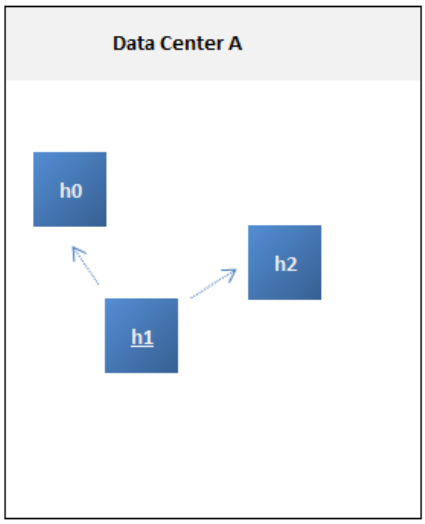

- Single Data Center
- Two Data Centers
- Three Data Centers
- Other tips
- See Also


Below are some example configurations of replica sets with various numbers of servers and numbers of data centers. In a sharded cluster this would be the configuration inside each shard and typically they are the same for all shards (unless using tag-aware sharding).

#### Single Data Center

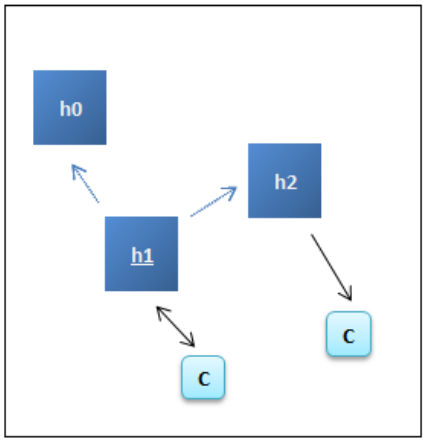
Note: the arrows below are illustative of a particular point-in-time state of the replica set. In most configurations it is possible for different members of the set to be primary over time. The member who is currently Primary is underlined.

Single data center replica set example




```
// 3 member replica set, 1 data center
// 3 copies of the data (replication factor of 3)
{
  _id : <setname>,
  members : [
    {_id : 0, host : "h0"},
    {_id : 1, host : "h1"},
    {_id : 2, host : "h2"},
  ]
}
```

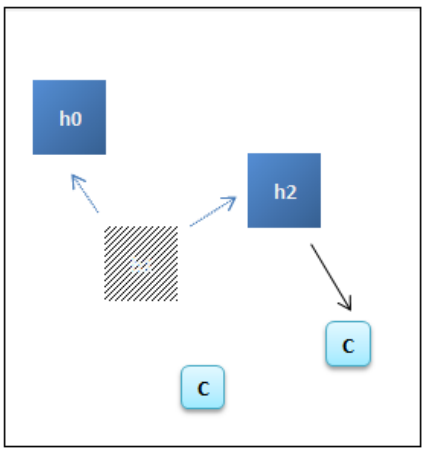
...




Clients write to the Primary, and can read from the primary.

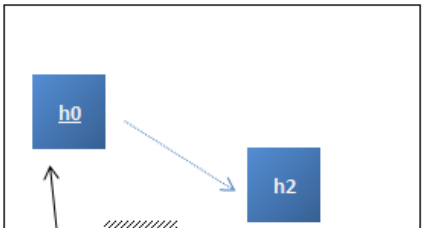
Clients in "slaveOk" mode can read from secondaries.

...



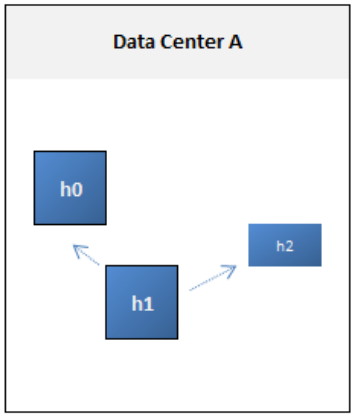

If the current primary fails, slaveOk reads are still possiblle from secondaries.

...




After a short time interval (tens of seconds), if a majority of members are up, a new primary will be elected. At this point automatic failover has completed.

A configuration where one server is smaller than the others

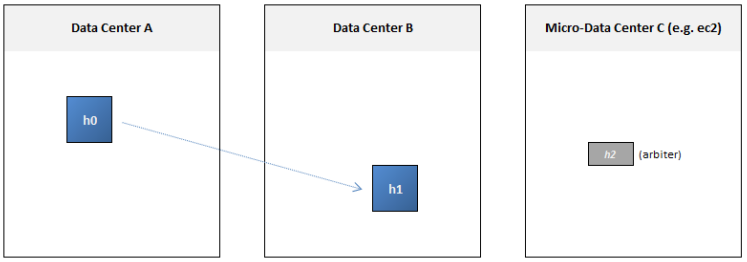



```
// 3 member replica set, 1 data center
// server h2 is a small server, compared to the others, so
//   we never want it to be primary.
{
  _id : <setname>,
  members : [
    {_id : 0, host : "h0"},
    {_id : 1, host : "h1"},
    {_id : 2, host : "h2", priority:0},
  ]
}
```

**Two Data Centers**

Below are some sample configurations using two data centers. Note that three data centers is better than two so that the system can, in the event of a network partition, determine which data center is still "online" and visible to the world (i.e. handle the so-called the "split-brain" problem). The first configuration (recommended) shows "cheats" and uses a VM at a third party provider as an arbiter for this purpose.

Two data centers plus an arbiter server located elsewhere (e.g. at a cloud provider)

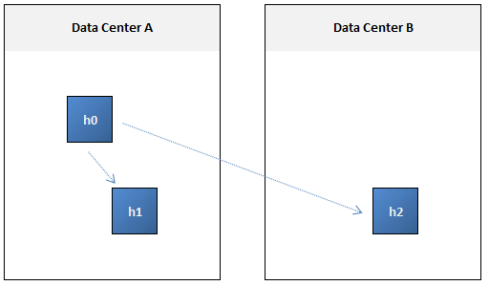



```
// 2 members with data
// 2 main data centers
// 1 arbiter member to break ties in elections and adjudicate
//  network partitions.  this node might be hosted on a remote
//  VM in the cloud to make a micro-data center elsewhere
{
  _id : <setname>,
  members : [
    {_id : 0, host : "h0"},
    {_id : 1, host : "h1"},
    {_id : 2, host : "h2", arbiter:true},
  ]
}
```

Two data centers, two servers

```
//  we don't have an odd number of servers, so we
//  do manual failover by reconfiguring the set.  B is
//  thus effectively our failover or "DR" data center.
{
  _id : <setname>,
  members : [
    {_id : 0, host : "h0", votes:1},
    {_id : 1, host : "h1", votes:0, hidden:true}
  ]
}
```

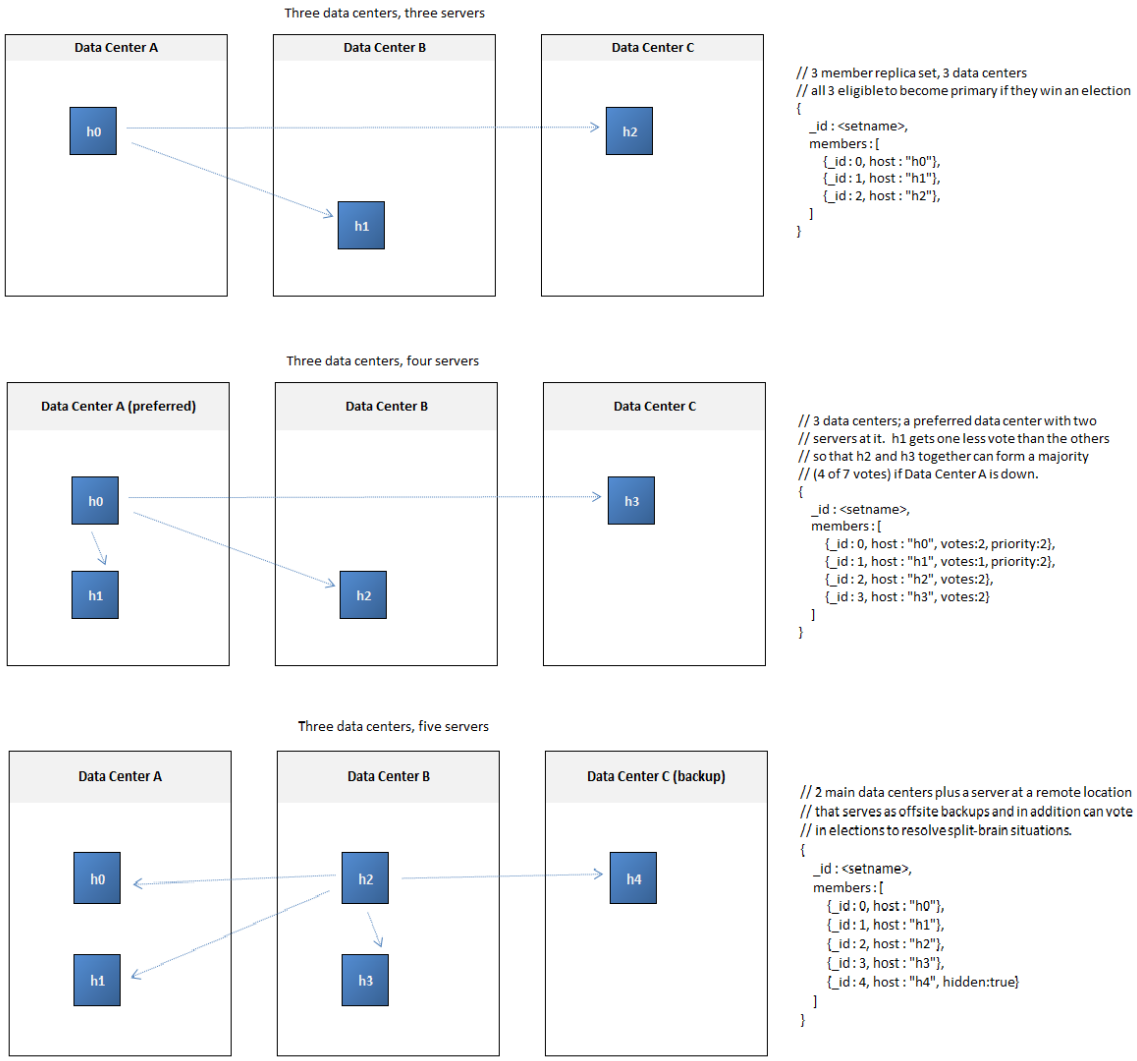
Two data centers, three servers




```
//  Data Center B is for disaster recovery by manually
//  declaring a disaster.
{
  _id : <setname>,
  members : [
    {_id : 0, host : "h0"},
    {_id : 1, host : "h1"},
    {_id : 2, host : "h2", priority:0, hidden:true}
  ]
}
```

### Three Data Centers

One of the examples below uses the `votes` option. In general, do not configure number of votes, it should be used with extreme care and diligence. (If you get it wrong, failover will not work as you expect.)




**Other tips**

Consider having a server running somewhere with the slaveDelay option to have a rolling backup from a certain number of hours in the past. This can be very useful if a "fat finger" type of situation occurs.

**See Also**

- Sharding
- Tag Aware Sharding
- Reconfiguring a replica set when members are down for information on how to cut over manually to a disaster recovery data center

## Replica Sets - Basics


- Basic Configuration
  - Example: 3 full servers
- Getting Started - A sample session
  - Step 1: Start mongod with --replSet
    - Step 1a: Check the Replication UI ( *optional*)
  - Step 2: Initiate the replica set
  - Step 3: Add nodes to the replica set
- Changing Client Code


For production use you will want a minimum of three nodes in the replica set.

Either:

- 2 full nodes and 1 arbiter
- 3 full nodes

To avoid a single point of failure, these nodes must be on different computers.

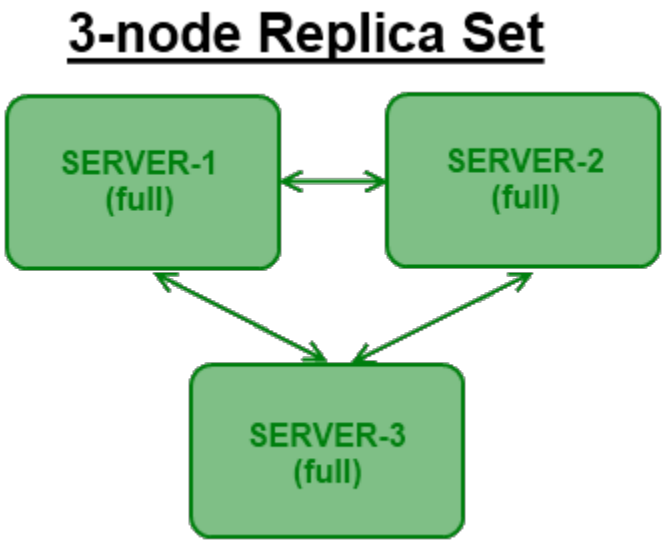
> ⚠ It is standard to have at least 2 nodes equipped to handle primary duties.

### *Basic Configuration*

- Replica sets typically operate with 2 to 7 full nodes and possibly an arbiter.
- Within a given set, there should be an odd number of total nodes.
  - If full nodes are only available in even numbers, then an arbiter should be added to provide an odd number.
  - The **arbiter** is a lightweight `mongod` process whose purpose is to break ties when electing a primary.
  - The arbiter does not typically require a dedicated machine.

#### Example: 3 full servers

In this example, three servers are connected together in a single cluster. If the primary fails any of the secondary nodes can take over.




### *Getting Started – A sample session*

The following is a simple configuration session for replica sets.

For this example assume a 3-node Replica set with 2 full nodes and one arbiter node. These servers will be named `sf1`, `sf2` and `sf3`.

#### Step 1: Start mongod with --replSet

On each of the servers start an instance of the mongo daemon:

```
sf1$ mongod --rest --replSet myset
sf2$ mongod --rest --replSet myset
sf3$ mongod --rest --replSet myset
```

> ⚠ the `--replSet` parameter has the same value myset on all three instances.

#### *Step 1a: Check the Replication UI (optional)*

Visit http://sf1:28017/_replSet, this will give you an idea on the current status of the replica set. As you proceed through the remaining steps, refreshing this dashboard to see changes. See the docs here for more details.

#### Step 2: Initiate the replica set

Connect to mongo on sf1.

```
$ mongo --host sf1
> rs.initiate()
{
    "info2" : "no configuration explicitly specified -- making one",
    "info" : "Config now saved locally.  Should come online in about a minute.",
    "ok" : 1
}
>
```

Initializing the replica set this way will cause the replica set to use the hostname of the current server in the replica set configuration. If your hostnames are not known to all mongo and application servers, you may need to initialize the hosts explicitly - see Replica Set Configuration for more details.

#### Step 3: Add nodes to the replica set

```
$ mongo --host sf1
> rs.add(“sf2”)
{ “ok” : 1 }
> rs.addArb(“sf3”)
{ “ok” : 1 }
```

Any operations that change data will now be replicated from `sf1` to `sf2`.

If `sf1` is shut down, you will see `sf2` take over as primary

### *Changing Client Code*

- To leverage replica sets from your client code, you will need to modify your client connection code.
- The details for doing this will vary with each driver (*language*).

## Replica Sets slaveDelay

**Redirection Notice**
This page should redirect to http://docs.mongodb.org/manual/core/replication/#replica-set-delayed-members.

## Replica Sets - Oplog

**Redirection Notice**
This page should redirect to http://docs.mongodb.org/manual/core/replication/#replica-set-oplog-sizing.

## Replica Sets - Priority

**Redirection Notice**
This page should redirect to http://docs.mongodb.org/manual/core/replication/#replica-set-node-priority.

## Replica Sets - Rollbacks

### *Overview*

The classic example of a rollback occurs when you have two replicas (a primary-A and secondary-B) and the secondary (B) is not up to date (replication is behind). If the primary (A) fails (or is shutdown) before B is up-to-date and B becomes primary, then there is data which B does not have but A does.

When this happens, MongoDB cannot automatically merge the old data to the new/current primary, but don't worry, *the data is not lost*. The rollback operation will ensure that all data is consistent based on the current primary's data.

In order to roll back the data on the original primary (A), the oplog is traversed from the point in time that the server B took over as primary. For each delete or update in the oplog on server A the modified documents are re-fetched from B any new documents after that point are deleted from server A.

This rolled back data, which only A had) is stored in the `rollback` directory. The data is stored in a BSON file, the name is date-encoded like this `foo.bar.2011-05-09T18-10-04.0.bson`. In newer versions of mongodb (>2.1) that data may be stored in the local database as well so that restoring it will be easier.

TODO: Add diagram.

### *Rolled back data*

- To view the contents of this file in human-readable format, use the bsondump utility.
- To restore this information to the DB, use the mongorestore utility.

One common strategy for reconciling these conflicts is restore the rollback data to a new collection. Then reconcile between that rollback collection and the master with a custom program/script.

### *Rollback Limitations*

MongoDB will not rollback more than 300MB of data. In this situation, the rollback will halt with the log message: `[replica set sync] replSet syncThread: 13410 replSet too much data to roll back`

To recover data from the member that has failed to rollback, you will need to manually intervene. If you do not care about this data, remove the data directory and fully resync (or restore from a backup) to resume normal operation.

## Replica Sets - Voting


- Consensus Vote
    - Arbiters
- Reachable Node
- Triggering an Election
- Changing votes


Each replica sets contains only one primary node. This is the only node in the set that can accept write commands (**insert/update/delete**).

The primary node is elected by a consensus vote of all reachable nodes.

### *Consensus Vote*

For a node to be elected primary, it must receive a **majority** of votes. This is a majority of all votes in the set: if you have a 5-member set and 4 members are down, a majority of the set is still 3 members (*floor(5/2)+1*). Each member of the set receives a single vote and knows the total number of available votes.

If no node can reach a majority, then no primary can be elected and no data can be written to that replica set (although reads to secondaries are still possible).

#### Arbiters

An arbiter is a member which votes but has no data. An arbiter cannot be a primary or a secondary, as it has no data.

It is solely used for breaking ties in elections, so at most one arbiter is ever needed.

### *Reachable Node*

Replicas in a set are in regular communication with each other. They do this via a "heartbeat" that is communicated to all nodes in the set.

If node A fails to receive a heartbeat from node B, A will assume that B is unreachable (it will continue to try to re-establish contact, but it will take that into consideration when determining whether a majority is reachable).

### *Triggering an Election*

An election is triggered when the following is true:

- a node sees that the primary is not reachable
- that node is not an arbiter
- that node has priority greater than or equal to other eligible nodes in the set

This means that an election is triggered if the primary node is turned off (*mongod stopped, computer shutdown, port blocked,...*). An election can also be triggered if the primary stops responding due to a network issue (*DNS, internet connectivity,...*)

### *Changing votes*

Do not change the number of votes – use the default of 1 vote per member.

- Do not change vote weights in an attempt to create a "preferred master" – *this will not work*. Instead use priorities to achieve this.
- In a two node replica set, it is far better to have an arbiter than to give one of the two members an extra vote.

By default each machine in a replica set receives one vote. The vote field can be set to any non-negative integer, however it is highly suggested that this number be either 0 or 1.

The primary purpose for changing the voting weight is to allow for larger replica sets. Each replica set is limited to 12 total nodes and 7 voting nodes.

The number of votes can be modified in the replica set configuration. You should never change the number of votes per member unless your set has more than seven members.

## Why Replica Sets

Replica sets provide five distinct benefits over the use of a single node.

A system requiring one or more of the following features should consider using replica sets.

- Data Redundancy
- Automated Failover
- Read Scaling
- Maintenance
- Disaster Recovery

### *Data Redundancy*

- Replica sets provide an automated method for storing multiple copies of your data.
- Supported drivers allow for the control of "write concerns". This allows for writes to be confirmed by multiple nodes before returning a success message to the client.

### *Automated Failover*

- Replica sets will coordinate to have a single primary in a given set.
- Supported drivers will recognize the change of a primary within a replica set.
    - In most cases, this means that the failure of a primary can be handled by the client without any configuration changes.
- A correctly configured replica set basically provides a “hot backup”. Recovering from backups is typically very time consuming and can result in data loss. Having an active replica set is generally much faster than working with backups.

### *Read Scaling*

- The primary means to scale in MongoDB is sharding. Replicas are foremost for data safety, high availability, and redundancy.  That said, it is possible to perform queries  on secondaries.
- By default, the primary node of a replica set is accessed for all reads and writes.
- Most drivers provide a `slaveOkay` method for identifying that a specific operation can be run on a secondary node. When using `slaveOkay`, a system can share the read load amongst several nodes.
- Unless there is an explicit need, we recommend simply querying the primaries.  This keeps things simples and assures immediate consistency for the data read.

### *Maintenance*

- When performing tasks such as upgrades, backups and compaction, it is typically required to remove a node from service.
- Replica sets allow for these maintenance tasks to be performed while operating a production system. As long as the production system can withstand the removal of a single node, then it’s possible to perform a “rolling” upgrade on such things.

### *Disaster Recovery*

- Replica sets allows for a “delayed secondary” node.
- This node can provide a window for recovering from disastrous events such as:

- bad deployments
- dropped tables and collections

**Next : Setup Basics**

## Moving or Replacing a Member

In the shell you can use the rs.remove() helper to remove a node from a replica set.

Then use rs.add() to add the new member to the set. See rs.help() in the shell for more information.

See the Adding a New Set Member for details on how to pre-copy all the datafiles from the old member to the new member if that is desired. (The new member will automatically sync all data on its own; copying the files would only be done if the administrator wants to get the new member up and online more quickly.)

#### Renaming or renumbering a member's host

If you need to change a hostname or IP address that a replica set uses to refer to one of the member processes, the easiest way to do so is to run rs.reconfig() with a configuration document that preserves the member's _id number, but changes the `host` field. For example, if the hostname changes for the first member of the set, you might do this in the shell:

```
> cfg = rs.conf()
> cfg.members[0].host = newname
> rs.reconfig(cfg)
```

## Replica Set Versions and Compatibility

#### Features

| Feature | Version |
|---|---|
| Slave delay | v1.6.3+ |
| Hidden | v1.7+ |
| replSetFreeze and replSetStepDown | v1.7.3+ |
| Replicated ops in `mongostat` | v1.7.3+ |
| Syncing from secondaries | v1.8.0 |
| Authentication | v1.8.0 |
| Replication from nearest server (by ping time) | v2.0.0 |

#### Syncing

1.8.x slaves **can** replicate from 1.6.x masters.

1.6.x slaves **cannot** replicate from 1.8.x masters.

See the upgrade documentation for advice on upgrading.

## Replica Set Design Concepts

A replica set has at most one primary at a given time. If a majority of the set is up, the most up-to-date secondary will be elected primary. If a majority of the set is not up or reachable, no member will be elected primary.

There is no way to tell (from the set's point of view) the difference between a network partition and nodes going down, so members left in a minority will not attempt to become master (to prevent a set from ending up with masters on either side of a partition).

This means that, if there is no majority on either side of a network partition, the set will be read only (thus, we suggest an odd number of servers: e.g., two servers in one data center and one in another). The upshot of this strategy is that data is consistent: there are no multi-master conflicts to resolve.

There are several important concepts concerning data integrity with replica sets that you should be aware of:

1. A write is (cluster-wide) committed once it has replicated to a majority of members of the set.

For important writes, the client should request acknowledgement of this with a `getLastError({w:...})` call. (If you do not call getLastError, the servers do exactly the same thing; the getlasterror call is simply to get confirmation that committing is finished.)

2. Queries in MongoDB and replica sets have "READ UNCOMMITTED" semantics.

Writes which are committed at the primary of the set may be visible before the cluster-wide commit completes.

The read uncommitted semantics (an option on many databases) are more relaxed and make theoretically achievable performance and availability higher (for example we never have an object locked in the server where the locking is dependent on network performance).

3. On a failover, if there are writes which have not replicated from the primary, the writes are rolled back. Thus we use `getlasterror` as in #1 above when we need to confirm a cluster-wide commit.

The data is backed up to files in the *rollback* directory, although the assumption is that in most cases this data is never recovered as that would require operator intervention. However, it is not "lost," it can be manually applied at any time with mongorestore.

#### *Rationale*

Merging back old operations later, after another node has accepted writes, is a hard problem. One then has multi-master replication, with potential for conflicting writes. Typically that is handled in other products by manual version reconciliation code by developers. We think that is too much work : we want MongoDB usage to be less developer work, not more. Multi-master also can make atomic operation semantics problematic.

It is possible (as mentioned above) to manually recover these events, via manual DBA effort, but we believe in large system with many, many nodes that such efforts become impractical.

#### *Comments*

Some drivers support 'safe' write modes for critical writes. For example via setWriteConcern in the Java driver.

Additionally, defaults for { w : ... } parameter to getLastError can be set in the replica set's configuration.

Note a call to getLastError will cause the client to have to wait for a response from the server. This can slow the client's throughput on writes if large numbers are made because of the client/server network turnaround times. Thus for "non-critical" writes it often makes sense to make no getLastError check at all, or only a single check after many writes.

#### *See Also*

- Replica Set FAQ

## Replica Set Tutorial

**v1.6+**

This tutorial will guide you through a basic replica set initial setup. Given the tutorial is an example and should be easy to try, it runs several mongod processes on a single machine (in the real world one would use several machines). In the real world each member is on a separate server (or VM). When ready for production be sure to read the rest of the replica set documentation.


- Introduction
- Starting the nodes
- Initiating the set
- Replication
- Failover
- Changing the replica set configuration
- Running with two nodes
- Drivers
- getLastError
    - See Also


### *Introduction*

A replica set is group of *n* `mongod` nodes (members) that work together. The goal is that each member of the set has a complete copy (replica) of the data form the other nodes.

Setting up a replica set is a two-step process that requires starting each mongod process and then formally initiating the set. Here, we'll be configuring a set of three nodes, which is standard.

Once the `mongod` processes are started, we will issue a command to initialize the set. After a few seconds, one node will be elected master, and you can begin writing to and querying the set.

### *Starting the nodes*

First, create a separate data directory for each of the nodes in the set. In a real environment with multiple servers we could use the default `/data/db` directory (if we wanted to), but on a single machine we have to specify non-defaults:

```
$ mkdir -p /data/r0
$ mkdir -p /data/r1
$ mkdir -p /data/r2
```

Next, start each `mongod` process with the `--replSet` parameter. The parameter requires that you specify a logical name for our replica set. Let's call our replica set "foo". We'll launch our first node like so:

```
$ mongod --replSet foo --port 27017 --dbpath /data/r0
```

Let's now start the second and third nodes:

```
$ # no need for special port numbers if on separate machines, but we need them to
$ # demo on a single server
$ mongod --replSet foo --port 27018 --dbpath /data/r1
$ mongod --replSet foo --port 27019 --dbpath /data/r2
```

You should now have three nodes running. At this point, each node should be printing the following warning:

```
Mon Aug  2 11:30:19 [startReplSets] replSet can't get local.system.replset config from self or any
seed (EMPTYCONFIG)
```

We can't use the replica set until we've *initiated* it, which we'll do next.

### *Initiating the set*

We *initiate* the replica set by connecting to one of the members and running the `replSetInitiate` command (that is, `rs.initiate()` in the mongo shell). This command expects a json object which contains the set's configuration details.

The replSetInitiate command may be sent to any member of an yet-to-be initiated set. However, only the member performing the initiation may have any existing data. This data becomes the initial data for the set. The other members will begin synchronizing and receiving that data (if present; starting empty is fine too). This is called the "initial sync". Secondaries will not be online for reads (in state 2, "SECONDARY") until their initial sync completes.

Note: the replication oplog (in the local database) is allocated at initiation time. The oplog can be quite large, thus initiation may take some time.

```
$ mongo localhost:27017
MongoDB shell version: 1.5.7
connecting to: localhost:27017/test
> rs.help(); // if you are curious run this (optional)
>
> config = {_id: 'foo', members: [
                          {_id: 0, host: 'localhost:27017'},
                          {_id: 1, host: 'localhost:27018'},
                          {_id: 2, host: 'localhost:27019'}]
          }
> rs.initiate(config);
{
   "info" : "Config now saved locally.  Should come online in about a minute.",
   "ok" : 1
}
```

We specify the config object and then pass it to `rs.initiate()`. Then, if everything is in order, we get a response saying that the replica set will be online in a minute. During this time, one of the nodes will be elected primary (master).

To check the status of the set, run `rs.status()`:

```
> rs.status()
{
 "set" : "foo",
 "date" : "Mon Aug 02 2010 11:39:08 GMT-0400 (EDT)",
 "myState" : 1,
 "members" : [
  {
   "name" : "localhost:27017",
   "self" : true,
  },
  {
   "name" : "localhost:27018",
   "health" : 1,
   "uptime" : 101,
   "lastHeartbeat" : "Mon Aug 02 2010 11:39:07 GMT-0400",
  },
  {
   "name" : "localhost:27019",
   "health" : 1,
   "uptime" : 107,
   "lastHeartbeat" : "Mon Aug 02 2010 11:39:07 GMT-0400",
  }
 ],
 "ok" : 1
}
```

You'll see that the other members of the set are up. You may also notice that the `myState` value is 1, indicating that we're connected to the member which is currently primary; a value of 2 indicates a secondary.

You can also check the set's status in the HTTP Admin UI.

### *Replication*

Go ahead and write something to the primary:

```
> db.messages.insert({name: "ReplSet Tutorial"});
```

If you look at the logs on the secondary nodes, you'll see the write replicates.

### *Failover*

The purpose of a replica set is to provide automated failover. This means that, if the primary node goes down, a secondary node can take over. When this occurs the set members which are up perform an election to select a new primary. To see how this works in practice, go ahead and kill the master node with Control-C (^C) (or if running with --journal, kill -9 would be ok too):

```
^CMon Aug  2 11:50:16 got kill or ctrl c or hup signal 2 (Interrupt), will terminate after current cmd
ends
Mon Aug  2 11:50:16 [interruptThread] now exiting
Mon Aug  2 11:50:16  dbexit:
```

If you look at the logs on the secondaries, you'll see a series of messages indicating fail-over, for example:

```
Mon Aug  2 11:50:16 [ReplSetHealthPollTask] replSet info localhost:27017 is now down (or slow to
respond)
Mon Aug  2 11:50:17 [conn1] replSet info voting yea for 2
Mon Aug  2 11:50:17 [rs Manager] replSet not trying to elect self as responded yea to someone else
recently
Mon Aug  2 11:50:27 [rs_sync] replSet SECONDARY
```

And on the next member, this:

```
Mon Aug  2 11:50:17 [ReplSetHealthPollTask] replSet info localhost:27017 is now down (or slow to
respond)
Mon Aug  2 11:50:17 [rs Manager] replSet info electSelf 2
Mon Aug  2 11:50:17 [rs Manager] replSet PRIMARY
Mon Aug  2 11:50:27 [initandlisten] connection accepted from 127.0.0.1:61263 #5
```

Both nodes notice that the old primary is done, as a result, a new primary node is elected. In this case, the node at port 27019 is promoted. If we bring the failed node on 27017 back online, it will come back up as a secondary.

### *Changing the replica set configuration*

There are times when you'll want to change the replica set configuration. Suppose, for instance, that you want to make a member have attribute `priority:0`, indicating the member should never be primary. To do this, pass a new configuration object to the database's `replSetReconfig` command. The shell `rs.reconfig()` helper makes this easier.

One note: the reconfig command must be sent to the current primary of the set. This implies that you need a majority of the set up to perform a reconfiguration. (There are ways to reconfigure without a majority for emergencies, see the rest of the replica set documentation.)

```
> // we should be primary here.  can be checked with rs.status() or with:
> rs.isMaster();
>
> // view existing config
> var c = rs.conf();
{_id: 'foo', members: [
                      {_id: 0, host: 'localhost:27017'},
                      {_id: 1, host: 'localhost:27018'},
                      {_id: 2, host: 'localhost:27019'}]
}
>
> // reconfig
> c.members[2].priority = 0;
> c
{_id: 'foo', members: [
                      {_id: 0, host: 'localhost:27017'},
                      {_id: 1, host: 'localhost:27018'},
                      {_id: 2, host: 'localhost:27019', priority: 0}]
}
> rs.reconfig(c);
> // done. to see new config,and new status:
> rs.conf()
> rs.status()
```

### *Running with two nodes*

Suppose we want to run replica sets with just two database servers (that is, have a replication factor of two). This is possible, but as replica sets perform elections, here a majority would be 2 out of 2 which is not helpful. Thus in this situation one normally also runs an *arbiter* on a separate server. An arbiter is a set member which has no data but gets to vote in elections. In the case here, the arbiter is the tie breaker in elections. Arbiters are very lightweight and can be ran anywhere – say, on an app server or a micro vm. With an arbiter in place, the replica set will behave appropriately, recovering automatically during both network partitions and node failures.

You start up an arbiter just as you would a standard replica set node, as a mongod process with the `--replSet` option. However, when initiating, you need to include the `arbiterOnly` option in the config document.

With an arbiter, the configuration presented above would look like this:

```
config = {_id: 'foo', members: [
                          {_id: 0, host: 'localhost:27017'},
                          {_id: 1, host: 'localhost:27018'},
                          {_id: 2, host: 'localhost:27019', arbiterOnly: true}]
          }
```

### *Drivers*

Most of the MongoDB drivers are replica set aware. The driver when connecting takes a list of seed hosts from the replica set and can then discover which host is primary and which are secondary (the isMaster command is used internally by the driver for this). The driver also attempts to discover new members of the set which were not specified on the command line.

The driver automatically finds the new primary if the current one fails. See your driver's documentation for specific details.

If you happen to be using the Ruby driver, you may want to check out Replica Sets in Ruby.

### *getLastError*

For important writes, use the getLastError to ensure cluster-wide commits of critical writes.

**See Also**

- Videos available here

## Replica Set Configuration


- Command Line
- Initial Setup
- The Replica Set Config Object
  - Minimum Config - Required Arguments
  - Advanced Config - Optional Arguments
    - Member options
    - Set options
- Shell Example 1
- Shell Example 2
- See Also


### *Command Line*

Each `mongod` participating in the set should have a `--replSet` parameter on its command line. The syntax is

```
mongod --replSet setname --rest
```

*setname* is the logical name of the set.

Use the `--rest` command line parameter when using replica sets, as the web admin interface of *mongod* (normally at port 28017) shows status information on the set. See Replica Set Admin UI for more information.

### *Initial Setup*

We use the `replSetInitiate` command for initial configuration of a replica set. Send the initiate command to a single server to christen the set. The member being initiated may have initial data; the other servers in the set should be empty.

```
> db.runCommand( { replSetInitiate : <config_object> } )
```

A shorthand way to type the above is via a helper method in the shell:

```
> rs.initiate(<config_object>)
```

A quick way to initiate a set is to leave out the config object parameter. The initial set will then consist of the member to which the shell is communicating, along with all the seeds that member knows of. However, see the configuration object details below for more options.

```
> rs.initiate()
```

### *The Replica Set Config Object*

The `local.system.replset` collection holds a singleton object which contains the replica set configuration. The config object automatically propagates among members of the set. The object is not directly manipulated, but rather changed via commands (such as `replSetInitiate`).

#### Minimum Config - Required Arguments

At its simplest, the config object contains the name of the replica set and a list of its members:

```
{
    _id : <setname>,
    members : [
        {_id : 0, host : <host0>},
        {_id : 1, host : <host1>},
        ...
    ]
}
```

Every replica set configuration must contain an `_id` field and a `members` field with one or more hosts listed.

| Setting | Description |
|---|---|
| `_id` | The set name. This must match command line setting.<br>Set names are usually alphanumeric and, in particular, cannot contain the '/' character. |
| `members` | An array of servers in the set. For simpler configs, one can often simply set `_id` and `host` fields only – all the rest are optional.<br>• `_id` - Each member has an _id ordinal, typically beginning with zero and numbered in increasing order. When a node is retired (removed from the config), its `_id` should not be reused.<br>• `host` - Host name and optionally the port for the member |

#### Advanced Config - Optional Arguments

There are many optional settings that can also be configured using the config object. The full set is:

```
{
  _id : <setname>,
  members: [
    {
      _id : <ordinal>,
      host : <hostname[:port]>
      [, arbiterOnly : <bool>]
      [, buildIndexes : <bool>]
      [, hidden : <bool>]
      [, priority: <priority>]
      [, tags: {loc1 : desc1, loc2 : desc2, ..., locN : descN}]
      [, slaveDelay : <n>]
      [, votes : <n>]
    }
    , ...
  ],
  [settings: {
    [getLastErrorDefaults: <lasterrdefaults>]
    [, getLastErrorModes : <modes>]
  }]
}
```

***Member options***

Each member can be configured to have any of the following options.

| Command | Default | Description | Min Version |
|---|---|---|---|
| `arbiterOnly` | `false` | If `true`, this member will participate in vote but receive no data. | 1.6 |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| `buildIndexes` | `true` | When `false`, prevent secondary indexes from being created on this member. This is typically used on machines that are pure "backup" machines that are never queried. By not having the secondary indexes, the member performs less works on writes and requires less ram. Note the _id index is still created. Can only be set to `false` if `priority:0`. It is rare to use this option. | 1.6 |
| `hidden` | `false` | If `true`, do not advertise the member's existence to clients in `isMaster` command responses. Hidden replicas makes sense for replicas of data which have very different use patterns (reporting, integration, backup, etc.) than the main set of replicas; this option allows you to keep from sending normal non-primary queries to the node. | 1.7 |
| `priority` | 1.0 | Priority of the server for elections. Higher priority servers will be preferred as primary. (*more information*) | 1.6, 1.9 |
| `tags` | {} | An document representing the location of this server. Tags can be used for location-aware write guarantees and read locality, see Data Center Awareness | 1.9.1 |
| `slaveDelay` | 0 | Number of seconds to remain behind the primary.<br>A value of 0 implies "as up-to-date as possible".<br>Used to recover from human errors (*e.g.: accidentally dropping a database*).<br>Can only be set on members with priority 0. Slave delay members are a great way to keep a rolling backup from a certain amount of time in the past. | 1.6.3 |
| `votes` | 1 | Number of votes this member has in an election. Generally you should not change this. (*more information*) | 1.6 |

#### *Set options*

The final optional argument, `settings`, can be used to set options on the set as a whole. Often one can leave out `settings` completely from the config as the defaults are reasonable.

| Setting | Description | Min Version |
|---|---|---|
| `getLastErrorDefaults` | Specifies defaults for the `getlasterror` command.<br>If the client calls `getLastError` with **no parameters** then the defaults specified here are used. | 1.6.2 |
| `getLastErrorModes` | Define and name combinations of tags that can be used by the application to guarantee writes to certain servers, racks, data centers, etc. See Data Center Awareness. | 1.9.1 |

### *Shell Example 1*

```
> // all at once method
> cfg = {
... _id : "acme_a",
... members : [
... { _id : 0, host : "sf1.acme.com" },
... { _id : 1, host : "sf2.acme.com" },
... { _id : 2, host : "sf3.acme.com" } ] }
> rs.initiate(cfg)
> rs.status()
```

### *Shell Example 2*

```
$ # incremental configuration method
$ mongo sf1.acme.com/admin
> rs.initiate();
> rs.add("sf2.acme.com");
> rs.add("sf3.acme.com");
> rs.status();
```

### *See Also*

- Adding a New Set Member
- Reconfiguring when Members are Up
- Reconfiguring a replica set when members are down

### Adding an Arbiter

**Redirection Notice**
This page should redirect to http://docs.mongodb.org/manual/administration/replication-architectures/#replica-set-arbiter-nodes.

### Adding a New Set Member

**Redirection Notice**
This page should redirect to http://docs.mongodb.org/manual/tutorial/expand-replica-set.

### Reconfiguring when Members are Up

**Redirection Notice**
This page should redirect to http://docs.mongodb.org/manual/reference/replica-configuration/#usage.

### Recommended Configurations

**Redirection Notice**
This page should redirect to http://docs.mongodb.org/manual/administration/replication-architectures/.

### Data Center Awareness


- Examples
  - One primary data center, one disaster recovery site
  - Multi-site with local reads
- Confirming propagation of writes with getLastError
- Replicating from nearby members
- Tagging (version 2.0+)
  - Server *X* should have a copy.
  - Make *n* backups
  - Make sure there are at least three copies of the data and it is present on at least two continents.
  - Make sure at least two servers across at least two racks in nyc have it.
  - Notes


#### *Examples*

One primary data center, one disaster recovery site

Multiple set members can be primary at the main data center. Have a member at a remote site that is never primary (at least, not without human intervention).

```
{ _id: 'myset',
  members: [
   { _id:0, host:'sf1', priority:1 },
   { _id:1, host:'sf2', priority:1 },
   { _id:2, host:'ny1', priority:0 }
  ]
}
```

Multi-site with local reads

The following example shows one set member in each of three data centers. At election time, any healthy update to date node, arbitrarily, can become primary. The others are then secondaries and can service queries locally if the client uses slaveOk mode.

```
{ _id: 'myset',
  members: [
   { _id:0, host:'sf1', priority:1 },
   { _id:1, host:'ny1', priority:1 },
   { _id:2, host:'uk1', priority:1 }
  ]
}
```

Refer to your driver's documentation for more information about read routing.

#### *Confirming propagation of writes with getLastError*

Calling [getLastError] (called "write concern" in some drivers) with `w:"majority"` (v2.0+) assures the write reaches a majority of the set before acknowledgement. For example, if you had a three-member replica set, calling `db.runCommand({getLastError : 1, w : "majority"})` would make sure the last write was propagated to at least 2 servers.

Once a write reaches a majority of the set members, the cluster wide commit has occurred (see Replica Set Design Concepts).

#### *Replicating from nearby members*

In v2.0+, secondaries automatically sync data from members which are nearby. You can see the latencies that the `mongod` process is observing to its peers in the replSetGetStatus command's output. If nearby members are not healthy, more distant members will be used for syncing.

Example output, highlighting new ping time and sync target fields:

```
> rs.status()
{
        ...
        "syncingTo" : "B:27017",
        "members" : [
                {
                        "_id" : 0,
                        "name" : "A:27017",
                        ...
                        "self" : true
                },
                {
                        "_id" : 1,
                        "name" : "B:27017",
                        ...
                        "pingMs" : 14
                },
                {
                        "_id" : 2,
                        "name" : "C:27017",
                        ...
                        "pingMs" : 271
                }
        ],
        "ok" : 1
}
```

#### *Tagging (version 2.0+)*

Tagging gives you fine-grained control over where data is written. It is:

- Customizable: you can express your architecture in terms of machines, racks, data centers, PDUs, continents, etc. (in any combination or level that is important to your application).
- Developer/DBA-friendly: developers do not need to know about where servers are or changes in architecture.

Each member of a replica set can be tagged with one or more physical or logical locations, e.g., `{"dc" : "ny", "rack" : "rk1", "ip" : "192.168", "server" : "192.168.4.11"}`. *Modes* can be defined that combine these tags into targets for `getLastError`'s *w* option.

For example, suppose we have 5 servers, *A*, *B*, *C*, *D*, and *E*. *A* and *B* are in New York, *C* and *D* are in San Francisco, and *E* is in the cloud somewhere.

Our replica set configuration might look like:

```
{
    _id : "someSet",
    members : [
        {_id : 0, host : "A", tags : {"dc": "ny"}},
        {_id : 1, host : "B", tags : {"dc": "ny"}},
        {_id : 2, host : "C", tags : {"dc": "sf"}},
        {_id : 3, host : "D", tags : {"dc": "sf"}},
        {_id : 4, host : "E", tags : {"dc": "cloud"}}
    ]
    settings : {
        getLastErrorModes : {
            veryImportant : {"dc" : 3},
            sortOfImportant : {"dc" : 2}
        }
    }
}
```

Now, when a developer calls `getLastError`, they can use any of the modes declared to ensure writes are propagated to the desired locations, e.g.:

```
> db.foo.insert({x:1})
> db.runCommand({getLastError : 1, w : "veryImportant"})
```

`"veryImportant"` makes sure that the write has made it to at least 3 tagged "regions", in this case, "ny", "sf", and "cloud". Once the write has been replicated to these regions, getLastError will return success. (For example, if the write was present on *A*, *D*, and *E*, that would be a success condition).

If we used `"sortOfImportant"` instead, `getLastError` would return success once the write had made it to two out of the three possible regions. Thus, *A* and *C* having the write or *D* and *E* having the write would both be "success." If *C* and *D* had the write, `getLastError` would continue waiting until a server in another region also had the write.

Below are some common examples and how you'd specify tags and `w` modes for them.

Server *X* should have a copy.

Suppose you want to be able to specify that your backup server (B) should have a copy of a write. Then you'd use the following tags:

| Server | Tags |
|---|---|
| *B* | `{"backup" : "B"}` |

To define a mode for "server *B* should have a copy," create the mode:

```
backedUp : {"backup" : 1}
```

You want one server with a "backup" tag to have the write.

So, your config would look like:

```
{
   _id : replSetName,
   members : [
       {
           “_id” : 0,
           “host” : B,
           “tags” : {"backup" : "B"}
       },
       ...
   ],
   settings : {
       getLastErrorModes : {
           backedUp : {backup : 1}
       }
   }
}
```

To use this mode in your application, you'd call `getLastError` with `w` set to `backedUp`:

```
> db.runCommand({getLastError : 1, w : "backedUp"})
```

In the following examples, we will skip the configuration and the usage for brevity. Tags are always added to a member's configuration, modes are always added to `getLastErrorModes`.

Make *n* backups

Suppose you have three backup servers (*B1*, *B2*, *B3*) and you want at least two of them to have a copy. Then you'd give each of them a unique "backup" tag:

| Server | Tags |
|---|---|
| *B1* | `{"backup" : "B1"}` |
| *B2* | `{"backup" : "B2"}` |
| *B3* | `{"backup" : "B3"}` |

Then you would create the mode:

```
backedUp : {"backup" : 2}
```

Make sure there are at least three copies of the data and it is present on at least two continents.

All of the rules up until now have only had one condition, but you can include as many and-conditions as you want. Suppose we have the following:

| Server | Tags |
|---|---|
| *S1* | `{"continent" : "nAmerica", "copies" : "S1"}` |
| *S2* | `{"continent" : "nAmerica", "copies" : "S2"}` |
| *S3* | `{"continent" : "nAmerica", "copies" : "S3"}` |
| *S4* | `{"continent" : "Africa", "copies" : "S4"}` |
| *S5* | `{"continent" : "Asia", "copies" : "S5"}` |

Then create a mode like:

```
level : {copies : 3, continent : 2}
```

Note that modes can contain as many clauses as you need.

Make sure at least two servers across at least two racks in nyc have it.

This is a complication of our original example. The key concept here is that not all tags need to be present on all servers. For example, some servers below are tagged with "nyc", others are not.

| Server | Tags |
|---|---|
| *S1* | `{"nycRack" : "rk1", "nyc" : "S1"}` |
| *S2* | `{"nycRack" : "rk2", "nyc" : "S2"}` |
| *S3* | `{"nycRack" : "rk2", "nyc" : "S3"}` |
| *S4* | `{"sfRack" : "rk1", "sf" : "S4”}` |
| *S5* | `{"sfRack" : "rk2", "sf" : S5"}` |

Now our rule would look like:

```
customerData : {“nycRack” : 2}
```

Notes

The examples above generally use hostnames (e.g., `"nyc" : "S1"`). This isn't required, it's just and convenient way to specify a server-unique tag. You could just as well use "foo", "bar", "baz" or "1", "2", "3", or any other identifiers.

Do not use "*" or "$" in tags, these characters are reserved for future use.

## Replica Set Authentication

**v1.8+**

Replica set authentication works a little differently from single-server authentication, so that each member can automatically authenticate itself to the other members of the set. See the main docs on authentication for details.

#### Example

If we had a two-member replica set with members *a* and *b*, we could start them up with authentication enabled by running:

```
a$ echo "this is my super secret key" > mykey
a$ chmod 600 mykey
a$ mongod --keyFile mykey # other options...

b$ echo "this is my super secret key" > mykey
b$ chmod 600 mykey
b$ mongod --keyFile mykey # other options...
```

Then run `rs.initiate()` and so on.

#### Using the Database with Replica Set Authentication On

From the client's perspective, authentication works the same way with replica sets as it does with single servers.

For example, suppose you create a new replica set and start the members with `--keyFile`. Connect to the master locally to add users:

```
master$ mongo
MongoDB shell version: x.y.z
connecting to: test
> db.addUser("foo", "bar")
```

Clients should authenticate as usual when they make connections.

```
any-member$ mongo -u foo -p
MongoDB shell version: x.y.z
Enter password: <bar>
```

## Upgrading to Replica Sets


- Upgrading From a Single Server
- Upgrading From Replica Pairs or Master/Slave
    - Resyncing the Slaves
    - Adding An Arbiter
- Upgrading Drivers


#### Upgrading From a Single Server

If you're running MongoDB on a single server, upgrading to replica sets is trivial (and a good idea!). First, we'll initiate a new replica set with a single node. We need a name for the replica set - in this case we're using `foo`. Start by shutting down the server and restarting with the `--replSet` option, and our set name:

```
$ ./mongod --replSet foo
```

Add the --rest option too (just be sure that port is secured): the <host>:28017/_replSet diagnostics page is incredibly useful.

The server will allocate new *local* data files before starting back up. Consider pre-allocating those files if you need to minimize downtime.

Next we'll connect to the server from the shell and initiate the replica set:

```
$ ./mongo
MongoDB shell version: ...
connecting to: test
> rs.initiate();
{
    "info2" : "no configuration explicitly specified -- making one",
    "info" : "Config now saved locally.  Should come online in about a minute.",
    "ok" : 1
}
```

The server should now be operational again, this time as the primary in a replica set consisting of just a single node. The next step is to add some additional nodes to the set.

**Sharded Cluster**

If you are upgrading the member(s) from a sharded cluster then you must change the shard host information in the config database through a mongos instance connection:

```
db.getSiblingDB("config").shards.save({_id:"<name>", host:"<rsName>/member1,member2,..."
})
```

#### Upgrading From Replica Pairs or Master/Slave

The best way to upgrade is to simply restart the current master as a single server replica set, and then add any slaves after wiping their data directory. To find the master in a replica pair, run `db.isMaster()`.

```
s> db.isMaster()
{
        "ismaster" : 0,
        "remote" : "localhost:27018",
        "info" : "direct negotiation",
        "maxBsonObjectSize" : 16777216,
        "ok" : 1
}
```

Once you know the master, shut down the *mongod* processes on the master and slave.

```
m$ killall mongod
s$ killall mongod
```

Backup your */data/db* directories, just in case.

```
m$ cp /data/db/* /to_somewhere_backup/
s$ cp /data/db/* /to_slave_backup/
```

Now, start up the master with the *--replSet* option, and initialize a one-member replica set.

```
m$ mongod --rest --replSet mysetname
m$ mongo
m> rs.initiate()
```

Now there are two paths we can take: either resyncing the slaves from scratch or using their existing data. Resyncing takes longer. Using the existing data is only possible if the slave was up-to-date before the replica pair was shut down **and** you add it to the replica set before the master has handled "too many" new writes (the size of the oplog determines what "too many" is).

***Resyncing the Slaves***

To resync, clear the data directory:

```
s$ rm -r /data/db/* # if you're using a non-default dbpath, this may be somewhere else
s$ # /data/db is now empty
```

Then start up the slave with the *--replSet* option.

```
s$ mongod --rest --replSet mysetname
```

In the database shell, add the slave as a new member in the replica set.

```
m> // still in the mongo shell on the master
m> rs.add("s") // "s" is your slave host name
m> rs.status(); // see also http://localhost:28017/_replSet
```

***Adding An Arbiter***

If there are an even number of replica set members, we should add an arbiter to break ties on elections and know who is up in a network partition. An arbiter is very lightweight and can run on virtually any server (including 32 bit servers). We use different directories and ports here so that the server is still available as a "normal" mongod server if that is desired and also to avoid confusion. The */data/arb* directory will be very small in content size.

```
arb$ mkdir /data/arb
arb$ mongod --rest --replSet mysetname --dbpath /data/arb --port 30000
```

Then add the arbiter to your replica set:

```
m> rs.addArb("arb:30000"); // replace 'arb' with your arb host name
m> rs.status()
```

#### Upgrading Drivers

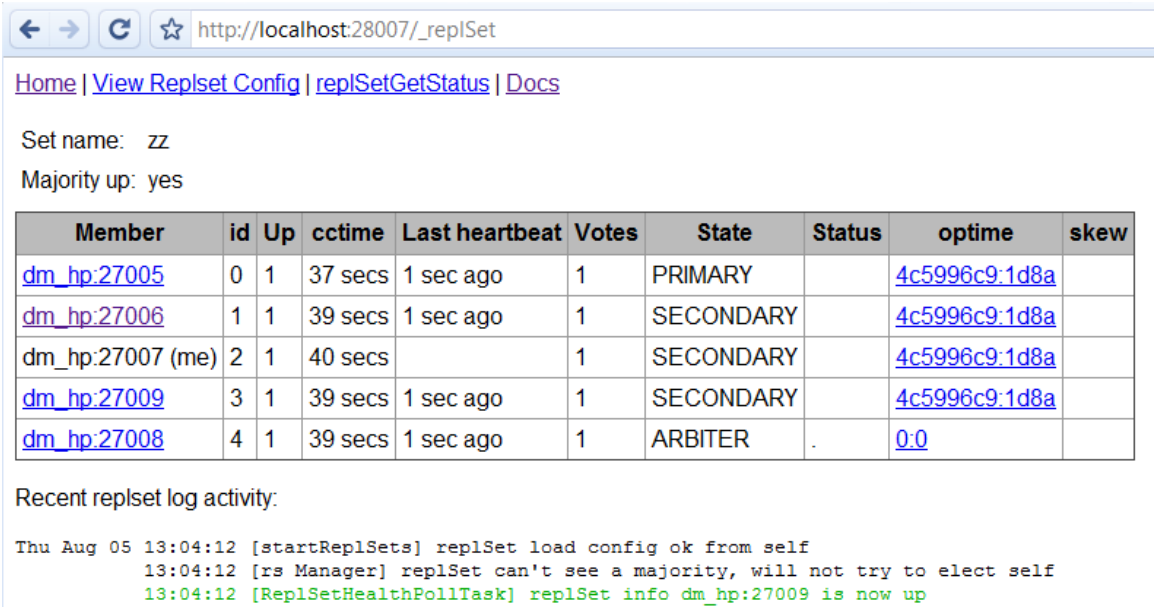
There are new versions of most MongoDB Drivers which support replica sets elegantly. See the documentation pages for the specific driver of interest.

## Replica Set Admin UI

The `mongod` process includes a simple administrative UI for checking the status of a replica set.

To use, first enable `--rest` from the `mongod` command line. The rest port is the db port plus 1000 (thus, the default is 28017). Be sure this port is secure before enabling this.

Then you can navigate to `http://<hostname>:28017/` in your web browser. Once there, click Replica Set Status (/_replSet) to move to the Replica Set Status page.




#### See Also

- Http Interface

## Replica Set Commands

- Shell Helpers
- Commands
  - isMaster
  - replSetGetStatus
    - state
    - health
    - pingMs
    - optime, optimeDate
    - errmsg
  - replSetInitiate

- replSetReconfig
  - `force` option
- replSetStepDown
- replSetFreeze


### *Shell Helpers*

```
rs.help()                     show help
rs.status()                   { replSetGetStatus : 1 }
rs.initiate()                 { replSetInitiate : null } initiate
                                  with default settings
rs.initiate(cfg)              { replSetInitiate : cfg }
rs.add(hostportstr)           add a new member to the set
rs.add(membercfgobj)          add a new member to the set
rs.addArb(hostportstr)        add a new member which is arbiterOnly:true
rs.remove(hostportstr)        remove a member (primary, secondary, or arbiter) from the set
rs.stepDown()                 { replSetStepDown : true }
rs.conf()                     return configuration from local.system.replset
db.isMaster()                 check who is primary
```

rs.conf() can be particularly useful when using commands that manipulate a replica set, such as replSetReconfig, because it can be used to get a copy of the current configuration which can be modified and then put back. For an example of this, see Reconfiguring when Members are Up.

### *Commands*

#### *isMaster*

Checks if the node to which we are connecting is currently primary. Most drivers do this check automatically and then send queries to the current primary.

Returns an object that looks like:

```
> db.adminCommand( { isMaster : 1 } )
{
    "setName" : "florble",
    "ismaster" : false,
    "secondary" : true,
    "hosts" : [
        "sf1.example.com",
        "sf4.example.com",
        "ny3.example.com"
    ],
    "passives" : [
        "sf3.example.com",
        "sf2.example.com",
        "ny2.example.com",
    ],
    "arbiters" : [
        "ny1.example.com",
    ]
    "primary" : "sf4.example.com",
    "me" : "ny3.example.com",
    "maxBsonObjectSize" : 16777216,
    "ok" : 1
}
```

The *hosts* array lists primary and secondary servers, the *passives* array lists passive servers, and the *arbiters* array lists arbiters.

If the "`ismaster`" field is `false`, there will be a "`primary`" field that indicates which server is primary.

#### *replSetGetStatus*

Get status on the replica set from this node's point of view. `rs.status()` is the mongo shell helper for this command. The output looks like:

```
> db.adminCommand( { replSetGetStatus : 1 } )
{
        "set" : "foo",
        "date" : ISODate("2012-01-06T00:30:47Z"),
        "myState" : 1,
        "members" : [
                {
                        "_id" : 0,
                        "name" : "localhost:27018",
                        "health" : 1,
                        "state" : 1,
                        "stateStr" : "PRIMARY",
                        "optime" : {
                                "t" : 1325809572000,
                                "i" : 1
                        },
                        "optimeDate" : ISODate("2012-01-06T00:26:12Z"),
                        "self" : true
                },
                {
                        "_id" : 1,
                        "name" : "localhost:27019",
                        "health" : 1,
                        "state" : 2,
                        "stateStr" : "SECONDARY",
                        "uptime" : 274,
                        "optime" : {
                                "t" : 1325809572000,
                                "i" : 1
                        },
                        "optimeDate" : ISODate("2012-01-06T00:26:12Z"),
                        "lastHeartbeat" : ISODate("2012-01-06T00:30:47Z"),
                        "pingMs" : 0
                },
                {
                        "_id" : 2,
                        "name" : "localhost:27020",
                        "health" : 1,
                        "state" : 2,
                        "stateStr" : "SECONDARY",
                        "uptime" : 274,
                        "optime" : {
                                "t" : 1325809572000,
                                "i" : 1
                        },
                        "optimeDate" : ISODate("2012-01-06T00:26:12Z"),
                        "lastHeartbeat" : ISODate("2012-01-06T00:30:47Z"),
                        "pingMs" : 1
                }
        ],
        "ok" : 1
}
```

state

The *state*, *myState*, and *stateStr* fields indicates the state of this server. Possible state values are:

| | |
|---|---|
| 0 | Starting up, phase 1 (parsing configuration) |
| 1 | Primary |
| 2 | Secondary |
| 3 | Recovering (initial syncing, post-rollback, stale members) |
| 4 | Fatal error |
| 5 | Starting up, phase 2 (forking threads) |

| | |
|---|---|
| 6 | Unknown state (member has never been reached) |
| 7 | Arbiter |
| 8 | Down |
| 9 | Rollback |
| 10 | Removed |

health

The *health* field indicates the health of the server/member. Typical values are zero if a server is down (from this server's POV) and 1 if it is up.

pingMs

The *pingMs* field (v2.0+) reports how long heartbeat commands take from this member to the other member. When members are performing well the pingMs value should approach the round trip ping times of the network between the nodes. If a server is overloaded, this value could be significant larger (which would indicate a problem). Also if the network has problems this value will intermittently report a high value. The metric is an ongoing average of the last several ping requests (represenative of average ping time for roughly say, the last minute).

optime, optimeDate

The *optime*, *optimeDate* fields specify the timestamp of the last operation on the node. This value could be a bit behind realtime as heartbeat requests between servers only occur every few seconds. Thus the real replication lag might be very low even if this statistic shows a few seconds.

errmsg

The *errmsg* field contains informational messages, as shown above.

***replSetInitiate***

```
> db.adminCommand( { replSetInitiate : <config> } )
```

Initiate a replica set. Run this command at one node only, to initiate the set. Whatever data is on the initiating node becomes the initial data for the set. This is a one time operation done at cluster creation. `rs.initiate(<cfg>)` is the mongo shell helper for this command. See also Configuration.

***replSetReconfig***

Adjust configuration of a replica set (just like initialize).

```
db._adminCommand({replSetReconfig: cfg })
```

Note: `db._adminCommand` is short-hand for `db.getSisterDB("admin").runCommand();`

Note: as of v1.7.2, `replSetReconfig` closes all connections, meaning there will be no database response to this command.

`force` option

As of 2.0 you can force a reconfigure when you have less than a majority of the replica set up using the {force:true} option.

***replSetStepDown***

```
db.adminCommand( { replSetStepDown : <seconds> } )
```

Manually tell a member to step down as primary. Node will become eligible to be primary again after the specified number of seconds. (Presumably, another node will take over by then if it were eligible.)

If the primary cannot see anyone who has synced to within 10 seconds of its latest op, the primary will reject the step down request. You can force the request by passing a `force : true` option.

For example:

```
> db.adminCommand({replSetStepDown : 1})
{
        "closest" : 1302040824,
        "difference" : 25,
        "errmsg" : "no secondaries within 10 seconds of my optime",
        "ok" : 0
}
> db.adminCommand({replSetStepDown : 1, force : true})
// works
```

v1.7.2+: `replSetStepDown` closes all connections, meaning there will be no database response to this command.

v1.7.3+: the seconds parameter above can be specified. In older versions, the step down was always for one minute only.

v1.9.0+: Added ability for primary to reject step down and added force option.

***replSetFreeze***

```
db.adminCommand( { replSetFreeze : <seconds> } )
```

v1.7.3+

'Freeze' state of this member to the extent we can do that. What this really means is that this node will not attempt to become primary until the time period specified expires.

You can call again with {`replSetFreeze:0`} to unfreeze sooner. A process restart unfreezes the member also.

If the node is already primary, you need to use `replSetStepdown` instead.

### Forcing a Member to be Primary

Replica sets automatically negotiate which member of the set is primary and which are secondaries. If you want a certain member to be primary, there are a couple ways to force this.

***v2.0+***

In v2.0+, you can set the priority of the preferred primary to be higher than the priorities of the other nodes.

For example, if we had members A, B, and C and A is the current primary and we want B to be primary, we could give B a higher priority like so:

```
> config = rs.conf()
{
    "_id" : "foo",
    "version" : 1,
    "members" : [
        {
            "_id" : 0,
            "host" : "A",
        },
        {
            "_id" : 1,
            "host" : "B",
        },
        {
            "_id" : 2,
            "host" : "C",
        }
    ]
}
> config.version++
> // the default priority is 1
> config.members[1].priority = 2
> rs.reconfig(config)
```

Assuming B is synced to within 10 seconds of A, A will step down, B (and C) will catch up to where A is, and B will be elected primary.

If B is far behind A, A will not step down until B is within 10 seconds of its optime. This minimizes the amount of time there will be no primary on failover. If you do not care about how long the set is primary-less, you can force A to step down by running:

```
> db.adminCommand({replSetStepDown:1000000, force:1})
```

B will sync until it is caught up with A and then become primary.

#### *Older versions*

If you want to force a node to be primary at a given point in time, use the `replSetFreeze` and `replSetStepdown` commands (v1.8+). If we have members A, B, and C, and A is current primary, and we want B to become primary, we would send freeze to C so that it does not attempt to become primary, and then stepDown to A.

See the Commands page for more information.

```
$ mongo --host C
> // first check that everyone is healthy and in the states we expect:
> rs.status()
> // C : not eligible to be primary for 120 seconds
> rs.freeze(120)
> exit

$ mongo --host A
> // A : step down as primary and ineligible to be primary for 120 seconds
> rs.stepDown(120)
> // B will now become primary. for this to work B must be up to date.
```

Note that during transitions of primary, there is a short window when no node is primary.

#### *Command replSetStepDown*

```
> db.adminCommand( { replSetStepDown : <seconds> } )
```

Step down as primary. Will not try to reelect self for the specified time period (1 minute if no numeric secs value specified). (If another member with same priority takes over in the meantime, that member will stay primary.)

Note: seconds parameter is new to v1.8. Old versions default to 60 seconds regardless of param value.

#### *Command replSetFreeze*

**v1.8+**

```
> db.adminCommand( { replSetFreeze : <seconds> } )
```

'freeze' state of member to the extent we can do that. What this really means is that this node will not attempt to become primary until the time period specified expires. You can call again with {replSetFreeze:0} to unfreeze sooner. A process restart unfreezes the member also.

## Connecting to Replica Sets from Clients

Most drivers have been updated to provide ways to connect to a replica set. In general, this is very similar to how the drivers support connecting to a replica pair.

Instead of taking a pair of hostnames, the drivers will typically take a comma separated list of host[:port] names. This is a *seed host list*; it need not be every member of the set. The driver then looks for the primary from the seeds. The seed members will report back other members of the set that the client is not aware of yet. Thus we can add members to a replica set without changing client code.

#### With Sharding

With sharding, the client connects to a `mongos` process. The `mongos` process will then automatically find the right member(s) of the set.

**See Also**

- Driver authors should review Connecting Drivers to Replica Sets.

## Replica Set FAQ

**Redirection Notice**
This page should redirect to http://docs.mongodb.org/manual/faq/replica-sets/.

## Replica Sets Troubleshooting

can't get local.system.replset config from self or any seed (EMPTYCONFIG)

Set needs to be initiated. Run `rs.initiate()` from the shell.

If the set is already initiated and this is a new node, verify it is present in the replica set's configuration and there are no typos in the host names:

```
> // send to a working node in the set:
> rs.conf()
```

Replication halts with "objects in a capped ns cannot grow" (assertion 10003)

Generally this happens if you have a capped collection without an `_id` index and you are using a custom `_id`.

To fix, make sure that any capped collections you are using have a unique index on the `_id` field and resync the halted slave.

"couldn't initiate : can't find self in the replset config my port: 27017" under Mac OS X

Generally this happens because your hostname and computer name do not match. The safest solution is to supply a config object to rs.initiate. Another solution is to:

Open `System Preferences`, select the `Sharing` page, and set your `Computer Name` at the top. Then open `Terminal` and run

```
$ sudo hostname (name chosen above including the .local at the end)
```

It will prompt you for your password. Once the command has finished, rs.initiate should work.

"not electing self, not all members up and we have been up less than 5 minutes"

The idea here is that if a bunch of nodes bounce all at once, we don't want to drop data
if we don't have to – we'd rather be offline and wait a little longer instead. Once a node
has been up for five minutes, it is eligible to be primary as long as it can achieve a majority.
In addition, if all members are up, a member can become primary immediately.

### Reconfiguring a replica set when members are down

One can easily reconfigure a replica set when some members are down as long as *a majority is still up*. In that case, simply send the reconfig command to the current primary.

If there is no majority (i.e. a majority of nodes are not up or reachable and will not be anytime soon), you must manually intervene to change the set configuration. Reconfiguring a minority partition can be dangerous, as two sides of a network partition won't both be aware of the reconfiguration. Thus, this should not be done in scripts, but only by an operator after careful consideration.

In v2.0+, the `force : true` option was added for reconfiguring the set when a majority is down. `force` is for **manually** reconfiguring the set when there is a serious problem, such as a disaster recovery failover. Do not use it every time you reconfigure, or put it into a script that automatically runs, or use it when there is still a primary.

If you use `force` and look at your replica set config, you will notice that your version number has jumped a lot (by tens or hundreds of thousands). This is normal and designed to prevent set version collisions if network partitioning ends.

Suggestions on how to deal with majority outages are outlined below.

***v2.0+***

In newer versions we are able to recover when a majority of nodes are down or on the wrong side of a network partition. We will connect to a surviving member (any one is fine) and "force" a reconfiguration of the set without the down hosts.

1. Consider doing a backup on a surviving member, both for safety and to bring up more new set members more easily.
2. Save the current config somewhere so that you can switch back to the old configuration once the down/unreachable members are healed.

```
> config = rs.config()
> printjson(config) # store this somewhere
```

3. Remove the down members from the `config.members` array.

```
> // remove the unreachable members of the set. this is just an example, look
> // at config to determine which members to keep
> config.members = [config.members[1], config.members[3], config.members[4]]
```

4. Reconfigure the set using the `force` option on the surviving member.

```
> rs.reconfig(config, {force : true})
```

You should now have a new primary, most likely the node you are connected to.

If the failure or partition was only temporary, when healed the nodes will detect that they have been removed from the set and enter a special state where they are up but refuse to answer requests as they are no longer syncing changes. You can now re-add them to the config object and do a reconfig (without `force`). **Be sure that each host has the same `_id` it had before.** If it does not, it will not become an active member of the set and complain verbosely in the logs until you restart it (at which point it will be fine).

Once you add the removed hosts back into the set, they will will detect that they have been added and synchronize to the current state of the set. Be aware that if the original master was one of the removed nodes, these members may need to [rollback].

***Pre v2.0:***

Versions before 1.9.1 do not support the `force` flag to reconfig. This means that we cannot cleanly reconfigure an existing set to remove down nodes unless we can reach the primary, even if no primary exists. Instead, we need to abandon the old replica set. There are two options for moving forward and using the data on surviving nodes.

Option 1: Turn off replication

One option is to make a surviving mongod a standalone server and not a set member:

1. stop a surviving `mongod`
2. consider doing a backup...
3. delete the `local.*` datafiles in the data directory. This will prevent potential future confusion if it is ever restarted with --replSet in the future.
4. restart `mongod` without the `--replSet` parameter.

We are now back online with a single node that is not a replica set member. Clients can use it for both reads and writes.

Option 2: "Break the mirror"

This option will will use the "break the mirror" technique. One of the surviving members will be selected to be the new master and be the "seed" for a new replica set. Unfortunately all slaves will need to completely resync from this new master.

1. stop the surviving `mongod`(s)
2. consider doing a backup...
3. delete the `local.*` datafiles on the new master
4. delete (ideally just move to a backup location) all the datafiles from any other surviving members
5. restart all `mongod`(s) with the new replica set name either on the command line or in a config file
6. initiate this new set on the new master
7. then, add each of the slaves to this new master

***See Also***

- Reconfiguring when Members are Up

### Resyncing a Very Stale Replica Set Member

#### *Error RS102*

MongoDB writes operations to an oplog. For replica sets this data is stored in collection local.oplog.rs. This is a capped collection and wraps when full "RRD"-style. Thus, it is important that the oplog collection is large enough to buffer a good amount of writes when some members of a replica set are down. If too many writes occur, the down nodes, when they resume, cannot catch up. In that case, a full resync would be required.

In v1.8+, you can run db.printReplicationInfo() to see the status of the oplog on both the current primary and the overly stale member. This should show you their times, and if their logs have an overlapping time range. If the time ranges don't overlap, there is no way for the stale secondary to recover and catch up (except for a full resync).

There is also a MMS graph of the oplog time length.

```
> db.printReplicationInfo()
configured oplog size:   47.6837158203125MB
log length start to end: 132secs (0.04hrs)
oplog first event time:  Wed Apr 13 2011 02:58:08 GMT-0400
oplog last event time:   Wed Apr 13 2011 03:00:20 GMT-0400
now:                     Wed Apr 13 2011 14:09:08 GMT-0400
```

#### *Sizing the oplog*

The command line `--oplogSize` parameter sets the oplog size. A good rule of thumb is 5 to 10% of total disk space. On 64 bit builds, the default is large and similar to this percentage. You can check your existing oplog sizes from the `mongo` shell :

```
> use local
> db.oplog.rs.stats()
```

#### *What to do on a RS102 sync error*

If one of your members has been offline and is now too far behind to catch up, you will need to resync. There are a number of ways to do this.

- **Perform a full resync**. If you stop the failed `mongod`, delete all data in the dbpath (including subdirectories), and restart it, it will automatically resynchronize itself. *Obviously it would be better/safer to back up the data first. If disk space is adequate, simply move it to a backup location on the machine if appropriate.* Resyncing may take a long time if the database is huge or the network slow – even idealized one terabyte of data would require three hours to transmit over gigabit ethernet.

or

- **Copy data from another member**: You can copy all the data files from another member of the set IF you have a snapshot of that member's data file's. This can be done in a number of ways. The simplest is to stop `mongod` on the source member, copy all its files, and then restart `mongod` on both nodes. The Mongo fsync and lock feature is another way to achieve this if you are using EBS or a SAN. On a slow network, snapshotting all the datafiles from another (inactive) member to a gziped tarball is a good solution. Also similar strategies work well when using SANs and services such as Amazon Elastic Block Service snapshots.

or

- **Find a member with older data**: *Note: this is only possible (and occurs automatically) in v1.8+*. If another member of the replica set has a large enough oplog or is far enough behind that the stale member can sync from it, the stale member can bootstrap itself from this member.

#### *See Also*

- Adding a New Set Member
- Moving or Replacing a Member

## Replica Sets Limits

- A set can contain
  - A maximum of 12 members
  - A maximum of 7 members that can vote

- Typically the set configuration can be changed only when a majority can be established. Limits on config changes to sets at first. Especially when a lot of set members are down.

**v1.6**

- Authentication is supported only in v1.8+.
- Map/reduce writes new collections to the server. Because of this, for now it may only be used on the primary. This will be enhanced later.

## Replica Set Internals

This page contains notes on the original MongoDB replica set design. While the concepts still apply, this page is not kept perfectly up-to-date; consider this page historical rather than definitive.


- Design Concepts
- Configuration
  - Command Line
  - Node Types
  - local.system.replset
  - Set Initiation (Initial Setup)
- Design
  - Server States
  - Applying Operations
  - OpOrdinal
  - Picking Primary
  - Heartbeat Monitoring
  - Assumption of Primary
  - Failover
  - Resync (Connecting to a New Primary)
  - Consensus
  - Increasing Durability
  - Reading from Secondaries and Staleness
- Example
- Administration
- Future Versions
- See Also

- Replica set internals - idempotence


**Design Concepts**

Check out the Replica Set Design Concepts for some of the core concepts underlying MongoDB Replica Sets.

**Configuration**

***Command Line***

We specify --replSet *set_name*/*seed_hostname_list* on the command line. *seed_hostname_list* is a (partial) list of some members of the set. The system then fetches full configuration information from the collection local.system.replset. *set_name* is specified to help the system catch misconfigurations. In current versions of MongoDB (1.8+) *seed_hostname_list* is not required; --replSet *set_name* will suffice.

***Node Types***

Conceptually, we have some different types of nodes:

- Standard - a standard node as described above. Can transition to and from being a *primary* or a *secondary* over time. There is only one primary (master) server at any point in time.
- Passive - a server can participate as if it were a member of the replica set, but be specified to never be Primary.
- Arbiter - member of the cluster for consensus purposes, but receives no data. Arbiters cannot be seed hosts.

Each node in the set has a *priority* setting. On a resync (see below), the rule is: choose as master the node with highest priority that is healthy. If multiple nodes have the same priority, pick the node with the freshest data. For example, we might use 1.0 priority for Normal members, 0.0 for passive (0 indicates cannot be primary no matter what), and 0.5 for a server in a less desirable data center.

***local.system.replset***

This collection has one document storing the replica set's configuration. See the configuration page for details.

#### *Set Initiation (Initial Setup)*

For a new cluster, on negotiation the max OpOrdinal is zero everywhere. We then know we have a new replica set with no data yet. A special command

```
{replSetInitiate:1}
```

is sent to a (single) server to begin things.

### Design

#### *Server States*

- *Primary* - Can be thought of as "master" although which server is primary can vary over time. Only 1 server is primary at a given point in time.
- *Secondary* - Can be thought of as a slave in the cluster; varies over time.
- *Recovering* - getting back in sync before entering Secondary mode.

#### *Applying Operations*

Secondaries apply operations from the Primary. Each applied operation is also written to the secondary's local oplog. We need only apply from the current primary (and be prepared to switch if that changes).

#### *OpOrdinal*

We use a monotonically increasing ordinal to represent each operation.

These values appear in the oplog (local.oplog.$main). maxLocalOpOrdinal() returns the largest value logged. This value represents how up-to-date we are. The first operation is logged with ordinal 1.

Note two servers in the set could in theory generate different operations with the same ordinal under some race conditions. Thus for full uniqueness we must look at the combination of server id and op ordinal.

#### *Picking Primary*

We use a consensus protocol to pick a primary. Exact details will be spared here but that basic process is:

1. get maxLocalOpOrdinal from each server.
2. if a majority of servers are not up (from this server's POV), remain in Secondary mode and stop.
3. if the last op time seems very old, stop and await human intervention.
4. else, using a consensus protocol, pick the server with the highest maxLocalOpOrdinal as the Primary.

Any server in the replica set, when it fails to reach master, attempts a new election process.

#### *Heartbeat Monitoring*

All nodes monitor all other nodes in the set via heartbeats.  If the current primary cannot see half of the nodes in the set (including itself), it will fall back to secondary mode. This monitoring is a way to check for network partitions. Otherwise in a network partition, a server might think it is still primary when it is not.

Heartbeats requests are sent out every couple of seconds and can either receive a response, get an error, or time out (after ~20 seconds).

#### *Assumption of Primary*

When a server becomes primary, we assume it has the latest data. Any data newer than the new primary's will be discarded. Any discarded data is backed up to a flat file as raw BSON, to allow for the possibility of manual recovery (see this case for some details). In general, manual recovery will not be needed - if data must be guaranteed to be committed it should be written to a majority of the nodes in the set.

#### *Failover*

We renegotiate when the primary is unavailable, see Picking Primary.

#### *Resync (Connecting to a New Primary)*

When a secondary connects to a new primary, it must resynchronize its position. It is possible the secondary has operations that were never committed at the primary. In this case, we roll those operations back. Additionally we may have new operations from a previous primary that never replicated elsewhere. The method is basically:

- for each operation in our oplog that does not exist at the primary, (1) remove from oplog and (2) resync the document in question by a query to the primary for that object. update the object, deleting if it does not exist at the primary.

We can work our way back in time until we find a few operations that are consistent with the new primary, and then stop.

Any data that is removed during the rollback is stored offline (see Assumption of Primary, so one can manually recover it. It can't be done automatically because there may be conflicts.

Reminder: you can use w= to ensure writes make it to a majority of slaves before returning to the user, to ensure no writes need to be rolled back.

#### *Consensus*

Fancier methods would converge faster but the current method is a good baseline. Typically only ~2 nodes will be jockeying for primary status at any given time so there isn't be much contention:

- query all others for their maxappliedoptime
- try to elect self if we have the highest time and can see a majority of nodes
    - if a tie on highest time, delay a short random amount first
    - elect (selfid,maxoptime) msg -> others
- if we get a msg and our time is higher, we send back NO
- we must get back a majority of YES
- if a YES is sent, we respond NO to all others for 1 minute. Electing ourself counts as a YES.
- repeat as necessary after a random sleep

#### *Increasing Durability*

We can trade off durability versus availability in a replica set. When a primary fails, a secondary will assume primary status with whatever data it has. Thus, we have some desire to see that things replicate quickly. Durability is guaranteed once a majority of servers in the replica set have an operation.

To improve durability clients can call getlasterror and wait for acknowledgement until replication of a an operation has occurred. The client can then selectively call for a blocking, somewhat more synchronous operation.

#### *Reading from Secondaries and Staleness*

Secondaries can report via a command how far behind the primary they are. Then, a read-only client can decide if the server's data is too stale or close enough for usage.

#### Example

server-a: secondary oplog: ()
server-b: secondary oplog: ()
server-c: secondary oplog: ()
…
server-a: primary oplog: (a1,a2,a3,a4,a5)
server-b: secondary oplog: ()
server-c: secondary oplog: ()
…
server-a: primary oplog: (a1,a2,a3,a4,a5)
server-b: secondary oplog: (a1)
server-c: secondary oplog: (a1,a2,a3)
…
// server-a goes down
…
server-b: secondary oplog: (a1)
server-c: secondary oplog: (a1,a2,a3)
...
server-b: secondary oplog: (a1)
server-c: primary oplog: (a1,a2,a3) // c has highest ord and becomes primary
...
server-b: secondary oplog: (a1,a2,a3)
server-c: primary oplog: (a1,a2,a3,c4)
...
server-a resumes
...
server-a: recovering oplog: (a1,a2,a3,a4,a5)
server-b: secondary oplog: (a1,a2,a3)
server-c: primary oplog: (a1,a2,a3,c4)
…
server-a: recovering oplog: (a1,a2,a3,c4)
server-b: secondary oplog: (a1,a2,a3,c4)
server-c: primary oplog: (a1,a2,a3,c4)
…
server-a: secondary oplog: (a1,a2,a3,c4)
server-b: secondary oplog: (a1,a2,a3,c4)
server-c: primary oplog: (a1,a2,a3,c4,c5,c6,c7,c8)

…
server-a: secondary oplog: (a1,a2,a3,c4,c5,c6,c7,c8)
server-b: secondary oplog: (a1,a2,a3,c4,c5,c6,c7,c8)
server-c: primary oplog: (a1,a2,a3,c4,c5,c6,c7,c8)

In the above example, server-c becomes primary after server-a fails. Operations (a4,a5) are lost. c4 and c5 are new operations with the same ordinals.

#### Administration

See the Replica Set Commands page for full info.

Commands:

- { replSetFreeze : <bool> } "freeze" or unfreeze a set. When frozen, new nodes cannot be elected master. Used when doing administration. Details TBD.
- { replSetGetStatus : 1 } get status of the set, from this node's POV
- { replSetInitiate : 1 }
- { ismaster : 1 } check if this node is master

#### Future Versions

- add support for replication trees / hierarchies
- replicating to a slave that is not a member of the set (perhaps we do not need this given we have the Passive set member type)

#### See Also

- About the local database

### Replica set internals - idempotence

**Redirection Notice**
This page should redirect to http://docs.mongodb.org/manual/reference/glossary/#term-idempotent.

## Master Slave

Use Replica Sets rather than this – replica sets are a functional superset of master/slave, and newer, more robust code.


- Configuration and Setup
- Command Line Options
  - Master
  - Slave
  - --slavedelay
- Diagnostics
- Security
- Master Slave vs. Replica Sets
- Administrative Tasks
  - Failing over to a Slave (Promotion)
  - Inverting Master and Slave
  - Creating a slave from an existing master's disk image
  - Creating a slave from an existing slave's disk image
  - Resyncing a slave that is too stale to recover
  - Slave chaining
  - Correcting a slave's source
- See Also


### Configuration and Setup

To configure an instance of Mongo to be a master database in a master-slave configuration, you'll need to start two instances of the database, one in *master* mode, and the other in *slave* mode.

**Data Storage**
The following examples explicitly specify the location of the data files on the command line. This is unnecessary if you are running the master and slave on separate machines, but in the interest of the readers who are going try this setup on a single node, they are supplied in the interest of safety.

```
$ bin/mongod --master [--dbpath /data/masterdb/]
```

As a result, the master server process will create a `local.oplog.$main` collection. This is the "transaction log" which queues operations which will be applied at the slave.

To configure an instance of Mongo to be a slave database in a master-slave configuration:

```
$ bin/mongod --slave --source <masterhostname>[:<port>]  [--dbpath /data/slavedb/]
```

Details of the source server are then stored in the slave's `local.sources` collection.  Instead of specifying the `--source` parameter, one can add an object to `local.sources` which specifies information about the master server:

```
$ bin/mongo <slavehostname>/local
> db.sources.find(); // confirms the collection is empty.  then:
> db.sources.insert( { host: <masterhostname> } );
```

- *`host: masterhostname`* is the IP address or FQDN of the master database machine. Append *`:port`* to the server hostname if you wish to run on a nonstandard port number.
- *`only: databasename`* (optional) if specified, indicates that only the specified database should replicate. NOTE: A bug with `only` is fixed in v1.2.4+.

A slave may become out of sync with a master if it falls far behind the data updates available from that master, or if the slave is terminated and then restarted some time later when relevant updates are no longer available from the master. If a slave becomes out of sync, replication will terminate and operator intervention is required by default if replication is to be restarted. An operator may restart replication using the {`resync:1`} command. Alternatively, the command line option `--autoresync` causes a slave to restart replication automatically (after ten second pause) if it becomes out of sync. If the `--autoresync` option is specified, the slave will not attempt an automatic resync more than once in a ten minute periond.

The `--oplogSize` command line option may be specified (along with `--master`) to configure the amount of disk space in megabytes which will be allocated for storing updates to be made available to slave nodes. If the `--oplogSize` option is not specified, the amount of disk space for storing updates will be 5% of available disk space (with a minimum of 1GB) for 64bit machines, or 50MB for 32bit machines.

## Command Line Options

#### Master

```
--master             master mode
  --oplogSize arg       size limit (in MB) for op log
```

#### Slave

```
--slave              slave mode
  --source arg          arg specifies master as <server:port>
  --only arg            arg specifies a single database to replicate
  --slavedelay arg      arg specifies delay (in seconds) to be used
                        when applying master ops to slave
  --autoresync          automatically resync if slave data is stale
```

#### --slavedelay

Sometimes its beneficial to have a slave that is purposefully many hours behind to prevent human error. In MongoDB 1.3.3+, you can specify this with the --slavedelay mongod command line option. Specify the delay in seconds to be used when applying master operations to the slave.

Specify this option at the slave. Example command line:

```
mongod --slave --source mymaster.foo.com --slavedelay 7200
```

### Diagnostics

Check master status from the `mongo` shell with:

```
// inspects contents of local.oplog.$main on master and reports status:
db.printReplicationInfo()
```

Check slave status from the `mongo` shell with:

```
// inspects contents of local.sources on the slave and reports status:
db.printSlaveReplicationInfo()
```

(Note you can evaluate the above functions without the parenthesis above to see their javascript source and a bit on the internals.)

As of 1.3.2, you can do this on the slave

```
db._adminCommand( { serverStatus : 1 , repl : N } )
```

`N` is the level of diagnostic information and can have the following values:

- 0 - none
- 1 - local (doesn't have to connect to other server)
- 2 - remote (has to check with the master)

### Security

When security is enabled, one must configure a user account for the local database that exists on both servers.

The slave-side of a replication connection first looks for a user repl in local.system.users. If present, that user is used to authenticate against the local database on the source side of the connection. If repl user does not exist, the first user object in local.system.users is tried.

The local database works like the admin database: an account for local has access to the entire server.

Example security configuration when security is enabled:

```
$ mongo <slavehostname>/admin -u <existingadminusername> -p<adminpassword>
> use local
> db.addUser('repl', <replpassword>);
^c
$ mongo <masterhostname>/admin -u <existingadminusername> -p<adminpassword>
> use local
> db.addUser('repl', <replpassword>);
```

### Master Slave vs. Replica Sets

Master/slave and replica sets are alternative ways to achieve replication with MongoDB.

Replica sets are newer (v1.6+) and more flexible, although a little more work to set up and learn at first.

The following replica set configuration is equivalent to a two node master/slave setup with hosts M (master) and S (slave):

```
$ # run mongod instances with "--replSet mysetname" parameter
$ # then in the shell:
$ mongo --host M
> cfg = {
>   _id : 'mysetname',
>   members : [
>     { _id : 0, host : 'M', priority : 1 },
>     { _id : 1, host : 'S', priority : 0, votes : 0 }
>   ]
> };
> rs.initiate(cfg);
```

## Administrative Tasks

#### Failing over to a Slave (Promotion)

To permanently fail over from a down master (*A*) to a slave (*B*):

- shut down *A*
- stop `mongod` on B
- backup or delete local.* datafiles on B
- restart `mongod` on B with the `--master` option

Note that is a one time cutover and the "mirror" is broken. A cannot be brought back in sync with B without a full resync.

#### Inverting Master and Slave

If you have a master (*A*) and a slave (*B*) and you would like to reverse their roles, this is the recommended sequence of steps. Note the following assumes *A* is healthy, up-to-date and up.

1. Halt writes on *A* (using the fsync command)
2. Make sure *B* is caught up
3. Shut down *B*
4. Wipe *local.** on B to remove old local.sources
5. Start up *B* with the `--master` option
6. Do a write on *B* (primes the oplog to provide a new sync start point).
7. Shut down *B*. *B* will now have a new set of local.* files.
8. Shut down *A* and replace *A*'s *local.** files with a copy of *B*'s new *local.** files. Remember to compress the files before/while copying them – they can be quite large.
9. Start *B* with the `--master` option
10. Start *A* with all the usual slave options plus `--fastsync`

If *A* is **not** healthy but the hardware is okay (power outage, server crash, etc.):

- Skip the first two steps
- Replace **all** of *A*'s files with *B*'s files in step 8.

If the hardware is not okay, replace *A* with a new machine and then follow the instructions in the previous paragraph.

#### Creating a slave from an existing master's disk image

If you can stop write operations to the master for an indefinite period, you can copy the data files from the master to the new slave, and then start the slave with `--fastsync`.

Be careful with --fastsync. If the data is not perfectly in sync, a discrepancy will exist forever.

`--fastsync` is a way to start a slave starting with an existing master disk image/backup. This option declares that the adminstrator guarantees the image is correct and completely up to date with that of the master. If you have a full and complete copy of data from a master you can use this option to avoid a full synchronization upon starting the slave.

#### Creating a slave from an existing slave's disk image

You can just copy the other slave's data file snapshot without any special options. Note data snapshots should only be taken when a `mongod` process is down or in fsync-and-lock state.

#### Resyncing a slave that is too stale to recover

Slaves asynchronously apply write operations from the master. These operations are stored in the master's oplog. The oplog is finite in length. If a slave is too far behind, a full resync will be necessary. See the Halted Replication page.

#### Slave chaining

Slaves cannot be "chained", they must all connect to the master directly. If a slave is chained to another slave you may see the following in the logs: `assertion 13051 tailable cursor requested on non capped collection ns:local.oplog.$main`

#### Correcting a slave's source

If you accidentally type the wrong host for the slave's source or wish to change it, you can do so by manually modifying the slave's *local.sources* collection. For example, say you start the slave with:

```
$ mongod --slave --source prod.missisippi
```

Restart the slave without the *--slave* and *--source* arguments.

```
$ mongod
```

Now start the shell and update the *local.sources* collection.

```
> use local
switched to db local
>  db.sources.update({host : "prod.missisippi"}, {$set : {host : "prod.mississippi"}})
```

Restart the slave with the correct command line arguments or no *--source* argument (once *local.sources* is set, no *--source* is necessary).

```
$ ./mongod --slave --source prod.mississippi
$ # or
$ ./mongod --slave
```

Now your slave will be pointing at the correct master.

### See Also

- Replica Sets

## Halted Replication

These instructions are for master/slave replication. For replica sets, see Resyncing a Very Stale Replica Set Member instead.

If you're running mongod with master-slave replication, there are certain scenarios where the slave will halt replication because it hasn't kept up with the master's oplog.

The first is when a slave is prevented from replicating for an extended period of time, due perhaps to a network partition or the killing of the slave process itself. The best solution in this case is to resyc the slave. To do this, open the mongo shell and point it at the slave:

```
$ mongo <slave_host_and_port>
```

Then run the resync command:

```
> use admin
> db.runCommand({resync: 1})
```

This will force a full resync of all data (which will be very slow on a large database). The same effect can be achieved by stopping `mongod` on the slave, delete all slave datafiles, and restarting it.

### *Increasing the OpLog Size*

Since the oplog is a capped collection, it's allocated to a fixed size; this means that as more data is entered, the collection will loop around and overwrite itself instead of growing beyond its pre-allocated size. If the slave can't keep up with this process, then replication will be halted. The solution is to increase the size of the master's oplog.

**Resync warning**
At present, the only way to increase the oplog's size is to delete the oplog and create a new one; this has the side-effect that the new oplog's oldest entry will be newer than any slaves' last replication timestamp, and so slaves will need to be resynced after allocating the new oplog. (This warning does not apply to replica sets.)

There are a couple of ways to do this, depending on how big your oplog will be and how much downtime you can stand. But first you need to figure out how big an oplog you need. If the current oplog size is wrong, how do you figure out what's right? The goal is not to let the oplog age out in the time it takes to clone the database. The first step is to print the replication info. On the master node, run this command:

```
> db.printReplicationInfo();
```

You'll see output like this:

```
configured oplog size:   1048.576MB
log length start to end: 7200secs (2hrs)
oplog first event time:  Wed Mar 03 2010 16:20:39 GMT-0500 (EST)
oplog last event time:   Wed Mar 03 2010 18:20:39 GMT-0500 (EST)
now:                     Wed Mar 03 2010 18:40:34 GMT-0500 (EST)
```

This indicates that you're adding data to the database at a rate of 524MB/hr. If an initial clone takes 10 hours, then the oplog should be at least 5240MB, so something closer to 8GB would make for a safe bet.

The standard way of changing the oplog size involves stopping the `mongod` master, deleting the local.* datafiles, and then restarting with the oplog size you need, measured in MB:

```
$ # Stop mongod - killall mongod or kill -2 or ctrl-c) - then:
$ rm /data/db/local.*
$ mongod --oplogSize=8038 --master
```

Once you've changed the oplog size, restart with slave with --autoresync:

```
mongod --slave --autoresync
```

This method of oplog creation might pose a problem if you need a large oplog (say, > 10GB), since the time it takes `mongod` to pre-allocate the oplog files may mean too much downtime. If this is the case, read on.

### *Manually Allocating OpLog Files*

An alternative approach is to create the oplog files manually before shutting down `mongod`. Suppose you need an 20GB oplog; here's how you'd go about creating the files:

1. Create a temporary directory, /tmp/local.
2. You can either create the files yourself or let MongoDB allocate them. If you'd like to create them yourself, here's a shell script for doing just that:

```
cd /tmp/local
  for i in {0..9}
      do
      echo $i
      head -c 2146435072 /dev/zero > local.$i
      done
```

Note that the datafiles aren't exactly 2GB due MongoDB's max int size.

If you'd like MongoDB to preallocate them for you, you can do:

```
$ mongod --dbpath /tmp/local --port 27099 --master --oplogSize=20000
```

Set the port to be something that is different than the other `mongod` running on the machine. Once this instance has finished allocating oplog files (watch the log), shut it down. If you are allocating these files for a replica set, remove the *local.ns* file:

```
$ rm /tmp/local/local.ns
```

3. Shut down the `mongod` master (kill -2) and then replace the oplog files:

```
$ mv /data/db/local.* /safe/place
$ mv /tmp/local/* /data/db/
```

4. Restart the master with the new oplog size:

```
$ mongod --master --oplogSize=20000
```

5. Finally, resync the slave. This can be done by shutting down the slave, deleting all its datafiles, and restarting it.

## Replica Pairs

**Replica pairs will be removed for 1.8**

Replica pairs should be migrated to their replacement, Replica Sets.


- Setup of Replica Pairs
- Consistency
- Security
- Replacing a Replica Pair Server
- Querying the slave
- What is and when should you use an arbiter?
- Working with an existing (non-paired) database


### Setup of Replica Pairs

Mongo supports a concept of *replica pairs*. These databases automatically coordinate which is the master and which is the slave at a given point in time.

At startup, the databases will negotiate which is master and which is slave. Upon an outage of one database server, the other will automatically take over and become master from that point on. In the event of another failure in the future, master status would transfer back to the other server. The databases manage this themselves internally.

**Note:** Generally, start with empty /data/db directories for each pair member when creating and running the pair for the first time.  See section on Existing Databases below for more information.

To start a pair of databases in this mode, run each as follows:

```
$ ./mongod --pairwith <remoteserver> --arbiter <arbiterserver>
```

where

- *remoteserver* is the hostname of the other server in the pair. Append *:port* to the server hostname if you wish to run on a nonstandard port number.
- *arbiterserver* is the hostname (and optional port number) of an *arbiter*. An arbiter is a Mongo database server that helps negotiate which member of the pair is master at a given point in time. Run the arbiter on a third machine; it is a "tie-breaker" effectively in determining which server is master when the members of the pair cannot contact each other. You may also run with no arbiter by not including the --arbiter option. In that case, both servers will assume master status if the network partitions.

One can manually check which database is currently the master:

```
$ ./mongo
> db.$cmd.findOne({ismaster:1});
{ "ismaster" : 0.0 , "remote" : "192.168.58.1:30001" , "ok" : 1.0  }
```

(Note: When security is on, `remote` is only returned if the connection is authenticated for the `admin` database.)

However, Mongo drivers with replica pair support normally manage this process for you.

### Consistency

Members of a pair are only eventually consistent on a failover. If machine L of the pair was master and fails, its last couple seconds of operations may not have made it to R - R will not have those operations applied to its dataset until L recovers later.

### Security

Example security configuration when security is enabled:

```
$ ./mongo <lefthost>/admin -u <adminusername> -p<adminpassword>
> use local
> db.addUser('repl', <replpassword>);
^c
$ ./mongo <righthost>/admin -u <adminusername> -p<adminpassword>
> use local
> db.addUser('repl', <replpassword>);
```

### Replacing a Replica Pair Server

When one of the servers in a Mongo replica pair set fails, should it come back online, the system recovers automatically. However, should a machine completely fail, it will need to be replaced, and its replacement will begin with no data. The following procedure explains how to replace one of the machines in a pair.

Let's assume nodes (n1, n2) is the old pair and that n2 dies. We want to switch to (n1,n3).

1. If possible, assure the dead n2 is offline and will not come back online: otherwise it may try communicating with its old pair partner.
2. We need to tell n1 to pair with n3 instead of n2. We do this with a `replacepeer` command. Be sure to check for a successful return value from this operation.

   ```
   n1> ./mongo n1/admin
   > db.$cmd.findOne({replacepeer:1});
   {
       "info" : "adjust local.sources hostname; db restart now required" ,
       "ok" : 1.0
   }
   ```

   At this point, n1 is still running but is reset to not be confused when it begins talking to n3 in the future. The server is still up although replication is now disabled.

3. Restart n1 with the right command line to talk to n3

   ```
   n1> ./mongod --pairwith n3 --arbiter <arbiterserver>
   ```

4. Start n3 paired with n1.

```
n3> ./mongod --pairwith n1 --arbiter <arbiterserver>
```

   Note that n3 will not accept any operations as "master" until fully synced with n1, and that this may take some time if there is a substantial amount of data on n1.

### Querying the slave

You can query the slave if you set the slave ok flag. In the shell:

```
db.getMongo().setSlaveOk()
```

### What is and when should you use an arbiter?

The arbiter is used in some situations to determine which side of a pair is master. In the event of a network partition (left and right are both up, but can't communicate) whoever can talk to the arbiter becomes master.

If your left and right server are on the same switch, an arbiter isn't necessary. If you're running on the same ec2 availability zone, probably not needed as well. But if you've got left and right on different ec2 availability zones, then an arbiter should be used.

### Working with an existing (non-paired) database

Care must be taken when enabling a pair for the first time if you have existing datafiles you wish to use that were created from a singleton database. Follow the following procedure to start the pair. Below, we call the two servers "left" and "right".

- assure no mongod processes are running on both servers
- we assume the data files to be kept are on server left. Check that there is no local.* datafiles in left's /data/db (--dbpath) directory. If there are, remove them.
- check that there are no datafiles at all on right's /data/db directory
- start the left process with the appropriate command line including --pairwith argument
- start the right process with the appropriate paired command line

If both left and right servers have datafiles in their dbpath directories at pair initiation, errors will occur. Further, you do not want a local database (which contains replication metadata) during initiation of a new pair.

## Replication Oplog Length

**Redirection Notice**
This page should redirect to http://docs.mongodb.org/manual/core/replication/#replica-set-oplog-sizing.

# Sharding

MongoDB scales horizontally via an auto-sharding (partitioning) architecture. MongoDB sharding provides:

- Automatic balancing for changes in load and data distribution
- Easy addition of new machines without down time
- Scaling to one thousand nodes
- No single points of failure
- Automatic failover

### Getting Started

- Introduction. Philosophy, use cases, and its core components.
- Simple Initial Sharding Architecture
- Configuration. Setting up your cluster.
- Administration

### Additional Info

- Failover How failover/HA works.

- Sharding Internals Implementation details.
- Restrictions and Limitations
- FAQ Frequently asked questions.
- HOWTO
    - Changing Config Servers

### Presentations and Further Materials

- How Sharding Works - O'Reilly Webcast (February 2011)
- How queries work with sharding (PDF)
- Illustration of chunks and migration (PDF) http://www.10gen.com/video/mongosf2011/sharding
- Scaling MongoDB - O'Reilly ebook
- Schema design at scale (video)
- Mongo Sharding Architecture, Implementation, Internals (video)

### See Also

- Replication

### Video - How and When to Scale MongoDB with Sharding

Presentation at MongoSV (December 2011)

## Bulk Inserts

This page details a few notes on bulk / batch insert operations into collections.

#### *No data distribution until the amount of data is not small*

Sharding uses a "chunk" concept and chunks are on the order of 50 megabytes. Thus until you reach significantly more data volume in the collection than that, you won't see a large amount of data distribution.

#### *Sharded collections and bulk insert*

If the collection is not yet populated, the database cannot yet have "learned" what the key distribution is and how to distribute it. The sudden bulk insert will happen quickly and the system will need time to learn and adapt (at least in <=v2.2). To avoid this learning time you can predefine some splits (key ranges) and then the early stages of the bulk import will run more efficiently.

#### *Parallel import*

You could parallel import by sending inserts to multiple mongos instances. You may want to pre-split first (see above) if the collection is empty at the beginning.

#### *ObjectIds and other monotonically increasing shard key values*

If your shard key, during inserts, monotonically increases, this will mean that all inserts are going to the last chunk in the collection. The system will adjust the metadata to keep balance, but at a given time t all writes will be going to a single shard, which is undesirable if insert rate is extremely large. To avoid this, consider using a shard key that is not increasing in value. For example in some cases you could reverse all the bits of your shard key, which is information preserving yet then avoids the increasing sequence of values.

Note that BSON ObjectIds have this property. You might wish at generation time to reverse the bits of the ObjectIds, or swap the first and last 16 bit words, to "shuffle" the inserts. Alternatively you might use UUIDs instead (but check that your UUID generator does not generate increasing UUIDs consistently or you would get the same behavior).

Note that shard key values that are strictly increasing is fine if the insert volume is within the range that a single shard can process at a given point in time.

Future versions of the database will provide an option to hash shard keys for distribution when that is desired by the operator/developer.

#### *Example*

The following example, in C++, swaps the leading and trailing 16 bit word of object IDs generated so that they are no longer monotonically increasing.

```
using namespace mongo;

OID make_an_id() {
  OID x = OID::gen();
  const unsigned char *p = x.getData();
  swap( (unsigned short&) p[0], (unsigned short&) p[10] );
  return x;
}

void foo() {
  // create an object
BSONObj o = BSON( "_id" << make_an_id() << "x" << 3 << "name" << "jane" );

  // now we might insert o into a sharded collection...
}
```

### *See Also*

- Import Export Tools

## Changing Config Servers

Sections:


- Best Practices
- Upgrading from one config server to three
- Moving your config servers - same host name or virtual ip
- Renaming a config server - different host name
- Replacing a dead config server

The config server data is the most important data in your entire cluster. Back it up before doing config server maintenance.

Adding and changing config servers is a bit tricky right now. This will be improved in a future release, see http://jira.mongodb.org/browse/SERVER-1658.

Note that config servers are **not** a replica set: instead they use a two phase commit protocol to keep their data synchronous. Thus each config server (if you have 3) has *exactly* the same data. When one or more config servers are down, the others are available for reading, but not for writing. During that window of time, sharding metadata will be static (which is fine for a while – fine for a couple hours, for example).

See also the Sharding and Failover page for more information on HA when various mongo processes go down in a cluster.

### *Best Practices*

- Use three config servers.
- Give them logical (DNS) names. Do not refer to them (on the mongos ocmmand line) by IP address.
- The DNS name should be logical (e.g. "mycluster_config2") not a name that is VM-specific.
- Use a short DNS TTL (20 seconds or example).
- Act slowly when replacing a config server – your system should be fine with one down. Better to not have an operational typo and to let one be down for a while. If one is down, take some time and read this page, consider opening a support ticket, etc., before taking action. The metadata for the cluster is very important.
- When replacing a config server, make sure the old process/machine is truly down before starting up the new one. There may be legacy sockets open to the old config server process otherwise, and that would be bad.

### *Upgrading from one config server to three*

Unfortunately you will need to shutdown the entire system.

1. Shutdown all processes (mongod, mongos, config server).
2. Copy the data subdirectories (dbpath tree) from the config server to the new config servers.
3. Start the config servers.
4. Restart mongos processes with the new --configdb parameter.
5. Restart mongod processes.

### *Moving your config servers - same host name or virtual ip*

If you are using hostnames or virtual ips for your config, this is pretty simple.

1. Shutdown config server you want to move
2. Change dns entry to new machine
3. Move data to new machine
4. Start new config server

### *Renaming a config server - different host name*

If you wish to use a different name or ip address in the *--configdb* option then this applies to you.

1. Shutdown config server you want to move
2. Move data to new machine
3. Start new config server
4. Shutdown all processes (mongod, mongos, config server).
5. Restart mongod processes.
6. Restart mongos processes with the new --configdb parameter.

### *Replacing a dead config server*

Let's assume we have been running with mongos commands lines of:

```
mongos --configdb hosta,hostb,hostc
```

and that hostb has died. We want to replace it.

> ⚠ You cannot change the name/ip used in the `mongos --configdb` line; if you wish to do this you must follow the directions above for renaming or moving your servers.

1. Provision a new machine. Give it the same hostname (hostb) that the host to be replaced had.
2. Shut down (only) one of the other config server processes – say, hostc. Then copy its data files to hostb. (We shut down so that we know we have a consistent image of the datafiles. See also the backups page for alternatives.)
3. Restart the config server on hostc.
4. Start the config server for the first time on hostb.

That's it. The key above is that we reused the logical (DNS) name of the host. That way we do not have to tell the other (many) processes in the system where the config servers are.  Check the length of your DNS ttl using the dig command.

## flushRouterConfig command

> ⚠ **Redirection Notice**
> This page should redirect to http://docs.mongodb.org/manual/reference/commands/#flushRouterConfig.

## Simple Initial Sharding Architecture


- Overview
- Goal
- Machines Locations
  - Datacenter Roles
- Replica sets
- Config Servers
- MongoS (routers)
  - Suggested
  - Alternative
  - Startup Options
- Everything is running
  - Notes


### Overview

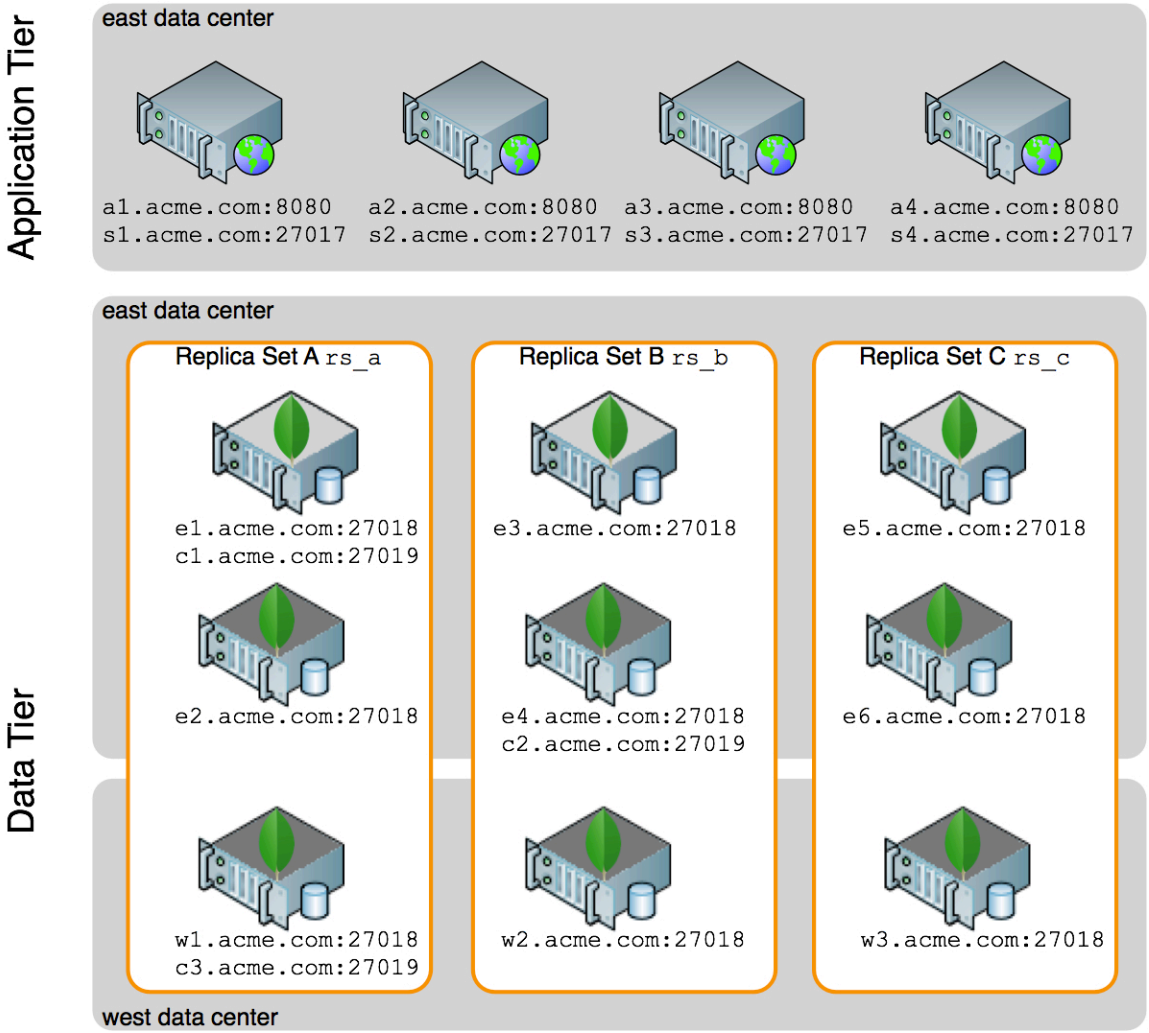
This is a sample sharding architecture that is a good starting point for building your cluster.

### Goal

- Two datacenters (East=primary, West=backup/DR)
- Data Tier (MongoDB)
    - 3 shards
    - 3 nodes per shard
    - 9 hosts total
- Application Tier
    - 4 application servers

### Machines Locations

- e1-e6 are in 1 datacenter (East)
- w1-w3 are in another datacenter (West)




#### *Datacenter Roles*

We'll use datacenter East as the primary, and data center West as disaster recovery.

### Replica sets

The replica set nodes in West will be priority 0 so they don't become master automatically.

The first thing we need to do is setup the 3 replica sets

- Replica Set A:
    - e1.acme.com : priority=1
    - e2.acme.com : priority=1
    - w1.acme.com : priority=0

Start the mongod process on each node, e.g.

```
e1.acme.com# mongod --shardsvr --replSet rs_a
e2.acme.com# mongod --shardsvr --replSet rs_a
w1.acme.com# mongod --shardsvr --replSet rs_a
```

*Note: --shardsvr will default the port to 27018*

In the mongo shell, create the replica set

```
> cfg = {
    _id : "rs_a",
    members : [
        {_id : 0, host : "e1.acme.com:27018", priority : 1},
        {_id : 1, host : "e2.acme.com:27018", priority : 1},
        {_id : 2, host : "w1.acme.com:27018", priority : 0}
    ]
}

> rs.initiate(cfg)
```

Repeat for each replica set as follows

- Replica Set B:
    - e3.acme.com : priority=1
    - e4.acme.com : priority=1
    - w2.acme.com : priority=0
- Replica Set C:
    - e5.acme.com : priority=1
    - e6.acme.com : priority=1
    - w3.acme.com : priority=0

### Config Servers

The next thing we need is to choose 3 config server locations.

We'll pick 2 random nodes in E (primary) and 1 in W (backup/DR). Since we have multiple MongoDB process on a node we need to ensure that different ports are being used, so we will use 27019 for the Config Servers.

- Config Servers
    - e1 - c1.acme.com:27019
    - e4 - c2.acme.com:27019
    - w1 - c3.acme.com:27019

**DNS Aliases**
We should make dns aliases for these so its easy to change later

Start up the config servers, e.g.

```
e1.acme.com> mongod --configsvr
e4.acme.com> mongod --configsvr
w1.acme.com> mongod --configsvr
```

*Note: --configsvr will default the port to 27019*

### MongoS (routers)

The last question is where to put the mongos.

#### *Suggested*

The suggested configuration is to run an instance on **each app-server** (as shown by a1-a4 in diagram above).

### *Alternative*

These are the other common options:

- On each server (all 9)
- Create a (sticky) load-balanced cluster (independent of client/shards)

### *Startup Options*

When we start the mongos, we'll use

```
> mongos --configdb c1.acme.com:27019,c2.acme.com:27019,c3.acme.com:27019
```

Note: be sure to use DNS names for yoru configdb names, not ip addresses. Otherwise moving a config server later will be quite difficult.

Then we'll need to add the 3 replica sets as shards

```
> db.adminCommand( { addShard : "rs_a/e1.acme.com:27018,e2.acme.com:27018,w1.acme.com:27018" } )
> db.adminCommand( { addShard : "rs_b/e3.acme.com:27018,e4.acme.com:27018,w2.acme.com:27018" } )
> db.adminCommand( { addShard : "rs_c/e5.acme.com:27018,e6.acme.com:27018,w3.acme.com:27018" } )
```

### Everything is running

At this point your basic architecture is ready to go. You've got 3 shards for scalability, and 3 copies of each piece of data (with one ready for DR). There are obviously many ways to configure this, but this is a pretty simple way to get started.

Your next step is to enable sharding for any database you would like to use sharded, and to then enable sharding for any collection you want sharded.  Databases and collections by default will be "unsharded" and simply reside in the first shard.

To save yourself time, don't bother sharding tiny collections, just do the big ones.

### *Notes*

- Names (DNS) should be used everywhere, and consistently
- All client writes/reads will be isolated to the Primary Datacenter (East)
- SlaveOk can be used to allow stale/eventually-consistent reads
    - If this is done, hidden should be used with the West nodes e.g.

```
> cfg = {
    _id : "rs_a",
    members : [
        {_id : 0, host : "e1.acme.com:27018", priority : 1},
        {_id : 1, host : "e2.acme.com:27018", priority : 1},
        {_id : 2, host : "w1.acme.com:27018", priority : 0, hidden : true}
    ]
}

> rs.initiate(cfg)
```

## Sharding Introduction

MongoDB supports an automated sharding/partitioning architecture, enabling horizontal scaling across multiple nodes. For applications that outgrow the resources of a single database server, MongoDB can convert to a sharded cluster, automatically managing failover and balancing of nodes, with few or no changes to the original application code.

This document explains MongoDB's auto-sharding approach to scalability in detail and provides an architectural overview of the various components that enable it.

Be sure to acquaint yourself with the current limitations.

- MongoDB's Auto-Sharding
    - Sharding in a Nutshell
    - Balancing

- Failover
- Scaling Model
- Architectural Overview
  - Shards
    - Shard Keys
    - Chunks
  - Config DB Processes
  - Routing Processes (mongos)
  - Operation Types
  - Server Layout


## MongoDB's Auto-Sharding

### *Sharding in a Nutshell*

Sharding is the partitioning of data among multiple machines in an order-preserving manner. To take an example, let's imagine sharding a collection of users by their state of residence. In a simplistic view, if we designate three machines as our shard servers, the users might be divided up by machine as follows:

| Machine 1 | Machine 2 | Machine 3 |
|---|---|---|
| Alabama  Arizona | Colorado  Florida | Arkansas  California |
| Indiana  Kansas | Idaho  Illinois | Georgia  Hawaii |
| Maryland  Michigan | Kentucky  Maine | Minnesota  Missouri |
| Montana  Montana | Nebraska  New Jersey | Ohio  Pennsylvania |
| New Mexico  North Dakota | Rhode Island  South Dakota | Tennessee  Utah |
|  | Vermont  West Virgina | Wisconsin  Wyoming |

Note that each machine stores multiple "chunks" of data, based on state of residence. MongoDB distributes these chunks evenly across all of the machines available.

The chunking mechanism would only kick in if the amount of data you were storing reached the threshold where sharding is advantageous.

Our application connects to the sharded cluster through a `mongos` process, which routes operations to the appropriate shard(s). In this way, the sharded MongoDB cluster looks like a single logical server to our application. If our `users` collection receives heavy writes, those writes are now distributed across three shard servers. Most queries continue to be efficient, as well, because they too are distributed. And since the documents are organized in an order-preserving manner, any operations specifying the state of residence will be routed only to those nodes containing that state.

Sharding is performed on a per-collection basis. Small collections need not be sharded. For instance, if we were building a service like Twitter, our collection of tweets would likely be several orders of magnitude larger than the next biggest collection. The size and throughput demands of such a collection would be prime for sharding, whereas smaller collections would still live on a single server. Non-sharded collections reside on just one shard.

### *Balancing*

Balancing is necessary when the load on any one shard node grows out of proportion with the remaining nodes. In this situation, the data must be redistributed to equalize load across shards.

### *Failover*

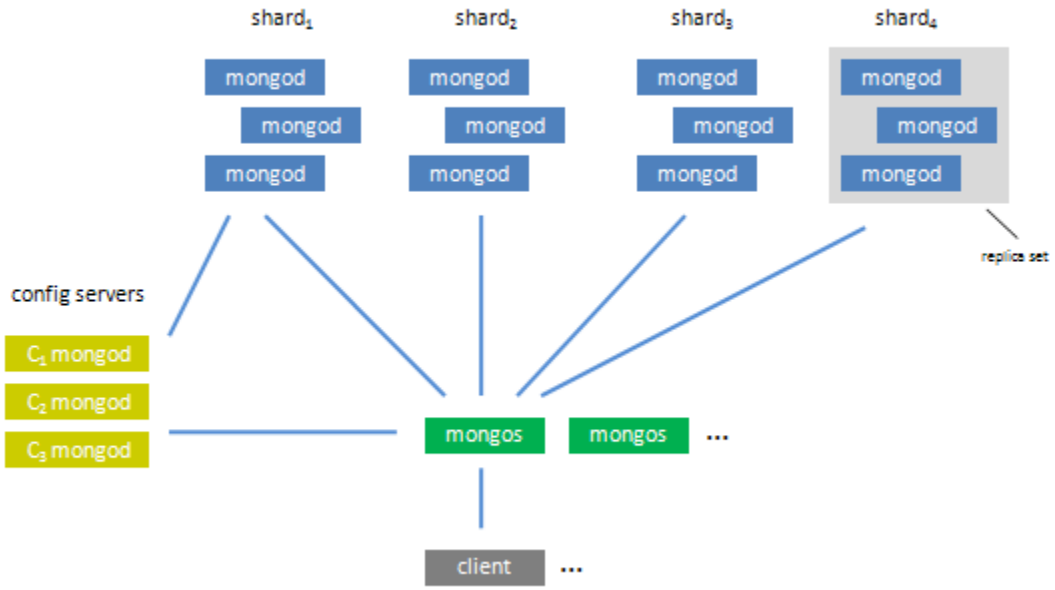
Failover is also quite important since proper system functioning requires that each logical shard be always online. In practice, this means that each shard consists of more than one machine in a configuration known as a replica set. A replica set is a set of *n* servers, typically two or three, each of which contains a replica of the entire data set for the given shard. One of the *n* servers in a replica set will always be primary. If the primary fails, the remaining replicas are capable of electing a new master.

### *Scaling Model*

MongoDB's auto-sharding scaling model shares many similarities with Yahoo's PNUTS and Google's BigTable. Readers interested in detailed discussions of distributed databases using order-preserving partitioning are encouraged to look at the PNUTS and BigTable white papers.

## Architectural Overview

A MongoDB shard cluster consists of two or more shards, one or more config servers, and any number of routing processes to which the application servers connect. Each of these components is described below in detail.




### *Shards*

Each shard consists of one or more servers and stores data using `mongod` processes (`mongod` being the core MongoDB database process). In a production situation, each shard will consist of multiple servers to ensure availability and automated failover. The set of servers/`mongod` process within the shard comprise a replica set.

In MongoDB, *sharding is the tool for scaling a system, and replication is the tool for data safety, high availability, and disaster recovery*. The two work in tandem yet are orthogonal concepts in the design.

For testing, you can use sharding with a single `mongod` instance per shard. Production databases typically need redundancy, so they use replica sets.

#### Shard Keys

To partition a collection, we specify a shard key pattern. This pattern is similar to the key pattern used to define an index; it names one or more fields to define the key upon which we distribute data. Some example shard key patterns include the following:

```
{ state : 1 }
{ name : 1 }
{ _id : 1 }
{ lastname : 1, firstname : 1 }
{ tag : 1, timestamp : -1 }
```

MongoDB's sharding is order-preserving; adjacent data by shard key tend to be on the same server. The config database stores all the metadata indicating the location of data by range:

| collection | minkey | maxkey | location |
|---|---|---|---|
| users | { name : 'Miller' } | { name : 'Nessman' } | shard2 |
| users | { name : 'Nessman' } | { name : 'Ogden' } | shard4 |
| ... | | | |

#### Chunks

A chunk is a contiguous range of data from a particular collection. Chunks are described as a triple of `collection`, `minKey`, and `maxKey`. Thus, the shard key K of a given document assigns that document to the chunk where minKey <= K < maxKey.

Chunks grow to a maximum size, usually 64MB. Once a chunk has reached that approximate size, the chunk *splits* into two new chunks. When

a particular shard has excess data, chunks will then *migrate* to other shards in the system. The addition of a new shard will also influence the migration of chunks.

When choosing a shard key, the values must be of high enough cardinality (granular enough) that data can be broken into many chunks, and thus distribute-able. For instance, in the above example, where we are sharding on `name`, if a huge number of users had the same name, that could be problematic as all documents involving that name would be in a single undivided chunk. With names that typically does not happen and thus `name` is a reasonable choice as a shard key.

If it is possible that a single value within the shard key range might grow exceptionally large, it is best to use a compound shard key instead so that further discrimination of the values will be possible.

### *Config DB Processes*

The config servers store the cluster's metadata, which includes basic information on each shard server and the chunks contained therein.

Chunk information is the main data stored by the config servers. Each config server has a complete copy of all chunk information. A two-phase commit is used to ensure the consistency of the configuration data among the config servers. Note that config server use their own replication model; they are not run in as a replica set.

If any of the config servers is down, the cluster's meta-data goes read only. However, even in such a failure state, the MongoDB cluster can still be read from and written to.

### *Routing Processes (mongos)*

The `mongos` process can be thought of as a routing and coordination process that makes the various components of the cluster look like a single system. When receiving client requests, the `mongos` process routes the request to the appropriate server(s) and merges any results to be sent back to the client.

`mongos` processes have no persistent state; rather, they pull their state from the config server on startup. Any changes that occur on the the config servers are propagated to each `mongos` process.

`mongos` processes can run on any server desired. They may be run on the shard servers themselves, but are lightweight enough to exist on each application server. There are no limits on the number of `mongos` processes that can be run simultaneously since these processes do not coordinate between one another.

### *Operation Types*

Operations on a sharded system fall into one of two categories: *global* and *targeted*.

For targeted operations, `mongos` communicates with a very small number of shards -- often a single shard. Such targeted operations are quite efficient.

Global operations involve the `mongos` process reaching out to all (or most) shards in the system.

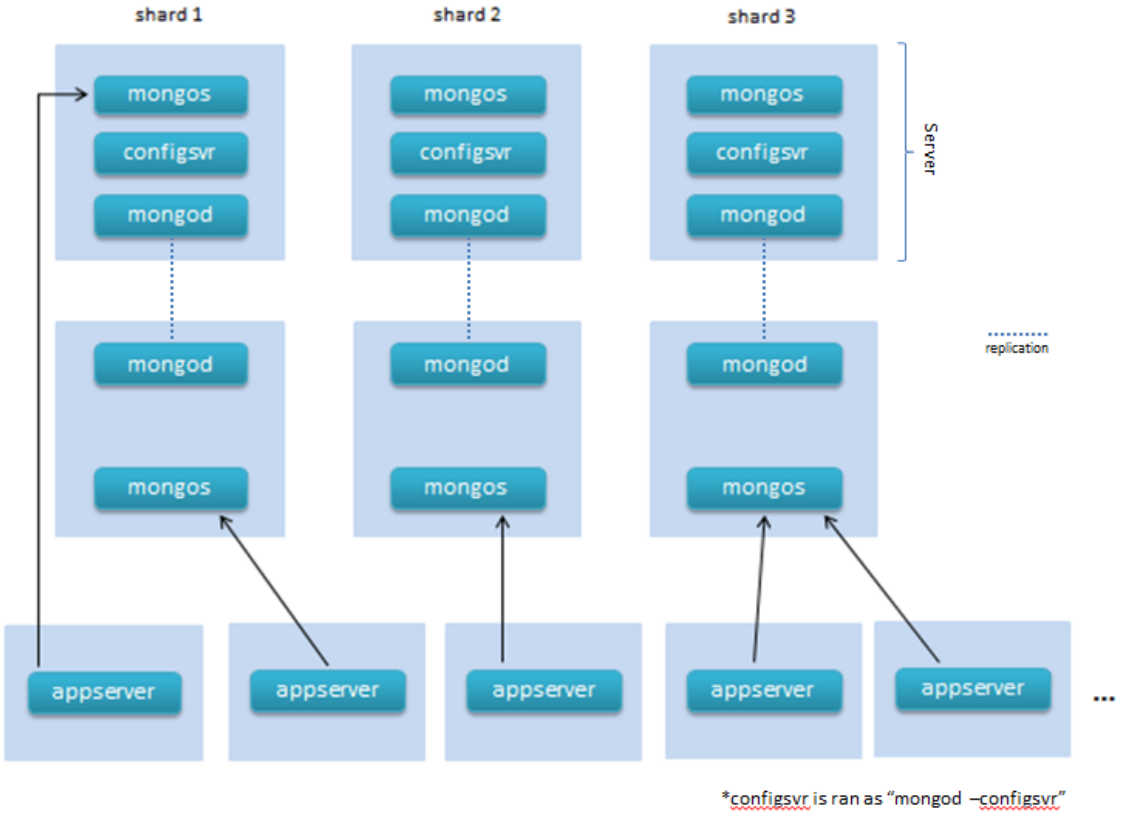
The following table shows various operations and their type. For the examples below, assume a shard key of { x : 1 }.

| Operation | Type | Comments |
|---|---|---|
| db.foo.find( { x : 300 } ) | Targeted | Queries a single shard. |
| db.foo.find( { x : 300, age : 40 } ) | Targeted | Queries a single shard. |
| db.foo.find( { age : 40 } ) | Global | Queries all shards. |
| db.foo.find() | Global | sequential |
| db.foo.find(...).count() | Variable | Same as the corresponding find() operation |
| db.foo.find(...).sort( { age : 1 } ) | Global | parallel |
| db.foo.find(...).sort( { x : 1 } ) | Global | sequential |
| db.foo.count() | Global | parallel |
| db.foo.insert( <object> ) | Targeted | |
| db.foo.update( { x : 100 }, <object> )<br>db.foo.remove( { x : 100 } ) | Targeted | |
| db.foo.update( { age : 40 }, <object>, false, true )<br><br>db.foo.remove( { age : 40 } ) | Global | Updates without the shard key must be multi-updates |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| db.getLastError() | | |
| db.foo.ensureIndex(...) | Global | |

### *Server Layout*

Machines may be organized in a variety of fashions. For instance, it's possible to have separate machines for each config server process, `mongos` process, and `mongod` process. However, this can be overkill since the load is almost certainly low on the config servers. Here is an example where some sharing of physical machines is used to lay out a cluster. The outer boxes are machines (or VMs) and the inner boxes are processes.




In the picture about a given connection to the database simply connects to a random mongos. mongos is generally very fast so perfect balancing of those connections is not essential. Additionally the implementation of a driver could be intelligent about balancing these connections (but most are not at the time of this writing).

Yet more configurations are imaginable, especially when it comes to `mongos`. Alternatively, as suggested earlier, the `mongos` processes can exists on each application server. There is some potential benefit to this configuration, as the communications between app server and `mongos` then can occur over the localhost interface.

Exactly three config server processes are used in almost all sharded mongo clusters. This provides sufficient data safety; more instances would increase coordination cost among the config servers.

**Next : Configuring Sharding**

## Configuring Sharding

This document describes the steps involved in setting up a basic sharding cluster. A sharding cluster has three components:

1. One to 1000 shards. Shards are partitions of data. Each shard consists of one or more `mongod` processes which store the data for that shard. When multiple `mongod`'s are in a single shard, they are each storing the same data – that is, they are replicating to each other.
2. Either one or three config server processes. For production systems use three.
3. One or more `mongos` routing processes.

For testing purposes, it's possible to start all the required processes on a single server, whereas in a production situation, a number of server configurations are possible.

Once the shards (mongod's), config servers, and mongos processes are running, configuration is simply a matter of issuing a series of commands to establish the various shards as being part of the cluster. Once the cluster has been established, you can begin sharding individual collections.

This document is fairly detailed; for a terse, code-only explanation, see the sample shard configuration. If you'd like a quick script to set up a test cluster on a single machine, we have a python sharding script that can do the trick.


- Sharding Components
    - Shard Servers
    - Config Servers
    - mongos Router
- Configuring the Shard Cluster
    - Adding shards
        - Optional Parameters
    - Listing shards
    - Removing a shard
- Enabling Sharding on a Database
- Sharding a Collection
- Examples
- See Also


## Sharding Components

First, start the individual shards (mongod's), config servers, and mongos processes.

Shard Servers

A shard server consists of a mongod process or a replica set of mongod processes. For production, use a replica set for each shard for data safety and automatic failover. To get started with a simple test, we can run a single mongod process per shard, as a test configuration doesn't demand automated failover.

Config Servers

Run a `mongod --configsvr` process for each config server. If you're only testing, you can use only one config server. For production, use three.

Note: Replicating data to each config server is managed by the router (mongos); they have a synchronous replication protocol optimized for three machines, if you were wondering why that number. Do not run any of the config servers with --replSet; replication between them is automatic.

Note: As the metadata of a MongoDB cluster is fairly small, it is possible to run the config server processes on boxes also used for other purposes.

mongos Router

Run mongos on the servers of your choice. Specify the --configdb parameter to indicate location of the config database(s). Note: use dns names, *not ip addresses*, for the --configdb parameter's value. Otherwise moving config servers later is difficult.

Note that each mongos will read from the first config server in the list provided. If you're running config servers across more than one data center, you should put the closest config servers early in the list.

## Configuring the Shard Cluster

Once the shard components are running, issue the sharding commands. You may want to automate or record your steps below in a .js file for replay in the shell when needed.

Start by connecting to one of the mongos processes, and then switch to the admin database before issuing any commands.

The mongos will route commands to the right machine(s) in the cluster and, if commands change metadata, the mongos will update that on the config servers. So, regardless of the number of mongos processes you've launched, you'll only need run these commands on one of those processes.

You can connect to the admin database via mongos like so:

```
./mongo <mongos-hostname>:<mongos-port>/admin
> db
admin
```

### *Adding shards*

Each shard can consist of more than one server (see replica sets); however, for testing, only a single server with one mongod instance need be used.

You must explicitly add each shard to the cluster's configuration using the addshard command:

```
> db.runCommand( { addshard : "<serverhostname>[:<port>]" } );
{"ok" : 1 , "added" : ...}
```

Run this command once for each shard in the cluster.

If the individual shards consist of replica sets, they can be added by specifying *replicaSetName* /<serverhostname>[:port][,serverhostname2[:port],...], where at least one server in the replica set is given.

```
> db.runCommand( { addshard : "foo/<serverhostname>[:<port>]" } );
{"ok" : 1 , "added" : "foo"}
```

Any databases and collections that existed already in the mongod/replica set will be incorporated to the cluster. The databases will have as the "primary" host that mongod/replica set and the collections will not be sharded (but you can do so later by issuing a shardCollection command).

Optional Parameters

**name**
Each shard has a name, which can be specified using the `name` option. If no name is given, one will be assigned automatically.

**maxSize**
The `addshard` command accepts an optional `maxSize` parameter. This parameter lets you tell the system a maximum amount of disk space in megabytes to use on the specified shard. If unspecified, the system will use the entire disk. maxSize is useful when you have machines with different disk capacities or when you want to prevent storage of too much data on a particular shard.

As an example:

```
> db.runCommand( { addshard : "sf103", maxSize:100000/*MB*/ } );
```

#### *Listing shards*

To see current set of configured shards, run the `listshards` command:

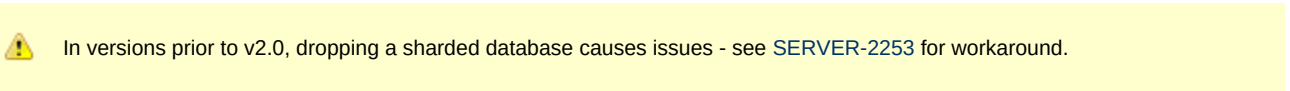
```
> db.runCommand( { listshards : 1 } );
```

This way, you can verify that all the shard have been committed to the system.

#### *Removing a shard*

See the removeshard command.

### Enabling Sharding on a Database

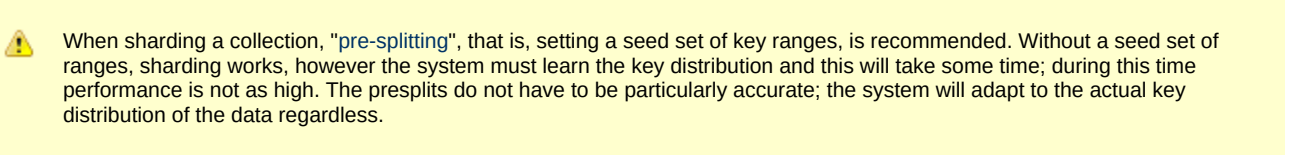



Once you've added one or more shards, you can enable sharding on a database. Unless enabled, all data in the database will be stored on the same shard. After enabling you then need to run shardCollection on the relevant collections (i.e., the big ones).

```
> db.runCommand( { enablesharding : "<dbname>" } );
```

Once enabled, `mongos` will place new collections on the primary shard for that database. Existing collections within the database will stay on the original shard. To enable partitioning of data, we have to shard an individual collection.

### Sharding a Collection



Use the `shardcollection` command to shard a collection. When you shard a collection, you must specify the shard key. If there is data in the collection, mongo will require an index to be created upfront (it speeds up the chunking process); otherwise, an index will be automatically created for you.

```
> db.runCommand( { shardcollection : "<namespace>",
                   key : <shardkeypatternobject> });
```

Running the "shardcollection" command will mark the collection as sharded with a specific key. Once called, there is currently no way to disable sharding or change the shard key, even if all the data is still contained within the same shard. It is assumed that the data may already be spread around the shards. If you need to "unshard" a collection, drop it (of course making a backup of data if needed), and recreate the collection (loading the backup data).

For example, let's assume we want to shard a GridFS `chunks` collection stored in the `test` database. We'd want to shard on the `files_id` key, so we'd invoke the `shardcollection` command like so:

```
> db.runCommand( { shardcollection : "test.fs.chunks", key : { files_id : 1 } } )
{ "collectionsharded" : "mydb.fs.chunks", "ok" : 1 }
```

You can use the {`unique: true`} option to ensure that the underlying index enforces uniqueness so long as the unique index is a prefix of the shard key. (note: prior to version 2.0 this worked only if the collection is empty).

```
db.runCommand( { shardcollection : "test.users" , key : { email : 1 } , unique : true } );
```

If the "unique: true" option is **not** used, the shard key does not have to be unique.

```
db.runCommand( { shardcollection : "test.products" , key : { category : 1, _id : 1 } } );
```

You can shard on multiple fields if you are using a compound index.

In the end, picking the right shard key for your needs is extremely important for successful sharding. Choosing a Shard Key.

#### Examples

- Sample configuration session
- The following example shows how to run a simple shard setup on a single machine for testing purposes: Sharding JS Test.

#### See Also

- Sharding Administration
- Notes on TCP Port Numbers

## A Sample Configuration Session

The following example uses two shards (each with a single mongod process), one config db, and one *mongos* process, all running on a single test server. In addition to the script below, a python script for starting and configuring shard components on a single machine is available.

#### *Creating the Shards*

First, start up a couple *mongod*s to be your shards.

```
$ mkdir /data/db/a /data/db/b
$ ./mongod --shardsvr --dbpath /data/db/a --port 10000 > /tmp/sharda.log &
$ cat /tmp/sharda.log
$ ./mongod --shardsvr --dbpath /data/db/b --port 10001 > /tmp/shardb.log &
$ cat /tmp/shardb.log
```

Now you need a configuration server and *mongos*:

```
$ mkdir /data/db/config
$ ./mongod --configsvr --dbpath /data/db/config --port 20000 > /tmp/configdb.log &
$ cat /tmp/configdb.log
$ ./mongos --configdb localhost:20000 > /tmp/mongos.log &
$ cat /tmp/mongos.log
```

*mongos* does not require a data directory, it gets its information from the config server.

In a real production setup, mongod's, mongos's and configs would live on different machines. The use of hostnames or IP addresses is mandatory in that case. 'localhost' appearance here is merely illustrative – but fully functional – and should be confined to single-machine, testing scenarios only.

You can toy with sharding by using a small `--chunkSize`, e.g. 1MB. This is more satisfying when you're playing around, as you won't have to insert 64MB of documents before you start seeing them moving around. It should not be used in production.

```
$ ./mongos --configdb localhost:20000 --chunkSize 1 > /tmp/mongos.log &
```

***Setting up the Cluster***

We need to run a few commands on the shell to hook everything up. Start the shell, connecting to the *mongos* process (at localhost:27017 if you followed the steps above).

To set up our cluster, we'll add the two shards (*a* and *b*).

```
$ ./mongo
MongoDB shell version: 1.6.0
connecting to: test
> use admin
switched to db admin
> db.runCommand( { addshard : "localhost:10000" } )
{ "shardadded" : "shard0000", "ok" : 1 }
> db.runCommand( { addshard : "localhost:10001" } )
{ "shardadded" : "shard0001", "ok" : 1 }
```

Now you need to tell the database that you want to spread out your data at a database and collection level. You have to give the collection a key (or keys) to partition by.
This is similar to creating an index on a collection.

```
> db.runCommand( { enablesharding : "test" } )
{"ok" : 1}
> db.runCommand( { shardcollection : "test.people", key : {name : 1} } )
{"ok" : 1}
```

***Administration***

To see what's going on in the cluster, use the *config* database.

```
> use config
switched to db config
> show collections
chunks
databases
lockpings
locks
mongos
settings
shards
system.indexes
version
```

These collections contain all of the sharding configuration information.

## Changing a Shard Key

There is no automatic support for changing the shard key for a collection. In addition this would fundamentally be a very expensive operation most of the data in the cluster for the collection likely moves from machine to machine.

Thus it is very important to choose the right shard key up front.

If you do need to change a shard key, an export and import is likely the best solution. Create a new pre-sharded collection, and then import the exported data to it. If desired use a dedicated mongos for the export and the import.

https://jira.mongodb.org/browse/SERVER-4000

## Choosing a Shard Key

**It is important to choose the right shard key for a collection.** If the collection is gigantic it is difficult to change the key later. When in doubt please ask for suggestions in the support forums or IRC.

The basic rule of thumb is : whatever field is common to most of your queries, that field is likely the right one to use for the shard key. If a query involves the shard key, it can (typically) be sent to only one shard.

- Cardinality
- Write scaling
- Query isolation
- Sorting
- Reliability
- Index optimization
- GridFS

The discussion below considers a structured event logging system. Documents in the events collection have the form:

```
{
   mon_node : "ny153.example.com" ,
   application : "apache" ,
   time : "2011-01-02T21:21:56.249Z" ,
   level : "ERROR" ,
   msg : "something is broken"
}
```

***Cardinality***

Documents in a sharded collection are grouped together in *chunks*.

All data in a sharded collection is broken into *chunks*. A chunk consists of all the documents who have a shard key within the chunk's specified (key_low..key_high) key range.

Using the logging example above, if you chose

```
{mon_node:1}
```

as the shard key, then all data for a single mon_node is in one chunk, and thus on one shard. One can easily imagine having a lot of data for a

mon_node and wanting to split it among shards. In addition, chunks are approximately 64MB in size. If the chunk is unsplittable because it represents a single mon_node value, the balancer migrating that chunk from server to server would be slow.

If one were to shard on the key

```
{mon_node:1,time:1}
```

we can then split data for a single mon_node down to the millisecond. No chunk will ever be too large. (Note there will not be a chunk for every mon_node,time value – rather on ranges such as

```
{mon_node:"nyc_app_24",time:"2011-01-01"}..{mon_node:"nyc_app_27",time:"2011-07-12"}
```

or if a lot of data for one mon_node:

```
{mon_node:"nyc_app_24",time:"2011-01-01"}..{mon_node:"nyc_app_24",time:"2011-01-07"}
```

Keeping chunks to a reasonable size is very important so data can be balanced and moving chunks isn't too expensive.

***Write scaling***

One of the primary reasons for using sharding is to distribute writes. To do this, its important that writes hit as many chunks as possible.

Again using the example above, choosing

```
{ time : 1 }
```

as the shard key will cause all writes to go to the newest chunk. If the shard key were

```
{mon_node:1,application:1,time:1}
```

then each mon_node,application pair can potentially be written to different shards. Thus there were 100 mon_node,application pairs, and 10 shards, then each shard would get 1/10th the writes.

Note that because the most significant part of an ObjectId is time-based, using ObjectId as the shard key has the same issue as using time directly.

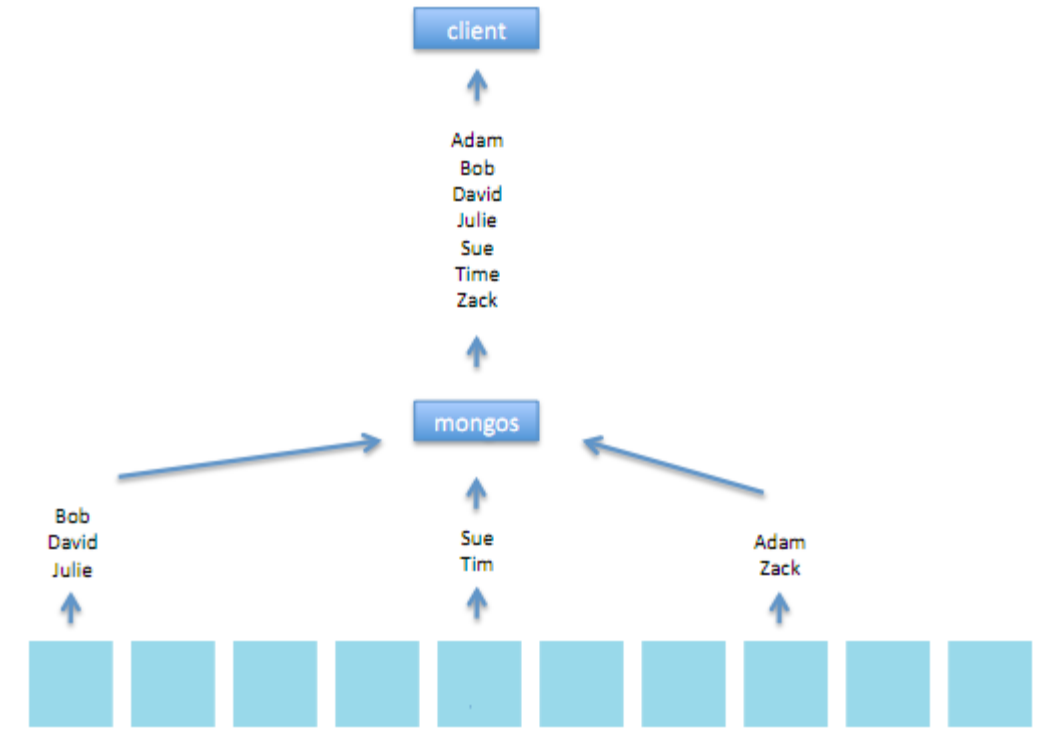
***Query isolation***

Another key consideration is how many shards any query has to hit. Ideally a query would go directly from `mongos` to the shard (`mongod`) that owns the document requested. Thus, if you know that most common queries include a condition on *mon_node*, then starting the shard key with mon_node would be efficient.

All queries work regardless of the shard key, but if `mongos` cannot determine which shard that owns the data, it will send the operation to all shards in parallel. This will increase the response time latency and increase the volume of network traffic and load.

***Sorting***

When a query includes a sort criteria, the query is sent to the same shards that would have received the equivalent query without the sort expression. Each shard queried performs a sort on its subset of the data locally (potentially utilizing an appropriate index locally if one is available). `mongos` merges the ordered results coming from each shard and returns the merged stream to the client. Thus the `mongos` process does very little work and requires little RAM for request of this nature.




***Reliability***

One important aspect of sharding is how much of the system will be affected in case an entire shard becomes unavailable (even though it is usually a reliable replica set).

Say you have a twitter-like system, with comment entries like:

```
{
   _id: ObjectId("4d084f78a4c8707815a601d7"),
   user_id : 42 ,
   time : "2011-01-02T21:21:56.249Z" ,
   comment : "I am happily using MongoDB",
}
```

One might use *id* or *user_id* as shard key. *id* will give you better granularity and spread, but in case a shard goes down, it will impact almost all your users (some data missing). If you use *user_id* instead, a lower percentage of users will be impacted (say 20% for a 5 shard setup), although these users will not see any of their data.

***Index optimization***

As mentioned in other sections about indexing, it is usually much better performance-wise if only a portion of the index is read/updated, so that this "active" portion can stay in RAM most of the time. Most shard keys described above result in an even spread over the shards but also within each mongod's index. Instead, it can be beneficial to factor in some kind of timestamp at the beginning of the shard key in order to limit the portion of the index that gets hit.
Say you have a photo storage system, with photo entries like:

```
{
   _id: ObjectId("4d084f78a4c8707815a601d7"),
   user_id : 42 ,
   title: "sunset at the beach",
   upload_time : "2011-01-02T21:21:56.249Z" ,
   data: ...,
}
```

You could instead build a custom *id* that includes the month of the upload time, and a unique identifier (ObjectId, MD5 of data, etc). Your entry now looks like:

```
{
   _id: "2011-01_4d084f78a4c8707815a601d7",
   user_id : 42 ,
   title: "sunset at the beach",
   upload_time : "2011-01-02T21:21:56.249Z" ,
   data: ...,
}
```

This custom id would be the key used for sharding, and also the id used to retrieve a document. It gives both a good spread across all servers, and it reduces the portion of the index hit on most queries.

Further notes:

- at the beginning of each month, only one shard would be hit for some time until the balancer starts splitting buckets. To avoid this potential slowdown and migration of data, it is advised to create ranges ahead of time (e.g. 5 or more ranges for each month if you have 5 servers).
- As a further improvement, you can incorporate the user id into the photo id. This way it will keep all documents belonging to same user within the same shard. For example: "2011-01_42_4d084f78a4c8707815a601d7"

***GridFS***

There are different ways that GridFS can be sharded, depending on the need. One common way to shard, based on pre-existing indexes, is:

- "files" collection is not sharded. All file records will live in 1 shard. It is highly recommended to make that shard very resilient (at least 3 node replica set)
- "chunks" collection should be sharded using the index "files_id: 1". The existing "files_id, n" index created by the drivers cannot be used to shard on "files_id" (this is a sharding limitation that will be fixed), so you have to create a separate index on just "files_id". The reason to use "files_id" is so that all chunks of a given file live on the same shard, which is safer and allows "filemd5" command to work (required by certain drivers).
  Run the commands:

```
> db.fs.chunks.ensureIndex({files_id: 1});
> db.runCommand({ shardcollection : "test.fs.chunks", key : { files_id : 1 }})
{ "collectionsharded" : "test.fs.chunks", "ok" : 1 }
```

As the default `files_id` is an ObjectId, `files_id` will be ascending and thus all GridFS chunks will be sent to a single sharding chunk. If your write load is too high for a single server to handle, you may want to shard on a different key or use a different value for the `_id` in the files collection.

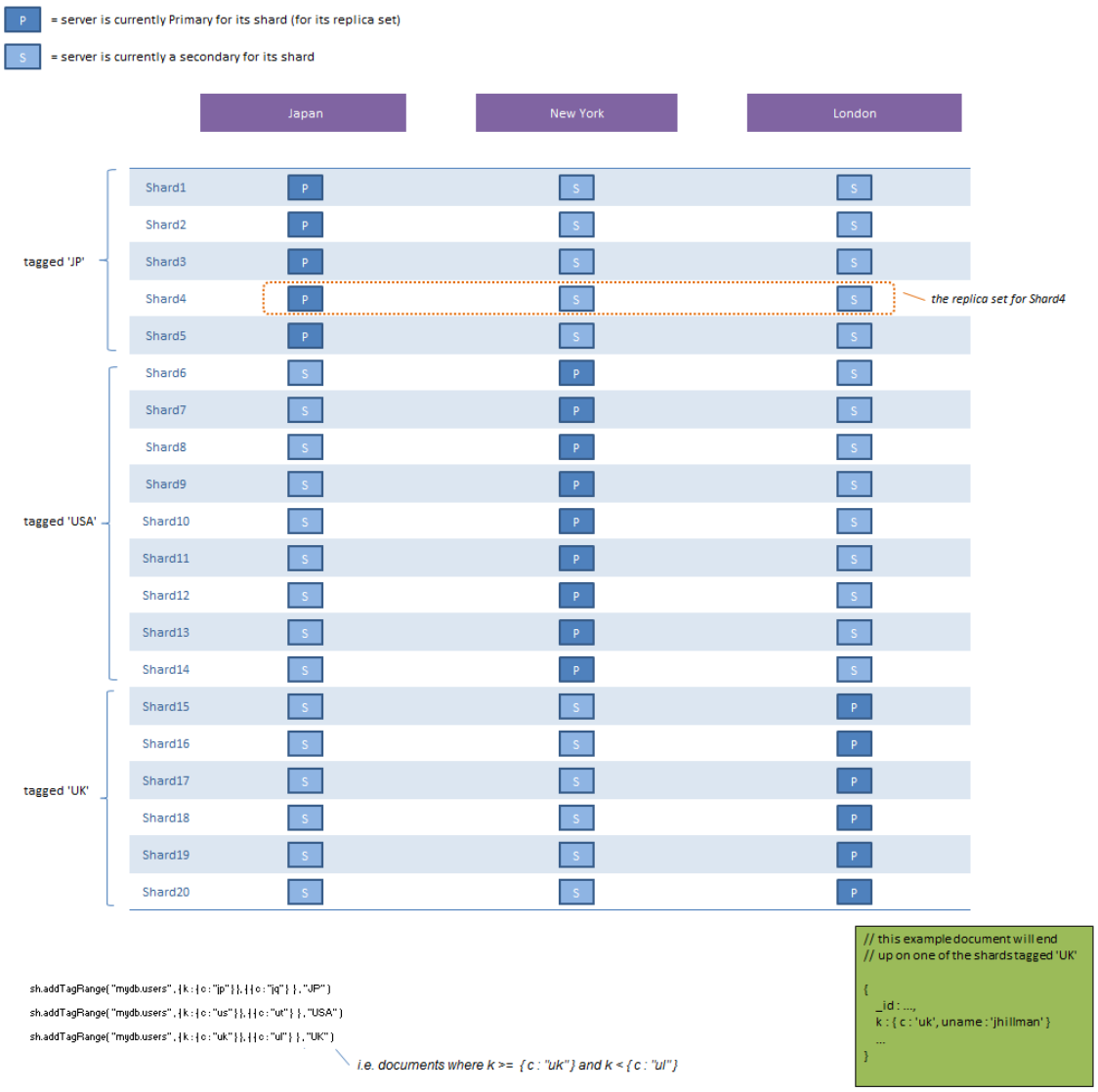
## removeshard command

**Redirection Notice**
This page should redirect to http://docs.mongodb.org/manual/tutorial/remove-shards-from-cluster/.

## Tag Aware Sharding

**v2.2+** of MongoDB supports tag-aware sharding.

Typically this is used to make assignment of documents to shards geographically aware. One marks a shard key range as "homed" on a certain set of shards. Those shards would then be configured such that their primary defaults to the desired data center / geography.




## Upgrading from a Non-Sharded System

A `mongod` process can become part of a sharded cluster without any change to that process or downtime. If you haven't done so yet, feel free to have a look at the Sharding Introduction to familiarize yourself with the components of a sharded cluster and at the Sample Configuration Sesssion to get to know the basic commands involved.

### *Adding the `mongod` process to a cluster*

If you haven't changed the `mongod` default port, it would be using port 27017. You care about this now because a mongo shell will always try to connect to it by default. But in a sharded environment, **you want your shell to connect to a `mongos` instead**.

If the port 27017 is taken by a `mongod` process, you'd need to bring up the `mongos` in a different port. Assuming that port is 30000 you can connect your shell to it by issuing:

```
$ mongo <mongos-host-address>:30000/admin
```

We're switching directly to the `admin` database on the `mongos` process. That's where we will be able to issue the following command

```
MongoDB shell version: 1.6.0
connecting to: <mongos-address>:30000/admin
> db.runCommand( { addshard : "192.168.25.203:27017" } )
> { "shardAdded" : "shard0000", "ok" : 1 }
```

The host address and port you see on the command are the original `mongod`'s. All the databases of that process were added to the cluster and are accessible now through `mongos`.

```
> db.runCommand( { listdatabases : 1 } )
{
        "databases" : [
                {
                     "name" : "mydb"
                     ...
                     "shards" : {
                             "shard0000" : <size-in-shard00000>
                     }
                },
                ...
```

Note that that doesn't mean that the database or any of its collections is sharded. They haven't moved (see next). All we did so far is to make them visible within the cluster environment.

You should stop accessing the former stand-alone `mongod` directly and should have all the clients connect to a `mongos` process, just as we've been doing here.

### *Sharding a collection*

All the databases of your `mongod`-process-turned-shard can be chunked and balanced among the cluster's shards. The commands and examples to do so are listed at the
Configuring Sharding page. Note that a chunk size defaults to 64MB, so if you want to change that – for testing purposes, say – you would do so by starting the `mongos` process with the additional --chunkSize parameter.

### *Difference between upgrading and starting anew*

You should pay attention to the host addresses and ports when upgrading.
Again, if you haven't changed the default ports of your `mongod` process, it would be listening on 27017, which is the port that `mongos` would try to bind by default, too.

## Sharding Administration

Here we present a list of useful commands for obtaining information about a sharding cluster.

To set up a sharding cluster, see the docs on sharding configuration.


- Identifying a Shard Cluster
- List Existing Shards
- List Which Databases are Sharded
- View Sharding Details
- Balancing
    - Version 2.2+
        - Tags on the Wrong Shard(s)
- Balancer window
- Chunk Size Considerations


#### Identifying a Shard Cluster

```
// Test if we're speaking to a mongos process or straight to a mongod process.
// If connected to a mongod this will return a "no such cmd" message.
> db.runCommand({ isdbgrid : 1});

// If connected to mongos, this command returns { "ismaster": true,
// "msg": "isdbgrid", "maxBsonObjectSize": XXX, "ok": 1 }
> db.runCommand({ismaster:1});
```

#### List Existing Shards

```
> db.runCommand({ listShards : 1});
{"servers" :
 [{"_id" :  ObjectId( "4a9d40c981ba1487ccfaa634")  ,
   "host" : "localhost:10000"},
  {"_id" :  ObjectId( "4a9d40df81ba1487ccfaa635")  ,
   "host" : "localhost:10001"}
 ],
 "ok" : 1
}
```

#### List Which Databases are Sharded

Here we query the config database, albeit through `mongos`. The `getSisterDB` command is used to return the config database. This will list all databases in the cluster. Databases with `partitioned : true` have sharding enabled.

```
> config = db.getSisterDB("config")
> config.databases.find()
{ "_id" : "admin", "partitioned" : false, "primary" : "config" }
{ "_id" : "MyShardedDatabase", "partitioned" : true, "primary" : "localhost:30001" }
{ "_id" : "MyUnshardedDatabase", "partitioned" : false, "primary" : "localhost:30002" }
```

#### View Sharding Details

```
> use admin
> db.printShardingStatus();

// A very basic sharding configuration on localhost
sharding version: { "_id" : 1, "version" : 2 }
  shards:
      { "_id" : ObjectId("4bd9ae3e0a2e26420e556876"), "host" : "localhost:30001" }
      { "_id" : ObjectId("4bd9ae420a2e26420e556877"), "host" : "localhost:30002" }
      { "_id" : ObjectId("4bd9ae460a2e26420e556878"), "host" : "localhost:30003" }

  databases:
 { "name" : "admin", "partitioned" : false,
          "primary" : "localhost:20001",
          "_id" : ObjectId("4bd9add2c0302e394c6844b6") }
 my chunks

        { "name" : "foo", "partitioned" : true,
          "primary" : "localhost:30002",
          "sharded" : { "foo.foo" : { "key" : { "_id" : 1 }, "unique" : false } },
          "_id" : ObjectId("4bd9ae60c0302e394c6844b7") }
        my chunks
        foo.foo { "_id" : { $minKey : 1 } } -->> { "_id" : { $maxKey : 1 } }
                  on : localhost:30002 { "t" : 1272557259000, "i" : 1 }
```

Notice the output to the `printShardingStatus` command. First, we see the locations of the three shards comprising the cluster. Next, the various databases living on the cluster are displayed.

The first database shown is the admin database, which has not been partitioned. The **primary** field indicates the location of the database, which, in the case of the admin database, is on the config server running on port 20001.

The second database *is* partitioned, and it's easy to see the shard key and the location and ranges of chunks comprising the partition. Since there's no data in the `foo` database, only a single chunk exists. That single chunk includes the entire range of possible shard keys.

**Balancing**

The balancer is a background task that tries to keep the number of chunks even across all servers of the cluster. The activity of balancing is transparent to querying.  Your application doesn't need to know or care that there is any data-moving activity ongoing.

To make that so, the balancer is careful about when and how much data it would transfer. Let's look at how much to transfer first. The unit of transfer is a chunk. With a steady state, the size of chunks should be roughly 64MB of data. This has shown to be the sweet spot of how much data to move at once. More than that, and the migration would take longer and the queries might perceive that in a wider difference in response times. Less than that, and the overhead of moving wouldn't pay off as highly.

Regarding when to transfer load, the balancer waits for a threshold of uneven chunk counts to occur before acting. In the field, having a difference of 8 chunks between the least and most loaded shards showed to be a good heuristic. (This is an arbitrary number, granted.) The concern here is not to incur overhead if -- exagerating to make a point -- there is a difference of one doc between shard A and shard B. It's just inefficient to monitor load differences at that fine of a grain.

Now, once the balancer "kicked in," it will redistribute chunks, one at a time -- in what we call rounds -- until that difference in chunks beween any two shards is down to 2 chunks.

A common source of questions is why a given collection is not being balanced. By far, the most probable cause is: it doesn't need to. If the chunk difference is small enough, redistributing chunks won't matter enough. The implicit assumption here is that you actually have a large enough collection and the overhead of the balancing machinery is little compared to the amount of data your app is handling. If you do the math, you'll find that you might not hit "balancing threshold" if you're doing an experiment on your laptop.

Another possibility is that the balancer is not making progress. The balancing task happens at an arbitrary mongos (query router) in your cluster. Since there can be several query routers, there is a mechanism they all use to decide which mongos will take the responsibility. The mongos acting as balancer takes a "lock" by inserting a document into the 'locks' collection of the config database. When a mongos is running the balancer the 'state' of that lock is 1 (taken).

To check the state of that lock

```
// connect to mongos
> use config
> db.locks.find( { _id : "balancer" } )
```

A typical output for that command would be

```
{ "_id" : "balancer", "process" : "guaruja:1292810611:1804289383", "state" : 1, "ts" : ObjectId(
"4d0f872630c42d1978be8a2e"), "when" : "Mon Dec 20 2010 11:41:10 GMT-0500 (EST)", "who" :
"guaruja:1292810611:1804289383:Balancer:846930886", "why" : "doing balance round" }
```

There are at least three points to note in that output. One, the ***state*** attribute is 1 (2 in v2.0), which means that lock is taken. We can assume the balancer is active. Two, that balancer has been running since Monday, December the 20th. That's what the attribute "when" tells us. And, the third thing, the balancer is running on a machine called "guaruja". The attribute "who" gives that away.

To check what the balancer is actually doing, we'd look at the mongos log on that machine. The balancer outputs rows to the log prefixed by "[Balancer]".

```
Mon Dec 20 11:53:00 [Balancer] chose [shard0001] to [shard0000] { _id: "test.foo-_id_52.0", lastmod:
Timestamp 2000|1, ns: "test.foo", min: { _id: 52.0 }, max: { _id: 105.0 }, shard: "shard0001" }
```

What this entry is saying is that the balancer decided to move the chunk _id:[52..105) from shard0001 to shard0000. Both mongod's log detailed entries of how that migrate is progressing.

In MongoDB versions 1.7 and earlier, the lock will always appear in db.locks.find even if the balancer is deactivated:

```
{ "_id" : "balancer", "process" : "guaruja:1292810611:1804289383", "state" : 1, "ts" :
ObjectId("4d0f872630c42d1978be8a2e"), "when" : "Mon Dec 20 2010 11:41:10 GMT-0500 (EST)"
, "who" : "guaruja:1292810611:1804289383:Balancer:846930886", "why" : "doing balance
round" }
```

To detect if the balancer is doing balancing rounds, you need to look for the Balancer entries in the log files. We will update this in a future release so that you can check if the balancer is active without looking in the logs. see jira 2632.
In newer versions of MongoDB the balancer does not create new lock entries when disabled. However, a pre-existing lock entry will continue to exist with its state set to 0.

If you want to pause the balancer temporarily for maintenance, you can by modifying the settings collection in the config db.

```
// connect to mongos
> use config
> db.settings.update( { _id: "balancer" }, { $set : { stopped: true } } , true );
```

As a result of that command, one should stop seeing "[Balancer]" entries in the mongos that was running the balancer. If, for curiosity, you're running that mongos in a more verbose level, you'd see an entry such as the following.

```
Mon Dec 20 11:57:35 "[Balancer]" skipping balancing round because balancing is disabled
```

You would just set `stopped` to false to turn on again.

For more information on chunk migration and commands, see: Moving Chunks

***Version 2.2+***

Since tags were introduced to the balancing algorithm things have changed a bit. The policy now sets a threshold as follows (per collection):

| Number of chunks | Threshold to Initiate Migrations |
|---|---|
| > 80 | 8 |
| 80 - 21 | 4 |
| < 20 (and previously balanced) | 2 |

Each tags follows the rules above; if no tags exist the policy still applies.

Tags on the Wrong Shard(s)

If chunks are found with a tag which are not appropriate to the tags on that shard they currently reside then they will be moved to an appropriate shards (containing that tag) – this happens independent of the thresholds listed above since it supersedes that algorithm.

**Balancer window**

By default the balancer operates continuously, but it is also possible to set an active "window" of time each day for balancing chunks. This can often be useful when a cluster adds or removes only a few GB of data per day and traffic would be less disrupted if balancing occurred during low-traffic times. This time interval is also specified in the `config.settings` balancer document. For example, to balance chunks only from 9AM to 9PM:

```
// connect to mongos
> use config
> db.settings.update({ _id : "balancer" }, { $set : { activeWindow : { start : "9:00", stop : "21:00"
} } }, true )
```

To specify a time range spanning midnight, just swap the order of the times:

```
// connect to mongos
> use config
> db.settings.update({ _id : "balancer" }, { $set : { activeWindow : { start : "21:00", stop : "9:00"
} } }, true )
```

This enables balancing from 9PM to 9AM. If enabling the active window feature, it is important to check periodically that the amount of data inserted each day is not more than the balancer can handle in the limited window.

Currently only time of day is supported for automatic scheduling.

#### Chunk Size Considerations

mongoDB sharding is based on *range partitioning*. Chunks are split automatically when they reach a certain size threshold. The threshold varies, but the rule of thumb is, expect it to between a half and the maximum chunk size in the steady state. The default maximum chunk size is 64MB (sum of objects in the collection, not counting indices), though in older versions it was 200MB.

Chunk size has been intensely debated -- and much hacked. So let's understand the tradeoffs that that choice of size implies.

When you move data, there's some state resetting in mongos. Queries that used to hit a given shard for a migrated chunk, now need to hit a new shard. This state resetting isn't free, so we want to move chunks infrequently (pressure to move a lot of keys at once). However, the actual moving has a cost that's proportional to the number of keys you're moving (pressure to move few keys).

If you opt to change the default chunk size for a production site, you can do that by changing the value of the chunksize setting on the config database by running

```
> use config
> db.settings.save({_id:"chunksize", value:<new_chunk_size_in_mb>})
```

You will need to restart all mongos instances for them to pick up the change. Note though that for an existing cluster, it may take some time for the collections to split to that size, if smaller than before, and currently autosplitting is only triggered if the collection gets new documents or updates.

For more information on chunk splitting and commands, see: Splitting Shard Chunks

## Backing Up Sharded Cluster


- mongos->mongodump (small clusters only)
- Backing up via shards
  - Snapshotting
  - Large cluster backup (v2.0+)
  - Large cluster backup (v1.8 and earlier)
  - Restoring the entire cluster
  - Restoring a single shard
  - Other Suggestions
  - See Also


See also Backups and Import Export Tools for more information on backups, particularly on the step of backing up each individual server. If you are on EC2 you should look at EC2 Backup & Restore for how to take advantage of EBS snapshots.

#### mongos->mongodump (small clusters only)



You do not need to turn off the balancer when running mongodump against mongos.

If you have a small sharded cluster, you can use mongodump, connected to a `mongos`, to dump the entire cluster's data, or a subset of it.

This is easy, but only works if one machine can dump all the data in a reasonable period of time. The default dump, when you don't specify a database or collection to dump, will contain both the sharding config metadata (the data on the config servers) and the actual database content.

The mongodump `--oplog` cannot be used when dumping from a `mongos`. This option is only available when running directly against a replica member.

### *Backing up via shards*

The balancer **must** be turned off during a backup of the cluster (when done directly from shards)

In MongoDB, documents move from shard to shard as the system continually rebalances the data and load. Thus care is needed to assure getting a good backup of a large cluster. The diagram at the bottom of this page illustrates a bit how data is distributed and some of the nuances of a cluster backup.

#### Snapshotting

The procedures outlined below do not result in a cluster-wide snapshot. Rather, each shard is backed up somewhat independently. Thus new documents written during the backup may or may not be captured in the image (data preceding the backup start time will be present). The unit of isolation (and the rest of the letters in "ACID") in MongoDB is a document, not the entire database. Documents can be large and quite rich, thus for many use cases this is often sufficient.

#### Large cluster backup (v2.0+)

- Turn off the balancer

```
// connect to a mongos (not a config server!)
> use config
> db.settings.update( { _id: "balancer" }, { $set : { stopped: true } } , true );
>
> // wait for any migrations that were in progress to finish
> // "state" field is zero if no migrations in progress
> while( db.locks.findOne({_id: "balancer"}).state ) { print("waiting..."); sleep(1000); }
```

- `mongodump` the config db from one of the config servers to back up the cluster's metadata (either through mongos or by direct connection to the config server). You only need to back up one config server, as they all have replicas of the same information.
- Backup each shard. Use the standard practices for backing up a replica set (e.g. fsync+lock then snapshot, or mongodump). Shards can be backed up one at a time or in parallel.
- Turn the balancer back on

```
>use config
>db.settings.update( { _id: "balancer" }, { $set : { stopped: false } } , true );
```

#### Large cluster backup (v1.8 and earlier)

- Turn off the balancer

```
// connect to mongos (not a config server!)
> use config
> db.settings.update( { _id: "balancer" }, { $set : { stopped: true } } , true );
>
> // wait for any migrations that were in progress to finish
> // "state" field is zero if no migrations in progress
> while( db.locks.findOne({_id: "balancer"}).state ) { print("waiting..."); sleep(1000); }
```

**v1.6**: in this older release you must check the config.changelog collection rather than config.locks to see if migrates are still in-flight.

- stop one (and only one) config server (of your three config servers). This will make the configuration database read only. The db cluster is still fully readable and writable. Do not lock+fsync config servers; that can would block write operations on the cluster.
- Backup datafiles from the the stopped config server.
- Backup each shard. Use the standard practices to backup a replica sets (e.g. fsync+lock then snapshot, or mongodump). Shards can be backed up one at a time or in parallel.
- Restart the config server that was stopped.
- Turn the balancer back on

```
>use config
>db.settings.update( { _id: "balancer" }, { $set : { stopped: false } } , true );
```

**Restoring the entire cluster**

- Stop all processes. No server should be running mongod, mongos, or a config server mongod processes.
- Restore data files for each server in each shard and also for each config server. Normally each shard is comprised of a replica set. You must restore all the members of the replica set, or use the other standard approaches for restoring a replica set from backup.
- If shard IPs/hosts are different, you have to manually update config.shards to use the new servers:
    1. Start up the three config servers
    2. Load/restore the config database to each config server
    3. Start one mongos instance for the rest
    4. Update the config database collection named "shards" to reflect the new shards' ip addresses; the contents of config.shards are a replica set seed list, so use the replica set name style "replName/seedAddress1,..."
- Restart the mongos instances
- Restart the mongod instances (the replica set members)
- Connect to a mongos from the shell. Run "printShardingStatus()" and "show collections" to make sure all shards are correctly seen.

**Restoring a single shard**

Clusters are designed to be restored as a whole. Since the last backup, data (chunks) may have moved from shard to shard, making restoration of a single shard difficult.

That said, we can with sufficient work restore a single shard from backup.

- Restore the shard which was lost
- Chunks that were migrated away from this shard are fine. Those documents do not need to be deleted from this shard because they are automatically filtered out from queries by mongos . (See diagram below.)
- Chunks that were migrated to this shard since the last backup are now empty. Those documents must be recovered manually from the other shard backups. You can see a changelog of chunk migrations in the config.changelog collection.

For a "mature" cluster that has been running for a while, if desired we can mitigate the above scenario by:

- keeping the auto-balancer off for significant time periods. If the shards are well balanced this is not a problem. If you do this, occasionally check the balance between the shards via either MMS or the mongo shell.
- if there has been no migrations since the last backup, we can restore the lost shard in a straightforward fashion
- at set times, turn the balancer on let it run for a time to rebalance the cluster if any rebalancing is needed. afterwards, a new backup would be warranted.

The above mitigation is not necessarily recomended. With the balancer off the cluster could become unbalanced unless we are monitoring it. Keeping full cluster backups and using a good degree of replication (perhaps including slaveDelay replication) is often sufficient.

The following illustration shows a five shard cluster and what might happen on a single shard restoration from a backup.

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| *at time of backup* | s1 | s2 | s3 | s4 | s5 |
| | [a,b) | [e,j) | [c,e) | [j,n) | [p,z) |
| | [b,c) | [n,p) | | | |
| *just before failure* | s1 | s2 | s3 | s4 | s5 |
| | [a,b) | [e,i) | [c,e) | [j,n) | [p,s) |
| | [b,c) | [n,p) | [s,u) | [u,z) | [i,j) |
| *s5 has been lost, and needs restoration from backup. the s5 backup image has the old s5 backup image contains [p,z) data. A full restore would be straightforward; however we decide to restore s5 only as that is faster and allows us to keep data from the other shards which is fresher than the backup.* | s1 | s2 | s3 | s4 | s5 |
| | [a,b) | [e,i) | [c,e) | [j,n) | |
| | [b,c) | [n,p) | [s,u) | [u,z) | |
| *after restorating the s5 backup we have the [p,s) data. the older [s,z) data has also been restored to s5 but will be ignored. [i,j) is missing as it was not in the s5 backup image.* | s1 | s2 | s3 | s4 | s5 |
| | [a,b) | [e,i) | [c,e) | [j,n) | [p,s) |
| | [b,c) | [n,p) | [s,u) | [u,z) | |
| *we manually find and restore the [i,j) data, which in this case was present in the s2 backup.* | s1 | s2 | s3 | s4 | s5 |
| | [a,b) | [e,i) | [c,e) | [j,n) | [p,s) |
| | [b,c) | [n,p) | [s,u) | [u,z) | [i,j) |

**Other Suggestions**

Note that unsharded collections are always on shard a single shard (the first shard, or the one marked as the primary shard in the databases collection in the config db) and do not move. Thus you might want to back up that shard more frequently to have fresher bacukps of those small collections.

**See Also**

- Single server backups documentation

## Sharding and Failover

A properly-configured MongoDB shard cluster will have no single point of failure.

This document describes the various potential failure scenarios of components within a shard cluster, and how failure is handled in each situation.

**1. Failure of a `mongos` routing process.**

One `mongos` routing process will be run on each application server, and that server will communicate to the cluster exclusively through the `mongos` process. `mongos` process aren't persistent; rather, they gather all necessary config data on startup from the config server.

This means that the failure of any one application server will have no effect on the shard cluster as a whole, and all other application servers will continue to function normally. Recovery is simply a matter starting up a new app server and `mongos` process.

**2. Failure of a single `mongod` server within a shard.**

Each shard will consist of a group of *n* servers in a configuration known as a replica set. If any one server in the replica set fails, read and write operations on the shard are still permitted. What's more, no data need be lost on the failure of a server because the replica allows an option on write that forces replication of the write before returning. This is similar to setting *W* to 2 on Amazon's Dynamo.

Replica sets have been available since MongoDB v1.6. Read more about replica set internals.

**3. Failure of all `mongod` servers comprising a shard.**

If all replicas within a shard are down, the data within that shard will be unavailable. However, operations that can be resolved at other shards will continue to work properly. See the documentation on global and targeted operations to see why this is so. One caveat - authentication data is stored on the primary shard, so new authenticated connections to a sharded collection require the primary shard be online.

If the shard is configured as a replica set, with at least one member of the set in another data center, then an outage of an entire shard is extremely unlikely. This will be the recommended configuration for maximum redundancy.

**4. Failure of a config server.**

A production shard cluster will have three config server processes, each existing on a separate machine. Writes to config servers use a two-phase commit to ensure an atomic and replicated transaction of the shard cluster's metadata.

On the failure of any one config server, the system's metadata becomes read-only. The system will continue to function, but chunks will be unable to split within a single shard or migrate across shards. For most use cases, this will present few problems, since changes to the chunk metadata will be infrequent.

That said, it will be important that the down config server be restored in a reasonable time period (say, a day) so that shards do not become unbalanced due to lack of migrates (again, for many production situations, this may not be an urgent matter).

# Sharding Limits


- Security
- Differences from Unsharded Configurations
    - $where
    - db.eval
    - group
    - getPrevError
    - Unique Indexes
- Scale Limits
    - Query speed
    - Sharding an existing collection
- Steps to shard an existing collection


### Security

Authentication mode will be available with sharding as of v2.0. See SERVER-921 for details.

### Differences from Unsharded Configurations

- Prior to v2.0, sharding must be run in trusted security mode, without explicit security.
- Shard keys are immutable in the current version.
- All (non-multi)updates, upserts, and inserts must include the current shard key. This may cause issues for anyone using a mapping library since you don't have full control of updates.

$where

$where works with sharding. However, do not reference the db object from the $where function (one normally does not do this anyway).

db.eval

db.eval() may not be used with sharded collections. However, you may use db.eval() if the evaluation function accesses unsharded collections within your database. Use map/reduce in sharded environments.

group

Currently, one must use MapReduce instead of group() on sharded collections.

getPrevError

getPrevError is unsupported for sharded databases, and may remain so in future releases (TBD). Let us know if this causes a problem for you.

Unique Indexes

For a sharded collection, you may (optionally) specify a unique constraint on the shard key. You also have the option to have other unique indices **if and only if** the shard key is a prefix of their attributes. In other words, MongoDB **does not** enforce uniqueness across shards. You may specify other secondary, non-unuique indexes (via a global operation), again, as long as no unique constraint is specified.

### Scale Limits

Goal is support of systems of up to 1,000 shards. Testing so far has been limited to clusters with a modest number of shards (e.g., 100). More information will be reported here later on any scaling limitations which are encountered.

There is no hard-coded limit to the size of a collection -- but keep in mind the last paragraph. You can create a sharded collection and go about adding data for as long as you add the corresponding number of shards that your workload requires. And, of course, as long as your queries are targeted enough (more about that in a bit).

#### Query speed

Queries involving the shard key should be quite fast and comparable to the behavior of the query in an unsharded environment.

Queries not involving the shard key use a scatter/gather method which sends the query to all shards. This is fairly efficient if one has 10 shards, but would be fairly inefficient on 1000 shards (although still ok for infrequent queries).

#### Sharding an existing collection

It is possible to shard an existing collection, but there are some limitations. Put differently, if you have an existing single node (or single replica set) and you want to upgrade that data to a sharded configuration, this is possible.

The current limitations are **size** and **time**.

1. **Size**: In v1.6 we put a cap on the maximum size of the original collection of 25GB (increased to 256GB in v1.8). This limit is going to be pushed up and may eventually disappear. If you are above that limit and you shard an existing collection it will work, but all of your data will start out in one chunk, making initial distribution slower. In practice, if your collection contains many large documents, this limit may be slightly higher (due to the statistical way in which split points are calculated). One workaround is to increase the default chunk size in db.config.settings to a higher value (say 512MB or 1GB), which will enable the initial split and some migration. Then the large chunks will be naturally split over time as data is inserted.

1. **Time**: When sharding an existing collection, please be aware that this process will take some time. This will happen in the background, so operations are not significantly impacted typically. However, it will take quite a while for the data to migrate/balance on a large collection. For example, on a system with ten shards, 90% of the data for the collection will need to transfer to elsewhere to attain balance. Note that only large collections rebalance. If the collection is small (less than say, 400MB) we recommend not bothering to shard it.

### Steps to shard an existing collection

1. Start your 3 config servers required for a sharded cluster - if your cluster will have large numbers of mongoses or shards (more than 10 of either, for example) moderately powerful machines will be needed for the config servers.

2. Start a mongos process pointing at these config servers to perform cluster administration.

3. Using this mongos process, add the existing database server or replica set as a shard to the cluster, as well as any empty servers or shards you would like to add to the cluster (more info here).

> ⚠ Once the shards have been added, any application mongoses can be started and the cluster can start handling application reads and writes.

4. Choose a shard key for all existing collections you would like to shard, and create an index in the background over the shard key fields (more info here). Depending on the size of the collection and the index, this can take a long time. Note that background index creation becomes foreground index creation on secondaries, which will block other operations.

> ⚠ Choosing a shard key index is a complex topic, and is covered here

5. Using the administrative mongos, run the `enableSharding` and `shardCollection` commands on any existing collections you want distributed across the cluster (see link) with the shard key chosen above. At this point the collections are considered "sharded," but enabling sharding is just a metadata operation and no data has been touched. However, once chosen, your shard key cannot be changed without significant manual intervention.

> ⚠ All mongoses should be restarted at this stage for mongos versions < 2.1

6. If any of the existing collections to be sharded were greater than 256GB in size, you will need to manually generate split points for these collections. The procedure for doing so will vary depending on your data and shard key, but is documented here It is not necessary to do the splits in this case before the data is inserted because the data is already present.

7. Wait for the balancer operations from mongos to migrate excess data from the full shard to the empty shards. This can take significant time, longer if competing for resources with current traffic. Estimating the time migrations will take is difficult, as there are a number of factors which affect the speed:

- the relationship between shard key and organization on disk (disk seeks)

- the current requests to the chunks being moved
- the in-memory state of the documents in the chunks being moved (page faults)

8. Once most of the data is balanced, the cluster will be in steady state, and as more data is inserted chunks will be split and moved automatically. If the shard key was chosen appropriately, traffic should be balanced across all servers for the existing collection.

# Sharding Internals

This section includes internal implementation details for MongoDB auto sharding. See also the main sharding documentation.

Note: some internals docs could be out of date -- if you see that let us know so we can fix.

### *Internals*

- Moving Chunks
- Sharding Config Schema
- Sharding Design
- Sharding Use Cases
- Shard Ownership
- Splitting Shard Chunks

### *Unit Tests*

```
./mongo --nodb jstests/sharding/*js
```

## Moving Chunks

At any given time, a chunk is hosted at one **mongod** server. The sharding machinery routes all the requests to that server automatically, without the application needing to know which server that is. From time to time, the balancer may decide to move chunks around.

It is possible to issue a manual command to move a chunk, using the following command:

```
db.runCommand( { moveChunk : "test.blog.posts" ,
                 find : { author : "eliot" } ,
                 to : "shard1" } )
```

Parameters:

- `moveChunk`: a full collection namespace, including the database name
- `find`: a query expression that falls within the chunk to be moved; the command will find the FROM (donor) shard automatically
- `to`: shard id where the chunk will be moved

The command will return as soon as the TO and FROM shards agreed that it is now the TO's responsibility to handle the chunk.

Moving a chunk is a complex but under-the-covers operation. It involves two interconnected protocols. One, to clone the data of the actual chunk, including any changes made during the cloning process itself. The second protocol is a commit protocol that makes sure that all the migration participants – the TO-shard, the FROM-shard, and the config servers – agree that the migration has completed.

#### Example

Suppose we are sharding the *test.foo* collection using the *x* field as the shard key. Suppose that we want to move a chunk that looks like:

```
> db.chunks.find({ns : "test.foo", min : {x : 4}})
{ "_id" : "test.foo-x_17", "lastmod" : { "t" : 43000, "i" : 0 }, "ns" : "test.foo", "min" : { "x" : 4
}, "max" : { "x" : 9 }, "shard" : "bar" }
```

This chunk is currently on the shard called "bar" and we want to move it to the shard called "baz". We can do this by choosing some value *v* in the range `4 <= v < 9`, so we'll choose 5:

```
> db.adminCommand({moveChunk : "test.foo", find : {x : 5}, to : "baz"})
{ "millis" : 146880, "ok" : 1 }
```

MongoDB will find the chunk with `{x:5}` in its range and move it to shard baz. The command will return when the move is complete.

If someone is already doing something to that particular chunk, it will be locked and you will not be able to migrate it until the other operation is complete.

```
> db.adminCommand({moveChunk : "test.foo", find : {x : 5}, to : "baz"})
{
        "cause" : {
                "who" : {
                        "_id" : "test.foo",
                        "process" : "ip-10-114-74-220:1299610147:182607800",
                        "state" : 1,
                        "ts" : ObjectId("4d768c5d6bf858cd08a80ac8"),
                        "when" : ISODate("2011-03-08T20:06:53.687Z"),
                        "who" : "ip-10-114-74-220:1299610147:182607800:conn22:510531961",
                        "why" : "migrate-{ x: 5 }"
                },
                "errmsg" : "The collection's metadata lock is already taken.",
                "ok" : 0
        },
        "ok" : 0,
        "errmsg" : "move failed"
}
```

#### Troubleshooting

Under certain circumstances, a migrate can fail in a way where the shard cannot figure out what to do next. If this occurs, the shard will terminate (instead of serving possible inconsistent data) with a message such as:

```
Tue Dec 10 16:15:49 [conn123] ERROR: moveChunk commit failed: version is at 124|1 instead of 125|1
Tue Dec 10 16:15:49 [conn123] ERROR: TERMINATING
```

If this occurs, make sure:

- All of your config servers are reachable by the shards and mongos processes.
- All of the config servers have the same chunk information for that chunk that failed the migrate.

If the chunk is different, you can restart your mongos servers to reconcile the differences, then restart your shard.

## Sharding Config Schema

Sharding configuration schema. This lives in the config servers.



The config server data is the most important data in your entire cluster. Back it up before doing config server maintenance.

#### Collections

version

This is a singleton that contains the current meta-data version number.

```
> db.getCollection("version").findOne()
{ "_id" : 1, "version" : 3 }
```

settings

Key/Value table for configurable options (chunkSize/balancer)

```
> db.settings.find()
{ "_id" : "chunksize", "value" : 64 }
{ "_id" : "balancer", "stopped" : false } //you can stop the balancer
```

shards

Stores information about the shards (possibly replicasets in rsname/list-of-host:port,... ). The addshard command creates these documents, and mongos processes periodically update the seed lists as the replica sets evolve over time.

```
> db.shards.findOne()
{ "_id" : "shard0", "host" : "localhost:30001" }
{ "_id" : "shard1", "host" : "shard1/localhost:30002" } //shard1 is a replicaset (think of this as a
seed list)
```

databases

```
{
  "_id" : "admin",
  "partitioned" : false,
  "primary" : "shard0"
}
```

collections

Stores meta information about each sharded collection. One entry per sharded collection.

```
mongos> db.collections.find()
{
  "_id" : "test.foo",
  "lastmod" : ISODate("1970-01-16T04:42:21.124Z"),
  "dropped" : false,
  "key" : { "_id" : 1 },
  "unique" : false
}
```

chunks

```
{
 "_id" : "test.foo-x_MinKey",
 "lastmod" : {
  "t" : 1271946858000,
  "i" : 1
 },
 "ns" : "test.foo",
 "min" : {
  "x" : { $minKey : 1 }
 },
 "max" : {
  "x" : { $maxKey : 1 }
 },
 "shard" : "shard0"
}
```

mongos

Record of all mongos affiliated with this cluster. mongos will ping every 30 seconds so we know who is alive. This is not used by the system for anything other than reporting.

```
> db.mongos.findOne()
{
 "_id" : "erh-wd1:27017",
 "ping" : "Fri Apr 23 2010 11:08:39 GMT-0400 (EST)",
 "up" : 30
}
```

changelog

Human readable log of all meta-data changes. Capped collection that defaults to 10mb.

```
> db.changelog.findOne()
{
 "_id" : "erh-wd1-2010-3-21-17-24-0",
 "server" : "erh-wd1",
 "time" : "Wed Apr 21 2010 13:24:24 GMT-0400 (EST)",
 "what" : "split",
 "ns" : "test.foo",
 "details" : {
  "before" : {
   "min" : {
    "x" : { $minKey : 1 }
   },
   "max" : {
    "x" : { $maxKey : 1 }
   }
  },
  "left" : {
   "min" : {
    "x" : { $minKey : 1 }
   },
   "max" : {
    "x" : 5
   }
  },
  "right" : {
   "min" : {
    "x" : 5
   },
   "max" : {
    "x" : { $maxKey : 1 }
   }
  }
 }
}
```

#### Changes

##### *2 (<= 1.5.0) -> 3 (1.5.1)*

- shards : _id is now the name
- databases : _id is now the db name
- general : all references to a shard can be via name or host

## Sharding Design

#### concepts

- *config database* - the top level database that stores information about servers and where things live.
- *shard*. this can be either a single server or a replica pair.
- *database* - one top level namespace. a database can be partitioned or not

- *chunk* - a region of data from a particular collection. A chunk can be though of as (*collectionname,fieldname,lowvalue,highvalue*). The range is inclusive on the low end and exclusive on the high end, *i.e.*, [lowvalue,highvalue).

#### components and database collections

- config database
- config.servers - this contains all of the servers that the system has. These are logical servers. So for a replica pair, the entry would be *192.168.0.10,192.168.0.11*
- config.databases - all of the databases known to the system. This contains the *primary* server for a database, and information about whether its partitioned or not.
    - config.shards - a list of all database *shards*. Each shard is a db pair, each of which runs a db process.
    - config.homes - specifies which shard is *home* for a given client db.
- shard databases
    - *client*.system.chunklocations - the home shard for a given client db contains a *client*.system.chunklocations collection. this collection lists where to find particular chunks; that is, it maps chunk->shard.
- mongos process
    - "routes" request to proper db's, and performs merges. can have a couple per system, or can have 1 per client server.
    - gets chunk locations from the client db's home shard. load lazily to avoid using too much mem.
        - chunk information is cached by mongos. This information can be stale at a mongos (it is always up to date at the owning shard; you cannot migrate an item if the owning shard is down). If so, the shard contacted will tell us so and we can then retry to the proper location.

#### db operations

- moveprimary - move a database's primary server
- migrate - migrate a chunk from one machine to another.
    - lock and migrate
    - shard db's coordinate with home shard to atomically pass over ownership of the chunk (two phase commit)
- split - split a chunk that is growing too large into pieces.  as the two new chunks are on the same machine after the split, this is really just a metadata update and very fast.
- reconfiguration operations
    - add shard - dbgrid processes should lazy load information on a new (unknown) shard when encountered.
    - retire shard - in background gradually migrate all chunks off

#### minimizing lock time

If a chunk is migrating and is 50MB, that might take 5-10 seconds which is too long for the chunk to be locked.

We could perform the migrate much like Cloner works,where we copy the objects and then apply all operations that happened during copying. This way lock time is minimal.

## Sharding Use Cases

What specific use cases do we want to address with db partioning (and other techniques) that are challenging to scale? List here for discussion.

- video site (e.g., youtube) (also, GridFS scale-up)
    - seems straightforward: partition by video
    - for related videos feature, see search below
- social networking (e.g., facebook)
    - this can be quite hard to partition, because it is difficult to cluster people.
- very high RPS sites with small datasets
    - N replicas, instead of partioning, might help here
        - replicas only work if the dataset is really small as we are using/wasting the same RAM on each replica. thus, partioning might help us with ram cache efficiency even if entire data set fits on one or two drives.
- twitter
- search & tagging

### *Log Processing*

Use cases related to map-reduce like things.

- massive sort
- top N queries per day
- compare data from two nonadjacent time periods

## Shard Ownership

By shard ownership we mean which server owns a particular key range.

Early draft/thoughts will change:

#### Contract

- the master copy of the ownership information is in the config database
- mongos instances have cached info on which server owns a shard. this information may be stale.
- mongod instances have definitive information on who owns a shard (atomic with the config db) when they know about a shards ownership

#### mongod

The mongod processes maintain a cache of shards the mongod instance owns:

```
map<ShardKey,state> ownership
```

State values are as follows:

- missing - no element in the map means no information available. In such a situation we should query the config database to get the state.
- 1 - this instance owns the shard
- 0 - this instance does not own the shard (indicates we queried the config database and found another owner, and remembered that fact)

#### Initial Assignment of a region to a node.

This is trivial: add the configuration to the config db. As the ShardKey is new, no nodes have any cached information.

#### Splitting a Key Range

The mongod instance A which owns the range R breaks it into R1,R2 which are still owned by it. It updates the config db. We take care to handle the config db crashing or being unreachable on the split:

```
lock(R) on A
update the config db -- ideally atomically perhaps with eval().  await return code.
ownership[R].erase
unlock(R) on A
```

After the above the cache has no information on the R,R1,R2 ownerships, and will requery configdb on the next request. If the config db crashed and failed to apply the operation, we are still consistent.

#### Migrate ownership of keyrange R from server A->B. We assume here that B is the coordinator of the job:

```
B copies range from A
lock(R) on A and B
  B copies any additional operations from A (fast)
  clear ownership maps for R on A and B.  B waits for a response from A on this operation.
  B then updates the ownership data in the config db. (Perhaps even fsyncing.) await return code.
  unlock(R) on B
  delete R on A (cleanup)
unlock (R) on A
```

We clear the ownership maps first. That way, if the config db update fails, nothing bad happens, IF mongos filters data upon receipt for being in the correct ranges (or in its query parameters).

R stays locked on A for the cleanup work, but as that shard no longer owns the range, this is not an issue even if slow. It stays locked for that operation in case the shard were to quickly migrate back.

#### Migrating Empty Shards

Typically we migrate a shard after a split. After certain split scenarios, a shard may be empty but we want to migrate it.

## Splitting Shard Chunks


- Pre-splitting
- Pre-Splitting Example #1
- Pre-Splitting Example #2
- Pre-Splitting Example #3 - UUID's
- Manually Splitting a Chunk

MongoDB uses two key operations to facilitate sharding - *split* and *migrate*. Migrate moves a *chunk* (the data associated with a key range) to another shard. This is done as needed to rebalance. Split splits a chunk into two ranges; this is done to assure no one chunk is unusually large. Split is an inexpensive metadata operation, while migrate is expensive as large amounts of data may be moving server to server.

Both splits and migrates are performed automatically. MongoDB has a sub-system called Balancer, which monitors shards loads and moves chunks around if it finds an imbalance. If you add a new shard to the system, some chunks will eventually be moved to that shard to spread out the load.

A recently split chunk may be moved immediately to a new shard if the system predicts that future insertions will benefit from that move.

#### *Pre-splitting*

There is a second version of the split command that takes the exact key you'd like to split on. Often this is most useful when you do not initially have data in a collection, but want to ensure that data is loaded in a distributed way to multiple shards.

In the example below the command splits the chunk where the _id 99 would reside using that key as the split point. Again note that a **key need not exist** for a chunk to use it in its range. The chunk may even be empty.

```
> use admin
switched to db admin
> db.runCommand( { split : "test.foo" , middle : { _id : 99 } } )
...
```

This version of the command allows one to do a **data presplitting** that is especially useful in a load. If the range and distribution of keys to be inserted are known in advance, the collection can be split proportionately to the number of servers using the command above, and the (empty) chunks could be migrated upfront using the moveChunk command.

#### *Pre-Splitting Example #1*

Lets say you have 5 shards, and want to insert 100M user profiles sharded by email address. What you should do before inserting is

```
for ( var x=97; x<97+26; x++ ){
  for( var y=97; y<97+26; y+=6 ) {
    var prefix = String.fromCharCode(x) + String.fromCharCode(y);
    db.runCommand( { split : <collection> , middle : { email : prefix } } );
  }
}
```

Then wait for the system to balance (should take about 5 minutes). Note the balancer must be enabled (which it is by default).

#### *Pre-Splitting Example #2*

Lets assume you have a sharded database setup that looks like this:

```
> db.printShardingStatus()
--- Sharding Status ---
  sharding version: { "_id" : 1, "version" : 3 }
  shards:
      { "_id" : "shard0000", "host" : "localhost:30000" }
      { "_id" : "shard0001", "host" : "localhost:30001" }
  databases:
 { "_id" : "admin", "partitioned" : false, "primary" : "config" }
```

and you would like to bulk insert 100M documents into a new sharded collection. Each document has a "hash" field which contains a (unrealistically small) 4-byte hexadecimal string hash value like "00aa". Ideally half the inserts will go to each shard, since there are two shards, and since the **range of the hash value is limited**, we are sure that all documents will fall between "0000" and "ffff". Using the hash value as a shard key will ensure our writes are distributed evenly between the shards, assuming chunks are also distributed evenly between shards.

The first step is to create a sharded collection to contain the data, which can be done in three steps:

```
> use admin
> db.runCommand({ enableSharding : "foo" })
```

Next, we add a unique index to the collection "foo.bar" which is required for the shard key.

```
> use foo
> db.bar.ensureIndex({ hash : 1 }, { unique : true })
```

Finally we shard the collection (which contains no data) using the hash value.

```
> use admin
> db.runCommand({ shardCollection : "foo.bar", key : { hash : 1 } })
> db.printShardingStatus()
--- Sharding Status ---
  sharding version: { "_id" : 1, "version" : 3 }
  shards:
      { "_id" : "shard0000", "host" : "localhost:30000" }
      { "_id" : "shard0001", "host" : "localhost:30001" }
  databases:
 { "_id" : "admin", "partitioned" : false, "primary" : "config" }
 { "_id" : "test", "partitioned" : false, "primary" : "shard0001" }
 { "_id" : "foo", "partitioned" : true, "primary" : "shard0001" }
  foo.bar chunks:
    shard0001 1
   { "hash" : { "$MinKey" : true } } -->> { "hash" : { "$MaxKey" : true } } on : shard0001 { "t" :
1000, "i" : 0 }
```

Note that one chunk exists on `shard0001`, and contains all values from `$MinKey` to `$MaxKey`. All inserts will initially go to this chunk, which is only on a single shard. To pre-split this chunk such that inserts go to two separate shards, we just need to choose a midpoint and move one of the chunks.

```
> use admin
> db.runCommand({ split : "foo.bar", middle : { hash : "8000" } })
> db.runCommand({ moveChunk : "foo.bar", find : { hash : "8000" }, to : "shard0000" })
> db.printShardingStatus()
--- Sharding Status ---
  sharding version: { "_id" : 1, "version" : 3 }
  shards:
      { "_id" : "shard0000", "host" : "localhost:30000" }
      { "_id" : "shard0001", "host" : "localhost:30001" }
  databases:
 { "_id" : "admin", "partitioned" : false, "primary" : "config" }
 { "_id" : "test", "partitioned" : false, "primary" : "shard0001" }
 { "_id" : "foo", "partitioned" : true, "primary" : "shard0001" }
  foo.bar chunks:
    shard0001 1
    shard0000 1
   { "hash" : { "$MinKey" : true } } -->> { "hash" : "8000" } on : shard0001 { "t" : 2000, "i" : 1 }
   { "hash" : "8000" } -->> { "hash" : { "$MaxKey" : true } } on : shard0000 { "t" : 2000, "i" : 0 }
```

Inserts will now go to both shards equally.

Chunks will not split until the data reaches a certain minimum amount in size (hundreds of megabytes). Until this occurs balancing and migration will not take place. When the data volume is this small, distributing data between multiple servers is not required anyway. When pre-splitting manually, many chunks can exist even if very little data is present for each chunk initially.

***Pre-Splitting Example #3 – UUID's***

Suppose our shard key has UUID's for values. To presplit to 100 chunks we could predefine the following ranges:

["00", "01")
["01", "02")
...
["98","99")
["99",":")

The above example shows UUIDs as strings. Storing them as BinData is more efficient. For example, to generate the value corresponding to "98" above one can invoke:

```
> b = UUID("98000000000000000000000000000000")
> b.hex()
98000000000000000000000000000000
```

***Manually Splitting a Chunk***

Typically there is no need to manually split a chunk.

The following command splits the chunk where the { _id : 99 }} resides (or would reside if present) in two. The key used as the split point is computed internally and is approximately the key which would divide the chunk in two equally sized new chunks.

```
> use admin
switched to db admin
> db.runCommand( { split : "test.foo" , find : { _id : 99 } } )
...
```

The Balancer treats all chunks the same way, regardless if they were generated by a manual or an automatic split.

## Sharding FAQ

**Redirection Notice**
This page should redirect to http://docs.mongodb.org/manual/faq/sharding/.

# Hosting Center

### Database-as-a-Service

- MongoOd.com
- MongoHQ
- MongoLab
- HostedMongo.com
- MongoGrid

### Infrastructure-as-a-Service

- Amazon EC2
- Joyent
- Rackspace Cloud
- Windows Azure VM

### Platform-as-a-Service

- alwaysdata
- cloudControl offers a fully managed platform-as-a-service solution with MongoDB as one of their powerful add-ons. Read the blog post MongoDB Setup at cloudControl for more information.
- dotCloud
- Heroku has add-on connectors to allow you to use from MongoDB from Heroku applications
- NodeGrid
- RedHat OpenShift supports MongoDB
- VMware CloudFoundry supports MongoDB
- Windows Azure - see the MongoDB on Azure page

### Dedicated Servers

MongoDB runs well on both virtualized and non-virtualized servers.

- ServerBeach offers preconfigured, dedicated MongoDB servers. Blog

### VPS

- (mt) Media Temple's (ve) server platform is an excellent choice for easy MongoDB deployment.
- A2 Hosting has a quick installer to add MongoDB to your VPS hosting account. Instructions for running the installer are on A2's wiki
- Dreamhost offers instant configuration and deployment of MongoDB
- LOCUM Hosting House is a project-oriented shared hosting and VDS. MongoDB is available for all customers as a part of their subscription plan.

### More

- Linode
- Webfaction
- Presentations

## Amazon EC2


- Getting Started on EC2
- Backup, Restore, Verify
- Deployment Notes
  - MongoDB via AWS Marketplace
  - Automating Deployment with CloudFormation
  - Instance Types
    - Installing MongoDB
    - Operating System
  - Networking
    - Port Management
    - Keepalive
  - Storage Configuration
    - EBS Snapshots
  - Securing instances
  - Communication across regions
- Presentations


MongoDB runs well on Amazon EC2. This page includes some notes in this regard.

### *Getting Started on EC2*

This guide is intended to provide instructions on using the MongoDB AMI to set up production instances of MongoDB across Amazon's Web Services (AWS) EC2 infrastructure.

First, we'll step through deployment planning (instance specifications, deployment size, etc.) and then we'll set up a single production node. We'll use those setup steps to deploy a three node MongoDB replica set for production use. Finally, we'll briefly cover some advanced topics such as multi-region availability and data backups.

See the Amazon EC2 Quickstart guide for more information.

### *Backup, Restore, Verify*

Depending upon the configuration of your EC2 instances, there are a number of ways to conduct regular backups of your data. For specific instructions on backing up, restoring and verifying refer to EC2 Backup & Restore.

### *Deployment Notes*

#### MongoDB via AWS Marketplace

If you installed MongoDB via the AWS Marketplace refer to the MongoDB via AWS Marketplace guide to get a development instance up and running. If you are interested in creating a production deployment, refer to the Amazon EC2 Quickstart. Start with the section on Configuring Storage to set up a place for your data to be stored. After that refer to the Starting MongoDB section to get your MongoDB instance running. If you're interested in scaling your deployment, check out the sections on Replica Sets and Sharding.

### Automating Deployment with CloudFormation

CloudFormation from Amazon Web Services provides an easy mechanism to create and manage a collection of AWS resources. To use CloudFormation you create and deploy a template which describes the resources in your stack via the AWS Management Console. We have created a series of reference templates that you can use as a starting point to build your own MongoDB deployments using CloudFormation. Check out Automating Deployment with CloudFormation for a walkthrough and the template files.

### Instance Types

MongoDB works on most EC2 types including Linux and Windows. We recommend you use a 64 bit instance as this is required for all MongoDB databases of significant size. Additionally, we find that the larger instances tend to be on the freshest ec2 hardware.

#### *Installing MongoDB*

One can download a binary or build from source. Generally it is easier to download a binary. We can download and run the binary without being root. For example on 64 bit Linux:

```
[~]$ curl -O http://downloads.mongodb.org/linux/mongodb-linux-x86_64-1.0.1.tgz
[~]$ tar -xzf mongodb-linux-x86_64-1.0.1.tgz
[~]$ cd mongodb-linux-x86_64-1.0.1/bin
[bin]$ ./mongod --version
```

Before running the database one should decide where to put datafiles. Run df -h to see volumes. On some images /mnt will be the many locally attached storage volume. Alternatively you may want to use Elastic Block Store which will have a different mount point.

If you mount the file-system, ensure that you mount with the noatime and nodiratime atributes, for example

```
/dev/mapper/my_vol /var/lib/mongodb xfs noatime,noexec,nodiratime 0 0
```

Create the mongodb datafile directory in the desired location and then run the database:

```
mkdir /mnt/db
./mongod --fork --logpath ~/mongod.log --dbpath /mnt/db/
```

#### *Operating System*

Occasionally, due to the shared and virtualized nature of EC2, an instance can experience intermittent I/O problems and low responsiveness compared to other similar instances. Terminating the instance and bringing up a new one can in some cases result in better performance.

Some people have reported problems with ubuntu 10.04 on ec2.
Please read https://bugs.launchpad.net/ubuntu/+source/linux-ec2/+bug/614853 and https://bugzilla.kernel.org/show_bug.cgi?id=16991

### Networking

#### *Port Management*

By default the database will now be listening on port 27017. The web administrative UI will be on port 28017.

#### *Keepalive*

Change the default TCP keepalive time to 300 seconds. See our troubleshooting page for details.

### Storage Configuration

For production use, we recommend raid 10 across 4-8 ebs drives for best performance. Local ec2 drives may be faster but are generally not suitable as they are ephemeral. Multiple ebs drives increase the potential number of random IO's per second (iops), but not necessarily sequential read/write throughput much. In most database applications random iops are important.

For more information, refer to EBS info at Amazon Web Services.

#### *EBS Snapshots*

If your datafiles are on a single EBS volume, you can snapshot them for backups.

If you are using journaling, simply take a snapshot (including the journal/ directory).

If not using journaling, you need to use the lock+fsync command (v1.3.1+).
Use this command to lock the database to prevent writes. Then, snapshot the volume. Then use the unlock command to allow writes to the database again. See the full EC2 Backup, Verify & Recovery guide for more information. This method may also be used with slaves / secondaries.

#### Securing instances

Secure your instances from direct external access by the use of Security Groups. A common approach is to create a MongoDB security group that contains the nodes of your cluster (replica set members or sharded cluster members). Then create a separate group for your app servers or clients.
Create a Rule in your MongoDB security group with the Source field set to the Security Group name containing your app servers and the port set to 27017 (or whatever port you use for your MongoDB). This will ensure that only your app servers have permission to connect to your MongoDB instances.

#### Communication across regions

Every EC2 instance will have a private IP address that can be used to communicate within the EC2 network. It is also possible to assign a public "elastic" IP to communicate with the servers from another network. If using different EC2 regions, servers can only communicate via public IPs.

To set up a cluster of servers that spans multiple regions, it is recommended to cname the server hostname to the "public dns name" provided by EC2. This will ensure that servers from a different network use the public IP, while the local servers use the private IP, thereby saving costs. This is required since EC2 security groups are local to a region.

For example one solution is following, on each server:

- set the hostname of the server

```
sudo hostname server1
```

- install "bind", it will serve as local resolver
- add a zone for your domain, say "myorg.com", and add the CNAMEs for all your servers

```
...
server1          IN     CNAME   ec2-50-19-237-42.compute-1.amazonaws.com.
server2          IN     CNAME   ec2-50-18-157-87.us-west-1.compute.amazonaws.com.
```

- restart bind and modify /etc/resolv.conf to use the local bind

```
search myorg.conf
nameserver 127.0.0.1
```

Then:

- verify that you can properly resolve server1, server2, ... using a tool like dig.
- when running mongod, db.serverStatus() should show the correct hostname, e.g. "server1:27017".
- you can then set up replica sets or shards using the simple hostname. For example connect to server1 and run "rs.initiate()", then "rs.add('server2:27017')".

### *Presentations*

MongoDB & AWS - Free Webinar on January 20, 2012

Presentation from MongoSV (December 2011)

#### More Presentations

- Running MongoDB in the Cloud - MongoSF (May 2011)
- MongoDB on Amazon EC2 - Webinar (March 2011)

## AWS Marketplace

- Starting MongoDB
- Security Setup

- Instance Configurations
  - MongoDB AMI
  - MongoDB with EBS RAID AMI
- More Information


If you installed MongoDB via the AWS Marketplace, refer to the instructions below for Starting MongoDB. For information on how the MongoDB with instance-storage AMI was configured, see MongoDB AMI. For information on how the MongoDB with EBS RAID storage was configured, see MongoDB with EBS RAID AMI. The Security Setup section contains information about the security group settings for these AMIs.

### *Starting MongoDB*

The instance has been mostly configured, the only steps left are to set MongoDB to start at system boot and then start `mongod` up:

```
$ sudo chkconfig mongod on
$ sudo /etc/init.d/mongod start
Starting mongod:                                           [  OK  ]
forked process: 1234
all output going to: /log/mongod.log
```

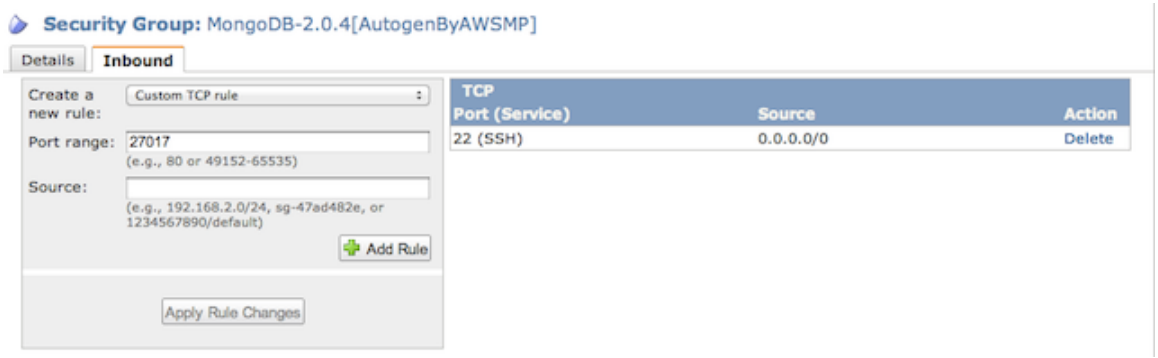
In a few moments MongoDB will finish starting up and then you can connect to MongoDB using the `mongo` client:

```
$ mongo
MongoDB shell version: 2.0.4
connecting to: test
>
```

If you have trouble connecting to the MongoDB daemon, check the log file (either `/var/log/mongo/mongod.log` or `/log/mongod.log`) for `mongod` console output.

### *Security Setup*

By default, the instance starts up with a newly created security group and that group specifies that only access via port 22 (SSH) is allowed. In order to make MongoDB accessible to other instances, you'll need to add an additional rule to your security group specifying access to port 27017 along with a source (this can be a specific IP address, instances from within another security group or from an IP). Start by logging in to the AWS EC2 Management Console and navigate to the Security Groups section. Next, find the group that was created when you created your instance and add an Inbound Rule:




After the rule is applied, you'll be able to access MongoDB running in your instance from the source you specified. Consult the AWS EC2 Security Groups documentation for more information about configuring access to your instance with security groups.

### *Instance Configurations*

#### MongoDB AMI

MongoDB was installed onto Amazon Linux using a subset of steps found in the Install MongoDB section of the EC2 Quickstart guide. Specifically, the 10gen repository was created and MongoDB (along with sysstat tools) were then installed via yum. This AMI uses a single EBS-backed volume as storage and does not employ RAID10 or LVM. The data directory was set to `/data` in the MongoDB configuration file `/etc/mongodb.conf`.

#### MongoDB with EBS RAID AMI

Using the Amazon EC2 Quickstart guide as a base, the EBS RAID AMI was configured using a subset of the steps found in the Deploying a Single Node section. This AMI was configured with block device mapping and uses 4 EBS volumes, each with 100GiB of storage. The volumes were then setup as a single RAID10 device using `mdadm` and 3 logical volumes (data, log, journal) were created using LVM. With RAID10 the total available storage is 200GiB and within that 180GiB is for `/data`, 10GiB for `/log` and 10GiB for `/journal`. The MongoDB configuration file `/etc/mongod.conf` reflects the updated locations for these elements. For more information on the specific steps, refer to the Amazon EC2 Quickstart guide.

### *More Information*

For more information on deploying MongoDB on AWS (including advanced storage setups, backups, etc.), refer to the Amazon EC2 page or the Amazon EC2 Quickstart guide.

## Automating Deployment with CloudFormation


- Template Walkthrough
  - Security
  - Storage Configuration
  - Instance Configuration
- Replica Set Stack
- Customizing Templates
  - Operating System
  - Storage
  - Instances
- Sample Template Usage


CloudFormation from Amazon Web Services provides an easy mechanism to create and manage a collection of AWS resources. To use CloudFormation you create and deploy a template which describes the resources in your stack via the AWS Management Console. CloudFormation templates are simple JSON formatted text files that can be placed under your normal source control mechanisms, stored in private or public locations such as Amazon S3.

We have created a series of reference templates (see attachments below) that you can use as a starting point to build your own MongoDB deployments using CloudFormation. The sample templates show how to build a single node MongoDB deployment and a MongoDB replica set deployment. Refer to the following sections for information on how these sample templates were developed and instructions on how to customize them for your own deployment onto AWS. The documentation provided below focuses on the sections specific to deploying MongoDB on AWS, for background on standard template sections (e.g. input parameters) refer to the AWS CloudFormation User Guide.

The sample templates we created are as follows (click to download):

- MongoDB_SingleNode.template is an example single-node MongoDB deployment with 4 EBS volumes
- MongoDB_ReplicaSetStack.template sets up a single node and references the...
- MongoDB_ReplicaSetMember.template twice to create the additional nodes (each node has 4 EBS volumes)

### *Template Walkthrough*

#### Security

EC2 instances in AWS must have security groups designated during creation that specify firewall rules for each instance. In our templates, we create a simple security group `MongoSecurityGroup` that opens up port 22 (SSH) to the outside world and a separate rule ( `AWS::EC2::SecurityGroupIngress`) that's used to open up the standard `mongod` port (27017) to other instances within that group:

```
"MongoSecurityGroup" : {
    "Type" : "AWS::EC2::SecurityGroup",
    "Properties" : {
        "GroupDescription" : "MongoDB security group",
        "SecurityGroupIngress" : [
            {
                "IpProtocol" : "tcp",
                "FromPort" : "22",
                "ToPort" : "22",
                "CidrIp" : "0.0.0.0/0"
            }
        ]
    }
},
"MongoSecurityGroupIngress" : {
    "Type" : "AWS::EC2::SecurityGroupIngress",
    "Properties" : {
        "GroupName" : { "Ref" : "MongoSecurityGroup" },
        "IpProtocol" : "tcp",
        "FromPort" : "27017",
        "ToPort" : "27017",
        "SourceSecurityGroupName" : { "Ref" : "MongoSecurityGroup" }
    }
},
```

Depending on the type of deployment you are creating, you may need to add additional security group ingress rules to open up additional ports, available to your instances or to the outside world (e.g. port 27018 for sharding).

#### Storage Configuration

When using MongoDB on AWS, we recommend using multiple EBS volumes configured as a single RAID10 storage device for your data. Configuring storage via EBS volumes using CloudFormation requires multiple steps. First the EBS volume must be created, using the `VolumeSize` input value and the same availability zone that we'll use for our EC2 instance (see Instance Configuration).

```
"MongoVolume1" : {
    "Type" : "AWS::EC2::Volume",
    "Properties" : {
        "Size" : { "Ref" : "VolumeSize" },
        "AvailabilityZone" : { "Fn::GetAtt" : [ "MongoInstance", "AvailabilityZone" ]}
    }
},
```

The next step is to attach the volume to an EC2 instance. By referencing the instance name in "InstanceId" we ensure that the EBS volumes will be created after the instance is created.

```
"MongoVolumeMount1" : {
    "Type" : "AWS::EC2::VolumeAttachment",
    "Properties" : {
        "InstanceId" : { "Ref" : "MongoInstance" },
        "VolumeId" : { "Ref" : "MongoVolume1" },
        "Device" : "/dev/sdh1"
    }
},
```

In the attached sample templates we used 4 EBS volumes as the basis for our RAID10 configuration. If you are interested in increasing the number of EBS volumes, you will need to add additional `AWS::EC2::Volume` and `AWS::EC2::VolumeAttachment` resources inside of your template. Refer to the Customizing Storage section below for more information on the steps required.

#### Instance Configuration

The centerpiece of the CloudFormation template is the creation of the EC2 instances that will be used as the MongoDB server. There are two main sections to be configured for your instance, the instance metadata and instance properties. In the sample provided, the metadata contains

information about the packages to be installed (mdadm and sysstat) and any files to be created within the instance. In our sample, the only file to be created is a `yum` repository entry to facilitate MongoDB being installed via yum after the instance has booted.

```
"MongoInstance" : {
    "Type" : "AWS::EC2::Instance",
    "Metadata" : {
        "AWS::CloudFormation::Init" : {
            "config" : {
                "packages" : {
                    "yum" : {
                        "mdadm" : [],
                        "sysstat" : []
                    }
                },
                "files" : {
                    "/etc/yum.repos.d/10gen.repo" : {
                        "content" : { "Fn::Join" : ["", [
                            "[10gen]\n",
                            "name=10gen Repository\n",
                            "baseurl=http://downloads-distro.mongodb.org/repo/redhat/os/x86_64\n",
"gpgcheck=0\n"
                        ] ] },
                        "mode" : "000644",
                        "owner" : "root",
                        "group" : "root"
                    }
                }
            }
        }
    },
```

For more information about the possible options for the metadata section, refer to the CloudFormation documentation for the AWS::EC2::Instance resource. The properties section in the template is uses to specify things like the instance type, AMI, security groups and a script to be run after boot (found in the "UserData" section):

```
"Properties" : {
    "InstanceType" : { "Ref" : "InstanceType" },
    "ImageId" : { "Fn::FindInMap" : [ "RegionImageZone", { "Ref" : "AWS::Region" },
        { "Fn::FindInMap" : [ "InstanceTypeArch", { "Ref" : "InstanceType" }, "Arch" ] } ] },
    "SecurityGroups" : [ { "Ref" : "MongoSecurityGroup" } ],
    "KeyName" : { "Ref" : "KeyName" },
    "UserData" : { "Fn::Base64" : { "Fn::Join" : ["", [
        "#!/bin/bash\n",
        ...
```

The instance type is determined by the `InstanceType` input parameter. The "ImageId" specifies the AMI to use, which is determined by the chosen instance type (e.g. m1.large) and region in which the instance is launched (e.g. us-east-1). Refer to the "Mappings" section inside the sample templates for a list of the available AMIs.

The "UserData" section shown above contains a bash script that be executed once the instance is launched and available. The first step is install the `aws-cfn-bootstrap` tools which are used in the script to initialize the instance, signal when errors have occurred and when the the instance creation is complete:

```
"yum update -y aws-cfn-bootstrap\n",

"## Error reporting helper function\n",
"function error_exit\n",
"{\n",
"   /opt/aws/bin/cfn-signal -e 1 -r \"$1\" '", { "Ref" : "WaitHandleMongoInstance" }, "'\n",
"   exit 1\n",
"}\n",

"## Initialize CloudFormation bits\n",
"/opt/aws/bin/cfn-init -v -s ", { "Ref" : "AWS::StackName" }, " -r MongoInstance",
"   --access-key ",  { "Ref" : "HostKeys" },
"   --secret-key ", {"Fn::GetAtt": ["HostKeys", "SecretAccessKey"]},
"   --region ", { "Ref" : "AWS::Region" }, " > /tmp/cfn-init.log 2>&1 || error_exit
$(</tmp/cfn-init.log)\n",
```

Next we include a series of sleep conditions in case our EBS volumes are not yet available. If you plan to use more than 4 EBS volumes in your CloudFormation template, you should add additional sleep conditions here:

```
"## Waiting for EBS mounts to become available\n",
"while [ ! -e /dev/sdh1 ]; do echo waiting for /dev/sdh1 to attach; sleep 10; done\n",
"while [ ! -e /dev/sdh2 ]; do echo waiting for /dev/sdh2 to attach; sleep 10; done\n",
"while [ ! -e /dev/sdh3 ]; do echo waiting for /dev/sdh3 to attach; sleep 10; done\n",
"while [ ! -e /dev/sdh4 ]; do echo waiting for /dev/sdh4 to attach; sleep 10; done\n",
```

Then we install MongoDB and create the RAID10 device:

```
"yum -y install mongo-10gen-server > /tmp/yum-mongo.log 2>&1\n",

"## Create RAID10 and persist configuration\n",
"mdadm --verbose --create /dev/md0 --level=10 --chunk=256 --raid-devices=4 /dev/sdh1 /dev/sdh2
/dev/sdh3 /dev/sdh4 > /tmp/mdadm.log 2>&1\n",
"echo '`mdadm --detail --scan`' | tee -a /etc/mdadm.conf\n",
```

With the RAID10 created, we can set some block device attributes (read-ahead) for each storage device:

```
"## Set read-ahead on each device\n",
"blockdev --setra 128 /dev/md0\n",
"blockdev --setra 128 /dev/sdh1\n",
"blockdev --setra 128 /dev/sdh2\n",
"blockdev --setra 128 /dev/sdh3\n",
"blockdev --setra 128 /dev/sdh4\n",
```

Now we use LVM to create a series of logical volumes for data, journal and logs. The values used below for each volume are specified as percentages, those may need to be changed for your deployment. After creating the volumes, we create the filesystem, mount points and entries in the filesystem table. The last storage-related step is to set the user:group ownership of each mount point to `mongod:mongod`.

```
"## Create physical and logical volumes\n",
"dd if=/dev/zero of=/dev/md0 bs=512 count=1\n",
"pvcreate /dev/md0\n",
"vgcreate vg0 /dev/md0\n",
"lvcreate -l 90%vg -n data vg0\n",
"lvcreate -l 5%vg -n log vg0\n",
"lvcreate -l 5%vg -n journal vg0\n",

"## Create filesystems and mount point info\n",
"mke2fs -t ext4 -F /dev/vg0/data > /tmp/mke2fs1.log 2>&1\n",
"mke2fs -t ext4 -F /dev/vg0/log > /tmp/mke2fs2.log 2>&1\n",
"mke2fs -t ext4 -F /dev/vg0/journal > /tmp/mke2fs3.log 2>&1\n",

"mkdir /data\n",
"mkdir /log\n",
"mkdir /journal\n",

"echo '/dev/vg0/data /data ext4 defaults,auto,noatime,noexec 0 0' | tee -a /etc/fstab\n",
"echo '/dev/vg0/log /log ext4 defaults,auto,noatime,noexec 0 0' | tee -a /etc/fstab\n",
"echo '/dev/vg0/journal /journal ext4 defaults,auto,noatime,noexec 0 0' | tee -a /etc/fstab\n",

"mount /data > /tmp/mount1.log 2>&1\n",
"mount /log > /tmp/mount2.log 2>&1\n",
"mount /journal > /tmp/mount3.log 2>&1\n",

"ln -s /journal /data/journal\n",

"chown -R mongod:mongod /data > /tmp/chown1.log 2>&1\n",
"chown -R mongod:mongod /log > /tmp/chown2.log 2>&1\n",
"chown -R mongod:mongod /journal > /tmp/chown3.log 2>&1\n",
```

Next we proceed to creating a MongoDB configuration file, specifiying the logpath and data directory (among others), and start MongoDB:

```
"## Update mongod configuration\n",
"cat <<EOF > /etc/mongod.conf\n",
"logpath=/data/log/mongod.log\n",
"logappend=true\n",
"fork = true\n",
"dbpath=/data\n",
"rest=true\n",
"EOF\n",

"## Start mongod\n",
"/etc/init.d/mongod start > /tmp/mongod-start.log 2>&1\n",
```

The final step is to signal our previously created WaitCondition that setup is complete:

```
"## CloudFormation signal that setup is complete\n",
"/opt/aws/bin/cfn-signal -e 0 -r \"MongoInstance setup complete\" '", { "Ref" :
"WaitHandleMongoInstance" }, "'\n"
```

Once this script has completed executing, the instance and associated resources have been created and our CloudFormation stack is ready to go.

### *Replica Set Stack*

The "ReplicaSetStack" sample template first creates two "ReplicaSetMember" instances (complete with storage configuration) and then creates the overall replica set. The "ReplicaSetMember" template is modeled very closely after the "SingleNode" template except it includes additional input parameters and adds additional commands to the instance setup script in "UserData" specific to creating replica set members (adding in the `replSet` parameter to the MongoDB configuration file).

```
"## Update mongod configuration\n",
"cat <<EOF > /etc/mongod.conf\n",
"logpath=/data/log/mongod.log\n",
"logappend=true\n",
"fork = true\n",
"dbpath=/data\n",
"rest=true\n",
"replSet=", {"Ref" : "ReplicaSetName"}, "\n",
"EOF\n",
```

The "ReplicaSetStack" template also closely follows the "SingleNode" template but adds the following replica set specific steps: (1) it creates a "replicaSetConfigInit.js" file containing the replica set configuration (with hostnames for the additional members) and (2) initiates the replica set. These steps are executed just prior to signaling that the instance setup has been completed:

```
"cat <<EOF > /tmp/replicaSetConfigInit.js\n",
"config = {_id: \"", { "Ref" : "ReplicaSetName" } ,"\", members : [",
    "{_id : 0, host:\"$HOSTNAME:27017\"},",
    "{_id : 1, host:\"", { "Fn::GetAtt" : ["ReplicaSetMember1", "Outputs.ReplicaSetMemberName"] },"
:27017\"},",
    "{_id : 2, host:\"", { "Fn::GetAtt" : ["ReplicaSetMember2", "Outputs.ReplicaSetMemberName"] },"
:27017\"}",
"]};\n",
"rs.initiate(config);\n",
"EOF\n",

"/usr/bin/mongo /tmp/replicaSetConfigInit.js > /tmp/replica-setup.log 2>&1\n",
```

The child "ReplicaSetMember" instances are created from within the "ReplicaSetStack" template using the following resource definition. The inputs for the "ReplicaSetMember" instances are taken from the "ReplicaSetStack" template:

```
"ReplicaSetMember1" : {
    "Type" : "AWS::CloudFormation::Stack",
    "Properties" : {
        "TemplateURL" : "http://S3URL/MongoDB_ReplicaSetMember.template",
"Parameters" : {
            "KeyName" : { "Ref" : "KeyName" },
            "InstanceType" : { "Ref" : "InstanceType" },
            "VolumeSize" : { "Ref" : "VolumeSize" },
            "AccessKeyId" : { "Ref" : "AccessKey" },
            "SecretAccessKey" : {"Fn::GetAtt": ["AccessKey", "SecretAccessKey"]},
            "ReplicaSetName" : { "Ref" : "ReplicaSetName" },
            "SecurityGroupName" : { "Ref" : "MongoSecurityGroup" },
            "InstanceZone" : { "Fn::FindInMap" : ["RegionZone", { "Ref" : "AWS::Region"}, "AZ1"] }
        }
    }
}
```

### *Customizing Templates*

#### Operating System

In the sample templates provided, we used Amazon Linux as the base operating system. If you are interested in using a recent release of Ubuntu (9.10 or greater), please use the following steps to customize the templates. The steps refer to the line numbers for the MongoDB_ReplicaSetStack.template but changes should also be made in MongoDB_ReplicaSetMember.template.

First, update the "files" content of the EC2 instance Metadata section to use the 10gen apt source:

```
"files" : {
    " /etc/apt/sources.list.d/10gen.list" : {
        "content" : { "Fn::Join" : ["", [
            "deb http://downloads-distro.mongodb.org/repo/ubuntu-upstart dist 10gen\n"
] ] },
        "mode" : "000644",
        "owner" : "root",
        "group" : "root"
    }
}
```

Then in the UserData section of the EC2 instance configuration, make the following changes:

- Line 220: change `yum -y install mongo-10gen-server...` to `apt-get install mongodb-10gen`
- Line 221: add `service mongodb stop`
- Line 260, 261, 262: update to use `mongodb:mongodb` as the owner:group
- Line 265: update to `cat <<EOF > /etc/mongodb.conf`
- Line 275: change `/etc/init.d/mongod start...` to `service mongodb start`

**Storage**

In the sample templates provided, we used 4 EBS volumes as the basis for our RAID10 configuration. If you are interested in using additional volumes you will need to update the following items for each new volume you want to add:

- Add an "AWS::EC2::Volume" resource
- Add an "AWS::EC2::VolumeAttachment" resource and mount point
- Add an additional sleep condition
- Update the call to `mdadm` to include your additional volumes

**Instances**

The sample "ReplicaSetStack" template creates three instances, one from the "stack" template and two additional "ReplicaSetMember" instances, via the "AWS::CloudFormation::Stack" resource in the "ReplicaSetStack" template. If you are interested in adding additional replica set members, you'll need to create an additional member instances and edit the `replicaSetConfigInit.js` found within the "ReplicaSetStack" template. Refer to the Replica Set Stack for information about the additional resources and config file to be updated. When creating the replica set the templates spread the created instances across multiple availability zones (e.g. `us-east-1a` or `us-east-1b`). When adding additional instances be sure to specify your desired Availability Zone for increase redundancy.

### *Sample Template Usage*

If you are interesting in launching a single MongoDB node in AWS, download the MongoDB_SingleNode.template file and edit it for your specific deployment. Once you have a completed template, login to the AWS Management Console and navigate to the "AWS CloudFormation" and "Create New Stack". There you'll be prompted to upload your template and input the necessary parameters.

If instead you are interested in launching a multi-node replica set, download the MongoDB_ReplicaSetStack.template and MongoDB_ReplicaSetMember.template. In order for a parent template ("ReplicaSetStack") to refer to child templates ("ReplicaSetMember"), the child template must be uploaded to S3 and the S3 URL of the child template must be specified in the parent template. Once you've uploaded the child template to S3, update the "TemplateURL" parameter in each "ReplicaSetMember" resource in the "ReplicaSetStack" template:

```
"ReplicaSetMember1" : {
    "Type" : "AWS::CloudFormation::Stack",
    "Properties" : {
        "TemplateURL" : "http://S3URL/MongoDB_ReplicaSetMember.template",
"Parameters" : {
            "KeyName" : { "Ref" : "KeyName" },
            "InstanceType" : { "Ref" : "InstanceType" },
            "VolumeSize" : { "Ref" : "VolumeSize" },
            "AccessKeyId" : { "Ref" : "AccessKey" },
            "SecretAccessKey" : {"Fn::GetAtt": ["AccessKey", "SecretAccessKey"]},
            "ReplicaSetName" : { "Ref" : "ReplicaSetName" },
            "SecurityGroupName" : { "Ref" : "MongoSecurityGroup" },
            "InstanceZone" : { "Fn::FindInMap" : ["RegionZone", { "Ref" : "AWS::Region"}, "AZ1"] }
        }
    }
}
```

After updating the "TemplateURL" parameters, login to the AWS Management Console and navigate to the "AWS CloudFormation" and "Create New Stack". There you'll be prompted to upload your template and input the necessary parameters.

For more information on deploying MongoDB on AWS, refer to the Amazon EC2 page and the Amazon EC2 Quickstart guide.

## Amazon EC2 Quickstart


- Prerequisites
- Planning Your Deployment
  - Instance Specifications
  - Storage Configuration
  - Topology
  - Security
- Securing Your Deployment
- Deploying a Single Node
  - Launch Instance
  - Configure Storage
  - Install and Configure MongoDB
  - Starting MongoDB
- Deploying a Multi-node Replica Set
  - Replica Set Background
  - Create and Configure Instances
  - Configure Replica Set
- Deploying a Sharded Configuration
  - Simple Sharding Architecture
- Backup and Restore


This guide is intended to provide instructions on setting up production instances of MongoDB across Amazon's Web Services (AWS) EC2 infrastructure.

First, we'll step through deployment planning (instance specifications, deployment size, etc.) and then we'll set up a single production node. We'll use those setup steps to deploy a three node MongoDB replica set for production use. Finally, we'll briefly cover some advanced topics such as multi-region availability and data backups.

If you installed MongoDB via the AWS Marketplace this guide can be used to get your instance up and running quickly. Start with the section on Configuring Storage to set up a place for your data to be stored. After that refer to the Starting MongoDB section to get your instance started and allow you to get started using MongoDB. If you're interested in scaling your deployment, check out the sections on Replica Sets and Sharding below.

#### Prerequisites

Generally, there are two ways to work with EC2 - via the command line tools or the AWS Management Console. This guide will use the EC2 command line tools to manage security and storage and launch instances. Use the following steps to setup the EC2 tools on your system:

- Download the EC2 command line tools
- Next, refer to **Prerequisites** and **Setting Up the Tools** from Amazon's Getting Started with the Command Line Tools

#### Planning Your Deployment

Before starting up your EC2 instances, it's best to sketch out a few details of the planned deployment. Regardless of the configuration or the number of nodes in your deployment, we'll configure each one in roughly the same manner.

##### *Instance Specifications*

Amazon has several instance choices available ranging from low to high (based on CPU and memory) throughput. Each instance available serves a different purpose and plays a different role when planning your deployment. There are several roles to consider when deploying a MongoDB production cluster. Consider a situation where your deployment contains an even number of replicated data (`mongod`) instances, an arbiter participates in electing the primary but doesn't hold any data. Therefore a Small instance may be appropriate for the arbiter role but for data nodes you'll want to use 64-bit (standard Large or higher) instances, which have greater CPU and memory scaling. For the purposes of this guide we'll be focused on deploying `mongod` instances that use the standard Large instance. The AMI (ID: `ami-41814f28`) is the 64-bit base Amazon Linux, upon which we'll install MongoDB.

##### *Storage Configuration*

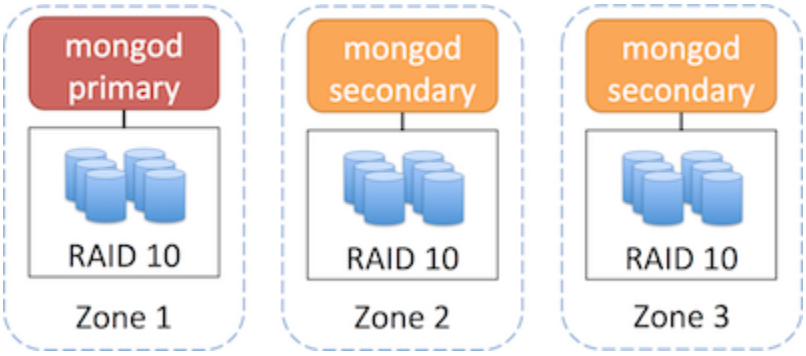
For storage we recommend using multiple EBS volumes (as opposed to instance-based storage which is ephemeral) in a RAID-based configuration. Specifically for production deployments you should use RAID 10 across 4-8 EBS volumes for the best performance. When deploying RAID 10, you'll need enough volume storage to be twice that of the desired available storage for MongoDB. Therefore for 8 GiB of available storage you'll need to have 16 GiB of allocated storage space across multiple EBS volumes.

##### *Topology*

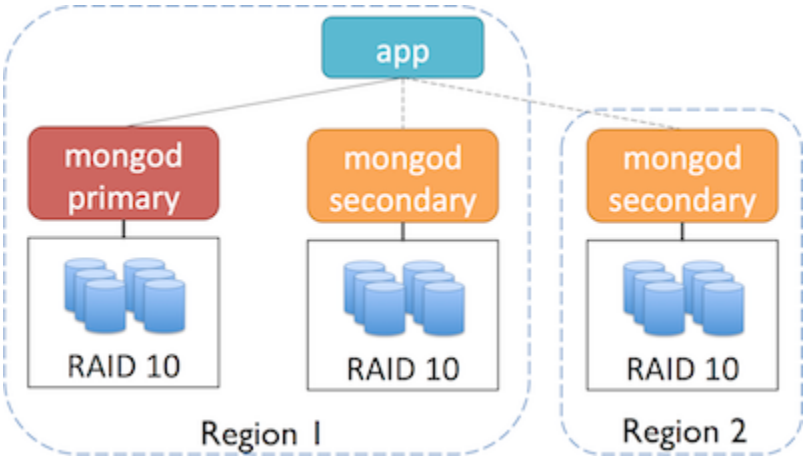
For the purposes of this guide, our topology will be somewhat simple: one to three EC2 instances, each with multiple EBS volumes attached, all

located in the same availability zone (and by extension, within the same region). If you are interested in creating a deployment that spans availability zones or regions, it's best to do that planning up front and take into account security group designations (they cannot span regions) and hostname/DNS access (AWS internal IP addresses can only be used within a zone).

An example 3 node replica set with RAID 10 storage, spanning multiple availability zones would like similar to the following. Availability zones within EC2 are similar to different server racks, therefore it is recommended that you deploy your replica set across multiple zones.




For even greater redundancy and failover, you could also deploy your replica set across multiple regions (and go further with multiple zones in each region):

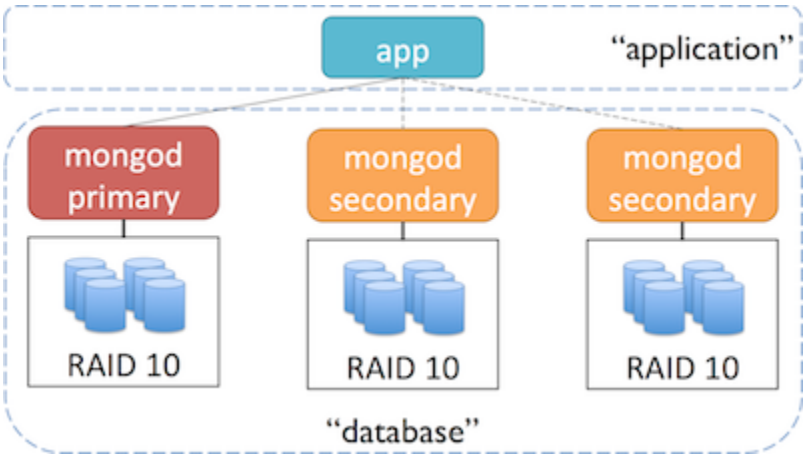



Refer to the AWS documentation on Using Regions and Availability Zones for more information.

***Security***

The recommended approach to securing your instances is to use multiple security groups for your MongoDB deployment, one for each type of interaction. For example, you could use one group to manage communication amongst the nodes in your cluster, another group that allows your application to communicate with the database and optionally, a group for tools and maintenance tasks.

An example setup with two security groups might look like this:



**Securing Your Deployment**

Before starting up instances we want to get the security groups created. As previously discussed, we recommend using multiple groups, one for each type of interaction. The following steps will show you how to create two groups (one for your app and another for your database) and provide the authorizations necessary for communication between them.

From the command line, create the `database` group and authorize SSH:

```
$ ec2-create-group database --description "security group for database"
GROUP   sg-0814f660 database    security group for database

$ ec2-authorize database -p 22
GROUP           database
PERMISSION      database    ALLOWS  tcp 22  22  FROM    CIDR    0.0.0.0/0   ingress
```

Authorize communication within the group of MongoDB instances by adding the group to itself. Note you'll need to provide the user account number (using the `-u` flag) when authorizing groups:

```
$ ec2-authorize database -o database -u [AWS_ACCOUNT_NUMBER]
GROUP           database
PERMISSION      database    ALLOWS  tcp 0   65535   FROM    USER    AWS_ACCOUNT_NUMBER  NAME database
ingress
PERMISSION      database    ALLOWS  udp 0   65535   FROM    USER    AWS_ACCOUNT_NUMBER  NAME database
ingress
PERMISSION      database    ALLOWS  icmp    -1  -1  FROM    USER    AWS_ACCOUNT_NUMBER  NAME database
ingress
```

Optionally, for testing you could also enable the port for the MongoDB web-based status interface (port `28017`):

```
$ ec2-authorize database -p 28017
GROUP           database
PERMISSION      database    ALLOWS  tcp 28017   28017   FROM    CIDR    0.0.0.0/0   ingress
```

Now create a group that will hold application servers, which will communicate with the database cluster:

```
$ ec2-create-group application --description "security group for application servers"
GROUP   sg-081bf960 application security group for application servers
```

Finally, authorize communication from the application servers (group `application`) to the MongoDB instances (group `database`):

```
$ ec2-authorize database -o application -u [AWS_ACCOUNT_NUMBER]
GROUP           database
PERMISSION      database    ALLOWS  tcp 0   65535   FROM    USER    AWS_ACCOUNT_NUMBER  NAME
application        ingress
PERMISSION      database    ALLOWS  udp 0   65535   FROM    USER    AWS_ACCOUNT_NUMBER  NAME
application        ingress
PERMISSION      database    ALLOWS  icmp    -1  -1  FROM    USER    AWS_ACCOUNT_NUMBER  NAME
application        ingress
```

Refer to the AWS guide Using Security Groups for more information on creating and managing security groups.

The next step is to generate an SSH key-pair that we'll use to connect to our running EC2 instances. Amazon's tools provide a mechanism to quickly generate a public-private key pair. Once generated, we'll need to save the private key so that we can use it to connect via SSH later (click here for more info on key pairs and AWS).

First, generate the key pair:

```
$ ec2-add-keypair cluster-keypair
KEYPAIR cluster-keypair 05:9b:b3:a6:2e:2f:54:6e:1d:a7:0a:89:56:36:b2:e8:44:37:cf:66
-----BEGIN RSA PRIVATE KEY-----
...
[private key contents]
...
-----END RSA PRIVATE KEY-----
```

Save the contents of the key to a file (including the `BEGIN` and `END` lines) and make sure that file is only readable by you:

```
$ chmod 600 private-key-file
```

Optionally, you can also the key to the SSH agent to ease connecting to our instances later:

```
$ ssh-add private-key-file
```

We're finished with the pre-deployment steps; we've covered the storage and security considerations that's necessary to setup and deploy our instances.

#### Deploying a Single Node

We'll start our deployment by setting up single node because later on we'll use the same steps to set up a larger cluster. The first step is to launch the instance and then setup the EBS-backed RAID 10 storage for the instance. Setting up the storage requires creating, attaching, configuring and formatting the volumes where our data will be stored.

**Note:** If you created a MongoDB instance via the AWS Marketplace, skip ahead to Configure Storage below.

##### *Launch Instance*

From the command line we can launch the instance. We'll need to supply an ID for an Amazon Machine Image (AMI) that we'll build our node from. We recommend using a 64-bit Amazon Linux AMI as the base of your MongoDB nodes. In this example, we are using `ami-e565ba8c` with the number of nodes (`1`), security group (`database`), authentication keypair (`cluster-keypair`), type of instance (`m1.large`) and availability zone (`us-east-1a`). Depending on the region you deploy into, a different AMI ID may be needed:

```
$ ec2-run-instances ami-e565ba8c -n 1 -g database -k cluster-keypair -t m1.large -z us-east-1a

RESERVATION r-f57f8094  711489243244    database
INSTANCE    i-a3323dc0  ami-e565ba8c            pending cluster-keypair 0       m1.large
2011-12-06T23:18:18+0000    us-east-1c  aki-825ea7eb            monitoring-disabled
ebs                 paravirtual xen     sg-0814f660, sg-1e15f776    default
```

Next, let's add some tags to the instance so we can identify it later. Tags are just metadata key-value pairs:

```
$ ec2-create-tags i-11eee072 --tag Name=QuickstartTestNode --tag Owner=Bob

TAG instance    i-11eee072  Name    QuickstartTestNode
TAG instance    i-11eee072  Owner   Bob
```

Now we can ascertain some status information about running instances at AWS (includes EBS volumes as well):

```
$ ec2-describe-instances

RESERVATION r-f57f8094  711489243244    database
INSTANCE    i-a3323dc0  ami-e565ba8c    ec2-107-20-68-113.compute-1.amazonaws.com
ip-10-2-182-67.ec2.internal running cluster-keypair 0       m1.large    2011-12-06T23:18:18+0000
us-east-1c  aki-825ea7eb            monitoring-disabled 107.20.68.113   10.2.182.67         ebs
paravirtual xen     sg-0814f660, sg-1e15f776    default
BLOCKDEVICE /dev/sda1   vol-2348cf4e    2011-12-06T23:18:43.000Z
```

***Configure Storage***

Now that the instance is running, let's create the EBS volumes we'll use for storing our data. In this guide we'll set up 4 volumes with 4 GiB of storage each (configured that's 16 GiB but because we're using a RAID 10 configuration that will become 8 GiB of available storage).

First off, create the EBS volumes supplying the size (4) and zone (`us-east-1a`) and save the results into a temporary file that we'll read from for the next command. Here's the command we'll use:

```
$ for x in {1..4}; do \
> ec2-create-volume -s 4 -z us-east-1a; \
> done > vols.txt
```

Here's the output of that command:

```
$ more vols.txt
VOLUME  vol-e796108a    4               us-east-1a      creating        2011-12-07T04:37:21+0000
VOLUME  vol-c39610ae    4               us-east-1a      creating        2011-12-07T04:37:30+0000
VOLUME  vol-a19610cc    4               us-east-1a      creating        2011-12-07T04:37:39+0000
VOLUME  vol-b19610dc    4               us-east-1a      creating        2011-12-07T04:37:47+0000
```

Now, let's attach those newly created volumes to our previously launched running instance from above. From the command line we'll start with the temp file (`vols.txt`), the running instance ID (`i-11eee072`), and a prefix for each attached device (`/dev/sdh`):

```
$ (i=0; \
> for vol in $(awk '{print $2}' vols.txt); do \
>   i=$((i+1)); \
>   ec2-attach-volume $vol -i i-11eee072 -d /dev/sdh${i}; \
> done)
```

Assuming the volumes attached successfully, you should see something like this:

```
ATTACHMENT  vol-e796108a    i-11eee072  /dev/sdh1   attaching   2011-12-07T04:48:22+0000
ATTACHMENT  vol-c39610ae    i-11eee072  /dev/sdh2   attaching   2011-12-07T04:48:29+0000
ATTACHMENT  vol-a19610cc    i-11eee072  /dev/sdh3   attaching   2011-12-07T04:48:37+0000
ATTACHMENT  vol-b19610dc    i-11eee072  /dev/sdh4   attaching   2011-12-07T04:48:44+0000
```

Now we'll need to connect to the running instance via SSH and configure those attached volumes as a RAID array. If you added the private key to your running SSH agent, you should be able to connect with something like (substituting your instance's hostname):

```
$ ssh ec2-user@ec2-a-b-c-d.amazonaws.com
```

And now create the RAID array using the built-in `mdadm`. You'll need the level (`10`), number of volumes (4), name of the new device (`/dev/md0`) and the attached device prefix (`/dev/sdh*`):

```
$ sudo mdadm --verbose --create /dev/md0 --level=10 --chunk=256 --raid-devices=4 /dev/sdh1 /dev/sdh2
/dev/sdh3 /dev/sdh4
$ echo 'DEVICE /dev/sdh1 /dev/sdh2 /dev/sdh3 /dev/sdh4' | sudo tee -a /etc/mdadm.conf
$ sudo mdadm --detail --scan | sudo tee -a /etc/mdadm.conf
```

Once `mdadm` is done and we've persisted the storage configuration, we'll need to tune the EBS volumes to achieve desired performance levels. This tuning is done by setting the "read-ahead" on each device. For more information refer to the blockdev man page.

```
$ sudo blockdev --setra 128 /dev/md0
$ sudo blockdev --setra 128 /dev/sdh1
$ sudo blockdev --setra 128 /dev/sdh2
$ sudo blockdev --setra 128 /dev/sdh3
$ sudo blockdev --setra 128 /dev/sdh4
```

With the RAID10 created we now turn to the Logical Volume Manager (`lvm`) which we'll use to create logical volumes for the data, log files and journal for MongoDB. The purpose of using `lvm` is to (1) safely partition differnt objects from each other and (2) provide a mechanism that we can use to grow our storage sizes later. First we start by zeroing out our RAID, creating a physical device designation and finally a volume group for that device.

```
$ sudo dd if=/dev/zero of=/dev/md0 bs=512 count=1
$ sudo pvcreate /dev/md0
$ sudo vgcreate vg0 /dev/md0
```

Once the volume group has been created, we now create logical volumes for the data, logs and journal. Depending upon the amount of available storage you may want to designate specific sizes vs. volume group percentages (as shown below). We recommend approximately 10GB for log storage and 10GB for journal storage.

```
$ sudo lvcreate -l 90%vg -n data vg0
$ sudo lvcreate -l 5%vg -n log vg0
$ sudo lvcreate -l 5%vg -n journal vg0
```

At this point we have three volumes to configure (`/dev/vg0/...`). For each volume we'll create a filesystem, mount point and an entry in the filesystem table. In the example below we used the ext4 filesystem however you could instead elect to use xfs, just be sure to edit the `mke2fs` and `sed` commands accordingly. The `/etc/fstab` entries require the partition (e.g. `/dev/vg0/data`), a mount point for the filesystem (`/data`), the filesystem type (`ext4` or `xfs`) and the mount parameters (`defaults,auto,noatime,noexec,nodiratime 0 0`, refer to the mount man page for more information on these parameters:

```
$ sudo mke2fs -t ext4 -F /dev/vg0/data
$ sudo mke2fs -t ext4 -F /dev/vg0/log
$ sudo mke2fs -t ext4 -F /dev/vg0/journal

$ sudo mkdir /data
$ sudo mkdir /log
$ sudo mkdir /journal

$ echo '/dev/vg0/data /data ext4 defaults,auto,noatime,noexec 0 0' | sudo tee -a /etc/fstab
$ echo '/dev/vg0/log /log ext4 defaults,auto,noatime,noexec 0 0' | sudo tee -a/etc/fstab
$ echo '/dev/vg0/journal /journal ext4 defaults,auto,noatime,noexec 0 0' | sudo tee -a /etc/fstab
```

Now mount all of the storage devices. By adding the entry to `/etc/fstab`, we've shortened the call to mount because it will look in that file for the extended command paramters.

```
$ sudo mount /data
$ sudo mount /log
$ sudo mount /journal
```

With the devices mounted we issue one last call to set the MongoDB journal files to be written to our new journal device, via a symbolic link to the new device:

```
$ sudo ln -s /journal /data/journal
```

***Install and Configure MongoDB***

**Note:** If you created a MongoDB instance via the AWS Marketplace, skip ahead to Starting MongoDB below.

Now that the storage has been configured, we need to install and configure MongoDB to use the storage we've set up, then set it to start up on boot automatically. First, add an entry to the local `yum` repository for MongoDB:

```
$ echo "[10gen]
name=10gen Repository
baseurl=http://downloads-distro.mongodb.org/repo/redhat/os/x86_64
gpgcheck=0" | sudo tee -a /etc/yum.repos.d/10gen.repo
```

Next, install MongoDB and the `sysstat` diagnostic tools:

```
$ sudo yum -y install mongo-10gen-server
$ sudo yum -y install sysstat
```

Set the storage items (data, log, journal) to be owned by the user (`mongod`) and group (`mongod`) that MongoDB will be starting under:

```
$ sudo chown mongod:mongod /data
$ sudo chown mongod:mongod /log
$ sudo chown mongod:mongod /journal
```

Now edit the MongoDB configuration file and update the following parameters

```
$ sudo nano /etc/mongod.conf
...
logpath=/log/mongod.log
logappend=true
fork=true
dbpath=/data
...
```

***Starting MongoDB***

Set the MongoDB service to start at boot and activate it:

```
$ sudo chkconfig mongod on
$ sudo /etc/init.d/mongod start
```

When starting for the first time, it will take a couple of minutes for MongoDB to start, setup it's storage and become available. Once it is, you should be able to connect to it from within your instance:

```
$ mongo
MongoDB shell version: 2.0.4
connecting to: test
>
```

Just to confirm the system is working correctly, try creating a test database, test collection and save a document:

```
> use testdb
switched to db testdb
> db.createCollection("testCollection")
{ "ok" : 1 }
> db.testCollection.save({"name":"bob"})
> db.testCollection.find()
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4edfda1c86176ab8e27ee976"), "name" : "bob" }
```

Now that we've got a single node up and running with EBS backed RAID storage, let's move on and create a multi-node replica set.

#### Deploying a Multi-node Replica Set

##### *Replica Set Background*

Replica sets are a form of asynchronous master/slave replication, adding automatic failover and automatic recovery of member nodes. A replica set consists of two or more nodes that are copies of each other (i.e.: replicas). Refer to the MongoDB Replica Set documentation for more information.

##### *Create and Configure Instances*

For this guide, we'll set up a three node replica set. To set up each node use the instructions from Deploying a Single Node above. Once that's completed, we'll update the configurations for each node and get the replica set started.

First we'll need to edit the MongoDB configuration and update the `replSet` parameter:

```
$ sudo nano /etc/mongod.conf
...
replSet=exampleReplicaSetName
...
```

Save the configuration file and restart `mongod`:

```
$ sudo /etc/init.d/mongod restart
```

##### *Configure Replica Set*

Once MongoDB has started and is running on each node, we'll need to connect to the desired primary node, initiate the replica set and add the other nodes. First connect to the desired primary via SSH and then start mongo to initiate the set:

```
$ mongo
MongoDB shell version: 2.0.4
connecting to: test
> rs.initiate()
{
    "info2" : "no configuration explicitly specified -- making one",
    "me" : "ip-10-127-127-91:27017",
    "info" : "Config now saved locally.  Should come online in about a minute.",
    "ok" : 1
}
```

Next, add the other nodes to the replica set:

```
> rs.add("ec2-107-21-46-145.compute-1.amazonaws.com")
{ "ok" : 1 }
PRIMARY> rs.add("ec2-108-90-58-191.compute-1.amazonaws.com")
{ "ok" : 1 }
PRIMARY>
```

The 3 node replica set is now configured. You can confirm the setup by checking the health of the replica set:

```
PRIMARY> rs.status()
{
    "set" : "exampleReplicaSetName",
    "date" : "Tue Dec 06 2011 11:39:08 GMT-0500 (CDT)",
    "myState" : 1,
    "members" : [
        {
            "name" : "ip-10-127-127-91:27017",
            "self" : true,
        },
        {
            "name" : "ec2-107-21-46-145.compute-1.amazonaws.com:27017",
            "health" : 1,
            "uptime" : 101,
            "lastHeartbeat" : "Tue Dec 06 2011 11:39:07 GMT-0500",
        },
        {
            "name" : "ec2-108-90-58-191.compute-1.amazonaws.com:27017",
            "health" : 1,
            "uptime" : 107,
            "lastHeartbeat" : "Tue Dec 06 2011 11:39:07 GMT-0500",
        }
    ],
    "ok" : 1
}
```

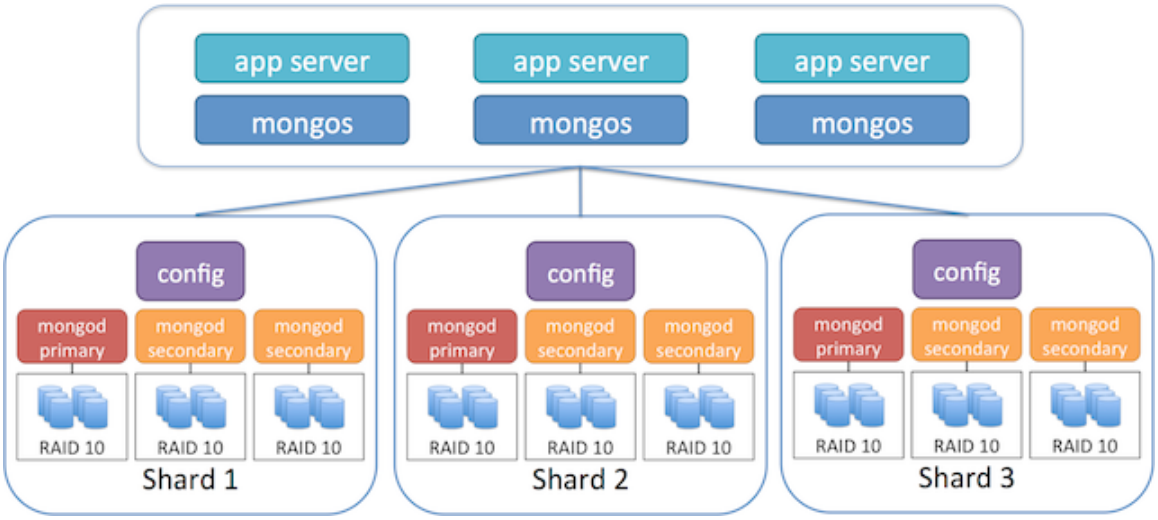
What we've completed here is a simple replica set; there are additional configurations out there that may make more sense for your deployment, refer to the MongoDB documentation for more information. If you intend to use your replica set to help scale read capacity, you'll also need to update your application's code and add the appropriate `slaveOk=true` where necessary so that read results can be returned from additional nodes more quickly.

#### Deploying a Sharded Configuration

MongoDB scales horizontally via a partitioned data approach known as sharding. MongoDB provides the ability to automatically balance and distribute data across multiple partitions to support write scalability. For more information, refer to the MongoDB sharding docs.

##### *Simple Sharding Architecture*

To build our simple sharded configuration, we'll be building upon the replica set steps we just worked on. To get started you'll need to create two additional replica set configurations, just the same from above. When configuring each server instance we'll set the `shardsvr` parameter inside the `mongod` configuration file. Next we'll take one node from each replica set and set it to run as a config server as well. The config server maintains metadata about the sharded data storage cluster. Finally, we'll add instances for the `mongos` router, which handles routing requests from your app to the correct shard. The recommended approach is to run this component on your application servers. The following image shows a recommended topology for use with sharding:




Use the instructions from Deploying a Single Node above to create the required nodes for each replica set (3 instances per set, for a total of 9 instances). Now start configuring the replica set but before saving `/etc/mongod.conf`, add this parameter:

```
shardsvr = true
```

Save the configuration file and restart `mongod`:

```
$ sudo /etc/init.d/mongod restart
```

Once `/etc/mongod.conf` has been updated, initiate the replica set and add the members as described in Configure Replica Set. Once that's complete, choose one instance from each replica set and start an additional `mongod` process those instances, this time as the config server component:

```
$ mongod --configsvr
```

Now that we've got N config servers running (where N is the number of running replica sets) we can set up the request router `mongos`. This process typically runs on your application servers and handles routing database requests from your app to the correct database shard. Assuming you already have your application configured and deployed, use `ssh` to connect to each instance and install MongoDB using the steps from Install and Configure MongoDB.

Before we continue, it is important to consider the role DNS plays in a sharding setup. Generally we recommend using DNS hostnames for configuring replica sets, which Amazon handles appropriately, as opposed to using specific IP addresses. Essentially, AWS knows the mapping between public and private addresses and hostnames and manages inter-region domain name resolution. Therefore, by using the public DNS name for our servers we can ensure that whether our servers are in a single region or across multiple regions, AWS will correctly route our requests. When it comes to setting up sharding, we recommend an additional step of using DNS aliases for the instances that will be acting as config servers. The routers must know the hostnames of the config servers so by using DNS aliases we gain additional flexibility if config servers ever need to change. All it takes is pointing the DNS alias to another instance and no additional update to the router configuration is needed. For more information on this topic, refer to docs on changing config servers.

Once the DNS settings have taken effect, we can proceed with the `mongos` setup. Go back to the command line on each of the instances you'll be using for `mongos` and start the service and point it to the instances running the config server using their DNS aliases (ex: `alias1.yourdomain.com`, `alias2.yourdomain.com` and `alias3.yourdomain.com`) along with the config server port `27019`:

```
$ mongos --configdb
alias1.yourdomain.com:27019,alias2.yourdomain.com:27019,alias3.yourdomain.com:27019
```

With the `mongos` routers running, we can now complete the setup for the sharding architecture. The last step is to add the previously created replica sets to the overall system. Choose one of the instances that is running `mongos`, start the `mongo` client using the hostname and port ( `27017`) and connect to the `admin` database. You'll need to have the name for each replica set (ex: `replicaSetName1`) and the hostnames for each member of the set (e.g: `replicaSetHost1`)

```
$ mongo host-running-mongos:27017/admin
MongoDB shell version: 2.0.4
connecting to: admin
> db.adminCommand({addShard:
"replicaSetName1/replicaSetHost1:27018,replicaSetHost2:27018,replicaSetHost3:27018"})
```

The `addShard` command will need to be repeated for each replica set that is part of the sharded setup:

```
> db.adminCommand({addShard:
"replicaSetName2/replicaSetHost4:27018,replicaSetHost5:27018,replicaSetHost6:27018"})
> db.adminCommand({addShard:
"replicaSetName3/replicaSetHost7:27018,replicaSetHost8:27018,replicaSetHost9:27018"})
```

Once these steps have been completed, you'll have a simple sharded configuration. The architecture we used includes 3 database shards for write scalability and three replicas within each shard for read scalability and failover. This type of setup deployed across multiple regions (ex: one node from each replica located in `us-west-1`) would also provide some degree of disaster recovery as well.

In order to utilize this newly created configuration, you'll need to specify which databases and which collections are to be sharded. See Enabling Sharding on a Database and Sharding a Collection for more information.

#### Backup and Restore

There are several ways to backup your data when using AWS, refer to the EC2 Backup & Restore guide for more information.

# dotCloud

## Running MongoDB on dotCloud

MongoDB can run on dotCloud. It supports replica sets, and has alpha support for sharding.

The whole point of dotCloud is to run your apps and your databases in the same place, to optimize for latency and reliability. However, you can also deploy MongoDB on dotCloud and use it to power an app running anywhere else.

### If you don't have a dotCloud account yet...

Well, what are you waiting for?

Go ahead and create one (it's free!) and install the CLI:

```
sudo easy_install pip ; sudo pip install dotcloud
```

If you need help to get the CLI running, check the dotCloud install docs and don't hesitate to ask for help.

### With a dotCloud account

The following snippet will deploy MongoDB on dotCloud for you in no time:

```
mkdir mongodb-on-dotcloud
cat >mongodb-on-dotcloud/dotcloud.yml <<EOF
db:
  type: mongodb
EOF
dotcloud push mongorocks mongodb-on-dotcloud
dotcloud info mongorocks.db
```

The last command will show you the host, port, and credentials to be used to connect to your database.

### Scaling

Assuming you followed the instructions of the previous section, if you want to get a replica sets of 3 servers:

```
dotcloud scale mongorocks db=3
```

### Advanced use

If you want to have a closer look at your MongoDB server, nothing beats SSH access:

```
dotcloud ssh mongorocks.db
```

### Moar docs

- dotCloud documentation for the MongoDB service
- generic introduction to dotCloud (in case you want to run not only MongoDB, but also Node.js, Python, Ruby, Perl, Java, RabbitMQ, Redis, MySQL, PostgreSQL, CouchDB, Riak, Erlang, or something else, on dotCloud)

### Ready-to-use apps

All you need to do to run them is a `git clone` and a `dotcloud push`:

- Django setup using MongoDB to store objects
- MongoDB + Node.js sample app

### Getting help

dotCloud has a Q&A site, and the dotCloud team can be reached through the FreeNode IRC network on #dotcloud.

## Joyent

For the quickest start, you can use the Joyent SmartMachine for MongoDB Appliance

For installing MongoDB on a Joyent Node Smart Machine, see this article

The prebuilt MongoDB Solaris 64 binaries work with Joyent accelerators.

Some newer gcc libraries are required to run -- see sample setup session below.

```
$ # assuming a 64 bit accelerator
$ /usr/bin/isainfo -kv
64-bit amd64 kernel modules

$ # get mongodb
$ # note this is 'latest' you may want a different version
$ curl -O http://downloads.mongodb.org/sunos5/mongodb-sunos5-x86_64-latest.tgz
$ gzip -d mongodb-sunos5-x86_64-latest.tgz
$ tar -xf mongodb-sunos5-x86_64-latest.tar
$ mv "mongodb-sunos5-x86_64-2009-10-26" mongo

$ cd mongo

$ # get extra libraries we need (else you will get a libstdc++.so.6 dependency issue)
$ curl -O http://downloads.mongodb.org.s3.amazonaws.com/sunos5/mongo-extra-64.tgz
$ gzip -d mongo-extra-64.tgz
$ tar -xf mongo-extra-64.tar
$ # just as an example - you will really probably want to put these somewhere better:
$ export LD_LIBRARY_PATH=mongo-extra-64
$ bin/mongod --help
```

# Rackspace Cloud


- Deployment Planning
  - Instance sizes
  - Topology
  - Security
  - Monitoring
- Deploying a Single Node
  - Creating an Instance
  - Securing Your Instance
  - Installing MongoDB
  - Configuring MongoDB
- Replica Sets
- Backups
  - Cloud Servers Images
  - Built-in Tools


This guide is intended to provide instructions on getting started with MongoDB using Rackspace Cloud Servers.

First we'll step through deployment planning (instance sizes, topology, security) and then we'll set up a single MongoDB node. We'll use the same steps to create a multi-node replica set and cover the steps needed to backup your database.

## *Deployment Planning*

#### Instance sizes

Rackspace Cloud offers instances with RAM ranging from 256 MB up to 64 GB. When considering instances for initial development purposes, those with 256 or 512 MB are an appropriate starting point. As development progresses towards production-level deployments we recommend moving to higher memory instances. The top-end Cloud instances are appropriate for pre-production and some production deployments. If you need to grow your deployment beyond the Cloud instances, Rackspace also offers managed dedicated servers that can be scaled to increase database performance and throughput.

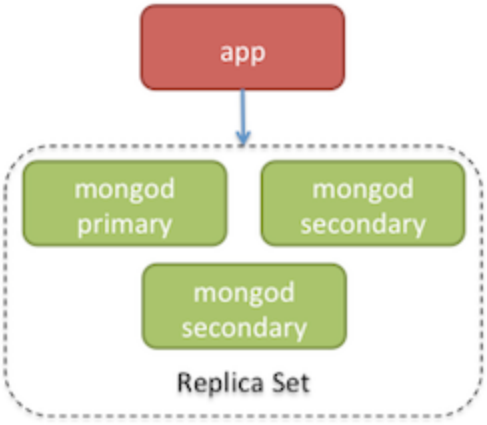
When planning your deployment, it's important to account for your resource needs for today and into the future. If you plan on growing your production systems into Rackspace's dedicated services then it may be useful to consider using RackConnect. This is a service that bridges Rackspace's public cloud infrastructure with their private dedicated servers. It makes migrating from Cloud to dedicated much easier and is also useful when creating a hybrid deployment solution combining resources from both. For more information refer to Rackspace's RackConnect site.

#### Topology

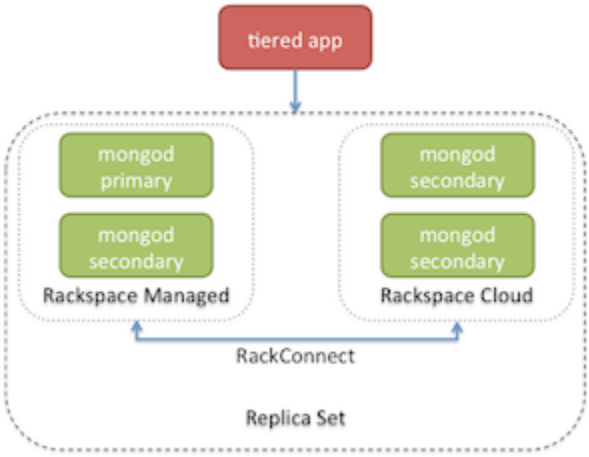
The following are example deployment scenarios for MongoDB built on Rackspace servers.

The single node example is the simplest; a single MongoDB instance can be deployed in Rackspace Cloud or Managed hosting. This deployment is useful for development and early app testing.

For production-level deployments, we'll move to a three node Replica Set running in Rackspace Cloud.




Depending on the size of your database deployment or if your app requires greater levels of database performance, another option is a hybrid deployment. In this case, a Replica Set which spans Rackspace Cloud and Managed hosting can be deployed. Cloud and Managed hosting are "connected" via RackConnect, providing a faster interconnect between the two hosting services.




#### Security

When deploying onto Rackspace Cloud, you'll need to secure access to your instances so that MongoDB is only available to known safe systems. To secure your instances we'll use the `iptables` command-line tool to control access to the system with a firewall. Once we've completed securing our instance, it will be using the following firewall configuration:

- port 22 (SSH) will accept any incoming TCP connections
- All other ports will reject incoming TCP connections

Later on when we deploy multiple instances we'll open up port 27017 (for mongod) to other specific IP addresses in order to facilitate a working replica set. The ports required for sharding (27018 and 27019) aren't required immediately since we'll be setting up a single node and replica set however just remember to open them up later if necessary.

#### Monitoring

Monitoring is a critical component of all database servers. MongoDB includes several tools to help gather statistics about data sizes, index sizes and analyze queries. In addition, there are several third-party tools that exist to help integrate MongoDB information into other monitoring solutions. 10gen also offers MongoDB Monitoring Service, a free hosted SaaS monitoring solution that provides custom dashboards and reporting for your MongoDB instances. For more information, refer to Monitoring and Diagnostics.

### *Deploying a Single Node*

#### Creating an Instance

Log in to the Rackspace Cloud control panel and navigate to Hosting > Cloud Servers > Add Server. In this example we used Ubuntu 11.10 (Oneiric Ocelot) as the OS image for our instance. Once selected, enter a server name, select a server size and continue. Be sure to record your

root password or you'll have to reset it later. Once the instance is available, connect to it via SSH to secure it. By default, you'll be connecting to the server as `root`. If you'd like to create additional users/groups to use with your instance, consult the documentation for the chosen OS. For our configuration, we used the `admin` group and added an additional user, per the Ubuntu 11.10 server guide.

First we added a new user (`admin`) to the `admin` group:

```
root# adduser admin --ingroup admin
```

After stepping through the prompts to set a password (and other account information), the `admin` user will be created and added to the `admin` group.

At this point, log out of the server as `root` and login as `admin`.

#### Securing Your Instance

As discussed above in Security, we'll use a simple firewall setup to secure access to the instances running MongoDB. The built-in `ufw` command provides a simple mechanism to configure the system firewall. First off, enable the firewall and add a rule to allow SSH access:

```
$ sudo ufw enable
$ sudo ufw allow 22
```

Now the only port that will allow connections is port 22, attempts to connect on any other port will be dropped. With this firewall setup, the instance is secure and we can proceed with configuring MongoDB. For more information, refer to the Rackspace Introduction to IPTables and the Ubuntu firewall guide.

#### Installing MongoDB

Using the instructions from the MongoDB documentation on Ubuntu and Debian packages we added an additional `apt-get` source and installed MongoDB.

First add the 10gen GPG key to `apt-get` to create a "trusted" source:

```
$ sudo apt-key adv --keyserver keyserver.ubuntu.com --recv 7F0CEB10
```

Next, add the following line to `/etc/apt/sources.list`:

```
$ sudo nano /etc/apt/sources.list
...
deb http://downloads-distro.mongodb.org/repo/ubuntu-upstart dist 10gen
...
```

Now update `apt-get` to pickup the new packages:

```
$ sudo apt-get update
```

Finally, install MongoDB:

```
$ sudo apt-get install mongodb-10gen
```

At this point MongoDB will be installed and started, which we can confirm via the service utility:

```
$ sudo service mongodb status
mongodb start/running, process 2308
```

You can also check the status by using `tail` to examine the MongoDB log:

```
$ sudo tail -f /var/log/mongodb/mongodb.log
```

**Configuring MongoDB**

By default, MongoDB is set to use `/var/lib/mongodb` as the data path. If you'd like to amend that, or update the log path, shutdown the MongoDB instance and update `/etc/mongodb.conf` with any changes.

If you change the MongoDB `dbpath` or `logpath`, be sure to set the proper ownership, etc. For example, to change MongoDB to use `/data` as the data path, use the following steps.

First, shutdown the MongoDB service:

```
$ sudo service mongodb stop
```

Next, update the MongoDB configuration file:

```
$ sudo nano /etc/mongodb.conf
...
dbpath=/data
...
```

Now create the `/data` directory and update it's ownership:

```
$ sudo mkdir /data
$ sudo chown mongodb:mongodb /data
```

Restart MongoDB with

```
$ sudo service mongodb start
```

### *Replica Sets*

MongoDB Replica Sets are a form of asynchronous data replication between primary/secondary instances of MongoDB, adding automatic failover and automatic recovery of secondary nodes. In addition, Replica Sets can also provide the ability to distribute the read workload of your data.

To create a Replica Set, first create three instances of MongoDB using the instructions above in [Creating an Instance]. Next follow the instructions to [install] and [configure] MongoDB on each instance. Just before starting MongoDB, edit the `/etc/mongodb.conf` configuration file adding the `replSet` parameter:

```
$ sudo nano /etc/mongodb.conf
...
replSet=replicaSetName
...
```

Before proceeding, note that our current security setup has blocked access to all incoming ports (other than port 22 for SSH) therefore the MongoDB instances won't be accessible. We'll need to add rule to each instance that allows access to port 27017 (the standard `mongod` port) from the other instances in our replica set.

Collect the IP addresses of the instances in your Replica Set and execute the following `ufw` commands on each instance:

```
$ sudo ufw allow proto tcp from [IP Address 1] to any port 27017
$ sudo ufw allow proto tcp from [IP Address 2] to any port 27017
$ sudo ufw allow proto tcp from [IP Address 3] to any port 27017
```

Then start MongoDB with

```
$ sudo service mongodb start
```

Once MongoDB has started and is running on each instance we'll connect to the desired primary node, initialize the Replica Set and add the secondary nodes. First connect to the desired primary node and launch the `mongo` shell:

```
$ mongo
MongoDB shell version: 2.0.4
connecting to: test
>
```

Now initialize the Replica Set:

```
> rs.initiate()
{
    "info2" : "no configuration explicitly specified -- making one",
    "me" : "67.207.133.237:27017",
    "info" : "Config now saved locally.  Should come online in about a minute.",
    "ok" : 1
}
```

Next add the other nodes to the Replica Set. If you're executing this on the first configured instance, add the other 2 instances here:

```
> rs.add("[IP Address 2]");
{ "ok" : 1 }
PRIMARY> rs.add("[IP Address 3]");
{ "ok" : 1 }
PRIMARY>
```

Finally, you can check the status of the Replica Set from the Mongo shell with the following:

```
PRIMARY> rs.status()
...
```

In the output of the `rs.status()` command, you should see three entries, one for each instance. Each one should provide information about it's current status within the Replica Set. For more information, refer to the Replica Sets documentation.

### *Backups*

To facilitate backups there are two main options: Cloud Servers images or MongoDB built-in backup tools.

#### Cloud Servers Images

Cloud Servers images are snapshots of an entire instance which are saved in Rackspace Cloud Files. Images can be created from any running instance and the process can be completed via the Rackspace Cloud control panel. When creating backups from instances in a Replica Set, be sure to image a SECONDARY instance to avoid any interruptions for your applications or data. To image a SECONDARY, first lock it against database writes from within the Replica Set, create the image and then unlock it to rejoin the Replica Set.

To lock the SECONDARY database, connect with the Mongo shell and use the following command:

```
SECONDARY> db.fsyncLock()
{
    "info" : "now locked against writes, use db.fsyncUnlock() to unlock",
    "seeAlso" : "http://www.mongodb.org/display/DOCS/fsync+Command",
"ok" : 1
}
```

While the database is locked it will not accept any incoming writes from the PRIMARY instance. Once locked, go to the Rackspace Cloud control panel and create a "New On-Demand Image". Once the image has been created and is complete, go back to the Mongo shell and issue the "unlock" command:

```
SECONDARY> db.fsyncUnlock()
{ "ok" : 1, "info" : "unlock completed" }
```

Once unlocked, any data that was written to the PRIMARY while the SECONDARY was locked will asynchronously replicate to the newly unlocked SECONDARY.

#### Built-in Tools

MongoDB ships with several built-in command line tools to help with database administration. One of those tools `mongodump` can be used to create file-based backups of the running database. Mongodump can be used on a live database instance however for the sake of data consistency, it is wise to use the `--oplog` option when calling `mongodump`. This allows for point-in-time backups that catch any data that was written while `mongodump` was working. For more information about live data backups, refer to the mongodump documentation.

## RedHat OpenShift

- Getting Started
- Sample MongoDB Apps
- Additional Information
- Documentation

OpenShift is a Platform as a Service (PaaS) offering from RedHat, which provides support for rapid deployment and automatic scalability support for web applications developed with Java EE, Node.js, Python, PHP, Perl and Ruby, and several databases including MongoDB.

### Getting Started

To get started with OpenShift and MongoDB, check out the OpenShift Quickstart guide. The guide reviews the steps necessary to create, deploy and manage your MongoDB-backed apps. The guide also covers things like application snapshots and database backups.

### Sample MongoDB Apps

- Python Twitter Clone on Github
- PHP Twitter Clone on Github

### Additional Information

- Getting Started with MongoDb Shell on OpenShift (video)
- Getting Started with MongoDB Monitoring Service (MMS) on OpenShift (video)
- Deploying Python Apps in the Cloud with MongoDB & OpenShift (video)
- Deploying a PHP Twitter App in the Cloud with MongoDB & OpenShift (video)
- How to Manage MongoDB on OpenShift with Your Favorite Admin Tool (video)

### Documentation

- OpenShift documentation
- OpenShift community

## OpenShift Quickstart

- Cloning the App
- Deploying onto Express
- Testing the Deployment
- Advanced Functionality

        - App Administration
- Additional Information


OpenShift is a Platform as a Service (PaaS) offering from RedHat, which provides support for rapid deployment and automatic scalability support for web applications developed with Java EE, Node.js, Python, PHP, Perl and Ruby. OpenShift Express is a free shared-cloud solution for deploying your applications. With Express, you simply push your app using the command line tools to OpenShift and the platform takes care of the hosting infrastructure.

In this guide, we'll take a simple Java web application and deploy it onto OpenShift Express. We'll walk through the steps required to setup and administer MongoDB as well as backing up your data.

### *Cloning the App*

We'll be deploying an existing Java web application onto OpenShift. The app is a simple REST-style checkin mechanism with a single endpoint. The app supports POST-ing new checkins (by supplying a comment and location) and GET-ing checkins near a given location (by supplying a pair of coordinates). The app was built using Java SE 6 and
Maven. Make sure to have those components installed, along with Git for your platform, before continuing.

First, start by cloning the repository for the web application::

```
$ git clone https://github.com/crcsmnky/openshift-checkins.git
$ cd openshift-checkins
```

Next, make sure you can build the app as-is using Maven::

```
$ mvn package
```

If that completes successfully, you're ready to move on. To prepare our app for deployment, we'll need to setup our OpenShift Express account.

### *Deploying onto Express*

To deploy apps onto Express you'll need to create an OpenShift account from the
OpenShift sign up page and install the OpenShift command line tools.

First, follow the steps from the OpenShift Express getting started guide in the ***Install the client tools*** section for your platform. Once the tools have been installed we'll create a domain name, app name and then push the sample app to OpenShift Express (the URL for the app will be something like **http://appname-domainname.rhcloud.com**).

First, create the domain name::

```
$ rhc domain create -n your-domain -l your-openshift-login
```

This command will prompt you for your account password then for an SSH passphrase (it generates a public/private keypair to use for connecting to the OpenShift service). Next, create an entry for the app that we'll be deploying. Here you'll need to supply the app name (example, `expresscheckin`) and `jbossas-7.0` as the app type::

```
$ rhc app create -a expresscheckin -t jbossas-7
Password:
Creating application: expresscheckin
Now your new domain name is being propagated worldwide (this might take a minute)...
Warning: Permanently added 'expresscheckin-your-domain.rhcloud.com,50.16.164.248' (RSA) to the list of
known hosts.
Confirming application 'expresscheckin' is available:  Success!

expresscheckin published:  http://expresscheckin-your-domain.rhcloud.com/
git url:  ssh:
//429827960cbf4518b1785ed928db9be7@expresscheckin-your-domain.rhcloud.com/~/git/expresscheckin.git/
Successfully created application: expresscheckin
```

After the app is created the command will also clone the app's repository locally. Before continuing, we need to set up MongoDB on OpenShift and also update our app's MongoDB connection information::

```
$ rhc app cartridge add -a expresscheckin -c mongodb-2.0

RESULT:

MongoDB 2.0 database added.  Please make note of these credentials:

       Root User: admin
   Root Password: 1wbLGYAmPgDM
   Database Name: expresscheckin
  Connection URL: mongodb://127.6.85.129:27017/

You can manage your new MongoDB by also embedding rockmongo-1.1
```

Now that we've added support for MongoDB to our app (on OpenShift) we'll need to take the credentials returned and update our `openshift-checkins` app configuration. Go back to the `openshift-checkins` directory and edit `CheckinServlet.java` and add/update the following lines in the `init` function using the MongoDB details provided by OpenShift (don't forget to uncomment the `if` statement with the authentication statement)::

```
$ cd openshift-checkins
$ nano src/main/java/CheckinServlet.java
...
conn = new Mongo("127.6.85.129", 27017);
db = conn.getDB("expresscheckin");

if (db.authenticate("admin", "1wbLGYAmPgDM".toCharArray())) {
  throw new MongoException("unable to authenticate");
}
...
```

Then build the `openshift-checkins` WAR file::

```
$ mvn package
```

Now, return to the cloned repository, remove the sample code generated from the `expresscheckin` app repo that was cloned to our system and copy the `checkins.war` file into the `deployments` as `ROOT.war`::

```
$ cd ../expresscheckin
$ rm -rf pom.xml src
$ cp ../openshift-checkins/target/checkins.war deployments/ROOT.war
```

As part of the deployment process, we also need to flag our WAR file to be deployed (expanded and copied to the right places)::

```
$ touch deployments/ROOT.war.dodeploy
```

Now we can add it to the repository, commit and push::

```
$ git add -A
$ git commit -m "initial deployment of expresscheckin app onto OpenShift Express"
$ git push origin
```

After pushing the app, it will take a few minutes for the app to become available at http://expresscheckin-your-domain.rhcloud.com/. That's it, you've deployed a simple Java app that uses MongoDB to OpenShift Express. Refer to Testing the Deployment below for some notes on testing the app's functionality.

### *Testing the Deployment*

Once you've deployed your app onto OpenShift Express, the URL for the app will be something of of the form http://expresscheckin-your-domain.rhcloud.com. We'll now use that URL to conduct some tests on our deployed app.

Since the app is a simple RESTish mechanism we can use `curl` to test it out. Let's start by posting a new comment and location to the URL (ex. http://appurl.rhcloud.com/checkin)::

```
$ curl -X POST -d "comment=hello&x=1&y=1" http://appurl.rhcloud.com/checkin
```

Now let's see if we can find the comment we just posted at that location (x = 1, y = 1)::

```
$ curl "http://appurl.rhcloud.com/checkin?x=1&y=1"
{ "_id" : { "$oid" : "4f0e068c3004bfd40822840b"} , "comment" : "hello" , "location" : [ 1.0 , 1.0]}
```

If these worked, then it looks like we've got a functional app deployed onto OpenShift.

### *Advanced Functionality*

Once you've deployed your app, you'll probably need to connect to your server at some point so you can do things like reviewing app logs or query data in MongoDB. The following steps will cover how you can do that (and if available, set up some advanced functionality).

#### App Administration

Using the command line tools, we can connect to the server our app is deployed on. Run the following command to get information about the current running apps::

```
$ rhc domain show
Password:

User Info
=========
Namespace: checkins
  RHLogin: sandeep@clusterbeep.org


Application Info
================
expresscheckin
    Framework: jbossas-7
     Creation: 2012-04-14T14:04:54-04:00
         UUID: 485daa768043454d9cdcb9343018eb6e
      Git URL: ssh:
//485daa768043454d9cdcb9343018eb6e@expresscheckin-checkins.rhcloud.com/~/git/expresscheckin.git/
Public URL: http://expresscheckin-checkins.rhcloud.com/

 Embedded:
      mongodb-2.0 - Connection URL: mongodb://127.6.85.129:27017/
```

The `UDID` above shows the user ID we can use to SSH into our server::

```
$ ssh 429827960cbf4518b1785ed928db9be7@expresscheckin-your-domain.rhcloud.com

Welcome to OpenShift shell

This shell will assist you in managing openshift applications.

!!! IMPORTANT !!! IMPORTANT !!! IMPORTANT !!!
Shell access is quite powerful and it is possible for you to
accidentally damage your application.  Procede with care!
If worse comes to worse, destroy your application with rhc-ctl-app
and recreate it
!!! IMPORTANT !!! IMPORTANT !!! IMPORTANT !!!

type "help" for more info.
```

Now at the prompt type `help` to see the available commands (in addition to normal shell commands)::

```
[openshift]$ help
Help menu: The following commands are available to help control your openshift
application and environment.

ctl_app         control your application (start, stop, restart, etc)
ctl_all         control application and deps like mysql in one command
tail_all        tail all log files
export          list available environment variables
rm              remove files / directories
ls              list files / directories
ps              list running applications
kill            kill running applications
mongo           interactive MongoDB shell
```

To connect to MongoDB, we'll need to use the credentials provided to us from OpenShift above when we set it up initially. Once you have those in hand, here's how you should connect to the database::

```
[openshift]$ mongo expresscheckin -u admin -p 1wbLGYAmPgDM
MongoDB shell version: 2.0.2-rc1
connecting to: 127.1.13.1:27017/expresscheckin
>
```

From here you can query your data as needed for your application. Finally, to backup your app's data, follow the instructions found on the MongoDB Backup docs. Specifically you'll need to use the mongodump command to do a live backup of your data.

Backing up your app is a simple single step where we create a ***snapshot*** of the entirety of the application including data, which we can do locally on our development machine::

```
$ rhc app snapshot save -a expresscheckin
Password:
Pulling down a snapshot to expresscheckin.tar.gz

Running extra dump: mongodb_dump.sh
MongoDB already running
Stopping application...
Done
Creating and sending tar.gz
Running extra cleanup: mongodb_cleanup.sh
Starting application...
Done
```

### *Additional Information*

For additional information, refer to the following:

- OpenShift Express User Guide or
- OpenShift Flex User Guide

## VMware CloudFoundry

MongoDB is a supported service on VMware's Cloud Foundry.

Clound Foundry is a platform-as-a-service solution. At this time, CloudFoundry.com (the public instance of Cloud Foundry operated by VMware) supports applications written in Spring Java, Rails and Sinatra for Ruby, Node.js. Scala and other JVM languages/frameworks including Groovy and Grails.*

### Starting a MongoDB service

```
vmc create-service mongodb --name MyMongoDB
```

Once you create a MongoDB service, you can bind and use it inside of Cloud Foundry applications.

### Java

- MongoDB Java Language Center

### Node.js

- http://docs.cloudfoundry.com/services/mongodb/nodejs-mongodb.html
- Blog post : Getting started with VMware Cloud Foundry, MongoDB and Node.js
- MongoDB Node.js language center

### Ruby

- http://docs.cloudfoundry.com/services/mongodb/ruby-mongodb.html
- Getting started with VMware Cloud Foundry, MongoDB and Rails
- MongoDB Ruby language center
- Using GridFS with Ruby and Cloud Foundry

### See Also

- VMware Cloud Foundry with MongoDB webinar

# Monitoring and Diagnostics

- mongostat
- mongotop
- Query Profiler
- Http Console
- mongo Shell Diagnostic Commands
- Trending/Monitoring Adaptors
- Other Tools
- Hosted Monitoring
- Database Record/Replay (diagLogging command)
- Additional Resources
- Admin UIs

- Checking Server Memory Usage
- collStats Command
- Database Profiler
- mongoperf
- Munin configuration examples
- serverStatus Command
- Http Interface
- mongostat
- mongosniff

- MMS (MongoDB Monitoring Service) a free hosted monitoring tool for MongoDB by 10gen

### mongostat

mongostat is a great utility which exposes many internal MongoDB metrics. For any MongoDB related issues it is a good start for the analysis of performance issues.

### mongotop

- http://docs.mongodb.org/manual/reference/mongotop/

### Query Profiler

Use the Database Profiler to analyze slow queries.

db.currentOp() is another way to get a snapshot of what is currently happening.

### Http Console

The mongod process includes a simple diagnostic screen at http://localhost:28017/. See the Http Interface docs for more information.

### mongo Shell Diagnostic Commands

- db.serverStatus()
  - See the serverStatus Command page.
- db.stats()
  - Stats on the current database. Command takes some time to run, typically a few seconds unless the .ns file is very large (via use of --nssize). While running other operations may be blocked.
  - fileSize is the total size of all files allocated for the db.
- db.foo.find().explain()
  - explain plan
- help
  - db.help()
  - db.foo.help()

### Trending/Monitoring Adaptors

- munin
  - Server stats: this will retrieve server stats (requires python; uses http interface)
  - Collection stats, this will display collection sizes, index sizes, and each (configured) collection count for one DB (requires python; uses driver to connect)
- Ganglia:
  - ganglia-gmond
  - mongodb-ganglia
- cacti
- Mikoomi provides a MongoDB plugin for Zabbix
- Nagios
- Motop - Realtime monitoring tool for several MongoDB servers. Shows current operations ordered by durations every second.
- mtop - A top like utility for Mongo
- Mongo Live - A Chrome extension that provides a real-time server status view (uses the rest interface).

Chris Lea from (mt) Media Temple has made an easy to install Ubuntu package for the munin plugin.

### Other Tools

- Dex analyzes logs and/or system.profile collections for (slow) queries and suggests indexes which might help based on a few simple heuristics.

### Hosted Monitoring

- MongoDB Monitoring Service (MMS) is a free hosted monitoring tool for MongoDB provided by 10gen
- Server Density provides hosted monitoring for your hardware and software infrastructure, and supports a number of status checks for MongoDB.
- Cloudkick
- scout app slow queries
- AppFirst

### Database Record/Replay (diagLogging command)

Recording database operations, and replaying them later, is sometimes a good way to reproduce certain problems in a controlled environment.

To enable logging:

```
db._adminCommand( { diagLogging : 1 } )
```

To disable:

```
db._adminCommand( { diagLogging : 0 } )
```

Values for diagLogging:

- 0 off. Also flushes any pending data to the file.
- 1 log writes
- 2 log reads
- 3 log both
  Note: if you log reads, it will record the findOnes above and if you replay them, that will have an effect!

Output is written to diaglog.bin_ in the /data/db/ directory (unless --dbpath is specified).

To replay the logged events:

```
nc ''database_server_ip'' 27017 < ''somelog.bin'' | hexdump -c
```

#### Additional Resources

- Monitoring MongoDB
- Server Status Reference
- Database Stats Reference
- Collection Stats Reference

#### Admin UIs

See the Admin UIs page

## Checking Server Memory Usage


- How Caching Works
- Memory Mapped Files
- Windows
- Virtual Memory Size
- Swap
  - Always Have Swap
- Commands
- Working Set Size
  - Eatmem utility
  - Asymmetry
- Unix Utilities
- Historical Memory Leak Bugs
  - See Also


### *How Caching Works*

See Caching

### *Memory Mapped Files*

Depending on the platform you may see the mapped files as memory in the process (see the Virtual Memory section below), but this is not strictly correct. If mapped files are counted as process memory, the `top` utility may show way more memory for `mongod` than is really appropriate for what is in physical memory.

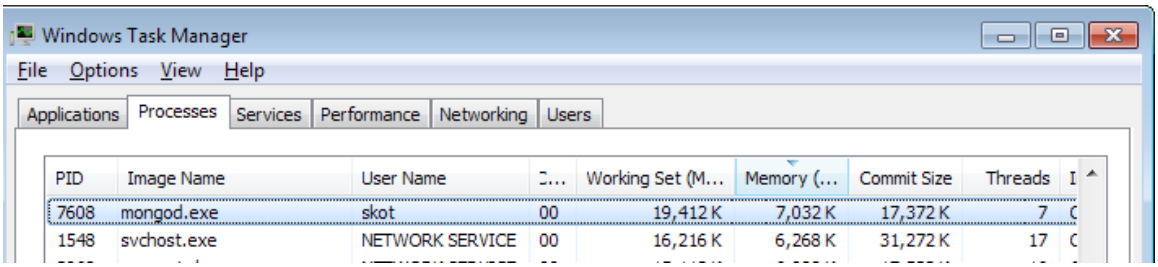
The operating system manages the memory where the memory mapped files reside (depending on the OS, this is usually done by the virtual memory manager). You can usually see mapped files using a program like `free -lmt`.

Memory mapped files are shown under "cached" memory:

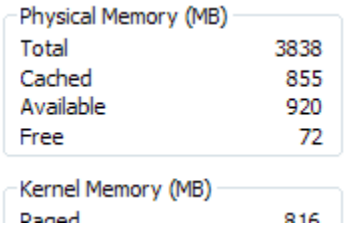
```
skot@stump:~$ free -tm
             total       used       free     shared    buffers     cached
Mem:          3962       3602        359          0        411       2652
-/+ buffers/cache:        538       3423
Swap:         1491         52       1439
Total:        5454       3655       1799
```

### *Windows*

By bringing up the Task Manager you can see the process memory allocation for mongod.




In addition in the Performance tab the "cached" memory which represents the memory allocated by the memory mapped (data) files.




### *Virtual Memory Size*

Virtual Memory includes the mapped memory files which can be much larger then the actual physical (or swap) available on your host. If journaling is enabled then the database files will be mapped twice leading to much higher virtual memory allocation than might be obvious.

It is important to remember that only a portion of the virtual memory number is really in physical memory. There are many utilities which will report memory usage as the virtual memory number which can be misleading.

Read below for more metrics about virtual memory allocation and how to detect related problems.

### *Swap*

Since the database files are memory mapped and should constitute most of your mongodb memory usage it is very unlikely that mongod will ever use any swap space. The reason for this is because any of the memory mapped files can simply either be released from memory (without going to swap) to free memory for other programs or written back to the database files which means they never need to be "swapped" out to disk in the swap space (since they are already backed by files).

If you see continuous swap usage then it most likely means one of these things:

- Your system is extremely constrained by memory (see free -ltm "cached" to confirm)
- There is a memory leak (like the javascript engine, or lots of no_timeout cursors never being closed, or other internal data structures piling up)
- Some other program is stealing lots of memory

#### *Always Have Swap*

Because of these possible conditions it is always good to have some swap space available on your system. Think of the swap space as something like a steam release valve which allows excess pressure to release without blowing the system up.

### *Commands*

The serverStatus() command provides memory usage information. Shell example:

```
> db.serverStatus()
> db.serverStatus().mem
> db.serverStatus().extra_info
```

One can verify there is no memory leak in the mongod process by comparing the mem.virtual and mem.mapped values (these values are in megabytes). If you are running with journaling disabled, the difference should be relatively small compared to total RAM on the machine. If you are running with journaling enabled, compare mem.virtual to 2*mem.mapped. Also watch the delta over time; if it is increasing consistently, that could indicate a leak.

The mem.mapped value reflects the size of all databases currently open. When replication is on, this includes the size of the local database which includes the oplog. When journaling is enabled each file is mapped twice, once as a writable memmapped view and once as a protected view. The total amount of RAM used is roughly the same; the larger virtual memory size should not be a cause for concern.

One large component of the difference between mem.virtual and mem.mapped (or 2*mem.mapped when journaling is enabled) can be stack memory. In particular, each connection that you have open has a stack frame. The size of each stack frame is determined by the stack size; in Linux this typically defaults to 8MB, which means that each connection will use 8MB on the server. If you are using many connections and are concerned with memory usage you should reduce the stack size to 1MB (this is automatic in the upcoming v2.0 release).

On Linux, extra_info will contain information about the total heap size in a heap bytes field.

You can also see the virtual size and mapped values in the mongostat utility's output.

While increasing virtual size can indicate a memory leak, increasing resident size (ie, what is reflected as RES in the output of top) indicates that the operating system is using a larger portion of available memory to hold mongodb data, which often occurs under normal operations as a system warms up.

Note: OS X includes the operating system image in virtual size (~2GB on a small program). Thus interpretation of the values on OS X is a bit harder.

### *Working Set Size*

In MongoDB it is fine if databases (and thus virtual size) are much larger than ram (terabytes for example); however, you will want your *working set* to stay in memory to achieve good performance. Otherwise lots of random disk IO's will occur, and unless you are using SSD, this can be quite slow. One area to watch specifically in managing the size of your working set is index access patterns. If you are inserting into indexes at random locations (for example, with id's which are effectively randomly generated by hashes), you will continually be updating the whole index. If instead you are able to create your id's in approximately ascending order (for example, day concatenated with a random id), all the updates will occur at the right side of the b-tree and the working set size for index pages will be much smaller.

#### *Eatmem utility*

Measuring working set size can be difficult; even if it is much smaller than total RAM, if the db has been up for a while and the db is much larger than RAM in total, all memory will be indicated as in use for the cache. Thus we need some other way to estimate our working set size.

One technique is to use a utility which reserves a certain amount of system memory for itself. So one could run this with a certain amount specified and see if the server continues to perform well. If not, the working set is largely than (total_ram - eaten_ram). Note this test will eject some data from the file system cache which may take time to page back in after the `eatmem` utility is terminated.

Running eatmem continuously with a small percentage of total RAM (say, 20%) is a good technique to get an "early warning" of memory being too low. If disk i/o activity increases significantly, terminate eatmem to migigate the problem for the moment until further steps can be taking.

#### *Asymmetry*

In replica sets if one server is underpowered this could one again help as an early warning mechanism for server capacity. Of course the server must be receiving representative traffic to get an indication here.

### *Unix Utilities*

`mongod` uses memory-mapped files; thus the memory stats in top require interpretation in a special way. On a large database, virtual bytes/VSIZE will tend to be the size of the entire database, and if the server doesn't have other processes running, resident bytes/RSIZE will be the total memory of the machine (as this counts file system cache contents).

`vmstat` can be useful – try running `vmstat 2`. on OS X, just `vm_stat`.

### *Historical Memory Leak Bugs*

| (26 issues) | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **Key** | **Status** | **FixVersion** | **Summary** |
| | | | |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SERVER-2497 | Closed | 1.7.6 | memory leak in ModSet::prepare() |
| SERVER-2522 | Closed | 1.7.6 | State::reduceInMemory leaks InMemory on exception |
| SERVER-3522 | Closed | 2.1.0 | Memory Leak in dbtests/perftests.cpp |
| SERVER-4008 | Closed | 2.1.0 | A memory leak per line of typed text in the shell |
| SERVER-5589 | Open | debugging with submitter | Possible memory leak in Linux 64-bit server |
| SERVER-2520 | Closed | 1.9.1 | add comments in code about intentional memory leak in ReplSetImpl::initFromConfig() |
| SERVER-2122 | Closed | | memory leak of shard + replication |
| SERVER-2511 | Closed | 1.9.0 | memory leak of _MultiCommandJob |
| SERVER-3911 | Resolved | | memory leak with journaling in windows |
| SERVER-1827 | Closed | | Memory leak when there's multiple query plans with empty result |
| SERVER-5843 | Open | debugging with submitter | Possible memory leak in Spider Monkey |
| SERVER-1897 | Closed | | admin page plugins and handlers leak memory |
| SERVER-768 | Closed | 1.3.4 | Memory leak and high memory usage from snapshots thread |
| SERVER-774 | Closed | | MessagingPorts are leaking |
| SERVER-4089 | Closed | | Memory leak |
| SERVER-2558 | Closed | 1.8.0-rc0 | memory and cursor leak in FindingStartCursor |
| SERVER-6168 | Open | | Memory leak in BSONIteratorSorted |
| SERVER-4354 | Closed | | Waiting mongo process leaks memory. |
| SERVER-2521 | Open | Planning Bucket A | 1300 byte memory leak in PiggyBackData on socket exception |
| SERVER-2498 | Open | Planning Bucket B | small memory leak when closing a database |
| SERVER-3157 | Closed | | Replicaset becomes inaccessable and instable after mapreduce job |
| SERVER-6380 | Open | 2.2.0-rc1 | Close keyFile filedescriptor after reading the security key |
| SERVER-4127 | Closed | | appears to be a memoryleak in mongodump |
| SERVER-5984 | Open | debugging with submitter | Memory problem on linux/debian server |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SERVER-5356 | Resolved | | mongos OOM |
| SERVER-6141 | Open | debugging with submitter | can't successfully replicate our shards anymore. replication isn't using memory efficiently and linux is i kill mongod. servers replicated earlier on same config (with smaller data sets) are still working fine... |

***See Also***

- The Linux Out of Memory OOM Killer

## collStats Command

Statistics on a collection. The command name is "collStats" and the shell helper is *database.collection*.stats().

```
> db.commandHelp("collStats")
help for: collStats { collStats:"blog.posts" , scale : 1 } scale divides sizes e.g. for KB use 1024
```

In the shell:

```
> // to see params etc.:
> db.foo.stats
function (scale) {
    return this._db.runCommand({collstats:this._shortName, scale:scale});
}

// to run:
> db.foo.stats()
{
        "ns" : "test.foo",
        "count" : 9,           // number of documents
"size" : 432,          // collection size
"avgObjSize" : 48,     // average object size in bytes
"storageSize" : 3840,  // (pre)allocated space for the collection
"numExtents" : 1,      // extents are contiguously allocated
// chunks of datafile space
"nindexes" : 2,
        "lastExtentSize" : 3840,
        "paddingFactor" : 1,   // padding can make updates faster
// if documents grow
"flags" : 1,
        "totalIndexSize" : 16384,
        "indexSizes" : {
                "_id_" : 8192,
                "x_1" : 8192
        },
        "ok" : 1
}
```

- Slave ok : true
- Lock type : read
- Slow to run : no

## Database Profiler

Mongo includes a profiling tool to analyze the performance of database operations.

- Enabling Profiling
    - Through the profile command
    - Through the command-line/config-file
- Using with Sharding
- Viewing the Data
    - Filtering example

    - View stats for only one collection example
    - View slow operations only
    - To see newest information first
    - To view information from a certain time range
    - The `show profile` shell helper
- Understanding the Output
- Optimizing Query Performance
- Optimizing Update Performance
- Profiler Overhead
- Profiling and Replication
- Changing the system.profile Collection Size
- Alternatives to Profiling
- See Also


See also the currentOp command.

### *Enabling Profiling*

#### *Through the profile command*

You can enable and disable profiling from the mongo shell, or through a driver, via the profile command.

```
> db.commandHelp("profile") // see how to run from drivers
```

When using the profile command, profiling is enabled or disabled per database. A system.profile collection will be created for the database.

To enable profiling, from the `mongo` shell invoke:

```
> db.setProfilingLevel(2);
{"was" : 0 , "slowms" : 100, "ok" : 1} // "was" is the old setting
> db.getProfilingLevel()
2
```

Profiling levels are:

- 0 - off
- 1 - write slow operations (by default, >100ms is considered slow) to the system.profile collection
- 2 - write all operations to the system.profile collection

In addition to the default levels you can also specify a `slowms` option:

```
> db.setProfilingLevel(1,20) // log slow operations, slow threshold=20ms
> db.getProfilingStatus() // new shell helper method as of v1.7+
{ "was" : 1, "slowms" : 20 }
```

Note: the profiling level controls which operations get written to the system.profile collection. However, even if the profiler is off, queries slower than the "slowms" level will get written to the logs.

#### *Through the command-line/config-file*

You can also enable profiling on the command line; for example:

```
$ mongod --profile=1 --slowms=15
```

### *Using with Sharding*

Enabling and aggregating profile data globally is not yet available. For now, connect directly to a `mongod` of interest with the shell, and follow the instructions on this page. You can then repeat the same procedure on other shards if necessary.

### *Viewing the Data*

Profiling data is recorded in the database's `system.profile` collection. Query that collection to see the results.

Because profile data is written to `system.profile`, you will see write activity on the database, even if only reading, because of the writes to `system.profile`.

```
> db.system.profile.find()
{"ts" : "Thu Jan 29 2009 15:19:32 GMT-0500 (EST)" , "info" : "query test.$cmd ntoreturn:1 reslen:66
nscanned:0  <br>query: { profile: 2 }  nreturned:1 bytes:50" , "millis" : 0}
...
```

***Filtering example***

As an example, to see output without $cmd (command) operations, invoke:

```
db.system.profile.find( function() { return this.info.indexOf('$cmd')<0; } )
```

Likewise we could query for indexOf(...)>=0 to see only those lines.

***View stats for only one collection example***

To view operations for a particular collection:

```
> db.system.profile.find( { info: /test.foo/ } )
{"ts" : "Thu Jan 29 2009 15:19:40 GMT-0500 (EST)" , "info" : "insert test.foo" , "millis" : 0}
{"ts" : "Thu Jan 29 2009 15:19:42 GMT-0500 (EST)" , "info" : "insert test.foo" , "millis" : 0}
{"ts" : "Thu Jan 29 2009 15:19:45 GMT-0500 (EST)" , "info" : "query test.foo ntoreturn:0 reslen:102
nscanned:2  <br>query: {}  nreturned:2 bytes:86" , "millis" : 0}
{"ts" : "Thu Jan 29 2009 15:21:17 GMT-0500 (EST)" , "info" : "query test.foo ntoreturn:0 reslen:36
nscanned:2  <br>query: { $not: { x: 2 } }  nreturned:0 bytes:20" , "millis" : 0}
{"ts" : "Thu Jan 29 2009 15:21:27 GMT-0500 (EST)" , "info" : "query test.foo ntoreturn:0 exception
bytes:53" , "millis" : 88}
```

***View slow operations only***

To view operations slower than a certain number of milliseconds:

```
> db.system.profile.find( { millis : { $gt : 5 } } )
{"ts" : "Thu Jan 29 2009 15:21:27 GMT-0500 (EST)" , "info" : "query test.foo ntoreturn:0 exception
bytes:53" , "millis" : 88}
```

***To see newest information first***

```
> db.system.profile.find().sort({$natural:-1})
```

***To view information from a certain time range***

```
> db.system.profile.find(
...{ts:{$gt:new ISODate("2011-07-12T03:00:00Z"),
...     $lt:new ISODate("2011-07-12T03:40:00Z")}
...})
```

In the next example we look at the time range, suppress the `user` field from the output to make it easier to read, and sort the results by how long each operation took to run.

```
> db.system.profile.find(
...{ts:{$gt:new ISODate("2011-07-12T03:00:00Z"),
...     $lt:new ISODate("2011-07-12T03:40:00Z")}
...}
...,{user:0}).sort({millis:-1})
```

#### *The `show profile` shell helper*

The mongo shell includes a helper to see the most recent 5 profiled events that took at least 1ms to execute. Type

```
show profile
```

at the command prompt to use this feature.

### *Understanding the Output*

The output reports the following values:

- `ts` Timestamp of the profiled operation.
- `millis` Time, in milliseconds, to perform the operation. This time does not include time to acquire the lock or network time, just the time for the server to process.
- `info` Details on the operation.
  - `query` A database query operation. The query info field includes several additional terms:
    - `ntoreturn` Number of objects the client requested for return from a query. For example, <code>findOne()</code> sets ntoreturn to 1. <code>limit()</code> sets the appropriate limit. Zero indicates no limit.
    - `query` Details of the query spec.
    - `nscanned` Number of objects scanned in executing the operation.
    - `reslen` Query result length in bytes.
    - `nreturned` Number of objects returned from query.
  - `update` A database update operation. <code>save()</code> calls generate either an update or insert operation.
    - `fastmod` Indicates a fast modify operation. See Updates. These operations are normally quite fast.
    - `fastmodinsert` - indicates a fast modify operation that performed an upsert.
    - `upsert` Indicates on upsert performed.
    - `moved` Indicates the update moved the object on disk (not updated in place). This is slower than an in place update, and normally occurs when an object grows.
    - `key updates` How many index keys changed during the update. Key updates are a little bit expensive since the db needs to remove the old key and insert a new key into the b-tree index.
  - `insert` A database insert.
  - `getmore` For large queries, the database initially returns partial information. `getmore` indicates a call to retrieve further information.

### *Optimizing Query Performance*

- If `nscanned` is much higher than `nreturned`, the database is scanning many objects to find the target objects. Consider creating an index to improve this.

- `reslen` A large number of bytes returned (hundreds of kilobytes or more) causes slow performance. Consider passing <code>find()</code> a second parameter of the member names you require.

`Note:` There is a cost for each index you create. The index causes disk writes on each insert and some updates to the collection. If a rare query, it may be better to let the query be "slow" and not create an index. When a query is common relative to the number of saves to the collection, you will want to create the index.

### *Optimizing Update Performance*

- Examine the `nscanned` info field. If it is a very large value, the database is scanning a large number of objects to find the object to update. Consider creating an index if updates are a high-frequency operation.
- Use fast modify operations when possible (and usually with these, an index). See Updates.

### *Profiler Overhead*

When enabled, profiling affects performance, although not severely.

Profile data is stored in the database's `system.profile` collection, which is a Capped Collection. By default it is set to a very small size and thus only includes recent operations.

### *Profiling and Replication*

In v1.9+, you can use profiling on secondaries in addition to the current primary. In older versions of MongoDB, use profiling on the primary only.

### *Changing the system.profile Collection Size*

Profiling information is written to the system.profile capped collection. There is a separate profile collection per database. By default the collection is very small and like all capped collections works in a rotating RRD-like style. To make it bigger you can create it explicitly. You will need to drop it first; you may need to disable profiling before the drop/recreate. Example in the shell:

```
> db.system.profile.drop()
> db.createCollection("system.profile", {capped:true, size:4000000})
> db.system.profile.stats()
```

### *Alternatives to Profiling*

The profiler can generate write locks as it writes to the profile collection. Thus other tools to consider for optimizing queries are:

1. Running db.currentOp(), perhaps many times in a row to get a good sample;
2. Using the explain() helper in the shell

### *See Also*

- Optimization
- explain()
- Viewing and Terminating Current Operation

## mongoperf

mongoperf is a utility for checking disk i/o performance of a server independent of MongoDB. It performs simple timed random disk i/o's. The utility is new and will likely be more sophisticated in the future.


- Building
- Running
- mmf:false mode (default mode)
- mmf:true mode
- Additional Options
    - nThreads (default 1)
    - sleepMicros (default 0)
    - r (default false)
    - w (default false)
    - syncDelay (default 0)
    - fileSizeMB (default 1MB)
- See Also


### *Building*

Run `scons mongoperf` to build.

### *Running*

```
# get help:
mongoperf -h

# example invocation:
#  test physical (direct) random read io's, using 16 concurrent reader threads,
#  and a 1GB test file.
$ echo "{nThreads:16,fileSizeMB:1000,r:true}" | ./mongoperf | tee out

# we might do this while it runs:
iostat -xm 2
```

### *mmf:false mode (default mode)*

In the default mode of operation, random 4KB direct (physical) disk i/o's are performed (i.e., O_DIRECT is used on Linux). Thus this is a physical disk i/o test.

Example run

### *mmf:true mode*

If `mmf:true` is specified as an option, tests are performed using memory-mapped files. These files are opened in a "normal" fashion and thus *caching is allowed*. This sometimes can be used to test file system cache behavior with memory mapped files.

### *Additional Options*

#### nThreads (default 1)

Number of test threads.

#### sleepMicros (default 0)

Pause for sleepMicros/nThreads between each operation.

#### r (default false)

Do read operations while testing.

#### w (default false)

Do write options while testing.

w and r can be used simultaneously.

#### syncDelay (default 0)

The `syncDelay:secs` option instructs mongoperf to perform an asynchronous fsync of the test mmap file at the specified interval. mongod does something similar every 60 seconds, thus this can be useful to test basic system behavior in a simpler setting. This option is applicable only when using `mmf:true` mode. Currently in `mongoperf` this defaults to zero, which means off.

#### fileSizeMB (default 1MB)

This specifies the size in megabytes of the test data file; you will need this much free disk space. The file will be placed in the current directory.

Specify a very large test file size to create a realistic simulation. A very small file (1MB) could be cached by your disk controller completely. A file that is say, 100MB in size would involve a small number of disk cylinders, and adjacent track-to-track seeks are much faster than a drive's average seek time.

The file size is particularly important when `mmf:true` is specified, as the file system cache is then involved. A file size much larger than RAM will result in much different performance results than a file size smaller than RAM.

### *See Also*

- The utility is quite simple, so you might wish to also take a look at the source code.
- iostat

## Munin configuration examples

### Overview

Munin can use be used for monitoring aspects of a running system. The following is a mini tutorial to help you set up and use the MongoDB plugin with munin.

### Setup

Munin is made up of two components

- agent and plugins that are installed on the system you want to monitor
- server which polls the agent(s) and creates the basic web pages and graphs to visualize the data

### Install

You can download from SourceForge , but prebuilt packages are also available. For example on Ubuntu you can do the following:

### *Agent install*

To install the agent, repeat the following steps on each node you want to monitor.

```
shell> sudo apt-get install munin-node
```

### *Server install*

The server needs to be installed once. It relies on apache2, so you will need to ensure that it is installed as well.

```
shell> apt-get install apache2
shell> apt-get install munin
```

## Configuration

Both the agent(s) and server need to be configured with the IP address and port to contact each other. In the following examples we will use these nodes:

- db1 : 10.202.210.175
- db2 : 10.203.22.38
- munin-server : 10.194.102.70

### *Agent configuration*

On each node, add an entry as follows into
for db1:

```
/etc/munin/munin-node.conf
host_name db1-ec2-174-129-52-161.compute-1.amazonaws.com
allow ^10\.194\.102\.70$
```

for db2:

```
/etc/munin/munin-node.conf
host_name db2-ec2-174-129-52-161.compute-1.amazonaws.com
allow ^10\.194\.102\.70$
```

* host_name : can be whatever you like, this name will be used by the server

- allow : this is the IP address of the server, enabling the server to poll the agent

### *Server configuration*

Add an entry for each node that is being monitored as follows in

```
[db1-ec2-174-129-52-161.compute-1.amazonaws.com]
address 10.202.210.175
use_node_name no

[db2-ec2-184-72-191-169.compute-1.amazonaws.com]
address 10.203.22.38
use_node_name no
```

* the name in between the [] needs to match the name set in the agents munin-node.conf

- address :  IP address of the node where the agent is running
- use_node_name : dtermine if the IP or the name between [] is used to contact the agent

## MongoDB munin plugin

A plugin is available that provide metrics for

- B-Tree stats
- Current connections
- Memory usage
- Database operations (inserts, updates, queries etc.)

The plugin can be installed as follows on each node where MongoDB is running

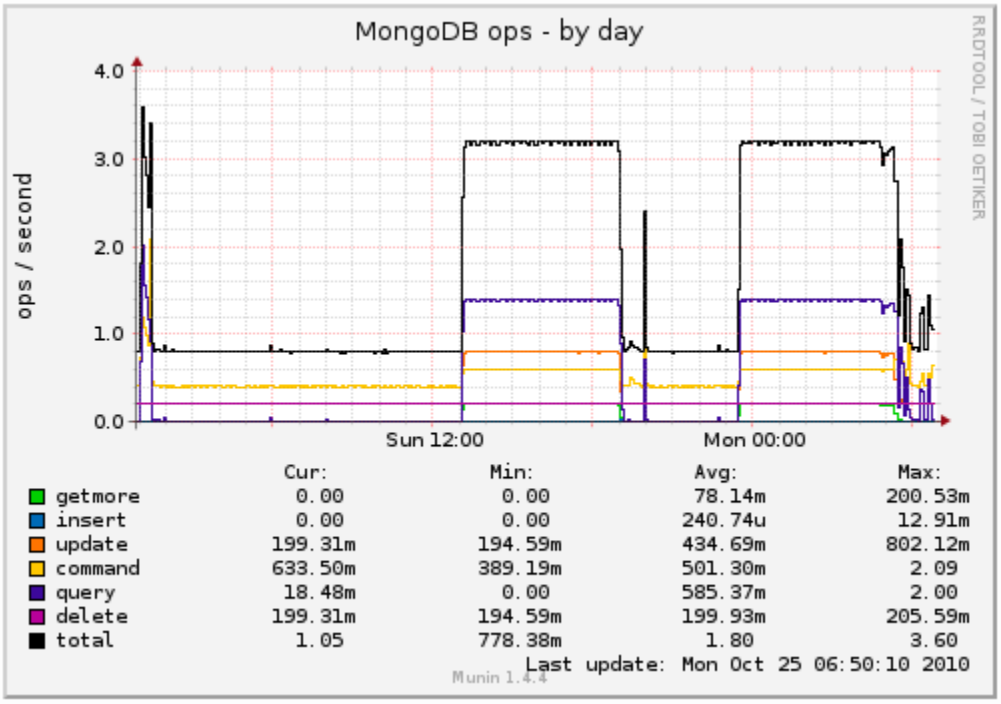
```
shell> wget http://github.com/erh/mongo-munin/tarball/master
shell> tar xvf erh-mongo-munin-*tar.gz
shell> cp erh-mongo-munin-*/mongo_* /etc/munin/plugins/
```

### Check your setup

After installing the plugin and making the configuration changes, force the server to update the information to check your setup is correct using the following

```
shell> sudo -u munin /usr/share/munin/munin-update
```

If everything is set up correctly, you will get a chart like this




### Advanced charting

If you are running a large MongoDB cluster, you may want to aggregate the values (e.g. inserts per second) across all the nodes in the cluster. Munin provides a simple way to aggregate.

```
/etc/munin/munin.conf
[compute-1.amazonaws.com;CLUSTER]
update no
```

* Defines a new segment called CLUSTER

- update no : munin can generate the chart based on existing data, this tell munin not to poll the agents for the data

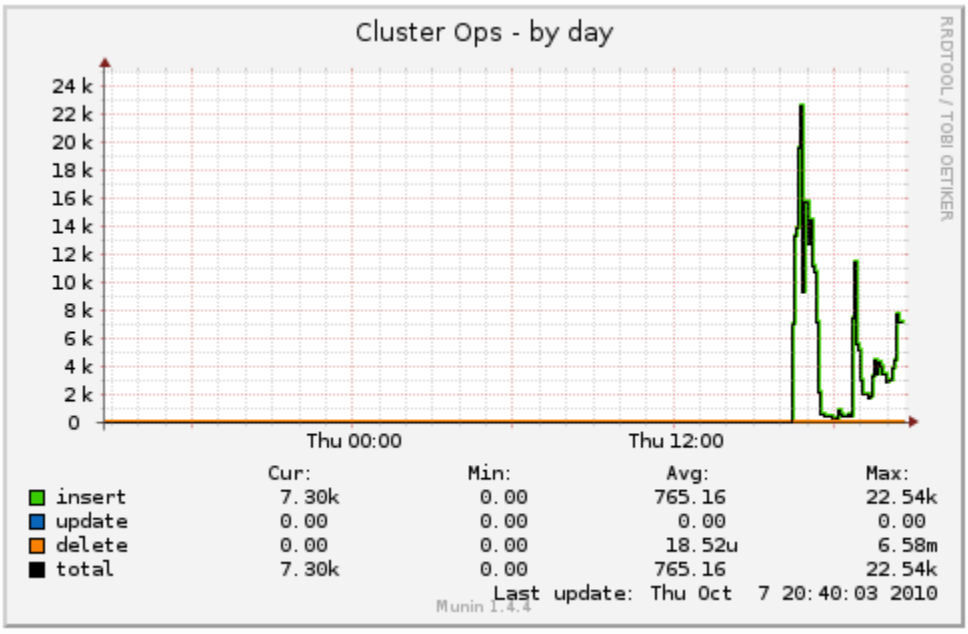
Now lets define a chart to aggregate the inserts, updates and deletefor the cluster

```
cluster_ops.graph_title Cluster Ops
cluster_ops.graph_category mongodb
cluster_ops.graph_total total
cluster_ops.total.graph no
cluster_ops.graph_order insert update delete
cluster_ops.insert.label insert
cluster_ops.insert.sum \
  db1-ec2-174-129-52-161.compute-1.amazonaws.com:mongo_ops.insert \
  db2-ec2-184-72-191-169.compute-1.amazonaws.com:mongo_ops.insert
cluster_ops.update.label update
cluster_ops.update.sum \
  db1-ec2-174-129-52-161.compute-1.amazonaws.com:mongo_ops.update \
  db2-ec2-184-72-191-169.compute-1.amazonaws.com:mongo_ops.update
cluster_ops.delete.label delete
cluster_ops.delete.sum \
  db1-ec2-174-129-52-161.compute-1.amazonaws.com:mongo_ops.delete \
  db2-ec2-184-72-191-169.compute-1.amazonaws.com:mongo_ops.delete
```

* cluster_ops : name of this chart

- cluster_ops.graph_category mongodb : puts this chart into the "mongodb" category. Allows you to collect similar charts on a single page
- cluster_ops.graph_order insert update delete : indicates the order of the line son the key for the chart
- cluster_ops.insert : represents a single line on the chart, in this case the "insert"
- cluster_ops.insert.sum : indicates the values are summed
  - db1-ec2-174-129-52-161.compute-1.amazonaws.com : indicates the node to aggregate
  - mongo_ops.insert : indicates the chart (mongo_ops) and the counter (insert) to aggregate

And this is what it looks like




## serverStatus Command

> **Redirection Notice**
> This page should redirect to http://docs.mongodb.org/manual/reference/server-status-index/.

## Http Interface

- REST Interfaces
  - DrowsyDromedary (Ruby)

    - MongoDB Rest (Node.js)
    - Mongodb Java REST server
- HTTP Interfaces
    - Sleepy Mongoose (Python)
- HTTP Console
    - HTTP Console Security
- Simple REST Interface
    - JSON in the simple REST interface
- See Also


## REST Interfaces

### *DrowsyDromedary (Ruby)*

DrowsyDromedary is a REST layer for Mongo based on Ruby.

### *MongoDB Rest (Node.js)*

MongoDB Rest is an **alpha** REST interface to MongoDB, which uses the MongoDB Node Native driver.

### *Mongodb Java REST server*

Mongodb Java REST server based on Jetty.

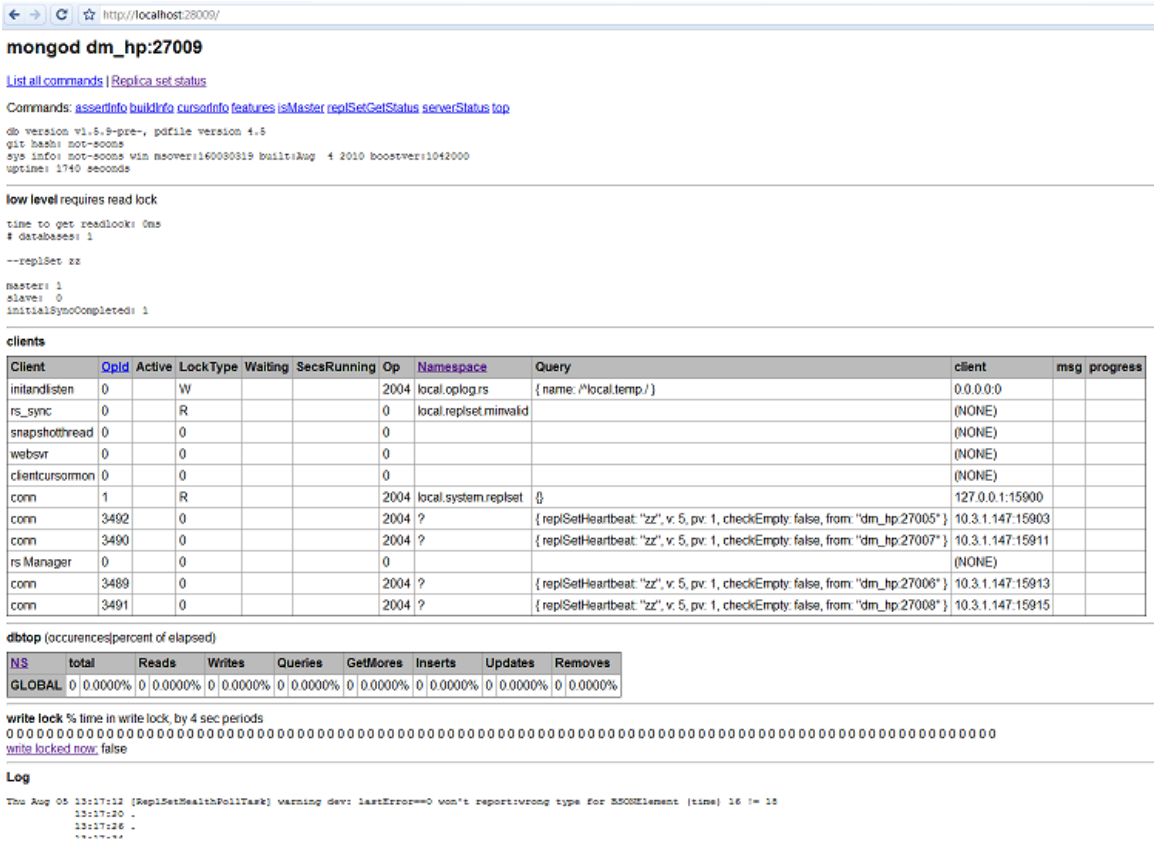
## HTTP Interfaces

### *Sleepy Mongoose (Python)*

Sleepy Mongoose is a full featured HTTP interface for MongoDB.

## HTTP Console

MongoDB provides a simple http interface listing information of interest to administrators. This interface may be accessed at the port with numeric value 1000 more than the configured mongod port; the default port for the http interface is 28017. To access the http interface an administrator may, for example, point a browser to http://localhost:28017 if mongod is running with the default port on the local machine.



Here is a description of the informational elements of the http interface:

| element | description |
|---|---|
| db version | database version information |
| git hash | database version developer tag |
| sys info | mongod compilation environment |
| dblocked | indicates whether the primary mongod mutex is held |
| uptime | time since this mongod instance was started |
| assertions | any software assertions that have been raised by this mongod instance |
| replInfo | information about replication configuration |
| currentOp | most recent client request |
| # databases | number of databases that have been accessed by this mongod instance |
| curclient | last database accessed by this mongod instance |
| Cursors | describes outstanding client cursors |
| master | whether this mongod instance has been designated a master |
| slave | whether this mongod instance has been designated a slave |
| initialSyncCompleted | whether this slave or repl pair node has completed an initial clone of the mongod instance it is replicating |
| DBTOP | Displays the total time the mongod instance has devoted to each listed collection, as well as the percentage of available time devoted to each listed collection recently and the number of reads, writes, and total calls made recently |
| dt | Timing information about the primary mongod mutex |

### *HTTP Console Security*

If security is configured for a mongod instance, authentication is required for a client to access the http interface from another machine.

### Simple REST Interface

The mongod process includes a simple read-only (no support for insert/update/remove) REST interface for convenience. For full REST capabilities we recommend using an external tool such as Sleepy.Mongoose.

**v1.4+:** This interface is disabled by default. Use `--rest` on the command line to enable.

To get the contents of a collection (note the trailing slash):

```
http://127.0.0.1:28017/databaseName/collectionName/
```

To add a limit:

```
http://127.0.0.1:28017/databaseName/collectionName/?limit=-10
```

To skip:

```
http://127.0.0.1:28017/databaseName/collectionName/?skip=5
```

To query for {a : 1}:

```
http://127.0.0.1:28017/databaseName/collectionName/?filter_a=1
```

Separate conditions with an &:

```
http://127.0.0.1:28017/databaseName/collectionName/?filter_a=1&limit=-10
```

Same as `db.$cmd.findOne({listDatabase:1})` on the "admin" database in the shell:

```
http://localhost:28017/admin/$cmd/?filter_listDatabases=1&limit=1
```

To count documents in a collection:

```
http://host:port/db/$cmd/?filter_count=collection&limit=1
```

#### *JSON in the simple REST interface*

The simple ReST interface uses strict JSON (as opposed to the shell, which uses Dates, regular expressions, etc.). To display non-JSON types, the web interface wraps them in objects and uses the key for the type. For example:

```
# ObjectIds just become strings
"_id" : "4a8acf6e7fbadc242de5b4f3"

# dates
"date" : { "$date" : 1250609897802 }

# regular expressions
"match" : { "$regex" : "foo", "$options" : "ig" }
```

The code type has not been implemented yet and causes the DB to crash if you try to display it in the browser.

See Mongo Extended JSON for details.

#### See Also

- Replica Set Admin UI
- Diagnostic Tools

## mongostat

**Redirection Notice**
This page should redirect to http://docs.mongodb.org/manual/reference/mongostat/.

## mongosniff

Unix releases of MongoDB include a utility called mongosniff. This utility is to MongoDB what tcpdump is to TCP/IP; that is, fairly low level and for complex situations. The tool is quite useful for authors of driver tools.

```
$ ./mongosniff --help
Usage: mongosniff [--help] [--forward host:port] [--source (NET <interface> | FILE <filename>)]
[<port0> <port1> ...]
--forward       Forward all parsed request messages to mongod instance at
                specified host:port
--source        Source of traffic to sniff, either a network interface or a
                file containing perviously captured packets, in pcap format.
                If no source is specified, mongosniff will attempt to sniff
                from one of the machine's network interfaces.
<port0>...      These parameters are used to filter sniffing.  By default,
                only port 27017 is sniffed.
--help          Print this help message.
```

### *Building*

mongosniff is including in the binaries for Unix distributions. As mongosniff depends on libpcap, the MongoDB SConstruct only builds mongosniff if libpcap is installed.

```
$ # Red Hat
$ sudo yum install libpcap-devel
$
$ # Ubuntu/Debian
$ sudo apt-get install libpcap-dev
$
$ scons mongosniff
```

### *Example*

To monitor localhost:27017, run `ifconfig` to find loopback's name (usually something like `lo` or `lo0`). Then run:

```
mongosniff --source NET lo
```

If you get the error message "error opening device: socket: Operation not permitted" or "error finding device: no suitable device found", try running it as root.

#### Other Tools

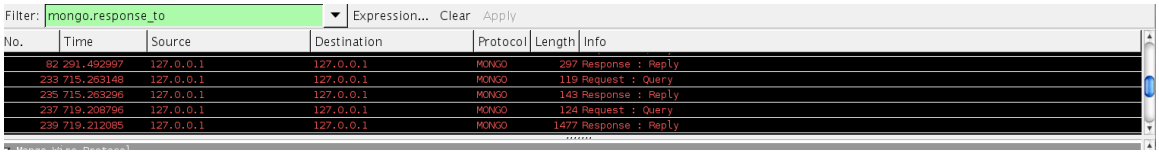
If you want to use a GUI with more detailed introspection, there is Wireshark support for MongoDB.

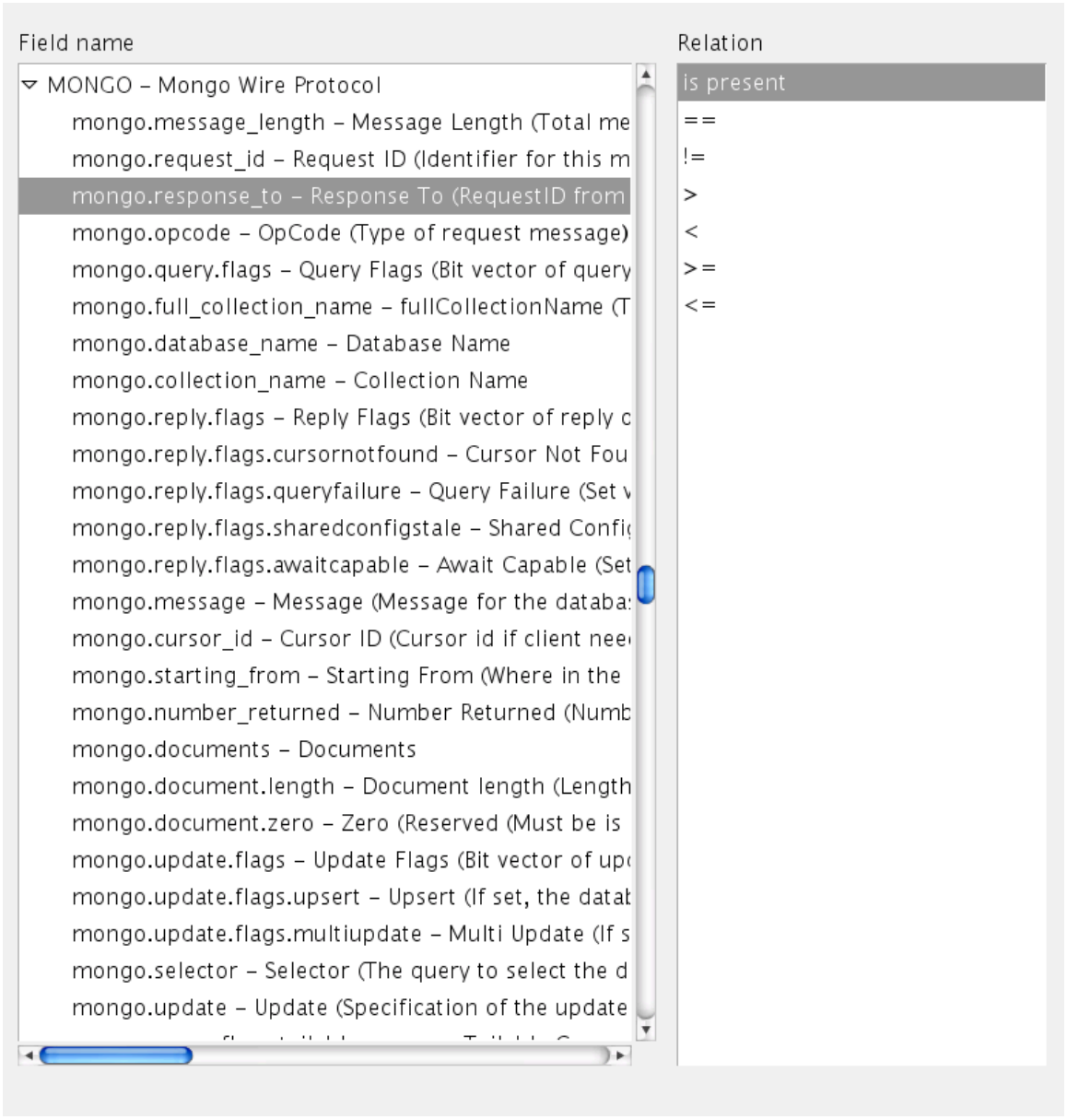
## Wireshark Support for MongoDB Protocol

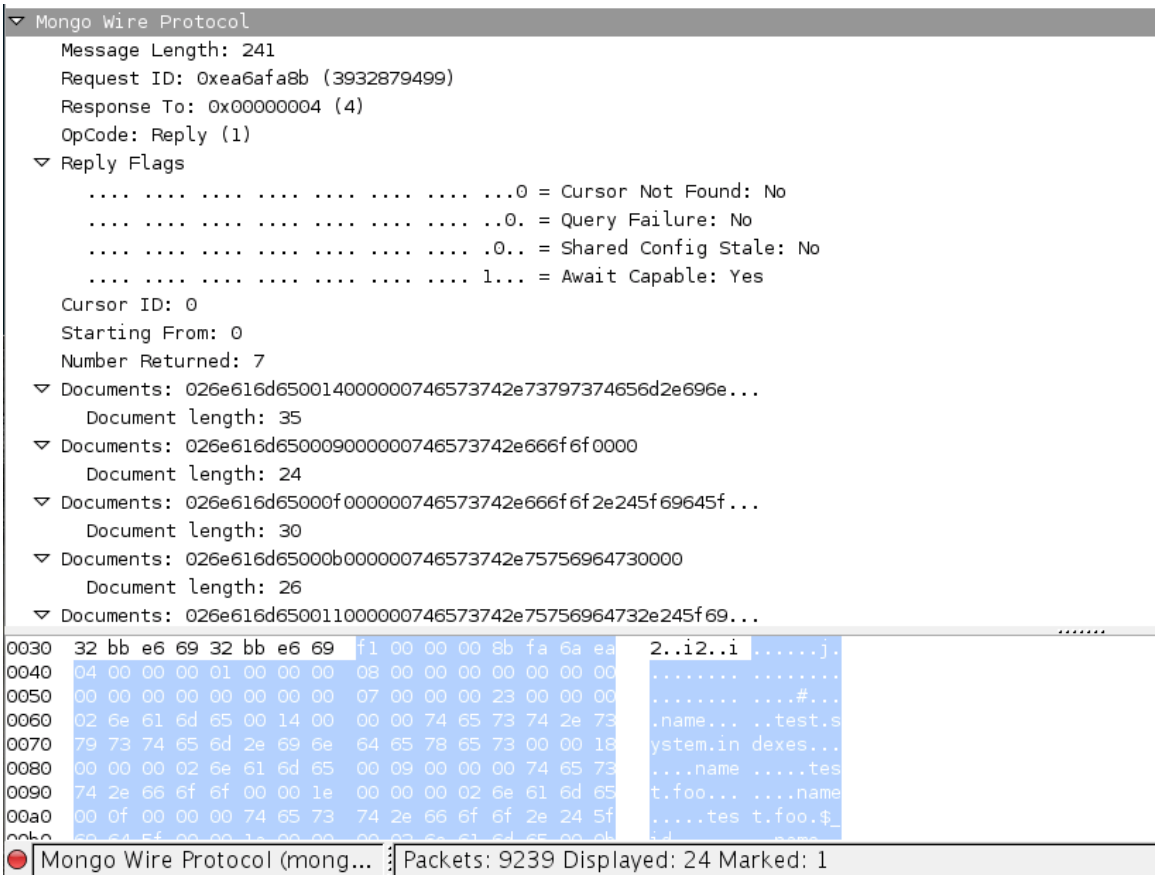
Wireshark, an advanced interactive network traffic sniffer, has full support for the MongoDB Wire protocol.

You can visually inspect MongoDB traffic, do complex filters on specific values of MongoDB wire messages and dig into individual documents both sent and received.

Note: wireshark looks for port 27017 and infers MongoDB protocol from this. If you are running on a different port number, go to Preferences...Protocols...Mongo and set your port number and it should then interpret the data.




Field name
MONGO – Mongo Wire Protocol
mongo.message_length – Message Length (Total me
mongo.request_id – Request ID (Identifier for this m
mongo.response_to – Response To (RequestID from
mongo.opcode – OpCode (Type of request message)
mongo.query.flags – Query Flags (Bit vector of query
mongo.full_collection_name – fullCollectionName (T
mongo.database_name – Database Name
mongo.collection_name – Collection Name
mongo.reply.flags – Reply Flags (Bit vector of reply c
mongo.reply.flags.cursornotfound – Cursor Not Fou
mongo.reply.flags.queryfailure – Query Failure (Set v
mongo.reply.flags.sharedconfigstale – Shared Confi
mongo.reply.flags.awaitcapable – Await Capable (Set
mongo.message – Message (Message for the databa
mongo.cursor_id – Cursor ID (Cursor id if client nee
mongo.starting_from – Starting From (Where in the
mongo.number_returned – Number Returned (Numb
mongo.documents – Documents
mongo.document.length – Document length (Length
mongo.document.zero – Zero (Reserved (Must be is
mongo.update.flags – Update Flags (Bit vector of up
mongo.update.flags.upsert – Upsert (If set, the datab
mongo.update.flags.multiupdate – Multi Update (If s
mongo.selector – Selector (The query to select the d
mongo.update – Update (Specification of the update
Relation
is present
==
!=
>
<
>=
<=




# Backups


- Sharded Backup
- Snapshot (Journaling must be Enabled)
- Mongodump
  - Replication
- Shutdown and Backup
- Write Lock, Fsync, and Backup
- Slave Backup
- Community Stuff
- Presentations


Several strategies exist for backing up MongoDB databases.  A word of warning: if you do not have journaling enabled, then it's not safe to simply copy the mongod data files (by default in /data/db/) while the database is running and writes are occurring; such a backup may turn out to be corrupt unless you follow the specific directions below.

With all these backup methods we suggest that you be careful how this could affect your live system when choosing when and where you backups are run. Try not to mix too many distinct workloads on the same resource, like doing backup and analytics or reporting for example. This could overwhelm those resources and negatively affect your users.

### Sharded Backup

The instructions below are for backing up a single server or a single shard. To back up an entire cluster, see the Backing Up Sharded Cluster documentation.

### Snapshot (Journaling must be Enabled)

If the storage infrastructure (SAN, lvm, etc.) supports snapshots, it is safe to snapshot the entire dbpath directory of a mongod while it is running, as long as MongoDB journaling is enabled (journaling defaults to on in v2.0+ for 64 bit MongoDB). Take an lvm/ebs snapshot of the entire dbpath directory of a mongod running with journaling. All files and directories (start from the dbpath directory) must be included (especially the journal/ subdirectory). As long as all files are snapshotted at the same point in time, you don't need to fsync-lock the database.

Amazon EBS qualifies if you are not RAIDing the volumes yourself. When RAIDed, the snapshot would be separate for each embedded volume.

Thus in this case one should still use lock+fsync instead of snapshots.

### Mongodump

Mongodump can be used to do a live backup of your data, or can work against an inactive set of database files. The mongodump utility may be used to dump an entire cluster/server/database/collection (or part of a collection with a query), even when the database is running and active.

#### Replication

If you are backing up a replica (from a replica set, or master/slave) you can use the

```
--oplog
```

to do a point in time backup; that point in time will be at the end of the backup. When you restore you will need to use the corresponding

```
--oplogReplay
```

to use this extra backup information.

### Shutdown and Backup

A simple approach is just to stop the database, back up the data files, and resume. This is safe but of course requires downtime. This can be done on a secondary without requiring downtime, but you must ensure your oplog is large enough to cover the time the secondary is unavailable so that it can catch up again when you restart it.

### Write Lock, Fsync, and Backup

MongoDB supports an fsync and lock command with which we can lock the database to prevent writing, flush writes, and then backup the datafiles.

While in this locked mode, all writes will block (including replication, for secondaries). If this is a problem consider one of the other methods.

> ⚠ A write attempt will request a lock and may block new readers. This will be fixed in a future release. Thus currently, fsync and lock works best with storage systems that do quick snapshots.

For example, you could use LVM2 to create a snapshot after the fsync+lock, and then use that snapshot to do an offsite backup in the background. This means that the server will only be locked while the snapshot is taken. Don't forget to unlock after the backup/snapshot is taken.

### Slave Backup

Another good technique for backups is replication to a slave/secondary server.  The replica is continuously kept up to date through Replication and thus always has a nearly-up-to-date copy of primary/master.

We then have several options for backing up from a replica:

1. Fsync, write lock, and backup the slave.
2. Shut it down, backup, and restart.
3. Dump from the slave.

For methods 1 and 2, after the backup the slave will resume replication, applying any changes made which during the backup period.

Using a replica is advantageous because we then always have backup database machine ready in case primary/master fails (failover). But a replica also gives us the chance to back up the full data set without affecting the performance of the primary/master server.

### Community Stuff

- http://github.com/micahwedemeyer/automongobackup

### Presentations

- Backing up your MongoDB Cluster - MongoSF (May 2011)

## EC2 Backup & Restore

## Overview

This article describes how to backup, verify & restore a MongoDB running on EC2 using EBS Snapshots.

## Backup

How you backup MongoDB will depend on whether you are using the --journal option in 1.8 (or above) or not.

### *Backup with --journal*

The journal file allows for roll forward recovery. The journal files are located in the dbpath directory so will be snapshotted at the same time as the database files.

If the dbpath is mapped to a single EBS volume then proceed to the Backup the Database Files section.

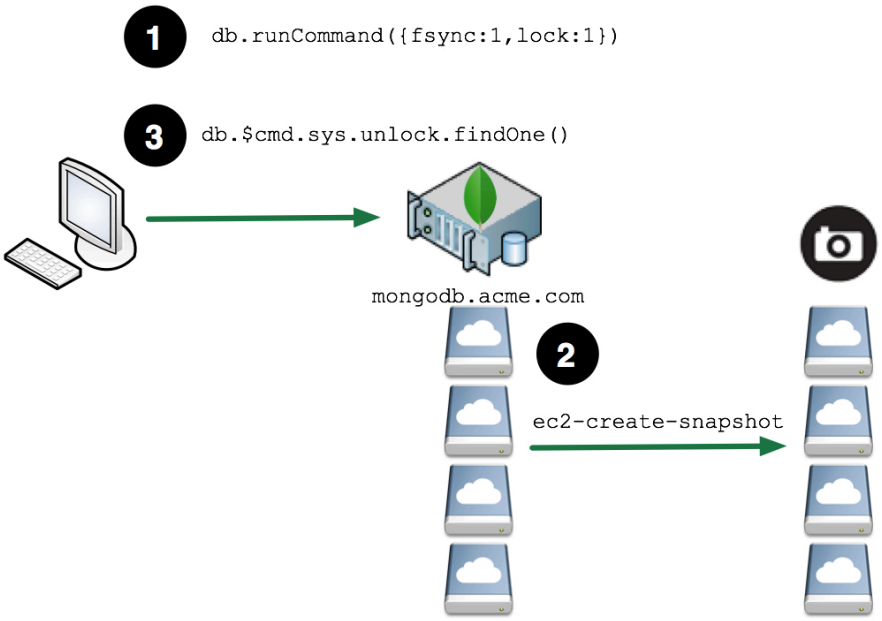
If you dbpath is mapped to multiple EBS volumes, in order to guarantee the stability of the file-system then you will need to Flush and Lock the Database section.

> Note that snapshotting with the journal is only possible if the journal resides on the same volume as the data files, so that one snapshot operation captures the journal state and data file state atomically.

### *Backup without --journal*

In order to correctly backup a MongoDB, you need to ensure that writes are suspended to the file-system before you backup the file-system. If writes are not suspended then the backup may contain partially written or data which may fail to restore correctly.

Backing up MongoDB is simple to achieve using the fsync + lock command. If the file-system is being used only by the database, then you can then use the snapshot facility of EBS volumes to create a backup. If you are using the volume for any other application then you will need to ensure that the file-system is frozen as well (e.g. on XFS file-system use xfs_freeze) before you initiate the EBS snapshot. The overall process looks like:




### *Flush and Lock the database*

Writes have to be suspended to the file-system in order to make a stable copy of the database files. This can be achieved through the MongoDB shell using the fsync + lock command.

```
mongo shell> use admin
mongo shell> db.runCommand({fsync:1,lock:1});
{
 "info" : "now locked against writes, use db.$cmd.sys.unlock.findOne() to unlock",
 "ok" : 1
}
```

During the time the database is locked, any write requests that this database receives will be rejected. Any application code will need to deal with these errors appropriately.

### *Backup the database files*

There are several ways to create a EBS Snapshot, for example with Elastic Fox or the AWS Command line. The following examples use the AWS command line tool.

#### Find the EBS volumes associated with the MongoDB

If the mapping of EBS Block devices to the MongoDB data volumes is already known, then this step can be skipped. The example below shows how to determine the mapping for an LVM volume, please confirm with your System Administrator how the original system was setup if you are unclear.

#### *Find the EBS block devices associated with the running instance*

```
shell> ec2-describe-instances
RESERVATION r-eb09aa81 289727918005 tokyo,default
INSTANCE i-78803e15 ami-4b4ba522 ec2-50-16-30-250.compute-1.amazonaws.com
ip-10-204-215-62.ec2.internal running scaleout 0  m1.large 2010-11-04T02:15:34+0000 us-east-1a
aki-0b4aa462   monitoring-disabled 50.16.30.250 10.204.215.62   ebs paravirtual
BLOCKDEVICE /dev/sda1 vol-6ce9f105 2010-11-04T02:15:43.000Z
BLOCKDEVICE /dev/sdf vol-96e8f0ff 2010-11-04T02:15:43.000Z
BLOCKDEVICE /dev/sdh vol-90e8f0f9 2010-11-04T02:15:43.000Z
BLOCKDEVICE /dev/sdg vol-68e9f101 2010-11-04T02:15:43.000Z
BLOCKDEVICE /dev/sdi vol-94e8f0fd 2010-11-04T02:15:43.000Z
```

As can be seen in this example, there are a number of block devices associated with this instance. We have to determine which volumes make up the file-system we need to snapshot.

#### *Determining how the dbpath is mapped to the file-system*

Log onto the running MongoDB instance in EC2. To determine where the database file are located, either look at the startup parameters for the mongod process or if mongod is running, then you can examine the running process.

```
root> ps -ef | grep mongo
ubuntu   10542     1  0 02:17 ?        00:00:00 /var/opt/mongodb/current/bin/mongod --port 27000
--shardsvr --dbpath /var/lib/mongodb/tokyo0 --fork --logpath /var/opt/mongodb/log/server.log
--logappend --rest
```

dbpath is set to /var/lib/mongodb/tokyo0 in this example.

#### *Mapping the dbpath to the physical devices*

Using the df command, determine what the --dbpath directory is mapped to

```
root> df /var/lib/mongodb/tokyo0
Filesystem           1K-blocks      Used Available Use% Mounted on
/dev/mapper/data_vg-data_vol
                     104802308      4320 104797988   1% /var/lib/mongodb
```

Next determine the logical volume associated with this device, in the example above /dev/mapper/data_vg-data_vol

```
root> lvdisplay /dev/mapper/data_vg-data_vol
  --- Logical volume ---
  LV Name                /dev/data_vg/data_vol
  VG Name                data_vg
  LV UUID                fixOyX-6Aiw-PnBA-i2bp-ovUc-u9uu-TGvjxl
  LV Write Access        read/write
  LV Status              available
  # open                 1
  LV Size                100.00 GiB
...
```

This output indicates the volume group associated with this logical volume, in this example data_vg. Next determine how this maps to the physical volume.

```
root> pvscan
  PV /dev/md0   VG data_vg   lvm2 [100.00 GiB / 0    free]
  Total: 1 [100.00 GiB] / in use: 1 [100.00 GiB] / in no VG: 0 [0   ]
```

From the physical volume, determine the associated physical devices, in this example /dev/md0.

```
root> mdadm --detail /dev/md0
/dev/md0:
        Version : 00.90
  Creation Time : Thu Nov  4 02:17:11 2010
     Raid Level : raid10
     Array Size : 104857472 (100.00 GiB 107.37 GB)
  Used Dev Size : 52428736 (50.00 GiB 53.69 GB)
   Raid Devices : 4
...
           UUID : 07552c4d:6c11c875:e5a1de64:a9c2f2fc (local to host ip-10-204-215-62)
         Events : 0.19

    Number   Major   Minor   RaidDevice State
       0       8       80        0      active sync   /dev/sdf
       1       8       96        1      active sync   /dev/sdg
       2       8      112        2      active sync   /dev/sdh
       3       8      128        3      active sync   /dev/sdi
```

We can see that block devices /dev/sdf through /dev/sdi make up this physical devices. Each of these volumes will need to be snapped in order to complete the backup of the file-system.

#### Create the EBS Snapshot

Create the snapshot for each devices. Using the ec2-create-snapshot command, use the Volume Id for the device listed by the ec2-describe-instances command.

```
shell> ec2-create-snapshot -d backup-20101103 vol-96e8f0ff
SNAPSHOT snap-417af82b vol-96e8f0ff pending 2010-11-04T05:57:29+0000  289727918005 50 backup-20101103
shell> ec2-create-snapshot -d backup-20101103 vol-90e8f0f9
SNAPSHOT snap-5b7af831 vol-90e8f0f9 pending 2010-11-04T05:57:35+0000  289727918005 50 backup-20101103
shell> ec2-create-snapshot -d backup-20101103 vol-68e9f101
SNAPSHOT snap-577af83d vol-68e9f101 pending 2010-11-04T05:57:42+0000  289727918005 50 backup-20101103
shell> ec2-create-snapshot -d backup-20101103 vol-94e8f0fd
SNAPSHOT snap-2d7af847 vol-94e8f0fd pending 2010-11-04T05:57:49+0000  289727918005 50 backup-20101103
```

### *Unlock the database*

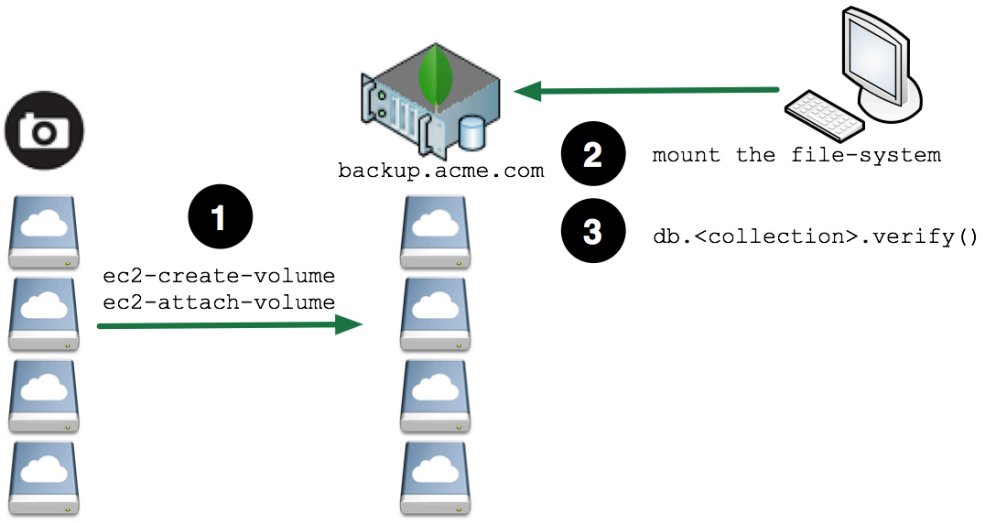
After the snapshots have been created, the database can be unlocked. After this command has been executed the database will be available to process write requests.

```
mongo shell> db.$cmd.sys.unlock.findOne();
{ "ok" : 1, "info" : "unlock requested" }
```

### Verifying a backup

In order to verify the backup, the following steps need to be completes

- Check the status of the snapshot to ensure that they are "completed"
- Create new volumes based on the snapshots and mount the new volumes
- Run mongod and verify the collections




Typically, the verification will be performed on another machine so that you do not burden your production systems with the additional CPU and I/O load of the verification processing.

#### *Describe the snapshots*

Using the ec2-describe-snapshots command, find the snapshots that make up the backup. Using a filter on the *description* field, snapshots associated with the given backup are easily found. The search text used should match the text used in the *-d* flag passed to ec2-create-snapshot command when the backup was made.

```
backup shell> ec2-describe-snapshots --filter "description=backup-20101103"
SNAPSHOT snap-2d7af847 vol-94e8f0fd completed 2010-11-04T05:57:49+0000 100% 289727918005 50
backup-20101103
SNAPSHOT snap-417af82b vol-96e8f0ff completed 2010-11-04T05:57:29+0000 100% 289727918005 50
backup-20101103
SNAPSHOT snap-577af83d vol-68e9f101 completed 2010-11-04T05:57:42+0000 100% 289727918005 50
backup-20101103
SNAPSHOT snap-5b7af831 vol-90e8f0f9 completed 2010-11-04T05:57:35+0000 100% 289727918005 50
backup-20101103
```

#### *Create new volumes based on the snapshots*

Using the ec2-create-volume command, create a new volumes based on each of the snapshots that make up the backup.

```
backup shell> ec2-create-volume --availability-zone us-east-1a --snapshot snap-2d7af847
VOLUME vol-06aab26f 50 snap-2d7af847 us-east-1a creating 2010-11-04T06:44:27+0000
backup shell> ec2-create-volume --availability-zone us-east-1a --snapshot snap-417af82b
VOLUME vol-1caab275 50 snap-417af82b us-east-1a creating 2010-11-04T06:44:38+0000
backup shell> ec2-create-volume --availability-zone us-east-1a --snapshot snap-577af83d
VOLUME vol-12aab27b 50 snap-577af83d us-east-1a creating 2010-11-04T06:44:52+0000
backup shell> ec2-create-volume --availability-zone us-east-1a --snapshot snap-5b7af831
VOLUME vol-caaab2a3 50 snap-5b7af831 us-east-1a creating 2010-11-04T06:45:18+0000
```

#### *Attach the new volumes to the instance*

Using the ec2-attach-volume command, attach each volume to the instance where the backup will be verified.

```
backup shell> ec2-attach-volume --instance i-cad26ba7 --device /dev/sdp vol-06aab26f
ATTACHMENT vol-06aab26f i-cad26ba7 /dev/sdp attaching 2010-11-04T06:49:32+0000
backup shell> ec2-attach-volume --instance i-cad26ba7 --device /dev/sdq vol-1caab275
ATTACHMENT vol-1caab275 i-cad26ba7 /dev/sdq attaching 2010-11-04T06:49:58+0000
backup shell> ec2-attach-volume --instance i-cad26ba7 --device /dev/sdr vol-12aab27b
ATTACHMENT vol-12aab27b i-cad26ba7 /dev/sdr attaching 2010-11-04T06:50:13+0000
backup shell> ec2-attach-volume --instance i-cad26ba7 --device /dev/sds vol-caaab2a3
ATTACHMENT vol-caaab2a3 i-cad26ba7 /dev/sds attaching 2010-11-04T06:50:25+0000
```

### *Mount the volumes groups etc.*

Make the file-system visible on the host O/S. This will vary by the Logical Volume Manager, file-system etc. that you are using. The example below shows how to perform this for LVM, please confirm with your System Administrator on how the original system system was setup if you are unclear.

Assemble the device from the physical devices. The UUID for the device will be the same as the original UUID that the backup was made from, and can be obtained using the *mdadm* command.

```
backup shell> mdadm --assemble --auto-update-homehost -u 07552c4d:6c11c875:e5a1de64:a9c2f2fc
--no-degraded /dev/md0
mdadm: /dev/md0 has been started with 4 drives.
```

You can confirm that the physical volumes and volume groups appear correctly to the O/S by executing the following:

```
backup shell> pvscan
  PV /dev/md0   VG data_vg   lvm2 [100.00 GiB / 0    free]
  Total: 1 [100.00 GiB] / in use: 1 [100.00 GiB] / in no VG: 0 [0   ]

backup shell> vgscan
  Reading all physical volumes.  This may take a while...
  Found volume group "data_vg" using metadata type lvm2
```

Create the mount point and mount the file-system:

```
backup shell> mkdir -p /var/lib/mongodb

backup shell> cat >> /etc/fstab << EOF
/dev/mapper/data_vg-data_vol /var/lib/mongodb xfs noatime,noexec,nodiratime 0 0
EOF

backup shell> mount /var/lib/mongodb
```

### *Startup the database*

After the file-system has been mounted, MongoDB can be started. Ensure that the owner of the files is set to the correct user & group. Since the backup was made with the database running, the lock file will need to be removed in order to start the database.

```
backup shell> chown -R mongodb /var/lib/mongodb/toyko0
backup shell> rm /var/lib/mongodb/tokyo0/mongod.lock
backup shell> mongod --dbpath /var/lib/mongodb/tokyo0
```

### *Verify the collections*

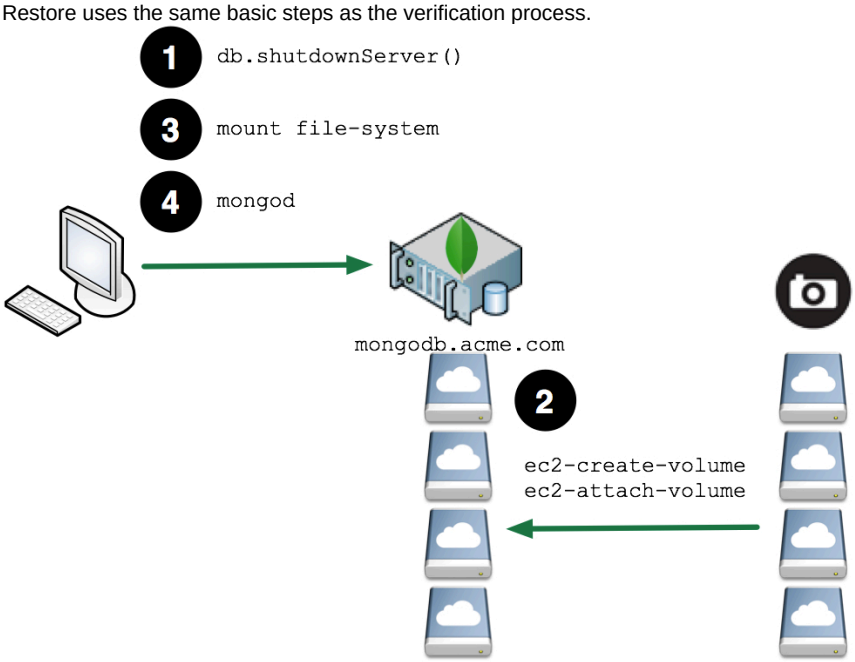
Each collection can be verified in order to ensure that it valid and does not contain any invalid BSON objects.

```
mongo shell> db.blogs.validate({full:true})
```

Validate Command

### Restore

Restore uses the same basic steps as the verification process.




After the file-system is mounted you can decide to

- Copy the database files from the backup into the current database directory
- Startup mongod from the new mount point, specifying the new mount point in the --dbpath argument

After the database is started, it will be ready to transact. It will be at the specific point in time from the backup, so if it is part of a master/slave or replica set relationship, then the instance will need to synchronize itself to get itself back up to date.

## How to do Snapshotted Queries in the Mongo Database

> ⚠ This document refers to query snapshots. For backup snapshots of the database's datafiles, see the fsync lock page.

MongoDB does not support full point-in-time snapshotting. However, some functionality is available which is detailed below.

#### Cursors

A MongoDB query returns data as well as a cursor ID for additional lookups, should more data exist.  Drivers lazily perform a "getMore" operation as needed on the cursor to get more data.  Cursors may have latent getMore accesses that occurs after an intervening write operation on the database collection (i.e., an insert, update, or delete).

Conceptually, a cursor has a current position. If you delete the item at the current position, the cursor automatically skips its current position forward to the next item.

MongoDB cursors do not provide a snapshot: if other write operations occur during the life of your cursor, it is unspecified if your application will see the results of those operations. In fact, it is even possible (although unlikely) to see the same object returned twice if the object were updated and grew in size (and thus moved in the datafile). To assure no update duplications, use snapshot() mode (see below).

#### Snapshot Mode

snapshot() mode assures that objects which update during the lifetime of a query are returned once and only once. This is most important when doing a find-and-update loop that changes the size of documents that are returned ($inc does not change size).

```
> // mongo shell example
> var cursor = db.myCollection.find({country:'uk'}).snapshot();
```

Even with snapshot mode, items inserted or deleted during the query may or may not be returned; that is, this mode is not a true point-in-time snapshot.

Because snapshot mode traverses the _id index, it may not be used with sorting or explicit hints. It also cannot use any other index for the query.

You can get the same effect as snapshot by using any unique index on a field(s) that will not be modified (probably best to use explicit hint() too). If you want to use a non-unique index (such as creation time), you can make it unique by appending _id to the index at creation time.

## Import Export Tools


- Data Import and Export
  - mongoimport
    - Example: Import file format
    - Example: Importing with `upsert`
    - Example: Importing Interesting Types
  - mongoexport
- mongodump and mongorestore
  - mongodump
    - Example: Dumping Everything
    - Example: Dumping a Single Collection
    - Example: Dumping a Single Collection to Stdout
    - Example: Dumping a Single Collection with a query
    - Example: Using --oplog to get a point-in-time backup
    - Performance Tips
    - If mongodump seems to skip documents...
  - mongorestore
- bsondump
- See Also

If you just want to copy a database from one mongod server to another, use the copydb Command instead of these tools.

These tools work with the raw data (the BSON documents in the collections, both user and system); they do not save, or load certain metadata such as (capped) collection properties. You will need to (re)create those yourself in a separate step, before loading that data. Vote for SERVER-808 to change this. (Consider using the copydb command which does preserve these properties.)

### *Data Import and Export*

#### mongoimport

This utility takes a single file that contains 1 JSON/CSV/TSV string per line and inserts it. You have to specify a database and a collection.

```
options:
  --help                  produce help message
  -v [ --verbose ]        be more verbose (include multiple times for more
                          verbosity e.g. -vvvvv)
  -h [ --host ] arg       mongo host to connect to ("left,right" for pairs)
  --port arg              server port. (Can also use --host hostname:port)
  --ipv6                  enable IPv6 support (disabled by default)
  -d [ --db ] arg         database to use
  -c [ --collection ] arg collection to use (some commands)
  -u [ --username ] arg   username
  -p [ --password ] arg   password
  --dbpath arg            directly access mongod data files in the given path,
                          instead of connecting to a mongod instance - needs to
                          lock the data directory, so cannot be used if a
                          mongod is currently accessing the same path
  --directoryperdb        if dbpath specified, each db is in a separate
                          directory
  -f [ --fields ] arg     comma seperated list of field names e.g. -f name,age
  --fieldFile arg         file with fields names - 1 per line
  --ignoreBlanks          if given, empty fields in csv and tsv will be ignored
  --type arg              type of file to import.  default: json (json,csv,tsv)
  --file arg              file to import from; if not specified stdin is used
  --drop                  drop collection first
  --headerline            CSV,TSV only - use first line as headers
  --upsert                insert or update objects that already exist
  --upsertFields arg      comma-separated fields for the query part of the
                          upsert. You should make sure this is indexed.
  --stopOnError           stop importing at the first error rather
                          than continuing
  --jsonArray             load a json array, not one item per line.
                          Currently limited to 4MB.
```

Note that the following options are only available in 1.5.3+: `upsert`, `upsertFields`, `stopOnError`, `jsonArray`

***Example: Import file format***

The import file should contain one document per line (with a few exceptions: if using --jsonArray, if importing a CSV then one document may span multiple lines if it contains multi-line string, if importing a CSV with --headerline then the first line doesn't correspond to a document but instead specifies which fields are being imported).

When using the standard JSON import format, each line in input file must be one JSON document which will be inserted directly into the database.

For example, if you imported a file that looks like this:

```
{ "_id" : { "$oid" : "4e5bb37258200ed9aabc5d65" }, "name" : "Bob", "age" : 28, "address" : "123 fake
street" }
```

by running

```
mongoimport -d test -c foo importfile.json
```

you'd get this imported:

```
> db.foo.find()
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4e5bb37258200ed9aabc5d65"), "name" : "Bob", "age" : 28, "address" : "123 fake
street" }
```

***Example: Importing with `upsert`***

The following command will import data from `temp.csv` into database `foo`, collection `bar` on localhost. Additionally it will perform an `upsert` of the data. By default the `upsert` will use the field marked as `_id` as the key for updates.

```
mongoimport --host localhost --db foo --collection bar --type csv --file temp.csv --headerline
--upsert
```

If the file does not have an `_id` field, you can update on alternate fields by using `upsertFields`. Note that when using this with **sharding**, the `upsertField` **must** be the shardkey.

Even though using --upsert may result in an update, every document in the input file must be formatted in a way that is compatible to insert. Therefore, no update modifiers are allowed.

#### *Example: Importing Interesting Types*

MongoDB supports more types that JSON does, so it has a special format for representing some of these types as valid JSON. For example, JSON has no date type. Thus, to import data containing dates, you structure your JSON like:

```
{"somefield" : 123456, "created_at" : {"$date" : 1285679232000}}
```

Then `mongoimport` will turn the `created_at` value into a Date.

Note: the $-prefixed types must be enclosed in double quotes to be parsed correctly.

#### mongoexport

mongoexport takes a collection and exports to either JSON or CSV. You can specify a filter for the query, or a list of fields to output.

See the mongoexport page for more information.

### *mongodump and mongorestore*

The are many ways to do backups and restores. (Here are some other backup strategies)

#### mongodump

This takes a database and outputs it in a binary representation. This is used for doing (hot) backups of a database.

If you're using sharding and trying to migrate data this way, this will dump shard configuration metadata information (from the config db) and overwrite configurations upon restore. This is true because without any options `mongodump` will dump all dbs/collections, including the config db where this information is kept.

```
options:
  --help                  produce help message
  -v [ --verbose ]        be more verbose (include multiple times for more
                          verbosity e.g. -vvvvv)
  -h [ --host ] arg       mongo host to connect to ("left,right" for pairs)
  -d [ --db ] arg         database to use
  -c [ --collection ] arg collection to use (some commands)
  -u [ --username ] arg   username
  -p [ --password ] arg   password
  --dbpath arg            directly access mongod data files in the given path,
                          instead of connecting to a mongod instance - needs
                          to lock the data directory, so cannot be used if a
                          mongod is currently accessing the same path
  --directoryperdb        if dbpath specified, each db is in a separate
                          directory
  -o [ --out ] arg (=dump) output directory
  -q [ --query ] arg      json query
  --oplog                 point in time backup (requires an oplog)
  --repair                repairs documents as it dumps from a corrupt db (requires --dbpath and
-d/--db)
  --forceTableScan        force a table scan (do not use $snapshot)
```

***Example: Dumping Everything***

To dump all of the collections in all of the databases, run `mongodump` with just the `--host`:

```
$ ./mongodump --host prod.example.com
connected to: prod.example.com
all dbs
DATABASE: log    to   dump/log
        log.errors to dump/log/errors.bson
                713 objects
        log.analytics to dump/log/analytics.bson
                234810 objects
DATABASE: blog    to    dump/blog
        blog.posts to dump/log/blog.posts.bson
                59 objects
DATABASE: admin    to    dump/admin
```

You'll then have a folder called "dump" in your current directory.

If you're running `mongod` locally on the default port, you can just do:

```
$ ./mongodump
```

***Example: Dumping a Single Collection***

If we just want to dump a single collection, we can specify it and get a single .bson file.

```
$ ./mongodump --db blog --collection posts
connected to: 127.0.0.1
DATABASE: blog        to     dump/blog
        blog.posts to dump/blog/posts.bson
                 59 objects
```

Currently indexes for a single collection will not be backed up. Please follow SERVER-808

***Example: Dumping a Single Collection to Stdout***

In version 1.7.0+, you can use stdout instead of a file by specifying `--out stdout`:

```
$ ./mongodump --db blog --collection posts --out - > blogposts.bson
```

*mongodump* creates a file for each database collection, so we can only dump one collection at a time to stdout.

***Example: Dumping a Single Collection with a query***

Using the -q argument, you can specify a JSON query to be passed. The example below dumps out documents where the "created_at" is between 2010-12-01 and 2010-12-31.

Note that **you must use the MongoDB Extended JSON format** when specifying a query.

```
$ ./mongodump --db blog --collection posts
    -q '{"created_at" : { "$gte" : {"$date" : 1293868800000},
                          "$lt"  : {"$date" : 1296460800000}
                        }
        }'
```

***Example: Using --oplog to get a point-in-time backup***

If data is changed over the course of a backup then the resulting dump may wind up in an inconsistent state that doesn't correspond to how the data looked in the DB at any one moment. This can be avoided by using --oplog in mongodump and --oplogReplay in mongorestore. If you use

--oplog then when the backup is started, mongodump will note the time of the most recent entry in the oplog. When the dump is finished, mongodump will then find all the oplog entries since the dump started and will dump those as well. When you run mongorestore with --oplogReplay, after it finishes restoring the main dump, it will replay the entries in the oplog dump so that the data restored ends up in a consistent state corresponding to the moment that the original dump finished.

```
$ ./mongodump --host localhost --oplog
connected to: localhost
all dbs
DATABASE: admin  to     dump/admin
        admin.system.users to dump/admin/system.users.bson
                1 objects
        admin.system.indexes to dump/admin/system.indexes.bson
                1 objects
DATABASE: test   to     dump/test
        test.foo to dump/test/foo.bson
                297110 objects
        test.system.indexes to dump/test/system.indexes.bson
                1 objects
        local.oplog.rs to dump/oplog.bson
                11304 objects
```

It is not valid to use --oplog when dumping from a `mongos`. You can use it to dump an individual shard though – see the Backing Up Sharded Cluster page. Likewise, --oplog can only be used on the *master* in a Master Slave configuration because the *slave* does not store an oplog.

***Performance Tips***

The default dump mode is to do a "snapshot" query. This results in the dump query walking through the `_id` index and returning results in that order. **If you use a custom `_id` value, not the default `ObjectId` type, then this could cause much more disk activity to do a dump; it could (dramatically) slow down things.**

In 1.9.1+ you can force a walk of the data without using an index:

```
$ ./mongodump --forceTableScan ...
```

In earlier versions you can cause this to behavior with a special query (one that cannot use the index):

```
$ ./mongodump -q "{xxxx : { $ne : 0 } }" ...
```

Note: In some shells (like bash) you must escape the "$" in this command like so "\$".

***If mongodump seems to skip documents...***

There is a maximum key size in the indexes, currently approximately 800 bytes. **This limit also applies to the default index on `_id`.** Any document with an _id key larger than 800 bytes will not be indexed on `_id`. By default mongodump walks the `_id` index and will skip documents with keys too large to index.

```
> use bigid
> db.foo.count()
3

$ mongodump -d bigid -c foo
connected to: 127.0.0.1
DATABASE: bigid  to  dump/bigid
 bigid.foo to dump/bigid/foo.bson
   0 objects
```

You can work around this issue with either of the options listed in the previous section:

```
$ mongodump -d bigid -c foo -q "{xxxx : { \$ne : 0 } }"
connected to: 127.0.0.1
DATABASE: bigid  to  dump/bigid
 bigid.foo to dump/bigid/foo.bson
   3 objects
```

#### mongorestore

`mongorestore` takes the output from mongodump and restores it. Indexes will be created on a restore. **`mongorestore` just does inserts with the data to restore**; if existing data (like with the same _id) is there it will not be replaced. This can be done with an existing database, or mongorestore will create a new one if the database does not exist. Mongorestore is mostly non-blocking (it just calls a series of normal inserts), though if the dump included indexes it may cause the DB to block as the indexes are rebuilt.

If you do not wish to create indexes you can remove the system.indexes.bson file from your database(s) dump directory before restoring. (The default _id indexes will always be created.)

```
usage: ./mongorestore [options] [directory or filename to restore from]
options:
  --help                  produce help message
  -v [ --verbose ]        be more verbose (include multiple times for more
                          verbosity e.g. -vvvvv)
  --version               print the program's version and exit
  -h [ --host ] arg       mongo host to connect to ( <set name>/s1,s2 for sets)
  --port arg              server port. Can also use --host hostname:port
  --ipv6                  enable IPv6 support (disabled by default)
  -u [ --username ] arg   username
  -p [ --password ] arg   password
  --dbpath arg            directly access mongod database files in the given
                          path, instead of connecting to a mongod  server -
                          needs to lock the data directory, so cannot be used
                          if a mongod is currently accessing the same path
  --directoryperdb        if dbpath specified, each db is in a separate
                          directory
  --journal               enable journaling
  -d [ --db ] arg         database to use
  -c [ --collection ] arg collection to use (some commands)
  --objcheck              validate object before inserting
  --filter arg            filter to apply before inserting
  --drop                  drop each collection before import
  --oplogReplay           replay oplog for point-in-time restore
  --keepIndexVersion      don't upgrade indexes to newest version
```

The above `--help` output is from v2.0.3. Check your version and output for the relevant options for your version of `mongorestore`.

### *bsondump*

v1.6+

This takes a bson file (typically from mongodump) and converts it to json/debug output. Passing `type=debug` outputs an indented format that shows the type and size for each object.

```
usage: bsondump [options] <bson filename>
options:
  --help                produce help message
  -v [ --verbose ]      be more verbose (include multiple times for more
                        verbosity e.g. -vvvvv)
  --version             print the program's version and exit
  --objcheck            validate object before inserting
  --filter arg          filter to apply before inserting
  --type arg (=json)    type of output: json,debug
```

The debug format displays extra debug information for each field, including the type and size, in an indented form. The debug option also tries to validate strings are valid utf-8.

### *See Also*

- Components
- mongofiles (GridFS tools)
- Backups

## mongoexport

The mongoexport utility is a command line tool that takes a collection and exports to either JSON or CSV. You can specify a filter for the query, or a list of fields to output.

> ⚠ Neither JSON nor TSV/CSV can represent all data types. Please be careful not to lose or change data (types) when using this. For full data fidelity, or backups, please use `mongodump`.

If you want to output CSV, you have to specify the fields in the order you want them output.

#### Command Line

```
options:
  --help                  produce help message
  -v [ --verbose ]        be more verbose (include multiple times for more
                          verbosity e.g. -vvvvv)
  -h [ --host ] arg       mongo host to connect to ("left,right" for pairs)
  -d [ --db ] arg         database to use
  -c [ --collection ] arg where 'arg' is the collection to use
  -u [ --username ] arg   username
  -p [ --password ] arg   password
  --dbpath arg            directly access mongod data files in the given path,
                          instead of connecting to a mongod instance - needs to
                          lock the data directory, so cannot be used if a
                          mongod is currently accessing the same path
  --directoryperdb        if dbpath specified, each db is in a separate
                          directory
  -q [ --query ] arg      query filter, as a JSON string
  -f [ --fields ] arg     comma seperated list of field names e.g. -f name,age
  --csv                   export to csv instead of json, requires -f
  -o [ --out ] arg        output file; if not specified, stdout is used
```

#### Dates

To pass a date in a query on the command line, use the syntax:

```
Date(<millis_since_epoch>)
```

You can get the numeric value for a date in the mongo shell:

```
$ mongo --nodb
> Date("2011-01-12T12:00:00Z").valueOf()
1294833600000
```

and then exit the shell and use that value in your mongoexport -q parameter:

```
mongoexport -q "{when:new Date(1294833600000)}" ...
```

#### Sorting

Example with the $orderby meta query operator:

```
$ mongoexport  -q '{ $query: {age: {$lte:40}}, $orderby: {age:-1} }'
```

#### Escaping your command line

If you are running a shell such as bash, it will interpret certain characters, so be sure to escape them for example the dollar sign. The echo command is a good way to test that the escaping is correct:

```
$ echo "{'facebookName':{'$ne':null}}"
{'facebookName':{'':null}}

$ echo "{'facebookName':{'\$ne':null}}"
{'facebookName':{'$ne':null}}
```

# Durability and Repair

MongoDB (specifically, the mongod process) is normally ran with *journaling* enabled. This makes it crash-safe.

Journaling is on by default in v2.0+ for 64 bit builds. (Use journaling, leave it enabled.)

### Journaling Enabled

If you are running with Journaling you should not do a repair to recover to a consistent state. When you start with journaling files they will automatically be replayed to a consistent state.



The `--dur` option was used before 1.8; now the option is `--journal`, and is on by default in version 1.9.2+ on 64-bit platforms

When using journaling, you may see the message:

```
**************
old lock file: mongod.lock.  probably means unclean shutdown,
but there are no journal files to recover.
this is likely human error or filesystem corruption.
found 23 dbs.
see: http://dochub.mongodb.org/core/repair for more information
*************
```

You may want to check:

- If someone moved the journal files
- The integrity of your disk.

### Replication without Journaling

If you have a replica set then it is favorable to wipe the corrupt/suspect data and re-sync the failed node from scratch or a backup than to do a repair. Repair makes a best effort attempt to put the database files in a useable state, but if corruption or bad data is found then it is skipped (and will be lost after the repair).

### No Replication nor Journaling

#### Recent Backup

If you have a recent backup then it makes sense to use that instead of repair if you are concerned with application data consistency.

#### Repair Command

When not using journaling (`--nojournal`), after a machine crash or `kill -9` termination, run the *repairDatabase* command. This command will check all data for corruption, remove any corruption found, and compact data files a bit. Repair is analogous to running *fsck* for a file system.

When journaling is enabled, it should not be necessary to run repair. However one could still use the repair command to compact a database.

From the command line:

```
mongod --repair
```

From the shell (you have to do for all dbs including local if you go this route):

```
> db.repairDatabase();
```

During a repair operation, *mongod* must store temporary files to disk. By default, *mongod* creates temporary directories under the dbpath for this purpose. Alternatively, the `--repairpath` command line option can be used to specify a base directory for temporary repair files.

Note that repair is a slow operation which inspects the entire database.

After running with `--repair`, *mongod* will start up normally.

When running the repairDatabase command on a non-primary server (replica set secondary), you will get an error stating that the server is not master. In order to run the repair, restart the server without the `--replSet` option so that the server is in single server mode, and run the repair. When you restart, make sure to do it on a different port, so as not to confused the other members. Then restart one more time with the `--replSet` option on. This may put the replica server back in a consistent state, but it is highly recommended to check the data validity by comparing a dump of the master/primary and repaired-replica. If there is a suspicion of data being corrupted, it is safer to resync the replica from scratch.

Because `mongod` rewrites all of the database files during the repair routine, if you do not run `--repair` under the same user account as `mongod` usually runs, you will need to run `chown` on your database files to correct the permissions before starting `mongod` again.

#### `mongod.lock`

Do not remove the `mongod.lock` file. If `mongod` is unable to start, use one of the methods above to correct the situation.

Removing the lock file will allow the database to start when its data may be corrupt. In general, you should never force the database to start with possibly corrupt data. In an emergency situation, you may want to remove the lock file to pull whatever data you can off the server. If you have ever manually removed the lock file and started the server back up, you should not consider that server "healthy."

#### Checking Data Integrity

You can use the *validate* command on to check if the contents of a collection are valid.

For example, here we validate the `users` collection:

```
> db.users.validate();
{
 "ns" : "test.users",
 "result" : " validate
  details: 0x1243dbbdc ofs:740bdc
  firstExtent:0:178b00 ns:test.users
  lastExtent:0:178b00 ns:test.users
  # extents:1
  datasize?:44 nrecords?:1 lastExtentSize:8192
  padding:1
  first extent:
    loc:0:178b00 xnext:null xprev:null
    nsdiag:test.users
    size:8192 firstRecord:0:178bb0 lastRecord:0:178bb0
  1 objects found, nobj:1
  60 bytes data w/headers
  44 bytes data wout/headers
  deletedList: 0000000010000000000
  deleted: n: 1 size: 7956
  nIndexes:2
    test.users.$_id_ keys:1
    test.users.$username_1 keys:1 ",
 "ok" : 1,
 "valid" : true,
 "lastExtentSize" : 8192
}
```

This is a slow command, as it has to check every document in a collection.

### If journaling is disabled

If the databases exited uncleanly and you attempt to restart the database, *mongod* will prin

```
**************
old lock file: /data/db/mongod.lock.  probably means unclean shutdown
recommend removing file and running --repair
see: http://dochub.mongodb.org/core/repair for more information
*************
```

Then it will exit.

### See Also

- What About Durability? (MongoDB Blog)
- *fsync* Command
- MongoDB (Single-Server) Data Durability Guide

# Security and Authentication

- Running in a Trusted Environment (without --auth)
- Securing the Network
    - Firewall Rules
    - IP Address Binding
    - TCP Port Numbers
- Running in Secure Mode (with --auth or --keyFile)
    - Logging in as an admin user
    - Enabling Secure Mode
    - Configuring
    - Viewing Users
    - Changing Passwords
    - Deleting Users
- Secure Mode with Sharded Clusters and Replica Sets
    - About the Key File
    - Security and Sharding
- FAQ

MongoDB includes authentication and coarse-grained (to date) access control functionality. By default, security mode is off. When off, it is then required that one runs the database in a trusted (network restricted) environment.

Secure mode requires v2.0+ when using sharding. Older sharded environments must run with the database in a trusted environment.

Please also see the replica set authentication documentation.

## Running in a Trusted Environment (without --auth)

Trusted environment / network is the default option and is simplest. It is often valid to run the database in a trusted environment with no in-database security and authentication (much like how one would use, say, memcached). Of course, in such a configuration, one must be sure only trusted machines can access database TCP ports - that is, the network must be secured or locked down. If dedicated servers are used for the database, one option would be to simply make them completely inaccessible externally.

## Securing the Network

### Firewall Rules

Given the default ports here are the basic firewall rules needed.

| Process | Direction | Ports | Notes |
|---|---|---|---|
| mongod | Incoming | 27017/* | client connections |
| mongod | Outgoing | */27017 | replication from other members, shard migrations |
| mongos | Incoming | 27017/* | client connections |
| mongos | Outgoing | */[27019, 27018] | connections to shards and config servers |

Notes:

- In a sharded environment:
  - All the mongo processes (mongos, mongod, mongod --configsvr) in the cluster should be able to connect to each other.
  - Clients must be able to connect to the `mongos` processes; however, they can be blocked from the `mongod`'s.
- In a non-sharded replica set environment:
  - All clients need to be able to connect to all non-hidden replica set members.
  - All members of a replica set (the `mongod` processes that is) need to be able to communicate with each other.

### IP Address Binding

By default, a mongod server will listen on all available IP addresses on a machine. You can restrict this to a single IP address with the 'bind_ip' configuration option for mongod.

For example this could be set to 127.0.0.1, the loopback interface, to make mongod only listen to requests from the same machine (localhost). Or, on a machine with two interfaces, we might want to listen only on the private network.

To enable listening on all interfaces, remove the bind_ip option from your server configuration file.

To accept requests on external interfaces you may also have to modify your computer's firewall configuration to allow access to the ports used by mongo (see above).

### TCP Port Numbers

MongoDB's default TCP port numbers are as follows:

- Standalone *mongod* : 27017
- *mongos* : 27017
- shard server (`mongod --shardsvr`) : 27018
- config server (`mongod --configsvr`) : 27019
- web stats page for *mongod* : add 1000 to port number (28017, by default). Most stats pages in the HTTP UI are unavailable unless the --rest option is specified. To disable the "home" stats page use --nohttpinterface. (This port should be secured, if used, however, the information on the stats home page is read only regardless.)

You can change the port number using the 'port' option when starting mongod. This is not recommended.

> ⚠ Do not rely on a non-standard port as a way to secure a Mongo server. Vulnerability scanners will scan across many port numbers looking for a response.

## Running in Secure Mode (with --auth or --keyFile)

MongoDB supports authentication and simple coarse-grained access control in "Secure Mode". This is enabled with the `--auth` and `--keyFile` command line parameters.

You authenticate a username and password in the context of a particular database. Once authenticated, a normal user has full read and write access to the database. You can also create read-only users that only have read access.

The `admin` database is special. Several administrative commands can only run on the `admin` database (so can only be run by an admin user). Also, users with access to the `admin` database also have read and write access to all other databases on the server/cluster.

> ⚠ Even if you are using Secure Mode, you should still set up some reasonable firewall rules.

### Logging in as an admin user

Although admin user accounts can access any database, you must log into the admin database. For example, if someAdminUser has an admin account, this login will succeed:

```
> use admin
> db.auth("someAdminUser", password)
> // and then if desired switch databases:
> use test
```

and this one will fail:

```
> use test
> db.auth("someAdminUser", password)
```

### Enabling Secure Mode

To enable secure mode, run the `mongod` process with the `--auth` option (or `--keyFile` for replica sets and sharding). You **must** either (1) have added a user to the `admin` db before starting the server with `-auth`, or (2) add the first user from a localhost connection (you cannot add the first user from a connection that is not local with respect to the `mongod` process).

### Configuring

We should first create an administrator user for the entire db server process. This user is stored under the special `admin` database.

If there are no admin users, one may access the database from the localhost interface without authenticating. Thus, from the machine running the database (and thus on localhost), run the database shell and configure an administrative user:

```
$ mongo localhost/admin
> // we are using database admin
> db.addUser("theadmin", "anadminpassword")
```

We now have a user created for database `admin`. Note that if we have not previously authenticated, we now must if we wish to perform further operations, as there is now an admin user.

```
> db.auth("theadmin", "anadminpassword")
```

Now, let's configure a "regular" user for another database.

```
> // give joe read/write access to the projectx database
> use projectx
> db.addUser("joe", "passwordForJoe")
```

Finally, let's add a readonly user (v1.4+).

```
> use projectx
> db.addUser("guest", "passwordForGuest", true)
```

### Viewing Users

User information is stored in each database's `system.users` collection. For example, on a database *projectx*, the `projectx.system.users` colleciton contains user information.

We can view existing users for the current database with the query:

```
> db.system.users.find()
```

### Changing Passwords

The shell `addUser` command may also be used to update a password: if the user already exists, the password simply updates.

Some Mongo drivers provide a helper function equivalent to the db shell's `addUser` method.

### Deleting Users

To delete a user from the shell:

```
> db.removeUser( username )
> // or
> db.system.users.remove( { user: username } )
> // check it worked:
> db.system.users.find()
> // check we are on the db we intended:
> db
```

## Secure Mode with Sharded Clusters and Replica Sets

**The keyFile is required!**
You are required to use the keyFile option for sharding or replica sets in secure mode. Just using the --auth option will not work.

Replica sets and sharding can use authentication in v2.0+ (replica sets without sharding in v1.8). From the client's perspective, it is identical to using single-server authentication: connect to your *mongos* (if using sharding), create users, authenticate when you make connections.

The only difference is that the servers use a *key file* to authenticate internal communication. A key file is basically a plaintext file which is hashed and used as an internal password.

To set up replica sets and/or sharding with authentication:

1. Create a key file that can be copied to each server in the set. A key file is composed of characters in the Base64 set, plus whitespace and newlines (see About the Key File for details).
2. Modify this file's permissions to be only readable by the current user.
3. Start each server in the cluster (including all replica set members, all config servers, and all *mongos* processes) with the *--keyFile /path/to/file* option.
4. Each client connection to the database must be authenticated before it can be used, as with single-server authentication.

You do not need to use the *--auth* option, too (although there's no harm in doing so), *--keyFile* implies *--auth*. *--auth* does **not** imply *--keyFile*.

### About the Key File

A key file must contain at least six Base64 characters and be no larger than 1KB (whitespace included). Whitespace characters are stripped

(mostly for cross-platform convenience), so the following keys are identical to the database:

```
$ echo -e "my secret key" > key1
$ echo -e "my secret key\n" > key2
$ echo -e "my    secret    key" > key3
$ echo -e "my\r\nsecret\r\nkey\r\n" > key4
```

As the key is stored in a file, you won't have to type it in much, so make it long and with a good degree of randomness within it – 32 characters long for example. Perhaps generate with mkpasswd plus extra appended characters from the administrator setting up the cluster.

If you run *mongod* with *-v*, the key will be printed in the log.

On *NIX, group and everyone must have 0 permissions (up to 700 is allowed) for the keyfile. If the permissions are too open on the key file, MongoDB will exit with an error to that effect.
Currently, permissions are not checked by *mongod* on Windows.

### Security and Sharding

To secure a shard cluster using the Secure Mode, you must enable secure mode on all components of the shard cluster. Use the `--keyFile` option on all `mongos`, config database `mongod` instances, and shard `mongod` instances.

There are two classes of security credentials in a shard cluster: credentials for "admin" users (i.e. for the "admin" database) and credentials for all other databases. These credentials reside in different locations within the shard cluster and have different roles:

1. Admin database credentials reside on the config databases, to receive admin access to the cluster you **must** authenticate a sessions while connected to a `mongos` instance using the "admin" database.
2. Other database credentials reside on the **primary** shard for the database.

This means that you **can** authenticate to these users and databases while connected directly to the primary shard for a database; however, for clarity and consistency all interactions between the client and the database should use a `mongos` instance.

Individual shards can store administrative credentials to their instance, which only permit access to a single shard. These credentials are stored in the shards "admin" database and are **completely** distinct from the cluster-wide administrative credentials described in "1." above.

## FAQ

- Are passwords sent over the wire encrypted?
  - Yes. (Actually a nonce-based digest is passed.)
- Are database operations, after authenticating, passed over the wire encrypted?
  - Not by default. See the SSL doc page for more information.
- How do I report a potential security issue in MongoDB?
  - Please email security@10gen.com with any and all relevant information.

## SSL

**Redirection Notice**
This page should redirect to http://docs.mongodb.org/manual/administration/ssl/.

# Admin UIs

MongoDB does not include a GUI-style administrative interface. Instead most administration is done from command line tools such as the mongo shell. However some UI's are available as separate community projects and are listed below. Some are focused on administration, while some focus on data viewing.

See also:

- The Mongo Monitoring Service (MMS) from 10gen.
- Tim Gourley's blog has a good summary of the tools.

- The built-in replica set admin UI page.

## Tools

- Tools
    - Fang of Mongo
    - UMongo (formerly JMongoBrowser)
    - MongoExplorer
    - MongoHub
    - MongoVision
    - MongoVUE
    - mViewer
    - Opricot
    - PHPMoAdmin
    - RockMongo
    - Genghis
    - Meclipse
    - Humongous
    - MongoDB ODA plugin for BIRT
- Commercial
    - Database Master
- Data Viewers
    - mongs

#### Fang of Mongo

- http://blueone.pl:8001/fangofmongo/
- http://github.com/Fiedzia/Fang-of-Mongo

A web-based user interface for MongoDB build with django and jquery.

It will allow you to explore content of mongodb with simple but (hopefully) pleasant user interface.

Features:

- field name autocompletion in query builder
- data loading indicator
- human friendly collection stats
- disabling collection windows when there is no collection selected
- twitter stream plugin
- many more minor usability fixes
- works well on recent chrome and firefox

To track progress on twitter: @fangofmongo

#### UMongo (formerly JMongoBrowser)

- home page: http://edgytech.com/umongo/
- github: http://github.com/agirbal/umongo
- download: https://github.com/agirbal/umongo/downloads

UMongo is a GUI app that can browse and administer a MongoDB cluster. It is available for Linux, Windows and Mac OSX.

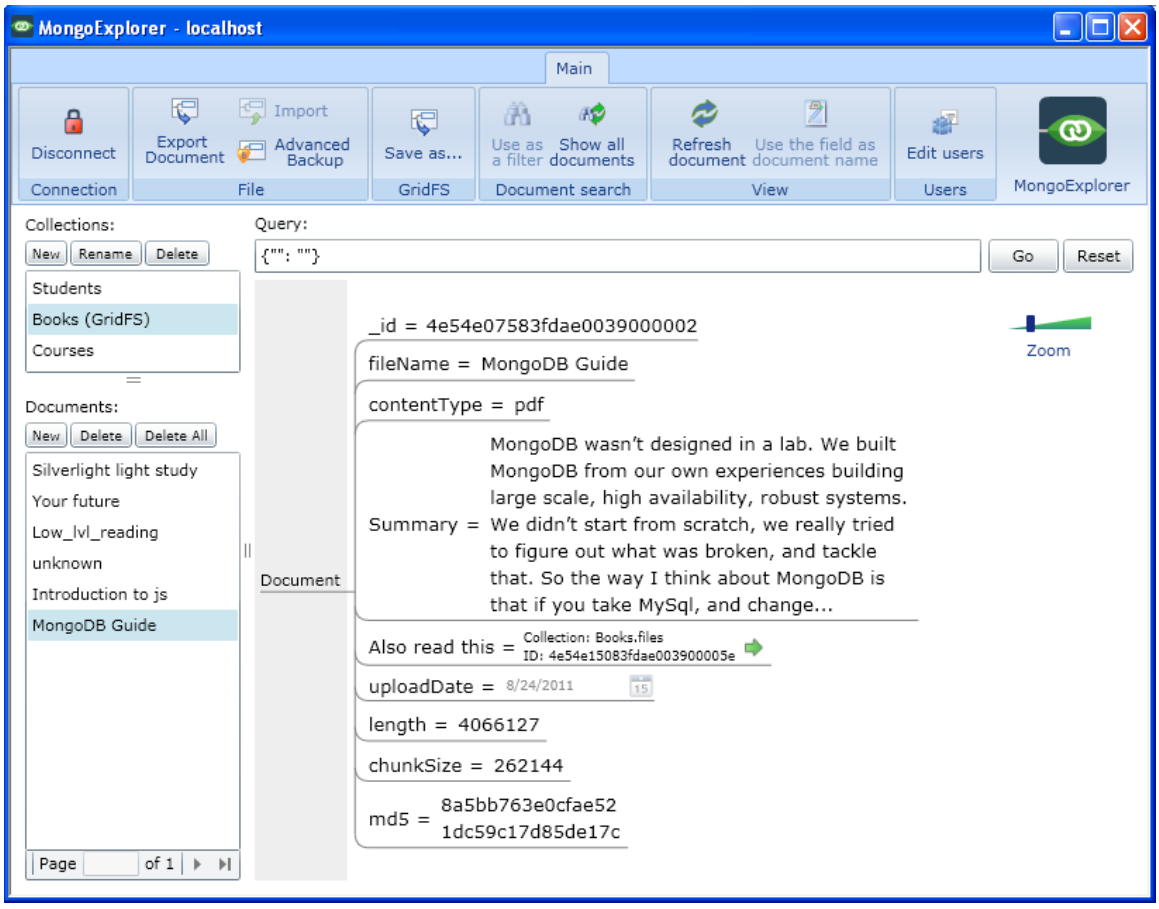
**MongoExplorer**

- http://mongoexplorer.com/

MongoExplorer is a MongoDB management tool, written in Silverlight (.net – works in windows/osx/?linux?).

Features:

- Easy to use
- Shows all the collections and documents of the database
- Uses a convenient tree view for documents
- Drag'n'drop is fully supported
- Document in-place editing




**MongoHub**

- http://mongohub.todayclose.com/

MongoHub is a native OS X GUI.

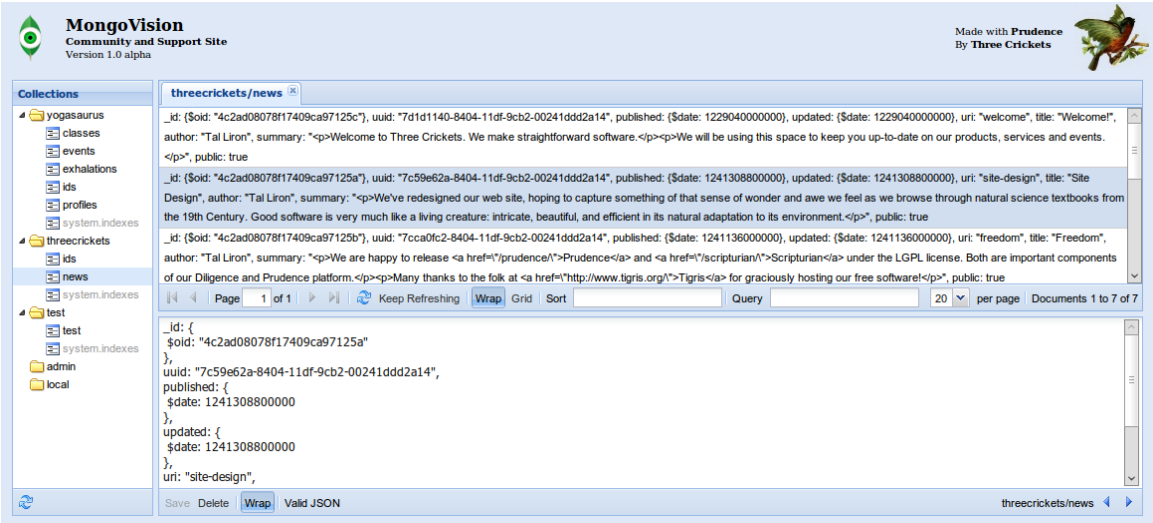
**MongoVision**

- http://code.google.com/p/mongo-vision/

MongoVision is a MongoDB management tool, written for Prudence.

Features:

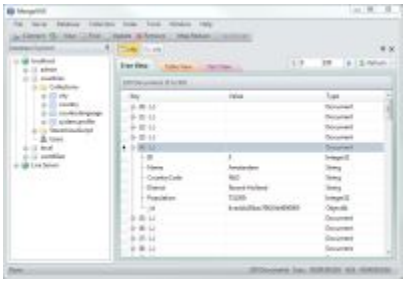
- Extended JSON support
- Tabular view
- Click to sort
- Filter boxes to alter query
- Auto-refresh




**MongoVUE**

- http://blog.mongovue.com

MongoVUE is a .NET GUI for MongoDB.



**mViewer**

- http://imaginea.com/mviewer

mViewer is a web-based MongoDB administration tool.

**Opricot**

- http://www.icmfinland.fi/oss/opricot/

Opricot is a hybrid GUI/CLI/Scripting web frontend implemented in PHP to manage your MongoDB servers and databases. Use as a point-and-click adventure for basic tasks, utilize scripting for automated processing or repetitive things.

Opricot combines the following components to create a fully featured administration tool:

- An interactive console that allows you to either work with the database through the UI, or by using custom Javascript.
- A set of simple commands that wrap the Javascript driver, and provide an easy way to complete the most common tasks.
- Javascript driver for Mongo that works on the browser and talks with the AJAX interface.
- Simple server-side AJAX interface for communicating with the MongoDB server (currently available for PHP).

**PHPMoAdmin**

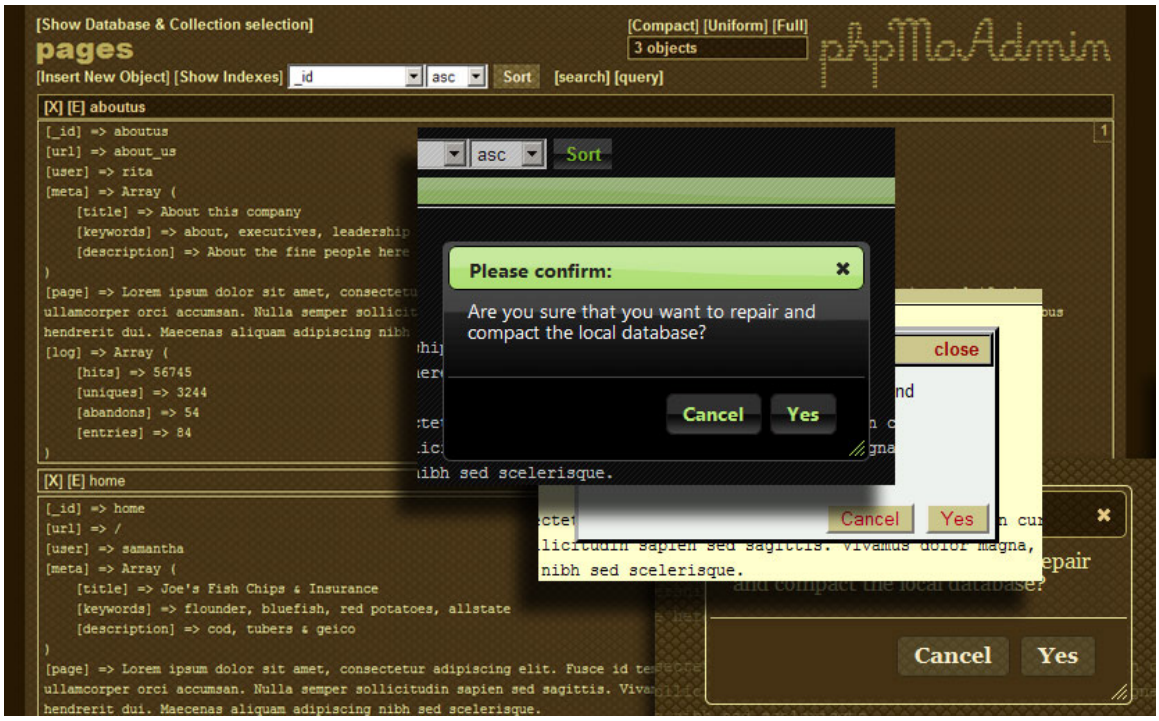
- http://www.phpmoadmin.com/

PHPMoAdmin is a MongoDB administration tool for PHP built on a stripped-down version of the Vork high-performance framework.

- Nothing to configure - place the moadmin.php file anywhere on your web site and it just works!
- Fast AJAX-based XHTML 1.1 interface operates consistently in every browser!
- Self-contained in a single 95kb file!
- Works on any version of PHP5 with the MongoDB NoSQL database installed & running.
- Super flexible - search for exact-text, text with * wildcards, regex or JSON (with Mongo-operators enabled)
- Option to enable password-protection for one or more users; to activate protection, just add the username-password(s) to the array at the top of the file.
- E_STRICT PHP code is formatted to the Zend Framework coding standards + fully-documented in the phpDocumentor DocBlock standard.
- Textareas can be resized by dragging/stretching the lower-right corner.
- Free & open-source! Release under the GPLv3 FOSS license!
- Option to query MongoDB using JSON or PHP-array syntax
- Multiple design themes to choose from
- Instructional error messages - phpMoAdmin can be used as a PHP-Mongo connection debugging tool

PHPMoAdmin can help you discover the source of connection issues between PHP and Mongo. Download phpMoAdmin, place the moadmin.php file in your web site document directory and navigate to it in a browser. One of two things will happen:

- You will see an error message explaining why PHP and Mongo cannot connect and what you need to do to fix it
- You will see a bunch of Mongo-related options, including a selection of databases (by default, the "admin" and "local" databases always exist) - if this is the case your installation was successful and your problem is within the PHP code that you are using to access MongoDB, troubleshoot that from the Mongo docs on php.net



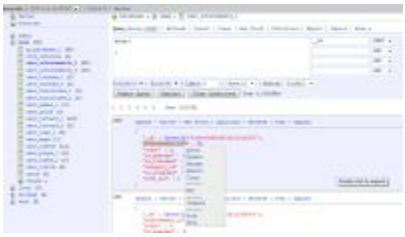

**RockMongo**

- http://code.google.com/p/rock-php/wiki/rock_mongo

RockMongo is a MongoDB management tool, written in PHP 5.

Main features:

- easy to install, and open source
- multiple hosts, and multiple administrators for one host
- password protection
- query dbs
- advanced collection query tool
- read, insert, update, duplicate and remove single row
- query, create and drop indexes
- clear collection
- remove and change (only work in higher php_mongo version) criteria matched rows
- view collection statistics



**Genghis**

A single-file MongoDB admin app written in PHP: http://genghisapp.com/

#### Meclipse

Eclipse plugin for mongodb: http://update.exoanalytic.com/org.mongodb.meclipse/

#### Humongous

A standalone MongoDB browser built in Ruby: http://github.bagwanpankaj.com/humongous/

#### MongoDB ODA plugin for BIRT

The MongoDB ODA plugin for BIRT is an Eclipse based plugin which enables you to connect to a Mongo database and pull out data to display in your BIRT report. The interface is simple and an extensive user guide is also provided with the release.

http://code.google.com/a/eclipselabs.org/p/mongodb-oda-birt-plugin/

### *Commercial*

#### Database Master

Database Master from Nucleon Software.

Seems to be written in .net for windows (windows installer).

Features:

- Tree view for dbs and collections
- Create/Drop indexes
- Server/DB stats
- Support RDMBS (MySQL, postgres, ...)

### *Data Viewers*

#### mongs

- http://www.whit537.org/mongs/

## Starting and Stopping Mongo

- Starting mongod
  - Default Data Directory, Default Port
  - Alternate Data Directory, Default Port
  - Alternate Port

    - Running as a Daemon
- Stopping mongod
    - Control-C
    - Sending shutdownServer() message from the mongo shell
    - Sending a Unix INT or TERM signal
- Memory Usage


MongoDB is run as a standard program from the command line. Please see Command Line Parameters for more information on those options. For information about running `mongod` or `mongos` as a service in Windows, see Windows Service.

The following examples assume that you are in the directory where the `mongod` executable resides. `mongod` is the primary database process that runs on an individual server. `mongos` is the sharding process. `mongo` is the administrative shell. This page discusses `mongod`.

## Starting mongod

#### *Default Data Directory, Default Port*

To start Mongo in default mode, where data will be stored in the `/data/db` directory (or `c:\data\db` on Windows), and listening on port 27017, just type

```
$ ./mongod
```

#### *Alternate Data Directory, Default Port*

To specify a directory for Mongo to store files, use the `--dbpath` option:

```
$ ./mongod --dbpath /var/lib/mongodb/
```

Note that you must create the directory and set its permissions appropriately ahead of time -- Mongo will not create the directory if it doesn't exist.

#### *Alternate Port*

You can specify a different port for Mongo to listen on for connections from clients using the `--port` option

```
$ ./mongod --port 12345
```

This is useful if you want to run more than one instance of Mongo on a machine (e.g., for running a master-slave pair).

#### *Running as a Daemon*

Note: these options are only available in MongoDB version 1.1 and later.

This will fork the Mongo server and redirect its output to a logfile.  As with `--dbpath`, you must create the log path yourself, Mongo will not create parent directories for you.

```
$ ./mongod --fork --logpath /var/log/mongodb.log --logappend
```

## Stopping mongod

#### *Control-C*

If you have Mongo running in the foreground in a terminal, you can simply "Ctrl-C" the process. This will cause Mongo to do a clean exit, flushing and closing it's data files. Note that it will wait until all ongoing operations are complete.

#### *Sending shutdownServer() message from the mongo shell*

The shell can request that the server terminate.

```
$ ./mongo
> use admin
> db.shutdownServer()
```

This command only works from localhost or if one is authenticated.

From a driver (where the helper function may not exist), one can run the command

```
{ "shutdown" : 1 }
```

If this server is the primary in a replica set, it will go through the following process (version 1.9.1+):

1. Check how up-to-date the secondaries are.
2. If no secondary within 10 seconds of the primary, return that we won't shut down (optionally pass the `timeoutSecs` option to wait for a secondary to catch up.
3. If there is a secondary within 10 seconds of the primary, the primary will step down and wait for the secondary to catch up.
4. After 60 seconds or once the secondary has caught up, the primary will shut down.

If there is no up-to-date secondary and you want the primary to shut down anyway, you can use `force : true`:

```
> db.adminCommand({shutdown : 1, force : true})
> // or
> db.shutdownServer({force : true})
```

You can also specify `timeoutSecs : N`, which will keep checking the secondaries for N seconds if none are immediately up-to-date. If any of the secondaries catch up within N seconds, the primary will shut down. If no secondaries catch up, it will not shut down.

```
> db.adminCommand({shutdown : 1, timeoutSecs : 5})
> // or
> db.shutdownServer({timeoutSecs : 5})
> // sample output:
{
        "closest" : NumberLong(1307651781),
        "difference" : NumberLong(1307651808),
        "errmsg" : "no secondaries within 10 seconds of my optime",
        "ok" : 0
}
```

***Sending a Unix INT or TERM signal***

You can cleanly stop `mongod` using a SIGINT or SIGTERM signal on Unix-like systems. Either ^C, "`kill -2 PID`," or `kill -15 PID` will work.

Sending a KILL signal `kill -9` will probably cause damage if `mongod` is not running with the `--journal` option. (In such a scenario, run repairDatabase command.)

After a hard crash, when not using `--journal`, MongoDB will say it was not shutdown cleanly, and ask you to do a repair of the database.

### Memory Usage

Mongo uses memory mapped files to access data, which results in large numbers being displayed in tools like top for the mongod process. This is not a concern, and is normal when using memory-mapped files. Basically, the size of mapped data is shown in the virtual size parameter, and resident bytes shows how much data is being cached in RAM.

You can get a feel for the "inherent" memory footprint of Mongo by starting it fresh, with no connections, with an empty /data/db directory and looking at the resident bytes.

## getCmdLineOpts command

The `getCmdLineOpts` command return both raw and formatted versions of the command line options used to start `mongod`.

```
use admin
db.runCommand({getCmdLineOpts: 1})
{
 "argv" : [
  "mongod",
  "--replSet",
  "replica-set-foo",
  "--logpath",
  "/data/mongod.log",
  "--oplogSize",
  "512",
  "--nojournal",
  "--dbpath",
  "/data/rs-30000",
  "--port",
  "30000",
  "--fork"
 ],
 "parsed" : {
  "dbpath" : "/data/rs-30000",
  "fork" : true,
  "logpath" : "/data/mongod.log",
  "nojournal" : true,
  "oplogSize" : 512,
  "port" : 30000,
  "replSet" : "replica-set-foo"
 },
 "ok" : 1
}
```

The "parsed" section is new in version 2.x

## Logging


- Command Line Options
- Rotating the log files
  - From the mongo shell
  - From the unix shell
- Accessing Logs via Shell
  - Get a list of available loggers
  - Get a log


MongoDB outputs some important information to stdout while its running. There are a number of things you can do to control this

### *Command Line Options*

- `--quiet` - less verbose output (more details)
- `-v` - more verbose output. use more v's (such as `-vvvvvv`) for higher levels of verbosity. To change the logging verbosity on a running instance, you can use the setParameter Command
- `--logpath <file>` - output to file instead of stdout
  - If you use `logpath`, you can rotate the logs by either running the `logRotate` command (1.3.4+) or sending SIGUSR1
  - You should always use `--logappend` with `--logpath` to append to the existing log file, instead of overwriting it

### *Rotating the log files*

Log file rotation renames the current log file to the same name with a timestamp file extension appended, then continues logging to a new file with the original name. The timestamp is the time that the logRotate command was executed, expressed in UTC (GMT) and formatted as ISO but with dashes instead of colons for the time portion.

For example:

```
$ ./mongod -v --logpath /var/log/mongodb/server1.log --logappend
```

will start mongod with verbose logging to `/var/log/mongodb/server1.log`, appending to any existing log file.

In another terminal, list the matching files:

```
$ ls /var/log/mongodb/server1.log*
server1.log
```

Rotate the log file using one of the methods described below, then list the files again:

```
$ ls /var/log/mongodb/server1.log*
server1.log  server1.log.2011-11-24T23-30-00
```

This indicates a log rotation performed at exactly 11:30 pm on November 24th, 2011 UTC, which will be the local time offset by the local time zone. The original log file is the one with the timestamp, and new log lines are now being written to the `server1.log` file.

If another logRotate command is given one hour later, an additional file will appear:

```
$ ls /var/log/mongodb/server1.log*
server1.log  server1.log.2011-11-24T23-30-00  server1.log.2011-11-25T00-30-00
```

The `server1.log.2011-11-24T23-30-00` file is unchanged from before, while `server1.log.2011-11-25T00-30-00` is the previous `server1.log` file renamed and `server1.log` is a new empty file that will receive new log output.

#### From the mongo shell

```
> use admin
> db.runCommand("logRotate");
```

**Windows**
The logRotate command is available on Windows in version 2.0.3 and higher

#### From the unix shell

Rotate logs for a single process

```
shell> kill -SIGUSR1 <mongod process id>
```

Rotate logs for all mongo processes on a machine

```
shell> killall -SIGUSR1 mongod
```

**Windows**
Windows does not have an equivalent to the unix `kill -SIGUSR1` feature, but the mongo shell can be used from the Windows command line using a JavaScript command file to issue a logRotate command.

```
C:\> type logRotate.js
db.getMongo().getDB("admin").runCommand("logRotate")
C:\> mongo logRotate.js
C:\> rem Log files rotated, still at Windows command prompt
```

### *Accessing Logs via Shell*

New in 1.9.x
See the getLog Command for more details

#### Get a list of available loggers

```
> show logs
> db.runCommand( { getLog : "*" } )
```

**Get a log**

```
> show log global
> db.runCommand( { getLog : "global" } )
```

## Command Line Parameters

MongoDB can be configured via command line parameters in addition to File Based Configuration. You can see the currently supported set of command line options by running the database with `-h [ --help ]` as a single parameter:

```
$ ./mongod --help
```

Information on usage of these parameters can be found in Starting and Stopping Mongo.

The following list of options is not complete; for the complete list see the usage information as described above.

The command line parameters passed to `mongod` can be viewed while the instance is running via the getCmdLineOpts command.

### *Basic Options*

| | |
|---|---|
| `-h \| --help` | Shows all options |
| `-f \| --config <file>` | Specify a configuration file to use |
| `--port <portno>` | Specifies the port number on which Mongo will listen for client connections. Default is 27017 |
| `--dbpath <path>` | Specifies the directory for datafiles. Default is `/data/db` or `c:\data\db` |
| `--fork` | Fork the server process |
| `--bind_ip <ip>` | Specifies a single IP that the database server will listen for |
| `--directoryperdb` | Specify use of an alternative directory structure, in which files for each database are kept in a unique directory. (more details) (v1.4+) |
| `--journalCommitInterval` | How often to group/batch commit (ms). Default 100ms |
| `--nojournal` | Disable journaling. In v2.0+, journaling is on by default for 64-bit |
| `--quiet` | Reduces amount of log output (more details) |
| `--nohttpinterface` | Disable the HTTP interface (localhost:28017) |
| `--rest` | Allow extended operations at the Http Interface |
| `--logpath <file>` | File to write logs to (instead of stdout). You can rotate the logs by sending SIGUSR1 to the server. |
| `--logappend` | Append to existing log file, instead of overwritting |
| `--syslog` | Send all output to syslog. Added in 2.1.0. Not compatible with `--logpath` |
| `--repairpath <path>` | Root path for temporary files created during database repair. Default is `dbpath` value. |
| `--cpu` | Enables periodic logging of CPU utilization and I/O wait |
| `--noauth` | Turns off security. This is currently the default |
| `--auth` | Turn on security |
| `-v[v[v[v[v]]]] \| --verbose` | Verbose logging output (`-vvvvv` is most verbose, `-v == --verbose`) |

| | |
|---|---|
| `--objcheck` | Inspect all client data for validity on receipt (useful for developing drivers) |
| `--syncdelay arg (=60)` | seconds between disk syncs. Do not use zero. (more details) |
| `--diaglog <n>` | Set oplogging level where n is 0=off (default) 1=W 2=R 3=both 7=W+some reads |
| `--nocursors` | Diagnostic/debugging option – limits results to single batch request. Do NOT use in production. This option will be removed in 2.1.0. |
| `--nohints` | Ignore query hints |
| `--noscripting` | Turns off server-side scripting. This will result in greatly limited functionality |
| `--notablescan` | Turns off table scans. Any query that would do a table scan fails |
| `--noprealloc` | Disable data file preallocation |
| `--smallfiles` | Use a smaller initial file size (16MB) and maximum size (512MB) |
| `--nssize <MB>` | Specifies .ns file size for new databases |
| `--slowms <value>` | Specifies the threshold (in milliseconds) above which long-running queries will appear in the log, and in the system.profiler collection if profiling is enabled. |
| `--sysinfo` | Print system info as detected by Mongo and exit |
| `--nounixsocket` | disable listening on unix sockets (will not create socket files at /tmp/mongodb-<port>.sock) |
| `--upgrade` | Upgrade database files to new format if necessary<br>(required when upgrading from <= v1.0 to v1.1+) |

#### *Replica Set Options*

| | |
|---|---|
| `--replSet <setname>[/<seedlist>]` | Use replica sets with the specified logical set name. Typically the optional seed host list need not be specified. |
| `--oplogSize <MB>` | Custom size for replication operation log |

#### *Master/Slave Replication Options*

Please use replica sets instead of master/slave.

| | |
|---|---|
| `--master` | Designate this server as a master in a master-slave setup |
| `--slave` | Designate this server as a slave in a master-slave setup |
| `--source <server:port>` | Specify the source (master) for a slave instance |
| `--only <db>` | Slave only: specify a single database to replicate |
| `--arbiter <server:port>` | Address of arbiter server |
| `--autoresync` | Automatically resync if slave data is stale |
| `--oplogSize <MB>` | Custom size for replication operation log |
| `--fastsync` | If the node has a completely up-to-date copy of the data, use this option to let it know it can skip the resync. Be careful – the server will assume it is caught up completely and if not so the data will be out of sync permanently. |

### --directoryperdb

By default data files for MongoDB are all created in a single directory. This directory is defined by the `--dbpath` variable and defaults to `/data/db`.

The "directory per DB" option (`--directoryperdb`) allows for a separate directory for the files of each database.

#### *Uses*

The most common use for this option is to enable data to be stored on different physical disks. This is generally accomplished by creating a symbolic link to the appropriate underlying hardware.

### *Example*

The following sample demonstrates the difference in directory structures. The `db/` directory is run without "directory per DB", the `db2/` directory is run *with* "directory per DB".

```
db:
total 417M
-rw------- 1 mongo mongo  64M 2011-04-05 12:50 foo.0
-rw------- 1 mongo mongo 128M 2011-04-05 12:50 foo.1
-rw------- 1 mongo mongo  16M 2011-04-05 12:50 foo.ns
-rw------- 1 mongo mongo  64M 2011-04-05 12:48 test.0
-rw------- 1 mongo mongo 128M 2011-04-05 12:48 test.1
-rw------- 1 mongo mongo  16M 2011-04-05 12:48 test.ns
-rwxr-xr-x 1 mongo mongo    5 2011-04-05 12:47 mongod.lock

db2:
total 16K
drwxr-xr-x 2 mongo mongo 4.0K 2011-04-05 12:50 foo
-rwxr-xr-x 1 mongo mongo    5 2011-04-05 12:47 mongod.lock
drwxr-xr-x 2 mongo mongo 4.0K 2011-04-05 12:48 test

db2/foo:
total 209M
-rw------- 1 mongo mongo  64M 2011-04-05 12:50 foo.0
-rw------- 1 mongo mongo 128M 2011-04-05 12:50 foo.1
-rw------- 1 mongo mongo  16M 2011-04-05 12:50 foo.ns

db2/test:
total 209M
-rw------- 1 mongo mongo  64M 2011-04-05 12:48 test.0
-rw------- 1 mongo mongo 128M 2011-04-05 12:48 test.1
-rw------- 1 mongo mongo  16M 2011-04-05 12:48 test.ns
```

## --quiet

When the `mongod` process is run with `--quiet`, certain messages are suppressed from the logs.

The following log messages are suppressed:

1. Connection accepted & connection closed
2. Commands: like... `drop`, `dropIndex`, `diaglogging`, `validate`, `clean`, ...
3. Replication syncing activity: sleeping, "repl: from... host"

we are not suppressing the actual commands, just suppressing the logging of the execution of those commands

The setting of `quiet` does not influence the setting of `verbose`. A server can be both quiet and verbose.

### *Example log entries suppressed*

```
#1: Connection accepted & closed
[initandlisten] connection accepted from 127.0.0.1:52798 #3
[conn3] end connection 127.0.0.1:52798

#2: Commands
[conn10] CMD: drop test.foo
[conn10] CMD: dropIndexes test.foo

#3: Replication syncing activity
[replslave] repl: sleep 1sec before next pass
[replslave] repl: from host:127.0.0.1:6900
```

### --syncdelay

This command line option specifies the number of seconds between data file flushes/syncs.

The MongoDB journal file flushes almost immediately, but data files are flushed lazily to optimize performance.

The default is 60 seconds.

A 0 setting means never, but is not recommended and should **never** be used with journaling enabled.

On Linux, longer settings will likely be ineffective unless `/proc/sys/vm/dirty_expire_centisecs` is adjusted also. Generally, set syncdelay to 4x the desired dirty_expire_centiseconds value.

If backgroundFlushing.average_ms is relatively large (>= 10,000 milliseconds), consider increasing this setting as well as `dirty_expire_centiseconds`.

Under extremely high write volume situations, a higher syncdelay value may result in more journal files as they cannot be rotated (deleted) as quickly.

## File Based Configuration

In addition to accepting Command Line Parameters, MongoDB can also be configured using a configuration file. A configuration file can be specified using the `-f` or `--config` command line options. On some packaged installs of MongoDB (for example Ubuntu & Debian), the default file can be found in /etc/mongodb.conf, which is automatically used when starting and stopping MongoDB from the service.

The following example configuration file demonstrates the syntax to use:

```
# This is an example config file for MongoDB.
dbpath = /var/lib/mongodb
bind_ip = 127.0.0.1
noauth = true # use 'true' for options that don't take an argument
verbose = true # to disable, comment out.
```

#### Parameters

**Before 2.0**
Unfortunately, flag parameters like "quiet" will register as true no matter what value you put after them. So don't write this: "quiet=false", just comment it out, or remove the line.

In 2.0, you can use `option=false` in the config file and it will be handled correctly (the option will be ignored).

Suppose you were running 1.8 and using a config file with the contents:

```
auth = false
```

This would actually **enable** authentication in 1.8. If you upgrade to 2.0, this would suddenly be parsed correctly, turning off authentication (which you might not want, if you've been running with it on forever). Thus, if you start up with 2.0+ and you have any `option=false` options in your config file, you'll get a warning that looks like:

```
warning: remove or comment out this line by starting it with '#', skipping now : auth=false
```

This is to let you know that this option is being skipped. If you want this option skipped, feel free to ignore this warning.

### *Basic database configuration*

| Parameter | Meaning | Example |
|---|---|---|
| dbpath | Location of the database files | `dbpath = /var/lib/mongodb` |
| port | Port the mongod will listen on | `port = 27017` |
| bind_ip | Specific IP address that mongod will listen on | `bind_ip = 127.0.0.1` |
| logpath | Full filename path to where log messages will be written | `logpath = /var/log/mongodb/mongodb.log` |
| logappend | Whether the log file will be appended to or over-written (default) at start-up | `logappend = true` |

### *Logging*

| Parameter | Meaning | Example |
|---|---|---|
| cpu | Enable periodic logging of CPU utilization and I/O wait | `cpu = true` |
| verbose | Verbose logging output (same as `v = true`) | `verbose=true` |
| v[vvvv] | Level of verbose logging output | `vvvvv = true` |

### *Security*

| Parameter | Meaning | Example |
|---|---|---|
| noauth | Turn authorization off. Off is currently the default | `noauth = true` |
| auth | Turn authorization on. Off is currently the default | `auth = true` |
| keyFile | Private key for cluster authentication. | `keyFile = /var/lib/mongodb/key` |

### *Administration & Monitoring*

| Parameter | Meaning | Example |
|---|---|---|
| nohttpinterface | Disable the HTTP interface. The default port is 1000 more than the dbport | `nohttpinterface = true` |
| rest | Turn on simple rest API | `rest = true` |
| noscripting | Turns off server-side scripting. This will result in greatly limited functionality | `noscripting = true` |
| notablescan | Turns off table scans. Any query that would do a table scan fails. | `notablescan = true` |
| noprealloc | Disable data file preallocation. | `noprealloc = true` |
| nssize | Specify .ns file size for new databases in MB | `nssize = 16` |

### *Replication*

#### *All*

| Parameter | Meaning | Example |
|---|---|---|
| oplogSize | Custom size for replication operation log in MB. | `oplogSize = 100` |

#### *Replica Pairs (Deprecated – do not use)*

| Parameter | Meaning | Example |
|---|---|---|

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| opIdMem | Size limit for in-memory storage of op ids in bytes | `opIdMem = 1000` |
| arbiter | | |

***Master-slave Replication***

| Parameter | Meaning | Example |
|---|---|---|
| master | In replicated mongo databases, specify here whether this is a slave or master | `master = true` |
| slave | In replicated mongo databases, specify here whether this is a slave or master | `slave = true` |
| source | Specify the | `source = master.example.com` |
| only | Slave only: specify a single database to replicate | `only = master.example.com` |
| autoresync | Automatically resync if slave data is stale | autoresync |
| fastsync | Indicate that this instance is starting from a dbpath snapshot of the repl peer | |

***Replica Sets***

| Parameter | Meaning | Example |
|---|---|---|
| replSet | Use replica sets with the specified logical set name. Typically the optional seed host list need not be specified. | `replSet = <setname>[/<seedlist>]` |

### *Sharding*

| Parameter | Meaning | Example |
|---|---|---|
| shardsvr | Indicates that this mongod will participate in sharding<br><br>* This is optional and just changes the default port | `shardsvr = true` |

### *Journaling*

| Parameter | Meaning | Example |
|---|---|---|
| journal | Whether writes will be journaled or not. This feature enables fast recovery from crashes | `journal = true` |
| nojournal | Turns off journaling if it is enabled by default (1.9.2+) | `nojournal = true` |

***Notes***

- Lines starting with octothorpes (#) are comments
- Options are case sensitive
- The syntax is assignment of a value to an option name
- All command line options are accepted, for example "vvvv=true"

# GridFS Tools

## File Tools

`mongofiles` is a tool for manipulating GridFS from the command line.

Example:

```
$ ./mongofiles list
connected to: 127.0.0.1

$ ./mongofiles put libmongoclient.a
connected to: 127.0.0.1
done!

$ ./mongofiles list
connected to: 127.0.0.1
libmongoclient.a 12000964

$ cd /tmp/

$ ~/work/mon/mongofiles get libmongoclient.a

$ ~/work/mongo/mongofiles get libmongoclient.a
connected to: 127.0.0.1
done write to: libmongoclient.a

$ md5 libmongoclient.a
MD5 (libmongoclient.a) = 23a52d361cfa7bad98099c5bad50dc41

$ md5 ~/work/mongo/libmongoclient.a
MD5 (/Users/erh/work/mongo/libmongoclient.a) = 23a52d361cfa7bad98099c5bad50dc41
```

## DBA Operations from the Shell

This page lists common DBA-class operations that one might perform from the MongoDB shell.

Note one may also create .js scripts to run in the shell for administrative purposes.

```
help                          show help
show dbs                      show database names
show collections              show collections in current database
show users                    show users in current database
show profile                  show most recent system.profile entries with time >= 1ms
use <db name>                 set curent database to <db name>

db.addUser (username, password)
db.removeUser(username)

db.cloneDatabase(fromhost)
db.copyDatabase(fromdb, todb, fromhost)
db.createCollection(name, { size : ..., capped : ..., max : ... } )

db.getName()
db.dropDatabase()

// runs the collstats] command on each collection in the database
db.printCollectionStats()

db.currentOp() displays the current operation in the db
db.killOp() kills the current operation in the db

db.getProfilingLevel()
db.setProfilingLevel(level) 0=off 1=slow 2=all

db.getReplicationInfo()
db.printReplicationInfo()
db.printSlaveReplicationInfo()
db.repairDatabase()

db.version() current version of the server

db.shutdownServer()
```

Commands for manipulating and inspecting a collection:

```
db.foo.drop() drop the collection
db.foo.dropIndex(name)
db.foo.dropIndexes()
db.foo.getIndexes()
db.foo.ensureIndex(keypattern,options) - options object has these possible
                                         fields: name, unique, dropDups

db.foo.find( [query] , [fields])       - first parameter is an optional
                                         query filter. second parameter
                                         is optional
                                         set of fields to return.
                                    e.g. db.foo.find(
                                                   { x : 77 } ,
                                                   { name : 1 , x : 1 } )
db.foo.find(...).count()
db.foo.find(...).limit(n)
db.foo.find(...).skip(n)
db.foo.find(...).sort(...)
db.foo.findOne([query])

db.foo.getDB() get DB object associated with collection

db.foo.count()
db.foo.group( { key : ..., initial: ..., reduce : ...[, cond: ...] } )

db.foo.renameCollection( newName ) renames the collection

db.foo.stats()
db.foo.dataSize()
db.foo.storageSize() - includes free space allocated to this collection
db.foo.totalIndexSize() - size in bytes of all the indexes
db.foo.totalSize() - storage allocated for all data and indexes
db.foo.validate() (slow)

db.foo.insert(obj)
db.foo.update(query, object[, upsert_bool])
db.foo.save(obj)
db.foo.remove(query)                   - remove objects matching query
                                         remove({}) will remove all
```

### See Also

- collStats (stats) command
- Commands

# Architecture and Components

This is a list of the components (processes) in the MongoDB server package.

- mongod - The core database process
- mongos - Sharding controller
- mongo - The database shell (uses interactive javascript)

- Import Export Tools
  - mongoimport
  - mongoexport
  - mongodump
  - mongorestore
  - bsondump

- mongofiles - the GridFS utility

- mongostat

MongoDB has two primary components to the database server. The first is the `mongod` process which is the core database server. In many cases, mongod may be used as a self-contained system similar to how one would use mysqld on a server. Separate mongod instances on different machines (and data centers) can replicate from one to another.

Another MongoDB process, `mongos`, facilitates auto-sharding. mongos can be thought of as a "database router" to make a cluster of mongod processes appear as a single database. See the sharding documentation for more information.

### See Also

- Mongo Concepts and Terminology

# Windows

## Windows Quick Links and Reference Center

### Running MongoDB on Windows

See the Quickstart page for info on how to install and run the database for the first time.

### Running as a Service

See the Windows Service page.

### The MongoDB Server

Get pre-built binaries on the Downloads page. Binaries are available for both 32 bit and 64 bit Windows. MongoDB uses memory-mapped files for data storage, so for servers managing more than 2GB of data you will definitely need the 64 bit version (and a 64 bit version of Windows).

### Writing Apps

You can write apps in almost any programming language – see the Drivers page. In particular C#, .NET, PHP, C and C++ work just fine.

- CSharp Language Center
- CSharp Community Projects

### Building

We recommend using the pre-built binaries, but Mongo builds fine with Visual Studio 2008 and 2010. See the Building for Windows page.

### Versions of Windows

We have successfully ran MongoDB (mongod etc.) on:

- Windows Server 2008 R2 64 bit
- Windows 7 (32 bit and 64 bit)
- Windows XP
- Vista

### Windows Azure

Instructions for running MongoDB on Azure on Azure Worker Role (alpha)
MongoDB Installer for Windows Azure VM

### AppHarbor

Instructions for running MongoDB on AppHarbor
Sample ASP.NET MVC app that uses MongoDB from AppHarbor

## MongoDB on Azure



The MongoDB Replica Set Azure wrapper is currently a preview release. Please provide feedback, mongodb-dev, mongodb-user and IRC #mongodb are good places!

**Note:** In this project, the MongoDB servers run as **worker roles**. For information about running MongoDB on the Window Azure Virtual Machines, see the MongoDB Installer for Windows Azure

- Getting the package
- Components

- Initial Setup
- Deploying and Running
    - Running locally on compute/storage emulator
    - Deploying to Azure
- Additional Information
- FAQ/Troubleshooting
- Known issues/Where do I file bugs?


The MongoDB Wrapper for Azure allows you to deploy and run a MongoDB replica set on Windows Azure. Replica set members are run as Azure worker role instances. MongoDB data files are stored in an Azure Blob mounted as a cloud drive. One can use any MongoDB driver to connect to the MongoDB server instance. The MongoDB C# driver is included as part of the package.

### *Getting the package*

The MongoDB Azure Wrapper is delivered as a Visual Studio 2010 solution with associated source files. The simplest way to get the package is by downloading it from GitHub. It is recommended using the latest tagged version.

Alternatively, you can clone the repository run the following commands from a git bash shell:

```
$ cd <parentdirectory>
$ git config --global core.autocrlf true
$ git clone git@github.com:mongodb/mongo-azure.git
$ cd mongo-azure
$ git config core.autocrlf true
```

You must set the global setting for core.autocrlf to true before cloning the repository. After you clone the repository, we recommend you set the local setting for core.autocrlf to true (as shown above) so that future changes to the global setting for core.autocrlf do not affect this repository. If you then want to change your global setting for core.autocrlf to false run:

```
$ git config --global core.autocrlf false
```

### *Components*

Once you have unzipped the package or cloned the repository, you will see the following directories:

- **Setup** - Contains a file called solutionsetup.cmd. **Run this before opening the solution file.**
- **src** - Contains all the project's source code.
- **src/SampleApplications** - Contains sample applications that you can use to demo MongoDB on Azure. See the listing for more info.
- **lib** - Library files. Includes the MongoDB .NET driver and the downloaded MongoDB Windows binaries.
- **Tools** - Contains tools you might want to run.

### *Initial Setup*

We assume you're running Windows x64 and Visual Studio. If not, install those first; Visual Studio 2010 or Visual Web Developer 2010 should work.

1. Install the latest Windows Azure SDK June 2012
2. Enable IIS on your local machine. This can be done by going to the "Turn Windows features on or off" control panel, under "Programs". Check "Internet Information Services" and also check ASP.NET under World Wide Web Services|Application Development Features.
3. Clone the project.
4. **Before opening either solution file**, run Setup\solutionsetup.cmd.
4. Open the solution you want, set the "MongoDB.WindowsAzure.(Sample.)Deploy" project as the StartUp Project, and run it!

The setup script does the following:

- Creates the cloud configs for the 2 solutions ServiceConfiguration.Cloud.cscfg
- Downloads the MongoDB binaries to lib\MongoDBBinaries.

**32-bit note:** The setup script downloads the 64-bit version of MongoDB by default. If you are developing with 32-bit Windows, you will need to download the latest 32-bit MongoDB binaries and place them in lib\MongoDBBinaries yourself. Do this after running solutionsetup.cmd so it won't overwrite your work.

The prerequisites can be found in the Github readme

Once these are installed, you can open either solution (MongoDB.WindowsAzure.sln) for just the replica set; MongoDB.WindowsAzure.Sample.sln for the replica set and a sample IIS app, MvcMovie, to test it.

### *Deploying and Running*

#### Running locally on compute/storage emulator

The following instructions are for running the sample application.

To start, you can test out your setup locally on your development machine. The default configuration has 3 replica set members running on ports 27017, 27018 and 27019 with a replica set name of 'rs'.

In Visual Studio, run the solution using F5 or Debug->Start Debugging. This will start up the replica set and the MvcMovie sample application (if you are in the sample solution).

You can verify this by using the MvcMovie application in the browser or by running mongo.exe against the running instances.

#### Deploying to Azure

Once you have the application running locally, you can deploy the sample app solution to Windows Azure. **Note** You cannot execute locally against storage in Azure due to the use of Windows Azure Drive.

- Detailed configuration options are outlined here
- Step-by-step deployment instructions are here

### *Additional Information*

The azure package wraps and runs mongod.exe with the following mongod command line options:

```
--dbpath --port --logpath --journal --nohttpinterface --logappend --replSet
```

MongoDB creates the following containers and blobs on Azure storage:

- Mongo Data Blob Container Name - mongoddatadrive(replica set name)
- Mongo Data Blob Name - mongoddblob(instance id).vhd

### *FAQ/Troubleshooting*

- Can I run mongo.exe to connect?
  - Yes if you set up remote desktop. Then you can connect to the any of the worker role instances and run e:\approot\MongoDBBinaries\bin\mongo.exe.
- Role instances do not start on deploy to Azure
  - Check if the storage URLs have been specified correctly.

### *Known issues/Where do I file bugs?*

https://jira.mongodb.org/browse/AZURE

## Azure Deployment

The screenshots in this article refer to the older (pre-June 2012) Windows Azure portal, but the functionality is the same.


- In a development environment
- In the Azure environment
  - Azure setup (first time only per deployment)
    - Affinity Group
    - Storage account
    - Service
  - Deployment configuration for Mvc Role
    - Settings
  - Deployment configuration for Replica Set Role
    - Configuration
    - Settings
    - Local Storage
    - Package and Publish


### *In a development environment*

The solution can be built and run in a development environment using the Azure emulators as is using Visual Studio 2010 (if adequate disk space is available). Since this solution uses Cloud Drive you cannot run from a development environment against Azure cloud storage. Instead, when you run in your development environment it uses development storage:

- The mongod log file is at `C:\Users\<user>\AppData\Local\dftmp\Resources\<deploymentid>\directory\MongodLogDir` **Note** - On a development environment the port mongod listens on would be configured port (27017 by default) + instance id.
- The mongod data files are at `C:\Users\<user>\AppData\Local\dftmp\wadd\devstoreaccount1\mongoddatadrive(replica set name)\mongoddblob(instance id).vhd\data`.
  **Note** - Additionally when the app is running you should be able to access the drives on mounting as you would access any mounted drive.

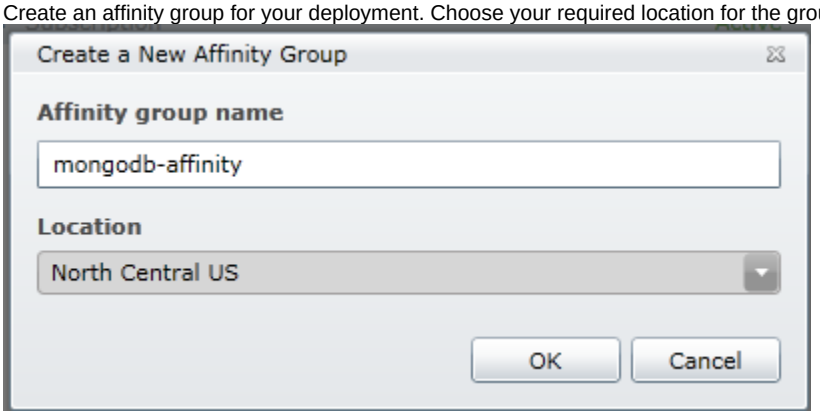
### *In the Azure environment*

Login to the Azure management portal using your azure credentials

#### Azure setup (first time only per deployment)

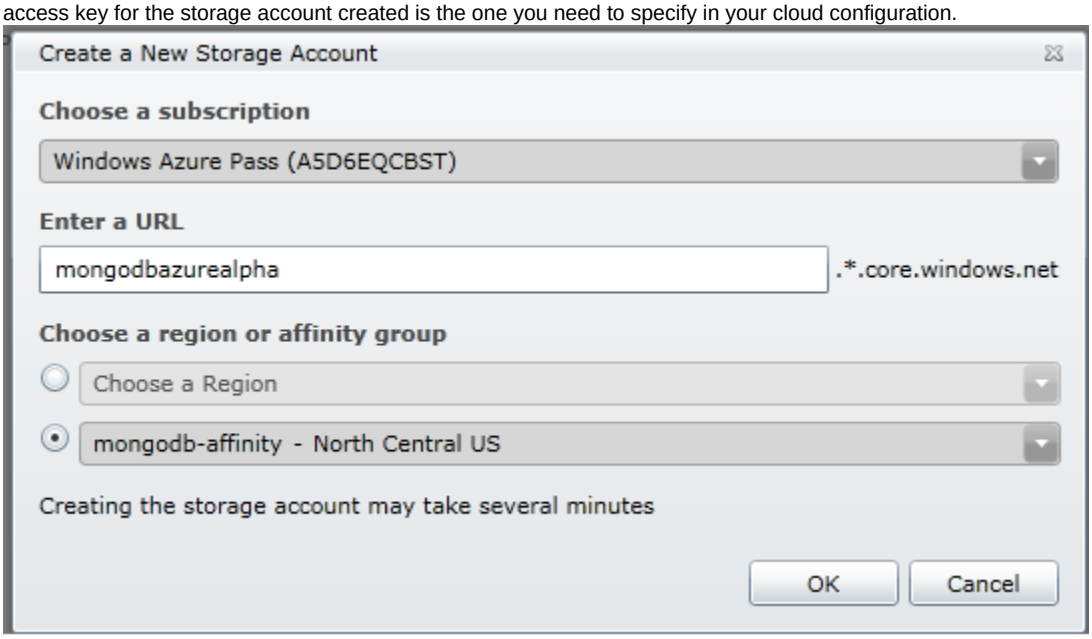
##### *Affinity Group*

Create an affinity group for your deployment. Choose your required location for the group.



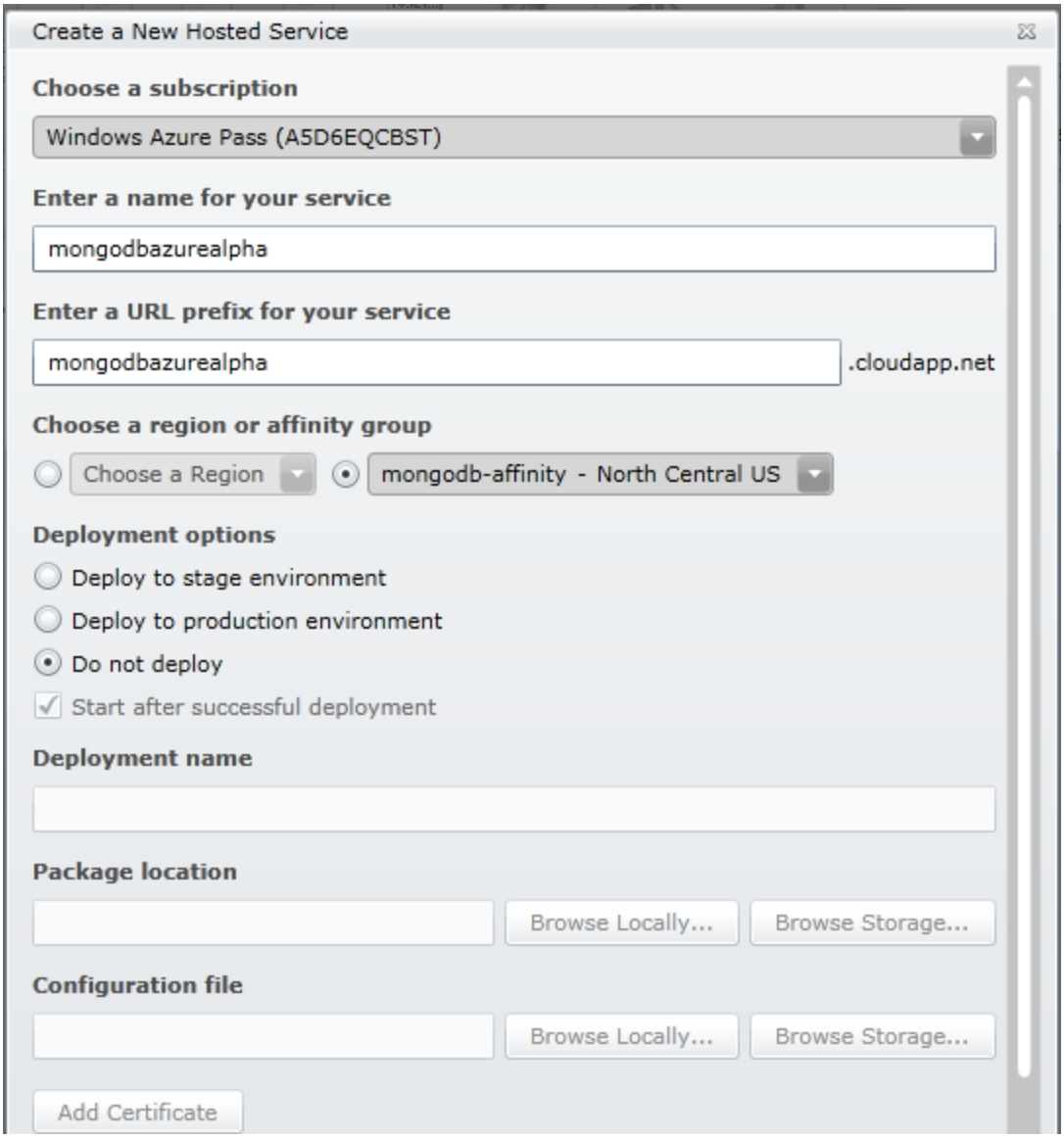

##### *Storage account*

Create the required number of storage account(s) to store the blobs. For region/affinity choose the affinity group you created earlier. **Note** The access key for the storage account created is the one you need to specify in your cloud configuration.




##### *Service*

Create a new hosted service to host your Mongo package. For region/affinity group use the same affinity group as your storage account. **Note** for cloud drives the compute and storage instances should be in the same azure domain. Choose do not deploy



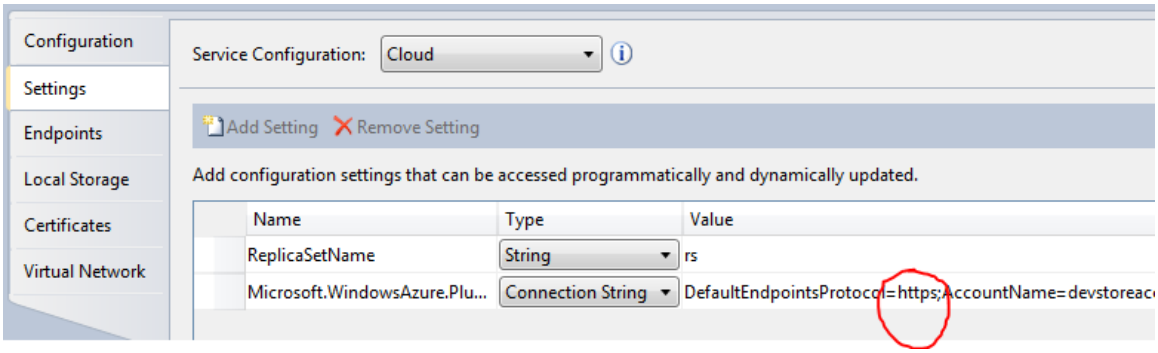

**Deployment configuration for Mvc Role**

If deploying the sample app you can use the default settings as is. You would only need to set the storage settings for diagnostics

***Settings***

In the Settings tab

- **ReplicaSetName** - This should be the same as the replica set name specified in the ReplicaSetRole
- **Microsoft.WindowsAzure.Plugins.Diagnostics.ConnectionString** - Specify your azure storage credentials. Ensure that the connection mode is https.



**Deployment configuration for Replica Set Role**

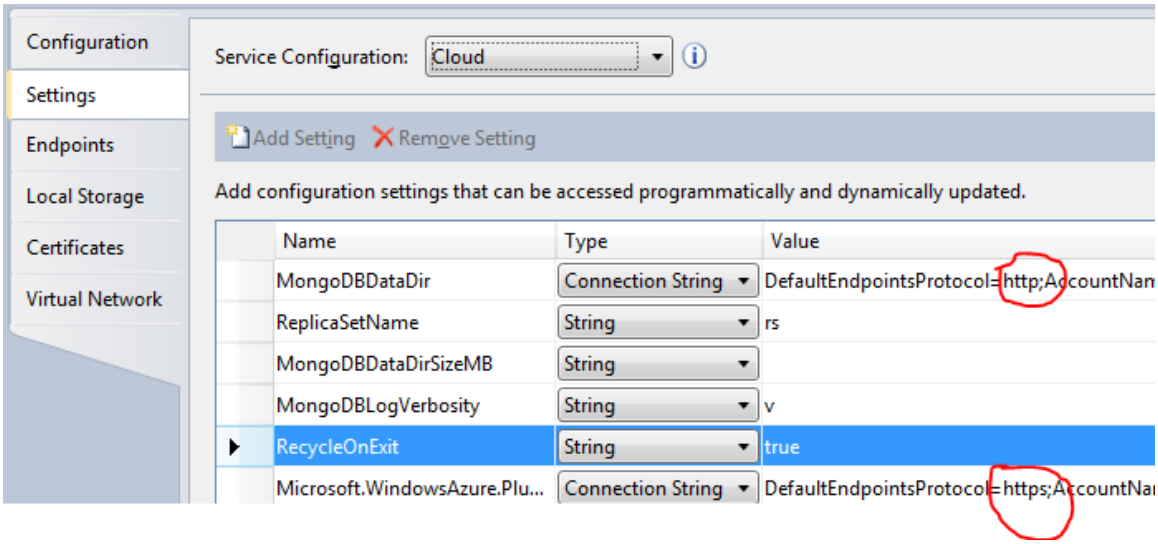
***Configuration***

- Ensure VM size for ReplicaSetRole is at least Medium. Larger instance sizes provide more RAM and also greater bandwidth. More information on instance sizes can be found here
- Set the Instance Count equivalent to the required number of replica set members. Default is 3.

***Settings***

Change connection setting from UseDevelopment storage to actual storage account credentials. It is recommended to use different storage accounts for data and diagnostics. This would allow you to give access to external monitors for diagnostics information without giving access to your data.

- **MongoDBDataDir** - Ensure that connection mode is **http**
- **ReplicaSetName** - This is the name of the replica set in the replica set configuration. This is also the suffix to the blob container created in your storage account. **Note** - This needs to be the same as the replica set name in the client application.
- **MongoDBDataDirSize** - Maximum size of your cloud drive where mongod data files are stored. Currently the maximum size can be 1TB.
- **MongoDBLogVerbosity** - Verbosity for mongod logging. Default is -v
- **RecycleOnExit** - This dictates whether the worker role is recycled when MongoDB exits. Default is true. Set to false initially when debugging.
- **Microsoft.WindowsAzure.Plugins.Diagnostics.ConnectionString** - Ensure that the connection mode is **https**

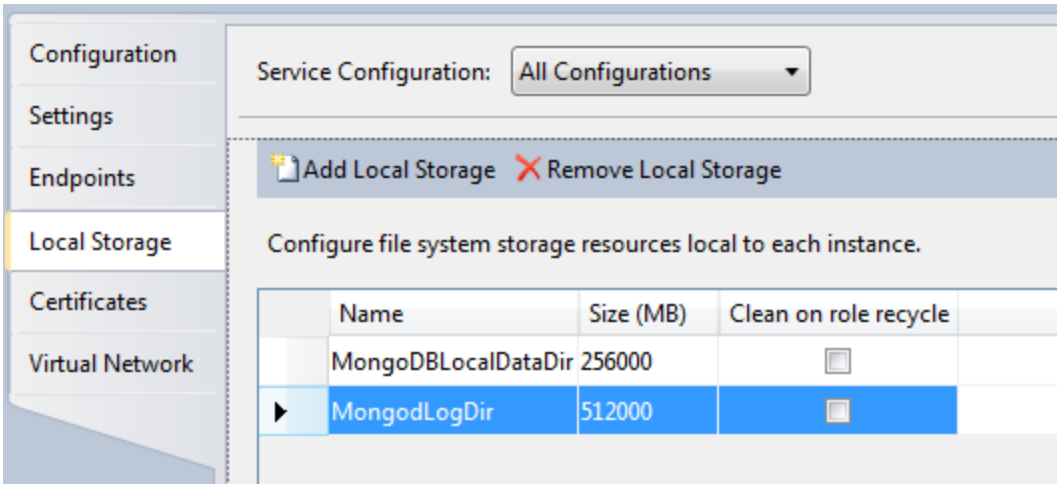



**Note** - If deploying multiple Azure instances make sure you use different storage accounts for each of the deployments or different replica set names if using the same storage account.

***Local Storage***

Configure the amount of local storage required depending on the VM size chosen. Ensure Clean on recycle role is unchecked. The following are recommendations of Local Storage **Note** All sizes are in MB.

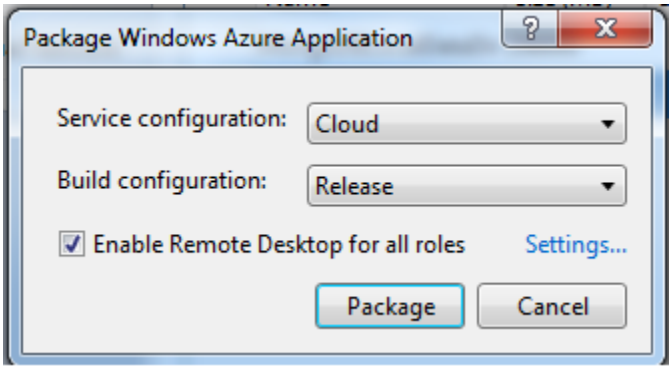
| VM Size | MongoDBLocalDataDir | MongodLogDir |
|---|---|---|
| Medium | 256000 (250 GB) | 51200 (50GB) |
| Large | 768000 (750 GB) | 51200 (50GB) |
| Extra Large | 1024000 (1000GB) | 51200 (50GB) |




***Package and Publish***

Create the Azure package by right clicking on the cloud project and choosing Package. Choose the Service Configuration as Cloud and Build Configuration as Release.

- Enable remote desktop on the role intances if required http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/gg443832.aspx




- Deploy the created package from the Azure management portal. More details on deploying can be found at http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/magazine/ee336122.aspx

When deploying to the Azure cloud make sure to check deployment warnings/errors to see for any breaking issues. Some common errors are

- Remote desktop is enabled but the remote desktop certificate has not been uploaded to the portal
- https is not chosen for diagnostics connection string
- If deploying the sample MvcMovie application, you can safely ignore the warning that indicates you are only running 1 instance of it.

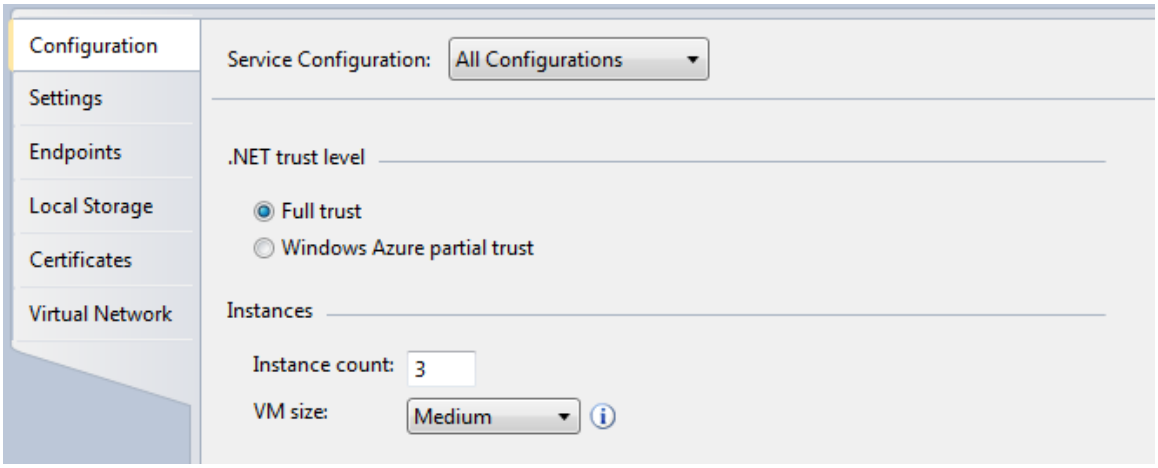
## MongoDB Azure Worker Role Configuration

- MongoDBRole configuration

The following are the configuration operations available as part of the MongoDB Replica Sets Azure package.

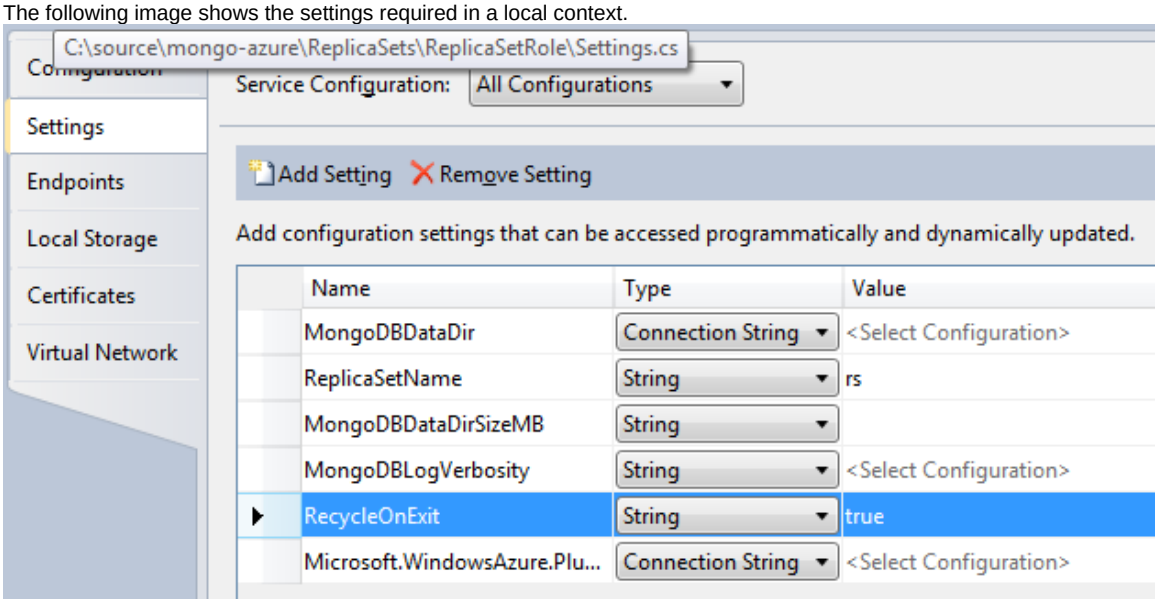
### *MongoDBRole configuration*

- Configuration
  - **.Net Trust Level** - Ensure this is set to **Full Trust**
  - **Instance count** - Set to the number of replica set members you require. Default is 3.
    - Setting this to 1 would run a replica set with 1 instance (equivalent to stand alone)
  - **VM Size** - Choose size of Medium or higher. **Note** The I/O characteristics of small or extra small instance make these configurations unsuitable for MongoDB.

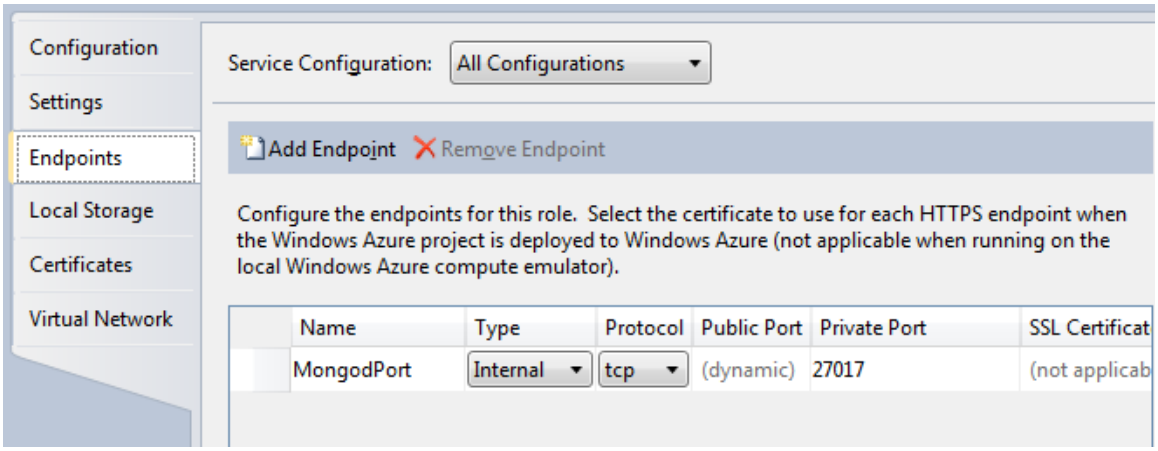



- Settings
  - **MongoDBDataDir** - Storage for mongo data files --dbpath. Configure for development or deployment. Data files are in a subdirectory called `data`.
  - **MongoDBDataDirSizeMB** - Size of blob (in MegaBytes) allocated for mongodb data directory. Default is 1GB for the emulator and 100GB for deployed.
  - **ReplicaSetName** - Name of the mongodb replica set. Default is rs. This also serves as the blob container name
  - **MongoDBLogVerbosity** - Verbosity to start mongod with. Default is -v
  - **RecycleOnExit** - This dictates whether the worker role is recycled when MongoDB exits. Default is true. Set to false initially when debugging.
  - **Microsoft.WindowsAzure.Plugins.Diagnostics.ConnectionString** - Storage for diagnostics information.

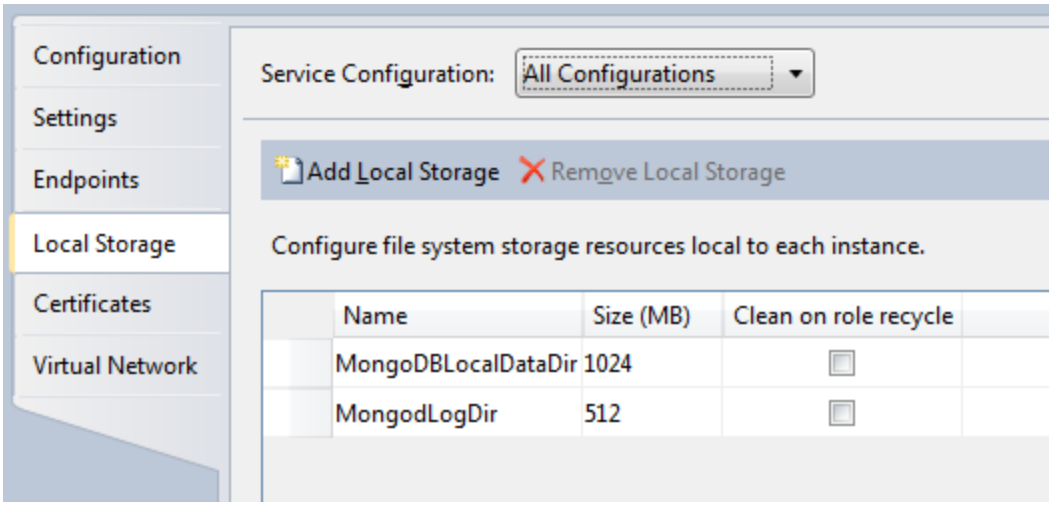
The following image shows the settings required in a local context.




- Endpoints
  - **MongodPort** - Port on which mongod listens. Default is 27017. If running in the Azure emulator this is port for the first instance that is started.




- Local Storage
  - **MongoDBLocalDataDir** - This specifies the size of the local storage used as a cache for the Windows Azure Drive used as the mongod data directory. Larger sizes provide better read performance.
  - **MongodLogDir** - Size of storage allocated for mongod.log. Make this large enough depending on verbosity chosen and instance size.
    Use the default settings for local storage as specified below when running on the Azure emulator. When deploying to Azure, change local storage size based on instance size chosen. MongoDBLocalData




## MongoDB Installer for Windows Azure

The MongoDB Installer for Windows Azure is a tool that can be used to provision a MongoDB replica set cluster into Window Azure VM instances.

The following are the steps to deploy a replica set using the tool

1. Install the MongoDB Installer for Windows Azure
2. Download publish settings file
3. Run the MongoDB Installer


- Prerequisites
- Install and Deployment
  - Install the tool.
  - Download your publish settings file:
  - Run the MongoDB Installer
- Troubleshooting

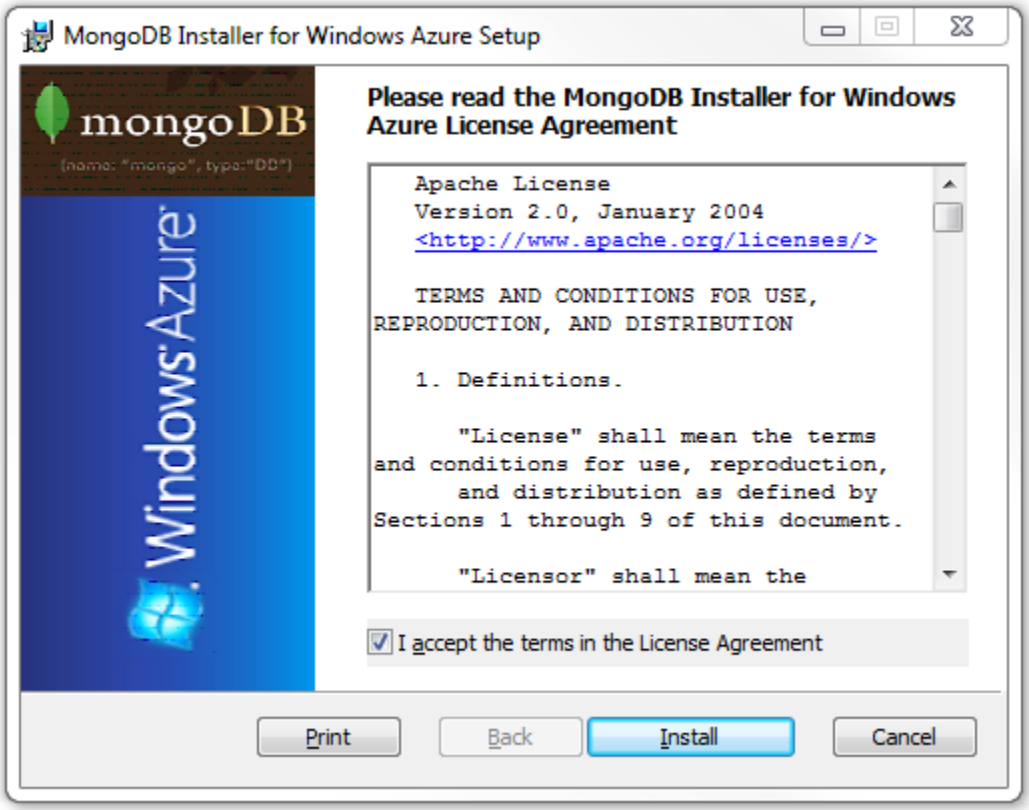

### *Prerequisites*

- Windows versions: any 32-bit or 64-bit Windows 7 version
- Accounts: you must have administrator access to run the setup program and installer

### *Install and Deployment*

**Install the tool.**

If you haven't done so already, you can download the MongoDB Installer for Windows Azure here.
Double click on the msi and accept the license agreement to complete the installation




**Download your publish settings file:**

The publish settings file is an xml file containing information about your subscription. This information is used by the actual script to create the VM instances in your account. To download the publish settings file, use the downloader start menu item:

```
Start -> All Programs -> MongoDB Installer for Windows Azure -> DownloadPublicSettings
```

Sign in with your Windows Live ID credentials when prompted. Remember the path to where the file was downloaded

**Run the MongoDB Installer**

The MongDB Installer for Azure is a powershell script. To install and configure your replica launch the installer as an Administrator

```
Start -> All Programs -> MongoDB Installer for Windows Azure -> MongoDB Installer for Windows Azure
```

Right click on the above start menu item and choose **Run as administrator**. This will open a power shell window where you can run the script to configure MongoDB on Azure VMs. You would deploy as:

```
.\deploy-mongo.ps1 <node-count> <dns-prefix> <image-name> <password> <location>
<pub-settings-file-path> [replica-set-name]
```

- **node-count** - The number of instances required in the replica set. Setting this to 1 results in a stand alone instance being deployed and not a replica set
- **dns-prefix** - The DNS prefix that will be used in the FQDN of an instance . For example, if you specify a DNS prefix of myreplicaset, the URL is http://myreplicaset.cloudapp.net.

**Note** that the MongoDB Installer for Windows Azure always deploys to the production environment, so the URL never uses a GUID (as is used for deployments to the staging environment).
The DNS prefix is not case-sensitive.

- **image-name** - The name of the VHD image in your Windows Azure storage account that will be used to create the virtual machines for the replica set. There are two possibilities:
    - You can specify the name of an existing image that you've created, which must meet these criteria:
        - It is based on the Windows Server 2008 R2 operating system
        - It has WinRM enabled with HTTP listener
        - It is hosted in your storage account
    - You can specify the name of a new image that the tool will create for you in your storage account. If the installer finds no existing image with the name you specified, it assumes that you want to create a new image and prompts you to confirm before proceeding. The new image will meet the requirements listed earlier for an existing image. Note that for this option, the name you provide cannot match any of the names of existing Windows Azure platform images

- **password** - The password to the Administrator account on the provisioned virtual machines. The same password is used for all virtual machines (nodes) in the replica set, and the password must meet Windows password complexity requirements.
You will use this password when you connect to the virtual machines via Remote Desktop Protocol (RDP) to perform system management and troubleshooting activities. Note that RDP is enabled on all virtual machines provisioned by the MongoDB Installer for Windows Azure.

- **location** - The Windows Azure data center location where your virtual machines will be provisioned. Note that data center locations are case sensitive.
For example, you might use "North Central US" as a location. If you don't know which locations are available for your Windows Azure subscription, you can use either of these methods to see a list of available locations:
    - Sign in to the management portal on https://windows.azure.com, click New Hosted Service, and then click Choose a Region to see a dropdown list of locations. Click Cancel when you're done.
    - You can use the **azure vm location list** command to display a list of available locations. **Note** that the installer installs the command-line tools if they are missing; however, if you want to install them before you run the installer you can do so with the Windows PowerShell script *setup-iasstool.ps1.

- **pub-settings-file-path** - The path to the publish settings file you downloaded earlier.

- **replica-set-name** - This optional can be used to specify the name of your replica set. The default name is rs. This parameter is ignored if node-count is set to 1, because a single-node deployment is not a replica set.

#### *Troubleshooting*

**Qn.** Error with unauthorized during deployment as seen below

> *error: The subscription is not authorized for this feature.*
> *error: vm image create command failed*

**Ans.** This usually indicates you do not have access to the VM preview program. Can you verify in the **new preview portal** that "Preview Features" shows account is active for Virtual machines and Virtual networks. If you have multiple accounts/subscriptions make sure you download the right pubsettings file

**Qn.** I am seeing a timeout error from the installer

> *Error: connect ETIMEDOUT code: 'ETIMEDOUT', errno: 'ETIMEDOUT', syscall: 'connect'*
> *Error: connect ETIMEDOUT*
> *at errnoException (net.js:670:11)*
> *at Object.afterConnect [as oncomplete] (net.js:661:19)*

**Ans.** This occasionally occurs due to connectivity issues with the Azure service management server or your actual deployed instances. At this point the work around is to retry. Working on making this more robust

**Qn.** In spite of meeting the strong password requirements the installer fails in the password setting
**Ans.** Ensure you do not have a **$** in the password as powershell is parsing it out as a parameter

# Troubleshooting


- Excessive Disk Space
- The Linux Out of Memory OOM Killer
- Too Many Open Files

- mongod process "disappeared"
- Socket errors in sharded clusters and replica sets
- See Also


## mongod process "disappeared"

Scenario here is the log ending suddenly with no error or shutdown messages logged.

On Unix, check /var/log/messages:

```
$ sudo grep mongod /var/log/messages
$ sudo grep score /var/log/messages
```

### Socket errors in sharded clusters and replica sets

If you're experiencing unexplainable socket errors between nodes in a sharded cluster or replica set, you may want to check your TCP keepalive time. The default Linux keepalive time is 7200 seconds (2 hours); we recommed that you change this to 300 seconds (five minutes).

To check your current setting:

```
cat /proc/sys/net/ipv4/tcp_keepalive_time
```

You'll usually see this:

```
7200
```

To change this setting:

```
echo 300 > /proc/sys/net/ipv4/tcp_keepalive_time
```

Note that you must alter the `tcp_keepalive_time` value on all machines hosting MongoDB processes. This include machines hosting `mongos` routers, config servers, and `mongod` servers. You should not need to restart the mongo processes themselves, the setting will take effect immediately.

### See Also

- Diagnostic Tools

## Excessive Disk Space


- Understanding Disk Usage
  - local.* files and replication
  - Datafile Preallocation
  - Recovering Deleted Space
  - Running out of disk space
  - Checking Size of a Collection
  - Helpful scripts


#### Understanding Disk Usage

You may notice that for a given set of data the MongoDB datafiles in `/data/db` are larger than the data set inserted into the database. There are several reasons for this.

#### *local.* files and replication*

The replication oplog is preallocated as a capped collection in the local database.

The default allocation is approximately 5% of disk space (*64 bit installations*).

If you would like a smaller oplog size use the `--oplogSize` command line parameter.

#### *Datafile Preallocation*

Each datafile is preallocated to a particular size.  (This is done to prevent file system fragmentation, among other reasons.)  The first filename for a database is <dbname>.0, then <dbname>.1, etc.  <dbname>.0 will be 64MB, <dbname>.1 128MB, et cetera, up to 2GB.  Once the files reach

2GB in size, each successive file is also 2GB.

Thus, if the last datafile present is, say, 1GB, that file might be 90% empty if it was recently created.

Additionally, on Unix, mongod will preallocate an additional datafile in the background and do background initialization of this file. These files are prefilled with zero bytes. This initialization can take up to a minute (less on a fast disk subsystem) for larger datafiles. Pre-filling in the background prevents significant delays when a new database file is next allocated.

On Windows prior to v2.1.2, additional datafiles are not preallocated. NTFS can allocate large files filled with zeroes relatively quickly, rendering preallocation unnecessary.

As soon as a datafile starts to be used, the next one will be preallocated.

You can disable preallocation with the `--noprealloc` command line parameter. This flag is nice for tests with small datasets where you drop the database after each test. It should not be used on production servers.

For large databases (hundreds of GB or more), this is of no significant consequence as the unallocated space is relatively small.

On Linux systems you can use `hdparam` to allocate files to get an idea of how costly allocation might be:

```
time hdparm --fallocate $((1024*1024)) testfile
```

### *Recovering Deleted Space*

MongoDB maintains lists of deleted blocks within the datafiles when objects or collections are deleted. This space is reused by MongoDB but never freed to the operating system.

To shrink the amount of physical space used by the datafiles themselves, by reclaiming deleted blocks, you must rebuild the database by using ( `db.repairDatabase()`).

repairDatabase copies all the database records to new file(s). You will need enough free disk space to hold both the old and new database files while the repair is running. Be aware that repairDatabase will block and will take a long time to complete.

Rather than compacting an entire database, you can compact just a single collection by using `db.runCommand({compact:'collectionname'})`. This does not shrink any datafiles, however; it only defragments deleted space so that larger objects might reuse it. The compact command will never delete or shrink database files, and in general requires extra space to do its work. Thus, it is not a good option when you are running critically low on disk space.

When testing and investigating the size of datafiles, if your data is just test data, use db.dropDatabase() to clear all datafiles and start fresh.

### *Running out of disk space*

If your server runs out of disk space you will see something like this in the log:

```
Thu Aug 11 13:06:09 [FileAllocator] allocating new datafile dbms/test.13, filling with zeroes...
Thu Aug 11 13:06:09 [FileAllocator] error failed to allocate new file: dbms/test.13 size: 2146435072
errno:28 No space left on device
Thu Aug 11 13:06:09 [FileAllocator]     will try again in 10 seconds
Thu Aug 11 13:06:19 [FileAllocator] allocating new datafile dbms/test.13, filling with zeroes...
Thu Aug 11 13:06:19 [FileAllocator] error failed to allocate new file: dbms/test.13 size: 2146435072
errno:28 No space left on device
Thu Aug 11 13:06:19 [FileAllocator]     will try again in 10 seconds
```

The server remains in this state forever blocking all writes including deletes. However, reads still work. To delete some data and compact (see above), you must restart the server first.

### *Checking Size of a Collection*

Use the validate command to check the size of a collection -- that is from the shell run:

```
> db.<collectionname>.validate();

> // these are faster:
> db.<collectionname>.dataSize(); // just data size for collection
> db.<collectionname>.storageSize(); // allocation size including unused space
> db.<collectionname>.totalSize(); // data + index
> db.<collectionname>.totalIndexSize(); // index data size
```

This command returns info on the collection data but note there is also data allocated for associated indexes. These can be checked with validate too, if one looks up the index's namespace name in the system.namespaces collection. For example:

```
> db.system.namespaces.find()
{"name" : "test.foo"}
{"name" : "test.system.indexes"}
{"name" : "test.foo.$_id_"}
> > db.foo.$_id_.validate()
{"ns" : "test.foo.$_id_" , "result" : "
validate
  details: 0xb3590b68 ofs:83fb68
  firstExtent:0:8100 ns:test.foo.$_id_
  lastExtent:0:8100 ns:test.foo.$_id_
  # extents:1
  datasize?:8192 nrecords?:1 lastExtentSize:131072
  padding:1
  first extent:
    loc:0:8100 xnext:null xprev:null
    ns:test.foo.$_id_
    size:131072 firstRecord:0:81b0 lastRecord:0:81b0
  1 objects found, nobj:1
  8208 bytes data w/headers
  8192 bytes data wout/headers
  deletedList: 0000000000001000000
  deleted: n: 1 size: 122688
  nIndexes:0
" , "ok" : 1 , "valid" : true , "lastExtentSize" : 131072}
```

### *Helpful scripts*

These one-line scripts will print the stats for each db/collection:

```
db._adminCommand("listDatabases").databases.forEach(function (d) {mdb = db.getSiblingDB(d.name);
printjson(mdb.stats())})

db._adminCommand("listDatabases").databases.forEach(function (d) {mdb = db.getSiblingDB(d.name);
mdb.getCollectionNames().forEach(function(c) {s = mdb[c].stats(); printjson(s)})})
```

## The Linux Out of Memory OOM Killer

The Linux out of memory killer kills processes using too much memory. On a kill event you will see a line such as the following in the system log file:

```
Feb 13 04:33:23 hostm1 kernel: [279318.262555] mongod invoked oom-killer: gfp_mask=0x1201d2, order=0,
oomkilladj=0
```

On such an event, check in future runs that memory is not leaking. This can be checked by verifying that virtualbytes - mappedbytes for mongod is bounded. Check this in serverStatus and/or mongostat.

```
> db.serverStatus()
```

### *ulimit*

`ulimit -m` with `mongod` may cause kills that are false positives. This setting is not recommended. MongoDB uses memory mapped files. The entire data is mapped. Over time, if there is no memory pressure, the `mongod` resident bytes may approach total memory, as the resident bytes includes file system cache bytes for the file pages open and touched by `mongod`.

### *swap*

Please see the production notes about swap

## Too Many Open Files

If you receive the error "too many open files" or "too many open connections" in the mongod log, there are a couple of possible reasons for this.

First, to check what file descriptors are in use, run lsof (some variations shown below):

```
lsof | grep mongod
lsof | grep mongod | grep TCP
lsof | grep mongod | grep data | wc
```

If most lines include "TCP", there are many open connections from client sockets. If most lines include the name of your data directory, the open files are mostly datafiles.

### *ulimit*

If the numbers from lsof look reasonable, check your ulimit settings. The default for file handles (often 1024) might be too low for production usage. Run ulimit -a (or limit -a depending on shell) to check.

Use ulimit -n X to change the max number of file handles to X. If your OS is configured to not allow modifications to that setting you might need to reconfigure first. On ubuntu you'll need to edit /etc/security/limits.conf and add a line something like the following (where user is the username and X is the desired limit):

```
user hard nofile X
```

Upstart uses a different mechanism for setting file descriptor limits - add something like this to your job file:

```
limit nofile X
```

### *High TCP Connection Count*

If lsof shows a large number of open TCP sockets, it could be that one or more clients is opening too many connections to the database. Check that your client apps are using connection pooling.

### *Mongod (hard) connection limit*

Currently, there is a limit of 20,000 connections per process; this will be changed when better connection management code (maybe async io) will be implemented.

### *Data files count with very large databases*

If your database is many terabytes, there will be a fairly large number of datafiles – be sure your ulimit setting is appropriate. You will need approximately 500 file handles per terabyte. (Also note if you run a repairdatabase operation, you will need double as two copies will be open at the same time.)

### *Estimating ulimit setting*

You can always set the ulimit to some very large number like 64,000 or you can estimate the number. In general you will need to take your database sizes in GB and divide by 2GB plus the number of database, the number of possible connections and some overhead to get the number of files needed.

```
//TotalSize = `du -gs <db-path> | cut  -f 1`
# = (TotalSizeGB/2) + (NumberOfDBs) + (max(maxConns, 20,000)) + 5%-overhead
```

# Production Deployments

MongoDB can be used for a lot of different projects: the goal is for it to be a fairly general purpose tool. As you can see, many of the use cases are online or operational db's where someone is writing an application in front of the database. Business intelligence / analytics use is not unusual but usually more specialized: for example real time dashboarding is highly popular, and when the data set gets really big, things can make a lot of sense. See the use cases page for more on this and for more on when you *wouldn't use it*.

*If you're using MongoDB in production, we'd love to list you here!  Please complete this web form and we will add you.*


- Archiving
- Cloud Infrastructure Providers
- Content Management
- Ecommerce
- Education
- Email
- Finance
- Gaming
- Government
- Infrastructure
- Intranet
- Metadata Storage
- Mobile
- News & Media
- Online Advertising and Marketing
- Online Collaboration
- Real-time stats/analytics
- Scientific
- Social Networks
- Telecommunications
- More MongoDB Users
- See also


## Archiving

| Company | Use Case |
|---|---|
| craigslist | Craigslist uses MongoDB to archive billions of records.<br>• Lessons Learned from Migrating 2+ Billion Documents at Craigslist - MongoSF (May 2011)<br>• MongoDB Live at Craigslist - MongoDB blog (May 2011)<br>• MongoDB and Craigslist's Data Storage Evolution - MongoSV (December 2010) |

## Cloud Infrastructure Providers

| | |
|---|---|
| Firebase | Firebase is a cloud service that automatically synchronizes data between clients and cloud servers. Apps built with Firebase can be written entirely with client-side JavaScript, update in real-time out-of-the-box, are inherently scalable, and interoperate well with existing services. Firebase offers developers a massively scaleable real-time backend for web applications. Firebase stores all its data in MongoDB which offers the built-in capability for apps to scale automatically and gives each piece of data its own unique URL stored in JSON documents. |
| mongoHQ<br>fast & easy data management | MongoHQ provides a hosting platform for MongoDB and also uses MongoDB as the back-end for its service. Our hosting centers page provides more information about MongoHQ and other MongoDB hosting options. |

## Content Management

| Company | Use Case |
| --- | --- |
| | SAP uses MongoDB a core component of SAP's platform-as-a-service (PaaS) offering. MongoDB was selec for the enterprise co management (ECM) section of the platfor as its flexibility and scalability will enable SAP to scale its con management service its PaaS offering to r customers' requirem while managing data from different applications. More information available the 10gen blog.<br>• Introduction SAP's Java Platform as Service - Di Guendisch's Presentation MongoUK (September 2011) |
| | MongoDB is the repository that powe MTV Networks' next-generation CMS which will eventually used to manage and distribute content for of MTV Networks' m websites. Current deployments include SpikeTV.com and Comedy Central Indecision, and MTV Networks will be rolli out MongoDB on ma other major sites wit the next year, most l including gametrailers.com, thedailyshow.com, comedycentral.com, nick.com, and nume international propert Read more on the MongoDB blog.<br>• How MTV Leverages MongDB for CMS - Jeff Yemin's Presentation MongoBost 2011 (Octob 2011) |
| | |

MongoDB is used fo
back-end storage or
SourceForge front
pages, project pages
and download pages
all projects.

- Realtime Analytics us MongoDB, Python, Gev and ZeroMC Rick Copela Presentatio MongoSV (December 2011)
- Achieving 2 Years of Mc Stability and Performanc SF.net - Ma Ramm's Presentatio MongoDalla (November 2011)
- Rapid and Scalable Developme with Mongo PyMongo a Ming - Mark Ramm's Presentatio MongoDalla (November 2011)
- Allura - An Open-Sourc MongoDB-b Document Oriented SourceForg Rick Copela Presentatio MongoSF (N 2011)
- How SourceForg Uses Mong - Rick Copeland's Presentatio MongoAtlan (February 2
- Scaling SourceForg with Mongo OSCON Presentatio (July 2010)
- MongoDB a SourceForg QCon Lond Presentatio (March 201
- How Pythor TurboGears and Mongo are Transformin SourceForg - PyCon (February 2

- SourceForg releases Mi SourceForg blog (Decer 2009)
- TurboGears Sourceforge Compound Thinking (Ju 2009)

Wordnik stores its e text corpus in Mongo - 3.5T of data in 20 b records. The speed query the corpus wa to 1/4 the time it tool prior to migrating to MongoDB. More abo MongoDB at Wordni

- From the Cl and Back - Presentatio MongoSV (December 2011)
- What drove Wordnik non-relation (August 201
- Building a Directed Gr with Mongo Tony Tam's Presentatio MongoSF (M 2011)
- Managing a MongoDB Deployment Presentatio Large Scale Production Engineering Meetup (February 2
- Wordnik: 10 million API requests a d on MongoD High Scalab Blog (Febru 2011)
- Keeping the Lights on wi MongoDB - Tony Tam's Presentatio MongoSV 2 (December 2010)
- 12 Months v MongoDB - Wordnik Blo (October 20
- B is for Billio Wordnik Blo (July 2010)
- MongoDB: Migration fro Mysql at Wordnik - Scalable We Architecture (May 2010)
- Tony Tam's Presentatio MongoSF (A 2010)
- What has technology for words la - Wordnik bl (February 2

Harmony is a power web-based platform creating and managi websites. It helps developers with cont editors work togethe with unprecedented flexibility and simplic From stylesheets, images and templat pages, blogs, and comments, every pie of Harmony data is stored in MongoDB. Switching to Mongol from MySQL drastic simplified Harmony's data model and increased the speed which we can delive features.

- Real World Modeling wi MongoDB a Harmony - S Smith's Presentatio MongoBost (September 2010)
- Steve Smith presentatio about Harm at MongoSF (April 2010)

Demand Media™

eHow, a web proper Demand Media, rece 100MM+ unique use on a large content database. MongoDB perfectly suited for eHow's content management, as the document model exa matches the delivery model of documents pages. The Demand Media team rewrote legacy inherited .NET/SQL system to PHP/Python/Mongol a cachless, tierless design, all on one machine with replica

YOUGAMEPLAY.COM

MeteKamil uses MongoDB for browsi hundreds of thousar of videos on the websites:
YouUnbox.com
YouGamePlay.com
YouOverClock.com
DroidFather.com
YouTouchDown.com

| | |
|---|---|
| | Omnidimensional us MongoDB to store a retrieve large numbe records. Omnidimensional is hybrid company that supplies its custome with high-end web applications, user-experience des solutions, webdesigr music or tunes for us commercials. |

## Ecommerce

| Company | Use Case |
|---|---|
| | At CustomInk, we be custom t-shirts have power to turn your g into a team, elevate gathering to an even make your special m more... well, momen That's why we make to create awesome s CustomInk uses Mo for a number of diffe applications includin<br>• Supply Cha Manageme MongoDB s information t-shirt suppl local screen printers.<br>• Content Manageme MongoDB is to store the catalog, Cus sells hundre products, nc t-shrits.<br>• Logging - M is used for l interactions website and central store application l Learn more how Custon using Mong from their presentatior at MongoSV |

OpenSky is a free or platform that helps p discover amazing pr share them with thei friends, family and fo and earn money. Op uses MongoDB, Syn Doctrine 2, PHP 5.3, PHPUnit 3.5, jQuery node.js, Git (with gitl and a touch of Java Python. OpenSky us MongoDB for just ab everything (not just analytics). Along the they've developed MongoODM (PHP) a MongoDB drivers for and CAS.

- Blending Mo with RDBMS e-commerce Steve Franc presentation MongoNYC 2011)
- Augmenting RDBMS with NoSQL for e-commerce Steve Franc presentation East (March
- MongoDB & Ecommerce Perfect Combinatio Video from Francia's presentation New York MongoDB U Group (Octo 2010)

Gilt Groupe is an inv only luxury shopping Gilt uses MongoDB time ecommerce ana

- Gilt CTO Mi Bryzek's presentation MongoSF in 2010.
- Hummingbi real-time we visualization developed b and powere MongoDB

| | |
|---|---|
| edelight | edelight is a social s portal for product recommendations.<br>• MongoDB a edelight: A Pain and Su in 10 Slides Fabian Schl Presentatio MongoBerli (October 20<br>• MongoDB: Edelight sta MySQL auf MongoDB s Exciting Ecommerce (September |
| totsy | Totsy offers moms on-the-go and moms access to brand-spe sales, up to 70% off Totsy was re-built up and MongoDB to co performance and sc limitations incurred v the prior relational-d platform. The transiti MongoDB has resol of Totsy's performan scaling issues.<br>• MongoDB Ecommerce Study: Totsy Pirtle's pres at Mongo B (September |
| PlumWillow shop.style.share. | PlumWillow is a Soc Shopping Network w girls who like fashion build outfits by drag-and-drop, selec from thousands of to items. PlumWillow w by a "dream team" o core-developers/con to PHP, jQuery and MongoDB who utiliz Agile efficiency of M and the Vork Entepr Framework to bring PlumWillow from concept-to-launch in few months. |

| | |
|---|---|
| SHOPwiki | Shopwiki uses Mong data store for its sho search engine, wher commit all the data generated, such as analytics. Mongo's performance is such ShopWiki uses it in where MySQL would not be practical. Sho also using it as a sto engine for all R&D a data-mining efforts v MongoDB's docume oriented architecture maximum flexibility.<br>• Avery's Talk MongoNYC ShopWiki D (June 2010) |
| | Yabblr uses MongoD everything, including inventory manageme orders. Yabblr is an E-Commerce platfor flips 'deals' on its he Instead of pushing r offers at you, Yabblr empowers you to gr together with friends deals on products yo select. Yabblr uses MongoDB exclusivel data store for the en platform, including: - data - Real time met are used for analyzi behavior and system - Inventory manager Customer orders - E queues and messag between different sy |
| ordoro | Ordoro uses Mongol store orders, inventc suppliers. Ordoro de everything that happ after a shopper click checkout on the reta website: print packin and shipping labels, manage inventory le manage dropshippin manage customers, manage suppliers et Ordoro is the backof control panel for SM etailers. |
| SavingStar™ | SavingStar uses Mo to store our coupon and service metadat well as all of our cou activation data. The company is the first national, fully digital, eCoupon service, av for free. There's noth clip, nothing to print. |

| | |
|---|---|
| WEDDING*PAPER divas | Wedding Paper Diva MongoDB to store o categories and products.The compa allows users to creat custom wedding invi online using their personalization tools make unique and tre wedding invitations and easily. |
| storeden | Storeden is a cloud s totally based on Mor The easiness of the popular shopping we meets the performar an advanced online solution. Storeden is revolutionary e-Com platform that allows and web-agencies to amazing on-line stor just a few clicks. Eve has the chance to cr applications, graphic themes and "suites" sell them to the othe in the Cloud. Stored be perfectly integrate the most common E CRM platforms, allo user to effectively le on Facebook, Ebay, Shopping and Kelko further sales channe is natively optimized SEO. |
| gitti gidiyor | Gittigidiyor.com is th biggest e-commerce Turkey with more tha million registered us Gittigidiyor.com have replicated and shard MongoDB cluster for and for caching a wi range of data. |

See also: http://www.slideshare.net/mongodb/mongodb-at-ebay

## Education

| | |
|---|---|
| Codecademy | Codecademy is the easiest way to learn to code online. Driven by the belief that programming is one of the most important skills of the twenty-first century, Codecademy has educated more than one million people in over 100 countries. |
| LEARNBOOST | LearnBoost is a free and amazing gradebook web app that leverages MongoDB for its data storage needs. LearnBoost is the creator of Mongoose, a JavaScript async ORM for MongoDB that is flexible, extensible and simple to use.<br>• Mongoose - LearnBoost blog (May 2010) |
| | Courseoff uses MongoDB stores student created schedules as well as the schedule listings themselves. |

| | |
|---|---|
| | Boundless Learning uses MongoDB as a rapid-prototyping technology to develop a robust content management system. |

## Email

| | |
|---|---|
| | Sailthru is an innovative email service provider that focuses on improving the quality of emails over quantity. Moving to MongoDB from MySQL allowed us extreme flexibility in providing an API to our clients. Passing in arbitrary JSON data is easy – our customers can use objects and arrays inside of their emails. And we've launched Sailthru Alerts, which allows our customers basically whitelabeled Google Alerts: realtime and summary alerts (price, tag match, etc) that are completely up to the customer due to our schema-free data storage. Also, we can gather realtime behavioral data on a client's signed-up users (tag-based interests, geolocale, time of day, etc), and use all that information to power dynamically assembled mass emails that get higher click-through rates than static emails. Plus we just launched an onsite recommendation widget (check it out at refinery29.com), and we're using MongoDB's analytic capabilities to rapidly A/B test different behavioral algorithms.<br><br>• MongoDB in Production at Sailthru - Presentation to NY MongoDB User Group (January 2011) |
| | fiesta.cc makes creating mailing lists dead-simple, and fun. The goal is to bring groups together around a tool that everybody already uses and understands: email. We use MongoDB to store all of the data powering the website and the mail serving infrastructure. We're running a three node replica set.<br><br>• MongoDB at fiesta.cc - Mike Dirolf's Presentation for NYC Meetup Group (November 2011)<br>• Behind the Scenes at fiesta.cc - Mike Dirolf's Presentation at PyGotham (September 2011) |

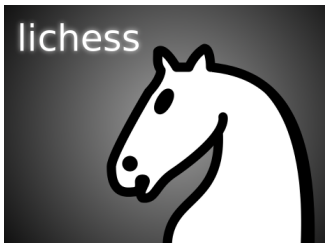
## Finance

| Company | Use Case |
|---|---|
| | SecondMarket is the online marketplace for alternative assets such as private company stock, structured products & bankruptcy claims. SecondMarket uses mongoDB for storing its diverse asset classes in a single collection utilizing the power of the schema free nature of mongoDB. We also store organization news and activity in mongoDB.<br><br>• Mongo & Mongeez on the SecondMarket Engineering Blog - Feb 2012<br>• Mongeez the open source, change management tool developed for MongoDB.]<br>• Second Market, MongoDB and Mongeez for Change Management - Michael Lysaght's Presentation at MongoNYC (June 2011)<br>• Mongeez at SecondMarket -Michael Lysaght's presentation at the MongoDB User Group (January 2012) |
| | Athena Capital Research is a quantitative investment manager, specializing in automated trading strategies.<br><br>• How a Hedge Fund Uses MongoDB - Roman Shtylman's Presentation at MongoNYC (June 2011)<br>• Low Latency Event Logging with BSON - Andrew Morrow's Presentation at MongoSV (December 2010) |
| | Equilar uncovers the direct pathways to the most influential high net worth individuals, and delivers immediate and actionable insight into the equity wealth events that drive business development opportunities. Equilar uses Mongo DB to map and analyze the connections between over 300,000 executives and board members in companies worldwide. |

| | |
|---|---|
| | Auriga USA is a financial services company that operates in the residential mortgage space. Moving to MongoDB solved a host of problems, and assisted Auriga USA in upgrading the functionality of their loan inventory management system to handle many new features and different types of assets, including student loans, credit cards, and asset-back securities. |

## Gaming

| Company | Use Case |
|---|---|
| | Disney built a common set of tools and APIs for all games within the Interactive Media Group, using MongoDB as a common object repository to persist state information.<br>• A Year with MongoDB: Running Operations to Keep the Game Magic Alive - Curt Steven's Presentation at MongoSV (December 2011)<br>• Disney Central Services Storage: Leveraging Knowledge and skillsets - MongoSF (May 2011) |
| | IGN Entertainment, a unit of News Corporation, is a leading Internet media and services provider focused on the videogame and entertainment enthusiast markets. IGN's properties reached more than 37.3 million unique users worldwide February 2010, according to Internet audience measurement firm comScore Media Metrix. MongoDB powers IGN's real-time traffic analytics and RESTful Content APIs.<br>• Using MongoDB for IGN's Social Platform - Presentation to San Francisco MongoDB User Group (February 2011)<br>• Confessions of a recovering relational addict - Presentation by Chandra Patni at MongoSV (December 2010) |
| | WordSquared (formerly Scrabbly) is a massively multiplayer online ~~scrabble~~ crossword. Uses MongoDB geospatial indexing.<br>• Mapping Flatland: Using MongoDB for an MMO Crossword Game - Presentation at Mongo Seattle 2011<br>• Building a Scrabble MMO in 48 Hours - Startup Monkeys Blog (September 2010) |
| | MongoDB is being used for the game feeds component. It caches game data from different sources which gets served to ea.com, rupture.com and the EA download manager. |

| | |
|---|---|
| | Kano Games uses MongoDB to build an online gaming web app that integrates social elements. It is a gaming web app that offers a large collection of html5 and flash games with new ones added daily. MongoDB is used to store all persistent data at Kano Games. Reliability, scalability, performance, redundancy and flexibility were all considered when selecting a persistent storage solution and MongoDB beat out the competition as it best fit Kano Games needs. |
| | Shadelight is a unique fantasy roleplaying game where you play one of the legendary Guardians of Elumir. Set out on magical quests, battle mysterious creatures and explore a truly unique fantasy world. |
| | Metamoki builds social games like Mob Wars, Cityzen, and several others on top of Facebook. From Cityzen onwards, MongoDB is used for all games in production for pretty much everything. |
| | Freerice is developped by World Food Porgramme, the largest UN humanitary organisation. Freerice.com is a social quizz-like game where each good answer to a question make you win 10 rice grains. Since the begining more than 85 billions of rice grains were won trough freerice. Fully connected with twitter, facebook and groups, freerice tracks down each gain of each person. This generates almost 1 MongoDB row for each right answer, wich mean 8 billions of rows currently stored in Freerice MongoDB. Numerous totals are provided to the end user, which are all stored in Mongo too. |
|  | lichess.org uses MongoDB to store more than 3 million chess games. It also contains the analysis, users, forum posts and chat messages. I need blazing fast updates and efficient indexing, mongodb gives me both. lichess.org is OpenSource! Check the code on http://github.com/ornicar/lila. MongodDB is the database behind Moshen Limited's Facebook game Gambino Poker. MongoDB is used to store all game events and player profiles. We use a 3 node replica-set and RAID 10 EBS Volumes. |
| | MongodDB is the database behind Moshen Limited's Facebook game Gambino Poker. MongoDB is used to store all game events and player profiles. We use a 3 node replica-set and RAID 10 EBS Volumes. |

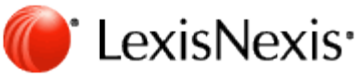
## Government

| | |
|---|---|
| | The National Archives (UK) made details of 11m records available through an application interface it published today as part of an ongoing programme to get more official records online. is consolidating numerous existing electronic archives, either by porting them directly or putting them in a service wrapper that can communicate with its unified system. The unified system uses MongoDB and is built on a Microsoft software stack.<br><br>• National Archives releases public application programming interface for 11m records - ComputerWorld (Sept 2011)<br>• From SQL Server to MongoDB - Presentation at MongoDB UK (Sept 2011) |
| | The British Government launched a beta of its GOV.UK platform, testing a single domain for that could be used throughout government. According to James Stewart, the Tech Lead on the beta of GOV.UK, "We started out building everything using MySQL but moved to MongoDB as we realised how much of our content fitted its document-centric approach," said Stewart. "Over time we've been more and more impressed with it and expect to increase our usage of it in the future."<br><br>• Colophon for the GOV.UK beta - Feb 2012<br>• With GOV.UK, British government redefines the online government platform - O'Reilly Radar (Feb 2012) |
| | Sunlight Labs is a community of open source developers and designers dedicated to opening up our government to make it more transparent, accountable and responsible. MongoDB powers the National Data Catalog, and the Drumbone API, which is an aggregator of data about members of Congress.<br><br>• MongoDB at Sunlight - Luis Martinez's Presentation Slides<br>• Civic Hacking - Video from Luigi Montanez's presentation at MongoNYC (May 2010)<br>• How We Use MongoDB at Sunlight blog post (May 2010) |

In addition MongoDB has been used for various projects at both the federal, state, and city level in the U.S.

Note: if you are in Washington D.C. area, be sure to check out the annual Mongo conference there ("MongoDC"), as well as local mongo user groups.

## Infrastructure

| Company | Use Case |
|---|---|
|  | LexisNexis Risk Solutions serves the multi-billion dollar risk information industry, which is comprised of professionals and organizations such as law enforcement, government agencies, financial services firms, collection agencies, insurance and health care providers, and hiring managers.<br><br>MongoDB is used by the DevOps group to store their CMDB information, static web content, auditing data, and serves as the persistence engine for their asynchronous messaging fabric. |

## Intranet

| | |
|---|---|
| | SPARC uses MongoDB as its primary store for our employee engagement platform. We've been very happy with how simple data migrations have been since we left SQL behind. |

A Fortune 10 company uses MongoDB for their internal intranet app for their 100,000+ employees.

A Fortune 10 company uses MongoDB for their internal intranet app for their 100,000+ employees.

## Metadata Storage

| Company | Use Case |
| --- | --- |
| | Shutterfly is an Internet-based social expression and personal publishing service. MongoDB is used for various persistent data storage requirements within Shutterfly. MongoDB helps Shutterfly build an unrivaled service that enables deeper, more personal relationships between customers and those who matter most in their lives.<br>• Performance Tuning and Scalability - Kenny Gorman's Presentation at MongoSV (December 2011)<br>• The Shutterfly Data Layer and Schema Definitions - Luciano Resende's Presentation at MongoSV (December 2011)<br>• MongoDB Profiling and Tuning - MongoSF (May 2011)<br>• Q & A with Shutterfly Data Architect Kenny Gorman (Jan 2011)<br>• Sharing Life's Joy using MongoDB: A Shutterfly Case Study - Kenny Gorman's presentation at MongoSV (December 2010)<br>• *Implementing MongoDB at Shutterfly* from MongoSF (April 2010): Slides and Video |
| | Lulu's open publishing platform empowers more creators to sell more content to more readers more profitably than ever before. Lulu uses MongoDB to store the bibliographic, product, and file metadata for its creators' works. MongoDB's document-based data model makes it easy to manage the differences between print books, eBooks, photo books, and calendars and to keep up with the rapidly evolving world of self publishing.<br>• Why we decided NoSQL was right for us, How we came to choose MongoDB - Sept 2011 Presentation |

## Mobile

(See also "Social" section.)

| Company | Use Case |
| --- | --- |
| | MoPub uses MongoDB for realtime stats, budgeting systems, and user storing. |
| | Countly is an extensible, open source mobile analytics solution for mobile application developers. It tracks applications, customer behaviour or game mechanics - so you can focus on increasing user loyalty and engagement. With Countly, collected data is converted into meaningful information in true real-time, thanks to underlying infrastructure with MongoDB, Node.js and Nginx. |

| | |
|---|---|
| Localytics | Localytics uses MongoDB to process over 100M datapoints every day for their mobile analytics service. |
| mobile:helix™ | Mobile Helix uses MongoDB to provide fast data read/write for the Mobile Helix Gateway, which analyzes data that needs to be delivered from an enterprise's network to a mobile device and pre-fetches, batches and schedules its delivery to be as quick and as efficient as possible. MongoDB enables the gateway to seamlessly scale to millions of devices accessing the Mobile Helix system from all over the globe. |
| | Nearley is a mobile geo location application to list all facebook users located within your distance. Nearley uses MongoDB to store user interaction and activities in real-time. |
| O2 | O2 uses MongoDB for several applications, including their Priority Moments location based offer service. |

## News & Media

| Company | Use Case |
|---|---|
| theguardian | guardian.co.uk is a leading UK-based news website. We've spent ten years fighting relational database representations of our domain model, until the implementation of our API made us realise that if only we could store documents everything got simpler. MongoDB is a key part of the Guardian's infrastructure.<br><br>• Evolving from relational to document store - MongoSF (May 2011)<br>• Why I Chose MongoDB for guardian.co.uk - QCon London (August 2011)<br>• MongoDB at the Guardian - MongoDB UK (Sept 2011) |
| examiner.com the insider source for local | Examiner.com is the fastest-growing local content network in the U.S., powered by the largest pool of knowledgeable and passionate contributors in the world. Launched in April 2008 with 60 cities, Examiner.com now serves hundreds of markets across the U.S. and Canada.<br><br>Examiner.com migrated their site from Cold Fusion and SQL Server to Drupal 7 and MongoDB. Details of the deployment are outlined in an Acquia case study |
| BUSINESS INSIDER | Business Insider has been using MongoDB since the beginning of 2008. All of the site's data, including posts, comments, and even the images, are stored on MongoDB. For more information:<br><br>• An Inside Look At The Guts Of Our Tech Infrastructure (June 2011 Article)<br>• How Business Insider Uses MongoDB (May 2010 Presentation)<br>• How This Web Site Uses MongoDB (November 2009 Article) |

| | |
|---|---|
| Forbes | Forbes has been around for nearly 100 years and on the web for more than a decade; recently the media space has been a changing landscape. Once of the changes that Forbes has undertaken starting in 2010 was the “opening up” our digital and print platforms to a global collection of content creators, marketers and audience members. This necessitated the changing of how our site worked, allowing content to flow easily through the site. We began to evaluate how we store and serve our content and decided to use MongoDB. We are currently using MongoDB for storing articles and companies data and are working to move more of our core assets onto it.<br><br>• Supporting Distributed Global Workforce of Contributors with MongoDB David Dunlop's Presentation at MongoNYC (June 2011) |
| The New York Times | The New York Times is using MongoDB in a form-building application for photo submissions. Mongo's dynamic schema gives producers the ability to define any combination of custom form fields. For more information:<br><br>• The New York Times R&D Lab and MongoDB<br>• Building a Better Submission Form - NYTimes Open Blog (May 25, 2010)<br>• A Behind the Scenes Look at the New York Times Moment in Time Project - Hacks/Hackers Blog (July 28, 2010) |
| Chicago Tribune | The Chicago Tribune uses MongoDB in its Illinois School Report Cards application, which is generated from a nearly 9,000 column denormalized database dump produced annually by the State Board of Education. The application allows readers to search by school name, city, county, or district and to view demographic, economic, and performance data for both schools and districts. |
| CNN TÜRK .com | CNN Turk uses MongoDB on our new infrastructure and content management system. We will launch our new portal's showcase part on (tv.cnnturk.com) 1st April and then we will launch all new portal on MongoDB on 1st July. (www.cnnturk.com and video.cnnturk.com). |

## Online Advertising and Marketing

| Company | Use Case |
|---|---|
| MAGNETIC™ | MongoDB will be the central data store in our system, providing low-latency, high-volume reads in a distributed cluster behind our pixel servers, and near-real-time aggregate counts to our clients for forecasting. We're excited by the speed, replication features, flexible data model, and map-reduce style query access, which will let us dramatically simplify our system relative to the current architecture using a key-value store.<br><br>• Tracking & Analytics with MongoDB at Signpost; MongoDB for Online Advertising - Matt Insler's Presentation for NYC Meetup Group<br>• MongoDB Analytics for Online Advertising at Magnetic - Webinar hosted by Mark Weiss |
| ak® MAKING MEDIA ACCOUNTABLE™ | Aggregate Knowledge is an IaaS company that combines data management and multi-touch attribution to make media accountable helping advertisers, agencies, ad networks, DSPs, SSPs, and publishers manage and exploit all of their data around a single view of the user. With more data to process, and less time at hand, Aggregate Knowledge pairs MongoDB with Fusion-io flash memory solutions for a winning combination. |
| MediaMath | MediaMath is the leader in the new and rapidly growing world of digital media trading. |

| | |
|---|---|
| | Konverta.ru is the first Real Time Bidding (RTB) ad exchange on the Russian and CIS online advertising market. MongoDB is used to store all ads, ad impressions, clicks, and other data, as well as for real-time reporting and optimization. |
| | G5 is the largest and fastest growing provider of vertical-specific Local Marketing Solutions that help mid-market companies get found online, generate more qualified leads, convert more leads into new customers, track marketing performance - including offline, and optimize to the marketing sources with the best return on investment. G5 migrated our analytics platform from MySQL to MongoDB due to the heavy demands of storing & processing analytical data. MongoDB has proven to be fast, scalable, flexible, & maintainable. Best of all, MongoDB is supported by a fantastic community! |
| | Yodle uses MongoDB to persist queues of items to be synchronized with several partner APIs. Mongo is ideally suited for this update-heavy performance sensitive workload. |
| | The Localstars platform makes it easy for local advertisers to build and manage locally targeted advertising campaigns. The new Localstars advert server cluster uses sharded MongoDB to provide super high performance real time ad serving decision making and campaign statistics. |
| | EveryScreen is built on a scalable, high-performance, real-time mobile advertising bidding platform in Amazon EC2. |
| | Rafflecopter is a web app that helps online publishers run sweepstakes on their own blogs & other sites. Rafflecopter logs and stores every entry to every contest that's ever been run, all contest details, user profiles, various logs/metrics, etc. |
| | LocalEver is a location based online market place to buy , sell & rent residential/commercial properties, Automobiles and host of other products. MongoDB is the backbone of the system, which powers the whole range of features from geo spatial search to caching. |

## Online Collaboration

| Company | Use Case |
|---|---|

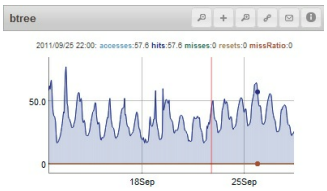
| | |
|---|---|
| | Trello is a collaboration tool that organizes your projects into boards. In one glance, Trello tells you what's being worked on, who's working on what, and where something is in a process.Trello stores all historical and non-ephemeral data in MongoDB. The Trello team was attracted to MongoDB for its speed. MongoDB offers very fast writes, faster reads, and better denormalization support — it allows them to store the data of each individual card on the Trello board in a single document in the database and still have the ability to query into (and index) subfields of the document. They were also attracted to MongoDB's reliability: it is really easy to replicate, back up, and restore.<br>Other benefits for the Trello team: using a loose document store makes it easy to run different versions of the Trello code against the same database without fooling around with DB schema migrations. This has a lot of benefits when they push a new version of Trello; there is seldom (if ever) a need to stop access to the app while we do a DB update or backfill.<br>• What's in Trello Brett Keifer and the Trello team's presentation at the NYC MongoDB User Group, January 23, 2012.<br>• The Trello Stack January 2012 from the Fog Creek Blog<br>• Trello Architecture |
| | Flowdock is a modern web-based team messenger, that helps your team to become more organized simply by chatting. Flowdock backend uses MongoDB to store all messages.<br>• Why Flowdock migrated from Cassandra to MongoDB - Flowdock Blog (July 2010) |
| | Moxie Software™ is an innovative software company that provides integrated social enterprise software for employee and customer engagement through its Spaces™ by Moxie platform. Designed in the social media era and using MongoDB, Employee Spaces™ is an enterprise social software built for "The Way People Work" . It enables employees to collaborate on projects, innovate by sharing and co-creating knowledge and accelerate innovation. |
| | Sherl.tv is service for sharing plain text terminal screencasts from a unix terminal that uses mongodb as the main data storage for records. |

## Real-time stats/analytics

| Company | Use Case |
|---|---|
| | Intuit is one of the world's largest providers of software and services for small businesses and individuals. Intuit uses MongoDB to track user engagement and activity in real-time across its network of websites for small businesses.<br>• Deriving deep customer insights using MongoDB - Presentation at MongoSV (December 2010) |
| | The Buddy Media Platform gives brands the tools to manage their Facebook Pages and engage their Facebook fans. The second iteration of the Publisher tool on the Buddy Media Platform is powered by MongoDB.<br>• Social Analytics on MongoDB (Video and Slides) - Presentation from February 2011 New York MongoDB User Group<br>• The New Buddy Media Publisher: What You Need To Know - Buddy Media blog (November 2010) |

bit.ly allows users to shorten, share, and track links. bit.ly uses MongoDB to store user history. For more information:

- bit.ly user history, auto-sharded presentation at MongoNYC (May 2010)




10gen is the initiator, contributor and continual sponsor of the MongoDB project. 10gen built MongoDB Monitoring Service (MMS), a scalable software as a service monitoring tool built using MongoDB. MMS displays data in charts that track performance, resource utilization, availability, and response times. 10gen built MMS to provide operational insight into thousands of MongoDB deployments, and uses it to better diagnose and resolve customer issues.

Chartbeat is a revolutionary real-time analytics service that enables people to understand emergent behaviour in real-time and exploit or mitigate it. Chartbeat stores all historical analytics data in MongoDB.

- MongoDB & EC2: A love story? - NY MongoDB User Group (Oct 2011)
- The Secret Weapons Behind Chartbeat - Kushal's coding blog (April 2010)
- Kushal Dave's Presentation at MongoNYC (May 2010)

Server Density is a server monitoring tool from Boxed Ice. They have used MongoDB since June 2009 and are now processing billions of documents every month. Server Density also includes an addon for MongoDB monitoring
and they have written extensively about MongoDB itself.
Blog posts:

- Why we migrated from mysql to mongodb
- Automating partitioning, sharding and failover with MongoDB
- Notes from a production MongoDB deployment
- Many more

Presentations:

- MongoDB Monitoring and Queueing - David Mytton's Presentation at MongoSF (May 2011)
- Monitoring MongoDB - David Mytton's Presentation at MongoSV (December 2010)
- Humongous Data at Server Density - MongoUK Presentation (June 2010)
- MongoDB in Production at Boxed Ice - Webinar (May 2010)

Zuberance started using MongoDB as a reporting engine in their enterprise product. In Q3 of 2011, Zuberance decided to build their Self serve product to scale it to thousands of brand marketers to have them identify, energize their advocates while giving them real-time analytics.

- Why We Like MongoDB at Zuberance - Zuberance Blog (January 2012)

ShareThis makes it easy to share ideas and get to the good stuff online. ShareThis is the world's largest sharing network reaching over 400 million users across 150,000 sites and 785,000 domains across the web

- MongoDB is Powering ShareThis Count System - Lenin Gali's Presentation at MongoSV (December 2010)

GitHub, the social coding site, is using MongoDB for an internal reporting application.

Eventbrite gives you all the online tools you need to bring people together for an event and sell tickets.

- Building a Social Graph with MongoDB at Eventbrite - Brian Zambrano's presentation at MongoSV (December 2010)
- Tech Corner: Auto recovery with MongoDB replica sets - Eventbrite Blog (October 2010)
- Why you should track page views with MongoDB - Eventbrite Blog (June 2010)

| | |
|---|---|
| | BLiNQ Media, an employee owned social media advertising and technology company, is one of 12 companies globally with access to the Facebook advertising API and the only company that is building its technology, BAM (BLiNQ Ad Manager) in Ruby on Rails. BLiNQ works with some of the world's leading media agencies and brands, helping them place and optimize advertising on Facebook through our proprietary technology. The technology team is headquartered in Midtown Atlanta at the Advanced Technology Development Center (ATDC), one of the world's top 10 incubators. The company's sales and client services headquarters is in TechSpace in New York City's Union Square area. BAM utilizes MongoDb as an operational data store to support millions of Facebook user and advertising campaign data. The data stored in MongoDB is then used for real-time reporting, analysis and optimization against key performance indicators. Since BAM went live in July 2010, it is storing over 7 million records and averaging in excess of 30,000 transactions a day.<br>• MongoDB Delivers Results for Facebook Advertisers - Presentation at Mongo Atlanta (February 2011) |
| | Yottaa offers Performance Analytics, a cloud service that monitors, ranks and analyzes the performance of millions of web sites, providing an open database to answer questions such as “why performance matters” and “how fast is my site”. Yottaa is using Ruby on Rails and MongoDB to build their scalable analytics engine.<br>• How Yottaa Uses MongoDB - Jared Rosoff's presentation at MongoBoston (September 2010)<br>• Scalable Event Analytics with MongoDB and Ruby - Jared Rosoff's presentation at RubyConfChina (June 2010) |
| | BuzzFeed is a trends aggregator that uses a web crawler and human editors to find and link to popular stories around the web. BuzzFeed moved an analytics system tracking over 400 million monthly events from MySQL to MongoDB. |
| | uberVU is an intuitive social media management and analytics service used by companies of all sizes in 20+ countries. uberVU uses mongo as their primary data store because of its fast writes, its schemaless approach and reliability.<br>• Intelligent Stream-Filtering using MongoDB - Mihnea Giurgea's Presentation at MongoUK (September 2011) |
| | CopperEgg RevealCloud – Awesome Cloud Monitoring – CopperEgg is able to achieve its super real-time updates and alerts of the RevealCloud product with the help of MongoDB. Mongo was the only DB that fit the requirements of extremely rapid storage and retrieval of customer monitoring data to provide on-screen updates every few seconds (NOT minutes). CopperEgg monitors thousands of end points world-wide in real-time. RevealCloud is available to application development organizations to give the instant visibility of system performance in any stage of the development lifecycle, from initial design through production, helping ensure SLAs…and giving your customers the response times they expect – right now.<br>• Designing Algorithms that Scale Horizontally with MongoDB - Luke Ehresman's Presentation at MongoDallas (November 2011) |
| | Loggly uses MongoDB as a repository of statistics and summary information for time series log data. Loggly collects and stores metrics into MongoDB including the size and count of log events, and the results of saved searches run against our customized fulltext search engine based on SOLR. These metrics are used to drive graphs, reports, dashboards and exciting visualizations for users. |
| | Pattern Builders built a .NET based streaming analytics engine using MongoDB. Relational databases and MSMQ were integrated with MongoDB for high performance and a great user experience. |
| | Go Graph Stock Photography offers over 7 million stock images and graphics. We use MongoDB to track impression data on our search results pages. It helps us to track which results are served when a user does a search query. Using that data we are able to get a better idea of what our customers are looking for and we are able to serve up better results which will translate into a better overall user experience. |

| | |
|---|---|
| vintank | VinTank uses MongoDB to power the analytics and reporting for their social media listening and social CRM features. The company is the only digital think tank for the wine industry. |
| TRUNK CLUB MEN'S OUTFITTERS | Trunk Club uses MongoDB for a variety of applications, including real-time analytics, business intelligence and machine learning.The company allows guys discover awesome clothes that are perfect for them without ever having to go shopping by combining top brands, expert service, and unparalleled convenience to deliver a highly personalized experience that helps guys look their best and saves them time. |
| | MinFil.se uses MongoDB for distributed & redundant file storage capability. Using MongoDB GridFS, their service basically scales infinitely—they just add more servers as our storage requirement grows. - Real-Time Analytics for all our users, all individual files, and for the service in general, tracking pageviews, downloads, unique downlods, referrers, etc. |
| appboy | Appboy uses MongoDB for distributed & redundant file storage capability. Appboy is a customer relationship management, marketing, and user analytics platform for mobile applications. We use MongoDB as our primary datastore and analytics backend. |

## Scientific

- CERN uses MongoDB for Large Hadron Collider data.
  - MongoDB at the Energy Frontier - MongoNYC presentation (May 2012)
  - Holy Large Hadron Collider, Batman! - MongoDB Blog (June 2010)
- The Mount Sinai Institute for Genomics and Multiscale Biology uses MongoDB to help with various computational genomics tasks
- Realtime.springer.com is a service that aggregates together downloads of Springer journal articles and book chapters in real time and displays them in a variety of visualizations. The goal of this service is to provide the scientific community with valuable information about how the literature is being used "right now". MongoDB is used to store the details of one million downloads per day from across Springer's sites. Map reduce jobs generate collections for the last 7, 30, and 90 days for around 2,000 journal and 40,000 book titles.

## Social Networks

| Company | Use Case |
|---|---|

| | |
|---|---|
| | Foursquare is a location based social network that incorporates gaming elements. foursquare uses MongoDB to store venues and user "check-ins" into venues, sharding the data over more than 25 machines on Amazon EC2.<br><br>• Experiences Deploying MongoDB on AWS - Cooper Bethea's Presentation at MongoSV (December 2011)<br>• Practical Data Storage: MongoDB at foursquare - MongoNYC (June 2011)<br>• MongoDB @ foursquare - MongoSF (May 2011)<br>• Scaling foursquare with MongoDB - New York MongoDB User Group (December 2010)<br>• MongoDB Q&A - New York MongoDB User Group (December 2010)<br>• MongoDB at foursquare presentation: Slides and Video (May 2010) |
| | musweet keeps track of what artists and bands publish on the social web.<br><br>• Handling Humongous Data Sets from Social Net - Nader Cserny and Grischa Andreew's Presentation at MongoBerlin (October 2010) |
| | Behance uses MongoDB to power its Behance's Activity Feed, which displays what's new and what's buzzing in the Behance community from the people you follow. The Activity Feed provides a way of exploring the creative world through everyone you know as a curator in real time. |
| | Guildwork is a guild host and social network for massively online multiplayer games such as World of Warcraft. Guildwork stores nearly all data in MongoDB with the exception of sessions and chat history. |

| | |
|---|---|
| | Silentale keeps track of your contacts and conversations from multiple platforms and allows you to search and access them from anywhere. Silentale is using MongoDB as the back-end for indexing and searching on millions of stored messages of different types. More details on Silentale can be found in this TechCrunch article.<br><br>• One Year with MongoDB presentation from MongoUK (June 2010): Slides and Video |
| | Squarespace is an innovative web publishing platform that consists of a fully hosted and managed GUI environment for creating and maintaining websites. Squarespace's new social modules utilize Mongo to store large amounts of social data that is pulled in from around the Internet and displayed in native widgets that are fully integrated with the platform. |
| | Shelby.tv Shelby uses a few physically distinct MongoDB replica sets as the primary data stores in development and production. That data is accessed by web and iOS through our internal Ruby API. |
| | Jorjun Technical Services uses MongoDB for caching json-based REST API calls, and increasingly for production data. The company offers solid, reliable software applications by offering focus, experience, lateral thinking and experienced evaluation of technical options. |
| | Tripl stores all checkin data, trips and notifications as well as queues in MongoDB. It is built from social geo-data on Facebook, Foursquare and Instagram to highlight trips and present travel stories from your friends. |

| | |
|---|---|
| mylist™ | myList's Dev, Sandbox, and Production all use MongoDB for their backend. MyList are a Facebook application that allows people to discover and organize the things in their lives. All back end data is in MongoDB with Solr for indexing and Hadoop for Map/Reduce jobs against logs. |
| MajiKal | Bawaal Labs uses MongoDB for user management and storing all data related to user posts. Bawaal contains views on technology, social networking and current happenings. |

## Telecommunications

| Company | Use Case |
|---|---|
| Viber | Viber Media is using MongoDB as the core cloud infrastructure for its popular iPhone and Android applications that offer free phone calls and text messaging between users over 3G and wireless networks. Viber selected MongoDB for its ability to scale as more users join the Viber community, and to manage peak and unpredictable data loads from its 30 million plus registered mobile users.<br>• MongoDB at Viber Media: The Platform Enabling Free Phone Calls and Text Messaging for Over 18 Million Active Users - MyNoSQL (Jan 2012)<br>• Viber Media Selects MongoDB as Database in the Cloud for Popular Mobile Apps - 10gen blog (Nov 2011)<br>• Where NoSQL, cloud computing and free texting converge - GigaOm (Nov 2011) |
| O2 | O2 uses MongoDB for several applications, including their Priority Moments location based offer service. |

- Ericsson
- Telefonica

## More MongoDB Users

| Company | Use Case |
|---|---|
| SUGARCRM THE CLOUD IS OPEN | Sugar CRM uses Mo comments and whet Sugar. |
| 微集分 | uses MongoDB to s we use MongoDB as |

| | |
|---|---|
| | WuuhuuOnline.com leverages SPHINX a |
| | catch.com is the eas capture & find your r<br>• MongoDB w 2011)<br>• MongoDB a |
| | CollegeHumor is a c exchange applicatio |
| | Thrillist is using mon Right now it's emplo click-track data. We' our continuous integ |
| | Founded by Alibaba consumer-to-consu online retail stores th Sellers are able to p price or by auction. sold at a fixed price; the monitoring data. |
| | Evite uses MongoDE<br>• Tracking an 2010) |
| | Justin.tv is the easy, analytics tools for vi provide. Read more |
| | WHERE® is a local mobile coupons in th restaurant reviews, t from local merchants here, Inc. uses Mong a hyper-local ad net |
| | PhoneTag is a servi and SMS. PhoneTag |

| | |
|---|---|
| | PiCloud enables sci<br>power in public and<br>computing applicatic<br>sets in a highly distri |
| | Hashrocket is an ex<br>Medication Manager<br>resolving drug-relate |
| | The Mozilla open-so<br>available on bitbucke |
| | Sedue is the enterpr<br>currently uses Mong<br>• MongoDB a |
| | Codaset is an open<br>out what your friends<br>• The awesor<br>2010)<br>• Handling Da |
| | Punchbowl.com is a<br>datamining.<br>• Introducing<br>presentatior<br>• *Ryan Angilly*<br>• MongoDB fo<br>Presentatio |
| | photostre.am stream<br>• MongoDB ir |
| | Fotopedia uses Mon<br>timelines, a feature t<br>tiny html fragment in<br>• MongoDB: ( |
| | Grooveshark current |
| | Struq develops techı<br>time. |
| | Pitchfork is using Mo |

| | |
|---|---|
| | Floxee, a web toolkit<br>award-winning Twee |
| | TeachStreet helps p<br>manage their teachi<br>teachers with insight<br>• Slides from |
| | Visibiz is a socially a<br>productivity of busin<br>and organized profil<br>information needed<br>activities through sin<br>Visibiz uses MongoD<br>• How Mongo |
| | Defensio is a comme |
| | TweetSaver is a web<br>MongoDB for back-e |
| | Bloom Digital's AdG<br>storage for AdGear. |
| | KLATU Networks de<br>manage risk, reduce<br>status, condition, an<br>MongoDB to store te<br>KLATU chose Mong |
| | This or That! is a use<br>on comparisons. Wh<br>user-generated com<br>drive its leaderboard |
| | songkick lets you tra<br>• Speeding u |
| | Crowdtap uses Mon<br>engine. The targetin<br>is core to our service |
| | Detexify is a cool ap<br>out the blog post for |
| | http://sluggy.com/ is<br>• From MySQ<br>2010) |
| | EDITD is using Mon<br>their sentiment analy |
| | @trackmeet helps y |

| | |
|---|---|
| | eFlyoverleverages th over two thousand g |
| | Shapado is a multi-t Rails and uses Mong |
| | Sifino enables stude summaries, and old |
| | GameChanger provi distribute real-time g<br>• Tornado, M 2010)<br>• GameChan (September |
| | soliMAP is a map-ba |
| | MyBankTracker iPh |
| | BillMonitor uses Mor used by the live site |
| | Tubricator allows yo Django. |
| | Mu.ly uses MongoDI service. MongoDB is |
| | Avinu is a Content M MongoDB. |
| | Topsy is a search er |
| | Cold Hard Code mal<br>• Codepeek i<br>• Jarvis uses |
| | Similaria.pl is an onl<br>• One Year w |
| | ToTuTam uses Mon information about us<br>• One Year w |

| | |
|---|---|
| | themoviedb.org is a |
| | OCW Search is a se uses Sphinx to inde<br>• Full Text Se |
| | Mixero is the new ge noise. Mixero uses M |
| | Biggo is an advance collection. |
| | Kabisa is a web dev for many of its client |
| | DokDok makes it ea document - right fror Morency's presentat |
| | Enbil is a swedish w querying data about |
| | markitfor.me is a boo don't have to remem text of all of your boo pages. |
| | Backpage Pics is a v MongoDB is used to |
| | Joomla Ads uses Mo |
| | Eiwa System Manag projects since Janua |
| | Morango is an intern several client project<br>• Building a C 2010) |
| | PeerPong discovers We index users acro available informatior |

| | |
|---|---|
| | ibibo ("I build, I bond represented as a sin million of these docu |
| | Zoofs is a new way t Twitter searching for |
| | Oodle is an online cl company behind the our millions of users |
| | Funadvice relaunche MongoDB User Foru |
| | Ya Sabe is using Mo search engine built f more than 14 million and in English. |
| | LoteriaFutbol.com is 2010. Mongo has be uses the PHP driver |
| | Kehalim switched ov contextual affiliate ne MongoDB. MongoDI hadoop-like alternati |
| | Givemebeats.net is produced by some o profile, beats informa |
| | Cheméo, a search e explanation of the to chemeo.com/doc/tec |
| | Planetaki is place we MySQL for the stora<br>• Planetaki Pe |
| | [ChinaVisual.com] is ChinaVisual.com mo major production and |
| | RowFeeder is an ea posts in a spreadshe across multiple socia<br>• MongoDB fo (July 2010) |

| | |
|---|---|
| | Open Dining Networ web and mobile orde |
| | URLi.st is a small we (using the pylons fra |
| | Kidiso is a safe onlir setup, we are using performance (ie sea |
| | Carbon Calculated p everything in the wo of this platform, Carb intuitive. |
| | Vowch is a simple pl you. It is a platform f account.<br>• View a vow |
| | HolaDoctor.com is th online Hispanic com to store article image save handler. |
| | Ros Spending is the 1,400,000 federal go more than 260,000 s information, stats an Development and la |
| | BlueSpark designs a development, we ha |
| | [Aghora] is a time at governmental requir information. |
| | Man of the House is and at home, as a fa |
| | PeerIndex is an algo firehose of social me |

| | |
|---|---|
| | sahibinden.com is a over 1.5 billion page caching. |
| | Ylastic is using Mon capability. |
| | BRAINREPUBLIC is like-minded people f |
| | Friendmaps is a tool |
| | The affiliate marketi search data. As of A |
| | Virb Looking for a pl with Virb. You provic |
| | Deal Machine is a st storage. It has helpe |
| | arrivalguides.com is launched a new site using the NoRM Driv |
| | The Hype Machine k and retrieval of user performance in our v |
| | ChatPast synchroniz computers. Search t about. Business use (Highrise, BaseCam |

| | |
|---|---|
| | Stockopedia initially 20000+ stocks, sect for building real time and investors condu |
| | TravelPost is a comı reviews, photos and |
| | SoulGoal stores or c |
| | Top Twitter Trends i technologies such a |
| | bongi.mobi is a plac include: fast docume on handset capabilit tracking, click-2-call, |
| | CoStore is an online importing, transformi such as charts, grap wherever you need i which are MapRedu |
| | Vuzz answers quest charts. At Vuzz, peo that share the same wants to be your tim current. Vuzz has be applicatin database. |
| | Bakodo is a barcode while they are shopp information about th importantly, what the of products. |
| | noclouds.org is a on and share informatic all systems. |
| | CafeClimb.com is a which lets people sh traveling information from the user. |
| | Keekme is free mon Keekme you will eas MongoDB as a prim |

| | |
|---|---|
| | Vitals.com consolida to help users make i of insurance compar datasource for our F MongoDB collection our dataservers perr functionality to Mong |
| | P2P Financial is Car DB for storing busine |
| | Qwerly is people sea links to social netwo |
| | phpMyEngine is a fr is MongoDB. |
| | vsChart allows you t |
| | yap.TV is the ultimat guide fused with a tu fans while watching MongoDB for analyti |
| | BusyConf makes gre letting them collect a multiple web platforr all the details preloa complementary to it' code is much simple<br>• BusyConf p |
| | Sentimnt is a person networks and allows not related to you. S instances serve arou from MS SQL to Mo |
| | Workbreeze is fast a global project storag |
| | Kompasiana is the b biggest site In Indon |

| | |
|---|---|
| | Milaap works with es community developr |
| | Agent Storm is a cor and manage your Re listings on your web eFlyers all at the clic performs the search then looked up in My the results are serve updated either via th property is stored in changes. All this me<br>• Now with 50 |
| | Mashape is a frustra distribute an API of a<br>• How We Sw Presentatio |
| | The UK Jobsite is ar We use MongoDB fo searches to user info of the reasons of wh http://www.theukjobs |
| | Tastebuds music da connect with their las immediately shown s popular events servi MongoDB has drama allows users to rapid |
| | Skimlinks enables pu equivalent affiliate lir products mentioned retailer programs in and ensures no mon impressions we get |
| | www.vanilladesk.com as the main databas MongoDB's docume what enables Vanilla |
| | Summify uses Mong (metadata and HTM only the most recent cache for URL redire |
| | dakwak is the easies visitors want. It is a r away from getting yo |
| | Kapost's online news produce content. We analytics for the new |

| | |
|---|---|
| | ContactMe is a "ligh many small busines ContactMe.com aim social media sites lik place, making for ea |
| | Moontoast Impulse i from a Facebook far Their tools power co fan-building and reve Moontoast Impulse: and more. Moontoas |
| | Shopperhive is a soc reviews, video revie data back-end stora |
| | tracknose develops reward you with disc chosen for excellent georeferenced statis |
| | TalkAboutHealth ma like you, learn from e |
| | Wusoup is a free on handles all user and |
| | Fave is a local searc businesses, and to h releasing next-gener services. Infrastructu performance/respon call campaigns |
| | Doodle is the world's MongoDB as an add less data via MySQL<br>• An introduct |
| | FindTheBest is an o your options and dec informed decisions b products and service traffic monitoring and |
| | Fuseware provides r and more. This analy makers. We use Mo that we store. We ha scalability and data a |
| | Wherevent is a sear other cities. The enti feature. |

| | |
|---|---|
| | Skyline Innovations<br>We deploy custom n<br>MongoDB for data w<br>• Time Series<br>2011) |
| | Memrise combines t<br>of our learning and v<br>about schema ossifi |
| | Dather is a content p<br>can invite friends, fa |
| | Fundastic.info is Cru<br>investors and financ<br>dedicated pages for<br>understand the inves<br>to store all its invest<br>stored in MongoDB a |
| | Foofind Labs is a un<br>and indexes every fi<br>creation by Pablo So<br>MongoDB is used to<br>in order to allow text |
| | Beaconpush is a clo<br>real-time data with a<br>methods for older br<br>data is used for pres<br>low system impact a |
| | Easy Bill, India's first<br>to the life of the com<br>never-before conver<br>biggest problems fac<br>enterprises for bill pa<br>grown exponentially,<br>activity logging of ou |
| | DeskMetrics is a rea<br>how their users are u<br>application, where a<br>happened on the us<br>We use MongoDB to<br>have chosen Mongo<br>important for us sinc |

| | |
|---|---|
| | Interstate provides b tasks using awesom data, etc). |
| | Proxlet helps you fig a Twitter API proxy, way of browser exte per-user setting doc designed to scale hc<br>• A Beautiful 2011) |
| | Dayload provides a resource usage and mail. Storing AWS re MapReduce functior |
| | Avivo is creating mo mobile, web and cus Through design and interaction. Ultimatel that build brand loya is leading us to dive best for our clients. V primary database fo |
| | Abusix is the networ spamfeeds(www.spa technology providers today, while handlin behavior in their net major need for a sol increase customers resources in abuse MongoDB in environ almost suits all need |
| | Idea2 is a versatile, create and implemer projects, customer c browser-based, fully application and work transition, we also c |
| | FamilyTies is family families and friends children under 13, b more to come. Mong various cache object relationship maps. |

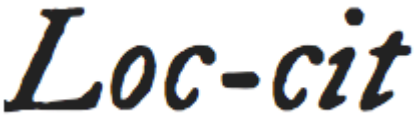
| | |
|---|---|
| | Pracanowo.pl is a jo formats and finds jo and in few month to |
| | Republika Online is Republika", a nation |
| | Grepler.com is a dis lists to enable single the user accounts w |
| | Thuisvergelijken.nl i wide range of produ all our data storage: MongoDB's flexibilit |
| | salsadb.com uses M capabilities are used |
| | CHECK24 is one of compare a wide ran travel and thus save link-out the custome contract. The compa Furthermore, custom |
| | I'mOK is a mobile a their location, taking exchanged for thing MongoDB is used to |
| | Wheelhouse CMS is flexible to develop si is used for all data s |
| | Qwk.io is the quicke backend. |

| | |
|---|---|
| | CyberAgent,Inc. has<br>CyberAgent's major<br>Investment Develop<br>American office: Cyb<br><br>Social Game with nc |
| | HeiaHeia.com provi<br>friends, and cheer o<br>can choose from ov<br>HeiaHeia.com's tech<br>provide engaging, cu |
| | NewsCurve is an an<br>MongoDB as primar |
| | Accounting SaaS Ja<br>accountants and sm<br>services include, but<br>necessary to meet th<br>that is difficult to acc |
| | Fabric Structures Co<br>in the overall constru<br>customers about the<br>field. MongoDB is us |
| | Brenden Digital uses<br>migrated. We appre<br>repeatedly exhibits a<br>comprehension. |
| | Attachments.me is a<br>surrounding attachm |
| | Thumbtack is an onl<br>analytics, due to its<br>details can be found |
| | ChirpAt.Me enables<br>expertise with their f<br>sessions to messag |
| | DianPing.com is a le<br>objective and rich lo<br>weddings and variou<br>on businesses, user |

| | |
|---|---|
| | Venmo is a free and drinks, rent, grocerie activities published b |
| | Intelie is a software t and machine learnin centers in real time. documents per minu new rules, in additio |
| | First, we are using M users can create a S perform a lookup of user. Second, we ar statistics for our Ema queries in tables witl anywhere from 30 - queries. This use ca http://johnpwood.net |
| | Directdialogs.com is capability and a flexi powerful cache with purposes, OLAP rep MongoDB. |
| | DC Storm helps mar better. The intuitive t across all digital cha powers the Storm Pl redundancy. |
| | Bouncely uses Mong everything and store information and run |
| | PClicks uses Mongo then adapt to meet t |
|  | Magnetic is the lead their most relevant a month. Beyond perfo leverage the rich dat and unify a mix of hi Magnetic a competit |
| | Okezone.com is usir and commenting sys |
| | OpenChime uses Mo Thousands of peopl instructors in Mexico |
| | Monoloop is a behav MongoDB is the core and deliver personal |

| | |
|---|---|
| Yeay.me | Yeay.me is a small s MongoDB is used fo |
| ACTIVESPHERE | Activesphere provide as well. |
| SOCIALCITYDEALS Tracking all local daily deals in your city | SocialCityDeals use set of fields and new architecture to store effort in half for the s |
| Thin PHP Framework Light weight. Lightning Fast. Easy. | Thin PHP Framewor fast, simple, scalable users scale their dat |
| pt PunchTab | Newsman App is an DB for now to build for each subscriber t all our other databas |
| Sizzix The Start of Something YOU | Sizzix uses mongod |
| gazaro | Gazaro uses Mongo products across a ra |
| DROPZONE.BY | Dropzone.by uses m introduced OAuth 2. |
| | Cairenhuiis a Financ and use Mongodb_1 |
| Ez Texting .com | Ez Texting uses Mor outgoing text messa |
| iKeepm | iKeepm is a cloud-ba uploads in GridFS. |
| maansu.com | Maansu.com is an re sells. |
| motores24H | www.motores24h.pt our data storage nee that we can easily ex |

| | |
|---|---|
| | Techunits seeks to v technology, Informat TechMVC is the bes architecture. Techun Buzzers.co.za, Trivia |
| | Buzzers.co.zahttp://l changing environme millions of products a using MongoLantern system more intellig |
| | Paraimpu is a social and socially share th used for all the persi sharding, heterogen |
| | Trivian is a location l to store quiz questio |
| | Business.com is the the products and ser taxonomy systems. |
| | General Flows is bui into some pre-baked build a booking syste plugging them into th structures, because code-generation tech (EAV) but found the Google App Engine and running; we're ju |
| | Art.sy is a new way t collections around th |
| | Spoondate is a socia experiences. The sit in a conversation, or data and member se rapidly and consister |
| | D Sharp uses Mongo people with diabetes and JQuery Mobile, modern smartphone desktop browsers. |
| | uQuery Inc. uses a s we receive from App software stack from |

| | |
|---|---|
| | 46elks uses MongoD make sure the data |
| | Chalkboard is a daily socially over mobile of consumers across MongoDB to archive internally. With the g future. |
| | tisProperty is a Real realestates listed on to store our crawling |
| | Digital Media Excha more instead of our storage 2. We run a schema-less design. are just some of the |
| | Daily Gourmet provi our extensive loggin wasn't possible with |
| | Sponsored by Singly over their personal d as a personal data s |
|  | Loc. cit. is a small ne can be explosive. Tr database for everyth Mongoengine for Dja |
| | Naver Japan utilizes recently released ph http://itunes.apple.co with MongoDB (Japa http://www.slideshar |
| | My eStore App uses content via Mongo. |
| | Fotosearch Stock Ph imagesare served w customer is looking f results. |

| | |
|---|---|
| | CloudAmp is a data many data sources a across different priva data integration for a platform from private Twitter, where we or |
| | Vigilant Medical use medical images. Mo application, ImageSl |
| | Piyavate Internationa new website need s search with Solr. Mu WYSIWYG form cre these features are t way. That's why Mo |
| | Mindvalley is using M Mongoid. The ability speed, while its docu lead. Due to our suc developed CMS, as |
| | Cookfollower is a Tw meet new people. M |
| | Weconext develops secured web platfor allows simple collab MongoDB stores for |
| | Visual.ly is building t platform for Big Data |
| | Trendrr provides the for media and brand curation, charting an |
| | Wireclub is an online are exchanged by ou |
| | KANO/APPS creates worldwide players a the primary data sto |

| | |
|---|---|
| | OnePageCRM uses<br>been using MySQL s |
| | Blabbermouth Socia<br>for sweepstakes and |
| | Persik.me uses Mon |
| | Kungfuters LLC is us<br>Users must sign in u<br>submit stories of awl<br>Each week, the story<br>This site was former<br>Stories, Users, Votes |
| | PunchTab store all l |
| | Nexon Corp. is a ma |
| | Heyzap uses mongo<br>iOS gaming apps, a<br>tens of millions of ou |

| | |
|---|---|
| | Fishidy.com uses M |
| | Wokeey.com uses M hundreds records. |
| | ThinktankSocial use brands such as Price and mass storage w |
| | Data Publica uses M |
| | Hipster uses Mongo and analytics. |
| | Noktacom Medya us analytics. We track e custom video scorin suggestion system. second. We will exp usage of caching sy |
| | Searce we used mo very large set of data |
| | deegr is using Mong recommendation en architecture and sha |
| | AppHarbor is a .NET messages generate provision MongoDB |

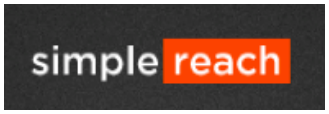
| | |
|---|---|
| | Pictomist is a simple written in two basic p style mongo collectio off the top elements second part is web la them in memory, and spin out the bulk of t layer without muckin |
| xperantum | Xperantum Xemantic structures, capture th |
| Lists browser | 4Apps uses MongoD memcached. |
| | GLO AB uses Mongo (MES) software proc data gathered during but expecting to grow within company netw |
| | CMI Soft uses Mong & e-commerce store social networking ap use Rails with Mong |
| | Fyndlr implements M posts and users are functionality. Since c MongoDB instance. |
| | Exceptiontail uses M exception managem them see the entire s |
| | AdHui.com uses mo optimization. |

| | |
|---|---|
| travelmap.nl | Travelmap uses Mo sources. Travelmap 5 times faster and m average our databas |
| | Global Advertisers u outdoor advertising a Airport. Global is on |
| Melt Demand-side Platform | Melt DSP is using M |
| STARTUP THREADS [MONTHLY] | Startup Threads Mo |
| Playlists For Everything Songza | Songza uses Mongo streaming service th The schema-free de and occasionally a c |
| CONTACT 506° | Ciris is a new applic MongoDB to store th |
| socialbakers The Recipe for Social Marketing Success | Socialbakers Inc. Fo |
| neongrid | Neon Grid uses mor |
| EXMACHINA | Ex Machina develop involves tens or hun and as a result we h needed a storage so cost-efficient regardl We never looked ba |
| | BellyBallot is a new MongoDB for it's pri their associated mea Rails) is also on Mo |
| AdMaster™ Digital Consulting | AdMaster uses Mon of over 40,000,000 f |

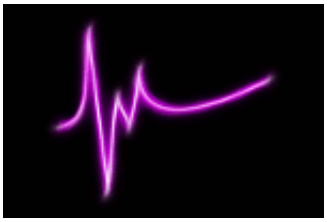
| | |
|---|---|
| | GetVega is a second memory relevant data from th list on GetVega whe GetVega.com uses I MySQL. MongoDB a |
| | 5Searches uses Mo |
| | barbull.co.uk uses M reliable and the abili calculations are a br |
| | Power-lan uses Mon applications are : - N |
| | Sidebuy is a product find products and de properties. With Mor across our servers h everything in BSON |
| | OviPets uses Mongo very happy with the scaling beautifully wi storage and image c |

| | |
|---|---|
| | Tip or Skip uses Mo and job queues. |
| [ nodegrid ] | Nodegrid provides a service. |
| | Courseoff uses Mon |
| MMX | Mini Medical Record especially useful for Whether paper or el and medicolegal pro addition, even simpl be inaccessible for p Medical Record alle |
| ClaimAble | ClaimAble operates use it exclusively to |

| | |
|---|---|
| | Ponder Design uses portal for a large stu implementing new fe wishes. |
| | Stamped is a recom favorite places and t coordinating the crea The Engineering Bel |
| | Hopper uses Mongo |
| | Recommendly INC u |
| | AlisverisRobotu.com including inventory n |
| | ITERNOVA SL prou store real-time data networks...), and veh |
| | tvb.com uses Mongo MongoDB is schema processing. We crea |

| | |
|---|---|
| | Ob1b.com is one of price and find produ products which they because of its simpli |
| | Talis uses MongoDE http://community.tali achieved an order of to simplify our stack |
| | Digital Flow uses Mo ease of use and dep |
| | Transmachin uses a sentences with loads delivering our websit |
| | About.me is currentl About.me turned to I addition to the shard required. |
| | Dealer.com deploye supports configuratio on-disk size of almos |
| | Famigo stores all va |
| | By scaling materials properties of over 80 Project is making the sophisticated web in schedule and track c and search the resul materials properties. |
| | The MapMyFitness u traditional MySQL so the candidate for exp application deploym for live tracking, to u |
|  | SimpleReach power SimpleReach builds |

| | |
|---|---|
| | MongoDB is used fo Stripe's in-house fra received, or a cron j aggregate totals, fee |
| | Tuttur.com is a socia to share their bettinç Linux machines. |
| | WireLoad uses Mon narrowly focused so pleasant user experi |
| | Illicotravel compares and more. We love M |
| | MKN's (MKN Web S operations. The data |
| | Spideo using Mongo their own tastes. |
| | radi8.co.uk using Mo |
| | PRIJSZOEKEN.nl is products from 500 c data-feeds, our cust allows us to develop |

| | |
|---|---|
| | JustReco uses Mon |
| | Gimme Bar use Mor stored directly in S3 around 70g. |
| | Nodex use MongoDI data store for our CM and are expanding a fast and secure web outlining how we use |
| | FramtidsPost AB us services. The Future messages are big ar been able to use Mo |
| | Beanstalk Data uses |
|  | wline uses MongoDE |
| | TalkOver uses Mong good for our "feeds" friendly content to us |

| | |
|---|---|
| | StoreHR uses Mong which keeps employ comes to due diliger and lets us scale hor |
| | Trillsy uses MongoD |
| | Bottomless Endless Online Gaming Engi |
| | Review19 uses Mon Gaming Engine Eng |
| | iQmetrix uses Mong customer facing, sol Microsoft's cloud pla |
| | Doocuments Softwa scalable sharded rep store and process al insight on readers be |
| | JackThreads, an ecc track products down |
| | Shelf9 combines the MongoDB as storag |
| | Luminis Technologie platform focussed or schools in the Nethe replica set running o designed to work we extra load of new sc |
| | Betterez is a SaaS r to improve both pass configuration spanni both the main data s with it's natural interf |
| | DUVRI 81.08 is a go safety risks to preve law (d.lgs 81/2008). replica sets, as docu |

| | |
|---|---|
| ZOMBY™ A DIGITAL APOCALYPSE | Zomby is a massivel Creative Group. We user-base expands ( Erlang) will allow us our game, we make efficient. |
| gusanito.com® | Gusanito.com uses I |
| AionPhotos web application | Aion Innovations use |
| SUPPORT.COM PERSONAL TECHNOLOGY EXPERTS | Support.com, Inc pro MongoDB to store m computers, devices outcomes of home te may lead to subscrib |
| FootballrRating beta | Footballrrating uses network, match vote pushing new feature |
| fn | Factile is a online fre survey is different in run analytics on the |
| Earlydoc beta | Earlydoc models me normalization occup MongoDB is a **huge** |
| | Dir uses MongoDB t Dir is a simple busin |
| socialbakers The Recipe for Social Marketing Success | Socialbakers uses M for to get sophisticat |

Y M I R L I N K

YMIRLINK is a Toky
marketing. In March
mail system. In July
MongoDB as our ne

## See also

- MongoDB Apps
- Use Cases
- User Feedback

# Contributors

- JS Benchmarking Harness
- MongoDB kernel code development rules
- Project Ideas
- Roadmap
- UI
- Source Code
- Building
- Database Internals
- Contributing to the Documentation

- 10gen Contributor Agreement

# JS Benchmarking Harness

This benchRun command is designed as a QA baseline perf measurement tool, not designed to be a "benchmark".

CODE:

```
db.foo.drop();
db.foo.insert( { _id : 1 } )

ops = [
    { op : "findOne" , ns : "test.foo" , query : { _id : 1 } } ,
    { op : "update" , ns : "test.foo" , query : { _id : 1 } , update : { $inc : { x : 1 } } }

]

for ( x = 1; x<=128; x*=2){
    res = benchRun( { parallel : x ,
                      seconds : 5 ,
                      ops : ops
                    } )
    print( "threads: " + x + "\t queries/sec: " + res.query )
}
```

Dynamic values

```
res = benchRun( { ops : [ { ns : t.getFullName() ,
                            op : "update" ,
                            query : { _id : { "#RAND_INT" : [ 0 , 100 ] } } ,
                            update : { $inc : { x : 1 } } } ] ,
                  parallel : 2 ,
                  seconds : 1 ,
                  totals : true } )
```

- dynamic operatos
  - RAND_INT [ min , max , <multiplier >
    - [ 0 , 10 , 4 ] would produce random numbers between 0 and 10 and then multiply by 4

More info:

http://github.com/mongodb/mongo/commit/3db3cb13dc1c522db8b59745d6c74b0967f1611c

# MongoDB kernel code development rules

Coding conventions for the MongoDB C++ code...


- Kernel class rules
- Kernel code style
- Kernel concurrency rules
- Kernel exception architecture
- Kernel logging
- Kernel string manipulation
- Memory management
- Writing tests

- Git Committing and Pushing
- User Facing Conventions
  - Use camelCase for about everything
  - Include units in fields


For anything not mentioned here, default to google c++ style guide

### Git Committing and Pushing

- commit messages should have the case in the message SERVER-XXX
- commit messages should be descriptive enough that a glance can tell the basics
- commits should only include 1 thought.
- do **NOT** push until running the test suite

### User Facing Conventions

These are very important as we can't change them easily – Much more than code conventions!

Anything users see – command line options, command names, command output, we need to think hard and carefully about the name to be used, and the exact format and consistency of the items output. For example, serverStatus output is a bit of a mismash of lowercase and camelCase. Let's fix that over time, starting with new things.

Anything user facing must be ran by several team members first.

- **Do NOT add a new $operator without signoff by the entire team.**
- **Do NOT add a new command without signoff by the entire team.**

#### Use camelCase for about everything

- `--commandLineOptions`
- { commandNames : 1, commandOption : "abc" }
- Names of fields in objects we generate - such as command responses, profiler fields.

#### Include units in fields

In things like serverStatus, include the units in the stat name if there is any chance of ambiguity. For example:

- writtenMB
- timeMs

We should have standards for these – i.e. megabytes should always be "MB" and not "Mb" and "Megabytes" in different places. So the standards are:

- for bytes : use "MB" and show in megabytes unless you know it will be tiny. Note you can use a float so 0.1MB is fine to show.
- for time: use millis ("Ms") for time by default. you can also use Secs and a float for times you know will be very long.
- for microseconds, use "Micros" as the suffix, e.g., `timeMicros`.

## Kernel class rules

#### Design guidelines

- ***Never use multiple inheritance***. If you need the service of several classes, use delegation. The only possible but highly unlikely exception to this is if your class inherits from other pure abstract classes.
- Have a comment before a class that explains its purpose. Perhaps the class name is so clear that this is obvious. Then some commentary on what you are up to.
- Only add ***members and methods to a class if they make sense*** w.r.t the bullet above. If you find yourself unsure to where to hook a piece of logic, rethink the class and surrounding classes purposes.
- Class ***names and methods names are to be descriptive*** of what they do. Avoid generic overloaded names (e.g., write, add, ...) to make grep easier (and maybe reading too).
- Don't put implementation details in the header unless the user of the class needs to know them. Sometimes single line inline implementations are good "documentation". If something needs to be inline for performance, put it at the bottom of the fine using the `inline` keyword instead of in the middle of the class definition (if the implementation is more than a line or two long).
- Assume all methods can throw a DBException. If a class should never throw (e.g can be called in a destructor), that should be clear.
- *Write a unit test for each class you create.* If you can't easily write a unit test for the class, that is a strong hint it has way too many external dependencies.
- ***Do not create early hierarchies***. An early hierarchy is a one where there is only one type of derived class. If you need to separate functionality, use delegation instead. In that case, make sure to test separately.
- Avoid `friend`.
- Default to making classes ***non-assignable and non-copyable***. (Use boost::noncopyable.)

#### Layout guidelines

- For classes where layout matters (anything with #pragma pack), put data members together at the top of the class. You must also have a BOOST_STATIC_ASSERT(sizeof(ClassName) == EXPECTED_SIZE) either directly under the class or in the associated .cpp file

## Kernel code style


- basics
- case
- comments
- inlines
- strings
- brackets
- class members
- functions
- templates
- namespaces
- start of file
- assertions
- return early
- numeric constants
- explicit constructors
- #includes
    - For cpp files:
    - For h files:
- file names
- casting


#### basics

- Use spaces, no literal tabs.
- 4 spaces per indentation.
- Limit lines to 100 columns.
- Use LF (Unix-style) line endings, not CR-LF (DOS)
    - git has a config option in Windows to convert line endings automatically (core.autocrlf)

#### case

Use camelCase for most `varNames`

See important notes on case on the parent page for user facing names!

#### comments

We follow http://google-styleguide.googlecode.com/svn/trunk/cppguide.xml#Comments for placement of comments

As for style, we use javadoc's in classes and methods (public or private) and simple comments for variables and inside code

```
/**
 * My class has X as a goal in life
 * Note: my class is fully synchronized
 */
class DoesX {

...
  /**
   * This methods prints something and turns off the lights.
   * @param y the something to be printed
   */
   void printAndGo(const std::string& y) const;

...
 private:
    // a map from a namespace into the min key of a chunk
// one entry per chunk that lives in this server
map< string , BSONObj > _chunkMap;

    /**
     * Helper that finds the light switch
     */
    Pos findSwitch() const;

    /** @return the light switch state. */
    State getSwitchState() const;
};
```

```
void DoX(bool y) {
    // if y is false, we do not need to do a certain action and explining
// why that is takes multiple lines.
if (!y) {
}
```

Don't forget – even if a class's purpose is obvious, you can put a comment on it as to why it exists!

**inlines**

- Put long inline functions in a `-inl.h` file. *
- If your inline function is a single line long, put it and its decl on the same line e.g.:

  ```
  int length() const { return _length; }
  ```

- If a function is not performance sensitive, and it isn't one (or 2) lines long, put it in the cpp file. Keep code out of headers.

**strings**

See

- util/mongoutils/str.h
- bson/stringdata.h

Use `str::startsWith()`, `str::endsWith()`, not `strstr()`.

Use `<< 'c'` not `<< "c"`.

Use `str[0] == '\0'` not `strlen(str) == 0`.

See Kernel string manipulation.

**brackets**

```
if (0) {
}
else if (0) {
}
else {
}

do {
} while (0);
```

**class members**

```
class Foo {
   int _bar;
};
```

**functions**

Declaration:

```
void foo(int v, MyType myItem);
```

Avoid declarations of extern functions in source files! Instead, #include a proper .h file. Be sure to match the header filename to the source filename where the function definition appears.

Definition:

```
void foo(int v, MyType myItem) {
}
```

Invocation:

```
foo(1, MyType());
```

**templates**

```
set<int> s;
```

**namespaces**

```
namespace foo {
   int foo;
   namespace bar {
      int bar;
   }
}
```

**start of file**

```
license (AGPL or Apache, depending on C++ driverness)
```

**assertions**

See Kernel exception architecture.

**return early**

BAD

```
int foo() {
   if (x) {
     ...
   }
}
```

GOOD

```
int foo() {
   if (!x)
     return;

   ...
}
```

Keeps indentation levels down and makes more readable.

**numeric constants**

Large, round numeric constants should be written in multiplied form so that you never need to count digits.

```
const int tenMillion = 10*1000*1000;
const int megabyte = 1024*1024;
```

**explicit constructors**

To avoid implicit type conversion, use the "explicit" keyword before constructors that take a single parameter.

**#includes**

- Use "double quotes" for 10gen code, <angle brackets> for 3rd party or library headers.

  ```
  examples:
  #include "mongo/pch.h"
  #include <boost/thread.h>
  #include <vector>
  ```

- Always use forward relative path from mongo/src/; do not use ".."

  ```
  correct:
  #include "mongo/db/namespace_details.h"
  incorrect:
  #include "../db/namespace_details.h"
  ```

***For cpp files:***

- Include mongo/pch.h first. blank line.
- Include your .h file next, if applicable. blank line.
- Include third party headers next, sorted. blank line.
- Include 10gen headers last, sorted

```
example for classy.cpp:
#include "mongo/pch.h"

#include "mongo/db/classy.h"

#include <boost/thread.h>
#include <stdio.h>
#include <string>

#include "mongo/db/db.h"
#include "mongo/db/namespace_details.h"
#include "mongo/util/concurrency/qlock.h"
```

***For h files:***

- #pragma once at the top
- Forward declare, if possible, in lieu of including 10gen headers in headers. Only include things that are directly used in the header itself.
- Include third party headers first, sorted. blank line.
- Include 10gen headers last, sorted.
- Be extremely careful about including pch.h in a header.

**file names**

- Class definitions should go in a header file with the same name as the class. Insert _ in place of a capital letter. Do not use capital letters in filenames!
  example: ClassyClass's definition goes in "classy_class.h". ClassyClass's member function implementations go in "classy_class.cpp".
- Do not be afraid to make another file, even if it is really small. This is preferable to inserting your new class into a preexisting file.

**casting**

- Do not use C-style casts, ever.
- Use static_cast<> or const_cast<>.
- Be aware that dynamic_cast<>, unlike other casts, is done at run-time and calls a function.
  You should always check the return status of dynamic_cast<> for null.
- reinterpret_cast<> should be used sparingly and is typically done for converting structures to raw bytes for use with I/O drivers.

## Kernel concurrency rules

All concurrency classes must be placed under `utils/concurrency`. You will find several helper libraries there.

- Do not add mutexes without discussion with others. Concurrency and correctness is very hard in the large. Great care is required. For example the concurrency model in replica sets is hard to understand and error prone (at least it was initially and probably still is).

If you think there is a real need for an exception to the list below let's have the group weigh in and get a concensus on the exception:

- Do not use/add recursive locks.
- Do not use rwlocks.
- Always acquire locks in a consistent order. In fact, the MutexDebugger can assist with verification of this. MutexDebugger is on for _DEBUG builds and will alert if locks are taken in opposing orders during the run.

## Kernel exception architecture

There are several different types of assertions used in the MongoDB code. In brief:

- `uassert` checks for per-operation user errors. Operation-fatal.
- `massert` checks per-operation invariants. Operation-fatal.
- `verify` is a synonym for massert, that doesn't require an error code.
- `fassert` checks fatal process invariants. Process-fatal.
- `wassert` warn (log) and continue.

- Calling `assert` is not allowed. Use one of the above instead.
- `dassert` just calls `verify` but only in debug mode. Do not use!

When per-operation invariant checks fail, the current operation fails, but the process and connection persist. This means that `massert`, `uassert` and `verify` only terminate the current operation, not the whole process. Be careful not to corrupt process state by mistakenly using these assertions midway through mutating process state. Examples of this include uassert and massert inside of constructors and destructors. `fassert` failures will terminate the entire process; this is used for low-level checks where continuing might lead to corrupt data or loss of data on disk.

Both `massert` and `uassert` take error codes, so that all errors have codes associated with them. These error codes are assigned incrementally; the numbers have no meaning other than a way to associate a log message with a line of code. scons checks for duplicates, but if you want the next available code you can run:

```
python buildscripts/errorcodes.py
```

A failed operation-fatal assertion throws an `AssertionException` or a child of that. The inheritance hierarchy is something like:

- std::exception
  - mongo::DBException
    - mongo::AssertionException
      - mongo::UserException
      - mongo::MsgAssertionException

See `util/assert_util.h`.

Generally, code in the server should be prepared to catch a DBException. UserAssertionException's are particularly common as errors and should be expected. We use resource acquisition is initialization heavily.

Gotchas to watch out for:

- generally, don't throw a assertionexception directly. Functions like uasserted() do work beyond just that. In particular, it makes sure that the getLastError structures are set up properly.
- think about where your asserts are in constructors, as the destructor wouldn't be called. (But at a minimum, use wassert a lot therein, we want to know if something is wrong.)
- don't throw in destructors of course.

## Kernel logging

- Basic Rules
  - cout/cerr should never be used
- Normal Logging
  - debugging with levels of verbosity. default=0 (use just log() for that). See -v command line option.

    ```
    LOG( int x ) << ...
    ```

  - informational

    ```
    log() << ...
    ```

  - rate limited

    ```
    LOGSOME() << ...
    ```

  - warnings
    - recoverable
    - e.g. replica set node down

    ```
    warning()
    ```

  - errors
    - unexpected system state (disk full)
    - internal code errors

    ```
    error()
    ```

- Debugging Helpers
  - PRINT( x ) = prints expression text and value (can also do PRINT(x.method()))
  - PRINTFL = prints file and line (good for tracing execution)
  - printStackTrace() = shows a stack trace. Alternative to using a debugger.
  - GEODEBUG, etc... = used for incredibly verbose logging for a section of code that has to be turned on at compile time

## Kernel string manipulation

For string manipulation, use the `util/mongoutils/str.h` library.

#### `str.h`

`util/mongoutils/str.h` provides string helper functions for each manipulation. Add new functions here rather than lines and lines of code to your app that are not generic.

Typically these functions return a string and take two as parameters : string f(string,string). Thus we wrap them all in a namespace called `str`.

str::stream() is quite useful:

```
uassert(12345, str::stream() << "bad ns:" << ns, isok);
```

#### `StringData`

```
/** A StringData object wraps a 'const string&' or a 'const char*' without
 * copying its contents. The most common usage is as a function argument that
 * takes any of the two forms of strings above. Fundamentally, this class tries
 * go around the fact that string literals in C++ are char[N]'s.
 *
 * Note that the object StringData wraps around must be alive while the StringData
 * is.
*/
class StringData {
```

See also `bson/stringdata.h`.

#### `mongoutils`

MongoUtils has its own namespace. Its code has these basic properties:

1. are not database specific, rather, true utilities
2. are cross platform
3. may require boost headers, but not libs (header-only works with mongoutils)
4. are clean and easy to use in any c++ project without pulling in lots of other stuff
5. apache license

## Memory management

#### Overall guidelines

- avoid using bare pointers for dynamically allocated objects. Prefer scoped_ptr, shared_ptr, or another RAII class such as BSONObj.
- do not use auto_ptr's and refactor legacy ones out whenever possible. (Careful with c++ driver and backward compatibility though.)
- If you assign the output of new/malloc() directly to a bare pointer you should document where it gets deleted/freed, who owns it along the way, and how exception safety is ensured. If you cannot answer all three questions then you probably have a leak.

## Writing tests

We have three general flavors of tests currently.

#### General guidelines

It is important that tests can be run in parallel and still succeed.
For example, make sure that:

- try to use a unique collection name, for example named after the test

```
t = db.jstests_currentop
```

- if checking on current operations, make sure to add an NS filter

```
db.currentOp({ns: "test.mytest"})
```

- if possible, try to avoid things that are global to mongod or the database (oplog, profiling, fsync)

If the test cannot be run in parallel, add it to the blacklist in "skipTests" in shell/utils.js.

#### dbtests

Tests can be written in C++. These are in the dbtests/ subfolder. See the code therein. To run:

```
scons test
./test --help
```

#### jstests

Many tests are written as .js scripts that are executed via the `mongo` shell. See the Smoke Tests link at the bottom for how to run comprehensive sets of tests. To run a particular test:

```
# start mongod first then run a few simple tests:
mongo jstests/basic*.js
```

Note there are several subdirectories for different test suites. slowNightly is run by the buildbots only once a night; slowWeekly only once a week. Most other tests are ran every CI cycle (all the time).

Also note that that the js tests rely on functions defined in the "shell" directory (see servers.js and utils.js in particular).

#### Lightweight startup test.

You can inherit from class `mongo::UnitTest` and make a test that runs at program startup. These tests run EVERY TIME the program starts. Thus, they should be minimal: the test should ideally take 1ms or less to run. Why run the tests in the general program? This gives some validation at program run time that the build is reasonable. For example, we test that pcre supports UTF8 regex in one of these tests at startup. If someone had built the server with other settings, this would be flagged upon execution, even if the test suite has not been invoked. Most tests are not of this sort.

#### See Also

- Smoke Tests
- http://buildbot.mongodb.org/

# Project Ideas

If you're interested in getting involved in the MongoDB community (or the open source community in general) a great way to do so is by starting or contributing to a MongoDB related project. Here we've listed some project ideas for you to get started on. For some of these ideas projects are already underway, and for others nothing (that we know of) has been started yet.

### A GUI

One feature that is often requested for MongoDB is a GUI, much like CouchDB's futon or phpMyAdmin. There are a couple of projects working on this sort of thing that are worth checking out:

http://github.com/sbellity/futon4mongo
http://www.mongodb.org/display/DOCS/Http+Interface
http://www.mongohq.com

We've also started to spec out the features that a tool like this should provide.

### Try Mongo!

It would be neat to have a web version of the MongoDB Shell that allowed users to interact with a real MongoDB instance (for doing the tutorial, etc). A project that does something similar (using a basic MongoDB emulator) is here:

http://github.com/banker/mongulator

### Real-time Full Text Search Integration

It would be interesting to try to nicely integrate a search backend like Xapian, Lucene or Sphinx with MongoDB. One idea would be to use MongoDB's oplog (which is used for master-slave replication) to keep the search engine up to date.

### GridFS FUSE

There is a project working towards creating a FUSE filesystem on top of GridFS - something like this would create a bunch of interesting potential uses for MongoDB and GridFS:

http://github.com/mikejs/gridfs-fuse

### Framework Adaptors

Working towards adding MongoDB support to major web frameworks is a great project, and work has been started on this for a variety of different frameworks (please use google to find out if work has already been started for your favorite framework).

### Logging and Session Adaptors

MongoDB works great for storing logs and session information. There are a couple of projects working on supporting this use case directly.

Logging:
Zend: http://raphaelstolt.blogspot.com/2009/09/logging-to-mongodb-and-accessing-log.html
Python: http://github.com/andreisavu/mongodb-log
Rails: http://github.com/peburrows/mongo_db_logger

Sessions:
web.py: http://github.com/whilefalse/webpy-mongodb-sessions
Beaker: http://pypi.python.org/pypi/mongodb_beaker

### Package Managers

Add support for installing MongoDB with your favorite package manager and let us know!

### Locale-aware collation / sorting

MongoDB doesn't yet know how to sort query results in a locale-sensitive way.  If you can think up a good way to do it and implement it, we'd like to know!

### Drivers

If you use an esoteric/new/awesome programming language write a driver to support MongoDB! Again, check google to see what people have started for various languages.

Some that might be nice:

- Scheme (probably starting with PLT)
- GNU R
- Visual Basic
- Lisp (e.g, Common Lisp)
- Delphi
- Falcon

### Write a killer app that uses MongoDB as the persistance layer!

## Roadmap

Please see jira.

## UI

Spec/requirements for a future MongoDB admin UI.

- list databases
    - repair, drop, clone?
- collections
    - validate(), datasize, indexsize, clone/copy

- indexes
- queries - explain() output
- security: view users, adjust
- see replication status of slave and master
- sharding
- system.profile viewer ; enable disable profiling
- curop / killop support

## Source Code

Source for MongoDB and mongodb.org supported drivers is open source and hosted at Github .

- Mongo Database (includes C++ driver)
- Python Driver
- PHP Driver
- Ruby Driver
- Java Driver
- Perl Driver
- C# Driver
- Scala Driver
- Erlang Driver
- Haskell Driver

(Additionally, community drivers and tools also exist and will be found in other places.)

### See Also

- Building
- License

# Building

Note: see the Downloads page for prebuilt binaries, it's recommended to use those as all full QA occurs after those are built.

This section provides instructions on setting up your environment to write Mongo drivers or other infrastructure code. For specific instructions, go to the document that corresponds to your setup.

Sub-sections of this section:

- Building Boost
- Building for FreeBSD
- Building for Linux
- Building for OS X
- Building for Solaris
- Building for Windows
- Building Spider Monkey
- Building with V8
- scons

### See Also

- The main Database Internals page

## Building Boost



**NOTE**
This is not necessary when building mongo versions 2.1.1 or later.

MongoDB uses the [www.boost.org] C++ libraries.

### Windows

See also the prebuilt libraries page.

By default c:\boost\ is checked for the boost files. Include files should be under \boost\boost, and libraries in \boost\lib.

First download the boost source. Then use the 7 Zip utility to extra the files. Place the extracted files in C:\boost.

Then we will compile the required libraries.

See buildscripts/buildboost.bat and buildscripts/buildboost64.bat for some helpers.

```
> rem set PATH for compiler:
> "C:\Program Files (x86)\Microsoft Visual Studio 10.0\VC\vcvarsall.bat"
>
> rem build the bjam make tool:
> cd \boost\tools\jam\src\
> build.bat
>
> cd \boost
> tools\jam\src\bin.ntx86\bjam --help
> rem see also mongo/buildscripts/buildboost*.bat
> rem build DEBUG libraries:
> tools\jam\src\bin.ntx86\bjam variant=debug threading=multi --with-program_options --with-filesystem
--with-date_time --with-thread
> mkdir lib
> move stage\lib\* lib\
```

### Linux

It's common with linux to install boost via a package manager – see the Building for Linux page for specifics.

However one might also want to build from boost.org sources in some cases, for example to use a newer version of boost, to generate static libraries, etc.

The following – far from comprehensive, rather an example – shows manually building of boost libraries on Linux.

```
$ sudo ./bootstrap.sh

$ ./b2 --help

$ # now build it
$ ./b2
$ #or
$ ./b2 --with-program_options --with-filesystem --with-date_time --with-thread

$ sudo ./b2 install
```

### Troubleshooting

**Unresolved external get_system_category() when linking MongoDB**
Try defining BOOST_SYSTEM_NO_DEPRECATED in the MongoDB SConstruct file.

## Building for FreeBSD

On FreeBSD 8.0 and later, there is a mongodb port you can use.

For FreeBSD <= 7.2:

1. Get the database source: http://www.github.com/mongodb/mongo.
2. Update your ports tree:

   ```
   $ sudo portsnap fetch && portsnap extract
   ```

   The packages that come by default on 7.2 and older are too old, you'll get weird errors when you try to run the database)
3. Install SpiderMonkey:

   ```
   $ cd /usr/ports/lang/spidermonkey && make && make install
   ```

4. Install scons:

```
$ cd /usr/ports/devel/scons && make && make install
```

5. Install boost: (it will pop up an X "GUI", select PYTHON)

```
$ cd /usr/ports/devel/boost-all && make && make install
```

6. Install libunwind:

```
$ cd /usr/ports/devel/libunwind && make && make install
```

7. Change to the database source directory
8. `scons .`

#### *See Also*

- Building for Linux - many of the details there including how to clone from git apply here too.

## Building for Linux

Note: Binaries are available for most platforms. Most users won't need to compile mongo themselves; in addition every prebuilt binary has been regression tested. See the Downloads page for these prebuilt binaries.


- Build Prerequisites
  - Fedora
  - Ubuntu
- Building
- Building Older Versions
- Fedora
- Ubuntu
  - Ubuntu 8.04 and 8.10
  - Ubuntu 9.04 and Newer
- Building
- Troubleshooting


These instructions apply to the git master branch, and versions 2.1.1 and onward. At the end of the document are instructions for older versions.

### Build Prerequisites

You'll need SCons, the gnu C++ toolchain, and glibc-devel. To get the code from github, you'll probably also want git.

#### *Fedora*

```
sudo yum -y install git-core scons gcc-c++ glibc-devel
```

#### *Ubuntu*

```
sudo apt-get install git-core build-essential scons
```

### Building

1. Install any needed prerequisites (see above).
2. Get the source code

```
git clone git://github.com/mongodb/mongo.git
cd mongo
```

3. Pick a version to build (only use "master" if you're doing development work).
   a. List all tagged versions

```
git tag -l
```

b. Check out a tagged release, e.g. 2.0.4

```
git checkout r2.0.4
```

4. Compile

```
scons all
```

5. Install. Use --prefix to specify where you want to install your binaries. Defaults to /usr/local.

```
scons --prefix=/opt/mongo  install
```

## Building Older Versions

### Fedora

The following steps have been reported to work for Fedora versions from 11 to 16. (If they don't work on newer versions, please report this to mongodb-user@googlegroups.com.) Fedora versions 10 and earlier ship with a version of SCons that is too old to build MongoDB, but may work if you manually install SCons.

```
sudo yum -y install git-core scons gcc-c++ glibc-devel
sudo yum -y install boost-devel boost-devel-static
```

### Ubuntu

Note: See SpiderMonkey note above.

Use cat /etc/lsb-release to see your version.

#### *Ubuntu 8.04 and 8.10*

```
apt-get -y install git-core build-essential
apt-get -y install libboost-dev libboost-program-options-dev libboost-thread-dev
libboost-filesystem-dev
```

Ubuntu 8.04 and 8.10 ship with a version of SCons that is too old to build MongoDB, but may work if you manually install SCons.

#### *Ubuntu 9.04 and Newer*

```
aptitude install -y git-core build-essential scons
aptitude install -y libboost-dev libboost-program-options-dev libboost-thread-dev
libboost-filesystem-dev
```

### Building

1. Install prerequisites
2. get source

```
git clone git://github.com/mongodb/mongo.git
cd mongo
# pick a stable version unless doing true dev
git tag -l
# Switch to a stable branch (unless doing development) --
# an even second number indicates "stable". For example:
git checkout r2.0.4
```

3. build

```
scons all
```

4. install --prefix can be anywhere you want to contain your binaries, e.g., /usr/local or /opt/mongo.

```
scons --prefix=/opt/mongo install
```

### Troubleshooting

- Link errors. If link errors occur, the `-t` gcc option is useful for troubleshooting. Try adding `-t` to the SConstruct file's `LINKFLAGS`.
- Static libraries. The `--release` scons option will build a binary using static libraries. You may need to install static boost libraries when using this option.

## Building for OS X


- Prerequisites
  - Xcode
  - SCons
  - git
- Building
- Older Versions of Mongo
  - Upgrading to Snow Leopard
  - Setup
    - Sources
    - Prerequisites
    - Package Manager Setup
    - Manual Setup
      - Install Apple developer tools
      - Install libraries (32-bit option)
      - Install libraries (64-bit option)
  - Compiling
  - Troubleshooting


To set up your OS X computer for MongoDB development:

### Prerequisites

#### *Xcode*

Available in the App Store. You only need to get the command line tools, if you don't want to install the whole IDE.

#### *SCons*

SCons is the build tool used to compile mongo binaries. It is available from http://www.scons.org.

If you have easy_install or pip already installed, you can use them to install scons.

```
easy_install scons
```

```
pip install scons
```

#### *git*

An installer package is available from http://git-scm.com/

### Building

1. Install any needed prerequisites (see above).
2. Get the source code

```
git clone git://github.com/mongodb/mongo.git
cd mongo
```

3. Pick a version to build (only use "master" if you're doing development work).
   a. List all tagged versions

```
git tag -l
```

   b. Check out a tagged release, e.g. 2.0.4

```
git checkout r2.0.4
```

4. Compile

```
scons all
```

5. Install. Use --prefix to specify where you want to install your binaries. Defaults to /usr/local.

```
scons --prefix=/opt/mongo  install
```

## Older Versions of Mongo

### Upgrading to Snow Leopard

If you have installed Snow Leopard, the builds will be 64-bit -- so if moving from a previous OS release, a bit more setup may be required than one might first expect.

### Setup

#### *Sources*

The mongodb source is on github. To get sources first download the git client and install it.

- Then git clone git://github.com/mongodb/mongo.git (more info)
  **Note** If you do not wish to install git you can instead get the source code from the Downloads page.

#### *Prerequisites*

- Install gcc. Install XCode tools for Snow Leopard. gcc version 4.0.1 (from older XCode Tools install) works, but you will receive compiler warnings. One way to get a newer gcc is to install Command Line Tools for XCode from developer.apple.com.

#### *Package Manager Setup*

1. Install Homebrew
2. Update/install dependencies:

```
brew install boost
```

3. Install SCons:

```
brew install scons
```

### *Manual Setup*

#### Install Apple developer tools

#### Install libraries (32-bit option)

1. Download boost 1.37.0. Apply the following patch:

```
diff -u -r a/configure b/configure
--- a/configure 2009-01-26 14:10:42.000000000 -0500
+++ b/configure 2009-01-26 10:21:29.000000000 -0500
@@ -9,9 +9,9 @@

 BJAM=""
 TOOLSET=""
-BJAM_CONFIG=""
+BJAM_CONFIG="--layout=system"
 BUILD=""
 PREFIX=/usr/local
 EPREFIX=
diff -u -r a/tools/build/v2/tools/darwin.jam b/tools/build/v2/tools/darwin.jam
--- a/tools/build/v2/tools/darwin.jam   2009-01-26 14:22:08.000000000 -0500
+++ b/tools/build/v2/tools/darwin.jam   2009-01-26 10:22:08.000000000 -0500
@@ -367,5 +367,5 @@

 actions link.dll bind LIBRARIES
 {
-    "$(CONFIG_COMMAND)" -dynamiclib -Wl,-single_module -install_name "$(<:B)$(<:S)" -L
"$(LINKPATH)" -o "$(<)" "$(>)" "$(LIBRARIES)" -l$(FINDLIBS-SA) -l$(FINDLIBS-ST)
$(FRAMEWORK_PATH) -framework$(_)$(FRAMEWORK:D=:S=) $(OPTIONS) $(USER_OPTIONS)
+    "$(CONFIG_COMMAND)" -dynamiclib -Wl,-single_module -install_name
"/usr/local/lib/$(<:B)$(<:S)" -L"$(LINKPATH)" -o "$(<)" "$(>)" "$(LIBRARIES)" -l$(FINDLIBS-SA)
-l$(FINDLIBS-ST) $(FRAMEWORK_PATH) -framework$(_)$(FRAMEWORK:D=:S=) $(OPTIONS) $(USER_OPTIONS)
 }
```

   then,

```
./configure; make; sudo make install
```

2. Install pcre (must enable UTF8)

```
./configure --enable-utf8 --enable-unicode-properties  --with-match-limit=200000
--with-match-limit-recursion=4000; make; sudo make install
```

3. Install c++ unit test framework http://unittest.red-bean.com/ (optional)

```
./configure; make; sudo make install
```

#### Install libraries (64-bit option)

(The 64-bit libraries will be installed in /usr/64/{include,lib}.)

1. Download SpiderMonkey: ftp://ftp.mozilla.org/pub/mozilla.org/js/js-1.7.0.tar.gz

Apply the following patch:

```
diff -u  -r js/src/config/Darwin.mk js-1.7.0/src/config/Darwin.mk
--- js/src/config/Darwin.mk 2007-02-05 11:24:49.000000000 -0500
+++ js-1.7.0/src/config/Darwin.mk 2009-05-11 10:18:37.000000000 -0400
@@ -43,7 +43,7 @@
 # Just ripped from Linux config
 #

-CC = cc
+CC = cc -m64
 CCC = g++
 CFLAGS +=  -Wall -Wno-format
 OS_CFLAGS = -DXP_UNIX -DSVR4 -DSYSV -D_BSD_SOURCE -DPOSIX_SOURCE -DDARWIN
@@ -56,9 +56,9 @@
 #.c.o:
 #      $(CC) -c -MD $*.d $(CFLAGS) $<

-CPU_ARCH = $(shell uname -m)
+CPU_ARCH = "X86_64"
 ifeq (86,$(findstring 86,$(CPU_ARCH)))
-CPU_ARCH = x86
+CPU_ARCH = x86_64
 OS_CFLAGS+= -DX86_LINUX
 endif
 GFX_ARCH = x
@@ -81,3 +81,14 @@
 # Don't allow Makefile.ref to use libmath
 NO_LIBM = 1

+ifeq ($(CPU_ARCH),x86_64)
+# Use VA_COPY() standard macro on x86-64
+# FIXME: better use it everywhere
+OS_CFLAGS += -DHAVE_VA_COPY -DVA_COPY=va_copy
+endif
+
+ifeq ($(CPU_ARCH),x86_64)
+# We need PIC code for shared libraries
+# FIXME: better patch rules.mk & fdlibm/Makefile*
+OS_CFLAGS += -DPIC -fPIC
+endif
```

compile and install

```
cd src
make -f Makefile.ref
sudo JS_DIST=/usr/64 make -f Makefile.ref export
```

remove the dynamic library

```
sudo rm /usr/64/lib64/libjs.dylib
```

# Download boost 1.37.0 Apply the following patch:

```
diff -u -r a/configure b/configure
--- a/configure 2009-01-26 14:10:42.000000000 -0500
+++ b/configure 2009-01-26 10:21:29.000000000 -0500
@@ -9,9 +9,9 @@

 BJAM=""
 TOOLSET=""
-BJAM_CONFIG=""
+BJAM_CONFIG="architecture=x86 address-model=64 --layout=system"
 BUILD=""
-PREFIX=/usr/local
+PREFIX=/usr/64
 EPREFIX=
 LIBDIR=
 INCLUDEDIR=
diff -u -r a/tools/build/v2/tools/darwin.jam b/tools/build/v2/tools/darwin.jam
--- a/tools/build/v2/tools/darwin.jam   2009-01-26 14:22:08.000000000 -0500
+++ b/tools/build/v2/tools/darwin.jam   2009-01-26 10:22:08.000000000 -0500
@@ -367,5 +367,5 @@

 actions link.dll bind LIBRARIES
 {
-    "$(CONFIG_COMMAND)" -dynamiclib -Wl,-single_module -install_name "$(<:B)$(<:S)" -L"$(LINKPATH)"
-o "$(<)" "$(>)" "$(LIBRARIES)" -l$(FINDLIBS-SA) -l$(FINDLIBS-ST) $(FRAMEWORK_PATH)
-framework$(_)$(FRAMEWORK:D=:S=) $(OPTIONS) $(USER_OPTIONS)
+    "$(CONFIG_COMMAND)" -dynamiclib -Wl,-single_module -install_name "/usr/64/lib/$(<:B)$(<:S)" -L
"$(LINKPATH)" -o "$(<)" "$(>)" "$(LIBRARIES)" -l$(FINDLIBS-SA) -l$(FINDLIBS-ST) $(FRAMEWORK_PATH)
-framework$(_)$(FRAMEWORK:D=:S=) $(OPTIONS) $(USER_OPTIONS)
 }
```

then,

```
./configure; make; sudo make install
```

# Install pcre (must enable UTF8)

```
CFLAGS="-m64" CXXFLAGS="-m64" LDFLAGS="-m64" ./configure --enable-utf8 --with-match-limit=200000
--with-match-limit-recursion=4000 --enable-unicode-properties --prefix /usr/64; make; sudo make
install
```

# Install unit test framework http://unittest.red-bean.com/ (optional)

```
CFLAGS="-m64" CXXFLAGS="-m64" LDFLAGS="-m64" ./configure --prefix /usr/64; make; sudo make install
```

### Compiling

To compile 32-bit, just run:

```
scons
```

To compile 64-bit on 10.5 (64 is default on 10.6), run:

```
scons  --64
```

See the, MongoDB scons page for more details/compile options.

### Troubleshooting

- Undefined symbols: "_PR_NewLock", referenced from: _JS_Init in libjs.a.
    - Try not using the scons `--release` option (if you are using it). That option attempts to use static libraries.

## Building for Solaris

MongoDB server currently supports little endian Solaris operation.  (Although most drivers – not the database server – work on both.)

Community: Help us make this rough page better please!  (And help us add support for big endian please...)

#### *Prerequisites:*

- g++ 4.x (SUNWgcc)
- scons (need to install from source)
- spider monkey Building Spider Monkey
- pcre (SUNWpcre)
- boost (need to install from source)

#### *See Also*

- Joyent
- Building for Linux - many of the details there including how to clone from git apply here too

## Building for Windows

Binaries are available for most platforms. Most users won't need to compile mongo themselves; in addition every prebuilt binary has been regression tested. See the Downloads page for these prebuilt binaries.

MongoDB can be compiled for Windows (32 and 64 bit); You will need to have the platform sdk installed. The platform sdk can be installed manually, and it comes with Visual (Studio) C++ as well. SCons is the make mechanism, although several .vcxprojs and a .sln solution file are also included in the project for convenience when using the Visual Studio 2010 IDE.

There are several dependencies exist which are listed below; you may find it easier to simply download a pre-built binary.

- Building with Visual Studio 2008
- Building with Visual Studio 2010
- Building the Shell

#### *See Also*

- Prebuilt Boost Libraries
- Prebuilt SpiderMonkey for VS2010
- Building Boost
- Building SpiderMonkey
- Windows Quick Links
- scons

### Boost 1.41.0 Visual Studio 2010 Binary

This is OLD and was for the VS2010 BETA. See the new Boost and Windows page instead.

The following is a prebuilt boost binary (libraries) for Visual Studio 2010 beta 2.

The MongoDB vcxproj files assume this package is unzipped under c:\Program Files\boost\boost_1_41_0\.

- http://downloads.mongodb.org/misc/boost_1_41_0_binary_vs10beta2.zipx

Note: we're not boost build gurus please let us know if there are things wrong with the build.

See also the prebuilt boost binaries at http://www.boostpro.com/download.

### Boost and Windows

- Visual Studio 2010
  - Prebuilt from mongodb.org
  - Building Yourself
- Visual Studio 2008

    - Prebuilt from mongodb.org
    - Prebuilt from boostpro.com
    - Building Yourself
- Additional Notes


### *Visual Studio 2010*

#### *Prebuilt from mongodb.org*

Click here for a prebuilt boost library for Visual Studio 2010. 7zip format.

#### *Building Yourself*

- Download the boost source from boost.org. Move it to C:\boost\.
    - We have successfully compiled version **1.42** – you might want to try that version or higher, but not 1.45 or later. 1.45 changed the interface to the boost::filesystem library and we've yet to catch up. See additional notes section at end of this page too.
- Run `C:\Program Files (x86)\Microsoft Visual Studio 10.0\vc\vcvarsall.bat`.
- From the MongoDB source project, run buildscripts\buildboost.bat. Or, buildboost64.bat for the 64 bit version.

### *Visual Studio 2008*

#### *Prebuilt from mongodb.org*

Click here for a prebuilt boost library for Visual Studio 2008. 7zip format. This file has what you need to build MongoDB, but not some other boost libs, so it's partial.

#### *Prebuilt from boostpro.com*

Or, you can download a complete prebuilt boost library for 32 bit VS2008 at http://www.boostpro.com/products/free. Install the prebuilt libraries for Boost version 1.35.0 (or higher - generally newer is better). During installation, for release builds choose `static multithread libraries for installation`. The Debug version of the project uses the DLL libraries; choose all multithread libraries if you plan to do development. From the BoostPro installer, be sure to select all relevant libraries that mongodb uses -- for example, you need Filesystem, Regex, Threads, and ProgramOptions (and perhaps others).

#### *Building Yourself*

- Download the boost source from boost.org. Move it to C:\boost\.
- From the Visual Studio 2008 IDE, choose Tools.Visual Studio Command Prompt to get a command prompt with all PATH variables set nicely for the C++ compiler.
- From the MongoDB source project, run buildscripts\buildboost.bat. Or, buildboost64.bat for the 64 bit version.

### *Additional Notes*

When using bjam, MongoDB expects

- `variant=debug` for debug builds, and `variant=release` for release builds
- `threading=multi`
- `link=static runtime-link=static` for release builds
- `address-model=64` for 64 bit

## Building the Mongo Shell on Windows

You can build the mongo shell with either scons or a Visual Studio 2010 project file.

#### Scons

```
scons mongo.exe
```

#### Visual Studio 2010 Project File

A VS2010 vcxproj file is availabe for building the shell. From the mongo directory open shell/msvc/mongo.vcxproj.

For versions of the shell prior to version 1.9, the project file assumes that GNU readline is installed in ..\readline\ relative to the mongo project. If you would prefer to build without having to install readline, remove the definition of USE_READLINE in the preprocessor definitions section of the project file, and exclude readline.lib from the project.

The project file currently only supports 32 bit builds of the shell (scons can do 32 and 64 bit). However this seems sufficient given there is no real need for a 64 bit version of the shell.

#### Readline Library

Versions of the shell prior to 1.9 used the GNU readline library to facilitate command line editing and history. For these older versions, you can build the shell without readline but would then lose that functionality. USE_READLINE is defined when building with readline. SCons will look for readline and if not found build without it.

#### See Also

- Prebuilt readline for Windows 32 bit at SourceForge (DLL version)

## Building with Visual Studio 2008

> **NOTE**
>
> These instructions are for versions of mongo prior to 2.1.1. For version 2.1.1 and newer, the instructions for Visual Studio 2010 and Visual Studo 2008 are the same.

- Get the MongoDB Source Code
- Get Boost Libraries
- Get SpiderMonkey
- Install SCons
- Building MongoDB with SCons
- Troubleshooting

MongoDB can be compiled for Windows (32 and 64 bit) using Visual C++. SCons is the make mechanism we use with VS2008. (Although it is possible to build from a sln file with vs2010.)

There are several dependencies exist which are listed below; you may find it easier to simply download a pre-built binary.

### *Get the MongoDB Source Code*

Download the source code from Downloads.

Or install Git. Then:

- `git clone git://github.com/mongodb/mongo.git` (more info)
- `git tag -l` to see tagged version numbers
- Switch to a stable branch (unless doing development) -- an even second number indicates "stable". (Although with sharding you will want the latest if the latest is less than 1.6.0.) For example:
  - `git checkout r1.4.1`

### *Get Boost Libraries*

- Click here for a prebuilt boost library for Visual Studio. 7zip format. This file has what you need to build MongoDB, but not some other boost libs, so it's partial.
- See the Boost and Windows page for other options.

The Visual Studio project files are setup to look for boost in the following locations:

- c:\program files\boost\latest
- c:\boost
- \boost

You can unzip boost to c:\boost, or use an NTFS junction point to create a junction point to one of the above locations. Some versions of windows come with linkd.exe, but others require you to download Sysinternal's junction.exe to accomplish this task. For example, if you installed boost 1.42 via the installer to the default location of **c:\Program Files\boost\boost_1_42**, You can create a junction point with the following command:

```
junction "c:\Program Files\boost\latest" "c:\Program Files\boost\boost_1_42"
```

This should return the following output:

```
Junction v1.05 - Windows junction creator and reparse point viewer
Copyright (C) 2000-2007 Mark Russinovich
Systems Internals - http://www.sysinternals.com

Created: c:\Program Files\boost\latest
Targetted at: c:\Program Files\boost\boost_1_42
```

#### *Get SpiderMonkey*

Build a SpiderMonkey js engine library (js.lib) – details here.

#### *Install SCons*

If building with scons, install SCons:

- First install Python: http://www.python.org/download/releases/2.6.4/.
- Then SCons itself: http://sourceforge.net/projects/scons/files/scons/1.2.0/scons-1.2.0.win32.exe/download.
- Add the python scripts directory (e.g., C:\Python26\Scripts) to your PATH.

#### *Building MongoDB with SCons*

The SConstruct file from the MongoDB project is the preferred way to perform production builds. Run scons in the mongo project directory to build.

If scons does not automatically find Visual Studio, preset your path for it by running the VS2010 vcvars*.bat file.

To build:

```
scons                  // build mongod
scons mongoclient.lib  // build C++ client driver library
scons all              // build all end user components
scons .                // build all including unit test
```

#### *Troubleshooting*

If you are using `scons`, check the file `config.log` which is generated.

- **Can't find jstypes.h when compiling.** This file is generated when building SpiderMonkey. See the Building SpiderMonkey page for more info.
- **Can't find / run cl.exe when building with scons.** See troubleshooting note on the Building SpiderMonkey page.
- **Error building program database.** (VS2008.) Try installing the Visual Studio 2008 Service Pack 1.

## Building with Visual Studio 2010

Binaries are available for most platforms. Most users won't need to compile mongo themselves; in addition every prebuilt binary has been regression tested. See the Downloads page for these prebuilt binaries.


- v2.1.1+
  - Get the MongoDB Source Code
  - Building MongoDB from the IDE
  - Building with SCons
  - Troubleshooting
- Older versions
  - Get the MongoDB Source Code
  - Get Boost Libraries
  - Get SpiderMonkey
  - Building MongoDB from the IDE
  - Install SCons
  - Troubleshooting


**v2.1.1+**

MongoDB can be compiled for Windows (32 and 64 bit) using Visual C++. SCons is the make mechanism, although a solution file is also included in the project for convenience when using the Visual Studio IDE. (These instructions don't work using Visual Studio Express, which must be uninstalled to get Visual Studio Professional/Ultimate to work properly; VSE can only do 32 bit builds.)

These instructions are for mongo versions 2.1.1 and later.

### *Get the MongoDB Source Code*

Download the source code from Downloads.

Or install Git. Then:

- `git clone git://github.com/mongodb/mongo.git` (more info)
- `git tag -l` to see tagged version numbers
- Switch to a stable branch (unless doing development) -- an even second number indicates "stable". For example:
    - `git checkout r1.4.1`

### *Building MongoDB from the IDE*

Open the db\db_10.sln solution file.

Note: a separate project file exists for the `mongo` shell. Currently the C++ client libraries must be built from scons (this obviously needs to be fixed...)

### *Building with SCons*

1. Install SCons:
    a. First install Python: http://www.python.org/download/releases/2.7.2/.
        - **Note** Make sure to install the 32 bit version of python and not the 64 bit as the scons binaries below are 32 bit.
    b. It is recommended you install pywin32 if you want to do parallel builds (scons -j). http://sourceforge.net/projects/pywin32/files/pywin32/Build216/pywin32-216.win32-py2.7.exe/download
    c. Then install SCons itself: http://sourceforge.net/projects/scons/files/scons/2.1.0/scons-2.1.0.win32.exe/download.
    d. Add the python scripts directory (e.g., C:\Python27\Scripts) to your PATH.

1. Build:

```
scons                   // build mongod
scons --release mongoclient.lib   // build C++ client driver library
scons --release core               // build all end user components
```

Add --64 or --32 to get the 64 and 32-bit versions, respectively. Replace --release with --dd to build a debug build.

### *Troubleshooting*

If you are using `scons`, check the file `config.log` which is generated.

If scons does not automatically find Visual Studio, try using the Visual Studio Command Prompt, which will set your path for you. Alternatively, set your path manually by running the VS2010 vcvars*.bat files. Location may vary with install but usually it is something like:

- C:\Program Files (x86)\Microsoft Visual Studio 10.0\Common7\Tools\vsvars32.bat
- C:\Program Files (x86)\Microsoft Visual Studio 10.0\VC\bin\amd64\vcvars64.bat

### Older versions

The following instructions are for versions of mongo prior to 2.1.1.

There are several dependencies exist which are listed below; you may find it easier to simply download a pre-built binary.

### *Get the MongoDB Source Code*

Download the source code from Downloads.

Or install Git. Then:

- `git clone git://github.com/mongodb/mongo.git` (more info)
- `git tag -l` to see tagged version numbers

- Switch to a stable branch (unless doing development) -- an even second number indicates "stable". (Although with sharding you will want the latest if the latest is less than 1.6.0.) For example:
  - `git checkout r1.4.1`

### *Get Boost Libraries*

- Click here for a prebuilt boost library for Visual Studio. 7zip format. This file has what you need to build MongoDB, but not some other boost libs, so it's partial. Uncompress this to the c:\boost directory. Your actual files are in c:\boost\boost
- See the Boost and Windows page for other options. Use v1.42 or higher with VS2010.

### *Get SpiderMonkey*

- Download prebuilt libraries and headers here for VS2010. Place these files in ..\js\ relative to your mongo project directory.
- Or (more work) build SpiderMonkey js.lib yourself – details here.

### *Building MongoDB from the IDE*

Open the db\db_10.sln solution file.

Note: a separate project file exists for the `mongo` shell. Currently the C++ client libraries must be built from scons (this obviously needs to be fixed...)

### *Install SCons*

If building with scons, install SCons:

- First install Python: http://www.python.org/download/releases/2.7.2/.
  - **Note** Make sure to install the 32 bit version of python and not the 64 bit as the scons binaries below are 32 bit.
- Its recommended you install pywin32 if you want to do parallel builds (scons -j).
  http://sourceforge.net/projects/pywin32/files/pywin32/Build216/pywin32-216.win32-py2.7.exe/download
- Then install SCons itself: http://sourceforge.net/projects/scons/files/scons/2.1.0/scons-2.1.0.win32.exe/download.
- Add the python scripts directory (e.g., C:\Python27\Scripts) to your PATH.

The SConstruct file from the MongoDB project is the preferred way to perform production builds. Run scons in the mongo project directory to build.

If scons does not automatically find Visual Studio, preset your path for it by running the VS2010 vcvars*.bat files. Location may vary with install but usually it is something like:

- C:\Program Files (x86)\Microsoft Visual Studio 10.0\Common7\Tools\vsvars32.bat
- C:\Program Files (x86)\Microsoft Visual Studio 10.0\VC\bin\amd64\vcvars64.bat

To build:

```
scons                  // build mongod
scons mongoclient.lib  // build C++ client driver library
scons all              // build all end user components
scons .                // build all including unit tests and C++ driver zip file
scons --64             // build the 64 bit version
scons --dd             // build with debug symbols
scons -jX              // perform X steps in parallel (e.g. -j16 will compile 16 files at once)
```

### *Troubleshooting*

If you are using `scons`, check the file `config.log` which is generated.

- Can't find jstypes.h when compiling.
  - This file is generated when building SpiderMonkey. See the Building SpiderMonkey page for more info.
- Can't find / run cl.exe when building with scons.
  - Be sure to use Visual Studio Command Prompt so that your path is set correctly.
- LINK : fatal error LNK1104: cannot open file js64d.lib js64r.lib js32d.lib js32r.lib
  - Get the prebuilt spidermonkey libraries -- or copy your self-built js.lib to the above name.
  - You can also see this if you're using the wrong compiler; this is the result if you try to use Visual Studio Express instead of Visual Studio Professional/Ultimate, which is a different product.

## Building Spider Monkey

- Building js.lib - Unix
  - Remove any existing xulrunner
  - Download
  - Build
  - Install
- Building js.lib - Windows
  - Prebuilt
  - Download
  - Build
  - Troubleshooting scons
- See Also


MongoDB uses SpiderMonkey for server-side Javascript execution.

Pre v2.0: MongoDB requires a js.lib file when linking. This page details how to build js.lib.

v2.0+: this is handled automatically by the Mongo build scripts via files under third_party/ in the MongoDB project directory.

Note: V8 Javascript support is under development.

## Building js.lib - Unix

#### Remove any existing xulrunner

First find out what has been installed

```
dpkg -l | grep xulrunner
```

e.g.

```
ubuntu910-server64:mongo$ sudo dpkg -l | grep xul
ii  xulrunner-1.9.1                  1.9.1.13+build1+nobinonly-0ubuntu0.9.10.1 XUL + XPCOM
application runner
ii  xulrunner-1.9.1-dev              1.9.1.13+build1+nobinonly-0ubuntu0.9.10.1 XUL + XPCOM
development files
```

Next remove the two installed packages

```
sudo apt-get remove xulrunner-1.9.1-dev xulrunner-1.9.1
```

#### Download

```
curl -O ftp://ftp.mozilla.org/pub/mozilla.org/js/js-1.7.0.tar.gz
tar zxvf js-1.7.0.tar.gz
```

#### Build

```
cd js/src
export CFLAGS="-DJS_C_STRINGS_ARE_UTF8"
make -f Makefile.ref
```

SpiderMonkey does not use UTF-8 by default, so we enable before building.

An experimental SConstruct build file is available here.

#### Install

```
JS_DIST=/usr make -f Makefile.ref export
```

By default, the mongo scons project expects spidermonkey to be located at ../js/.

### Building js.lib - Windows

#### Prebuilt

- VS2008: a prebuilt SpiderMonkey library and headers for Win32 is attached to this document (this file may or may not work depending on your compile settings and compiler version).
- VS2010 prebuilt libraries (js64d.lib, etc.)

Alternatively, follow the steps below to build yourself.

#### Download

From an msysgit or cygwin shell, run:

```
curl -O ftp://ftp.mozilla.org/pub/mozilla.org/js/js-1.7.0.tar.gz
tar zxvf js-1.7.0.tar.gz
```

#### Build

cd js/src

```
export CFLAGS="-DJS_C_STRINGS_ARE_UTF8"
make -f Makefile.ref
```

If cl.exe is not found, launch Tools...Visual Studio Command Prompt from inside Visual Studio -- your path should then be correct for make.

If you do not have a suitable make utility installed, you may prefer to build using scons. An experimental SConstruct file to build the js.lib is available in the mongodb/snippets project. For example:

```
cd
git clone git://github.com/mongodb/mongo-snippets.git
cp mongo-snippets/jslib-sconstruct js/src/SConstruct
cd js/src
scons
```

#### Troubleshooting scons

Note that scons does not use your PATH to find Visual Studio. If you get an error running cl.exe, try changing the following line in the msvc.py scons source file from:

```
MVSdir = os.getenv('ProgramFiles') + r'\Microsoft Visual Studio 8'
```

to

```
MVSdir = os.getenv('ProgramFiles') + r'\Microsoft Visual Studio ' + version
```

### See Also

- Building MongoDB

## Building with V8

#### *Linux or OSX*

```
$ pwd
~/mongo
$ cd ..
$ svn checkout http://v8.googlecode.com/svn/trunk/ v8
$ cd v8
$ scons arch=x64 debuggersupport=off snapshot=off profilingsupport=off
$ cd ../mongo
$ scons --usev8
```

#### *Windows*

```
$ pwd
~/mongo
$ cd ..
$ svn checkout http://v8.googlecode.com/svn/trunk/ v8
$ cd v8
$ scons env="PATH:%PATH%,INCLUDE:%INCLUDE%,LIB:%LIB%" arch=x64
$ cd ../mongo
$ scons --usev8 --release --64
```

### scons

Use scons to build MongoDB and related utilities and libraries.  See the SConstruct file for details.

Run `scons --help` to see all options.

#### *Targets*

Run `scons <target>`.

- `scons .`
- `scons all`
- `scons mongod` build mongod
- `scons mongo` build the shell
- `scons shell` generate (just) the shell `.cpp` files (from .js files)
- `scons mongoclient` build just the client library (builds libmongoclient.a on unix)
- `scons test` build the unit test binary `test`

#### *Options*

- `--d` debug build; all this does is turns optimization off
- `--dd` debug build with _DEBUG defined (extra asserts, checks, etc.)
- `--release`
- `--32` force 32 bit
- `--64` force 64 bit
- `--clean`
- `--mute` suppress compile and link command lines

#### *Troubleshooting*

scons generates a `config.log` file. See this file when there are problems building.

#### *See Also*

Smoke Tests

## Database Internals

This section provides information for developers who want to write drivers or tools for MongoDB, \ contribute code to the MongoDB codebase itself, and for those who are just curious how it works internally.

Sub-sections of this section:

- Caching
- Durability Internals
- Parsing Stack Traces
- Cursors
- Error Codes
- Internal Commands
- Replication Internals
- Smoke Tests
- Pairing Internals


# Caching

#### *Memory Mapped Storage Engine*

This is the current storage engine for MongoDB, and it uses memory-mapped files for all disk I/O. Using this strategy, the operating system's virtual memory manager is in charge of caching. This has several implications:

- There is no redundancy between file system cache and database cache: they are one and the same.
- MongoDB can use all free memory on the server for cache space automatically without any configuration of a cache size.
- Virtual memory size and resident size will appear to be very large for the mongod process. This is benign: virtual memory space will be just larger than the size of the datafiles open and mapped; resident size will vary depending on the amount of memory not used by other processes on the machine.
- Caching behavior such as *Least Recently Used* (LRU) discarding of pages, and laziness of page writes is controlled by the operating system (the quality of the VMM implementation will vary by OS.)

To monitor or check memory usage see: Checking Server Memory Usage

#### *Memory per connection*

A thread is associated with each connection from clients to the database. Each thread has a stack that has a size of a few MB. The unused portions of these stacks can be swapped out by the OS as long as the connections live for a while (would not if connect / operation / disconnect in 2 seconds).

#### *Binary footprint*

You can get a feel for the “inherent” memory footprint of Mongo by starting it fresh, with no connections, with an empty /data/db directory and looking at the resident bytes.

#### *See Also*

- Checking Server Memory Usage
- The Linux Out of Memory OOM Killer

# Durability Internals

The main durability page (not the internals page) is the Journaling page.


- Files
- Running
- Declaring Write Intent
- Tests
- Administrative
- Diagrams


### *Files*

The data file format is unchanged.

Journal files are placed in */data/db/journal/*.

### *Running*

Run with `--journal` to enable journaling/durable storage. Both `mongod` and `test` support this option.

### *Declaring Write Intent*

When writing `mongod` kernel code, one must now declare an intention to write. Declaration of the intent occurs before the actual write. See `db/dur.h`. The actual write must occur before releasing the write lock.

When you do your actual writing, use the pointer that dur::writing() returns, rather than the original pointer.

```
Foo *foo;
getDur().writing(thing)->bar = something;

int *x;
getDur().writingInt(x) += 3;

DiskLoc &loc;
loc.writing() = newLoc;

void *p;
unsigned len;
memcpy( getDur().writingPtr(p,len), src, len );
```

Try to declare intent on as small a region as possible. That way less information is journalled. For example

```
BigStruct *b;

dur::writing(b)->x = 3; // less efficient

*dur::writing(&b->x) = 3; // more efficient
```

However, there is some overhead for each intent declaration, so if many members of a struct will be written, it is likely better to just declare intent on the whole struct.

### *Tests*

`jstests/dur/` contains tests for durability.

```
mongo --nodb jstests/dur/<testname>.js
```

### *Administrative*

```
# dump journal entries during any recover, and then start normally
mongod --journal --durOptions 1

# recover and terminate
mongod --journal --durOptions 4

# dump journal entries (doing nothing else) and then terminate
mongod --journal --durOptions 7

# extra checks that everything is correct (slow but good for qa)
mongod --journal --durOptions 8
```

### *Diagrams*

- diagram 1 - process steps
- diagram 2 - journal file structure

## Parsing Stack Traces

### *addr2line*

```
addr2line -e mongod -ifC <offset>
```

#### *c++filt*

You can use `c++filt` to demangle function names by pasting the whole stack trace to stdin.

#### *Finding the right binary*

To find the binary you need:

- Get the commit at the header of any of our logs.
- Use git to locate that commit and check for the surrounding "version bump" commit

Download and open the binary:

```
curl -O http:
//s3.amazonaws.com/downloads.mongodb.org/linux/mongodb-linux-x86_64-debugsymbols-1.x.x.tgz
```

You can also find debugsymbols for official builds by clicking "list" on the Downloads page.

#### *Example 1*

Then, the log has lines like this:

```
/home/abc/mongod(_ZN5mongo15printStackTraceERSo+0x27) [0x689280]
```

You want the address in between the brackets [0x689280]

Note you will get more than one stack frame for the address if the code is inlined.

#### *Example 2*

Actual example from a v1.8.1 64 bit linux build:

```
$ curl http://downloads.mongodb.org/linux/mongodb-linux-x86_64-debugsymbols-1.8.1.tgz > out.tgz
$ tar -xzf out.tgz
$ cd mongodb-linux-x86_64-debugsymbols-1.8.1/
$ cd bin
$ addr2line --help
$ addr2line -i -e mongod 0x6d6a74
/mnt/home/buildbot/slave/Linux_64bit_V1.8/mongo/db/repl/health.cpp:394
$ addr2line -i -e mongod 0x6d0694
/mnt/home/buildbot/slave/Linux_64bit_V1.8/mongo/db/repl/rs.h:385
/mnt/home/buildbot/slave/Linux_64bit_V1.8/mongo/db/repl/replset_commands.cpp:111
```

## Cursors



**Redirection Notice**
This page should redirect to Internals.

## Error Codes

If you have and error event and it isn't obvious what the error is, query for that error code on Jira. If still nothing please post to support forums.

This list is HIGHLY incomplete. This page is a stub.

| Error Code | Description | Comments |
|---|---|---|
| 10003 | objects in a capped ns cannot grow | |
| 11000 | duplicate key error | _id values must be unique in a collection |
| 11001 | duplicate key on update | |
| 12000 | idxNo fails | an internal error |
| 12001 | can't sort with $snapshot | the $snapshot feature does not support sorting yet |
| 12010, 12011, 12012 | can't $inc/$set an indexed field | |
| 13312 | replSet error : logOp() but not primary? | Fixed in v2.0. Report if seen v2.0+ |
| 13440 | bad offset accessing a datafile | Run a database --repairr. If journaling is on this shouldn't happen. |

## Internal Commands

Most commands have helper functions and do not require the `$cmd.findOne()` syntax. These are primarily internal and administrative.

```
> db.$cmd.findOne({assertinfo:1})
{
    "dbasserted" : false , // boolean: db asserted
"asserted" : false , // boolean: db asserted or a user assert have happend
"assert" : "" ,  // regular assert
"assertw" : "" , // "warning" assert
"assertmsg" : "" , // assert with a message in the db log
"assertuser" : "" , // user assert - benign, generally a request that was not meaningful
"ok" : 1.0
}

> db.$cmd.findOne({serverStatus:1})
{
  "uptime" : 6 ,
  "globalLock" : {
                    "totalTime" : 6765166 ,
                    "lockTime" : 2131 ,
                    "ratio" : 0.00031499596610046226
                } ,
   "mem" : {
                    "resident" : 3 ,
                    "virtual" : 111 ,
                    "mapped" : 32
   } ,
  "ok" : 1
}



> admindb.$cmd.findOne({replacepeer:1})
{
    "info" : "adjust local.sources hostname; db restart now required" ,
    "ok" : 1.0
}

// close all databases.  a subsequent request will reopen a db.
> admindb.$cmd.findOne({closeAllDatabases:1});
```

## Replication Internals

On the *master* mongod instance, the `local` database will contain a collection, `oplog.$main`, which stores a high-level transaction log. The transaction log essentially describes all actions performed by the user, such as "insert this object into this collection." Note that the oplog is not a low-level redo log, so it does not record operations on the byte/disk level.

The *slave* mongod instance polls the `oplog.$main` collection from *master*. The actual query looks like this:

```
local.oplog.$main.find({ ts: { $gte: ''last_op_processed_time'' } }).sort({$natural:1});
```

where 'local' is the master instance's `local` database. `oplog.$main` collection is a capped collection, allowing the oldest data to be aged out automatically.

See the Replication section of the Mongo Developers' Guide for more information.

### `OpTime`

An `OpTime` is a 64-bit timestamp that we use to timestamp operations. These are stored as Javascript `Date` datatypes but are *not* JavaScript Date objects. Implementation details can be found in the `OpTime` class in *repl.h*.

### *Applying OpTime Operations*

Operations from the oplog are applied on the slave by reexecuting the operation. Naturally, the log includes write operations only.

Note that inserts are transformed into upserts to ensure consistency on repeated operations. For example, if the slave crashes, we won't know exactly which operations have been applied. So if we're left with operations 1, 2, 3, 4, and 5, and if we then apply 1, 2, 3, 2, 3, 4, 5, we should achieve the same results. This repeatability property is also used for the initial cloning of the replica.

### Tailing

After applying operations, we want to wait a moment and then poll again for new data with our `$gte`operation. We want this operation to be fast, quickly skipping past old data we have already processed. However, we do not want to build an index on `ts`, as indexing can be somewhat expensive, and the oplog is write-heavy. Instead, we use a table scan in natural order, but use a tailable cursor to "remember" our position. Thus, we only scan once, and then when we poll again, we know where to begin.

### Initiation

To create a new replica, we do the following:

```
t = now();
cloneDatabase();
end = now();
applyOperations(t..end);
```

`cloneDatabase`effectively exports/imports all the data in the database. Note the actual "image" we will get may or may not include data modifications in the time range (`t..end`). Thus, we apply all logged operations from that range when the cloning is complete. Because of our repeatability property, this is safe.

See class `Cloner` for more information.

## Smoke Tests


- Test Organization
- Running all the tests
- smoke.py
- Running a jstest manually
- Running the C++ unit tests
- See Also


### Test Organization

1. `dbtests/.*cpp` has C++ unit tests
2. `jstests/*.js` has core tests
3. `jstests/repl*/*.js` has replication tests
4. `jstests/sharding/*.js` has sharding tests

5. `slowNightly/*js` has tests that take longer and run only at night
6. `slowWeekly/*.js` has tests that take even longer and run only once a week

### Running all the tests

```
scons smoke smokeDisk smokeTool smokeAuth startMongod smokeClient smokeJs
scons startMongodSmallOplog smokeJs
scons startMongod smokeJsSlowNightly
scons smokeTool
scons smokeReplSets
scons smokeDur
scons mongosTest smokeSharding
scons smokeRepl smokeClone
scons startMongod smokeParallel
```

### smoke.py

*smoke.py* lets you run a subsets of the tests in *jstests/*. When it is running tests, it starts up an instance of mongod, runs the tests, and then shuts it down again. You can run it while running other instances of MongoDB on the same machine: it uses ports in the 30000 range and its own data directories.

For the moment, *smoke.py* must be run from the top-level directory of a MongoDB source repository. This directory must contain at least the `mongo` and `mongod` binaries. To run certain tests, you'll also need to build the tools and `mongos`. It's a good idea to run `scons .` before running the tests.

To run *smoke.py* you'll need a recent version of PyMongo.

To see the possible options, run:

```
$ python buildscripts/smoke.py --help
Usage: smoke.py [OPTIONS] ARGS*

Options:
  -h, --help            show this help message and exit
  --mode=MODE           If "files", ARGS are filenames; if "suite", ARGS are
                        sets of tests (suite)
  --test-path=TEST_PATH
                        Path to the test executables to run, currently only
                        used for 'client' (none)
  --mongod=MONGOD_EXECUTABLE
                        Path to mongod to run (/Users/mike/10gen/mongo/mongod)
  --port=MONGOD_PORT    Port the mongod will bind to (32000)
  --mongo=SHELL_EXECUTABLE
                        Path to mongo, for .js test files
                        (/Users/mike/10gen/mongo/mongo)
  --continue-on-failure
                        If supplied, continue testing even after a test fails
  --from-file=FILE      Run tests/suites named in FILE, one test per line, '-'
                        means stdin
  --smoke-db-prefix=SMOKE_DB_PREFIX
                        Prefix to use for the mongods' dbpaths ('')
  --small-oplog         Run tests with master/slave replication & use a small
                        oplog
```

By default, `smoke.py` will run tests that create data in `/data/db`, which may interfere with other MongoDB instances you are running. To change the directory in which the smoke tests create databases, use `--smoke-db-prefix=/some/other/path`

To run specific tests, use the *--mode=files* option:

```
python buildscripts/smoke.py --mode=files jstests/find1.js
```

You can specify as many files as you want.

You can also run a suite of tests. Suites are predefined and include:

- *test*
- *all*
- *perf*
- *js*
- *quota*
- *jsPerf*
- *disk*
- *jsSlowNightly*
- *jsSlowWeekly*
- *parallel*
- *clone*
- *repl* (master/slave replication tests)
- *replSets* (replica set tests)
- *auth*
- *sharding*
- *tool*
- *client*
- *mongosTest*

To run a suite, specify the suite's name:

```
python buildscripts/smoke.py js
```

### Running a jstest manually

You can run a jstest directly from the shell, for example:

```
mongo --nodb jstests/replsets/replsetarb3.js
```

### Running the C++ unit tests

The tests under jstests/ folder are written in mongo shell javascript. However there are a set of C++ unit tests also. To run them:

```

scons test
./test
```

### See Also

- scons

## Pairing Internals

#### *Policy for reconciling divergent oplogs*

In a paired environment, a situation may arise in which each member of a pair has logged operations as master that have not been applied to the other server. In such a situation, the following procedure will be used to ensure consistency between the two servers:

1. The new master will scan through its own oplog from the point at which it last applied an operation from it's peer's oplog to the end. It will create a set C of object ids for which changes were made. It will create a set M of object ids for which only modifier changes were made. The values of C and M will be updated as client operations are applied to the new master.
2. The new master will iterate through its peer's oplog, applying only operations that will not affect an object having an id in C.
3. For any operation in the peer's oplog that may not be applied due to the constraint in the previous step, if the id of the of the object in question is in M, the value of the whole object on the new master is logged to the new master's oplog.
4. The new slave applies all operations from the new master's oplog.

# Contributing to the Documentation

Qualified volunteers are welcome to assist in editing the wiki documentation. Contact us for more information.

## Emacs tips for MongoDB work

You can edit confluence directly from emacs:

First, follow the basic instructions on http://code.google.com/p/confluence-el/

Change the confluence-url in their sample setup to http://mongodb.onconfluence.com/rpc/xmlrpc

Might also want to change the default space to DOCS or DOCS-ES or whatever space you edit the most.

### etags setup (suggested by mstearn)

First, install "exuberant ctags", which has nicer features than GNU etags.

http://ctags.sourceforge.net/

Then, run something like this in the top-level mongo directory to make an emacs-style TAGS file:

```
ctags -e --extra=+qf --fields=+iasnfSKtm --c++-kinds=+p  --recurse .
```

Then you can use M-x visit-tags-table, M-., M-* as normal.

## Mongo Documentation Style Guide

This page provides information for everyone adding to the Mongo documentation on Confluence. It covers:

- General Notes on Writing Style
- Guide to Confluence markup for specific situations
- Some general notes about doc production

### General Notes on Writing Style

#### *Voice*

Active voice is almost always preferred to passive voice.

To make this work, however, you may find yourself anthropromorphizing components of the system - that is, treating the driver or the database as an agent that actually does something. ("The dbms writes the new record to the collection" is better than "the new record is written to the database", but some purists may argue that the dbms doesn't do anything - it's just code that directs the actions of the processor - but then someone else says "yes, but does the processor really do anything?" and so on and on.) It is simpler and more economical to write as if these components are actually doing things, although you as the infrastructure developers might have to stop and think about which component is actually performing the action you are describing.

#### *Tense*

Technical writers in general prefer to keep descriptions of processes in the present tense: "The dbms writes the new collection to disk" rather than "the dbms will write the new collection to disk." You save a few words that way.

### MongoDB Terminology

It would be good to spell out precise definitions of technical words and phrases you are likely to use often, like the following:

- Mongo
- database (do you want "a Mongo database"? Or a Mongo database instance?)
- dbms (I have't seen this term often - is it correct to talk about "the Mongo DBMS"?)
- Document
- Record
- Transaction (I stopped myself from using this term because my understanding is the Mongo doesn't support "transactions" in the sense of operations that are logged and can be rolled back - is this right?)

These are just a few I noted while I was editing. More should be added. It would be good to define these terms clearly among yourselves, and then post the definitions for outsiders.

### Markup for terms

It's important to be consistent in the way you treat words that refer to certain types of objects. The following table lists the types you will deal with most often, describes how they should look, and (to cut to the chase) gives you the Confluence markup that will achieve that appearance.

| Type | Appearance | Markup |
|---|---|---|
| Object name (the type of "object" that "object-oriented programming" deals with) | monospace | {{ `term` }} |
| short code fragment inline | monospace | {{ `term` }} |
| file path/name, extension | italic | _term_ |
| programming command, statement or expression | monospace | {{ `term` }} |
| variable or "replaceable item" | monospace italic | `_term_` |
| Placeholders in paths, directories, or other text that would be italic anyway | angle brackets around <item> | <item> |
| GUI element (menus menu items, buttons | bold | *term* |
| First instance of a technical term | italic | _term_ |
| tag (in HTML or XML, for example) | monospace | {{ `term` }} |
| Extended code sample | code block | {code}<br>program code<br><br>{code} |

In specifying these, I have relied on the O'Reilly Style Guide, which is at:

http://oreilly.com/oreilly/author/stylesheet.html

This guide is a good reference for situations not covered here.

I should mention that for the names of GUI objects I followed the specification in the Microsoft Guide to Technical Publications.

### *Other Confluence markup*

If you are editing a page using Confluence's RTF editor, you don't have to worry about markup. Even if you are editing markup directly, Confluence displays a guide on the right that shows you most of the markup you will need.

### *References and Links*

Confluence also provides you with a nice little utility that allows you to insert a link to another Confluence page by searching for the page by title or by text and choosing it from a list. Confluence handles the linking markup. You can even use it for external URLs.

The one thing this mechanism does NOT handle is links to specific locations within a wiki page. Here is what you have to know if you want to insert these kinds of links:

- Every heading you put in a Confluence page ("h2.Title", "h3.OtherTitle", etc.) becomes an accessible "anchor" for linking.
- You can also insert an anchor anywhere else in the page by inserting "{anchor\:*anchorname}" where _anchorname* is the unique name you will use in the link.
- To insert a link to one of these anchors, you must go into wiki markup and add the anchor name preceded by a "#". Example: if the page `MyPage` contains a heading or an ad-hoc anchor named `GoHere`, the link to that anchor from within the same page would look like `[#GoHere]`, and a link to that anchor from a different page would look like `[MyPage#GoHere]`. (See the sidebar for information about adding other text to the body of the link.)

### *Special Characters*

- You will often need to insert code samples that contain curly braces. As Dwight has pointed out, Confluence gets confused by this unless you "escape" them by preceding them with a backslash, thusly:

  ```
  \{  \}
  ```

  You must do the same for "[", "]", "_" and some others.
  Within a {code} block you don't have to worry about this. If you are inserting code fragments inline using {{ and }}, however, you still need to escape these characters. Further notes about this:

  - If you are enclosing a complex code expression with {{ and }}, do NOT leave a space between the last character of the expression and the }}. This confuses Confluence.
  - Confluence also gets confused (at least sometimes) if you use {{ and }}, to enclose a code sample that includes escaped curly brackets.

### About MongoDB's Confluence wiki

Confluence has this idea of "spaces". Each person has a private space, and there are also group spaces as well.

The MongoDB Confluence wiki has three group spaces defined currently:

- Mongo Documentation - The publicly accessible area for most Mongo documentation
- Contributor - Looks like, the publicly accessible space for information for "Contributors"
- Private - a space open to MongoDB developers, but not to the public at large.
  As I said in my email on Friday, all of the (relevant) info from the old wiki now lives in the "Mongo Documentation"

### *Standard elements of Wiki pages*

You shouldn't have to spend a lot of time worrying about this kind of thing, but I do have just a few suggestions:

- Since these wiki pages are (or can be) arranged hierarchically, you may have "landing pages" that do little more than list their child pages. I think Confluence actually adds a list of children automatically, but it only goes down to the next hierarchical level. To insert a hierarchical list of a page's children, all you have to do is insert the following Confluence "macro":

  ```
  {children:all=true}
  ```

  See the Confluence documentation for more options and switches for this macro.

- For pages with actual text, I tried to follow these guidelines:
  - For top-level headings, I used "h2" not "h1"
  - I never began a page with a heading. I figured the title of the page served as one.
  - I always tried to include a "See Also" section that listed links to other Mongo docs.
  - I usually tried to include a link to the "Talk to us about Mongo" page.

# Community


- Technical Support
- Bug/Feature Tracker (Jira)
- Blog
- Mailing List
- Events
- Job Board
- Twitter etc.
- Store
- Resources for Driver and Database Developers
  - Source
  - Developer List
  - Project Ideas
- Contribute!
  - Write a book
  - Write a driver, framework, and other tools
  - Help with Free Support
  - Work on the DB


## Technical Support

See the Support page, free support is available and its usage encouraged!

## Bug/Feature Tracker (Jira)

File, track, and vote on bugs and feature requests. There is issue tracking for MongoDB and all supported drivers.

## Blog

http://blog.mongodb.org/

## Mailing List

http://groups.google.com/group/mongodb-announce - for release announcement and important bug fixes.

## Events

The events page includes information about MongoDB conferences, webcasts, users groups, local meetups, and open office hours.

## Job Board

- Click Here to access the Job Board. The Board is a community resource for all employers to post MongoDB-related jobs. Please feel free to post/investigate positions!
- See also the Indeed MongoDB jobs list

## Twitter etc.

- @mongodb
- facebook
- linkedin

## Store

- Visit the MongoDB store on Cafepress.

## Resources for Driver and Database Developers

### *Source*

The source code for the database and drivers is available at the http://github.com/mongodb.

### *Developer List*

This mongodb-dev mailing list is for people developing drivers and tools, or who are contributing to the MongoDB codebase itself.

### *Project Ideas*

Start or contribute to a MongoDB-related project.

## Contribute!

### *Write a book*

If interested contact info@10gen.com we'll try to get you in touch with publishers.

### *Write a driver, framework, and other tools*

Writing Drivers and Tools

### *Help with Free Support*

Jump in with answers on http://groups.google.com/group/mongodb-user and IRC (freenode.net#mongodb) .

### *Work on the DB*

http://groups.google.com/group/mongodb-dev

# MongoDB Masters

- **Peter Bell**
- **Rick Copeland**
- **Justin Dearing**
- **Mike Dirolf**
- **Kenny Gorman**

- **Jonas Haag**
- **Nathen Harvey**
- **Aaron Heckmann**
- **Jon Hoffman**
- **Takahiro Inoue**
- **Lennart Koopmann**
- **Nat Luengnaruemitchai**
- **David Makogon**
- **Harry Marr**
- **David Mytton**
- **Gustavo Niemeyer**
- **John Nunemaker**
- **Niall O'Higgins**
- **Flavio Percoco**
- **Mitch Pirtle**
- **Karl Seguin**
- **Mark Smalley**
- **Tony Tam**
- **Rose Toomey**
- **Jonathan Wage**
- **Ian White**
- **Aristarkh Zagorodnikov**

*(sorted alphabetically by last name)*

## Peter Bell

Peter is Senior VP Engineering and Senior Fellow at General Assembly, a campus for technology, design, and entrepreneurship. He's a regular presenter at national and international conferences on ruby, nodejs, NoSQL (especially MongoDB and neo4j), cloud computing, software craftsmanship, java, groovy, javascript, and requirements and estimating. He is on the program committee for Code Generation in Cambridge, England and the Domain Specific Modeling workshop at SPLASH (was ooPSLA) and reviews and shepherds proposals for the BCS SPA conference.

He has presented at a range of conferences including DLD conference, ooPSLA, QCon, RubyNation, SpringOne2GX, Code Generation, Practical Product Lines, the British Computer Society Software Practices Advancement conference, DevNexus, cf.Objective(), CF United, Scotch on the Rocks, WebDU, WebManiacs, UberConf, the Rich Web Experience and the No Fluff Just Stuff Enterprise Java tour. He has been published in IEEE Software, Dr. Dobbs, IBM developerWorks, Information Week, Methods & Tools, Mashed Code, NFJS the Magazine and GroovyMag. He's currently writing a book on managing software development for Pearson.

Github

## Rick Copeland

Rick Copeland is a Lead Software Engineer at SourceForge where he joined the team that introduced MongoDB to the SourceForge technology stack with the migration of the consumer-facing pages of SourceForge from a PHP/relational database platform to Python/MongoDB. Out of that experience came Ming, an MongoDB object/document mapper for Python that he maintains and continues to develop. Rick also helped lead the effort to rewrite the developer tools (wiki, tickets, forums, repos, etc.) portion of the SourceForge site on the Python/MongoDB platform and released that platform as Allura under the Apache License. He also created the Zarkov realtime analytics framework (also released under the Apache license) used at SourceForge to calculate project statistics. He is a frequent speaker at MongoDB events and an avid MongoDB enthusiast.

GitHub
@rick446 on Twitter
Blog
Presentations

**MongoDB contributions**

Ming, an object/document mapper for MongoDB in Python
Zarkov, a realtime analytics framework using MongoDB
Allura, the new MongoDB-powered platform for SourceForge

## Justin Dearing

Justin Dearing has been working in IT in 2002. He started his career as a night shift AS/400 operator and rose through the ranks at a series of companies.

Justin has worked in both the development and production side of the house on Windows, Unix and Midrange Platforms. Besides MongoDB his database experience includes MySQL, Postgres and Microsoft SQL server. These days he mainly programs in C#, Powershell and PHP.

Justin's life was forever changed on 2009-10-27 when Kristinia Chodorow presented a talk on mongodb at NYPHP and destroyed everything he knew to be right, holy and true about databases. A few months later he push a small app using MongoDB to production. In addition to afflicting the

world with apps that use MongoDB, he has contributed to the core server and the official .NET driver.

Justin lives in Jersey City with his wife and 3 laptops.

@Zippy1981 on Twitter
GitHub
Blog

## Mike Dirolf

Mike was the original author of the PyMongo project and a maintainer of the mongo-ruby-driver. He co-authored O'Reilly's MongoDB: The Definitive Guide. He maintains several MongoDB-related open source projects, and is the founder of a web service, Fiesta (https://fiesta.cc), that uses MongoDB as its primary data store.

@mdirolf on Twitter
GitHub
Blog

**MongoDB Contributions**

MongoDB: The Definitive Guide
Wrote PyMongo
Mongo-ruby-driver
nginx-gridfs

## Kenny Gorman

Kenny Gorman has over a decade of experience with various database platforms behind some of the busiest websites in the world. He has had roles as Developer, DBA, Architect, Manager and Director. He was an early adopter of MongoDB in 2009 using it for various projects at Shutterfly. He wrote an early python version of the Mongostat tool that is distributed with MongoDB today. He enjoys performance tuning, large scale systems development, and tricky database problems.

Github
@kennygorman
Blog

**Contributions**
Wrote the original mongostat in python, since then it's moved to core distribution.

## Jonas Haag

Jonas Haag is a passionate Python programmer and free software enthusiast from Stuttgart, Germany. He maintains Django MongoDB Engine, a MongoDB backend for the Python Web framework Django.

GitHub
Blog

**MongoDB Contributions**

Django MongoDB Engine
PyMongo

## Nathen Harvey

Nathen Harvey is the manager of Web Operations for CustomInk.com, a website that allows you to design and purchase custom apparel for your group or special event. Nathen is the co-organizer of the Washington DC MongoDB Users' Group and DevOps DC. Most of Nathen's open source contributions are for the Opscode Chef framework and include cookbooks for managing MongoDB. When not working or hosting meetups, Nathen enjoys going to concerts, drinking craft beer, and over sharing on sites like twitter, untappd, and foursquare.

Github
@NathenHarvey on Twitter
Blog
Untappd

**MongoDB contributions**

MongoDC User Group

## Aaron Heckmann

Aaron is currently an engineer at LearnBoost, an education startup built on node.js. An active member of the node.js community, Aaron is the

maintainer of Mongoose, the MongoDB object modeling tool, as well as the author of express-mongoose, gm, gleak, and contributing to other projects such as Express and the node-mongodb-native mongodb driver.

@aheckmann on Twitter
GitHub
Blog

**MongoDB Contributions**

Mongoose - nodejs ODM for MongoDB
Mongoose on GitHub
Express-Mongoose - adds Mongoose support to Express
MongoDB Driver for Node.js

## Jon Hoffman

Jon is a software engineer and currently runs the infrastructure engineering team at foursquare. His team is tasked with designing the backends of new features, building robust systems to keep the platform running smoothly and helping other engineers get things done. In the course of his tenure at foursquare Jon has made contributions to the mongoDB's core server, mongo-java-driver, Lift Framework, and scalaj-http projects. Jon recently presented work the foursquare infrastructure team built to add robustness to mongo on top of unreliable disk. Before foursquare Jon spent a brief time working at a three person startup, built distributed systems at Goldman Sachs, worked on VoIP apps for the telephone company, created a medical record app for palm pilot, and graduated from Carnegie Mellon.

Github
@hoffrocket on Twitter

**MongoDB Contributions**

Core Server
MongoDB Java Driver
MongoDB in Production: Data and Availability, March NYC MongoDB User Group

## Takahiro Inoue

Takahiro is a Chief Data Scientist at Treasure-Data Inc where he uses MongoDB for log data analysis. He is a frequent speaker on MongoDB and Data and the organizer of the Tokyo MongoDB User Group

GitHub
@doryokujin on Twitter
Slideshare
Blog

**MongoDB Contributions**

Organizer of the Tokyo MongoDB User Group

## Lennart Koopmann

Lennart Koopmann is a developer from Hamburg, Germany and author of Graylog2 - A free and open source log mangement system that uses MongoDB as database. He also wrote mongo_analyzer, a little web frontend on top of the MongoDB profiler that helps you optimizing your queries.

@_Lennart on Twitter
GitHub
Blog

**MongoDB Contributions**

Graylog
Mongo Analyzer

## Nat Luengnaruemitchai

Bio: working in financial industry. Help out on a couple projects such as ikvm, dnanalytics, mongodb
Github

**MongoDB Contributions**
Bug fixes/small enhancement in mongodb core, c# driver, java driver
Over 2,700 posts on the mongodb-user group (free support forum)

## David Makogon

David Makogon has been a software creationist and architect for over 25 years. He's currently a Senior Cloud Architect at Microsoft specializing in Windows Azure.

Since 2010, David has been working with MongoDB, specifically in Windows Azure. He built both standalone and replica set samples, presenting these at MongoDC and MongoSV in 2010. He's also provided architectural guidance to several ISV's as they build Windows Azure solutions coupled with MongoDB.

Outside of computing, David is an avid photographer and family man, with a penchant for puns and an uncanny ability to read backwards.

Twitter
Blog
Presentations

## Harry Marr

Harry Marr (@harrymarr) is the author of MongoEngine, a popular Python ODM (Object-Document Mapper). He hails from London, where he spends most of his time working in Python and Ruby. He was previously employed at Conversocial, where he drove a migration from MySQL to MongoDB using MongoEngine. He currently works at GoCardless, an early-stage startup with some exciting ambitions in the payments space. When he's not working on disrupting the payments industry, he can be found hacking on various open source projects (https://github.com/hmarr).

Github
@harrymarr
Blog

**MongoDB Contributions**

MongoEngine
MongoEngine source

## David Mytton

David has been a PHP/Python programmer for 10 years. He is the founder of Server Density a hosted server monitoring service where he built the original code and server infrastructure behind the application which is now processing over 1bn documents (7TB data) each month. Server Density uses MongoDB extensively as our primary data store since 2009, and it now deployed across 50 servers on the Terremark Enterprise Cloud. He is a regular speaker on MongoDB and runs the London MongoDB User Group.

@Davidmytton on Twitter
GitHub
Blog

**MongoDB Contributions**

Server Density
MongoDB Monitoring Tool
London MongoDB User Group

## Gustavo Niemeyer

Gustavo acts as the technical lead behind projects from Canonical such as the Landscape systems management platform, the juju orchestration framework, and the Storm object-relational mapper for Python. In his free time, among other things Gustavo is a contributor to Google's Go language, is the author of the mgo (mango) MongoDB driver for Go, and also designed the Geohash concept that is used internally by MongoDB.

@Gniemeyer on Twitter
Code Repository
Blog

**MongoDB Contributions**

mgo
Geohash

## John Nunemaker

John Nunemaker develops simple and beautiful software at Ordered List, which has several MongoDB backed applications in production – Gauges, Harmony and Speaker Deck. He is also the creator of MongoMapper, a popular Ruby object mapping library for MongoDB.

@Jnunemaker on Twitter
GitHub
Blog

**MongoDB Contributions**
MongoMapper

## Niall O'Higgins

Niall O'Higgins is the co-founder of a software product & services company specializing in NoSQL, mobile and cloud computing. He is the author of the book "MongoDB and Python" published by O'Reilly. He is the founder and organizer of both the San Francisco Python Web Technology Meet-up, PyWebSF and the Bay Area Tablet Computing Group, We Have Tablets. He has published quite a bit of Open Source software - contributing to OpenBSD and Pyramid among others - and frequently speaks at conferences and events.

@niallohiggins on Twitter
GitHub
Blog

**MongoDB Contributions**
MongoDB and Python

## Flavio Percoco

Flavio works in the Research and Development department at The Net Planet Europe and is an avid MongoDB community contributor. His host of contributions include Pymongo, the Django Database Engine (co-author and maintainer), the MongoDB plugin for eclipse and the python virtual machine for MongoDB. He lives in Milan, Italy and is a frequent speaker at MongoDB and Europe technology conferences.

@flaper87 on Twitter
GitHub
BitBucket
Blog

**MongoDB Contributions**

Django Database Engine for MongoDB
Python Virtual Machine inside MongoDB
MongoDB Plugin for Eclipse
MongoDB CDR Backend for Asterisk
MongoDB Transport for Kombu

## Mitch Pirtle

Mitch is currently CTO at Sounday Music, a social and services platform catering to the music industry. There he maintains the core platform comprised of MongoDB and the Lithium framework for PHP.

He was first corrupted by Dwight Merriman while launching Jetsetter for Gilt Groupe, which went on to be the first e-commerce site powered by MongoDB. He then followed that up by launching Totsy, the first e-commerce site to rely solely on MongoDB for all data storage. He is also an original core member for the Mambo content management system, where he went on to found Joomla! and Open Source Matters. Before that he was contributing to many open source projects, and was an outspoken advocate for PostgreSQL, which still remains his favorite relational database.

He is based in Turin Italy with his wife, kids, and rapidly proliferating devices.

GitHub: http://github.com/spacemonkey
@mitchitized on Twitter

## Karl Seguin

Karl Seguin is a developer with experience across various fields and technologies. He's an active contributor to OSS projects, a technical writer and an occasional speaker. With respect to MongoDB, he was a core contributor to the C# MongoDB library NoRM, wrote the interactive tutorial mongly, the Mongo Web Admin and the free Little MongoDB Book. His service for casual game developers, mogade.com, is powered by MongoDB.

@KarlSeguin on Twitter
GitHub
Blog

**MongoDB Contributions**

Mongoly.com
The Little MongoDB Book

## Mark Smalley

Mark Smalley is a Brit on a mission. Currently based out of Kuala Lumpur, Malaysia, he roams around Asia making every effort he can to convert anyone and everyone into avid MongoDB enthusiasts. He is also one of the lead organizers for the monthly Kuala-Lumpur MongoDB User-Group and lead-developer on several MongoDB powered OpenSource initiatives.

Twitter
GitHub
Blog

**MongoDB Contributions**

MongoBase
Geoply
MongoPress

## Tony Tam

@fehguy on Twitter
GitHub
Presentations
Swagger

**MongoDB Contributions**

mongodb oss admin tools

Tony is a San Francisco Bay Area native. He received his undergraduate degree in Mechanical Engineering from UC Santa Barbara and his MBA from Santa Clara University. He was the founding engineer and SVP of Engineering at Think Passenger, the leading provider of customer collaboration software. Prior to joining Passenger, he was lead engineer at Composite Software of San Mateo, California. At Composite Software he helped developed the company's first- and second-generation query processing engines and led the research and implementation of their patented cost-based federated query optimizer. Prior to that he led software development in the bioinformatics group at Galileo Labs, a drug-discovery company based in the Silicon Valley.

## Rose Toomey

Rose Toomey is the creator of Salat, a simple serialization for Scala and MongoDBSalat was developed to make using Scala with Casbah and MongoDB as simple as possible. While Casbah increased the usability of the mongo-java-driver in Scala, there was no correspondingly elegant solution for serializing and deserializing objects. The new horizons opened up by using MongoDB as a document store demanded something better than the complexity and ceremony of the ORMs I'd worked with in the past. I also faced the challenge that my company, Novus Partners, is a financial startup that needs to process massive amounts of data very quickly. What to do? Enter Salat: it not only serializes to and from Mongo documents quickly, but uses hi-fi type information provided by the Scala compiler instead of explicit mappings. No fuss, no muss: my goal is that someone who wants to use Scala and MongoDB can be up and running with Salat in fifteen minutes.

GitHub
@Prasinous on Twitter

**MongoDB Contributions**

Salat

## Jonathan Wage

Software engineer from Nashville, TN currently working for OpenSky.com
@Jwage on Twitter
GitHub
Blog

**MongoDB Contributions**

Doctrine MongoDB Object Document Mapper for PHP open source project

## Ian White

Ian is the co-founder and CTO of Sailthru, a company that automatically tailors email, web and advertising content down to the unique user. He was the first non-10gen employee to use MongoDB in production, and built both Business Insider and Sailthru using MongoDB as the datastore.

@EonWhite on Twitter
GitHub

**MongoDB Contributions**

SimpleMongoPHP

## Aristarkh Zagorodnikov

Started using MongoDB about half a year ago, made it the default database (we still have most of our stuff using PostgreSQL, but all new

development except billing services is done with MongoDB) for our company Bolotov .

GitHub
BitBucket
Blog

**MongoDB Contributions**

MongoDB C# Driver

# Technical Support

- Free Support Forum - http://groups.google.com/group/mongodb-user
- IRC Chat and Support - irc://irc.freenode.net/#mongodb
- Commercial Support

# MongoDB Commercial Services Providers

## 10gen

10gen is the initiator, contributor and continual sponsor of the MongoDB project. 10gen offers subscriptions that include production support, commercial licensing, and MongoDB Monitoring Service . In addition, 10gen offers advisory consulting and training.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Ready to learn more about 10gen?** Fill out our contact form, and a 10gen representative will get in touch to learn about how 10gen services can help your organization. | **Need support right away?** If you are having a production issue and need support, please contact us, call us at (866) 237-8815, or visit the community Technical Support page. | **Want to be listed here?** If you provide consultative or support services for MongoDB and wish to be listed here, just let us know. |

## Hosting and Cloud

See the MongoDB Hosting Center.

## Official 10gen Partners

10gen provides training to its systems integrator partners. To learn more about the partner program and what 10gen provides, or for information about joining the program, visit 10gen.com.

| Company | More Information |
|---|---|
| CIGNEX DATAMATICS Making Open Source Work™ | CIGNEX Datamatics (a subsidiary of Datamatics Global Services Ltd.) is the global leader in Commercial Open Source enterprise solutions and a global partner of 10gen (MongoDB) offering advisory consulting, implementation, and other services around the MongoDB application. |
| comSysto sense and respond | comSysto is a Munich based software company specialized in lean business and technology development. While supporting all three steps of a well known Build-Measure-Learn lean feedback loop, comSysto focuses on open source frameworks and software as major enablers of short, agile Build-Measure-Learn iterations and fast gains in validated learning. Powerful MongoDB technology provides the needed flexibility and agility for turning ideas into products as well as performance for handling Big Data while turning data into knowledge. We also enjoy developing with Spring framework and its sub-projects, Apache Wicket, Gradle, Git, Oracle DB and Oracle BI. comSysto is dedicated to eliminating waste in both business and technology since 2005. |

| | |
|---|---|
| | codecentric AG specialises in developing customised IT-solutions. The company is one of the leading German providers in the areas of agility, architecture, Java performance, Java and Enterprise Content Management. codecentric offers development, IT-consulting and services throughout the complete life cycle of applications and infrastructures: from individual software solutions to performance optimisation of Java-applications, to support of organisational processes within the company. The more than 120 codecentric employees work at various locations in Germany and Europe. |
| | EPAM's core competencies include complex software product engineering for leading global software and technology vendors as well as development, testing, maintenance, and support of mission critical business applications and vertically oriented IT consulting services for global Fortune 2000 corporations. |
| | Since its inception in 2005, Equal Experts has been providing bespoke application development services to blue chip clients, including major investment banks and leading Telecom companies. Equal Experts has defined a unique approach to Agile software development that is both pragmatic and Enterprise-friendly. By harnessing the potential of modern application development techniques, our goal is to radically improve our customer's efficiency. |
| | iTechArt Group Since 2003 iTechArt Group, a leading consulting firm, has been providing R&D Services for emerging technology companies with heavy focus on web and mobile development. iTechArt offers a traditional IT outsourcing model complete with project-based services giving our clients the ability to build and manage their own dedicated team in one of our development centers in Eastern Europe.<br>iTechArt specializes in product research and conceptualization, helping our clients select the correct architecture design & platform, implementation & customization, testing & QA, product installation, migration & porting, as well as modernization & product extension. |
| | NewWave Telecom & Technologies Inc. is SEI CMMI® Maturity Level 2 appraised; a GSA Schedule 70 IT Service Provider and 8(a) STARS II holder, service Information Technology and Business Services firm who is a leading implementer of business solutions using service-oriented technologies. We specialize in providing end-to-end, mission critical information technology solutions for healthcare, finance, telecoms, government agencies and private sector clients. |
| | OpenCredo is a team of highly experienced consultants who are amongst the best in the business. Dedicated to maximizing the ability to deliver value from any enterprise software development and delivery capability. They help their clients use leading-edge technologies and practices to drove waste from their software delivery projects. |
| | PalominoDB is a boutique consultancy, known for being top MySQL experts, and specializing in open source DB technologies including MongoDB, MySQL, Postgres, Cassandra and HBase. |
| | Thermopylae Sciences + Technology (TST) is a Service-Disabled Veteran-Owned Small Business (SDVOSB) that focuses on excellence in all we do for our government and private sector customer base. We particularly excel in software development, cyber security, geospatial engineering, cloud/grid computing in cleared environments, and mobile application development. |

| | |
|---|---|
| | Thumbtack is a full service application development partner specializing in highly scalable and cloud-based solutions. We provide strategic advice, technical architecture, software development, as well as quality assurance and deployment support to companies in Media, Publishing, and Financial Services. With a core competency in NoSQL, Thumbtack has brought robust MongoDB solutions to production for a variety of clients and industries. |
| | Rothbury Software is a very experienced and successful boutique software consulting company. Our impressive customer list says more about us than we can state here. |
| | Xebia is an international IT consultancy and project organization focused on Enterprise Java technology, Agile development methods and outsourcing services. Xebia consists of over 250 professionals, all committed to be the best in their field of expertise. Passion for in depth technology, in combination with Lean, Agile and Scrum practices are Xebia's driving factors and competitive edge. |
| | FastConnect FastConnect is a french consulting and engineering company specialised in distributed architectures. Our expertise spans the domains of SOA and EDA, Process and Decision Management, Cloud, Big Data and Analytics for business-critical applications. We bring to our clients our significant and strategic investments in specific technologies and development methodologies. Our consultants are helping our clients in designing and delivering flexible and linearly performing applications at the best price/performance ratio using state of the art architecture and enterprise-ready tools. For more information visit http://www.fastconnect.fr/. |
| | Silpion IT-Solutions GmbH is an expanding consultancy in Germany. Founded in 2000, today 97 highly qualified employees work for us. Of these, 57 are employed directly and 40 as freelancers. Our focus is safety and functionality, while we focus on innovative concepts and advanced technologies. |
| | Orange11 is a leading full service supplier of high-quality custom-built applications. Our specialist teams provide end-to-end project delivery services to support the full project life-cycle: from the first design stages to ongoing maintenance. In addition, Orange11 can provide high-end consulting and training services. |
| | KMMX Located in Mexico City, KMMX provides innovative training on web and mobile technologies. KMMX's mission is to bring the best tools and learning environment to meet the needs of Mexico's IT professionals. |
| | Rivet Logic is an award-winning consulting and systems integration firm that helps organizations better engage with customers, improve collaboration and streamline business operations. Through a full suite of solutions for content management, collaboration and community, Rivet Logic enables organizations to fully leverage the power of industry-leading open source software. Rivet Logic-Artisans of Open Source. Visit www.rivetlogic.com. |

### Other Resources

- Hashrocket is a full-service design and development firm that builds successful web businesses. Hashrocket continually creates and follows best practices and surround themselves with passionate and talented craftsmen to ensure the best results for you and your business.
- LightCube Solutions provides PHP development and consulting services, as well as a lightweight PHP framework designed for MongoDB called 'photon'.
- Squeejee builds web applications on top of MongoDB with multiple sites already in production.

### Analytics and BI Tools

- Business Intelligence

## Visit the 10gen Offices

### Bay Area

***10gen's West Coast office is located in downtown Palo Alto.***

555 University Ave.
Palo Alto, CA 94301

View Larger Map

***Directions:***

**From 101:**

- Take 101 to the University Ave Exit.
- Drive West to downtown Palo Alto. The 10gen office is at the northeast corner of the intersection of Tasso St. and University Ave.

**From 280:**

- Driving southbound, take 280 to the Sand Hill Road exit. Driving northbound, take 280 to the Alpine Road exit; make a right onto Sand Hill Road from Alpine Road.
- Take Sand Hill Road east to the end at El Camino Real
- Make a right onto El Camino Real, then veer right towards University Ave.
- Make a left onto University Ave. The 10gen office is at the northeast corner of the intersection of Tasso St. and University Ave.

### New York City

***10gen's East Coast office is located in the SOHO neighborhood of NYC.***

578 Broadway
7th Floor
New York, NY 10012

View Larger Map

## User Feedback

"I just have to get my head around that mongodb is really _this_ good"
-muckster, #mongodb

"Guys at Redmond should get a long course from you about what is the software development and support "
-kunthar@gmail.com, mongodb-user list

"#mongoDB keep me up all night. I think I have found the 'perfect' storage for my app "
-elpargo, Twitter

"Dude, you guys are legends!"
-Stii, mongodb-user list

"Times I've been wowed using MongoDB this week: 7."
-tpitale, Twitter

## Community Blog Posts

B is for Billion
-Wordnik (July 9, 2010)

[Reflections on MongoDB]
-Brandon Keepers, Collective Idea (June 15, 2010)

Building a Better Submission Form
-New York Times Open Blog (May 25, 2010)

Notes from a Production MongoDB Deployment
-Boxed Ice (February 28, 2010)

NoSQL in the Real World
-CNET (February 10, 2010)

Why I Think Mongo is to Databases what Rails was to Frameworks
-John Nunemaker, Ordered List (December 18, 2009)

MongoDB a Light in the Darkness...
-EngineYard (September 24, 2009)

Introducing MongoDB
-Linux Magazine (September 21, 2009)

Choosing a non-relational database; why we migrated from MySQL to MongoDB
-Boxed Ice (July 7, 2010)

The Other Blog - The Holy Grail of the Funky Data Model
-Tom Smith (June 6, 2009)

GIS Solved - Populating a MongoDb with POIs
-Samuel

## Community Presentations

Scalable Event Analytics with MongoDb and Ruby on Rails
Jared Rosoff at RubyConfChina (June 2010)

How Python, TurboGears, and MongoDB are Transforming SourceForge.net
Rick Copeland at PyCon 2010

MongoDB
Adrian Madrid at Mountain West Ruby Conference 2009, video

MongoDB - Ruby friendly document storage that doesn't rhyme with ouch
Wynn Netherland at Dallas.rb Ruby Group, slides

MongoDB
jnunemaker at Grand Rapids RUG, slides

Developing Joomla! 1.5 Extensions, Explained (slide 37)
Mitch Pirtle at Joomla!Day New England 2009, slides

Drop Acid (slide 31) (video)
Bob Ippolito at Pycon 2009

Python and Non-SQL Databases (in French, slide 21)
Benoit Chesneau at Pycon France 2009, slides

Massimiliano Dessì at the Spring Framework Italian User Group

- MongoDB (in Italian)
- MongoDB and Scala (in Italian)

Presentations and Screencasts at Learnivore
Frequently-updated set of presentations and screencasts on MongoDB.

### Benchmarking

We keep track of user benchmarks on the Benchmarks page.

## Job Board

## Redirecting...

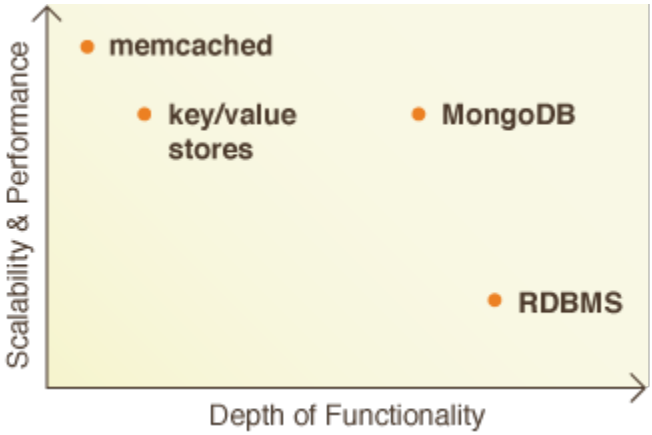
> **Redirection Notice**
> This page should redirect to http://jobs.mongodb.org/ in about 2 seconds.

# About


- Philosophy
- Use Cases
- MongoDB-Based Applications
- Events
- Articles
- Benchmarks
- FAQ
- Misc
- Licensing


# Philosophy

### Design Philosophy




- New database technologies are needed to facilitate horizontal scaling of the data layer, easier development, and the ability to store order(s) of magnitude more data than was used in the past.
- A non-relational approach is the best path to database solutions which scale horizontally to many machines.
- It is unacceptable if these new technologies make writing applications harder. Writing code should be faster, easier, and more agile.
- The document data model (JSON/BSON) is easy to code to, easy to manage(schemaless), and yields excellent performance by grouping relevant data together internally.
- It is important to keep deep functionality to keep programming fast and simple. While some things must be left out, keep as much as possible – for example secondaries indexes, unique key constraints, atomic operations, multi-document updates.
- Database technology should run anywhere, being available both for running on your own servers or VMs, and also as a cloud pay-for-what-you-use service.

### Focus

MongoDB focuses on four main things: flexibility, power, speed, and ease of use. To that end, it sometimes sacrifices things like fine grained control and tuning, overly powerful functionality like MVCC that require a lot of complicated code and logic in the application layer, and certain ACID features like multi-document transactions.

#### *Flexibility*

MongoDB stores data in JSON documents (which we serialize to BSON). JSON provides us a rich data model that seamlessly maps to native

programming language types, and since its schema-less, makes it much easier to evolve your data model than with a system with enforced schemas such as a RDBMS.

### *Power*

MongoDB provides a lot of the features of a traditional RDBMS such as secondary indexes, dynamic queries, sorting, rich updates, upserts (update if document exists, insert if it doesn't), and easy aggregation. This gives you the breadth of functionality that you are used to from an RDBMS, with the flexibility and scaling capability that the non-relational model allows.

### *Speed/Scaling*

By keeping related data together in documents, queries can be much faster than in a relational database where related data is separated into multiple tables and then needs to be joined later. MongoDB also makes it easy to scale out your database. Autosharding allows you to scale your cluster linearly by adding more machines. It is possible to increase capacity without any downtime, which is very important on the web when load can increase suddenly and bringing down the website for extended maintenance can cost your business large amounts of revenue.

### *Ease of use*

MongoDB works hard to be very easy to install, configure, maintain, and use. To this end, MongoDB provides few configuration options, and instead tries to automatically do the "right thing" whenever possible. This means that MongoDB works right out of the box, and you can dive right into developing your application, instead of spending a lot of time fine-tuning obscure database configurations.

## See also:

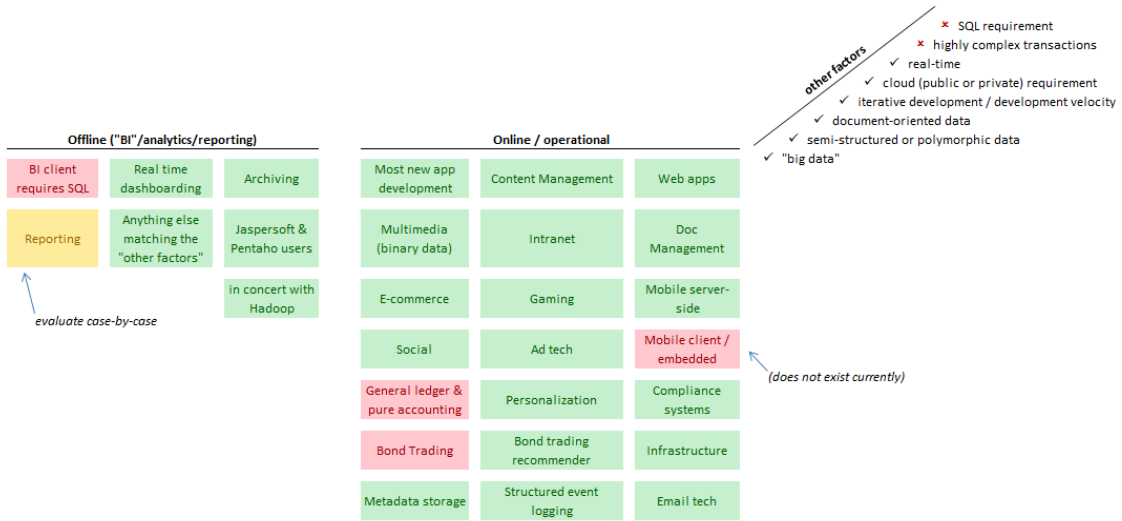
- Introduction

# Use Cases


- Why do people use MongoDB?
- When should you consider using MongoDB?
- When should you use something else?
  - If you had to pick one thing you wouldn't use it for, what's the first thing that comes to mind?
- Do big companies use MongoDB?
- How may databases should my organization standardize on? Is one-size-fits-all over?
- Common Use Cases: Articles and Videos


The goal of MongoDB is to be a fairly general purpose tool that can be used for a variety of applications. Common uses include online/operational tasks and applications, as well as select business intelligence / analytics use cases.

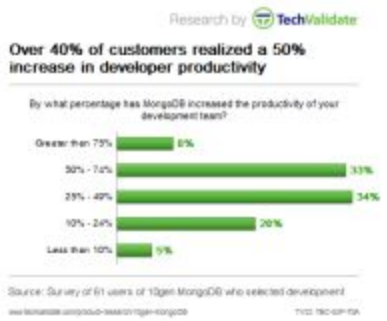
The Production Deployments page provides hundreds of examples of real world use cases; see also the use case docs in the MongoDB Manual.




### Why do people use MongoDB?

Two reasons: *easy scale-out*, and *coding velocity* ("agility").

The original catalyst for the NoSQL space is the growth of "big data" and the need for scalable databases to store that data. However, a secondary but often equally important factor in MongoDB adoption is increased software development "agility."




MongoDB developers report big productivity gains writing their apps, and often use Mongo regardless of whether or not scaling out is required. While there are MongoDB systems that exceed one million operations per second, MongoDB is also used for many apps that *easily run on a single server*.

MongoDB makes app development faster because it

1. eliminates object-relational-mapping work and the so-called "impedance mismatch". (Mongo uses JSON, which maps well to object-style data.)
2. allows dynamic schemas ("schemaless" operation), which is synergistic with agile software development methodologies, which themselves hugely speed project completion.
3. makes it much much easier for the developer to store and manipulate complex data and polymorphic data.
4. reduces the amount of work required to scale out the application and increase system speed.

### When should you consider using MongoDB?

- You find yourself coding around database performance issues – for example adding lots of caching.
- You are storing data in flat files.
- You are batch processing yet you need real-time.
- You are doing agile development, for example, Scrum.
- Your data is complex to model in a relational db. For example a complex derivative security might be hard to store in a traditional format. Electronic health records is another example. If you were considering using an XML store, that's a strong sign to consider MongoDB and its use of JSON/BSON.
- Your project is very late, and it is database intensive.
- You have been forced to use expensive SANs, proprietary servers, or proprietary networks for your existing database solution.
- You are deploying to a public or private cloud.

### When should you use something else?

The following problem domains are not a good match for MongoDB.

- *Problems requiring SQL.* MongoDB supports ad hoc queries and has its own query language, but does not support SQL. This is likely a show stopper for many legacy apps until they are due for a refresh.
- *Systems with a heavy emphasis on complex transactions such as banking systems and accounting.* These systems typically require multi-object transactions, which MongoDB doesn't support. It's worth noting that, unlike many "NoSQL" solutions, MongoDB does support atomic operations on single documents. As documents can be rich entities, for many use cases, this is sufficient – for example many users have built e-commerce systems using MongoDB.
- *Traditional Non-Realtime Data Warehousing (sometimes).* Traditional relational data warehouses and variants (columnar relational) are well suited for certain business intelligence problems – especially if you need SQL for your client tool (e.g. MicroStrategy). Exceptions where MongoDB is good are:
    - cases where the analytics are realtime
    - cases where the data very complicated to model in relational
    - when the data volume is huge
    - when the source data is already in a mongo database

The new aggregation framework (vv2.2+) improves MongoDB's reporting capabilities, as well as availability of a Hadoop adapter. MongoDB support is being added to more client analytic tools as time passes (e.g., Jaspersoft and Pentaho now have MongoDB support).

### *If you had to pick one thing you wouldn't use it for, what's the first thing that comes to mind?*

A double-entry bookkeeping accounting system is probably the perfect anti-example.

- The intrinsically tabular application data maps well to relational data models
- The application requires very complex transactions at times
- The application requires a good amount of reporting. Relational and SQL are quite good at reporting
- The volume of data is probably relatively small

That said, one Fortune 500 company uses MongoDB as a base for a complex application that reconciles billions of dollars in revenues – so don't project *too* far off the above example.

### Do big companies use MongoDB?

Yes. Quite a bit actually, including some companies with over $100B in annual revenues.

### How may databases should my organization standardize on? Is one-size-fits-all over?

Historically there is already some diversity: most large enterprises use an RDBMS for OLTP (e.g., Oracle), a data warehouse technology (e.g., Neteeza), and some niche tools for special problems (e.g. a time series db).

Today we are seeing organizations add one more db tool to their toolbox: a NoSQL database.

We are also seeing some organizations (for example, one very large UK media company) adopt a **Mongo First** policy. That is to say, MongoDB is their *default* for building new applications. They use other tools, but by default, MongoDB. This is a good example that MongoDB is fairly general purpose. Note the word "application": they might at times use other things for pure reporting. Other companies are beginning to do this too; obviously these organizations have already done a few projects with MongoDB and are quite comfortable with it at this point.

Oh, and if you are a startup, just use MongoDB. :-)

### Common Use Cases: Articles and Videos

*Note: You'll find more on the production deployments page and the 10gen videos page.*

- Blog post: on why flexible schemas are useful
- Analytics / BI
  - Analytics talks
  - Blog post: real-time dashboarding
- Archiving blog post
- Blog post : structured event logging
- Content Management Presentations Systems - as a document-oriented (JSON) database, MongoDB's flexible schemas are a good fit for this.
- E-Commerce
  - Blog post : E-Commerce
  - E-Commerce user talks
- Finance user talks
- Gaming user talks
- Gaming Presentations. High performance small read/writes are a good fit for MongoDB; also for certain games geospatial indexes can be helpful.
- Government user talks
- Media user talks
- Mobile example - FourSquare talk video. Specifically, the server-side infrastructure of mobile systems.. Geospatial key here.
- Web infrastructure presentations MongoDB is very good at real-time inserts, updates, and queries. Scalability and replication are provided which are necessary functions for large web sites' real-time data stores.

## Business Intelligence

- Pentaho
- Jaspersoft

### *Pentaho*

Pentaho develops Enterprise and Community tools for business analytics and data integration. Pentaho's products integrate well with MongoDB, bringing Pentaho's visual interfaces for high-performance data ingestion, extraction and manipulation, data discovery, visualization, and predictive analytics to MongoDB. Specifically, Pentaho's tools provide a complete business analytics suite, visual tools to explore data in MongoDB, quick insights and reporting from MongoDB data and integration into enterprise-level analytics solutions.

To get started,

- Visit the Pentaho for MongoDB resource center.
- Once you've got MongoDB setup and running, download and install either the Pentaho Business Analytics Enterprise Edition or the Pentaho Kettle Community Edition.
- Next, review the Pentaho Big Data toolset and then learn about how to integrate MongoDB and Pentaho's tools.

### *Jaspersoft*

Jaspersoft develops business intelligence tools and integration tools for data from several sources. Jaspersoft's intelligent connector integrates MongoDB with the full Jaspersoft BI Suite, providing flexible and affordable reporting, ad hoc analysis, and dashboarding of MongoDB data. As a result, both business and technical users can visualize and analyze MongoDB data more rapidly for competitive advantage. JasperReports Server supports native connections to MongoDB, both on-premises and in the cloud.

- First, install and setup MongoDB
- Next you can download and install JasperReports Server (Enterprise or Community) to create a centralized reporting infrastructure.
- To design reports download the iReport Report Designer.
- To get started, visit Simple Reporting on MongoDB for steps on using iReport to design reports with data from MongoDB.

## Hadoop Quick Start

- Prerequisites
  - Hadoop
  - MongoDB
  - Miscelllaneous

- Building MongoDB Adapter
- Examples
    - Load Sample Data
    - Treasury Yield
    - UFO Sightings


MongoDB and Hadoop are a powerful combination and can be used together to deliver complex analytics and data processing for data stored in MongoDB. The following guide shows how you can start working with the MongoDB-Hadoop adapter. Once you become familiar with the adapter, you can use it to pull your MongoDB data into Hadoop Map-Reduce jobs, process the data and return results back to a MongoDB collection.

## *Prerequisites*

#### Hadoop

In order to use the following guide, you should already have Hadoop up and running. This can range from a deployed cluster containing multiple nodes or a single node pseudo-distributed Hadoop installation running locally. As long as you are able to run any of the examples on your Hadoop installation, you should be all set. The following versions of Hadoop are currently supported:

- 0.20/0.20.x
- 1.0/1.0.x
- 0.21/0.21.x
- CDH3
- CDH4

#### MongoDB

The latest version of MongoDB should be installed and running. In addition, the MongoDB commands should be in your `$PATH`.

#### Miscelllaneous

In addition to Hadoop, you should also have `git` and JDK 1.6 installed.

## *Building MongoDB Adapter*

The MongoDB-Hadoop adapter source is available on github. First, clone the repository and get the `release-1.0` branch:

```
$ git clone https://github.com/mongodb/mongo-hadoop.git
$ git checkout release-1.0
```

Now, edit `build.sbt` and update the build target in `hadoopRelease in ThisBuild`. In this example, we're using the CDH3 Hadoop distribution from Cloudera so I'll set it as follows:

```
hadoopRelease in ThisBuild := "cdh3"
```

To build the adapter, use the self-bootstrapping version of `sbt` that ships with the MongoDB-Hadoop adapter:

```
$ ./sbt package
```

Once the adapter is built, you will need to copy it and the latest stable version of the MongoDB Java driver to your `$HADOOP_HOME/lib` directory. For example, if you have Hadoop installed in `/usr/lib/hadoop`:

```
$ wget --no-check-certificate https://github.com/downloads/mongodb/mongo-java-driver/mongo-2.7.3.jar
$ cp mongo-2.7.3.jar /usr/lib/hadoop/lib/
$ cp core/target/mongo-hadoop-core_cdh3u3-1.0.0.jar /usr/lib/hadoop/lib/
```

## *Examples*

#### Load Sample Data

The MongoDB-Hadoop adapter ships with a few examples of how to use the adapter in your own setup. In this guide, we'll focus on the UFO

Sightings and Treasury Yield examples. To get started, first load the sample data for these examples:

```
$ ./sbt load-sample-data
```

To confirm that the sample data was loaded, start the `mongo` client and look for the `mongo_hadoop` database and be sure that it contains the `ufo_sightings.in` and `yield_historical.in` collections:

```
$ mongo
MongoDB shell version: 2.0.5
connecting to: test
> show dbs
mongo_hadoop    0.453125GB
> use mongo_hadoop
switched to db mongo_hadoop
> show collections
system.indexes
ufo_sightings.in
yield_historical.in
```

**Treasury Yield**

To build the Treasury Yield example, we'll need to first edit one of the configuration files uses by the example code and set the MongoDB location for the input (`mongo.input.uri`) and output (`mongo.output.uri`) collections (in this example, Hadoop is running on a single node alongside MongoDB). :

```
$ emacs examples/treasury_yield/src/main/resources/mongo-treasury_yield.xml
...
  <property>
    <!-- If you are reading from mongo, the URI -->
    <name>mongo.input.uri</name>
    <value>mongodb://127.0.0.1/mongo_hadoop.yield_historical.in</value>
</property>
  <property>
    <!-- If you are writing to mongo, the URI -->
    <name>mongo.output.uri</name>
    <value>mongodb://127.0.0.1/mongo_hadoop.yield_historical.out</value>
</property>
...
```

Next, edit the main class that we'll use for our MapReduce job (`TreasuryYieldXMLConfig.java`) and update the class definition as follows:

```
$ emacs
examples/treasury_yield/src/main/com/mongodb/hadoop/examples/treasury/TreasuryYieldXMLConfig.java
...
public class TreasuryYieldXMLConfig extends MongoTool {

    static{
        // Load the XML config defined in hadoop-local.xml
// Configuration.addDefaultResource( "hadoop-local.xml" );
Configuration.addDefaultResource( "mongo-defaults.xml" );
        Configuration.addDefaultResource( "mongo-treasury_yield.xml" );
    }

    public static void main( final String[] pArgs ) throws Exception{
        System.exit( ToolRunner.run( new TreasuryYieldXMLConfig(), pArgs ) );
    }
}
...
```

Now let's build the Treasury Yield example:

```
$ ./sbt treasury-example/package
```

Once the example is done building we can submit our MapReduce job:

```
$ hadoop jar examples/treasury_yield/target/treasury-example_cdh3u3-1.0.0.jar
com.mongodb.hadoop.examples.treasury.TreasuryYieldXMLConfig
```

This job should only take a few moments as it's a relatively small amount of data. Now check the output collection data in MongoDB to confirm that the MapReduce job was successful:

```
$ mongo
MongoDB shell version: 2.0.5
connecting to: test
> use mongo_hadoop
switched to db mongo_hadoop
> db.yield_historical.out.find()
{ "_id" : 1990, "value" : 8.552400000000002 }
{ "_id" : 1991, "value" : 7.8623600000000025 }
{ "_id" : 1992, "value" : 7.008844621513946 }
{ "_id" : 1993, "value" : 5.866279999999999 }
{ "_id" : 1994, "value" : 7.085180722891565 }
{ "_id" : 1995, "value" : 6.573920000000002 }
{ "_id" : 1996, "value" : 6.443531746031742 }
{ "_id" : 1997, "value" : 6.353959999999992 }
{ "_id" : 1998, "value" : 5.262879999999994 }
{ "_id" : 1999, "value" : 5.646135458167332 }
{ "_id" : 2000, "value" : 6.030278884462145 }
{ "_id" : 2001, "value" : 5.02068548387097 }
{ "_id" : 2002, "value" : 4.61308 }
{ "_id" : 2003, "value" : 4.013879999999999 }
{ "_id" : 2004, "value" : 4.271320000000004 }
{ "_id" : 2005, "value" : 4.288880000000001 }
{ "_id" : 2006, "value" : 4.7949999999999955 }
{ "_id" : 2007, "value" : 4.634661354581674 }
{ "_id" : 2008, "value" : 3.6642629482071714 }
{ "_id" : 2009, "value" : 3.2641200000000037 }
has more
>
```

**UFO Sightings**

This will follow much of the same process as with the Treasury Yield example with one extra step; we'll need to add an entry into the build file to compile this example. First, open the file for editing:

```
$ emacs project/MongoHadoopBuild.scala
```

Next, add the following lines starting at line 72 in the build file:

```
...
  lazy val ufoExample = Project( id = "ufo-sightings",
                                 base = file("examples/ufo_sightings"),
                                 settings = exampleSettings ) dependsOn ( core )
...
```

Now edit the UFO Sightings config file and update the `mongo.input.uri` and `mongo.output.uri` properties:

```
$ emacs examples/ufo_sightings/src/main/resources/mongo-ufo_sightings.xml
...
  <property>
    <!-- If you are reading from mongo, the URI -->
    <name>mongo.input.uri</name>
    <value>mongodb://127.0.0.1/mongo_hadoop.ufo_sightings.in</value>
</property>
  <property>
    <!-- If you are writing to mongo, the URI -->
    <name>mongo.output.uri</name>
    <value>mongodb://127.0.0.1/mongo_hadoop.ufo_sightings.out</value>
</property>
...
```

Next edit the main class for the MapReduce job in `UfoSightingsXMLConfig.java` to use the configuration file:

```
$ emacs
examples/ufo_sightings/src/main/java/com/mongodb/hadoop/examples/ufos/UfoSightingsXMLConfig.java
...
public class UfoSightingsXMLConfig extends MongoTool {

    static{
        // Load the XML config defined in hadoop-local.xml
// Configuration.addDefaultResource( "hadoop-local.xml" );
Configuration.addDefaultResource( "mongo-defaults.xml" );
        Configuration.addDefaultResource( "mongo-ufo_sightings.xml" );
    }

    public static void main( final String[] pArgs ) throws Exception{
        System.exit( ToolRunner.run( new UfoSightingsXMLConfig(), pArgs ) );
    }
}
...
```

Now build the UFO Sightings example:

```
$ ./sbt ufo-sightings/package
```

Once the example is built, execute the MapReduce job:

```
$ hadoop jar examples/ufo_sightings/target/ufo-sightings_cdh3u3-1.0.0.jar
com.mongodb.hadoop.examples.UfoSightingsXMLConfig
```

This MapReduce job will take just a bit longer than the Treasury Yield example. Once it's complete, check the output collection in MongoDB to see that the job was successful:

```
$ mongo
MongoDB shell version: 2.0.5
connecting to: test
> use mongo_hadoop
switched to db mongo_hadoop
> db.ufo_sightings.out.find().count()
21850
```

## Hadoop Scenarios

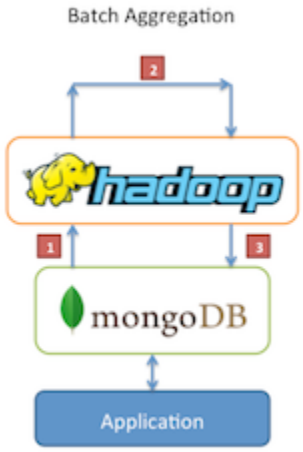
- Batch Aggregation
- Data Warehouse
- ETL Data

The following are some example deployments with MongoDB and Hadoop. The goal is to provide a high-level description of how MongoDB and Hadoop can fit together in a typical Big Data stack. In each of the following examples MongoDB is used as the "operational" real-time data store and Hadoop is uses for offline batch data processing and analysis.

### *Batch Aggregation*

In several scenarios the built-in aggregation functionality provided by MongoDB is sufficient for analyzing your data. However in certain cases, significantly more complex data aggregation may be necessary. This is where Hadoop can provide a powerful framework for complex analytics.

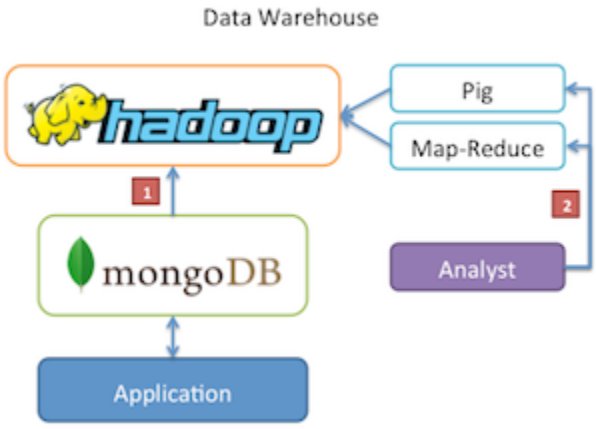
In this scenario data is pulled from MongoDB and processed within Hadoop via one or more Map-Reduce jobs. Data may also be brought in from additional sources within these Map-Reduce jobs to develop a multi-datasource solution. Output from these Map-Reduce jobs can then be written back to MongoDB for later querying and ad-hoc analysis. Applications built on top of MongoDB can now use the information from the batch analytics to present to the end user or to drive other downstream features.




### *Data Warehouse*

In a typical production scenario, your application's data may live in multiple datastores, each with their own query language and functionality. To reduce complexity in these scenarios, Hadoop can be used as a data warehouse and act as a centralized repository for data from the various sources.

In this situation, you could have periodic Map-Reduce jobs that load data from MongoDB into Hadoop. This could be in the form of "daily" or "weekly" data loads pulled from MongoDB via Map-Reduce. Once the data from MongoDB is available from within Hadoop, and data from other sources are also available, the larger dataset data can be queried against. Data analysts now have the option of using either Map-Reduce or Pig to create jobs that query the larger datasets that incorporate data from MongoDB.

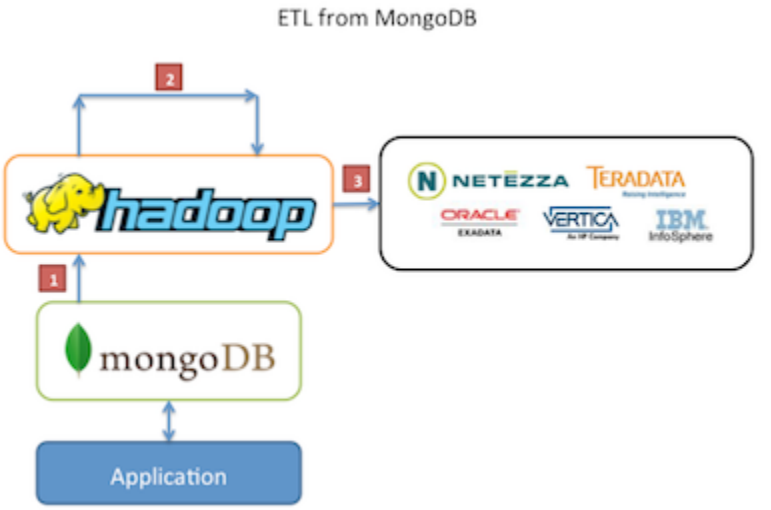


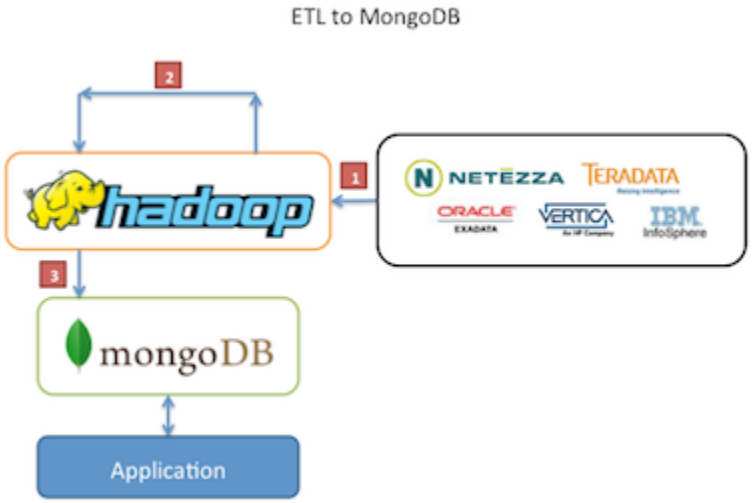

### *ETL Data*

MongoDB may be the operational datastore for your application but there may also be other datastores that are holding your organization's data. In this scenario it is useful to be able to move data from one datastore to another, either from your application's data to another database or vice

versa. Moving the data is much more complex than simply piping it from one mechanism to another, which is where Hadoop can be used.

In this scenario, Map-Reduce jobs are used to extract, transform and load data from one store to another. Hadoop can act as a complex ETL mechanism to migrate data in various forms via one or more Map-Reduce jobs that pull the data from one store, apply multiple transformations (applying new data layouts or other aggregation) and loading the data to another store. This approach can be used to move data from or to MongoDB, depending on the desired result.




## How MongoDB is Used in Media and Publishing

We see growing usage of MongoDB in both traditional and new media organizations. In these areas, the challenges for application developers include effectively managing rich content (including user-generated content) at scale, deriving insight into how content is consumed and shared in real-time, weaving personalization and social features into their applications and delivering content to a wide variety of browsers and devices.

From a data storage perspective, there is a need for databases that make it easy to rapidly develop and deploy interactive, content-rich web and mobile application, while cost-effectively meeting performance and scale requirements. Specifically, MongoDB is good fit for application across the media and publishing world for the following reasons:

- The document model is natural fit content-rich data
- Schema-free JSON-like data structures make it easy to import, store, query, and deliver structured and semi-structured content
- High-performance and horizontal scalability for both read and write intensive applications

### *MongoDB for Content management*

MongoDB's document model makes it easy to model content and associated metadata in flexible ways. While the relational model encourages dividing up related data into multiple tables, the document model (with its support for data structures such as arrays and embedded documents)

encourages grouping related pieces of data within a single document. This leads to a data representation that is both efficient and closely matches objects in your application
As an example, the following document represents how a blog post (including its tags and comments) can be modeled with MongoDB:

```
{
_id:
author: “Nosh”
title: “Why MongoDB is good for CMS”
date:11/29/2010
body: “MongoDB’s document model makes it easy to model....”
tags: [“media”, “CMS”, “web”, “use case”]
comments: [{author:bob, date:1/1/2011, comment:"I agree"},{..}, {..}]
}
```

Modeling content elements with these patterns also simplifies queries. For example, we can retrieve all blog posts by the author ‘nosh’ which have the tag mongodb with the query,

```
find({author:”nosh”, tags:”mongodb”)
```

Flexible document-based representation, efficient and simple queries and scalability makes MongoDB a well suited as a datastore for content management systems. The Business Insider has built their content management system from the ground up using MongoDB and PHP, which serves over 2 million visits/month. For sites based on Drupal, Drupal 7 now makes it easier to use MongoDB as a datastore. Examiner.com, ported their legacy CMS (based on ColdFusion and Microsoft SQLServer) to Drupal 7 and a hybrid of MySQL and MongoDB. You can read a case study about the how the examiner.com (a top 100 website, and one of most trafficked Drupal deployments) made the transition.

MongoDB can also be used to augment existing content management systems with new functionality. One area that we see MongoDB used increasingly is as a metadata store for rich media. MongoDB’s document model makes it simple to represent the attributes for an asset (e.g. author, dates, categories, versions, etc) and a pointer to the asset (e.g. on a filesystem or on S3) as document and then efficiently search or query the metadata for display. Additionally, because MongoDB is schema-free, new metadata attributes can be added without having to touch existing records. IGN uses MongoDB as a the metadata store for all videos on IGN Videos and serves up millions of video views per month. Another similar use case for MongoDB is in storing user-submitted content. The New York Times, uses MongoDB as the backend for ‘Stuffy’, their tool for allowing users and editors to collaborate on features driven by user-submitted photos. A brief overview on the tool is here.

#### *How-to Guides*

Modeling content, comments, and tags with MongoDB (coming soon)
Modelling image and video metadata with MongoDB (coming soon)
Using MongoDB with Drupal 7 (coming soon)

Roadmap tip: Watch the full-text search ticket

### *MongoDB for Real-time analytics*

The ability to track and change content based on up-to-minute statistics is becoming increasingly important. MongoDB’s fast write performance and features such as upsert and the $inc operator, make it well suited for capturing real time analytics on how content is being consumed. This blog post outlines some basic patterns you can use to capture real-time pageview statistics for your content.

A number of companies are using MongoDB, either internally to track their own content in real-time, or are building platforms based on MongoDB to help other companies get real time statistics on their content: Chartbeat provides analytics for publishers, with live dashboards and APIs showing how users are engaging with their content in real-time. BuzzFeed uses MongoDB to help understand how and when content will go viral, while ShareThis uses MongoDB to power its API that gives publishers insight into how content is shared across the web and social media

#### *How-to guides*

Real-time analytics with MongoDB (coming soon)

### *MongoDB for Social Graphs & Personalization*

While systems such as graph databases excel at complex graph traversal problems, MongoDB’s document structure is well suited for building certain types of social and personalization features. Most often, this involves building user profile documents that include a list of friends, either imported from external social networks or in site. For example,

```
{
_id:
user: nosh
email: nosh@10gen.com
friendIDs: [....., …..., …...]
}
```

In this case the friendIDs field is an array with a list of IDs corresponding to profiles of users that are my friends. This data can then be used to generate personalized feeds based on content that my friends have viewed or liked. IGN's social network, MY IGN, uses MongoDB to store profiles of users and generate personalized fields. Users have the ability to import their friends from facebook, 'follow' IGN authors, or follow specific game titles they are interested in. When they log in, they are presented with a personalized feed composed from this data.

***How-to guides:***

Storing user profiles with MongoDB (coming soon)
Importing social graphs into MongoDB (coming soon)
Generating personalized feeds with MongoDB (coming soon)

### *MongoDB for Mobile/Tablet Apps*

Serving similar content across desktop browsers, mobile browsers, as well as mobile apps is driving developers to build standardized API layers that can be accessed by traditional web application servers, mobile client applications, as well as 3rd party applications. Typically these are RESTful APIs that serve JSON data. With MongoDB's JSON-like data format, building these APIs on top of MongoDB is simplified as minimal code is necessary to translate MongoDB documents and query to JSON representation. Additionally, features such as in-built two-dimensional geospatial indexing allow developers to easily incorporate location-based functionality into their applications.

### *MongoDB for Data-driven journalism*

One of the strengths of MongoDB is dealing with semi-structured data. Data sources such as those produced by governments and other organizations are often denormalized and distributed in formats like CSV files. MongoDB, with its schema-free JSON-like documents is an ideal store for processing and storing these sparse datasets.

The Chicago Tribune uses MongoDB in its Illinois School Report Cards application, which is generated from a nearly 9,000 column denormalized database dump produced annually by the State Board of Education. The application allows readers to search by school name, city, county, or district and to view demographic, economic, and performance data for both schools and districts.

***How-to guides:***

Importing and Exporting data from MongoDB (coming soon)
Reporting and Visualization with MongoDB (coming soon)

### *Presentations*

- How MTV Networks leverages MongoDB for CMS - MongoNYC Presentation (June 2011)
- Schema Design for Content Management: eHow on MongoDB - MongoSF Presentation (May 2011)
- More Presentations

## Use Case - Session Objects

MongoDB is a good tool for storing HTTP session objects.

One implementation model is to have a sessions collection, and store the session object's _id value in a browser cookie.

With its update-in-place design and general optimization to make updates fast, the database is efficient at receiving an update to the session object on every single app server page view.

### *Aging Out Old Sessions*

The best way to age out old sessions is to use the auto-LRU facility of capped collections. The one complication is that objects in capped collections may not grow beyond their initial allocation size. To handle this, we can "pre-pad" the objects to some maximum size on initial addition, and then on further updates we are fine if we do not go above the limit. The following mongo shell javascript example demonstrates padding.

(Note: a clean padding mechanism should be added to the db so the steps below are not necessary.)

```
> db.createCollection('sessions', { capped: true, size : 1000000 } )
{"ok" : 1}
> p = "";
> for( x = 0; x < 100; x++ ) p += 'x';
> s1 = { info: 'example', _padding : p };
{"info" : "example" , "_padding" :
"xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx"
}
> db.sessions.save(s1)
> s1
{"info" : "example" , "_padding" :
"xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx"
, "_id" :  ObjectId( "4aafb74a5761d147677233b0") }

> // when updating later
> s1 = db.sessions.find( { _id : ObjectId( "4aafb74a5761d147677233b0") } )
{"_id" :  ObjectId( "4aafb74a5761d147677233b0")  , "info" : "example" , "_padding" :
"xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx"
}
> delete s._padding;
true
>  s.x = 3; // add a new field
3
> db.sessions.save(s);
> s
{"_id" :  ObjectId( "4aafb5a25761d147677233af")  , "info" : "example" , "x" : 3}
```

# MongoDB-Based Applications

*Please list applications that leverage MongoDB here. If you're using MongoDB for your application, we'd love to list you here!  Email meghan@10gen.com.*

## See Also

- Production Deployments - Companies and Sites using MongoDB
- Hosting Center

## Applications Using MongoDB

### *c5t*

Content-management using TurboGears and Mongo

### *Calipso*

Content management system built using NodeJS and MongoDB

### *Cube*

Cube is an open-source system for visualizing time series data, built on MongoDB, Node and D3.

### *ErrorApp*

ErrorApp tracks errors from your apps. It reports them to you and gathers all information and make reports available to you.

### *Graylog2*

Graylog2 is an open source syslog server implementation that stores logs in MongoDB and provides a Rails frontend.

### *HarmonyApp*

Harmony is a powerful web-based platform for creating and managing websites. It helps connect developers with content editors, for unprecedented flexibility and simplicity. For more information, view Steve Smith's presentation on Harmony at MongoSF (April 2010).

### *Hummingbird*

Hummingbird is a real-time web traffic visualization tool developed by Gilt Groupe

### *Mogade*

Mogade offers a free and simple to use leaderboard and achievement services for mobile game developers.

### *MongoLantern*

MongoLantern is an open source full text search server using MongoDB as index storage, which allows MongoLantern to migrate any changes very easily into account using MongoDB API. It's written originally written in PHP can be migrated to any desired language as required using it's future APIs.

### *MongoPress*

A flexible CMS that uses MongoDB and PHP.

### *Mongs*

A simple, web-based data browser for MongoDB.

### *Mongeez*

Mongeez is an opensource solution allowing you to manage your mongo document changes in a manner that is easy to synchronize with your code changes. Check out mongeez.org.

### *NewsBlur*

NewsBlur is an open source visual feed reader that powers http://newsblur.com. NewsBlur is built with Django, MongoDB, Postgres and RabbitMQ

### *phpMyEngine*

A free, open source CMS licensed under the GPL v.3. For storage, the default database is MongoDB.

### *Quantum GIS*

Plugin for Quantum GIS that lets you plot geographical data stored in MongoDB

### *Scribe*

Open source image transcription tool

### *Shapado*

Free and open source Q&A software, open source stackoverflow style app written in ruby, rails, mongomapper and mongodb.

### *Thundergrid*

Thundergrid is a simple framework written in PHP that allows you to store large files in your Mongo database in seconds.

### *Websko*

Websko is a content management system designed for individual Web developers and cooperative teams.

## Events


- Upcoming Meetups and Conferences
- Webinars
- MongoDB User Groups
    - Training
        - "Office Hours"
- See Also

**There are MongoDB User Groups (MUGs) all over the world. Please check out the full listing.**

## Upcoming Meetups and Conferences

| Date | Event | What/Where |
|---|---|---|
| July 16-20, 2012 | **OSCON**<br>Steve Francia, 10gen<br>Hybrid Application with MongoDB and RDBMS<br>Meghan Gill, 10gen<br>Scaling Your Community By Nurturing Leaders<br>Visit the MongoDB Booth | Portland, Oregon |
| July 25, 2012 | **An Evening with MongoDB - San Diego**<br>A free evening meetup dedicated to the open source, non-relational database MongoDB. Come join us for talks on MongoDB, food and drinks! | San Diego, CA |
| August 2, 2012 | **An Evening with MongoDB- Toronto**<br>A free evening meetup dedicated to the open source, non-relational database MongoDB. Come join us for talks on MongoDB, food and drinks! | Toronto, ON |
| August 15, 2012 | **An Evening with MongoDB - Charlotte**<br>A free evening meetup dedicated to the open source, non-relational database MongoDB. Come join us for talks on MongoDB, food and drinks! | Charlotte, NC |
| August 20-24, 2012 | **DrupalCon Munich**<br>Stop by the MongoDB Booth | München, DE |
| August 21, 2012 | **Everything You Wanted to Know about Not Only SQL, MongoDB and Morphia**<br>Boston Java User Group<br>Jeff Yemin, 10gen | Boston, MA |
| September 6, 2012 | **An Evening with MongoDB - Orlando**<br>A free evening meetup dedicated to the open source, non-relational database MongoDB. Come join us for talks on MongoDB, food and drinks! | Orlando, FL |
| September 14, 2012 | **MongoDB Seattle 2012** is an annual one-day conference in Seattle, WA dedicated to the open source, non-relational database MongoDB. | Seattle, WA |
| September 18, 2012 | **MongoDB for the Relational DBA**<br>Justin Dearing<br>NJ SQL Server User Group | New Jersey, USA |
| September 21, 2012 | **MongoDB and PHP**<br>Derick Rethans<br>10gen<br>Atlanta PHP User Group | Atlanta, GA |
| Sept 24, 2012 | **MongoDB Labs at DataWeek** | San Francisco, CA |
| October 14-17, 2012 | **WebTech Conference**<br>Store a Country in Your Database<br>Derick Rethans<br>10gen | Rheingoldhalle Mainz, DE |
| November 5-9, 2012 | **Building Hybrid Applications with MongoDB and RDBMS**<br>Chris Harris<br>10gen | Malmö, Sweden |
| November 12-17, 2012 | **PyCon Argentina**<br>Event of Python Community in Argentina. They are expected 500 attendances. We will send to talk, one of MongoDB evangelist in Latin America, Thiago Avelino<br>10gen | Buenos Aires, Argentina |

## Webinars

| Webinar Date | Sessions | Topic | Description |
|---|---|---|---|

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| July 19, 2012 | 2:00PM EST/ 11:00AM PST | **What's new in the .NET Driver** | Customers utilizing the .NET driver are in for a treat. With the recent releases of version 1.4, lots of improvements and features have been introduced to increase productivity and ensure continued success building great solutions with MongoDB. Join us online from work or home to hear 10gen's lead .NET engineer discuss and give examples of how these changes will improve future development with MongoDB. |
| July 24, 2012 | 10:00 AM EDT/ 2:00 PM GMT | **Asynchronous MongoDB with Python & Tornado** | A. Jesse Jiryu Davis will review the state of the art for asynchronous Python and MongoDB, discuss his experimental driver for MongoDB and Tornado, and demonstrate building a real-time web app. |
| July 25, 2012 | 2:00PM EDT/ 11:00 AM PST | **How IKANOW Uses MongoDB to Solve Big Data Problems** | Traditional big data solutions can be costly, inflexible, and may not result in the insights organizations need to adapt to a complex and dynamic business environment. In contrast, Infinit.e offers a cost-effective, scalable, open source solution that allows organizations to easily ingest (both structured and unstructured data), query, analyze, and gain intelligence from big data. |
| August 2, 2012 | 11:00AM EST/ 8:00AM PST and 1:00PM EST/ 10:00AM PST | **MongoDB and High Volume Data Feeds** | Ingesting large streams of data such as server logs, telemetry data, stock market data, or social media status updates requiers a storage layer that's capable of keeping up with a high volume of writes. In this session, we will cover how MongoDB's scale out architecture and fast write performance make it a perfect fit for storing and processing such large volume data feeds. |
| August 7, 2012 | 2:00PM EST/ 8:00AM PST | **Dataversity and 10gen presents How to Get Started with your MongoDB Pilot Project** | Are you looking for a good way to introduce MongoDB into your organization? In this webinar, we'll share some tips on how to make this process go smoothly. In this webinar we'll cover topics like: finding good projects that could leverage mongo, getting your development team ramped up, convincing your boss that MongoDB's a good bet, and how to get ready for production deployments. |
| August 7, 2012 | 1:00PM EST/ 10:00AM PST | **Mobile Media Site using Drupal and MongoDB with 10gen and CIGNEX Datamatics** | Join In for a webinar showcasing an integration of Drupal and MongoDB to create a Mobile Media Site presented by 10gen and CIGNEX Datamatics. The webinar will feature an Online & Mobile Media site developed in Drupal to store millions of digital photos with metadata in MongoDB. The site provides seamless features to create and manage albums, extract and store metadata and advanced search across a large repository for instantaneous retrieval of images. The solution will demonstrate how MongoDB can be leveraged to store and search millions of images and associated metadata in a centralized and massively scalable repository. |
| August 9, 2012 | 11:00AM EST/ 8:00AM PST and 2:00PM EST/ 11:00AM PST | **Webinar Intro Track - Intro to Schema Design** | MongoDB has been designed for versatility, but the techniques you might use to build, say, an analytics engine or a hierarchical data store might not be obvious. In this talk, we'll learn about MongoDB in practice by looking at hypothetical application designs (based on real-world designs, of course). Topics to be covered include schema design, indexing, transactions (gasp!), trees, what's fast, and what's not. Sprinkled with tips, tricks, shoots, ladders, and trap doors, you're guaranteed to learn something new in this interdisciplinary talk. |
| August 16, 2012 | 11:00AM EST/ 8:00AM PST and 2:00PM EST/ 11:00AM PST | **Introduction to MongoDB's Java Driver** | A look into the internals of the Java driver for MongoDB. Learn how the driver supports replication, database connection pooling, and building queries. Also includes an introduction to the BSON (binary JSON) format for serialization of JSON objects, how the drivers handles write behavior with the use of write concerns and how the driver communicates to the database via the Mongo wire protocol. New features, fixes and improvements in the latest release will also be covered. |
| August 28, 2012 | 1:00PM EST/ 10:00AM PST | **Mobilize MongoDB! Developing iPhone and Android Apps using Titanium and Red Hat's OpenShift** | A look into the internals of the Java driver for MongoDB. Learn how the driver supports replication, database connection pooling, and building queries. Also includes an introduction to the BSON (binary JSON) format for serialization of JSON objects, how the drivers handles write behavior with the use of write concerns and how the driver communicates to the database via the Mongo wire protocol. New features, fixes and improvements in the latest release will also be covered. |

## MongoDB User Groups

***Your Go-To Guide to Running A MongoDB User Group***

| *North America* | *MEETUPS* |
|---|---|
| **Atlanta** | July 25<br>July Atlanta MongoDB User Group |
| **Boston** | |
| **Chicago** | |
| **DC** | |
| **Hawaii** | |
| **Huntsville** | |
| **Houston** | |
| **Los Angeles** | |
| **Madison, WI** | *None currently scheduled. Join us to be notified!* |
| **Mexico** | |
| **New York** | |
| **New Jersey** | |
| **Philadelphia** | |
| **Phoenix, AZ** | |
| **Raleigh** | |
| **San Francisco Bay Area** | |
| **Seattle** | Date TBD<br>Mapping Flatland: Using MongoDB for an MMO Crossword Game |
| **St. Louis** | |
| **Toronto** | |
| *South America* | *MEETUPS* |
| **Sao Palo** | |
| **Belo Horizonte** | |
| *EUROPE* | *MEETUPS* |
| **Barcelona** | |
| **Bristol** | |
| **Finland** | |
| **London** | |
| **Dublin** | |
| **Minsk** | Join to get updates |
| **München** | |
| **Paris** | |
| **Thames Valley, UK** | |
| **Saint Petersburg** | Join us to get updates |
| **Sophia-Antipolis, FR** | |
| **Stockholm** | |
| **Switzerland** | |

| ***Middle East*** | ***MEETUPS*** |
|---|---|
| **Israel** | |
| ***Asia and Pacific*** | ***MEETUPS*** |
| *Hanoi, Vietnam | _No meetups currently scheduled. Like the facebook page to receive updates!_\ |
| **Melbourne** | |
| **Kuala Lumpur** | *None currently scheduled. Please check back* |

Learn about setting-up MongoDB on Linode from Gareth and searching MongoDB with richer context from Tristan |

If you're interested in having someone present MongoDB at your conference or meetup, or if you would like to list your MongoDB event on this page, contact meghan at 10gen dot com. Want some MongoDB stickers to give out at your talk? Complete the Swag Request Form.

### Training

MongoDB training from 10gen is the best way to get you and your team up to speed quickly. Our MongoDB Developer Training and MongoDB Administrator Training are comprehensive, two day courses.

Contact us at training@10gen.com if you would like to buy training credits for multiple students or classes, schedule an on-site training, or discuss a custom training option.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| MongoDB Essentials | Palo Alto, CA | July 17-19, 2012 | Register |
| MongoDB Essentials | Sydney, Australia | July 25-27, 2012 | Register |
| MongoDB Essentials | New York, NY | July 31- August 2, 2012 | Register |
| MongoDB for Developers | Palo Alto, CA | August 7-8, 2012 | Register |
| MongoDB for Administrators | New York, NY | August 21-22, 2012 | Register |
| MongoDB for Developers | São Paulo, BR | August 27-28, 2012 | Register |
| MongoDB for Developers | Buenos Aires, AR | September 4-5, 2012 | Register |
| MongoDB Essentials | Palo Alto, CA | September 11-13, 2012 | Register |
| MongoDB Essentials | New York, NY | September 25-27, 2012 | Register |
| MongoDB for Administrators | London, UK | September 27-28, 2012 | Register |
| Xebia Presents MongoDB for Developers | Amsterdam, NL | October 2-3, 2012 | Register |
| Xebia Presents MongoDB for Developers | Paris, FR | October 04-05, 2012 | Register |
| MongoDB for Administrators | Palo Alto, CA | October 9-10, 2012 | Register |
| MongoDB for Developers | New York, NY | October 23-24, 2012 | Register |
| MongoDB Essentials | New York, NY | November 6-8, 2012 | Register |
| MongoDB Essentials | New York, NY | November 27-29, 2012 | Register |
| MongoDB for Developers | London, UK | November 28-29, 2012 | Register |
| Xebia Presents MongoDB for Administrators | Paris, FR | December 06-07, 2012 | Register |
| MongoDB for Developers | Palo Alto, CA | December 11-12, 2012 | Register |
| MongoDB for Administrators | New York, NY | December 18-19, 2012 | Register |
| Xebia Presents MongoDB for Developers | Amsterdam, NL | December 18-19, 2012 | Register |

### *"Office Hours"*

| City | Date | Time | Location | Look For |
|---|---|---|---|---|

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Atlanta, GA | | 4-6pm | Please check the Atlanta MongoDB User Group page for upcoming office hours | Look for a MongoDB logo! |
| New York, NY | Wednesdays | 4-6:30pm | 10gen Headquarters, 578 Broadway, 7th Floor | 10gen holds weekly open "office hours" with whiteboarding and hack sessions at 10gen headquarters. |
| Palo Alto, CA | Thursdays | 4-6pm | 10gen CA office, 555 University Avenue, Palo Alto, CA 94301 | Have questions about MongoDB? Visit the 10gen office in Palo Alto to speak directly with the MongoDB engineers (or just come say hi!). |
| San Francisco, CA | Every other Monday | 5-7pm | Epicenter Cafe, 764 Harrison St, Between 4th St & Lapu St, San Francisco, CA | Stop by the Epicenter Cafe in San Francisco to meet 10gen Software Engineers Sridhar Nanjundeswaran. Ask questions, hack, have some coffee. Look for a laptop with a "Powered by MongoDB" sticker. **Click here for more info and signup.** |
| London, UK | Every other Wednesday | 5-7pm | Look Mum No Hands!, 49 Old Street London EC1V 9HX | Stop by Look Mum No Hands! near Old Street & Barbican to meet 10gen Engineers Ross Lawley, Chris Harris and Dan Roberts. Ask questions, hack, have some coffee. Look for a laptop with a MongoDB leaf sticker. **Click here for more info and signup.** |
| München, DE | Scheduled through Meetup.com | comSysto GmbH Lindwurmstr. 97, 80337 Munich | Look for the MongoDB Logo! | |

### See Also

- http://www.10gen.com/presentations
- http://www.10gen.com/events
- http://lanyrd.com/topics/mongodb/

## MongoDB User Groups (MUGs)

MongoDB User Groups (MUGs) are a great way for the community to learn from one another about MongoDB best practices, to network, and to have fun. Interested in starting a user group in your city? Submit a proposal and check out our guide to starting a MongoDB User Group to get started!

#### MongoDB User Groups

#### *North America*

- Atlanta, GA
- Boston, MA
- Chicago, IL
- Los Angeles, CA
- Hawaii
- New Jersey
- New York, NY
- Philadelphia, PA
- Phoenix, AZ
    - @PHXMUG on Twitter
- Raleigh, NC
- Richmond, VA
- San Diego
- San Francisco, CA
- Seattle, WA
- Silicon Valley, CA
- St. Louis, MO
- Toronto, Ontario
- Washington, DC

#### *South America*

- Belo Horizonte, Brazil
- Sao Paulo, Brazil
- Lima, Peru

### *Europe*

- Barcelona, ESP
- Berlin, DE
    - @MUGBerlin on Twitter
- Bristol, UK
- Sofia, Bulgaria
- Dublin
- Düsseldorf
    - @MongoDUS on Twitter
- Frankfurt
- Helsinki, Finland
- Paris, France
- London, UK
    - @MongoDBLondon on Twitter
- Mallorca, ESP
- Milan, Italy
- Minsk, Belarus
- München, Germany
- Omsk, Russia
    - Google+
    - Vkontakte
- Roma, Italia
    - **@MongoDBRoma** on Twitter
- Sophia-Antipolis, France
- St. Petersburg
- Stockholm, Sweden
- Thames Valley, UK
- Zurich, Switzerland

***German MongoDB User Group on Xing

### *Middle East*

- Israel

### *Africa*

- Cape Town

### *Asia*

- Bangalore
- China
- Delhi
- Hanoi
- Tokyo, Japan
- Thailand
- Turkey
- Kuala Lumpur, Malaysia
- Pune
- Singapore
- South Korea

### *Australia*

- Melbourne
- Sydney
- Canberra

## Video & Slides from Recent Events and Presentations

Table of Contents:

[ MongoDB Conferences ] [ Ruby/Rails ] [ Python ] [ Alt.NET ] [ User Experiences ] [ More about MongoDB ]

### MongoDB Conferences

One-day conferences hosted by 10gen. 10gen develops and supports MongoDB.

MongoUK Video (June 2010)
MongoFR Video (June 2010)
MongoNYC (May 2010) and MongoSF (April 2010) Video
MongoSF (April 2010) Slides & Video

### Ruby/Rails

Practical Ruby Projects with MongoDB
Alex Sharp, OptimisCorp
Ruby Midwest - June 2010

Scalable Event Analytics with MongoDB and Ruby
Jared Rosoff, Yottaa
RubyConfChina - June 26, 2010

The MongoDB Metamorphosis (Kyle Banker, 10gen)
Million Dollar Mongo (Obie Fernandez & Durran Jordan, Hashrocket)
Analyze This! (Blythe Dunham)
RailsConf
Baltimore, MD
June 7-10

MongoDB
Seth Edwards
London Ruby Users Group
London, UK
Wednesday April 14
Video & Slides

MongoDB: The Way and its Power
Kyle Banker, Software Engineer, 10gen
RubyNation
Friday April 9 & Saturday April 10
Reston, VA
Slides | Video

MongoDB Rules
Kyle Banker, Software Engineer, 10gen
Mountain West Ruby Conference
Salt Lake City, UT
Thursday March 11 & Friday March 12
Slides

MongoDB Isn't Water
Kyle Banker, Software Engineer, 10gen
Chicago Ruby
February 2, 2010
Video | Slides | Photos

Introduction to Mongo DB
Joon Yu, RubyHead
teachmetocode.com
Nov-Dec, 2009
Screencasts

### Python

How Python, TurboGears, and MongoDB are Transforming SourceForge.net
Rick Copeland, SourceForge.net
PyCon - Atlanta, GA
February 21, 2010
Slides

### Alt.NET

.NET and MongoDB - Building Applications with NoRM and MongoDB
Alex Hung
July 28, 2010

### User Experiences

The Future of Content Technologies

Scaling Web Applications with NonSQL Databases: Business Insider Case Study
Ian White, Lead Developer, Business Insider
Gilbane Conference
San Francisco, CA
Thursday, May 20
Slides

Chartbeat and MongoDb - a perfect marriage
Kushal Dave, CTO, Chartbeat & Mike Dirolf, Software Engineer, 10gen
New York City Cloud Computing Meetup
New York, NY
May 18
Slides

Why MongoDB is Awesome
John Nunemaker, CTO, Ordered List
DevNation Chicago
May 15
Slides

Humongous Data at Server Density: Approaching 1 Billion Documents in MongoDB
David Mytton, Founder, Boxed Ice
Webinar
Wednesday May 5
Recording & Slides

Humongous Drupal
DrupalCon San Francisco
Karoly Negyesi, Examiner.com
Saturday April 17
Slides | Video

MongoDB: huMONGOus Data at SourceForge
Mark Ramm, Web Developer, SourceForge
QCon London
Thursday March 11
Slides

Migrating to MongoDB
Bruno Morency, DokDok
Confoo.ca
March 10 - 12
Slides

**More about MongoDB**

Recording of Michael Dirolf on MongoDB @ E-VAN 07 June 2010

NoSQL-Channeling the Data Explosion
Dwight Merriman, CEO, 10gen
Inside MongoDB: the Internals of an Open-Source
Mike Dirolf, Software Engineer, 10gen
Gluecon
Denver, CO
Wednesday May 26 & Thursday May 27

Schema Design with MongoDB
Kyle Banker, Software Engineer, 10gen
Webinar
Tuesday April 27
Recording and Slides

Dropping ACID with MongoDB
Kristina Chodorow, Software Engineer, 10gen
San Francisco MySQL Meetup
San Francisco, CA
Monday, April 12
Video

Introduction to MongoDB
Mike Dirolf, Software Engineer, 10gen
Emerging Technologies for the Enterprise Conference
Philadelphia, PA
Friday, April 9
Slides

Indexing with MongoDB
Aaron Staple, Software Engineer, 10gen
Webinar
Tuesday April 6, 2010
Video | Slides

TechZing Interview with Mike Dirolf, Software Engineer, 10gen
Monday, April 5
Podcast

Hot Potato and MongoDB
New York Tech Talks Meetup
Justin Shaffer and Lincoln Hochberg
New York, NY
Tuesday March 30
Video

MongoDB Day
Geek Austin Data Series
Austin, TX
Saturday March 27
Photo

Mongo Scale!
Kristina Chodorow, Software Engineer, 10gen
Webcast
Friday March 26
Webcast

NoSQL Live Boston
Boston, MA
Thursday March 11
Recap with slides and MP3

MongoDB: How it Works
Mike Dirolf, Software Engineer, 10gen
Monday March 8, 12:30 PM Eastern Time
Slides

Intro to MongoDB
Alex Sharp, Founder / Lead Software Architect, FrothLogic
LA WebDev Meetup
February 23, 2010
Slides

Introduction to MongoDB
Kristina Chodorow, Software Engineer, 10gen
FOSDEM - Brussels, Belgium
February 7, 2010
Video | Slides | Photos

*If you're interested in having someone present MongoDB at your conference or meetup, or if you would like to list your MongoDB event on this page, contact meghan at 10gen dot com.*

## Your Go-to Resource for Running a MongoDB User Group


- **Tips for Running a Successful User Group**
- **Interested in Starting a User Group?**
- **Logistics**
- **Once you Meet Up...**
- **Stay Engaged**
- ***More Tips and Tricks***


### *Tips for Running a Successful User Group*

### *Interested in Starting a User Group?*

Organizing a user group is a fantastic way to meet and learn from other MongoDB fans in your local community. Interested in starting up a user group in your city? Submit a proposal!

### *Logistics*

***Use Meetup.com***: This one may be obvious but important to emphasize. Not only does meetup have a lot of great tools for event organizers, but they do a really good job of making it easy for meetup members to find relevant groups. Make sure to tag your group and include a description with keywords so that your group appears in meetup searches!

***Consistency is important***: It's important to establish a routine early on. If you consistently meet on, the second Tuesday of every month, your members will come to expect the meetup. The first few meetings of any user group will be small, but at every meetup, new members will join your group. So meeting at least on a monthly basis is very important. We have all the NY MUG meetups listed far in advance, even if we don't have a speaker lined up. This also makes your life easier when you are approaching speakers and hosts. It's much easier to ask a speaker "Can you present at the May 19 NY MUG?" than going back and forth coordinating dates. And hosts will appreciate having the events reserved far in advance.

***Cross promote***: Consider partnering with other technology meetups. This is a great way for communities to learn from one another and gain exposure to new technologies. It could be as simple as ocassionally posting on other meetup lists. For example, when we had a presentation on Scalable Event Analytics with Ruby on Rails and MongoDB, I cross-posted the meetup on the NYC Ruby mailing list and we soon had a dozen new members in the group. I also typically list our events in Startup Digest, LinkedListNYC, Gary's Guide, Charlie O'Donnell's newsletter, Mashable, and more.

### *Once you Meet Up...*

***Get great speakers***: Make a wish list of speakers, and then just start asking people! After organizing dozens of MongoDB events, I've been amazed at how willing people are to present. Most of the time, it's just a matter of asking. And if the person says no, ask them to refer someone else.

***Get Clever About Getting Great Speakers***: Are the speakers on your wish list 3,000 miles away from you? That's okay. We live in a wired world. Use Skype or WebX to bring your speakers to you. You can do screen shares to see demos, and provide your meetup members with a great learning experience.

***Host Lightning Talks***: Sometimes your user group members will not have the chance to pull together a full 30 minute presentation on a product or feature, but some of them may be interested in giving a 5-10 minute lightning talk on something they've designed, an issue they're having with MongoDB, or their dream project. Offer the opportunity when you send out the Meetup invite. If you don't get any submissions, don't worry. Deliver the first lightning talk at the event. Someone might step up to the plate.

***Start a Study Group***: Does your meetup have a lot of inexperienced MongoDB Users? Start a study group and learn together. Learning in a group is a great experience, and study groups are very common in different developer communities--particularly Ruby on Rails and Node.js

***Host a Helpathon***: The NYC On Rails Meetup is famous for innovating on the Hackathon to produce the Helpathon , a four hour session for helping one another get through programming hurdles.

***Start a Book Club***: If your group is at a loss for topics to discuss you could start a reading group. This is similar to a study group and can be a great way to create a more tightly knit User Group for the future.

***Raffle off prizes***: Prizes are an excellent way to get people to come to your meetup. An easy and free way to get great prizes is to join the O'Reilly User Group program. They will send you free books to give out at your group, as well as discounts on upcoming conferences.

***Host a Coding Contest***: Google is planning a coding competition for tickets to Google I/O, their largest developer contest. Why not do the same before your first user group? Present a small problem to your members and ask them to bring their files the day of to show off their solution. You can then have judges or the audience choose the winning solution(s).

### *Stay Engaged*

***Social media***: Consider creating a twitter handle or hashtag for the group. Ask the presenter to tweet or blog about the event, and ask the key members of the group to do the same. Post the hashtag or twitter handle at the event so that members know to use it.

***Continue the discussion after the meetup***: You can easily record videos and take photos at sessions to share information after the meetup. Encourage the presenter to send a message the group with the slides to start a conversation among the entire meetup.

### *More Tips and Tricks*

Agenda Tips for User Groups by Nathen Harvey , organizer of the MongoDC User Group, 2011 Community Champion

Tips and Tricks for Running a Successful Tech Meetup by Meghan Gill , Community and Events Manager for MongoDB at 10gen

How to Run a Successful Tech Meetup by Chris Westin , Software Engineer at 10gen

## Articles

See also the User Feedback page for community presentations, blog posts, and more.

### Best of the MongoDB Blog

- What is the Right Data Model? - (for non-relational databases)
- Why Schemaless is Good
- The Importance of Predictability of Performance
- Capped Collections - one of MongoDB's coolest features
- Using MongoDB for Real-time Analytics
- Using MongoDB for Logging
- http://blog.mongodb.org/tagged/best+of

### Articles / Key Doc Pages

- On Atomic Operations
- Reaching into Objects - how to do sophisticated query operations on nested JSON-style objects
- Schema Design
- Full Text Search in Mongo
- MongoDB Production Deployments

### Presentations

- Presentations from MongoDB Conferences
- MongoDB for Rubyists (February 2010 Chicago Ruby Meetup)
- Introduction to MongoDB (FOSDEM February 2010)
- NY MySql Meetup - NoSQL, Scaling, MongoDB
- Teach Me To Code - Introduction to MongoDB
- DCVIE

## Benchmarks

MongoDB does not publish any official benchmarks.

We recommend running application performance tests on **your** application's work-load to find bottleneck and for performance tuning.

### See Also

- JS Benchmarking Harness

## FAQ

## Misc

### Demo App in Python

From an Interop 2009 presentation

Code: http://github.com/mdirolf/simple-messaging-service/tree/master

### MongoDB, CouchDB, MySQL Compare Grid

pending...

| | CouchDB | MongoDB | MySQL |
|---|---|---|---|
| Data Model | Document-Oriented (JSON) | Document-Oriented (BSON) | Relational |
| Data Types | string,number,boolean,array,object | string, int, double, boolean, date, bytearray, object, array, others | link |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Large Objects (Files) | Yes (attachments) | Yes (GridFS) | Blobs |
| Horizontal partitioning scheme | CouchDB Lounge | Auto-sharding | Partitioning |
| Replication | Master-master (with developer supplied conflict resolution) | Master-slave and replica sets | Master-slave, multi-master, and circular replication |
| Object(row) Storage | One large repository | Collection-based | Table-based |
| Query Method | Map/reduce of javascript functions to lazily build an index per query | Dynamic; object-based query language | Dynamic; SQL |
| Secondary Indexes | Yes | Yes | Yes |
| Atomicity | Single document | Single document | Yes - advanced |
| Interface | REST | Native drivers ; REST add-on | Native drivers |
| Server-side batch data manipulation | ? | Map/Reduce, server-side javascript | Yes (SQL) |
| Written in | Erlang | C++ | C++ |
| Concurrency Control | MVCC | Update in Place | |
| Geospatial Indexes | GeoCouch | Yes | Spatial extensions |
| Distributed Consistency Model | Eventually consistent (master-master replication with versioning and version reconciliation) | Strong consistency. Eventually consistent reads from secondaries are available. | Strong consistency. Eventually consistent reads from secondaries are available. |

### *See Also*

- Comparing Mongo DB and Couch DB

## Comparing Mongo DB and Couch DB

We are getting a lot of questions "how are mongo db and couch different?" It's a good question: both are document-oriented databases with schemaless JSON-style object data storage. Both products have their place -- we are big believers that databases are specializing and "one size fits all" no longer applies.

We are not CouchDB gurus so please let us know in the forums if we have something wrong.

### *MVCC*

One big difference is that CouchDB is MVCC based, and MongoDB is more of a traditional update-in-place store. MVCC is very good for certain classes of problems: problems which need intense versioning; problems with offline databases that resync later; problems where you want a large amount of master-master replication happening. Along with MVCC comes some work too: first, the database must be compacted periodically, if there are many updates. Second, when conflicts occur on transactions, they must be handled by the programmer manually (unless the db also does conventional locking -- although then master-master replication is likely lost).

MongoDB updates an object in-place when possible. Problems requiring high update rates of objects are a great fit; compaction is not necessary. Mongo's replication works great but, without the MVCC model, it is more oriented towards master/slave and auto failover configurations than to complex master-master setups. With MongoDB you should see high write performance, especially for updates.

### *Horizontal Scalability*

One fundamental difference is that a number of Couch users use replication as a way to scale. With Mongo, we tend to think of replication as a way to gain reliability/failover rather than scalability. Mongo uses (auto) sharding as our path to scalabity (sharding is GA as of 1.6). In this sense MongoDB is more like Google BigTable. (We hear that Couch might one day add partitioning too.)

### *Query Expression*

Couch uses a clever index building scheme to generate indexes which support particular queries. There is an elegance to the approach, although

one must predeclare these structures for each query one wants to execute. One can think of them as materialized views.

Mongo uses traditional dynamic queries. As with, say, MySQL, we can do queries where an index does not exist, or where an index is helpful but only partially so. Mongo includes a query optimizer which makes these determinations. We find this is very nice for inspecting the data administratively, and this method is also good when we *don't* want an index: such as insert-intensive collections. When an index corresponds perfectly to the query, the Couch and Mongo approaches are then conceptually similar. We find expressing queries as JSON-style objects in MongoDB to be quick and painless though.

Update Aug2011: Couch is adding a new query language "UNQL".

### *Atomicity*

Both MongoDB and CouchDB support concurrent modifications of single documents. Both forego complex transactions involving large numbers of objects.

### *Durability*

CouchDB is a "crash-only" design where the db can terminate at any time and remain consistent.

Previous versions of MongoDB used a storage engine that would require a repairDatabase() operation when starting up after a hard crash (similar to MySQL's MyISAM). Version 1.7.5 and higher offer durability via journaling; specify the `--journal` command line option

### *Map Reduce*

Both CouchDB and MongoDB support map/reduce operations. For CouchDB map/reduce is inherent to the building of all views. With MongoDB, map/reduce is only for data processing jobs but not for traditional queries.

### *Javascript*

Both CouchDB and MongoDB make use of Javascript. CouchDB uses Javascript extensively including in the building of views .

MongoDB supports the use of Javascript but more as an adjunct. In MongoDB, query expressions are typically expressed as JSON-style query objects; however one may also specify a javascript expression as part of the query. MongoDB also supports running arbitrary javascript functions server-side and uses javascript for map/reduce operations.

### *REST*

Couch uses REST as its interface to the database. With its focus on performance, MongoDB relies on language-specific database drivers for access to the database over a custom binary protocol. Of course, one could add a REST interface atop an existing MongoDB driver at any time -- that would be a very nice community project. Some early stage REST implementations exist for MongoDB.

### *Performance*

Philosophically, Mongo is very oriented toward performance, at the expense of features that would impede performance. We see Mongo DB being useful for many problems where databases have not been used in the past because databases are too "heavy". Features that give MongoDB good performance are:

- client driver per language: native socket protocol for client/server interface (not REST)
- use of memory mapped files for data storage
- collection-oriented storage (objects from the same collection are stored contiguously)
- update-in-place (not MVCC)
- written in C++

### *Use Cases*

It may be helpful to look at some particular problems and consider how we could solve them.

- if we were building Lotus Notes, we would use Couch as its programmer versioning reconciliation/MVCC model fits perfectly. Any problem where data is offline for hours then back online would fit this. In general, if we need several eventually consistent master-master replica databases, geographically distributed, often offline, we would use Couch.
- mobile
    - Couch is better as a mobile embedded database on phones, primarily because of its online/offine replication/sync capabilities.
    - we like Mongo server-side; one reason is its geospatial indexes.
- if we had very high performance requirements we would use Mongo. For example, web site user profile object storage and caching of data from other sources.
- for a problem with very high update rates, we would use Mongo as it is good at that because of its "update-in-place" design. For example see updating real time analytics counters
- in contrast to the above, couch is better when lots of snapshotting is a requirement because of its MVCC design.

Generally, we find MongoDB to be a very good fit for building web infrastructure.

# Licensing

- Database:
  - Free Software Foundation's GNU AGPL v3.0.
  - Commercial licenses are also available from 10gen, including free evaluation licenses.
- Drivers:
  - mongodb.org supported drivers: Apache License v2.0.
  - Third parties have created drivers too; licenses will vary there.
- Documentation: Creative Commons.

The goal of the server license is to require that enhancements to MongoDB be released to the community. Traditional GPL often does not achieve this anymore as a huge amount of software runs in the cloud. For example, Google has no obligation to release their improvements to the MySQL kernel – if they do they are being nice.

To make the above practical, *we promise that your client application which uses the database is a separate work*. To facilitate this, the mongodb.org supported drivers (the part you link with your application) are released under Apache license, which is copyleft free. Note: if you would like a signed letter asserting the above promise please contact us.

If the above isn't enough to satisfy your organization's vast legal department (some will not approve GPL in any form), please contact us – commercial licenses are available including free evaluation licenses. We will try hard to make the situation work for everyone.

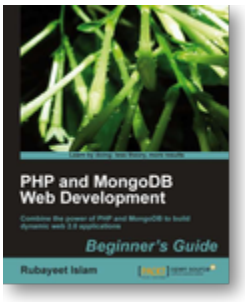
# International Docs

Most documentation for MongoDB is currently written in English. We are looking for volunteers to contribute documentation in other languages. If you're interested in contributing to documentation in another language please email **docs at 10gen dot com** .

## Language Homepages

- Deutsch
- Español
- Français
- 
- Italiano
- [!hu.png! Magyar]
- 
- Português
- 
- Svenska
- 
- 
- 

# Books




**You can download samples at 10gen.com/books.**

MongoDB: The Definitive Guide
*Kristina Chodorow and Mike Dirolf*

The Definitive Guide to MongoDB: The NoSQL Database for Cloud and Desktop Computing
*Peter Membrey*

Scaling MongoDB
*Kristina Chodorow*

MongoDB in Action
Read the **Early Access Edition**
*Kyle Banker*

MongoDB and Python: Patterns and processes for the popular document-oriented database
*Niall O'Higgins*

MongoDB and PHP
*Steve Francia*

MongoDB for Web Development
*Mitch Pirtle*

MongoDB: Sag Ja zu NoSQL
*Marc Boeker*

The Little MongoDB Book
*Karl Seguin*

Free ebook

50 Tips and Tricks for MongoDB Developers
*Kristina Chodorow*

PHP and MongoDB Web Development Beginner's Guide book and eBook
*Rubayeet Islam*

# Slides and Video

## Upcoming Events

- http://www.10gen.com/events

## Presentations from past conferences

- http://www.10gen.com/presentations

## Some past webinars

- Analytics MongoDB Analytics for Online Advertising at Magnetic
- DevOps Data Center Awareness with MongoDB
- DevOps Deployment Best Practices
- DevOps Diagnostics and Performance Tuning
- DevOps Keeping your data safe: replication, backup/restore, mongodump
- DevOps MongoDB and Amazon Web Services
- DevOps MongoDB on Amazon EC2
- DevOps Scaling with MongoDB
- DevOps Tips for a Successful, Scalable MongoDB Deployment
- Geo Geospatial Indexing with MongoDB
- Hadoop Hadoop plugin for MongoDB: The Elephant in the Room
- Indexing Indexing Matters: A MongoDB Optimization Primer
- Indexing Indexing With MongoDB
- Intro Developing Applications with MongoDB: A Quickstart Tutorial
- Intro Introduction to MongoDB
- Java What's New in Java Driver Version 2.5
- Java Zero to MongoDB - Introduction for MongoDB with Java
- Journaling Journaling in MongoDB version 1.8
- Node.js Node.js and MongoDB, a Panel Discussion
- Ruby MongoDB and Ruby
- Scala MongoDB and Scala
- Schema Schema Design with MongoDB
- Use Cases How MongoDB helps Visibiz tackle social CRM
- Use Cases Humongous Data at Server Density: Approaching 1 Billion Documents in MongoDB
- Hybrid Applications with MongoDB and RDBMS
- v1.8 What's new in MongoDB v1.8.0
- v2.0 What You Need to Know About MongoDB 2.0

# Doc Index

## Space Index


| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 0-9 ... 8 | A ... 28 | B ... 24 | C ... 48 |
| F ... 9 | G ... 12 | H ... 13 | I ... 18 |
| L ... 8 | M ... 56 | N ... 4 | O ... 13 |
| R ... 43 | S ... 39 | T ... 16 | U ... 13 |
| X ... 0 | Y ... 1 | Z ... 0 | !@#$ ... 0 |


**0-9**

1.0 Changelist
Wrote MongoDB. See documentation

**A**

A Sample Config
following exa

1.1 Development Cycle

1.2.x Release Notes
New Features More indexes per collection Faster index creation Map/Reduce Stored JavaScript functions Configurable fsync time Several small features and fixes DB Upgrade Required There are some changes that will require doing an upgrade ...

1.4 Release Notes
We're pleased to announce the 1.4 release of MongoDB. 1.4 is a drop in replacement for 1.2. To upgrade you just need to shutdown mongod, then restart with the new binaries. (Users upgrading from release 1.0 should review the 1.2 release notes 1.2.x ...

1.6 Release Notes
MongoDB 1.6 is a dropin replacement for 1.4. To upgrade, simply shutdown {{mongod}} then restart with the new binaries. MongoDB v1.8 DOCS:1.8 Release Notes is now available. \ Please note that you should upgrade to the latest version of whichever driver you're ...

1.8 Release Notes
MongoDB 1.8 is a dropin replacement for 1.6, except: replica set nodes should be upgraded in a particular order Upgrading to 1.8. The options to the Map/Reduce command have changed in 1.8, causing incompatibility with previous releases. If you use MapReduce, please ...

2.0 Release Notes
Upgrading Although the major version number has changed, MongoDB 2.0 is a standard, incremental production release and works as a dropin replacement for MongoDB 1.8. However, there are a few changes you must be aware of before attempting to upgrade: # If you create new ...

2.2 Release Notes

on a single te
single ...

About

About the local d
mongod}} res
authenticatio
against the {{

Adding a New S

Adding an Arbite

Admin UIs
MongoDB do
such as the r
focused on a

Admin Zone
Community A
http://blog.bo
http://blog.tim
http://tag1con

Advanced Queri
MongoDB, ju
Indexes page
features ...

Aggregation
Mongo includ
advanced ag
Aggregation

Aggregation Fra

Aggregation Fra

Aggregation Fra
Overview Th
a single num
Here's a simp

Aggregation Fra
Overview $m
progress furt
$match predi

Aggregation Fra

Aggregation Fra

Aggregation Fra

Aggregation Fra

Aggregation Fra

Alerts
page lists crit
http://jira.mon
missing on a

Amazon EC2
MongoDB ru
Started on E
production in

Amazon EC2 Qu
guide is inter
(AWS) EC2 i
then we'll set

Architecture and
list of the cor
Stopping Mo
(uses interac

Articles
See also the
MongoDB Bl
nonrelational

Atomic operation
key goal of M
found that a

Below are so

Atomic Operatio
MongoDB su
complex tran
slow. 

Automating Depl
CloudFormat
and manage
resources in

AWS Marketplac
you installed
how the Mon
EBS RAID st

Azure Deployme
screenshots
development
using Visual

## B

Backing Up Sharded Cluster
See also Backups DOCS:Backups and Import Export Tools DOCS:Import Export Tools for more information on backups, particularly on the step of backing up each individual server. If you are on EC2 you should look at EC2 Backup & Restore ...

Backups
Several strategies exist for backing up MongoDB databases.  A word of warning: if you do not have journaling enabled, then it's not safe to simply copy the mongod data files (by default in /data/db/) while the database is running and writes are occurring; such a backup ...

Benchmarks
MongoDB does not publish any official benchmarks. We recommend running application performance tests on your application's workload to find bottleneck and for performance tuning. See Also DOCS:JS Benchmarking Harness

Books
mongodbinaction.png! http://manning.com/banker !sagya.png! https://www.amazon.de/MongoDBSagJazuNoSQL/dp/3868020578/ref=sr13?ie=UTF8&qid=1291985616&sr=83 !mongodbcover.png! http://openmymind.net/2011/3/28/TheLittleMongoDBBook !packt.jpg! http://link.packtpub.com/2qxi08 You can download samples at 10gen.com/books ...

Boost 1.41.0 Visual Studio 2010 Binary
OLD and was for the VS2010 BETA. See the new Boost and Windows page instead. The following is a prebuilt boost http://www.boost.org/ binary (libraries) for Visual Studio 2010 beta 2. The MongoDB vcxproj files assume this package is unzipped under c:\Program ...

Boost and Windows
Visual Studio 2010 Prebuilt from mongodb.org Click here http://www.mongodb.org/pages/viewpageattachments.action?pageId=12157032 for a prebuilt boost library for Visual Studio 2010.  7zip http://www.7zip.org/ format. Building Yourself Download the boost source ...

BSON
bsonspec.org http://www.bsonspec.org/ BSON is a bin-aryen-coded seri-al-iz-a-tion of JSONlike doc-u-ments. BSON designed to be lightweight, traversable, and efficient. BSON, like JSON, supports the embedding of objects and arrays within other objects ...

BSON Arrays in C++
examples using namespace mongo; using namespace bson; bo anobj; / transform a BSON array into a vector of BSONElements. we match array # positions with their vector position, and ignore any fields with nonnumeric field names. / vector<be> a = anobj"x".Array ...

Building
Note: see the Downloads DOCS:Downloads page for prebuilt binaries, it's recommended to use those as all full QA occurs after those are built. This section provides instructions on setting up your environment to write Mongo drivers or other infrastructure ...

Building Boost
necessary when building mongo versions 2.1.1 or later. MongoDB uses the www.boost.org Boost C\ libraries. Windows See also the prebuilt libraries http://www.mongodb.org/pages/viewpageattachments.action?pageId=12157032 page. By default c:\boost\ is checked for the boost ...

Building for FreeBSD
FreeBSD 8.0 and later, there is a mongodb port you can use. For FreeBSD <= 7.2: # Get the database source: http://www.github.com/mongodb/mongo. # Update your ports tree: $ sudo portsnap fetch && portsnap extract The packages that come by default on 7.2 ...

Building for Linux
Note: Binaries are available for most platforms. Most users won't need to compile mongo themselves; in addition

## C

C Language Cer
C Driver {}Th
stable as of t
http://api.mor

C Sharp Langua

C++ BSON Libra
MongoDB C
This library c
Include {{bso

C++ Driver Com
C\ driver is in
tarball (see D
of the driver s

C++ Driver Dowr
Driver tarball
filenames, th
code ...

C++ getLastErro
string mongo
http://api.mor
Get error res
DBClientWith

C++ Language C
C\ driver is a
some core M
successfully

C++ Tutorial
document is
for details. N
language ind

Caching
Memory Map
disk I/O.&nbs
several impli

Capped Collectio
Capped colle
on insertion o
automatically

CentOS and Fed

Changing a Shar
automatic su
operation mo
choose the ri

Changing Config
Sections: Th
maintenance
...

every prebuilt binary has been regression tested. See the Downloads page for these prebuilt binaries. These instructions apply to the git master branch ...

Building for OS X
set up your OS X computer for MongoDB development: Prerequisites Xcode Available in the App Store. You only need to get the command line tools, if you don't want to install the whole IDE. SCons SCons is the build tool ...

Building for Solaris
MongoDB server currently supports little endian Solaris operation.  (Although most drivers not the database server work on both.) Community: Help us make this rough page better please\!  (And help us add support for big ...

Building for Windows
Binaries are available for most platforms. Most users won't need to compile mongo themselves; in addition every prebuilt binary has been regression tested. See the Downloads page for these prebuilt binaries. MongoDB can be compiled for Windows (32 and 64 ...

Building indexes with replica sets
Version 2.1.0 and later Indexes can be built in the foreground or background. Background indexes builds on the primary will result in background index builds on the secondaries. Replication will halt on the secondaries while they are building indexes. Index built on primary Index built on secondary Index ...

Building Spider Monkey
MongoDB uses SpiderMonkey http://www.mozilla.org/js/spidermonkey/ for serverside Javascript execution. Pre v2.0: MongoDB requires a js.lib file when linking. This page details how to build js.lib. v2.0: this is handled automatically by the Mongo build scripts via ...

Building SpiderMonkey

Building the Mongo Shell on Windows
You can build the mongo shell with either scons or a Visual Studio 2010 project file. Scons scons mongo.exe Visual Studio 2010 Project File A VS2010 vcxproj file is availabe for building the shell. From the mongo directory open ...

Building with V8
Linux or OSX $ pwd /mongo $ cd .. $ svn checkout http://v8.googlecode.com/svn/trunk/ v8 $ cd v8 $ scons arch=x64 debuggersupport=off snapshot=off profilingsupport=off $ cd ../mongo $ scons usev8 Windows $ pwd /mongo ...

Building with Visual Studio 2008
instructions are for versions of mongo prior to 2.1.1. For version 2.1.1 and newer, the instructions for Visual Studio 2010 DOCS:Building with Visual Studio 2010 and Visual Studo 2008 are the same. MongoDB can be compiled for Windows (32 and 64 bit) using Visual ...

Building with Visual Studio 2010
Binaries are available for most platforms. Most users won't need to compile mongo themselves; in addition every prebuilt binary has been regression tested. See the Downloads page for these prebuilt binaries. v2.1.1 MongoDB can be compiled for Windows (32 ...

Bulk Inserts
page details a few notes on bulk / batch insert operations into collections. No data distribution until the amount of data is not small Sharding uses a "chunk" concept and chunks are on the order of 50 megabytes. Thus until you reach significantly more data ...

Business Intelligence
Pentaho Pentaho http://www.pentaho.com develops Enterprise and Community tools for business analytics and data integration. Pentaho's products integrate well with MongoDB, bringing Pentaho’s visual interfaces for highperformance data ingestion, extraction and manipulation, data discovery, visualization, and predictive ...

Checking Server
How Caching memory in th process mem

Choosing a Shar
important to in doubt plea most of your

cloneCollection
Copy a single not use on a copy of the n

Collections
MongoDB co relational dat usually have

collStats Comma
Statistics on db.command db.foo.stats f

Command Line
MongoDB ca supported se Information c

Commands
Introduction database to Commands

Community
Technical Su Tracker (Jira and all suppo

Community Info

Compact Comm
v2.0\ The co similar to {{re shell): > db.r

Comparing Mong
We are gettir documentorie data storage.

Components

Conference Infor
home page f

Conference Man
Tools to Effe They should for our confe

Configuring Shar
document de One to 1000

Connecting
C\ driver incl our normal c for connectin

Connecting Drive
Ideally a Mor automatically general steps

Connecting to R
Most drivers support conn list of host ...

Connections
MongoDB is you start Mo

Contributing to th
Qualified volu

Contributing to th
easiest way t
help code the

Contributors
10gen Contri

Conventions for
Interface Cor
and when the
drivers is des

cookbook.mongo

Copy Database
MongoDB inc
alternative of
representatio

createCollection
Use the crea
collections. >
create collec

Creating and De

CSharp Commu
Community S
mongodbcsh
http://code.g

CSharp Driver L
Introduction
have read at
Quickstart Fi

CSharp Driver Q
Introduction
started you c

CSharp Driver S
Introduction
(and deserial
object to a B

CSharp Driver T
C# Driver ve
C# Driver for
be used inde

CSharp getLastE
C# driver Sa
"mongodb://h
database lev

CSharp Languag
Upcoming we
MongoDB C#
QuickStart C

Cursors

**D**

Data Center Awareness
Examples One primary data center, one disaster recovery site Multiple set members can be primary at the main data center. Have a member at a remote site that is never primary (at least, not without human intervention). { id: 'myset', members ...

Data Processing Manual
data processing", we generally mean operations performed on large sets of data, rather than small interactive operations. Import One can always write a program to load data of course, but the mongoimport DOCS:Import Export Tools utility ...

Data Types and Conventions
MongoDB (BSON) Data Types Mongo uses special data types in addition to the basic JSON types of string, integer, boolean, double, null, array, and object. These types include date, object id Object IDs, binary data, regular ...

Database Internals
section provides information for developers who want to write drivers or tools for MongoDB, \ contribute code to the

**E**

EC2 Backup & R
Overview Thi
http://aws.am
1.8 (or above

Emacs tips for M
You can edit
Change the
the default sp

Erlang Language
Driver Downl
Driver http://
Frameworks

Error Codes
you have and

MongoDB codebase itself, and for those who are just curious how it works internally. Subsections of this section

Database Profiler
Mongo includes a profiling tool to analyze the performance of database operations. See also the currentOp DOCS:Viewing and Terminating Current Operation command. Enabling Profiling Through the profile command You can enable and disable profiling from the mongo shell ...

Database References

Databases
Each MongoDB server can support multiple databases. Each database is independent, and the data for each database is stored separately, for security and ease of management. A database consists of one or more collections DOCS:Collections, the documents DOCS:Documents (objects) in those ...

Dates
BSON Date/Time data type is referred to as "UTC DateTime" in the BSON spec http://bsonspec.org. Note There is a Timestamp data type but that is a special internal type for MongoDB that typically should not be used. A BSON Date value stores the number of milliseconds since ...

DBA Operations from the Shell
page lists common DBAclass operations that one might perform from the MongoDB shell DOCS:mongo The Interactive Shell. Note one may also create .js scripts to run in the shell for administrative purposes. help show help show ...

dbshell Reference
Command Line {{\help}} Show command line options {{\nodb}} Start without a db, you can connect later with {{new Mongo()}} or {{connect()}} {{\shell}} After running a .js file from the command line, stay in the shell rather than ...

Demo App in Python
From an Interop 2009 presentation Code: http://github.com/mdirolf/simplemessagingservice/tree/master

Design Overview

Developer FAQ

Developer Zone
Tutorial Shell mongo The Interactive Shell Manual Databases Collections Indexes Data Types and Conventions GridFS Inserting Updating Querying Removing Optimization Developer FAQ Cookbook http://cookbook.mongodb.org If you have a comment or question about anything, please ...

Diagnostic Tools

Django and MongoDB

Do I Have to Worry About SQL Injection
See link at bottom for driver specific security notes; specifically one for PHP http://us.php.net/manual/en/mongo.security.php. Instructions for the MongoDB server cluster are represented in two forms: # BSON # Javascript With BSON being the main mechanism. BSON As a client ...

Doc Index

Document-Oriented Datastore

Documentation

Documents
MongoDB can be thought of as a documentoriented database. By 'document', we mean structured documents, not freeform text documents. These documents can be thought of as objects http://blog.10gen.com/post/437029788/jsondbvsodbms but only the data of an object, not the code, methods or class hierarchy. Additionally, there is much ...

Dot Notation

Dot Notation

Dot Notation (Reaching into Objects)
MongoDB is designed for storing JSONstyle objects.  The database understands the structure of these objects and can reach into them to evaluate query expressions. Let's suppose we have some objects of the form: > db.persons.findOne() { name: "Joe", address: , likes: 'scuba', 'math ...

dotCloud
Running MongoDB on dotCloud MongoDB can run on dotCloud http://www.dotcloud.com/. It supports replica sets, and has alpha support for sharding. The whole point of dotCloud is to run your apps and your databases in the same place, to optimize for latency and reliability. However ...

Downloads
table id="downloads"> <thead> <tr> <td></td> <td class="tabletop tableleft odd">OS X 32bit<br/><a href="#32bitlimit" class="warning">note</a></td> <td class="tabletop even">OS X 64bit</td ...

Driver and Integration Center

Driver Syntax Table
wiki generally gives examples in JavaScript, so this chart can be used to convert those examples to any language. JavaScript Python PHP Ruby Java C\ C# Perl \ \ \\ {{array()}} \\ {{BasicDBList}} {{BSONObj or bson::bo}} {{BsonArray}} \ \ {} {} {{new stdClass ...

Driver Testing Tools
Object IDs driverOIDTest for testing toString > db.runCommand

nothing pleas
Comments \\

Error Handling ir
an error occu
first field gua

Events
MongoDB Us
http://www.m
Event What/\

Excessive Disk S
Understandir
the data set i
DOCS:Replic

Explain
Basics A gre
This will disp
Interactive Sl

Drivers
MongoDB currently has client support for the following programming languages: mongodb.org Supported C C Language Center C\ C Language Center Erlang Erlang Language Center Haskell Haskell Language Center Java Java Language Center ...

Durability and Repair
MongoDB (specifically, the mongod process) is normally ran with journaling enabled. This makes it crashsafe. Journaling is on by default in v2.0 for 64 bit builds. (Use journaling, leave it enabled.) Journaling Enabled If you are running with Journaling you should not do a repair to recover ...

Durability Internals
main durability page (not the internals page) is the Journaling page. Files The data file format is unchanged. Journal files are placed in /data/db/journal/. Running Run with {{journal}} to enable journaling/durable storage. Both {{mongod}} and {{test}} support this option ...

**F**

FAQ

Feature Checklist for Mongo Drivers
Functionality Checklist This section lists tasks the driver author might handle. Essential BSON serialization/deserialization Basic operations: {{query}}, {{insert}}, {{update}}, {{remove}}, {{ensureIndex}}, {{findOne}}, {{limit}}, {{sort}} Fetch more data from a cursor when necessary ...

File Based Configuration
addition to accepting command line parameters, MongoDB can also be configured using a configuration file. A configuration file can be specified using the {{\f}} or {{\config}} command line options. On some packaged installs of MongoDB (for example Ubuntu & Debian), the default ...

findAndModify Command
Find and Modify (or Remove) v1.3.0 and higher MongoDB 1.3\ supports a "find, modify, and return" command.  This command can be used to atomically modify a document (at most one) and return it. Note that, by default, the document returned will not include the modifications made on the update ...

flushRouterConfig command

Forcing a Member to be Primary
Replica sets automatically negotiate which member of the set is primary and which are secondaries. If you want a certain member to be primary, there are a couple ways to force this. v2.0 In v2.0, you can set the priority of the preferred primary to be higher than the priorities of the other ...

Frequently Asked Questions - Ruby
list of frequently asked questions about using Ruby with MongoDB. If you have a question you'd like to have answered here, please add it in the comments. Can I run \insert command name here\ from the Ruby driver? Yes ...

fsync Command

Full Text Search in Mongo
Introduction Mongo provides some functionality that is useful for text search and tagging. Multikeys (Indexing Values in an Array) The Mongo multikey feature can automatically index arrays of values. Tagging is a good example of where this feature is useful. Suppose you ...

**G**

Geospatial Hays
addition to or
indexing", the
For example,

Geospatial Index
v1.4\ Mongol
me the close
museums to

getCmdLineOpts
getCmdLineO
use admin db
"512", "nojou

getLastError Cor
MongoDB do
that operatio
operation. Er

getLastError_old

getLog Comman

Getting Started

Getting the Softv
Placeholder

GridFS
GridFS is a s
spec DOCS:
objects.&nbs

GridFS in Ruby
GridFS, whic
manageable
this: one coll

GridFS Specifica
Introduction
chunks, usua
including the

GridFS Tools
File Tools {{n
./mongofiles
connected to

**H**

Hadoop
MongoDB Hadoop Adapter is a plugin for Hadoop that provides Hadoop the ability to use MongoDB as an input source and/or an output source. The source code is available on github https://github.com/mongodb/mongohadoop where you can find a more comprehensive ...

Hadoop Quick Start
MongoDB and Hadoop are a powerful combination and can be used together to deliver complex analytics and data processing for data stored in MongoDB. The following guide shows how you can start working with the MongoDBHadoop adapter. Once you become familiar with the adapter ...

Hadoop Scenarios
following are some example deployments with MongoDB and Hadoop. The goal is to provide a highlevel description of how MongoDB and Hadoop can fit together in a typical Big Data stack. In each of the following examples MongoDB is used as the "operational" realtime data store and Hadoop ...

**I**

Implementing Au
current versi
context of a
question. The

Import Export To
you just want
instead of the
they do not s

Index Versions
MongoDB v2
old {{\{v:0\}}}

Index-Related C

Halted Replication
instructions are for master/slave replication. For replica sets, see DOCS:Resyncing a Very Stale Replica Set Member instead. If you're running mongod with masterslave replication DOCS:Master Slave, there are certain scenarios where the slave will halt replication because ...

Haskell Language Center
Haskell driver and its API documentation reside on Hackage http://hackage.haskell.org/package/mongoDB

Home
new MongoDB Manual http://docs.mongodb.org/manual/ is a complete rewrite of the MongoDB documentation that will eventually replace much of this site. You can view the latest version at docs.mongodb.org http://docs.mongodb.org, and contribute on github http://github.com/mongodb/docs and Jira http ...

Hosting Center
DatabaseasaService MongoOd.com http://mongood.com/ MongoLab https://mongolab.com/home/ HostedMongo.com http://hostedmongo.com/ MongoGrid http://nodegrid.com/resources/mongogrid/ InfrastructureasaService Amazon EC2 DOCS:Amazon EC2 Joyent DOCS:Joyent Rackspace Cloud Windows Azure VM ...

How does concurrency work
Latest info in this video : http://www.10gen.com/presentations/concurrencyinternalsmongodb22 The documentation below primarily covers MongoDB v2.0. v2.0 typically achieves significantly more concurrency in disk activity than v1.8 did. v2.2 contains substantial concurrency enhancements. mongos For sharded ...

How MongoDB is Used in Media and Publishing
We see growing usage of MongoDB in both traditional and new media organizations. In these areas, the challenges for application developers include effectively managing rich content (including usergenerated content) at scale, deriving insight into how content is consumed and shared in realtime ...

How to do Snapshotted Queries in the Mongo Database
document refers to query snapshots. For backup snapshots of the database's datafiles, see the fsync lock page fsync Command. MongoDB does not support full pointintime snapshotting. However, some functionality is available which is detailed below. Cursors A MongoDB query ...

How to Make an Auto Incrementing Field
Generally in MongoDB, one does not use an autoincrement pattern for \id's (or other fields), as this does not scale up well on large database clusters. Instead one typically uses Object IDs. Side counter method One can keep ...

HowTo

Http Interface
REST Interfaces DrowsyDromedary (Ruby) DrowsyDromedary https://github.com/zuk/DrowsyDromedary is a REST layer for Mongo based on Ruby. MongoDB Rest (Node.js) MongoDB Rest http://github.com/tdegrunt/mongodbrest is an alpha REST interface to MongoDB, which uses ...

Operations: (
info to the {{s
db.system.in

Indexes
Indexes enha
need so that
Indexes in M

Indexes in Mong

Indexing Advice
We get a lot
in mind, thou
building effici

Indexing as a Ba
Prior to 2.1.0
slave/second
completely b

Inserting
When we ins
JSON, Pytho
and describe

Installing the PH

Internal Comma
Most comma
internal and a
admindb.$cm

Internals
Cursors Taila
OptionCurso
when ...

International Doc
Most docume
other langua
com. Langua

International Doc

Internationalized
MongoDB su
UTF8.) Gene
serializing an

Introduction
MongoDB wa
systems. We

Introduction - Ho

iostat
Linux, use th
work well. (U

## J

Java - Saving Objects Using DBObject
Java driver provides a DBObject interface to save custom objects to the database. For example, suppose one had a class called Tweet that they wanted to save: public class Tweet implements DBObject Then you can say: Tweet myTweet = new Tweet ...

Java Driver Concurrency
Java MongoDB driver is thread safe. If you are using in a web serving environment, for example, you should create a single Mongo instance, and you can use it in every request. The Mongo object maintains an internal pool of connections to the database ...

Java Language Center
Java Driver Basics Download the Java Driver http://github.com/mongodb/mongojavadriver/downloads Tutorial http://www.mongodb.org/display/DOCS/JavaTutorial API Documentation http://api.mongodb.org/java/index.html Release Notes https://github.com/mongodb/mongojavadriver/wiki ...

Java Tutorial
Introduction This page is a brief overview of working with the MongoDB Java Driver. For more information about the Java API, please refer to the online API Documentation for Java Driver http://api.mongodb.org/java/index.html A Quick Tour Using the Java driver is very ...

Java Types
Object Ids {{com.mongodb.ObjectId}} http://api.mongodb.org/java/0.11/com/mongodb/ObjectId.html is used to

## K

Kernel class rule
Design guide
possible but
a class ...

Kernel code styl
basics Use s
CRLF (DOS)

Kernel concurrer
All concurren
mutexes with
example the

Kernel exceptior
several differ
Operationfat
require an er

Kernel logging
Basic Rules
that). See v

autogenerate unique ids. ObjectId id = new ObjectId(); ObjectId copy = new ObjectId(id); Regular Expressions The Java driver uses {{java.util.regex.Pattern}} http://java.sun.com ...

Javascript Language Center
MongoDB can be Used by clients written in Javascript; Uses Javascript internally serverside for certain options such as map/reduce; Has a shell DOCS:mongo The Interactive Shell that is based on Javascript for administrative purposes. node.JS and V8 See the node.JS page. node.JS ...

Job Board
Redirecting

Journaling
MongoDB v1.7.5\ supports writeahead journaling of operations to facilitate fast crash recovery and durability in the storage engine. Disabling/Enabling In version 1.9.2, journaling is enabled by default for 64bit platforms. You can disable journaling with the mongod {{\nojournal}} command line ...

Journaling Administration Notes
Journal Files (e.g. journal/j.0) Journal files are appendonly and are written to the {{journal/}} directory under the dbpath directory (which is {{/data/db/}} by default). Journal files are named {{j.0}}, {{j.1}}, etc. When a journal file reached 1GB in size ...

Joyent
quickest start, you can use the Joyent SmartMachine for MongoDB Appliance http://wiki.joyent.com/display/jpc2/JoyentMongoDBSmartMachine For installing MongoDB on a Joyent Node Smart Machine, see this article http://wiki.joyent.com/display/node/InstallingMongoDBonaNodeSmartMachine The prebuilt DOCS:Downloads MongoDB Solaris ...

JS Benchmarking Harness
benchRun command is designed as a QA baseline perf measurement tool, not designed to be a "benchmark". CODE: db.foo.drop(); db.foo.insert( ) ops = { op : "findOne" , ns : "test.foo" , query : } , { op : "update" , ns : "test.foo" , query : , update : { $inc : } } for ( x = 1; x<=128 ...

JVM Languages

Kernel string ma
string manipu
each manipu

## L

Language Support

Legal Key Names
Key names in inserted documents are limited as follows: The '$' character must not be the first character in the key name. The '.' character must not appear anywhere in the key name

Licensing
Database: Free Software Foundation's GNU AGPL v3.0 http://www.fsf.org/licensing/licenses/agpl3.0.html. Commercial licenses are also available from 10gen http://10gen.com/contact?, including free evaluation licenses. Drivers: mongodb.org supported drivers: Apache ...

List of Database Commands
iframe src ="http://api.mongodb.org/internal/current/commands.html" width="100%" height="1000px" frameborder="0"> <a href="http://api.mongodb.org/internal/current/commands.html">List of MongoDB Commands</a> </iframe> See the Commands page for details on how to invoke a command ...

List of helper functions
nonexhaustive list of helper functions for use in the C stream syntax. An exhaustive list is here: bsonmisc.h https://github.com/mongodb/mongo/blob/master/src/mongo/bson/bsonmisc.h Typical example of stream syntax: BSONObj p = BSON ...

Locking

Locking in Mongo

Logging
MongoDB outputs some important information to stdout while its running. There are a number of things you can do to control this Command Line Options {{\quiet}} less verbose output (more details quiet) {{v}} more verbose output. use ...

## M

Manual
MongoDB ma
The Interacti

MapReduce
Map/reduce i
something lik
would have u

Master Slave
Use Replica
more robust
configuration

Memory manage
Overall guide
class such as
backward co

min and max Qu
min()}} and {{
keys betwee
conjunction.

Misc

mongo - The Inte
MongoDB dis
allows you to
https://develo

Mongo Administ

Mongo Concepts
See the Man
files and very
Duplicating d

Mongo Database

Mongo Develope

Mongo Documer
page provide
Writing Style
Writing Style

Mongo Driver Re
highlevel list

should be tak
to learn abou

Mongo Extended
Mongo's RES
types that do
interface sup

Mongo Metadata
dbname>.sys
collections in
Additional na

Mongo Query La
Queries in M
clause: > db.

Mongo Usage Ba

Mongo Wire Pro
Introduction
database ser
should conne

MongoDB - A De

MongoDB Azure
following are
configuration
members you

MongoDB Banga
Dates and D
URL/Dates T
Link ...

MongoDB Beijing
Dates and D
URL/Dates T
Link ...

MongoDB Bosto
Dates and D
URL/Dates T
Link ...

MongoDB Chica
Dates and D
URL/Dates T
Link ...

MongoDB Comm
10gen !10ge
MongoDB pr
licensing http

MongoDB Data I
tutorial discu
mapper.&nbs
end, we'll be

MongoDB Install
MongoDB Ins
Azure VM ins
Windows Azu

MongoDB kerne
Coding conv
http://google
the case in th

MongoDB Langu

MongoDB Maste
sorted alphal
campus for te
ruby, nodejs,

MongoDB Melbo
Dates and D
URL/Dates T
Link ...

MongoDB Monit
MongoDB M

interface feat
setup and co

MongoDB Munic
Dates and D
URL/Dates T
Link ...

MongoDB on Az
MongoDB Re
http://groups.
#mongodb a

MongoDB Pune
Dates and D
URL/Dates T
Link ...

MongoDB Seattl
Dates and D
URL/Dates T
Link ...

MongoDB Sydne
Dates and D
URL/Dates T
Link ...

MongoDB Tokyo
Dates and D
URL/Dates T
Link ...

MongoDB User
MongoDB Us
to network, a
http://www.1

MongoDB, Couc
pending... Co
DocumentOr
string,numbe

MongoDB-Based
Please list ap
here\! 
Center Applic

MongoDC 2012
3 Leaf Spons
in "Reminder

mongoexport
mongoexport
for the query

MongoNYC 201
Dates and D
URL/Dates T
Link ...

mongoperf
mongoperf is
disk i/o's. The
Running # ge

MongoSF 2013
Dates and D
URL/Dates T
Link ...

mongosniff
Unix releases
fairly low leve
mongosniff h

mongostat

MongoSV 2012
Dates and D
URL/Dates T
Link ...

Monitoring

Monitoring and D
MMS (Mongo
mongostat is
for the analys

movePrimary Co
movePrimary
collections in
existing data

Moving Chunks
any given tim
automatically
http://www.m

Moving or Repla
shell you can
the set. See

Multikeys
MongoDB pr
is tagging. Su
We can ...

Munin configurat
Overview Mu
mini tutorial t
and plugins .

**N**

NFS
We have found that some versions of NFS perform very poorly, or simply don't work, and do not suggest using NFS. (We'd love to hear from you if you are using NFS and what results you are getting, either great ...

node.JS
Node.js is used to write eventdriven, scalable network programs in serverside JavaScript. It is similar in purpose to Twisted, EventMachine, etc. It runs on Google's V8. This is an overview of the available tools and suggested practices for using Node.js with MongoDB. Those wishing to skip to more ...

Notes on Pooling for Mongo Drivers
Note that with the db write operations can be sent asynchronously or synchronously (the latter indicating a getlasterror request after the write). When asynchronous, one must be careful to continue using the same connection (socket). This ensures that the next operation will not begin until after ...

NUMA
Linux, NUMA http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/NonUniformMemoryAccess and MongoDB tend not to work well together. If you are running MongoDB on numa hardware, we recommend turning it off (running with an interleave memory policy). Problems will manifest in strange ways, such as massive ...

**O**

Object IDs
Documents i
document ha
collections).&

ObjectId

Old Pages

Older Downloads

Online API Docu
MongoDB AP
http://api.mor
http://api.mor

OpenShift Quick
OpenShift is
automatic sc
Express is a

Optimization
Additional Ar
This section
is to display t

Optimizing Mong

Optimizing Objec
id}} field in a
recommenda
of any type. U

Optimizing Stora
MongoDB re
overhead is r
be.  Be

OR operations ir
Query object
expression.&
operator lets

Overview - The M
Running the
directory of th
you can just

Overview - Writin
section conta
drivers and h
document for

## P

- Padding Factor
  Overview When you update a document in MongoDB, the update occurs inplace if the document has not grown in size. If the document did grow in size, however, then it might need to be relocated on disk to find a new disk location with enough contiguous space to fit ...
- Pairing Internals
  Policy for reconciling divergent oplogs pairing is deprecated In a paired environment, a situation may arise in which each member of a pair has logged operations as master that have not been applied to the other server. In such a situation, the following procedure will be used to ensure consistency ...
- Parsing Stack Traces
  addr2line addr2line e mongod ifC <offset> cfilt You can use {{cfilt}} to demangle function names by pasting the whole stack trace to stdin. Finding the right binary To find the binary you need: Get the commit at the header of any ...
- Perl Language Center
  Installing Start a MongoDB server instance ({{mongod}}) before installing so that the tests will pass. The {{mongod}} cannot be running as a slave for the tests to pass. Some tests may be skipped, depending on the version of the database you are running. CPAN $ sudo cpan MongoDB ...
- Perl Tutorial
- Philosophy
  Design Philosophy !featuresPerformace.png align=right! New database technologies are needed to facilitate horizontal scaling of the data layer, easier development, and the ability to store order(s) of magnitude more data than was used in the past. A nonrelational approach is the best path to database ...
- PHP - Storing Files and Big Data
- PHP Language Center
  Using MongoDB in PHP To access MongoDB from PHP you will need: The MongoDB server running the server is the "mongo{}d" file, not the "mongo" client (note the "d" at the end) The MongoDB PHP driver installed Installing the PHP Driver \NIX Run ...
- PHP Libraries, Frameworks, and Tools
  PHP community has created a huge number of libraries to make working with MongoDB easier and integrate it with existing frameworks. Libraries and Frameworks CakePHP MongoDB datasource https://github.com/ichikaway/cakephpmongodb for CakePHP. There's also an introductory blog post http ...
- PresentationTips
  Slides Be precise in your slides We will make them available on our website after the conference, so make sure they are correct and to the point. Be visual a clever picture, easy to read chart, or even simple bullet points convey clear information ...
- Production Deployments
  MongoDB can be used for a lot of different projects: the goal is for it to be a fairly general purpose tool. As you can see, many of the use cases are online or operational db's where someone is writing an application in front of the database. Business intelligence / analytics ...
- Production Notes
  Backups Backups Doc Page DOCS:Backups Import Export Tools TCP Port Numbers Default TCP port numbers for MongoDB processes: Standalone {{mongod}} : 27017 {{mongos}} : 27017 shard server DOCS:Architecture and Components ({{mongod \shardsvr ...
- Project Ideas
  you're interested in getting involved in the MongoDB community (or the open source community in general) a great way to do so is by starting or contributing to a MongoDB related project. Here we've listed some project ideas for you to get started on. For some of these ideas ...
- PyMongo and mod_wsgi
- Python Language Center
  an overview of the available tools for using Python with MongoDB. Those wishing to skip to more detailed discussion should check out the Python Driver Tutorial http://api.mongodb.org/python/current/tutorial.html. Python Driver PyMongo is the recommended way to work ...
- Python Tutorial

## Q

- Queries and Cur
  Queries to M
  driver. Detail
  process). Th
- Query Optimizer
  MongoDB qu
  MongoDB su
  optimization
- Querying
  One of Mong
  require any s
- Querying and nu
  null}} value ir
  the following
  Query #2 > d
- Quickstart
  an even quic
  Install Mongo
  http://docs.m
- Quickstart OS X
- Quickstart Unix
- Quickstart Windo

## R

- Rackspace Cloud
  guide is intended to provide instructions on getting started with MongoDB using Rackspace Cloud Servers. First we'll step through deployment planning (instance sizes, topology, security) and then we'll set up a single MongoDB node. We'll use the same ...
- Rails - Getting Started
  Using Rails 3? See Rails 3 Getting Started This tutorial describes how to set up a simple Rails application with MongoDB, using MongoMapper as an object mapper. We assume you're using Rails versions prior to 3.0 ...
- Rails 3 - Getting Started
  difficult to use MongoDB with Rails 3. Most of it comes down to making sure that you're not loading ActiveRecord

## S

- Scala Language
  Casbah http:
  and extensio
  supports seri
- Schema Design
  Schema desi
  the first step
  entity relatior
- scons

and understanding how to use Bundler http://github.com/carlhuda/bundler/blob/master/README.markdown, the new Ruby dependency manager. Install the Rails ...

- Recommended Configurations
- Recommended Production Architectures
- Reconfiguring a replica set when members are down
  One can easily reconfigure a replica set when some members are down as long as a majority is still up. In that case, simply send the reconfig command to the current primary. DOCS:Reconfiguring when Members are Up If there is no majority (i.e. a majority of nodes ...
- Reconfiguring when Members are Up
- RedHat OpenShift
  OpenShift https://openshift.redhat.com/app/ is a Platform as a Service (PaaS) offering from RedHat, which provides support for rapid deployment and automatic scalability support for web applications developed with Java EE, Node.js, Python, PHP, Perl and Ruby, and several databases ...
- removeshard command
- Removing
  Removing Objects from a Collection To remove objects from a collection, use the {{remove()}} function in the mongo shell mongo The Interactive Shell. (Other drivers offer a similar function, but may call the function "delete". Please check your driver's documentation ...
- renameCollection Command
- Replica Pairs
  Replica pairs should be migrated to their replacement, Replica Sets. Setup of Replica Pairs Mongo supports a concept of replica pairs. These databases automatically coordinate which is the master and which is the slave at a given point in time. At startup, the databases will negotiate which is master ...
- Replica Set Admin UI
  mongod}} process includes a simple administrative UI for checking the status of a replica set. To use, first enable {{\rest}} from the {{mongod}} command line. The rest port is the db port plus 1000 (thus, the default is 28017). Be sure this port is secure ...
- Replica Set Authentication
  v1.8 Replica set authentication works a little differently from singleserver authentication, so that each member can automatically authenticate itself to the other members of the set. See the main docs on authentication Security and Authentication#Replica Set and Sharding Authentication ...
- Replica Set Commands
  Shell Helpers rs.help() show help rs.status() rs.initiate() initiate with default settings rs.initiate(cfg) rs.add(hostportstr) add a new member to the set rs.add(membercfgobj) add a new member to the set rs.addArb(hostportstr) add a new member which ...
- Replica Set Configuration
  Command Line Each {{mongod}} participating in the set should have a {{\replSet}} parameter on its command line. The syntax is mongod replSet setname rest {}setname is the logical name of the set. Use the {{rest}} command line parameter when using replica ...
- Replica Set Design Concepts
  replica set has at most one primary at a given time. If a majority of the set is up, the most uptodate secondary will be elected primary. If a majority of the set is not up or reachable, no member will be elected primary. There is no way to tell (from the set's point of view) the difference ...
- Replica Set FAQ
- Replica Set Internals
  page contains notes on the original MongoDB replica set design. While the concepts still apply, this page is not kept perfectly uptodate; consider this page historical rather than definitive. Design Concepts Check out the Replica Set Design Concepts ...
- Replica set internals - idempotence
- Replica Set Sample Configurations
  Below are some example configurations of replica sets with various numbers of servers and numbers of data centers. In a sharded http://www.mongodb.org/display/DOCS/ShardingIntroduction#ShardingIntroductionArchitecturalOverview cluster this would be the configuration inside each shard and typically they are the same for all shards (unless ...
- Replica Set Semantics
  MongoDB Java driver handles failover in replicated setups with tunable levels of transparency to the user.  By default, a {{Mongo}} connection object will ignore failures of secondaries, and only reads will throw {{MongoExceptions}} when the primary node is unreachable. The level of exception reporting ...
- Replica Set Tutorial
  v1.6 This tutorial will guide you through a basic replica set initial setup. Given the tutorial is an example and should be easy to try, it runs several mongod processes on a single machine (in the real world one would use several machines ...
- Replica Set Versions and Compatibility
  Features Feature Version Slave delay v1.6.3 Hidden v1.7 replSetFreeze and replSetStepDown v1.7.3 Replicated ops in {{mongostat}} v1.7.3 Syncing from secondaries v1.8.0 Authentication v1.8.0 Replication from nearest server

Use scons ht
details. Run
...

- Scripting the she
  MongoDB sh
  (.js) you can
- Searching and R
- Security and Aut
  MongoDB inc
  When off, it is
  v2.0\ when u
- Server-side Cod
  Mongo suppo
  map/reduce
  {{db.eval()}}
- Server-Side Proc
- serverStatus Co
- setParameter Co
- Shard Ownershi
  shard owners
  copy of the o
  shard ...
- Sharding
  MongoDB sc
  balancing for
  nodes No sin
- Sharding Admini
  Here we pres
  see the docs
  mongos proc
- Sharding and Fa
  properlyconfi
  failure scena
  routing proce
- Sharding Config
  Sharding cor
  entire cluster
  current meta
- Sharding Design
  concepts cor
  be either a si
  region ...
- Sharding FAQ
- Sharding Interna
  section inclu
  documentatio
- Sharding Introdu
  MongoDB su
  applications
  managing fai
- Sharding Limits
  Security Auth
  https://jira.mo
  must be run i
- Sharding Use Ca
  What specific
  here for discu
  videos ...
- Simple Initial Sha
  Overview Thi
  (East=primar
- slaveOk
- Slide Gallery
- Slides and Videc

(by ping time) v2.0.0 Syncing 1.8.x ...

Replica Sets
Overview Replica sets are a form of asynchronous master/slave replication DOCS:Master Slave, adding automatic failover and automatic recovery of member nodes. A replica set consists of two or more nodes that are copies of each other. (i.e.: replicas) The replica ...

Replica Sets - Basics
production use you will want a minimum of three nodes in the replica set. Either: 2 full nodes and 1 arbiter 3 full nodes To avoid a single point of failure, these nodes must be on different computers. It is standard to have at least 2 ...

Replica Sets - Oplog

Replica Sets - Priority

Replica Sets - Rollbacks
Overview The classic example of a rollback occurs when you have two replicas (a primaryA and secondaryB) and the secondary (B) is not up to date (replication is behind). If the primary (A) fails (or is shutdown) before B is uptodate and B becomes primary, then there is data which B ...

Replica Sets - Voting
Each replica sets contains only one primary node. This is the only node in the set that can accept write commands (insert/update/delete). The primary node is elected by a consensus vote of all reachable nodes. Consensus Vote For a node to be elected ...

Replica Sets in Ruby
Here follow a few considerations for those using the Ruby driver Ruby Tutorial with MongoDB and replica sets DOCS:Replica Sets. Setup First, make sure that you've configured and initialized a replica set. Connecting to a replica set from the Ruby ...

Replica Sets Limits
set can contain A maximum of 12 members A maximum of 7 members that can vote Typically the set configuration can be changed only when a majority can be established. Limits on config changes to sets at first. Especially when a lot of set ...

Replica Sets slaveDelay

Replica Sets Troubleshooting
can't get local.system.replset config from self or any seed (EMPTYCONFIG) Set needs to be initiated. Run {{rs.initiate()}} from the shell. If the set is already initiated and this is a new node, verify it is present in the replica set's configuration and there are no typos in the host names: > // send ...

Replication
MongoDB supports asynchronous replication of data between servers for failover and redundancy. Only one server (in the set/shard) is active for writes (the primary, or master) at a given time this is to allow strong consistent (atomic) operations. One can optionally send read ...

Replication Internals
master mongod instance, the {{local}} database will contain a collection, {{oplog.$main}}, which stores a highlevel transaction log. The transaction log essentially describes all actions performed by the user, such as "insert this object into this collection." Note that the oplog is not a lowlevel redo log ...

Replication Oplog Length

Resyncing a Very Stale Replica Set Member
Error RS102 MongoDB writes operations to an oplog.  For replica sets this data is stored in collection local.oplog.rs.  This is a capped collection and wraps when full "RRD"style.  Thus, it is important that the oplog collection is large enough to buffer ...

Retrieving a Subset of Fields
default on a find operation, the entire object is returned. However we may also request that only certain fields be returned. This is somewhat analogous to the list of \column specifiers in a SQL SELECT statement (projection). // select z from things where x ...

Roadmap
Please see jira
https://jira.mongodb.org/browse/SERVER#selectedTab=com.atlassian.jira.plugin.system.project%3Aroadmappanel

Ruby External Resources
number of good resources appearing all over the web for learning about MongoDB and Ruby. A useful selection is listed below. If you know of others, do let us know. Screencasts Introduction to MongoDB Part I
http://www.teachmetocode.com/screencasts ...

Ruby Language Center
an overview of the available tools and suggested practices for using Ruby with MongoDB. Those wishing to skip to more detailed discussion should check out the Ruby Driver Tutorial
http://api.mongodb.org/ruby/current/file.TUTORIAL.html, Getting started with Rails Rails ...

Ruby Tutorial
tutorial gives many common examples of using MongoDB with the Ruby driver. If you're looking for information on data modeling, see MongoDB Data Modeling and Rails. Links to the various object mappers are listed on our object mappers page http://www.mongodb.org ...

**T**

Upcoming E\
Some past w
http://www.1(
Awareness ..

Smoke Tests
Test Organiz
{{jstests/shar

Sorting and Natu
Natural orde
parameters,
because, alth

Source Code
Source for M
Mongo Datat
http://github.(

Spec, Notes and
Assume that
time. See Als

Splitting Shard C
MongoDB us
key range) to
no one chunk

SQL to Aggregat
SQL term Mo
can try the a(
...

SQL to Mongo M
MySQL exec
Components
table collecti(

SQL to Shell to (
MongoDB qu
as SQL, Mon
index key ...

SSD
We are not e
welcome. Mu
Endurance ..

SSL

Starting and Sto
MongoDB is
on those opti
The followinc

Storing Data

Storing Files

Structuring Data

**U**

Tag Aware Sharding
v2.2 of MongoDB supports tagaware sharding. Typically this is used to make assignment of documents to shards geographically aware. One marks a shard key range as "homed" on a certain set of shards. Those shards would then be configured such that their primary http://www.mongodb.org/display ...

Tailable Cursors
Tailable cursors are only allowed on capped collections and can only return objects in natural order http://www.mongodb.org/display/DOCS/SortingandNaturalOrder. Tailable queries never use indexes. A tailable cursor "tails" the end of a capped collection, much like ...

Technical Support
Free Support Forum http://groups.google.com/group/mongodbuser IRC Chat and Support irc://irc.freenode.net/#mongodb Commercial Support http://www.10gen.com/support

The Database and Caching
relational databases, object caching is usually a separate facility (such as memcached), which makes sense as even a RAM page cache hit is a fairly expensive operation with a relational database (joins may be required, and the data must be transformed into an object representation ...

The Linux Out of Memory OOM Killer
Linux out of memory killer kills processes using too much memory. On a kill event you will see a line such as the following in the system log file: Feb 13 04:33:23 hostm1 kernel: 279318.262555 mongod invoked oomkiller ...

Timestamp data type
normal Date Dates datatype. This is a special type for internal MongoDB use. BSON http://bsonspec.org/ includes a timestamp data type with special semantics in MongoDB. Timestamps are stored as 64 bit values which, on a single {{mongod}}, are guaranteed unique. The first ...

Too Many Open Files
you receive the error "too many open files" or "too many open connections" in the mongod log, there are a couple of possible reasons for this. First, to check what file descriptors are in use, run lsof (some variations shown below): lsof grep ...

Tools and Libraries
Talend Adapters https://github.com/adrienmogenet

TreeNavigation
Follow @mongodb http://www.twitter.com/mongodb MongoDC http://www.10gen.com/events/mongodbdc June 26 MongoDB Sao Paulo http://www.10gen.com/events/mongodbsaopaulo July 13

Trees in MongoDB
best way to store a tree usually depends on the operations you want to perform; see below for some different options.  In practice, most developers find that one of the "Full Tree in Single Document", "Parent Links", and "Array of Ancestors" patterns ...

Troubleshooting
mongod process "disappeared" Scenario here is the log ending suddenly with no error or shutdown messages logged. On Unix, check /var/log/messages: $ sudo grep mongod /var/log/messages $ sudo grep score /var/log/messages Socket ...

Troubleshooting MapReduce
Tips on troubleshooting map/reduce. Troubleshooting the {{map}} function We can troubleshoot the map function in the shell by defining a test {{emit}} function in the shell and having it print out trace information. For example suppose we have some data: > db.articles.find ...

Troubleshooting the PHP Driver

Tutorial
Running MongoDB First, run through the Quickstart guide for your platform to get Mongo installed. Getting A Database Connection Let's now try manipulating the database with the database shell DOCS:mongo The Interactive Shell . (We could perform similar ...

Tweaking performance by document bundling during schema design
Note: this page discusses performance tuning aspects if you are just getting started skip this for later. If you have a giant collection of small documents that will require significant tuning, read on. During schema design DOCS:Schema Design one consideration ...

two-phase commit
common problem with nonrelational database is that it is not possible to do transactions across several documents. When executing a transaction composed of several sequential operations, some issues arise: Atomicity: it is difficult to rollback changes by previous operations if one fails. Isolation: changes ...

Ubuntu and Deb

UI
Spec/require
indexsize, cl
...

Updates

Updating
MongoDB su
{{update()}} r
use ...

Updating Data in
Updating a D
to save a new
with the exar

Upgrading from
mongod}} pr
so yet, feel fr
familiarize yo

Upgrading to 1.8
First, upgrad
primaries. 1.

Upgrading to Re
Upgrading Fr
idea\!). First,

Use Case - Sess
MongoDB is
store the ses
updates fast,

Use Cases
goal of Mong
online/operat
Deployments

User Feedback
I just have to
get a long co
mongodbuse

Using a Large N
technique on
single collect
that key may

Using Multikeys
One way to v
feature where
db.foo.insert(

## V

v0.8 Details
Existing Core Functionality Basic Mongo database functionality: inserts, deletes, queries, indexing. Master / Slave Replication Replica Pairs Serverside javascript code execution New to v0.8 Drivers for Java, C, Python, Ruby. db shell utility ...

Validate Command

Verifying Propagation of Writes with getLastError
Please read the getLastError command page first. A client can await a write operation's replication to N servers

## W

What is a Name

What is the Com
MongoDB all
from differen
...

What's New by V
summary of

(v1.6). Use the getlasterror command with the parameter {{w}}: // examples: db.runCommand( ) db.runCommand( ) db.runCommand( ) db.runCommand( ) If {{w}} is not set, or equals one, the command ...

Version Numbers
MongoDB uses the oddnumbered versions for development releases http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Softwareversioning#Oddnumberedversionsfordevelopmentreleases. There are 3 numbers in a MongoDB version: A.B.C A is the major version. This will rarely change and signify very large changes B is the release number. This will include many changes ...

Video & Slides from Recent Events and Presentations
Table of Contents: MongoDB Conferences Oneday conferences hosted by 10gen http://www.10gen.com/. 10gen develops and supports MongoDB. MongoUK Video (June 2010) http://skillsmatter.com/event/cloudgrid/mongouk MongoFR Video (June 2010) http://lacantine.ubicast.eu/categories ...

Viewing and Terminating Current Operation
View Operation(s) in Progress > db.currentOp(); { inprog: { "opid" : 18 , "op" : "query" , "ns" : "mydb.votes" , "query" : " " , "inLock" : 1 } } > > // to include idle connections in report: > db.currentOp(true); Fields: opid an incrementing operation number.  Use with killOp(). active ...

Virtualization
Generally MongoDB works very well in virtualized environments, with the exception of OpenVZ. EC2 Compatible. No special configuration requirements. VMWare Some suggest not using overcommit as they may cause issues. Otherwise compatible. Cloning a VM is possible. For example you might ...

Visit the 10gen Offices
Bay Area 10gen's West Coast office is located in downtown Palo Alto. 555 University Ave. Palo Alto, CA 94301 \\ <iframe width="495" height="395" frameborder="0" scrolling="no" marginheight="0" marginwidth="0" src ...

VMware CloudFoundry
MongoDB is a supported service on VMware's Cloud Foundry http://www.cloudfoundry.com/. Clound Foundry is a platformasaservice solution. At this time, CloudFoundry.com (the public instance of Cloud Foundry operated by VMware) supports applications written in Spring Java, Rails and Sinatra for Ruby, Node.js. Scala ...

details. 1.4 G
directoryperd

When to use Gri
page is unde
better than m

Why are my data

Why Replica Set
Replica sets
features shou

Why so many "C

Windows
Windows Qu
Windows for
page. The M

Windows Servic
mongod.exe
mongos.exe
Windows ser

Wireshark Suppo
Wireshark ht
http://wiki.wir
on specific va

Working with Mo

Writing Drivers a
See Also DO

Writing tests
We have thre
succeed. For
db.jstestscur

**X**

**Y**

Your Go-to Resc
Tips for Runn
meet and lea

**Z**

**!@#$**

# Alerts

This page lists critical alerts and advisories for MongoDB. This page is a work in progress and will be enhanced over time.

See http://jira.mongodb.org/ for a comprehensive list of bugs and feature requests.

### Data Integrity Related

- Documents may be missing on a replication secondary after initial sync if a high number of updates occur during the sync that move the document (i.e., the documents are growing).
  - https://jira.mongodb.org/browse/SERVER-3956 Replica set case. Fixed: 1.8.4, 2.0.1
  - https://jira.mongodb.org/browse/SERVER-4270 Master/slave case. Fixed: 1.8.5, 2.0.2

- When stepping down a replica set primary, the primary's connection to clients is not automatically closed in 2.0.1. This means that if the primary steps down while an application is issuing fire-and-forget write, the application won't necessarily fail over until it issues a query. Applications that only issue safe writes are not affected by this. The issue is fixed in 2.0.2. See https://jira.mongodb.org/browse/SERVER-4405 for details.

### Security Related

- Limit access of __system when running --auth without replica sets.
  - https://jira.mongodb.org/browse/SERVER-3666 Fixed: 1.8.4

Make sure to subscribe to http://groups.google.com/group/mongodb-announce for important announcements.